New University of Ulster

From the Library
of
VIVIAN
HUNTER
GALBRAITH
Regius Professor
of Modern History
Oxford University
1947-1957

Accession No.	7607657
Shelf No.	DA 25. B8 1866
Heading	PARIS Vol. 3

V. H. Galbraith

Christmas 1943.

NOT TO BE TAKEN AWAY
FROM THE WATFORD PUBLIC LIBRARY.

NEW UNIVERSITY OF ULSTER
THE LIBRARY
WITHDRAWN FROM STOCK
DUE BACK

ILL
10/9
Due back
9/10/87

~~FOR USE IN LIBRARY ONLY.~~

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

https://archive.org/details/matthaeiparisien0003sirf

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM,

SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR,

HISTORIA MINOR.

ITEM, EJUSDEM

ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ.

R. 5016

EDITED
BY
SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., F.R.S.,
LATE KEEPER OF THE DEPARTMENT OF MANUSCRIPTS, BRITISH MUSEUM.

VOL. III.

A.D. 1246–1253.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

1869.

0
942.03

~~5018~~

Printed by
Eyre and Spottiswoode, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

Page

PREFACE - - - - - - xi

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM (*cont.*) - 3

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ - - - - - - 153

GLOSSARY - - - - - - 351

INDEX - - - - - - - 371

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS - - - - 553

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

Scope of the present Preface.

HAVING already, in the Preface to the first volume of the present work, sufficiently discussed its literary history, it is now proposed to collect together the scanty biographical notices we possess of the author, and then add such particulars and remarks as may contribute to demonstrate the historical value of his writings.

Name of Matthew Paris, whence derived?

It is uncertain whence Matthew Paris derived his name. In his various works he invariably writes it *Matheus*[1] *Parisiensis*, except in two or three instances, where we find the form *de Parisius*;[2] whilst by his contemporary, John of Wallingford, he is called *Matheus Parisiacensis.*[1] That he was of English origin is evident, as proved by the uniform tone of his language when speaking of foreigners, especially of the French, but whether his surname came to him from his family as a patronymic, or arose from his having been born, resided in, or studied at Paris, is difficult to decide. Leland and Pits are in favour of the former supposition,[2] and it is corroborated by the numerous instances of persons of this name living in England (particularly in Lincolnshire) during the thirteenth century.[3] On the other hand, the probability of his having been some time at Paris is considerably strengthened by the fact of his knowledge of French, evinced not only by his having occasionally written in that language, but also by the frequent introduction and explanation of many French words in his writings.[1] His familiarity also with the localities of Paris,[2] and the interest he takes in its university, are remarkable, yet his silence on the subject, supposing him to have been a student or resident there, is equally so.

---

[1] Underneath his portrait in MS. Reg. 14 C. vii., he wrote his name at first MATHIAS, but afterwards corrected it. See Preface to vol. i. p. xlvii. The printed text of the *Chronica Majora*, p. 846, ed. Wats, has the form *Matthias* three times, but without any authority, since the original MS. (C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 262) has in every case only the initial letter M. The name appears as *Matthias* also in a Chronicle of Ramsey, compiled before 1267, MS. Cott. Otho D. VIII., fol. 214 *b*. Matthew Paris must not be confounded with a *Matthias Parisiensis*, a Bohemian by birth, but who derived his name from having studied at Paris, and wrote a work, "De regulis Veteris et Novi Testamenti." See Lambecii *Comm. de Bibl. Cæs. Vind.*, 1669, lib. ii. p. 805.

[2] MS. C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 1, and MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 1 (but partly cut off by the binder); also on the Map of the World in MS. C. C. C. C. xxvi., p. 284, which, on the later copy in MS. Cott. Nero D. v., fol. 1 *b*, is written *de Parisio*; and once in the text of the *Chron. Maj.* (C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 222, and Nero D. v., fol. 374) as *Matheus Parisius*, where the *de* has been probably omitted by accident. It must be observed that *Parisius* is, in general, indeclinable. A later chronicler, Thomas Wikes, has *Matheus de Parysius*, MS. Cott. Tit. A. XIV., fol. 1.

---

[1] MS. Cott. Julius D. vii., ff. 96, 98.

[2] Leland writes, "Nostratem fuisse, quamvis Parisius dictus sit, mihi quidem constat, nam Parisiorum cognomen olim apud Anglos erat, quemadmodum et nunc, celebre," *Comm. de Scriptt. Brit.*, ii. 269 ; and Pits, "sic cognominatum lego à familia, non à patria, uti et Joannes Paris, fuit enim uterque natione Anglus," *De illustr. Angl. Scriptt.*, p. 337.

[3] Thus we meet with Hugo de Paris, in Lincolnshire, in 1194, *Rot. Cur. Reg.*, i. 130 ; and Petrus de Parisius, of Lincoln, in 1200, *ib.* ii. 253, *Rot. Chart.*, i. 53 ; also Johannes de Parisius, of Lincoln, in 1200–1, *Abbrev. Plac.*, p. 26 ; Robertus de Parisius, who held land in Wrangle, same county, 1201–2, *ib.*, p. 40 ; and Walterus de Paris, about 1200, co. Salop., *Cart. Sloan.*, xxxiii. 3. In 1202, 1203, Magister Reginaldus de Parisius, clerk to the king, held the church of Chesterton, co. Cambr., *Rot. de Oblat.*, p. 189, *Rot. de Liberate*, p. 41. Willelmus de Paris or Parisiensis, co. Oxon., occurs in 1206, 1216, 1217, *Abbr. Plac.*, p. 51, *Rot. litt. pat.*, p. 167, *Rot. litt. claus.*, i. 315 ; Thomas de Parisius, of Lincoln, and Martin his son, 1217, 1225, *Rot. litt. claus.*, i. 297, ii. 28, 31 ; and Willelmus, son of Thomas de Paris, of Lincoln, middle of thirteenth century, *Harl. Chart.*, 58 B. 45. In 1242 the heirship of Petrus de Paris, of Lincoln, is claimed against Willelmus de Paris, *Abbr. Plac.*, p. 120. We meet with Johannes de Paris and Alicia his wife, in 1252, *Excerpt. e Rot. Fin.*, ii. 131 ; Willelmus de Parys, co. Oxon., 1255–6, *Inq. p. mort.*, i. 15, 46, *Exc. e Rot. Fin.*, ii. 222, 226 ; and Robertus Paris and Susanna his wife, co. Leic., 1260, *ib.*, ii. 342. There are many others of later date, among whom may be noticed Johannes, son and heir of Johannes de Parysius, of Lincoln, late Hen. III., *Harl. Chart.*, 57 A. 25 ; Willelmus de Parys, miles, dominus de Martone, juxta Horncastre, co. Linc., at the close of Hen. III.'s reign, *Cott. Chart.* xxviii. 46 ; Petrus de Parys and Willelmus de Parys, of Glentworth, co. Linc., 1280–1, *Plac. de quo War.*, p. 425 ; and Willelmus de Parys, archdeacon of St. Alban's, 1290, *Gest. Abbat.*, ii. 7. In the Chetham MS. of the

Date of his assuming the monastic habit.

Leaving this question, therefore, as doubtful, the earliest positive notice we find of Matthew Paris is a note in his own handwriting, recording his having assumed the monastic habit at St. Alban's on the 21st January 1217. His words are, "Hoc anno ego frater Matheus Parisiensis habitum suscepi religionis, die sanctæ Agnetis."[3] He does not tell us whether he assumed the habit as a novice, or on making his profession, nor is any information given as to his age at that time. We are told, however, by him in another

---

Flores Historiarum, fol. 230, is noticed the death of Richard, (son of Richard, king of the Romans,) 5 Aug. 1261, at Winchelsea, who was buried at Cologne, "cognominatus *de Parys*, eo quod Parisius natus erat."—The local knowledge of the city of Leicester shown by our author, would seem to point out his connexion with that locality. See *Hist. Angl.*, i. 378.

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 240, 248, 360, 386, ii. 59; *Chron. Maj.*, pp. 847, 829, 870. French documents are also introduced in 1247, *ibid.*, p. 719, and 1249, *Additament.*, p. 178. With such evidence before us, it is amusing to read the following passage in Whitelocke's "Notes uppon the King's writ for choosing Members of Parliament," 1766, p. 62: "There are but few acts of the time of Henry the Third in the French language, although it prevailed so much in ordinary life, that Matthew Paris, a contemporary, writes *that he was in danger of losing his livelihood, because he did not understand it!*" Yet this unaccountable assertion is gravely repeated by Luders, in his "Essay on the use of the French language in our ancient laws," [1807] p. 62.

[2] See the account of the quarrel at St. Geneviève, in 1146, between the *Marguilliers* and the pope's clerks, *Hist. Angl.*, i. 278; the grant of a house to the Jacobite preachers in 1198, *ibid.*, ii. 66; the tumult at St. Marcel in 1229, *ibid.*, ii. 308; and the narrative of the visit of Henry III. to Paris in 1254, *Chron. Maj.*, pp. 899, 900.

[3] MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 165 *b*.

Age of admission to St. Alban's.

place,[1] that abbat Warin of St. Alban's (A.D. 1183–1195) had made a regulation that when a novice received the tonsure he should at the same time assume the monastic habit, and not defer doing so till his profession was made; and this rule, in all probability, remained in force. The age of a novice, on admission, seems to have varied in different monasteries. At the Benedictine monastery of St. Augustine's, Canterbury, the monks obtained a papal bull in 1180, not to admit under the age of fifteen,[2] and this may have been in general the practice at St. Alban's, until by the revision of the statutes of the Benedictine Order in 1238 (by pope Gregory IX.), the age of probation was fixed at nineteen, and of profession at twenty years of age.[3] Under the rule of abbat Robert (in 1158), a scholar of Montreuil "ætate juvenis," took the habit (*habitum religionis suscepit*), at St. Alban's, and remained three years afterwards "in disciplina novitiali;"[4] but a subsequent abbat, John de Cella (A.D. 1195–1214), on being applied to by one of the monks to admit his nephew, then a boy at school, refused to do so, "quia impubes erat, nec adhuc tantæ ætatis ut esset idoneus."[5] If Matthew Paris was received as a novice in 1217 (as appears probable), it is difficult to reconcile the fact with his mention of occurrences in the monastery some years previously. Thus, he tells us he recollected the wonderful memory of abbat John de Cella,[6] in reference to the Psalter, so that he

His notice of previous occurrences connected with the abbey.

---

[1] *De Gest. Abbatum*, i. 214, ed. Riley.

[2] *Hist. Monast. S. Aug. Cant.*, p. 427, ed. Hardwicke.

[3] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 475. Cf. *Additament.*, pp. 174, 228.

[4] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 180.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 223. Yet the abbat of Peterborough made no difficulty of admitting the boy at once.

[6] This is the abbat who was previously prior of Wallingford, and hence misnamed *John of Wallingford* by Gale, whose blunder in confounding him with the real person of that name (who compiled the Chronicles in MS. Cott. Julius D. VII. near half a century later) has since been a constant source of error. The abbat John de Cella studied at Paris, and is praised as a grammarian, a poet, and a physician, but not as an historian. See *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 217.

could repeat the whole of it backwards, verse by verse.[1] He also enters under the year 1213 the singular story of king John's mission to Mohammed Al Nassir, the Emir Al-Mumenin, as related in his hearing by Robert of London, the secular custos of St. Alban's, to certain inmates of the abbey.[2] But there is some confusion in the chronology here, for if the mission took place at all, it must have been after the landing of Mohammed in Spain in 1210, and previous to the battle of Navas de Tolosa, fought in July 1212. Now, as the custody of the abbey was granted by king John to Robert of London and Matthew Mantell, sheriff of Hertfordshire, on 29th March 1208,[3] he could not, as asserted by Paris, have been made custodian in reward for his services in this mission, nor could the event have taken place after the death of Geoffrey Fitz-Peter, the justiciary, in October 1213, as stated by him. It will be, however, reasonable to conclude from the above that Matthew Paris was attached to the abbey several years before he assumed the monastic habit, perhaps as a scholar, or in some other capacity.

Other events referred to, of earlier date.

But there are some events of still earlier date referred to by Paris, which cause perplexity. Under the year 1192 he narrates a story on the authority of Ranulph Besace, physician of king Richard, who became afterwards canon of St. Paul's;[1] and in 1194 he specifies the presents sent by abbat Warin to Richard, after his return from captivity, from the information given to him by Geoffrey Hackesalt, the abbat's messenger.[2] Again, under 1195, in reference to the Apologue of Vitalis the Venetian, related by Richard,[3] he makes the following note, "Apologus Ricardi regis, quam abbati Sancti Albani Guarino, et *ipse nobis enarravit.*"[4] In the first of these instances Paris probably heard the story from Besace many years after the event,[5] and this may have been the case also with Geoffrey Hackesalt, but with regard to king Richard's Apologue, if we are to interpret the words literally, Paris must have heard it before the death of abbat Warin, which took place in April 1195.[6] This would throw back the birth of Matthew Paris at least to the year 1185, and make him seventy-four at his death in 1259—no very extraordinary age—but the difficulty of reconciling this with the date of his taking the monastic habit in 1217 is so great, that it will be preferable to understand the words "nobis enarravit" as applying to the monks of the abbey in general, or else as writing in the name of Wendover, to whose text the whole story is an addition. On the whole, therefore, it will be safer to fix the birth of our historian about the year 1200, or a few years earlier, and this will make him upwards of sixty at his decease, which is well borne out by the appearance of his portrait drawn at the time.[7]

---

[1] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 232.

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 243, and thence copied by the chroniclers, John of Oxnede, John of Tinmouth, the author of the Scalachronica, and Thomas Rudborne; and inserted by Walsingham in the text of the *Gesta Abbatum*, i. 236. The truth of this story has been questioned, but it is credited by Tyrrell, Sharon Turner, Milman, and Lingard. It was certainly not invented by Matthew Paris, and some of the persons who heard the story were probably living at the time when he wrote it down. The most curious feature of it is the degraded character given of John by his own confidential clerk! Robert told the Emir that the king was "quinquagenarius" in age. If this is to be accepted strictly, it would fix the date of the occurrence to 1206, since John was born in 1166; but at this time Mohammed was at Fez or Morocco.

[3] *Rot. litt. pat.*, p. 81. Robert of London had previously (23 Jan.) been appointed custos of Christ Church, Canterbury, and the archiepiscopal manors, *ib.*

Probable date of the birth of Matthew Paris.

The information we possess of a personal character, after Matthew Paris became an inmate of St. Alban's, is gleaned wholly from incidental notices in his own writings, and it will be best to take them in order of time.

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 37; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 813.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 47. In the *Chr. Maj.*, p. 175, the presents are mentioned more briefly.

[3] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 129.

[4] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 55, and compare "nobis narravit," ii. 266.

[5] The compiler of the Cecil MS. informs us that Besace lived more than sixty years afterwards, and this is confirmed by the notices found of him as canon in 1213, 1217, and 1243. See Newcourt's *Repertorium*, 1708, i. 103, 187.

[6] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 217.

[7] See Preface to vol. i. p. lii.

He was present at the translation of St. Thomas at Canterbury, 1220,

To judge from the language employed, he was present in 1220 at the ceremonial of the translation of the body of St. Thomas at Canterbury. In Wendover and the *Chronica Majora* the occurrence is described only in general terms,[1] but in the *Historia Anglorum* we learn that the artists, Walter of Colchester, sacrist of St. Alban's, and Elyas of Derham, canon of Salisbury, were there, by whose admirable skill and contrivance the shrine of gold and gems was fashioned, and the appliances for raising the saint's remains from the crypt carried out. The remarks seem those of an eye-witness.[2] Paris must have been again at Canterbury a few years later, since he notices having seen there four great sapphires offered at the tomb of St. Thomas by John de Brienne, king of Jerusalem.[3]

and at the visit of the Armenian archbishop to St. Alban's, 1228.

In 1228 occurred the visit of the archbishop of Armenia and his suite to the abbey of St. Alban's, of which Wendover has left us an account.[4] He tells us that the replies of the archbishop to the questions addressed to him respecting Joseph Cartaphilus (the Wandering Jew [5]) and the ark of Noah were interpreted in French by a knight of his household, and in the *Chronica Majora* Paris adds, that he was of Antioch, and known to a servant of the abbat.[1] There is every reason to infer that Paris was present at this conversation, and that he refers modestly to himself when he states that a question was asked of the archbishop "ab *uno* qui fuit ei assidens collateralis, *monacho*," touching the observance of the feast of the Conception in the East.[2]

---

[1] Wendover, iv. 65; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 310.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 242 (where the name is mis-printed *Durham*). This is a short but fair specimen of the peculiar value of this work, when compared with the Greater Chronicle. The death of Elyas of Derham is noticed in 1245 in the latter, p. 658.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 260.

[4] Wend., iv. 176.

[5] It is interesting to note, that in the nearly contemporary rhyming Chronicle of Philip Mouskes, (afterwards bishop of Tournay,) we find a similar account of the Wandering Jew, derived from the same Armenian prelate, who, after visiting the shrine of St. Thomas at Canterbury, went to Cologne, to see the reliques of the three kings. See "Curious

Death of abbat William of Trumpington, 1235.

On the 24th February 1235 the death of abbat William of Trumpington took place, who had ruled the abbey of St. Alban's since 1214, and whose merits are highly lauded by our historian.[3] The proceedings consequent on the election of his successor, John of Hertford, are given by him at great length, and the fact is only noticed here in consequence of an extraordinary statement made by the Rev. Peter Newcome, in his History of the abbey, in reference to Matthew Paris, of whom he says, "He came early into the house, and *might have been placed in the abbatic chair when John was elected, had he not declined the honour, through fear that it would involve him in care and trouble, and prevent him from writing his Great History*."[4] The whole of this statement appears to be mere invention, and does not rest on the semblance of any authority.

Unfounded statement in reference to the election of Matth. Paris as abbat.

He attended the nuptials of Henry III. at Westminster, 1236,

In 1236 Paris appears to have accompanied the new abbat to London, to attend the splendid ceremony of the nuptials of Henry III. to Alienor of Provence; and he describes with the zest of one who thoroughly enjoyed

---

Myths of the Middle Ages," by E. Baring Gould, 1866, pp. 10, 23. The story was confirmed by some Armenians who again visited St. Alban's in 1252. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 854.

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 351.

[2] Although French was the ordinary language of persons of rank and the superior clergy at this time, we can hardly suppose that it was used generally by the inmates of a monastery, who would converse either in Latin or English. It is not unlikely, therefore, that Matthew Paris may have assisted in the interpretation of the archbishop's replies to the monks.

[3] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 300.

[4] *Hist. of the Abbey of St. Alban's*, 1795, p. 172.

it, the pompous procession of the citizens of London, and the rest of the pageantry.[1] At the same time he notices the overflow of the Thames to such an extent, that the palace at Westminster was flooded, so that people were rowed in boats into the Hall.[2] It was then, also, probably his inquisitive eye was attracted to the remains of the original foundations of the Hall, as planned by William Rufus, which, he informs us, extended from the Thames to the public highway.[3]

and again at the feast of St. Edward the Confessor, 1247.

In October 1247 Matthew Paris was again at Westminster, to witness the solemn celebration of the feast of St. Edward the Confessor, on which occasion the king walked on foot from St. Paul's to the abbey, carrying as an offering a vase containing a portion of the blood of Christ.[4] The bishop of Norwich preached on the occasion, and as some of the clergy expressed doubts of the genuineness of the relique, the bishop of Lincoln (Grosseteste) undertook to convince them, and his discourse was noted down at the time by the attentive historian.[5] The king was seated on his throne, attired in royal robes, and recognizing Paris, caused him to sit on the middle step between the throne and the floor, and expressly directed him to write an account of the proceedings. As a proof of his satisfaction, he afterwards invited Paris and his three companions to dinner.[6]

Origin of his mission to Norway.

About two years or less previous to this date the services of Matthew Paris had been sought in an affair which resulted in his mission to Norway—the most important event in his otherwise tranquil and unchequered life. The origin of this business may be gathered from his own narrative, and corroborated by the notices found in the Scandinavian Annals. The Benedictine monastery of Holm in Norway had been founded by king Cnut about the year 1030,[1] and was situated on an island subsequently named Munkholm or Niderholm, in the diocese of Nidaros (Drontheim). It was the most ancient foundation of the kind in Norway, and at the head of all the other religious houses there,[2] but by the ill-government of the abbat Rita-Biorn had been greatly impoverished, and the abbat at length excommunicated by archbishop Sigurd.[3] Instead, however, of submitting to the sentence, he went off furtively to Rome in the year 1240, accompanied by the sacrist, and there, by means of the abbey seal (brought away surreptitiously), he contrived to borrow the sum of 500 marks from the Lombard usurers, for which the possessions of the monastery were placed in pledge.[4] Having by this means gained his suit against the archbishop, he returned in 1244 to Norway, but on his way back to Holm he died at the abbey of St. Alban, in Seljoe, near Stadtland, in the district of Nordfiord.[5] During the abbat's absence affairs fell into much greater disorder at Holm, and the monastery was taken by the archbishop into his own hands, so that, after an ineffectual journey to Rome by the prior Clement, a new abbat was elected by the monks, and the further sum of 300 marks having been collected, the prior was again despatched to England with letters of king Hacon addressed to Matthew Paris,[1] requesting him to undertake the office of freeing the monastery of Holm from the claims of the usurers in London, into whose hands the bonds given by Rita-Biorn had passed.[2] This must have taken place in 1245, or, at latest, in 1246. The good monk therefore having succeeded in effecting the object of this application, the prior returned home; but although the temporal affairs of Holm were amended, their spiritual position was worse, and the monks were threatened with expulsion by the archbishop, as ignorant and void of discipline. Just at this juncture it was (in June 1247) that the papal legate William, bishop of Sabina, landed at Bergen, for the purpose of crowning Hacon;[3] and the ceremony having taken place on St. Olaf's festival[4] (29th July), the monks of Holm appealed to him for protection. He advised them to send to the pope without delay, and ask for a visitor to reform the rule of their Order.[1] The abbat accordingly, with one of the monks, proceeded to the papal court at Lyons, and having been favourably received by Innocent IV., they made choice of Matthew Paris as visitor, not only on account of their previous experience of his prudence and integrity, but also from his being on the most friendly footing with their sovereign.[2] The pope at once acceded to their wishes, and gave them a mandate addressed to the abbat of St. Alban's, dated 27 November 1247, directing him to send brother Matthew for that purpose to Norway.[3] In obedience to this mandate Paris, "licet invitus," embarked in the following summer (from Lynn probably, or Yarmouth), and arrived at Bergen at the time[4] a fearful conflagration was raging in the city, which destroyed the whole of it, with the exception of the king's palace and four religious houses.[5] On the

---

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 420.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 421. A similar occurrence took place in 1242, *ibid.*, p. 596; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 467.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 165. It is to Westminster Hall, and not to the Tower, that Malmesbury alludes, vol. ii. p. 504, ed. Hardy.

[4] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 735; *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 29, where a drawing of the vase is given; *Abbr. Chron.*, iii. 302.

[5] *Additament.*, p. 161 [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 91].

[6] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 736.

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 41; *Abbr. Chron.*, iii. 163. See Suhm's note in *Scriptt. rerum Danicarum*, tom. iv. p. 415. Hafn., 1776.

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756; *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 41. The whole island on which the monastery stood belonged to the monks, *ibid.* Its position was in the bay opposite the city of Drontheim (the ancient capital of Norway), from which it lay distant about a mile and half. The monastery was in later times converted into a state fortress. See "Bescrivelse over kongeriget Norge, af Lars H. Bing," 8°, Kiob., 1796, pp. 433–436; and Dr. Edward Clarke's account in 1819, *ap.* Forester's Norway, p. 274.

[3] Rita-Biorn succeeded as abbat in 1232, *Ann. Isl.*, iii. 84. See the note in *Diplomatarium Islandicum*, 1862, pp. 525–531.

[4] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 755.

[5] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756. This abbey is mentioned also by Matthew Paris in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 41. For an account of it, see *Scriptt. rer. Dan.*, iv. 6, 13, 418. The French translator of Paris has made a great mistake in placing Seljoe at Zell, one of the Shetland islands, and Holm opposite to it! tom. vi. p. 440.

---

[1] How Hacon was first brought into communication with Paris is not clear, except from the report of his abilities. The writer of the note in *Diplomat. Island.*, p. 53, says that Paris had been previously in Norway on some commercial business, and was on that account known to the king, but no evidence of this exists. There certainly seems to have been some communication between the king and his abbey, for on 15 July, 1238, Richard of St. Alban's received letters of protection as the king's "nuncius." *Fœdera*, i. 236.

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756. See also Lange, "De Norske Klosters Historie," 1867, p. 325.

[3] The date of the legate's arrival is assigned by Sturla Thordson to 1246, but this is erroneous, since the pope's brief for the coronation is dated as late as 3 Nov. 1246 (*Diplomat. Norweg.*, p. 26), and the landing of the legate in England *en route* is noticed by Matthew Paris about Easter, 1247 (*Chr. Maj.*, p. 731). He proceeded to Lynn, where he remained nearly three months before he sailed for Bergen. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 23; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 300.

[4] *Saga Hákonar Konungs*, Hafn., 1810, cap. 260; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 740.

Matth. Paris is chosen visitor of the Benedictine Order in Norway.

His arrival at Bergen, 1248.

---

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756; *Abbr.Chron.*, iii. 300.

[2] They say, "Petimus igitur de domo illa [S. Albani] quendam monachum, Matheum nomine, nobis reformatorem et instructorem; cujus prudentiam experti sumus et fidelitatem; præterea familiarissimus regi nostro et amicissimus." *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756.

[3] This mandate is printed in *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756, and in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 40; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 304. To the copy entered in the *Liber Additamentorum* [Nero D. I., fol. 92 *b*] is prefixed the following rubric by Paris: "*Auctenticum papale, quo dominus Matheus Parisiensis, qui et scripsit hæc, destinatus est et constitutus, licet invitus, reformator Ordinis Sancti Benedicti, et visitator Nigrorum abbatum et monachorum eorumdem in regno Norwagiæ.*"

[4] The exact day is uncertain. Some copies of Hacon's Saga say a fortnight after St. John's day [24th June], which would fix it to 8th July; whilst others, with Torfæus, say fourteen days previous, namely, 10th June. Munch, in his "Norske Folks Historie," 1858, vol. iv. p. 100, gives the date as 4th July.

[5] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 753; *Saga Hákonar Konungs*, cap. 260. The king was on the spot, and is said to have endeavoured to arrest the progress of the flames, by causing large cauldrons to be filled with sea-water. This is curious, as it would imply the absence of springs or wells. In the *Diplomatarium Norwegicum*, p. 21, 8°, 1849, edited by Lange and Unger, there is a brief of pope Gregory IX., addressed to archbishop Sigurd of Nideros (Drontheim), stating that as the infants in his country "propter aquæ penuriam" were accustomed

following day a terrific thunderstorm took place, and the ship was struck by lightning on board of which Paris had arrived, the mast was shivered in pieces, one man killed, and the rest of the crew seriously injured. Matthew Paris himself escaped only by having been occupied in saying a mass for his safe arrival in a church near the shore.[1] Previous to his leaving England, the king of France—Louis IX., then preparing for his crusade—wrote to him, to ask him to convey letters to king Hacon,[2] which he did, and delivered them at Bergen, for which service he received the king's thanks, accompanied by some valuable presents.[3] After this he proceeded to Holm, and successfully accomplished in that monastery the object of his mission. He gives us no details of his journey, but the difficulties of the land route (a distance of above 400 miles) are so great, even at a recent period,[4] that it is probable he went by sea in one of the coasting *jagts* of the country, used for commerce, and returned in the same manner to Bergen.[5]

He delivers letters to king Hacon from Louis IX.,

and proceeds to Holm.

---

to be baptized in beer (*cervisia*), contrary to the command of the Gospel, he is informed that such baptism in future is to be considered of no avail (*non debent reportari rite baptizati, qui cervisia baptizantur*).

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 753. The king supplied the ship with a new mast, "pro amore ipsius, qui in ipsa navi fuerat."

[2] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 304. The Duc de Luynes, in his Introduction to the French translation of Matthew Paris, p. li, asserts that he was at this time with Louis at St. Germain-en-Laye, but this is evidently an error, as proved by the passage referred to above. For these letters of Louis, see *Chr. Maj.*, p. 741, and *Abbr. Chr.*, p. 304. In the latter the letters patent are dated incorrectly 1247, instead of 1248.

[3] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 741.

[4] See Forester's Norway, pp. 25, 178, 242.

[5] In the *Liber Benefactorum*, compiled by Walsingham in 1380 (MS. Cott. Nero D. VII., fol. 50 *b*), the mission of Matthew Paris to Norway is thus mentioned: "Matheus Parisiensis, religiosus monachus, incomparabilis cronographus et pictor peroptimus, deputatus est per dompnum papam Innocentium ad regendum Holmense monasterium in Norwegia, spectans ad regimen archipræsulis Nidrosiensis, cujus religio emarcuerat, fama viluerat, bona dissipata fuerant, ipsius loci desidia monachorum. Cujus religionem reflorere fecit, famam sua

His return to England, 1249.

The return of Matthew Paris to England could scarcely have taken place before 1249, and the next matter of a personal nature occurs in the following year, when he tells us he remonstrated boldly with king Henry III. for having made a grant of free-warren contrary to the charters of the abbey of St. Alban's.[1] The remonstrance itself, however, was probably made on the occasion of the king's visit to the abbey at Easter, 1251. Not long after this, namely, in the following July, Paris was at Winchester with the king (who had gone there to meet his half-brother the bishop elect), and heard the account of the proceedings of the Pastoureaux in France related by a monk of Sherborne, all which he diligently noted down.[2] In November also of the same year he appears to have been present at the dedication of the church of Hayles, in Gloucestershire, on the foundation of which house earl Richard of Cornwall had expended above 10,000 marks, as he himself informed our historian.[3]

He remonstrates with the king, on account of a grant of free-warren.

Goes to Winchester, July 1251.

Probably at the dedication of the church of Hayles, Nov. 1251,

and at the marriage of Alexander II. at York, Christmas, 1251-2.

At Christmas, 1251–2, the marriage of the king's daughter to Alexander II. of Scotland was celebrated with great magnificence at York, and Paris, from the details he gives, would seem to have been a spectator.[4] This is confirmed by a passage on another occasion, in which he speaks of a personal conference held by him with the Jew Aaron, who lived at York.[5]

Favour shown him by the king, 1257.

In March 1257 the king came again on a visit to St. Alban's, and remained there a week, during which

---

sanctitate extulit, possessiones prudenter auxit, adeo ut nulli monasterio regionis illius inferior putaretur." This passage is not in the *Liber de Benefactoribus*, printed at the end of Trokelowe by Mr. Riley.

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 783; *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 62. The king is said to have defended himself by citing the example of the Pope, but afterwards added, "Well, well, we will consider about it." But the promise came to nothing!

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 820, 825; Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 112.

[3] *Ibid.*, p. 827; *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 115; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 311.

[4] *Ibid.*, p. 829.

[5] *Ibid.*, p. 785. "Aaron nomine, de Eboraco oriundus, et *in eadem civitate continuans mansionem.*"

time he particularly distinguished the historian by having him at his table and in his chamber, where he communicated to him in a familiar manner his knowledge of various historical matters, such as the names of the electors of Germany, the sovereigns of England who had been canonized, and the titles of the English baronies, which the king's memory enabled him to enumerate to the number of 250 ; a creditable specimen of royal acquirements, which but few of his successors in the two following centuries could have surpassed.[1] Shortly afterwards a deputation of Masters of Arts came from Oxford to St. Alban's to complain to the king of the oppression of the bishop of Lincoln, and Paris took the opportunity of privately beseeching the king to protect the university, which he promised to do. This is the latest mention made of himself by the historian.

His declining health.

For some years previous to this—to judge from the unequal and altered character of the handwriting in his original manuscripts—the infirmities of age or a declining state of health had gradually affected him, so that he was obliged at intervals to make use of the friendly aid of a fellow-monk to write the concluding portions of his works. This aid so lent to him appears in the *Historia Anglorum* from the close of the year 1252 to the end of 1253 (where it terminates); in the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum* for the years 1253, 1254, 1255, and in the *Chronica Majora* for the years 1258 and 1259.

His death, 1259.

The death of the historian must have taken place shortly after May 1259,[2] as we are informed by the same fellow-monk who lent the aid of his pen, and drew the portrait of Matthew Paris reclining on his couch after his eyes had closed for ever.[3] Besides this portrait we have another from his own hand, drawn some nine years previously, and both exhibit features of an ordinary cast, but indicative of honesty and intelligence.[1]

---

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 945.

[2] It is scarcely worth while to notice the careless mistake of Dr. Giles, the English translator of Matthew Paris, who places his death in 1273; but errors like these, in books intended for popular reading, are sure to be repeated.

[3] MS. Reg. 14 C. vii., fol. 218 *b*.

No record of the place of his interment.

Tradition has preserved no trace of the spot where the remains of Matthew Paris were deposited. In the previous century abbat Warin had directed that the bodies of deceased monks, hitherto laid under the turf of mother earth, should in future be placed in stone coffins,[2] but none now exist. In the time also of abbat Whethamstede (about A.D. 1400) the gravestones in the cemetery were cleaned, and an account written of those which had names inscribed on them.[3] No mention, however, is found of the historians of St. Alban's, although many others, with less claim to remembrance, are recorded. In this respect, indeed, Paris fared no worse than Malmesbury, whose tomb, when inquired for by Leland, was not only ignored by the monks, but the very name of the chronicler was unknown, except to one or two individuals ![4]

---

[1] The engraved portrait prefixed to Wats's edition, 1640, is taken from the above, but the artist has taken great liberty with the original. There is a third portrait, very coarsely executed, and of no authority, drawn by Alan Strayler, the illuminator of the *Liber Benefactorum*, in MS. Cott. Nero D. VII., fol. 50 *b*. Paris was well intitled to a place among the benefactors of his abbey. His gifts, as recorded by Walsingham in the MS. just referred to, consisted of two silver cups; a gold "monile," to which was suspended a fragment of the Cross; and a plain silver-gilt cup for the refectory; but besides these, Paris himself, at the end of his *Libellus de Anulis et Gemmis et Pallis* (MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 146 *b*), mentions his having bestowed, at various times, four silken cloths, to hang over the great beam on which the apostles and prophets were carved; a cloth of baldekin, embroidered with eagles, out of which a choral cope was made, fringed with gold; the cloth was given to him by queen Alienor, and the fringe by king Hacon of Norway; a silk cloth to make a chasuble, alb, stole, and maniple, bound with gold fringe, of the gift of king Henry III.; and another red silk striped cloth, with a blue orbicular border, given him by the abbat of Ramsey.

[2] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 198.

[3] This curious record is preserved in MS. Harl. 1775, and portions of it have been very ignorantly translated by Newcome, in his History of the Abbey.

[4] *Comment. de Scriptt. Brit.*, i. 196.

Continuation of Wendover by Matthew Paris.

It is now time to speak of the literary labours of Matthew Paris. On the death of Roger of Wendover, in May 1236, he was, no doubt, directed by the abbat John of Hertford (elected only the year previous) to continue and enlarge his historical work, a task for which he had probably been previously prepared. As already remarked, it is uncertain at what time Wendover began to compile his *Flores Historiarum*, but there are good grounds for believing that it was not until after his deposition from Belvoir and return to St. Alban's, about the year 1219.[1] At all events, the text of the year 1179 could not have been written by him till after 1215, from the reference made in it to the council held in the latter year.[2] It is obvious, moreover, that the chief authorities used by Wendover in the compilation of his Chronicle, namely, Bede, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Sigebert, Florence of Worcester, Simeon of Durham, Malmesbury, Huntingdon, Robert de Monte, William of Tyre, Diceto, Benedictus Abbas, Hoveden,[3] and Coggeshale, were not likely to be found in the library of a small cell like Belvoir, whereas at St. Alban's they were ready to his hands.

Did Paris assist him previously?

Whether brother Matthew gave him any assistance in his work may admit of question, but it certainly appears highly probable. At times the style of Wendover's text is very similar to that of Paris, and this appears the more as we approach its termination. This is particularly the case in the three chapters relative to Peter de Rivaux and others in 1234, which it is difficult to believe were not written by Paris;[4] and in the original manuscript of the *Chronica Majora* these chapters are marked by him "*Offendiculum,*" as likely to give offence. However this may be, in continuing and making additions to Wendover's work, Matthew Paris, according to the usual practice of monastic writers, adopted it as his own,[1] yet did not scruple occasionally to express opinions which differed widely from those of his predecessor.[2]

---

[1] See Preface to vol. i. p. xiv.

[2] Wendover, ii. 402, ed. Coxe.

[3] The assertion of Mr. Stubbs (Pref. to *Chronica Rog. de Hoveden*, p. lxxii), that Hoveden was unknown to Wendover and Paris, appears to be a mistake, as will be evident to any one on comparing the text of Hoveden from 1196 to 1201 with Wendover.

[4] Wend. iv. 311–314. It is remarkable that in the Cotton MS. Nero D. v., the conclusion of Wendover's work is noted *just before these chapters.*

His additions to Wendover.

Previous to the Conquest these additions are but few in number, and it is only about the year 1100 that they become more frequent and important. How admirably Paris was qualified for the task it is needless to point out, and the eulogium bestowed on him by the earlier continuator of his work *De Gestis Abbatum* (in all probability, Rishanger), will best prove the estimation in which he was held by those who followed in his footsteps.[3]

---

[1] Passages in which the *first person* (as used by Wendover) is retained by Paris, occur in the *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 98, 136, 152, 173. In 1236 he refers back to the year 620 for an account of Mahomet as if a part of his own work, *ibid.*, p. 423.

[2] An instance of this will be found in the account of the tumult at London in 1196, headed by William Fitz-Osbert, *alias* with the Beard. This man is represented by Wendover (copying Diceto) as a murderer and revolutionist; whilst, according to Paris, he suffered as a martyr, in defending the rights of the poor. Cf. Wend. iii. 94, and *Chr. Maj.*, p. 181; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 57.

[3] "Eodem quoque tempore floruit et obiit dominus Matheus Parisiensis, monachus ecclesiæ Beati Albani, vir quidem eloquens et famosus, innumeris virtutibus plenus, *historiographus et cronographus magnificus,* dictator egregius, corde frequenter revolvens 'Osiositas inimica est animæ;' quem quidem, ubi nunquam fuerat præsentia cognitum, partibus remotis fama reddiderat divulgata commendatum. Hic vero, a multis retroactis temporibus usque ad finem vitæ suæ Cronica diligenter colligens, gesta magnatum tam secularium quam ecclesiasticorum, necnon casus et eventus varios et mirabiles, in scriptis plenarie redegit, mirabilemque ad posterorum notitiam præteritorum reliquit certificationem." MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV., fol. 156 *b*. Walsingham, also, in his later continuation of the same work, after mentioning Wendover, writes, "Ex post Matheus Parisiensis claruit, qui Rogeri prædicti Cronicas necessarie ampliavit. . . . . . . cujus laudes si omnino vellem perstringere, opus attemptarem interminabile," *ibid.*, fol. 332 *b*.

The *Chronica Majora.*

It was no doubt the original intention of Matthew Paris to finish the *Chronica Majora* at the end of the year 1250, and he appears to have then suspended his labour on it for a few years;[1] but he subsequently resumed it, and added the years from 1251 to 1259 inclusive. To the same period of 1250 he had also at first brought down the *Gesta Abbatum*[2] (afterwards continued to 1255), and also the *Liber Additamentorum* or *Supplementorum*, containing copies of documents illustrative of the Greater Chronicle.[3] But during the intervals of cessation from his larger work Paris employed himself with unwearied industry in the compilation or supervision of others. He had previously superintended an abridgment of the *Chronica Majora* under the original title of *Flores Historiarum*,[4] and wrote the portion between 1241 and 1249 with his own hand; and immediately following on the Greater Chronicle, he commenced in 1250 the *Historia Anglorum*,[5] which he brought down to 1253. Two years afterwards he compiled, in addition, a third but briefer work, which he intitled *Abbreviatio Chronicorum* (printed in the present volume), from A.D. 1100 to 1255. Besides these laborious undertakings, he directed a transcript of the second portion of the *Chronica Majora*, from the year 1189 to 1250[6] (to which he added a few notes and drawings), and wrote and illustrated the smaller pieces contained in the MSS. at Cam-

Other historical works of Paris.

---

[1] It is referred to as ending in 1250 by John of Wallingford and John of Oxnede, both of whom abridged the *Chronica Majora*, and afterwards availed themselves of the continuation to 1259.

[2] *Vitæ Offarum*, p. 31, ed. Wats.

[3] These documents extend from 1235 to 1250 (continued to 1253). Only two are earlier, of the years 1215 and 1219. The work appears to have been left unfinished, and after the death of Paris some later pieces were added, in 1259 and 1260. See Preface to vol. i. p. xxiii, *n*.

[4] This is the work so mischievously ascribed to "Matthew of Westminster." See Preface, vol. i. pp. xxi–xxiii. After the decease of Paris, the text of his *Abbreviatio Chronicorum*, from 1250 to 1255, was transcribed literally into it.

[5] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 9.

[6] MS. Cott. Nero D. v.

bridge, C. C. C. C. xxvi. and xvi., and MS. Cott. Nero D. I. There is, probably, no other instance on record of an historian of this or a later period having left so large a mass of materials (the greater part in his own handwriting), or which have been so fortunately preserved.

The *Historia Anglorum.*

The *Historia Anglorum* was intended, as stated by the author, to illustrate chiefly the state of English affairs[1] from the period of the Conquest;[2] and in abridging the larger work he omits nearly everything relating to foreign events (with the exception of the Crusade, for which he specially pleads[3]), as also the religious legends given by Wendover, and various letters and lengthy documents. But although the *Chronica Majora* are more diffuse, the *Historia Anglorum*, on the other hand, abounds more in details, and adds a large amount of personal anecdote, as well as many minute facts and circumstances, which would be sought for in vain elsewhere, and which throw so much light on contemporary usages and the state of society. In this respect there is a great resemblance between Matthew Paris and Ordericus Vitalis,[4] who wrote a century earlier. Both were monks of the same Order; their studies and discipline were alike, with the same turn of mind; both were diligent collectors of information; both were fond of gossip and the marvellous, particularly when brought from distant countries; and both were special retailers of anecdote, which occasionally might be liable to the charge of exaggeration.

Authorities followed by Matthew Paris.

The authorities followed by Matthew Paris, exclusive of Wendover, are chiefly the same as those of his predecessor,[1] but, in addition, he had access to numerous contemporary documents,[2] of which he preserved copies; whilst the frequency of the royal visits to St. Alban's, as well as the constant resort there of pilgrims from the East, papal agents, and others, largely contributed to his stores of information. He refers also to several middle-age writers, namely, the Sentences of Peter Lombard,[3] the Latin translation of Aristotle "De Meteoribus,"[4] the *Nova Poetria* of Geoffrey de Vinesauf,[5] the *Cosmographia* of Bernardus Silvester,[6] and others, which serve to show the extent of his reading. His classical quotations are on a par with those of other writers of the thirteenth and previous centuries, and comprise Ovid, Horace, Claudian, Lucan, Statius, Juvenal, Seneca, and Æsop.[7]

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 342.

[2] It commences really in the year 1067, but has a *resumé* prefixed of the events which led to the Norman invasion.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 79. He follows in this respect the example set him by Ordericus Vitalis, Malmesbury, Huntingdon, and Wendover.

[4] See the excellent "Notice sur Orderic Vital, par L. Delisle," at the end of Prevost's edition of that writer, 1838–1855.

His friends and acquaintances.

But apart from these written authorities, Matthew Paris had the advantage of a large circle of friends and acquaintances among the higher ranks of the clergy and laity, from whom he received valuable oral information.

---

[1] The old Royal MS. 13 D. v. contains copies of Geoffrey of Monmouth, Gildas [Nennius], Malmesbury, and Ailred of Rivaux, with rubrics and notes in the hand of Paris. A copy of Diceto, read by him, is also in MS. Reg. 13 E. vi. See Preface to vol. i. p. x, *n.* In reference to the succession of Urban III. in 1185, he adds, "secundum quandam Historiam," *Chr. Maj.*, p. 143; and again, in 1204, respecting the foundation of Beaulieu abbey, *ib.*, p. 211, the Cotton MS. Nero D. v. adds, "secundum unum Ystoriographum," which proves, as Wats remarks, that Paris consulted various authorities besides Wendover.

[2] Besides official documents, such as decrees of councils, papal bulls, letters, &c., he refers expressly to the Exchequer Rolls under the years 1110, 1215, and 1216, *Chr. Maj.*, p. 64; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 162, 182; as also to the "Rotuli Vicecomitum," in 1232, *ibid.*, ii. 349, and the "Rotuli clericorum regis," in 1249, *ibid.*, ii. 47.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 402; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 471.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 70.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 215, *n.*, 276; iii. 83.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 392; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 832.

[7] From the repetition of certain quotations in various writers, one might suspect that they were taken from a sort of Manual, and not from the authors themselves. A work of the kind, compiled as early as 1200, actually exists in MS. Cott. Julius A. vii.

His intimacy with king Henry III., as also with earl Richard of Cornwall, the king's brother, has been already noticed.[1] He refers also by name to the following persons:—Ranulph Besace,[2] canon of St. Paul's; Alexander de Suereford,[3] clerk of the Exchequer; Thomas of St. Alban's,[4] physician of the Earl of Arundel, and afterwards prior of Wimundham; John of Basingstoke,[5] archdeacon of Leicester; Alexander de Stavensby,[6] bishop of Chester; Eustace de Fauconberge,[7] bishop of London; Peter des Roches,[8] bishop of Winchester; Hubert de Burgh,[9] earl of Kent; John,[10] bishop of Ardfert; Sir John de Gatesdene,[11] clerk; Richard de Clare,[12] earl of Gloucester; Nicholas de Farnham,[13] bishop of Durham;

---

[1] See *ante*, pp. xv, xxi. In 1241 the king told Paris that he had expended more than 100,000 marks on the shrine of Edward the Confessor, *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 455; and in 1246 he again refers to the king, in relation to the homage of the count of Savoy, *ibid.*, iii. 8.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 37; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 814.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 162, 182. Alexander de Suereford became baron of the Exchequer in 1234. He compiled the Red Book of the Exchequer, and died in 1246. See Foss's "English Judges," ii. 479. In MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 104, is a note by Paris concerning king Offa, "secundum assertionem magistri Alexandri de Suereford, in historiis periti et excercitati."

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 237, 249. He was made prior in 1224, and died in 1248. See *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 275, and MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII., fol. 112 *b*; *Monasticon*, iii. 323.

[5] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 255; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 835. He had studied at Athens, and brought thence to England a system of numeration by figures, which are given by Paris in C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 257. He died in 1252.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 265.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 266.

[8] *Ibid.*, i. 163. Matthew Paris obtained from him, after his return from Palestine in 1231, a copy of a work translated by William of Tyre from the Arabic, relative to the Marvels of the East. The bishop died in 1238.

[9] *Ibid.*, ii. 359, *n.*

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 511; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 690. He died in 1245, after a residence in the abbey of St. Alban's of thirty years, and bequeathed his MSS. to the library, one of which, the "*Versarius*" of William de Montibus, chancellor of Lincoln, I purchased for the British Museum in 1846 (*Addit.*, 16,164). See the "*Liber Benefactorum*," MS. Cott. Nero D. VII., fol. 87.

[11] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 420. He was knighted in 1245.

[12] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 391; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 431.

[13] *Ibid.*, ii. 90; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 206. He became bishop in 1240.

Waleran,[1] bishop of Beirout; the prior of Westacre;[2] Robert Grosseteste,[3] bishop of Lincoln, and Master John Cratchale,[4] his clerk; William Button,[5] bishop of Bath; the bishop of Tortosa;[6] Walter de St. Martin,[7] Friar Preacher; Thomas,[8] monk of Sherborne; Ralph,[9] abbat of Ramsey; Sir Roger de Thurkeby or Thurkelby,[10] justiciary; Richard de Wiz or Wich,[11] bishop of Chichester; Robert Bacun,[12] Friar Preacher; Sir John de Lexintone,[12] justiciary; John,[13] prior of Newburgh; Richard,[14] bishop of Bangor, and others.

His good faith in his writings.

It is obvious that information collected from so many quarters would sometimes be liable to error, or partially coloured by the views of the narrator. Whatever Matthew Paris recorded was doubtless written in good faith, and had he rejected all such stories as are now judged of doubtful authority, we should be greatly the losers. He has been accused, most unjustly, of a censorious disposition, whereas on several occasions he manifests clearly a candid and indulgent spirit.[15] As he himself remarks, "the case of historical writers is hard, for if they tell the truth they provoke men, and if they write what is false they offend God;"[1] and on another occasion, in a graver tone, "Here," he says, at the end of the year 1250, "brother Matthew proposed to end his Chronicles, on account of certain impending dangers. For if things concerning those in power are truly stated and committed to writing, the author incurs their enmity; and if, on the contrary, they are omitted, or favourable statements made instead of unfavourable, the work will be incomplete, and the whole condemned for its flatteries and lies."[2] It is not probable that a man who could utter such sentiments would seek for calumnies as a matter of private gratification; nor, on the other hand, would he be likely to suppress the truth.

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 483; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 633.

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 662.

[3] See Pref. to vol. i. p. xii, *n.*

[4] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 877.

[5] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 42, 305; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756.

[6] *Ibid.*, iii. 50; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 765. Cf. MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 89 *b*.

[7] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 819.

[8] *Ibid.*, p. 825.

[9] MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 146 *b*. He was abbat from 1231 to 1252, *Monast.*, ii. 548.

[10] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 846. He became justiciary in 1241. See Foss's "Judges of England," ii. 483.

[11] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 135; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 864.

[12] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 869. See Foss, ii. 383. He died in 1257.

[13] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 334; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 886. He died in 1256.

[14] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 940.

[15] Thus he says, in reference to the sinister rumours against the emperor Frederic II., "It is the part of a malignant mind to interpret in a bad sense things that are doubtful," *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 303; and again, concerning the motives of Henry III. for taking the Cross, in 1250, "It is the part of a good mind to presume the best in doubtful matters, until proof is given to the contrary, for who can know the thoughts of man but God?" *Chr. Maj.*, p. 774. So also, *ibid.*, p. 335, when speaking of the reports against queen Blanche.

A denouncer of papal and regal oppression.

It is, however, as a strenuous denouncer of the oppressions suffered from papal and regal exactions by his monastery, by the English clergy, and by the people at large, that we find Matthew Paris always in the foreground,[3] and his energetic and uncompromising language expresses the feelings, not only of himself as an individual, but of the religious community of which he was a member.[4] The scandalous and unceasing grievances inflicted by the papal see and its agents, against which remonstrances were of no avail, excited his indignant animadversion and anger.[5] Among these grievances, and the one most sorely felt, was the demand for "Provisions,"[1] that is to say, for benefices of value to be *provided* for needy, ignorant, and worthless Italians, often the relations of the pope or his agents. The abbey of St. Alban's had suffered greatly in this respect, and several instances are given by Paris of this nefarious usage.[2] His statements are fully borne out by the complaints of the English clergy laid before the Council of Lyons in 1245,[3] and also by the letter of bishop Grosseteste to the Parliament in 1252,[4] so that, as Hallam remarks, the English church "seemed to have been so richly endowed only as the *pasture of Italian priests.*"[5] Not less energetic is the language used by Paris in blaming the vexatious tallages and extortions of money imposed by the king, as also the extravagance and favouritism shown by him to foreigners, particularly to the Poitevin and Provençal relatives of himself and the queen.[6]

---

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 896. Compare Malmesbury's sentiments, in Preface to Book iv. of his History, p. 483.

[2] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 319. This passage is transcribed literally into the pseudonymous "Matthew of Westminster."

[3] Hallam particularly notices this instance of public spirit, in contrast with the tone of previous writers. *Middle Ages*, iii. 329, ed. 1855.

[4] The Romanists of the 17th century, Baronius, Bellarmin, and Coiffeteau, had the hardihood to assert that these passages were interpolated by the *heretic* editors of the monk of St. Alban's. Casaubon replied to the charge; and it is sufficiently refuted by the original manuscripts still existing.

[5] "Throughout the long reign of Henry III. (writes Dean Milman),

---

England was held by successive popes as a province of the papal territory, in which papal avarice levied the most enormous sums, and drained the wealth of the country." *Hist. of Latin Christianity*, iv. 307. The taxation of the bishops in 1246 amounted to 6,000 marks, as we learn from a note of Paris in his *Additamenta*, Nero D. I., fol. 125 *b*, and he adds in the margin, "Lege, sed lecta tege, quia probrosum."

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 58, 92; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 309; *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 699, 802.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 107; *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 815, 817, 826, 947; MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 121 *b*; Tit. A. XIX. 33. The legates assumed the same power of disposing of English benefices, and an amusing story is told by Paris in the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum*, under the year 1214, of the legate Nicholas, who had promised, on leaving Italy, a living to a "muliercula," his relative, then pregnant, for her child, if it should prove a boy; but to their great disappointment, instead of a boy she was delivered of a girl, and this proved the case three or four times afterwards in succession! He tells us this, he says, to let his readers know "quam indifferenter redditus *Ytalicis indignis et aliquibus nascituris* conferuntur."

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 502; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 294; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 666.

[4] Ep. 131, p. 442, ed. Luard. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 128; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 859.

[5] *Middle Ages*, ii. 213.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 353; iii. 30, 104; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 336; *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 384, 445, 816, 890, 948. How far the king's indulgence was carried in this latter respect, may be judged by the account given by Paris of

Modification of his language in the *Historia Anglorum.*

These passages form so prominent a feature in the *Chronica Majora*, that some powerful motive must have influenced Matthew Paris to modify and soften, or omit some of them in the *Historia Anglorum.* The erasures and alterations in the text of the latter work[1] would seem to have been made after the year 1252, and the evident object in altering the text was to avoid giving personal offence to the king. It seems very probable that Henry's friendly and condescending notice of the historian, combined with the liberality shown by him in gifts to the abbey of St. Alban's, might have caused Paris to judge him less unfavourably; added to which, it seems a reasonable conjecture that Paris intended to present his work to the king, or cause a copy of it to be made for him. This would sufficiently account for the removal of expressions that might properly be judged *offendicula* in the copy intended for the king's perusal. It would appear also, that as the text of the *Majora Chronica* was left untouched, the alterations made in the *Historia Anglorum* will account for the suppression of all references in it to the former work, which are in nearly every instance erased, and others substituted, some of which are extremely vague.

Passages erased, altered, or omitted.

Thus, several passages and sentences reflecting on the tyranny and duplicity of the king's father, John, are erased or marked for omission,[2] and with the same

---

the visit of the court to St. Alban's in 1252, on which occasion he saw a person, who acted as chaplain and buffoon to Geoffrey de Lusignan, (the king's half-brother,) pelt the king and the nobles, when walking in the abbey orchard, with lumps of turf, stones, and apples, and squeeze the juice of unripe grapes into their eyes, with indecent jocularity. Yet on this worthless fellow the king had a short time previously bestowed a living worth 100*l.* a year! *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 847, 850.—This scene in the orchard would furnish a good subject for an historical painter.

[1] See Preface to vol. i. p. xlix.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 98, 103, 106, 108, 114, 118, 119, 120, 122, 167, 185. The French prognostic lines on the children of Henry II. are also marked as *offendiculum*, ii. 191, *n.*

object many expressions and passages likely to offend Henry are similarly treated, or are re-written in a milder tone.[1] Some passages also directed against earl Richard, the king's brother, are erased;[2] and others condemning in strong terms the conduct of archbishop Boniface of Savoy, the queen's uncle, are erased and re-written.[3] The exactions of the papal court and rapacity of the legates and nuncios are frequently modified or marked for omission, no doubt on account of the censures passed on them, and reflecting on the king, for permitting or sharing in the spoil.[4] The passage relative to the burning of the pope's chamber at Lyons in 1245, ascribed by his enemies to himself as a pretence for exacting money, is replaced by another, in which the blame is laid on the agents of the emperor.[5] Some passages also hostile to the mendicant Orders are re-written.[6] This change of sentiment seems to have been brought about in consequence of certain Minorites, agents of the pope, having offered to protect the exempt monasteries (among which St. Alban's was one of the chief) against the encroachment of episcopal authority, and henceforth these Orders were regarded as friends instead of rivals.

Errors of Wendover retained.

In transcribing from Wendover many errors as to names of persons and other circumstances (many of which are due to earlier writers) are retained by Matthew Paris,[7] to which are added others of his own. All these have been pointed out and corrected in the footnotes of the present edition, or in the additional notes at the end of the third volume, and need not therefore be more particularly alluded to.

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 268, 309, 315, 328, 329, 417, 421, 445, 461; iii. 62, 81, 82, 98, 99.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 296, 357; iii. 35, 51.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 449, 490, 499; iii. 4, 87, 94, 127. It is curious to compare the original narrative of this man's outrageous conduct at his visitation in London with the milder account in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 78, 79; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 313.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 225, 276, 284, 322, 425, 492; iii. 5, 20, 45, 69, 92, 94, 100.

[5] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 501.

[6] *Ibid.*, iii. 18, 19, 51, 93.

[7] Matthew Paris is constantly referred to, instead of Wendover, by historical writers (Tyrrell, Sharon Turner, Hallam, Milman, and many others), and not unfrequently blamed for him. The unfairness of Lingard towards our historian is markedly shown in this respect, for

Chronology.

In regard also to chronology, some errors exist. Paris commences the year on Christmas Day,[1] but he regards those events which happened on the confines of the two years as belonging to either. He expressly states in the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum*, under the year 1157, "Quædam horum in confinio annorum evenerunt, unde quidam discordant Historiographi, sicut inquam in locis consimilibus;[2] sed inde non est in narrationibus difficultas. *Quod in confinio est, utriuslibet est.*"[3] Hence may be explained some of the discrepancies in date which occur in his writings. At the commencement of the reign of Henry III. is a curious note as to the computation of his regnal years.[4] He was crowned on the feast of St. Simon and St. Jude [28 Oct.], 1216, and the interval between that day and the 24th December inclusive is reckoned as the first year of his reign, and the second year consequently began on Christmas Day, 1216. This computation is continued to the eighteenth year of his reign, as appears by another note at the beginning of 1234,[5] when the fractional por-

---

in nearly every instance where he finds fault with or vilifies Paris, the narrative is taken *totidem verbis* from Wendover. See *Hist. Angl.*, vol. i. p. 146; ii. pp. 393, 394, 405, 406, ed. 1849, and compare the original passages in Wendover, ii. 255; iv. 84, 132, 139, 204, 227. Lingard is so careless that he quotes Paris for events *after his death*, and due to his anonymous continuator; he also refers to "Matthew of Westminster" constantly instead of Wendover or Paris, and this is a fault committed by many recent writers.

[1] "All the ancient historians," says Mr. Hardy, "commence the new year on Christmas day, consequently every transaction between 25 December and 1 January is attributed by them to the Dominical year following." Pref. to *Pat. Rolls*, p. xlv.

[2] See *Hist. Angl.*, under the years 1116, i. 220; 1157, i. 307; 1185, i. 435; and cf. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 143.

[3] Vol. iii. 193.

[4] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 196.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 363. This note is copied by John of Oxnede, p. 147; by Bartholomew Cotton, p. 117; and by other Chroniclers who compiled from Matthew Paris.

tion of 1216 was omitted or included in the first regnal year, and the year from 25 December 1234 to 24 December 1235 is computed as the eighteenth and not the nineteenth year of his reign.

Character and style of his additions.

The original text of Wendover is not merely abridged by Paris, but he infuses into it a life and colouring throughout.[1] In his own additions and continuation a rhetorical or dramatic character is often given to them, by speeches or dialogue, which, even if sometimes due to the invention of the writer, contribute greatly to the force of the narrative, and place the events and circumstances more vividly before our eyes. The limits of the present preface will not admit of these additions (not only to Wendover, but to the *Chronica Majora*) being dwelt on in detail;[2] but their historical value is undoubted, and it may be useful to point out briefly the more important under each reign.

WILLIAM I.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

A.D. 1068. The English adopt the Norman fashion of shaving the beard and cutting the hair.[3]

—— 1071. Usage of suspending arms outside the houses in the provinces, for the purpose of defence.[4]

—— 1072. Submission of Malcolm of Scotland.[5]

—— 1087. Dispositions of William on his death-bed,[6] and curious anecdote as to his confession.[7]

---

[1] Examples of this may be found in the descriptions of the battle of Antioch in 1098 (*Hist. Angl.*, i. 124); of Bremule, in 1119 (*ibid.*, i. 227); and of Hittin, in 1187 (*ibid.*, i. 441).

[2] Such detail is the less required since the additions are marked throughout by *marginal dots*, and a full analysis is also given in the Index.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 11. Cf. *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 42, where the custom is said to have been forced on the English.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 14.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 16; and again in 1090, *ib.*, i. 39.

[6] *Ibid.*, i. 34, 164, 203; iii. 173.

[7] *Ibid.*, i. 34, *n.* William is said to have founded the abbey of Selby to atone for his having caused a

WILLIAM II.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

Surnamed the "Red Dragon," from his red hair. Paris calls him "capite et mente rufus et vulpinus," and strongly reprobates his tyranny.[1]

A.D. 1094. The king's unorthodox language in reference to the pope's interference in temporal affairs.[2]

—— 1096. Chapter relative to duke Robert's visit to his brothers, to solicit pecuniary aid.[3]

—— 1099. Chapter on the flight of Corbaran, and the combat of Richard de Chaumont with two Turks;[4] miraculous election of duke Robert as king of Jerusalem, and attempt of his brother Henry to supplant him;[5] news of the siege of Le Mans brought to the king when dining in Westminster Hall, and his proceedings thereon.[6]

HENRY I.

A.D. 1100. Reply to the objections raised by the Normans to his election;[7] and particulars re-

---

relative to be poisoned. [The person alluded to was Conan II. of Britanny, as related by William of Jumièges, lib. viii. c. 33, and Ordericus Vitalis, lib. ii. c. 79.] When he lay on his death-bed his confessor [Gilbert Maminot, who was also his physician] could by no means induce him to repent of the crime. The bishop—who was not over strict in religious matters—at length persuaded him to say "he was sorry he was not able to repent," on which the confessor brightened up, and not only comforted the dying monarch, but at once administered the *Viaticum.* A somewhat similar story is told in one of Dr. Donne's sermons, vol. v. p. 16, of the mother of Gratian, who, being warned by her confessor to repent of her adultery, said she could not. "At least," said he, "be sorry that thou canst not be sorry!"

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 97, 131, 167.

[2] *Ibid.*, i. 50.

[3] *Ibid.*, i. 74. Copied by Thomas Rudborne into his Chronicle, MS. Cott. Nero A. XVII.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 133.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 149, 156, 163.

[6] *Ibid.*, i. 165. All the other historians say he received the news when hunting in the New Forest, and so in Wendover.

[7] *Ibid.*, i. 177.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

specting his marriage with Matilda of Scotland.[1]

A.D. 1106. His address to the English nobles at London.[2]

—— 1107, 1109, 1134. Details as to the imprisonment of duke Robert, his release, rebellious conduct, and re-capture; and anecdote respecting the torn robe sent to him.[3]

—— 1113. The king breaks his Great Seal, in order to annul his charter of liberties.[4]

—— 1126. Chapter relating to the emperor Henry V. and the deacon Arnulph; also the rumours after his death.[5]

—— 1127. Foundation of Fountains abbey.[6]

—— 1150. Defamatory reports of Alienor, queen of Louis VII.[7]

STEPHEN.

A.D. 1153. Singular story of the intrigue of the ex-empress Matilda with Stephen of Blois, by whom she is said to have had a son, afterwards Henry II., and her subsequent confession, and reconciliation of the father and son.[8] This piece of scandal seems to rest on the misinterpretation of a phrase in the Saxon Chronicle and Henry of

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 188. See Stevenson's remarks on this, in Notes to the *Scalacronica*, 1836, p. 235.

[2] *Ibid.*, i. 202; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 62.

[3] *Ibid.*, i. 206, 212, 247; and partly in *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 63, 73.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 217.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 236. In Malmesbury, i. 325, and Diceto, col. 370, a similar story is told of the emperor Henry III. under the year 1030.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 240, and partly in *Chr. Maj.*, p. 71.

[7] *Ibid.*, i. 288. These reports are borne out by the French historians. See "Rec. des Hist. de France," xi. 220, 229, 231, 286.

[8] *Ibid.*, i. 244 *n.*, 295, 296, 301; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 192. The story is copied by Rudborne (MS. Cott. Nero A. XVII., fol. 151 *b*), and may be found also in Polydore Vergil, *Anglica Historia*, 1555, p. 208.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

Huntingdon.[1] Matilda was betrothed to Geoffrey of Anjou in 1127, but the marriage did not take place till 1129,[2] and not without repugnance on her part,[3] to be sacrificed to a boy not sixteen years of age, and of rank so far inferior to her own. On her going over to be betrothed she was accompanied by her half-brother, Robert, earl of Gloucester, and Brian Fitz-Count;[4] and the author of the "Gesta Stephani" hints at an intimacy then or subsequently existing between the latter and Matilda.[5] Perhaps the rumour of such an intrigue was afterwards transferred to Stephen, but the best evidence against the story (in other respects by no means improbable) are the dates of the transaction. Matilda was repudiated by Geoffrey not long after her marriage,[6] and at the council of Northampton, held 8 Sept. 1131,[7] it was resolved, on Geoffrey's demand, that she should return to him. Wendover and Paris place her return in 1130, and the subsequent birth of her son Henry in 1132,[8] but in the MSS. of the *Chronica Majora* it is entered again under 1133, which seems most correct, as agreeing with Ordericus Vitalis and Diceto.[1] His birth, therefore, could not be the result of an intrigue stated to have taken place in September 1130, or even in 1131, and to render it at all credible, the return of the empress should be deferred till about June 1132.

---

[1] "And he helde him for fader, and he him for sune," Sax. Chron., p. 385, ed. Thorpe; "ipsum rex in filium suscepit adoptivum et hæredem," Hen. Hunt., p. 398.

[2] Ord. Vit., lib. xii. c. 48; "Rec. des Hist. de France," xii. 521.

[3] Will. Gemetic., lib. viii. c. 25.

[4] Sax. Chron., ann. 1127.

[5] P. 85, ed. Sewell. There is some obscurity about Brian Fitz-Count. In Mr. Hardy's Index to Malmesbury he is called son of earl Robert of Gloucester, an error incautiously followed in my own Index. According to the Saxon Chronicle, he was son of Alan of Britanny; while Dugdale, *Baron.*, p. 468, makes him son of Baldwin, earl of Devon.

[6] Simeon of Durham, col. 256.

[7] Hen. Hunt., p. 384; Malmesb., p. 698; Hoveden, p. 186.

[8] Wendover, ii. 211, 212; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 244, 246; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 72.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

HENRY II.

A.D. 1161. Marriage of Mary, abbess of Rumsey, to Matthew, count of Boulogne.[2]

—— 1162, 1163, 1164, 1166, 1170, 1171. Interesting particulars and anecdotes relative to St. Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury.[3]

—— 1163. Translation of St. Edward the Confessor,[4] and treason of Henry de Esexe.[5]

—— 1166. Sinister rumours of prince John before his birth and at his baptism.[6]

—— 1170. Interesting account of the coronation feast of the young king Henry.[7]

—— 1171, 1174. The king's behaviour on hearing of Becket's murder, and his subsequent penance in the church of Canterbury.[8]

---

[1] 25 March 1133. Ord. Vit., lib. x. c. 1; Diceto, col. 505; "Rec. des Hist. de France," xii. 553.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 314; and partly in *Chr. Maj.*, under the year 1160, p. 97.

[3] *Ibid.*, i. 316, 317, 329, 330, 339, 341, 358–62, 364, 421, 436; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 197. A portion only of the new matter is in the *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 123, 124.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 320.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 321.

[6] *Ibid.*, i. 340. In MS. C.C.C.C. xvi., fol. 31 *b*, is the following marginal note by Paris (which has been copied into MS. Cott. Nero D. v., fol. 192 *b*), "¶ Nunc verificatum est nomen ejus pronosticum, scilicet Johannes Extorris, secundum prima circa eum prophetia, postquam illud turpe accidit significativum, quod baptizatus in baptisterio exgessit."

[7] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 353.

[8] *Ibid.*, i. 367, 386. The king's prayer is said to have been made in *French*.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

A.D. 1173. Particulars of the siege of Leicester, and proceedings of the earl of Leicester and his Flemish troops.[1] It is on this occasion that Matthew Paris gives a specimen of the popular songs of the Flemings, which was copied by Lambarde,[2] and from him by Ritson, in his "Ancient Songs,"[3] as the "earliest specimen of *English* song," which it certainly is not.

—— 1177. Submission of the emperor Frederic II. to the pope, on account of a miracle performed by the latter![4]

—— 1189. Anger of earl Richard against cardinal John of Anagni.[5]

RICHARD I.

A.D. 1189. His vow to build a chapel to St. Thomas.[6]

—— 1190. Gifts received by him from Saladin.[7]

—— 1192. Affront offered to the duke of Austria;[8] chapter relative to Saladin's beheading of a captive said to be prince of Antioch;[9] and cure of Philip of France at Acre by his English physician.[10]

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 378, 381.

[2] *Dict. Angl. Topogr.*, p. 36. See Preface to vol. i. p. xliv.

[3] Dissert., p. xxviii, ed. 1790. The resemblance of this rude Flemish ballad to another of the same period, in the popular dialect, recently printed, is remarkable. The latter begins,—

"Naer Oostland willen wy ryden,
Naer Oostland willen wy mee."

See "Hist. des Colonies Belges en Allemagne," 1866.

[4] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 399; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 133.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 458. This is one of the passages not in the MSS. of the *Chron. Maj.*, but interpolated by Parker from the Cecil MS.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 13. The same remark here again applies, and so also in 1190.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 18.

[8] *Ibid.*, ii. 30, and *Chr. Maj.*, p. 168.

[9] *Ibid.*, ii. 37; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 170.

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 38.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

A.D. 1196. Account of the tumultuous rising at London headed by William with the Beard;[1] bequest of the emperor Henry VI. to the Cistercians;[2] and fuller account of the capture of the bishop of Beauvais.[3]

—— 1197. Notice of the preacher Fulk.[4]

—— 1198. Personal bravery of Walter de Hamme of Trumpington;[5] and fraud practised in making a new Great Seal.[6]

JOHN.

A.D. 1199. Speech of archbishop Hubert at his coronation.[7] This speech has been much criticised, and its authenticity questioned,[8] but it is distinctly referred to by prince Louis of France in 1216, in a public document printed in Rymer's *Fœdera.*[9]

—— 1201. Account of Simon de Thurnay.[10]

—— 1203. Rumours respecting the death of Arthur of Britanny.[11]

—— 1207. Reception of the emperor Otho in London;[12] particulars respecting the Order of Friars

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 57, 69. See *ante*, p. xxiv, *n.*

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 58.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 59. Cf. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 182.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 62; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 191.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 70.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 75; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 218; interpolated in *Chr. Maj.*, p. 156, from the Cecil MS., under the year 1189.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 80, and shorter in *Chr. Maj.*, p. 197.

[8] See Carte, *Hist. Engl.*, 1748, vol. i. p. 784. Mr. Freeman, in his valuable History of the Norman Conquest, says, "Whether the speech is Hubert's or Matthew's matters little, or rather, if it be Matthew's own, it is the more valuable, as carrying on the ancient tradition still later," vol. i. p. 118.

[9] Vol. i. p. 140, ed. 1816. The words are, "propter quod Hubertus, quondam Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, in coronatione ipsius Johannis publice dixit, quod non ratione successionis, sed per electionem ipsum in regem coronabat."

[10] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 90; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 206.

[11] *Ibid.*, ii. 95; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 221.

[12] *Ibid.*, ii. 109.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

Minors;[1] and proceedings of the monks of Canterbury, in reference to the election of the archbishop of Canterbury.[2]

A.D. 1212. Fire in Southwark, and burning of London bridge.[3]

—— 1212, 1215, 1217, 1223–1226. Account of Faukes de Breaute, and his nefarious proceedings, particularly at St. Alban's; his dream and absolution (obtained by pretended penitence); and other curious anecdotes respecting him.[4]

—— 1213, 1214, 1215. John's proceedings to coerce the nobles; reproaches made to him by Savary de Mauleon after the battle of Bovines, and his duplicity.[5]

—— 1216. John's march to the north, capture of Berwick, and joke on the "little red fox" [Alexander II.];[6] extortion of money by the pope from the prelates at the General Council;[7] and animated account of the legate's interview with Philip VIII., in reference to John's cession of England to the pope.[8] Details of the ravages of John's forces at Peterborough and Croyland;[9] narrative of the king's illness and last journey;[10] his behaviour on his death-bed, and other particulars,[1] with certain good works alleged in his favour, among which is his reception of some Greek philosophers, told more at length under the year 1249.[2]

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 110.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 111; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 222.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 131; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 233.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 131, 167, 170, 171, 203, 204, 254, 265, 266, 272, 276, 291. Much briefer in *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 233, 292, 321.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 142, 151, 159, 162; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 228, 230.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 172; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 276.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 174.

[8] *Ibid.*, ii. 176.

[9] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 189.

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 191. The king when at Swineshead had brought on an access of fever by indulging immoderately in peaches and new cider. On the following morning he proceeded towards Sleaford, but had not gone above three or four miles, groaning with pain, before the malady increased to such a degree that he was obliged to alight, and order a litter to be made. The peo-

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

HENRY III.

A.D. 1216. His favour with the barons, on account of his personal appearance and education;[3] and a much fuller narrative of the attempt of prince Louis to induce Hubert de Burgh to surrender Dover castle.[4]

—— 1217. Flight of the French forces from Lincoln;[5] and conduct of Hubert de Burgh on the approach of the French fleet under Eustace the Monk, and naval victory.[6]

—— 1218. Dedication of the church of St. Mary, Worcester, and departure of the legate Walo.[7]

—— 1219. Epitaph of William Mareschal, Senior, by Gervase de Melckeley;[8] chapter respect-

---

ple about him, not having a workman at hand or proper materials, drew their swords and knives, and constructed from the willows growing near such a makeshift litter as they were able, which was covered roughly with the housings of a charger. When the king placed himself on it, as there were no cushions nor mattrass, nor even straw for a couch, the swinging of the litter to and fro—and the more so because they had no draught horses—soon shook him to pieces. Having endured this mortal agony for some time, the king was compelled to get down, saying, "This wretched, nay, this cursed litter has broken all my bones, and almost killed me!" And indeed, as the historian adds, it was believed that it was by this litter that John was brought to the pains of death. With great difficulty the sufferer was brought on to Sleaford, on the back of an easy-paced nag.

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 192, 193.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 194; iii. 64; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 288.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 196.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 197–199. These details are not in Parker's printed text of *Chr. Maj.*, but a portion exists in the MSS. B. C.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 214.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 217–221. Not in Parker's text, but great part in B. C.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 230, 231. Not in Parker's text, but in B. C.

[8] *Ibid.*, ii. 232. Cf. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 304. The Latin name of Melckeley was *de Saltu-Lacteo*, (mistaken

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

ing St. Elizabeth of Hungary;[1] the earl of Arundel's opposition of the legate at Damietta;[2] and the epitaph of Simon de Montfort by Roger de l'Isle.[3]

A.D. 1220. Foundation of the chapel of the Virgin at Westminster.[4]

—— 1221. Marriage of Alexander II. of Scotland to the princess Joanna.[5]

—— 1223. Story of the apostate deacon of Coventry, put to death by Faukes;[6] remarks on the treasure left by Philip II. in aid of the Holy Land; and visit of John de Brienne to England.[7]

—— 1229. Quarrel of the scholars of Paris at St. Marcel;[8] account of the treachery of the Templars, in order to betray the emperor into the hands of the Soldan;[9] simoniacal conduct of Stephen de Segrave;[10] and completion of the church of Salisbury by Robert de Bingham, bishop elect.[11]

---

by Bale and his copyists for the title of his work,) and copies of his treatise, "De Arte Versificatoria," are in Bailliol College, Oxford, No. cclxiii. 9; cclxxvi. 5. He is referred to by Paris for information respecting archbishop Stephen de Langtone, in 1216 and 1219. See MS. Cott. Vesp. B. XIII., fol. 133 *b*.

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 233. Not in Parker's text, but in B. C. This amphibological sentence seems to have been hence borrowed by Adam de Orletone, bishop of Hereford, in reference to Edward II. See De la More's Chronicle, p. 602, ed. Camden.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 237.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 240. In the text he is spoken of as among "quidam *chorici* geomantici," but in MS. C. C. C. C. XVI., fol. 56, the reading is, "quidam *clerici* geomantici." See the Glossary.

[4] *Hist Angl.*, ii. 242; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 310.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 248; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 313.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 254. This story is alluded to by Bracton, *De legibus Angliæ*, ed. 1569, fol. 124. He says that the deacon was burnt.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 259.

[8] *Ibid.*, ii. 308. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 354.

[9] *Ibid.*, ii. 312–314; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 358. These chapters are marked, "Vacat, quia offendiculum Templariorum," and in *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 259, Paris takes their part.

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 316. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 362.

[11] *Ibid.*, ii. 318; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 260; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 363.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

A.D. 1231. Attempt to plunder the tomb of archbishop Richard.[1]

—— 1232, 1233. Details respecting Hubert de Burgh, and his escape from the castle of Devises.[2]

—— 1233. Robbery of the bishop of London at Parma;[3] the building of a church for converted Jews by the king, at London, and a hospital at Oxford.[4]

—— 1234. Capture of Majorca by the king of Arragon.[5]

—— 1235. Election of Robert Grosseteste as bishop of Lincoln, and commendation of him;[6] privileges obtained by the Jews from the pope, to keep Christian nurses;[7] and additional particulars as to the marriage of Isabel to the emperor.[8]

Continuation of Wendover

In the middle of a paragraph of this year, 1235, the text of Wendover ends, and the *Historia Anglorum* follows onwards the order of events in the Greater Chronicle, but with frequent interesting additions, many of which relate to individuals, and are of a personal character. Among these may be noticed the anecdotes of Robert Fitz-Walter, when dying;[9] archbishop Edmund;[10] Stephen de Segrave;[11] Ranulph le Breton;[12] archdeacon Alan de Beccles;[13] and Roger, son of John de Bailloil;[14] also the behaviour of the servants of archbishop Boniface at Fulham palace.[1] Other remarkable insertions refer to the new coinage in 1247, of which a drawing is given;[2] the intention of Henry the Third in 1251 to banish the Jews;[3] and the negotiation relative to the offer of Apulia to earl Richard of Cornwall, in 1252.[4]

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 336; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 370.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 346–348, 350, 351, 359–361; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 264, 267. Derived from the information of Hubert himself. Only a portion is in the *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 378–380, 388.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 352.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 363, 364; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 393.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 374; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 409.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 376.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 378. See Sharon Turner's Note on the Jews, in *Hist. of Engl.*, ii. 122–125.

[8] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 380. Cf. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 416.

[9] *Ibid.*, ii. 385.

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 402, 410, 411, 435, 448; iii. 27.

[11] *Ibid.*, ii. 417.

[12] *Ibid.*, ii. 423.

[13] *Ibid.*, ii. 432. Cf. *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 330.

[14] *Ibid.*, iii. 867. In *Chr. Maj.*, p. 771, called Roger Fitz-John.

Matthew Paris accused of credulity.

Matthew Paris has been accused by M. Michaud of credulity, in admitting more incredible legends into his work than any other writer of the thirteenth century;[5] but this censure is not well founded, for Paris was certainly not so credulous as some of his contemporaries, and far less so than Malmesbury. In regard to the religious legends, they are nearly all copied from Wendover, and were of a character which but few of that age would venture to question.[6] His belief on certain subjects would by many be termed piety, even in the present day; and in everything that tended to the fame of St. Alban, the patron saint of his monastery, or to the glory of other English saints, he was certainly an enthusiast.[7] As a diligent observer and recorder of natural phenomena he also deserves commendation, although, in the spirit of the age, he sees in

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 78.

[2] *Ibid.*, iii. 27. Ruding gives a legend RIC. B. ON LVND. See also the Trans. Numism. Soc., 1865, pp. 253, 270.

[3] *Ibid.*, iii. 103.

[4] *Ibid.*, iii. 126, 127; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 323.

[5] *Hist. des Croisades*, tom. iv. p. 332, ed. 1857.

[6] In MS. Reg. 13 D. v., written at St. Alban's early in the 13th century, is a copy of the Vision of Turchill, in 1206 (in Wendover, iii. 190–209), and another "Visio quæ contigit cuidam in Estsexia," to which is prefixed a prologue referring to similar legends, particularly to those of Owen (*Audoenus*), the Irish knight (A.D. 1153, Wend., ii. 257–271); another in Ireland (Tundale, A.D. 1149); and a third at Eignesham (Evesham?), in 1196 (Wend., iii. 97–117), written by the subprior Adam, chaplain of Hugh, bishop of Lincoln. The writer of this prologue was assured by Thomas, prior of Binham (before 1214), that there was no more doubt of the truth of this last Vision than of the Crucifixion!

[7] He regarded Roger Niger, bishop of London, Robert Grosseteste, bishop of Lincoln, and Thomas of Hertford, archdeacon of Northumberland, as saints, *although not canonized.* See *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 284, 318, 329.

His belief in prognostics from natural phenomena.

them prognostics of evil,[1] particularly in the case of comets, earthquakes, eclipses, and other unusual disturbances of the order of nature. His inquiring mind does not, of course, take a philosophical view of such occurrences, but its scope is sufficiently apparent in his remarks on the effects produced by them.[2]

His interest in natural history.

On subjects of natural history, too, Paris was much interested, as appears by his observations on the structure of the camel's neck;[3] the nature of the leopard;[4] the appearance of flocks of crossbills in 1251;[5] the first introduction of buffaloes in England in 1252;[6] the whale thrown up at Norwich in 1255;[7] and by the long description he has drawn up (according to the middle-age notions) of the first elephant seen in England,[8] which was brought from Egypt by Louis IX., and presented to Henry III. in 1255.[9]

---

[1] This belief was not confined to the Western nations. Paris mentions an eclipse of the moon in 1218, which the Crusaders interpreted to mean the defeat of the Saracens, whilst the Saracens, on their side, regarded it as adverse to the Christians. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 227. In 1113 Paris quotes Claudian, on the baleful influence of comets, *ibid.*, i. 218.

[2] See his account of the great frost in 1094, *Hist. Angl.*, i. 44, and again in 1150, when the Thames was frozen, i. 287; the earthquakes in Norfolk and Suffolk, in 1165, i. 338; at Lincoln, in 1185, i. 434; at London (called by the Saxon name of *Erhdune*), in 1247, iii. 20; and in the Chilterns, in 1250, iii. 87; the great snow in 1178, i. 401; the parhelion seen in 1233, on the borders of Herefordshire, *Chr. Maj.*, p. 385, (of which a drawing on a larger scale is in MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 185); the thunderstorms at St. Paul's, London, in 1236, *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 320, and St. Peter's church at St. Alban's, in 1254, *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 337. Nearly all the above notices are additions to Wendover, and are mostly given in fuller detail than in the Greater Chronicle.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 184.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 392.

[5] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 825.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 119; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 832.

[7] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 343; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 903. Confirmed by the Close Rolls, 39 Hen. III., m. 4.

[8] See Preface to vol. i. p. lix, and Brayley's "Graphic Illustrator," 1834, pp. 335, 352.

[9] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 344; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 903. The keeper's name was Henry of Florence. An elephant had previously been sent over to the emperor Frederic II., in 1229, by the Soldan of Egypt, and a drawing of it, by Paris, is in MS. C. C. C. C., xvi., fol. 151 *b*.

His talent as an artist.

We have yet to consider Matthew Paris in his character of artist and cartographer, in both of which pursuits he attained a very remarkable degree of proficiency. Testimony to his great skill as a draughtsman, and also as a worker in metal, is given by the first continuator of the *Liber de Gestis Abbatum*,[1] and also by Walsingham in the *Liber de Benefactoribus*, in which he is called "pictor peroptimus;" and the writer adds, "Providit præterea libros multos, scriptos tam manu propria quam externa, in quibus quam excellens in doctrina et *pictura* fuit, satis claret."[2] Many of these books so admirably illustrated by his drawings and embellishments are fortunately still preserved, and testify amply to his artistic skill. Among them are the original manuscripts of his historical writings,[3] as well as some others to which his pen and pencil contributed.[4] To these must also be added the "Liber de Anulis et Gemmis et Pallis, quæ sunt de thesauro hujus ecclesiæ [S. Albani],"[1] written in 1252, and accompanied by drawings of the gems, among which is the large and curious cameo bearing a figure of Æsculapius, presented to the church by king Ethelred. It is not improbable that Matthew Paris owed much of his knowledge of art and proficiency to the example and advice of Walter of Colchester, the sacrist of St. Alban's in the time of abbat William of Trumpington (A.D. 1214–1235), whose wonderful talent as a sculptor and painter we find so frequently noticed.[2] Paris also mentions with great commendation a painter named Master Richard, son of Simon, a monk of the abbey,[3] and we find inserted in the often-mentioned Cottonian MS. Nero D. I. a magnificent semi-transparent drawing of the full-length figure of Christ, executed by a Friar Minor named William, of English birth;[4] and in one of the Cambridge MSS. of the Greater Chronicle, Paris has drawn a portrait of the artist.[5]

---

[1] "Inerat ei tanta subtilitas in auro et argento ceteroque metallo insculpendo, et *in picturas depingendo*, ut nullum post se in Latino orbe creditur reliquisse secundum." *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 394.

[2] MS. Cott. Nero D. VII., fol. 50 *b*. See also Claud. E. IV., fol. 332 *b*.

[3] MSS. C.C.C.C. xxvi. and xvi.; Cott. Nero D. I.; Reg. 14 C. vii.; Cott. Claud. B. VI. Many of the drawings in these volumes are not only of much artistic merit, but archæologically valuable, from the illustrations they afford of costume, and the state of English art at that period (A.D. 1237–1255). Among them may be noticed:—in C.C.C.C. xxvi., the sacrifice of Brutus to Diana, p. 7; Leir and his daughters, p. 11; martyrdom of St. Alban, p. 116; death of archbishop Thomas of Canterbury, p. 263; battle of Saladin with king Guy, p. 279; and the heads of the Virgin and Child, p. 283. In C. C. C. C. xvi., the battle of Bovines, f. 37; shipwreck of the bishops going to the General Council, 1215, f. 43 *b*; naval victory of Hubert de Burgh, f. 52 (repeated in MS. Cott. Nero D. v., f. 213); Council held at London in 1237, f. 107; naval combat between the Pisans and Genoese, f. 146; Henry III. carrying the blood of Christ to Westminster abbey, f. 214. There are likewise several drawings in the *Vitæ Offarum* (MS. Cott. Nero D. I.) deserving of mention, some of which have been poorly engraved by Strutt.

[4] To the Chronicle of his contemporary, John of Wallingford, he contributed a full length portrait of the author, after he had been *Infirmarius* (therefore after 1253, as appears from Nero D. I., fol. 122); a seated figure of Jesus Christ; and a slight sketch of the elephant which arrived in 1255. In a Psal-

Also as a herald.

In a minor branch of art, the heraldic blazon of shields of arms, we find brother Matthew thoroughly versed, and he has not only drawn the arms of the English

---

ter also, presented to the abbey by brother John de Dalling (MS. Reg. 2 B. vi.), there are several drawings by Paris, including a full length figure of the Virgin. In all probability other drawings by him will be found in a MS. preserved in Trinity College, Dublin, numbered E. i. 40.

[1] MS. Cott. Nero D. I., ff. 145, 146 *b*. This treatise is referred to in the *Chronica Majora*, p. 903.

[2] See *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 233, 279, 281, 283, 286; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 242. Paris calls him "pictor et sculptor incomparabilis." He appears to have died in 1248, from an entry under that year in Nero D. I., fol. 145 *b*, "iiii. non. Sept. magister Walterus, pictor præelectus."

[3] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 233, 314. In Nero D. I., fol. 185, we have a brief note of his pictorial works, intitled "Opera Ricardi pictoris, usque ad annum Domini MCCL., infra ix. annos et dimidium."

[4] Fol. 155. Above the figure is written in red letters, by Paris, "*Hoc opus fecit frater Willelmus de Ordine Minorum, socius beati Francisci, secundus in Ordine ipso, conversatione sanctus, natione Anglus.*"

[5] C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 67. He is in his monastic habit, and above is written, "Frater Willelmus, nacione Anglus, socius sancti Francisci."

sovereigns and nobility in the margins of the *Historia Anglorum* and *Chronica Majora*, but also those of several foreign potentates and nobles; and in the Cottonian MS. referred to above, there is a large collection of shields in colours, with the proper terms of blazon attached to each.[1] The value of such a collection to heralds and genealogists is considerable, for although rolls of arms exist attributed to the reign of Henry the Third, yet in the works of Paris we have the earliest *dated* instances of the use of armorial distinctions. Among the shields drawn by him the escutcheon of the emperor of Germany always bears the *double-headed* eagle, whereas on the coins of Frederic II. the eagle invariably has a single head.[2] The shield of Scotland has in one place a lion rampant within a bordure flory counter-flory, and in another the lion is within a double tressure flory,[3] as on the first seal of Alexander II.[4]

And as a cartographer.

As a cartographer Paris deserves more attention than has hitherto been accorded to him in this country. His Map of the World is certainly a bizarre performance (as might be expected from the existing state of geographical knowledge),[5] but he expressly informs us that it was a reduced copy of the maps of Robert de Melekeley and the abbey of Waltham; and that an accurate copy of another map, preserved in the king's chamber at Westminster, had been made by him in his "Ordinale."[1] The latter is not now known to exist.

---

[1] Nero D. I., ff. 170, 170 *b*.

[2] See Mr. Walford's remarks on the imperial shield in *Archæologia*, vol. xxxix. p. 378. In C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 18, the emperor Otho is assigned two shields, the first, Or, a double-headed eagle displayed, or; the second, "Scutum mutatum pro amore regis Angliæ," on the dexter side, gules, three lions passant gardant or; on sinister, or, a double-headed eagle, displayed, sable, both dimidiated. But in Nero D. I., fol. 170, the imperial shield is thus blazoned, "Scutum aureum, aquila biceps vel moniceps, nigra."

[3] See *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 65; C.C.C.C. xvi., fol. 254, and Nero D. I., fol. 170. In the last the shield is blazoned, "Scutum de auro, leo reptans [de gules], et flores in bord' similiter."

[4] Laing's *Cat. of Scottish Seals*, 1856. The charter to which this seal is attached is dated 1235. See also an article in "Notes and Queries," 3rd Ser., vol. x. p. 316.

[5] See Preface to vol. i. pp. lvi, lxi, and M. de Santarem, "Essai sur l'Historie de la Cosmographie," 1849, tom. ii. p. 257.

The oldest representation of Britain is said to appear in the *Tabulæ Peutingerianæ*, ascribed to the time of Theodosius (preserved in a copy made in the 13th century), which contain a *Routier* throughout the Roman empire;[2] next to which, in point of date, is the rude sketch by Paris of the Roman roads in Britain.[3] Following these are the maps of Britain, comprising England, Wales, and Scotland, drawn by Paris,[4] which, although deficient in the accurate determination of geographical position, and necessarily imperfect in the remoter districts, yet have the merit of being the earliest now extant,[5] and contain a great number of names from the south coast of England to the extreme north of Scotland. But the most remarkable monument of the geographical skill of our historian is the coloured Itinerary for the information of pilgrims going from London to Jerusalem,[1] of which several copies by his own hand (more or less perfect) are preserved.[2] When it is remembered that nothing of the kind was accessible as a guide to Matthew Paris, and, indeed, that no similar Itinerary had been executed (so far as is known) since the fourth century,[3] it is matter of surprise how the monk of St. Alban's could have acquired sufficient information[4] to enable him to draw it up with so few inaccuracies. The descriptive text is in French, and is not confined to a mere list of names and distances, but includes an account of Rome, with plans of Rome, Acre, and Jerusalem, and long details of the countries and inhabitants of Syria and Palestine; also brief notices of the Caspian mountains, where Alexander shut up the Scythians, the ark in Armenia, and the Old Man of the Mountain.

---

[1] The inscription on the map reads thus in C. C. C. C. xxvi. p. 284: "*Summatim facta est disposicio Mappa* (sic) *Mund[i] magistri Rob. de Melekeleia et Mappa Mundi de Waltham.* ¶ *Mappa Mundi Regis, quod* (sic) *est in camera sua apud Westmonasterium, figuratur in Ordinali Mathei de Parisius, verissimum autem figuratur in eodem Ordiñ, quod est quasi clamis extensa.*" The later copyist of this map in MS. Cott. Nero D. v., has written *Ordine* falsely for *Ordinali*, and this has given rise to much misconstruction. M. de Santarem renders the sentence, "figurée d'après le même système que celle de Matthieu Paris!" ii. 258. For the meaning of *Ordinale*, in its usual acceptation of Service Book, see the Glossary of Du Cange, *in v.*

[2] See Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, i. 8; *de Santarem*, i. 176.

[3] In MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 186 *b*, and engraved in Gale's "Essay on the four Roman ways," *ap.* Leland, *Itinerary*, vi. 96, ed. Hearne, and in Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, i. pl. i. fig. 2.

[4] See Preface to vol. i. pp. xlvii, lix; vol. iii. p. 156; and Gough, *u. s.*

[5] A map of Wales is known to have been drawn by Giraldus Cambrensis, and was extant in the time of Tanner, in the library of the dean and chapter of Westminster, but the MS. containing it has long since disappeared.

Other works ascribed to Matthew Paris.

Besides the historical works of Matthew Paris referred to in the course of the preceding remarks and in the Preface to the first volume, he is known to have compiled or written the *Vitæ Regum Offarum*,[5] prefixed to his *Liber de Gestis Abbatum*, and also the Life of St. Edmund of Pontigni, archbishop of Canterbury.[6] These are all his recognized writings, exclusive of some smaller tracts and historical fragments.[1] Bale and later bibliographers, to the time of Tanner, have attributed to him the lives of several saints and other treatises, but without authority.[2] Walsingham, however, says of him, "Vitas SS. Albani, Thomæ, et Edmundi, archiepiscoporum Cantuariæ, *conscripsit et depinxit* elegantissime."[3] Whether "conscripsit" here means *composed* or *transcribed* may admit of doubt, but it is worthy of note that Stowe in his "Annales,"[4] and archbishop Ussher[5] have ascribed to Matthew Paris a French metrical version of Ralph of Dunstable's *Passio SS. Albani et Amphibali.* They must both have derived this information from the same source, namely, a manuscript still fortunately preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, which contains the French Life referred to, together with the Latin original, and other legends of the same saints.[6] It does not appear on what precise grounds Stowe and Ussher

---

[1] Bale described this Itinerary incorrectly, and was followed by Selden, Pits, Tanner, and others, none of whom had any notion of its real object, and mistook the commencement of it from Dover, instead of London.—It would be very desirable to have the whole of the maps relating to Britain photographed by the zincographic process of Sir Henry James, from the earliest period to the end of the 15th century.

[2] See Preface, vol. i. pp. xlvi, lv. The copy in Nero D. I. only goes as far as Naples.

[3] An Itinerary from Bordeaux to Jerusalem was composed about A.D. 333, and is described at length by M. Valckenaer in the Appendix to vol. i. of Michaud's *Histoire des Croisades*.

[4] Paris appears to have derived a part of his information from a friar who accompanied the bishop of Tortosa to England in 1249. See Nero D. I., fol. 89 *b*, and cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 50.

[5] Printed in Wats, 1640, pp. 1–32. See Mr. Hardy's remarks on these Lives in "Cat. of Materials for Hist. of Gr. Britain," vol. i. p. 499.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 135; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 864.—In addition to these, he composed a Life of Stephen de Langtone, archbishop of Canterbury, a fragment only of which,

---

containing three chapters or sections, is preserved on a leaf attached to MS. Cott. Vesp. B. XIII., fol. 133 *b.* This has hitherto escaped observation; and is not noticed in the Catalogue of Cottonian MSS.

[1] In C.C.C.C. xxvi. and xvi., and MS. Cott. Nero D. I.

[2] Cave and Placcius assign to Paris a *Liber de Sacramentis* and a *Liber de Virtutibus*, but have been misled by James, *Ecloga*, 1610, p. 15. Both are usually ascribed to William of Auvergne, bishop of Paris. See Coxe, *Cat. Codd. in Coll. Oxon.*; Nov. Coll., No. cxiv.; Merton, Nos. cxxxvi. and clv. Fabricius gives the first treatise to a later William, bishop of Paris.

[3] MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV., fol. 332 *b.*

[4] Annales, 1631, p. 43. His words are, "Matthew Paris, a munke of St. Alban, turned out of Latine prose into French verse the Life and Martyrdom of St. Alban and Amphibalus, *both of which bookes I have seen.*"

[5] *Hist. Eccles. Brit.*, 1639, 4to, pp. 159, 981.

[6] It is marked E. i. 40, and described in Hardy's "Cat. of Materials," vol. i. p. 14. I have not seen this MS., but think it probable that the portion from fol. 3 to fol. 50, including the drawings, is from the hand of Paris. This volume may be the very one noticed by Walsingham, but it is now mutilated and imperfect. Ussher says that this MS. was *presented* by Henry VI. to St. Alban's, but the memorandum on fol. 1 *b*, he refers to, seems only to mean that the volume was *shown* to Henry at a council held at Westminster.

gave the above statement, but it is certain it could not have been from mere conjecture. Granting that Paris was the author of this poem, there would be no difficulty in attributing also to him the satirical French song on the oppressed state of the church, written at St. Alban's in 1256, and inserted at the end of Wallingford's Chronicles.[1] Hence, Pits might perhaps be justified in speaking of Paris as a poet, but when he goes on to characterise him as an orator, a logician, a philosopher, a mathematician, and a theologian, he seems to draw largely on his imagination.[2]

Conclusion. Here these observations must close, although much more might be said to do full justice to the historian of St. Alban's. With one exception, all the modern English historical writers[3] have been unanimous in their praise of Matthew Paris. It is certain, that for a large portion of the reign of Henry the Third he is almost the sole authority, and on this account is fully intitled to the gratitude of posterity.

25, St. Stephen's Square, W.
15th January 1869.

---

[1] Jul. D. VII., fol. 133 *b*, and referred to in the text, fol. 105 *b*. It is printed in Wright's "Political Songs," 1839, p. 42 (Camden Society).

[2] He writes thus of him, "Manuarius scriptor, pictor non vulgaris, omnes denique mechanicas artes sufficienter didicit; artes autem liberales accurate calluit. *Poeta elegans*, orator facundus, dialecticus acutus, philosophus subtilis, mathematicus non condempnendus, theologus solidus." *De illustr. Angl. Scriptt.* One would suppose Pits had made some mistake, and that this panegyric belonged to somebody else; but it is followed by M. Weiss, in his article on Matthew Paris in the "Biographie Universelle," ed. 1820.

[3] Two of these may be particularly referred to: Berington (a Romanist) in his "Literary History of the Middle Ages," 1814, pp. 387, 389; and Kington, "Life of Frederick the Second," 1862, vol. ii. p. 229.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

ol. 139 b.

Dominus rex fuit ad Natale Londoniis, lætus cum suis nobilibus.

Anno gratiæ M^o.CC^o.XLVI^o., qui est annus regni domini regis Henrici III. XXX^{us}, fuit idem dominus rex ad Natale Domini Londoniis, ubi, convocatis multis regni nobilibus, quibus et dona exhibuit, una cum fratre suo, comite Ricardo, et regina, et comitissa Cornubiæ, multisque magnatibus, qui cum eodem rege in Wallia [guerræ][1] pondera et æstus sustinuerant, festa Natalicia gaudenter celebravit,[2] ut qui fuerunt in tribulatione consortes, participes fierent in exultatione.

A.D. 1246. Henry keeps Christmas at London.

Impetratio archiepiscopi Cantuariensis B[onefacii.]

Per idem tempus tales literas impetravit dominus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] a domino papa: "Innocentius episcopus, servus servorum [Dei],[3] venerabilibus fratribus episcopis, et dilectis filiis abbatibus, prioribus, archidiaconis, decanis, presbiteris, et aliis

The archbishop of Canterbury obtains papal letters, directing the

---

[1] *guerræ*] Supplied from E. and the so-called "Matth. Westm." In B. C., *pondera et æstus dierum.*

[2] *celebravit*] The last syllable is on an erasure, and also corr. in marg.

[3] *Dei*] Supplied from B.

A.D. 1246.

First year's revenue of all benefices in his diocese to be collected, to pay off the debts of the see.

ecclesiarum prælatis et clericis per Cantuariensem civitatem, diocesim et provinciam constitutis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem." Respice in Originali.[1] Cujus summa hæc est: "Damus venerabili fratri nostro Herefordensi episcopo in mandatis, ut ipse per septennium, et non ultra, omnium beneficiorum ecclesiasticorum, quæ deinceps in civitate, diocesi et provincia Cantuariensi vacabunt, primi anni proventus, usque ad decem milium marcarum summam,[2] quæ si ante dictum septennium haberi poterit, nil amplius exigatur, necnon duo milia marcarum de ipsius archiepiscopi redditibus colligat annuatim, et convertat fideliter in solutione debitorum ecclesiæ memoratæ." In hujus mandati principio, quia novum fuit et grave, omnes Angliæ prælati et clerici obstupuerunt supra quod dici posset. Rex etiam usque ad spiritus amaritudinem angebatur, [eo][3] quod tot argumentis suum regnum contemplabatur suis bonis esse spoliatum. Insuper considerabat dominus rex, quod hæc omnia in dedecus beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, cujus amator specialis esse inceperat, [redundare videbantur];[4] quia sic dilapidator et suffator[5] suæ ecclesiæ datum est satis intelligi et sciri planius extitisse. Quod constat non tantum domino regi, sed omnibus sanæ conscientiæ quamplurimum displicuisse, propter dicti confessoris sanctitatem.[6]

Surprise of the clergy and anger of the king at this mandate.

---

[1] *Respice in Originali*] Written on an erasure. These letters are at length in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 692), dat. Lyons, "vi. kal. Sept. [27 Aug.] pont. anno iiio."

[2] *summam*] In the margin have been added (but subsequently erased) the following words, *colligat ad usus Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.*

[3] *eo*] Supplied from E.

[4] *redundare videbantur*] Supplied from E.

[5] *suffator*] In E., *extirpator.*

[6] *suum regnum . . . sanctitatem*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which is partly erased, but can still be read, as follows, *excogitatis per Romanam curiam, non jam annuatim sed diatim regnum Angliæ depauperabatur. Sed versutia Romanorum, quæ in hoc callet, studiose imperiis omnium contradicentium [animos?] enervavit. Quia revera, clerus generaliter*

De parlamento in Quadragesima.[1]

A.D. 1246.

18 Mar. Parliament summoned in Lent.

Medio vero Quadragesimæ, videlicet die qua cantatur "Lætare Jerusalem," edicto regio convocata convenit ad parlamentum generalissimum regni Anglicani totalis nobilitas, tam prælatorum quam militum, ut de statu regni jam vacillantis, prout urgens exegit necessitas, contrectarent. Angebat enim eos gravamen intolerabile, a curia Romana incessanter illis irrogatum. Quo anxius sauciabantur, quod multotiens querimoniam coram Deo et Romana ecclesia lacrimabiliter reponentes, non exaudiebantur, dicentibus nonnullis et affirmantibus, dominum papam ad tuitionem[2] universalis ecclesiæ multis multorum indigere præsidiis, ut omnes ecclesiæ filios tanquam pater tueatur.[3] Sed quia hæc omnia finem pusillanimem sunt sortita, tædium retinet calamum illa recitantem:

Intolerable grievances suffered from the court of Rome.

¶ *Oracius.*

"Amphora cœpit
"Institui; currente rota nunc urceus exit."[4]

Laws made against the trespassers in parks or fisheries.

Verumtamen in eodem parlamento conditæ sunt leges cum rigoris incremento, super hiis qui furtive dampna fecerint in alienis parcis vel vivariis. Cujus rei statutum

---

contradixisset, si in rege confidentiam habuisset. Et sic archiepiscopus in novitate sua, invitis colonis, messuit ubi non seminavit, non sine sanctorum prædecessorum suorum injuria et dedecore. Quos dilapidatores ecclesiæ Cantuariensis prodigos fuisse denotabat. In the margin also has been written with a plummet, *clerus contradixisset, si de regis constanti adjutorio confisi fuissent . . . sic Cant. archiepiscopi dilapidatores . . . . .*

[1] This rubric was originally written "*Magnum parlamentum medio xl^e.*"

[2] *tuitionem*] tuicione, MS.

[3] *sauciabantur . . . . . tueatur*] With the exception of one line, this is written on a piece of vellum, pasted over the original text, which is partially erased, but can be thus deciphered, *sauciabantur, quod papa, promissionis suæ transgressor, gravius quam ante eorum querimoniam manum sensim aggravabat. Multa enim temperamenta in concilio promittebantur, quorum (?) dominus rex tantummodo (?) scripta penes se retinet. Quæ omnia in libris apud (?) . . . reperire.* The documents referred to are in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 696.)

[4] Horat. de Arte Poet. l. 21, but the text reads *cur* for *nunc*, as also in E.

A.D. 1246.

Letters of complaint written to the pope.

plenius scribitur in libellis plurimorum.[1] Provisum est insuper[2] in dicto parlamento, ut adhuc scriberetur domino papæ efficaciter, ut ab oppressionibus cessaret consuetis. Scripserunt igitur per se episcopi. Scripserunt abbates et priores. Scripserunt comites et barones. Scripsit et ipse rex, ita ut omnium scripta corda ferina poterant emollire. Sed omnes litus arabant, et lateres abluebant. Scriptum est simili modo cardinalibus. Hæc omnia scripta in libris reperiuntur plurium Historiographorum.[3]

Fredericus causam suam intendebat justificare.

The emperor Frederic endeavours to justify himself.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem Fredericus, quem nominare imperatorem prohibet ecclesia, ut suam famam, quæ longe lateque jam fœtorem teterrimum exhalavit,[4] in aliquo restauraret, præcipue quam de hæresi contraxerat infamiam redimendo, hanc epistolam nobilibus Angliæ[5] transmisit; quos omnes speraverat cum rege viriliter contra importunitates Romanæ ecclesiæ velle ac posse resistendo sui regni jura contueri:

His letter to the prelates and nobles of England.

"Fredericus, etc., prælatis ecclesiarum, comitibus et baronibus, [et][6] universis per regnum Angliæ constitutis, quibus ostensæ fuerint literæ præsentes, salutem et omne

---

[1] *in libellis plurimorum*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original reading, namely, *scribitur in libro Suplementorum.* In B. we read, "prout plenius scribitur *in libro literarum* (the three last words on erasure), post inquisitiones transgressionum de foresta, *ad tale signum* ⊙—ııı—;" and then, in red letters, "*Hoc invenies in libro Additamentorum.*" In C. the whole paragraph is omitted. This statute will be found in the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero, D. I. fol. 88], and in ed. Wats, p. 156.

[2] *insuper*] Added in marg.

[3] *Historiagraphorum*] Historiagraphorum, MS. This word with the two preceding are written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *libro Additamentorum reperiet sedulus indagator.* These letters are in B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 699–701), but not in the "Liber Additamentorum."

[4] *exhalavit*] exalavit, MS.

[5] *Angliæ*] Added in marg.

[6] *et*] Supplied from B.C. Om. E.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

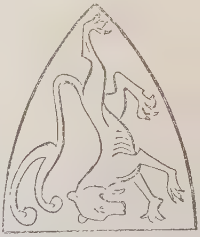
MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

fol. 10 *a.* *De coronatione regis Willelmi Primi, qui Conquestor Angliæ dicitur, interempto rege Haraldo, qui, Deo judice et vindice, propter superbiam suam periit.*[1]

A.D. 1067. Victory of William over Harold, and coronation at London.

Rog. Wen. vol. ii. p. 1. ANNO Dominicæ incarnationis M°.LXVII°., interempto rege superbo et falsidico Haraldo, dux Normannorum Willelmus, triumphator magnificus, obtenta contra sibi adversantes inopinata victoria, urbem lætus adiit Londoniarum.[2] Ubi propter suam piam justitiam et justam pietatem, necnon et militiæ suæ strenuitatem, a clero



Clipeus Haraldi.

Clipeus Willelmi, ducis Normannorum, et jam novi Anglorum regis.

---

[1] *qui Conquestor . . . . . periit*] Om. F.

[2] *Anno Dominicæ . . . Londoniarum*] These lines at the commencement of the Chronicle are written by Matthew Paris on a piece of vellum pasted down over the text as it originally stood; but the alteration was made previous to the addition of the present rubric or heading. On raising this piece of vellum carefully, the text, although partially erased, can be deciphered thus: "Anno Dominicæ incarnationis M°.LX°VII°. christianissimus dux Normannorum Willelmus ac triumphator magnificus, optenta contra Haroldum regem tam inopinata victoria, urbem adiit Londoniarum." In the initial A., as at first drawn, was inserted the shield of arms of William, viz., gules, three lions or leopards passant gardant or, but a larger and more ornamental letter was afterwards substituted, and the shield, surmounted by a crown, drawn in the margin. The shield also of Harold, azure, a lion rampant double quevé or, is introduced between the columns of text, but *reversed*, to betoken his death.

A.D. 1067. et populo cum summa exultatione susceptus, in verbo veritatis omnibus pacem et veritatem Anglis denunciavit. Cives autem, qui ab Haraldo, tiranno et improbo exactore, injustis exactionibus et angariis veluti ab altero Beornredo[1] premebantur, ipsum ducem, quasi hostiam de cœlo transmissam, in muneribus pretiosissimis, in classico campanarum, processionibus religiosorum, cum omni alacritate honorantes, ipsum regem communiter acclamaverunt. 25 Dec. Dominicæque Nativitatis die ab Aldredo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, regni diadema suscepit; timuit enim hoc munus consecrationis a Stigando, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, suscipere, eo quod illegitime occupaverat illius excellentiam dignitatis. Rog. Wen. ii. 1. Deinde, homagiis a magnatibus cum fidelitatis juramento obsidibusque susceptis, in regno confirmatus, omnibus qui ad regnum aspiraverant factus est terrori. He returns to Normandy. Civitatibus igitur et castris dispositis, propriisque ministris impositis, ad Normanniam cum obsidibus Angliæ et thesauris innumeris navigavit; quibus incarceratis et sub arcta custodia deputatis, ad Angliam denuo remeavit. Rog. Wend. ii. 2. His tyranny over the English. Et jam, Deo irato, tirannizans, commilitonibus suis Normannis terras Anglorum, qui se ipsi sponte dederant, ingrati more distribuit; et modicum illud, quod eis[2] remanserat, sub jugo posuit perpetuæ servitutis. Unde nobiliores regni servitutis ignari, indignati inconsolabiliter doluerunt. Quidam igitur ad regem Scotorum Malcolmum, quidam in Daciam, quidam in Norwegiam, quidam ad alias regiones confugerunt; malentes propriam strenuitatem et virtutem experiri, quam ingratissimo tiranno Willelmo et superbiæ subjacere Normannorum. Alii quoque loca deserta petentes, insidias Normannis parantes, multos ex eis

---

[1] *Beornredo*] Boemredo, MS. The allusion is to Beornred, the tyrannical king of Mercia. See Rog. Wend. *ad ann.* 758, 769.

[2] *eis*] illud, MS. Corrected from Wendover and the larger Chronicle in A. C. D.

Restituitur baronia episcopo Cestrensi Rogero.

A.D. 1246.

Henry restores to the bishop of Chester his baronies.

Per idem quoque tempus dominus rex, precibus amicabilibus mitigatus, episcopo Cestrensi Rogero baroniam suam, quam in manu sua idem rex seisitam tenuerat, benigne[1] restituit, et ipsum episcopum in gratiam recepit.

De mortibus quorumdam archidiaconorum; et de quodam novo statuto papæ.

Mandate of the pope to take the goods of the rich intestate clergy to his own use.

Eodemque tempore, cum per quosdam vagos et susurrones audisset dominus papa, qualiter quidam in Anglia opulenti clerici indecenter a seculo, quasi rapti Deo irato, migraverunt, proposuit bona intestatorum sibi accipere.[2] Porro magister Robertus de Hailes, archidiaconus Lincolniensis, qui, paucis elapsis annis, obierat intestatus, plura milia marcarum, cum vasis multis argenteis, seculo et secularibus, oblitus animæ suæ, dimisit. Archidiaconus quoque Bedefordiæ Almaricus, qui pecunia abundans,[3] maxima post se indecenter relicta, subito obierat, morte præoccupatus[4] repentina. Nuper quoque magister Johannes de Hotoft,[5] archidiaconus Norhamtoniæ, morbo repentino correptus, circiter v. milia marcarum, quasi æmulus memorati Roberti, cum xxx. cuppis argenteis et aliquot aureis cumque[6] infinitis jocalibus, indecenter valedicens seculo expiravit. Dominus autem papa[7] salubre statutum contra talia mala providens, ne

---

[1] *benigne*] beningne, MS.

[2] *proposuit . . . accipere*] Written on an erasure, and partly on a slip of vellum pasted over it. The original reading appears to have been, . . . *ideo* (?) *ex hoc succurere ærario.*

[3] *abundans*] habundans, MS.

[4] *præocupatus*] preocupatus, MS.

[5] *Hotoft*] The two last letters are on an erasure. In B. C., *Hotosp.*

[6] *cumque*] *que* is interlined.

[7] *autem papa*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1246. animæ periclitarentur, statuit,[1] ut si quis finiret vitam exhalando[2] intestatus, bona defuncti cederet in usus ipsius.[3] Sed cum hoc ad aures regis perveniret et[4] magnatum, reclamarunt constanter, ne hæc novitas inaudita in ecclesia scandalum parturiret.[5]

Literæ domini regis missæ abbati de Sancto Albano prohibitoriæ, pro tallagio.

Letter of the king to the abbat of St. Alban's, forbidding tallage to be paid to the pope.

Dierum autem sub ipsorum curriculo dominus rex literas suas misit prohibitorias prælatis Angliæ, ne domino papæ tallagium contribuerent, in hæc verba: "H[enricus], Dei gratia," etc. Quære residuum in Originali.[6] Dominus autem papa hæc omnia contempnens, scripsit in contrarium, ut sibi scilicet contributio indistanter solveretur, constituens executores potentes episcopum Wintoniensem et[7] Norwicensem, et quosdam alios. Qui negotium papale celeriter, nullo contradicente, manciparunt effectui, literas papales adeo fulminantes prælatis deferentes, ut nec privilegium vel indulgentia papali voluntati opponeret repagulum contradictionis. Unde angustiæ undique prælatis circumdederunt,[8] et impositum est regi silentium, in quo confidebant, ne mutiret. Et quid juvat hos regis conatus frustratorios describendo recitare, qui tam frequenter finem tam flebilem sortiuntur?

Letters of the pope to the contrary enforced by some of the prelates.

---

[1] *statuit*] Added in marg.

[2] *exhalando*] exalando, MS.

[3] *ipsius*] On an erasure.

[4] *perveniret et*] Added on to the text.

[5] In the margin opposite to these last five lines is written in red, "*dubium.*"

[6] *Quære . . . Originali*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *Inquire librum Additamentorum.* The letter is not in the "Liber Additamentorum," but in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 707), dated Westm., 1 Apr., anno r. 30.

[7] *Wintoniensem et*] Added to the text.

[8] *circumdederunt*] So corr. in marg. and written on a slip of vellum over the original text, namely, *miseros circumberunt* (*sic*).

Karleolensis episcopus Walterus resignat episcopatum suum.[1]

A.D. 1246.

29 June. Resignation of the bishop of Carlisle, who assumes the habit of a friar Preacher.

Die vero apostolorum Petri et Pauli Walterus, Karleolensis episcopus, apud Oxoniam seculum, quod diu et multum incoluerat, cum suis salutans secularibus, Prædicatorum fratrum habitum et Ordinem suscepit; eo forte quod timebat, ne legitimum, tanquam aulicus,[2] ingressum in episcopatum habuerat. Et sic alter Joseph[3] pallium suum Egiptiacæ[4] reliquit fugitivus.

Literæ missæ a Soldano Babiloniæ domino papæ.

Letter from the Soldan of Babylon to the pope.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem, domino papæ petenti pacem vel saltem treugas inter Christianos et Sarracenos a Soldano Babiloniæ, donec videlicet per regem Francorum melior status reformaretur, rescripsit idem Soldanus sic: "Præsentiæ papæ subscriptio nobilis, magni," etc. Require subsequentia in libris Historiograforum.[5] Translata fuit epistola de Arabico in Latinum, ideo non habet formam stili nostri.

fol. 140 *b.*

Qualiter Fretherícus laqueos conspirantium in necem suam evaserit.

The emperor discovers a conspiracy

Et dum mortalium status rota mundialis sic variasset, Fretherícus, quem imperatorem appellare quisque prohibetur, et quem universalis ecclesia a culmine

---

[1] In the margin is a drawing representing two arms stretched out, and holding a crosier.

[2] *tanquam aulicus*] On an erasure, and originally omitted.

[3] *sic alter Joseph*] Added to the text, and *sic* erased in the next line.

[4] *Egiptiacæ*] So also E., but here at first written *Egyptiæ*, as in B. C.

[5] *Historiograforum*] On an erasure, and in the margin is written *plurimorum*. The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 711).

A.D. 1246. imperiali præcipitavit, laqueos conspirantium in necem suam casualiter sive miraculose evasit occultatos. Super quo casu mirabili epistolam satis prolixam domino regi Anglorum transmisit, in qua totius series prosecutionis plenius continetur; quam in libris multorum[1] sedulus inspector poterit reperire. Similiter magister Walterus de Ocra, clericus Fretherici et consiliarius, ac nuncius specialis, de eodem scripsit domino regi. Quorum scriptorum summa est, quod dominus papa et ejus consilium conspiraverunt in necem ipsius Fretherici, quod absit, quia incredibile est.

formed against his life.

His letter to Henry on the subject, and letter of Walter de Ocra, the emperor's secretary.

Dominus papa novum mandatum nunciat in Angliam.[2]

Another mandate of the pope exacting money from the clergy.

Assumens igitur ex præteritis audaciam dominus papa, et confidentiam miseros Anglos apporriandi, solito imperiosius prælatis Angliæ demandavit, ut in Anglia omnes beneficiati in suis beneficiis residentiam facientes, tertiam partem bonorum suorum domino papæ per triennium conferrent; non facientes residentiam, dimidiam; multis adjectis dirissimis ac durissimis conditionibus[3] prædictum mandatum coartantibus, videlicet, "non obstante aliquo privilegio," etc. Ad quod exequendum, episcopum constituit Londoniensem.

---

[1] *libris multorum*] Originally written *libro Suplementorum*, but afterwards partially erased, and the correction made on a slip of vellum pasted above. In the margin is written *libris aliquorum*. The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 712–714), dated Salerno, 15 April, indict. 4; as also the letter of Walter de Ocra, which follows.

[2] This rubric is on an erasure, and was probably at first written, as in B. C., "*De tirannica et impudenti exigentia pecuniæ, quæ post hæc facta est in Anglia.*" In the margin, throughout the extent of this and the next chapter, is written in red letters the word *dubium*, probably to suggest their omission; but they may be found in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 716) in much the same words.

[3] *conditionibus*] The two first syllables are on an erasure.

Responsio regis et cleri huic mandato.

A.D. 1246.

The king forbids the clergy to consent to this exaction.

1 Dec.

Episcopus vero memoratus cum quibusdam aliis, quos ad hoc negotium exponendum convocarat, cum in ecclesia Sancti Pauli hoc in propatulo demonstrasset in crastino sancti Andreæ, supervenerunt missi ex parte domini regis, Johannes de Lexintona, miles elegans, facundus et strenuus, et magister Laurentius de Sancto Martino, vir eloquens et jurisperitus, domini regis clericus et consiliarius, districte ex parte domini regis prohibentes, ne illi contributioni inportabili aliquo modo consentirent. Quo autem mandato intellecto,[1] recesserunt omnes ibidem congregati. Cleri vero responsio, quæ bonis et multis fulta fuit rationibus, et prolixa, in libris plurimorum[2] plenius describitur.

Reply of the clergy to the pope.

Beatus Edmundus canonizatur.

Canonization of St. Edmund.

23 Dec.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem dominus papa timens ne canonizationem beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris, quam indies sibilis obloquentium prorogaverat, idem sanctus signipotens ultione puniret manifesta, eundem sollempniter canonizatum Dominica proxima ante Natale Domini cathalogo sanctorum merito ascripsit.[3] Cujus canonizationis auctenticum elegantissimum in libro de vita ipsius[4] poterit qui curat reperire.

---

[1] *intellecto*] intellicto, MS.

[2] *libris plurimorum*] Originally written *libro Additamentorum*, but altered on a slip of vellum pasted above. The reply is not in the "Liber Additamentorum," but in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 716).

[3] *ascripsit*] asscripsit, MS.

[4] *de vita ipsius*] Originally written *Additamentorum*, but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above. In the corresponding passage in B. the Bull of canonization is said to be written "in fine libri," and it will be found in the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 88], printed in ed. Wats, p. 156; dated Lyons, "iii°. id. Jan. [11 Jan.] pontif. anno iiii°."

A.D. 1246.

Willelmus de Eboraco eligitur in episcopum Saresbiriensem.

Election of William of York, provost of Beverley, as bishop of Salisbury.

Eisdemque temporibus canonici Saresbirienses, ne repagulum contradictionis invenirent in rege, Willelmum de Eboraco, domini regis clericum familiarissimum, Beverlaci præpositum, in episcopum et animarum suarum pastorem elegerunt; timuerunt enim minas regis, qui minabatur ecclesiam eorum ad locum pristinum revocare.[1]

Creatur abbas Westmonasterii.

Election of Richard de Crokesley as abbat of Westminster.

Eorundemque dierum circulo, defuncto piæ memoriæ Ricardo de Berkinge,[2] abbate Westmonasterii, conventus ejusdem loci Ricardum de Crokesle,[3] ipsius ecclesiæ monachum et archidiaconum, domino regi acceptum, elegit in abbatem.[4]

De mortibus quorumdam magnatum.

Deaths of various noble persons.

Eodem anno plures magnates regni Angliæ a seculo migraverunt, videlicet, circa initium[5] veris, David, princeps Northwalliæ, Johannes de Novilla, Angliæ prothoforestarius, Robertus de Bingham, episcopus Saresbiriensis. In parte Angliæ boreali, H[enricus] de Bailloil, miles. In Hoilandia, Lambertus de Muletuna, miles. Ranulphus Brito, quondam regis clericus, thesaurarius,[1] et specialis consiliarius. Item, comitissa Marchiæ, mater domini regis Angliæ, quæ se reginam fecit appellari; quæ cum mortua esset, velum habuit religionis cum corona.[2] Item, comitissa Albemarliæ, filia scilicet Alani de Galeweia.

---

[1] *timuerunt . . . . . . revocare*] Added in marg.

[2] *Berkinge*] Berkew', MS. Corr. from B.C. See Monasticon, i. 271.

[3] *Crokesle*] Crokele, MS. Corr. from B. C.

[4] *regi . . . abbatem*] Originally written *rege sic volente, elegerunt;* but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above.

[5] *initium*] medium, E.

A.D. 1246.

Annalis conclusio.

Transiit igitur annus ille satis frugifer et fructifer; Terræ Sanctæ formidolosus, Ecclesiæ universali nocivus; adversarius Imperio, regnis quoque Francorum et Anglorum deprædator; Romanæ curiæ inimicus et[3] turbulentus, Germaniæ bellicosus.

Annual summary.

Dominus rex apud Wintoniam fuit ad Natale Domini.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.XL°.VII°., qui est annus regni domini H[enrici] III. regis xxxi^{us}., tenuit idem dominus rex curiam suam apud Wintoniam, præsentibus multis electis regni magnatibus. Cui, cum illuc adveniret, occurrit episcopus Wintoniensis lætabundus, supplicans attentius, ut cum ipso suo episcopo prandere dignaretur, saltem in crastino Natalis Dominici, ut per hoc pateret omnibus manifeste, dominum regem omnes pristinas offensas exsufflasse,[4] et ipsum episcopum in præsentia omnium convivarum in consuetas amicitias revocasse. Quod secundum episcopale desiderium[5] est completum.

A.D. 1247. Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester.

He dines with the bishop, in token of reconciliation.

---

[1] *clericus, thesaurarius*] Added in marg.

[2] *quæ . . . . . corona*] Added in marg.

[3] *inimicus et*] imicus et, MS., and originally written *infamis et*, as in B. C., but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above.

[4] *exsufflasse*] exsuflasse, MS.

[5] *desiderium*] desiderium, MS.

A.D. 1247.

De conspiratione quorumdam magnatum Franciæ contra papam.

Conspiracy of some French nobles against the pope.

Diebus autem sub eisdem tepuit devotio fidelium circa matrem ecclesiarum Romanam ecclesiam, propter injuriosas pecuniæ cotidianas extorsiones; unde quidam Francorum nobilissimi contra dominum papam et Romanam curiam, in periculum totius universalis ecclesiæ et fidei Christianæ, detestabilem fecerunt conspirationem, confœderationes, juramenta et epistolas mutuas inter se fol. 141 *a.* conficientes. Quæ vix per regis Francorum peritiam et papalis mitigationis certas promissiones et cleri moderamina, cujus etiam res agebatur, est sopita. Quorum, inquam, magnatum proposita conspirationes et scripta, tam contra clerum quam dominum papam, in libris Francigenarum[1] plenius conscribuntur. Quæ poterunt perlecta admirationem, immo novum stuporem, generare.

De parlamento habito Londoniis in Purificatione beatæ Virginis.

3 Feb. Parliament held in London, and complaints made of the papal exactions.

In crastino vero Purificationis beatæ Virginis convenerat Londoniis totius regni Angliæ generalis nobilitas. Igitur coram domino rege reposita est querimonia lacrimabilis, cui pertinet rempublicam protegendo injurias[2] regno illatas propulsare, super continuas Romanæ ecclesiæ postulationes pecuniæ imperiosas.[3] Tandem de communi consilio provisum est, ut gravamina terræ domino papæ seriatim monstraturi, ad ipsam Romanam curiam nuncii discreti destinarentur, has epistolas solito mordaciores domino papæ et cardinalibus, ex parte totius communitatis cleri et populi regni Anglicani, eminus ostensuri: "Sanctissimo patri in Christo ac domino I[nnocentio], Dei providentia summo pontifici, universitas[1] cleri et populi per provinciam Cantuariensem constituti, devota pedum oscula beatorum. Cum Anglicana ecclesia," etc. Require in Rotulo curiæ.[2] In fine vero epistolæ: "Latores igitur præsentium cum supplicatione nostra ad præsentiam sanctitatis vestræ destinamus, ut pericula vobis exponant et incommoda,[3] quæ in promptu[4] sequerentur ex præmissis, et quæ nulla possumus ratione portare; licet simus in omni vinculo caritatis, obedientiæ et devotionis vobis obligati. Et quia communitas nostra sigillum non habet, præsentes literas signo communitatis civitatis Londoniarum vestræ sanctitati mittimus consignatas."[5] Item, cardinalibus similiter humiliter scriptum est.[6]

---

[1] *libris Francigenarum*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *libro Additamentorum,* and then, interlined, *et Cronicorum S. Albani.* None of the documents referred to are in the "Liber Additamentorum," but two of them (one of which is in *French*) are inserted in B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 719, 720).

[2] *injurias*] In E. is added, *omnes.*

[3] *Romanæ . . . . . . imperiosas*] Originally written, *Romanæ ecclesiæ*
vel tibus *vel ibus*
aviditates et pecuniæ extorsiones, but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above.

Letter to the pope from the province of Canterbury.

Letter to the cardinals.

Adducuntur ultramarinæ puellæ maritandæ nobilibus Angliæ.

Et dum nec adhuc memoratum concilium solveretur, Petrus de Sabaudia, comes Richemundiæ, domini regis secretissimus consiliarius, ad curiam regis, scilicet Londoniis, perveniens, secum de partibus suis longinquis

Peter of Savoy brings foreign ladies over to be mar-

---

[1] *universitas*] uiversitas, MS.

[2] *Require in Rotulo curiæ*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over an erasure of the original text, the first words of which appear to be *In rotulis* .... The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 721).

[3] *incommoda*] incomoda, MS.

[4] *promptu*] promtu, MS.

[5] *consignatas*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[6] *similiter . . . est*] On a slip of vellum pasted above the original text, which reads, *similiter. In prædicto libro reperietur*, and in the margin is added, *epistola eis missa*. The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 721.)

A.D. 1247. ried to the English nobles.

incognitas [1] Anglis genere et loco nationis puellas, nobilibus Angliæ, quos in custodia sua dominus rex educaverat,[2] adduxit maritandas. Quod multis Angliæ naturalibus et indigenis, qui se spretos censuerunt, molestum videbatur, et absurdum.

Mittuntur duo fratres de Ordine Minorum in Angliam.

Two Minorite brethren are sent into England by the pope, to collect money.

Circa eadem tempora duo fratres de Ordine Minorum, videlicet frater Johannes, de Cancia oriundus, et A[lexander], de præcepto domini papæ, urgente virtute obedientiæ, ad negotium suum de subventione pecuniari eidem,[3] a domino papa [potestatem] [4] optinentes, ad opus ejusdem destinantur in Angliam. Qui ad dominum regem primo profecti, humiliter per regnum pergendi licentiam postulabant, auxilium ad opus domini papæ caritative petituri, nullam se coertionem [5] facturos asserentes. Ex licentia igitur domini regis et benivolentia profecti sunt fratres memorati, et, prout eis injunctum a summo pontifice fuerat, diligenter exequebatur officium ac fideliter. Et cum ad Sanctum Albanum pervenissent, modeste exigebant auxilium domino papæ exhiberi, asserentes hoc monachis fore expediens, ut sic episcoporum oppressio vitaretur.[6]

---

[1] *incognitas*] incongnitas, MS.

[2] *educaverat*] educacaverat, MS.

[3] *Circa eadem .... eidem*] These lines, together with the rubric, are written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which is partly erased, but reads as follows:

Duo fratres Minores mittuntur in Angliam a Romana curia.

Cum vero fortuna præstigiosa mundo talibus alludere [read *illuderet*] *mutationibus, duo fratres de Ordine Minorum, Johannes scilicet, et cum ipso Alexander, natione Anglici ....* nearly as in C. (ed. Wats, p. 722). In B. this chapter has been erased, and subsequently written over by a hand of the 16th century (as in some other instances).

[4] *potestatem*] Supplied from C.

[5] *coertionem*] cohercionem, MS.

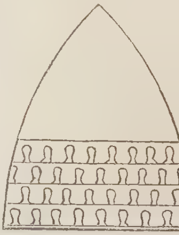
[6] *et benivolentia .... vitaretur*] Written over an erasure. Some words in the margin have also been erased.

A.D. 1247.

Promissa est domino papæ contributio undecim milium marcarum, exceptis exemptis.

A contribution of 11,000 marks granted by the clergy to the pope.

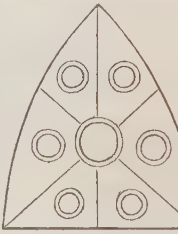
Post multas autem disceptationes,[1] quibus dicti fratres vigilanter insistebant, quas longum foret in scripta redigere, convenientes Angliæ prælati,[2] ut voluntati[3] papali in aliquo satisfacerent, ne judicaret papa ipsos erecta cervice contradicentes et rebelles, consenserunt in contributione undecim milium marcarum domino papæ in tribulatione conferendarum, exceptis tamen exemptis.



Qualiter protecti sunt exempti[4] ab arbitrio episcoporum.

The exempt religious houses are protected by the papal authority against the bishops.

Memoratus igitur frater J[ohannes] omnia[5] pacifice cupiens ordinare, postquam dicti exempti obedienter, ut prætactum est, postulatis consenserant, contra impetus episcoporum,[6] ne eos ad suum contrectarent[7] arbitrium, papali protexit, qua præpotens fuerat, auctoritate. Unde post illud tempus, tam alii exempti quam ipse abbas[8] et conventus Sancti Albani, omnibus fratribus grati existentes, amicitiores[9] extiterant, et in necessitatibus favorabiliores; et merito, cum ecclesiæ Romanæ immediate sint subjecti. Et, ut elementa mundano statui concordarent, tunc temporis hoc accidit mirabile.[10]



---

[1] *disceptationes*] In the text *deceptationes*, but interlined is *vel dis*, i.e., *disceptationes*.

[2] *prælati*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[3] *voluntati*] On an erasure.

[4] *exempti*] exepti, MS.

[5] *omnia*] On a slip of vellum pasted over the word *omni*.

[6] *episcoporum*] episcorum, MS.

[7] *contrectarent*] contretarent, MS.

[8] *abbas*] Added in marg.

[9] *amicitiores*] amiciores, MS.

[10] *Memoratus . . . mirabile*] The whole of this chapter, with the rubric, is written over an erasure of the original text. In the margin, after the word *mirabile*, is added (also on an erasure) the following note, "¶ Nota hic terræmotum in Anglia,

A.D. 1247.

De terræmotu in Anglia.

13 Feb.

Unusual earthquake in England.

Anno quoque sub eodem, idus Februarii, factus est in Anglia per diversa loca terræmotus, qui ædificia multa concutiens dampnosus[1] fuit et terribilis, eo quod insolitus. Quapropter significativus credebatur. Mare etiam, contra suum morem consuetum, non ascendit vel refluxit per duos dies, et tertio solitas metas transiens dampna finitimas irrogavit non minima.

De dampnis quæ terræmotus fecit, et maris ascensus insolitus.

Injuries inflicted by the earthquake and floods.

Per idem tempus, ut prætactum est, terræmotus memoratus cum quodam subterraneo[2] reboatu, quem Anglici patria lingua *Erhdune* vocant, structuras tam lapideas quam ligneas[3] concutiens, easdem a fundamentis dissipavit. fol. 141 *b*. Tonitrus insuper terræmotui associatus, robora miræ magnitudinis vel radicitus avulsit, vel cortice subrepto excoriavit, vel ad similitudinem plectarum vel foliorum palmarum quassata diffidit. Pastores insuper quosdam, bubulcos et agricolas, ad mortem vel

---

quæ non est cavernosa." There can be little doubt, that the text, as at first written, mentioned here the deaths of Fulk of Newcastle and of the landgrave of Thuringia (ed. Wats, pp. 724, 726), since in the lower margin we find three shields of arms drawn reversed, one of Fulk of Newcastle, *viz.*, party per fess, vaire and gules, beneath which is written in red letters, "¶ *Obiit Fulco de Castro Novo, in Purificatione beatæ Mariæ, Londoniis, domini regis consobrinus, et sepultus in ecclesia Westmonasterii;*" and two of the landgrave Henry, *viz.*, 1, gyronny of six or and azure, in each division a torteau, and a sixth in the fess point; 2, azure, an eagle displayed or. Beneath is written in red, "¶ *Obiit Andegravius Duringiæ, ad cujus promotionem, ut imperaret, dominus papa infinitam effudit pecuniam. Hic Henricus Raspe dicitur.*" The deaths of these personages are now noticed at the end of the year. See p. 31.

[1] *dampnosus*] dapnosus, MS.

[2] *subterraneo*] subteraneo, MS.

[3] *ligneas*] lingneas, MS.

membrorum mutilationem fulmen illud pestiferum;[1] necnon et torrentes agros suffocarunt.[2]

A.D. 1247.

Timuit sibi papa de vita sua, et latuit.

Emissaries are bribed to kill the emperor and pope.

The pope conceals himself at Lyons.

Diebus sub eisdem, missi sunt subdoli et multis muneribus et amplioribus promissis corrupti, ut, more Assessinorum, alterum vel utrumque, scilicet Fretherícum vel papam, interfectum veneno vel sicha raperent de medio. Unde dominus papa sibi timens, latuit inclusus apud Lugdunum in camera, quasi in carcere, multis armatis nocte dieque custoditus, vix ausus in populo verbum Domini seminare.[3]

De constantia regis Francorum.[4]

Parliament convened in France,

Eodem anno, circa medium Quadragesimæ, dominus rex Francorum omnes nobiles regni sui fecit convocari;

---

[1] A verb is here wanting.

[2] *Per idem tempus . . . suffocarunt*] This chapter, with the rubric, is rewritten on two pieces of vellum fastened down over the original text, which, although partially erased, can be read as follows:

Revocata est in irritum nova (?) *constitutio de intestatis.*

Per idem quoque tempus, propter scandalum indecenter exinde ventilatum, propter contradictionem principum [these three last words added in marg.] *revocatum est, quod paulo ante a domino papa, instigante manifesta avaritia, fuerat constitutum, et ad quod fratres Prædicatores et Minores, in da*[*m*]*pnum et scandalum ipsorum, et læsionem Ordinis eorundem, exequendum procuratores constituerat; ut videlicet bona decedentium intestatorum in proprios usus papa sibi vendicaret, maxime* [this word interlined] *tamen propter istam iniquissimam adjectionem, quæ contra omnem pietatem illi statuto addebatur, quæ scilicet talis extitit, "Quod si infirmus testamentum conditurus imbecillitate repentina præoc*[*c*]*upatus, non posset expresse verba testamenti sui exprimere, et aliquem de amicis constitueret expressorem et executorem, non staret illud testamentum, sed pro nullo haberetur." Et omnia bona talis intestati caribdis papalis deglutiret;* almost verbally as in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 724.)

[3] *vix ausus . . . seminare*] On an erasure.

[4] This rubric is on an erasure.

A.D. 1247. and the king urged to resign the cross which he had assumed.

ubi cum convenirent, dixit episcopus Parisiensis, de cujus manu idem rex, cum de infirmitate[1] sua convaluisset a portis mortis revocatus, crucem susceperat manifeste,[2] "Domine rex, resigna crucem, ne tota Francia pro tua absentia induat confusionem; eras enim tunc in extasi positus, tui impos ipsius." Cum igitur ad hoc instarent mater ejus et fratres, et etiam carta papalis persuasoria, quam adquisierant, ait rex, "Fiat voluntas vestra," et crucem in manu dicti episcopi resignavit.

He does so, but only to again assume it.

Ipsis igitur ob hoc lætantibus, post paululum dixit rex, quasi iratus, "Nunc sum compos mei et sensus integerrimi; reddite mihi crucem Domini mei Jhesu Christi. Vivit Dominus, nunquam cibum accipiam, donec cruce resigner;"[3] et reaccepit crucem, omnibus invitis et frustra reclamantibus. Ex tunc autem juravit transitum peregrinationis suæ dominus rex, et omnes optimates ejus, videntes per hoc[4] quoniam digitus [Dei][5] est. Hoc quoque anno facta est amicabilis compositio inter ecclesiam Dunelmensem et ecclesiam Sancti Albani, super visitationem ab episcopo facienda in ecclesia parrochiali, quæ est in monasterio cellæ de Thinemua. Tandem sic conquievit lis, quod in ipsa episcopus visitationis officium exercebit[6] sine onere procurationis. Hæc autem compositio plenius scribitur in thesauris utrobique depositis.[7]

---

[1] *infirmitate*] imfirmitate, MS.

[2] *manifeste*] On an erasure.

[3] *resigner*] resingner, MS.

[4] *hoc*] Interlined. In the margin also *hoc* is added after *est*, but superfluously.

[5] *Dei*] Supplied from B. C.

[6] *exercebit*] excercebit, MS.

[7] *Hoc quoque . . . . . depositis*] Added in marg., and the last four words are on an erasure, instead of which seems originally to have been written, *in libro Additamentorum . . . . . .* The instrument of agreement is given in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 727), dated May, 1247.

A.D. 1247.

Frethericus fecit omnes de Calabria et Apulia jurare fidelitatem Henrico, filio suo.[1]

The emperor causes the Calabrians and Apulians to swear fealty to his son Henry.

Dum autem horum temporum curricula volverentur, Fretherieus fecit omnes Apulos, Siculos[2] et Calabres jurare fidelitatem et facere homagium et liganciam dilectissimo filio suo Henrico, scilicet[3] nepoti domini regis Angliæ. Quod et ipse, nec mirum, nimium acceptavit.

Willelmus, comes Holandiæ, eligitur in regem Alemanniæ.[4]

William, count of Holland, elected king of Germany.

Eisdemque temporibus ira inter papam et Frethericum in tantum odium est induratum et confirmatum, quod idem papa vigilanter ad ejusdem F[retherici] confusionem ignominiosam intenderet. Electus est igitur, ipso procurante, Willelmus, comes Holandiæ, in regem Alemanniæ, quia Andegravius Duringiæ jam obierat; in cujus promotione ecclesia infinitam pecuniam effuderat. Insuper in promotionem Willelmi, novi electi in regem Alemanniæ, et in imperatorem promovendi, inæstimabilem pecuniam promittebat.

Applicat in Anglia episcopus Sabinensis, cardinalis.

The cardinal bishop of Sabina lands in England, on his

Tempore quoque sub eodem applicuit in Anglia, de licentia domini regis, episcopus Sabinensis, Romanæ curiæ cardinalis, iturus in partes boreales, videlicet in Norwagiam, ut ibidem officio legationis fungeretur, et

---

[1] In the margin, opposite this chapter is written *dubium*, in red letters.

[2] *Siculos*] Siclos, MS.

[3] *scilicet*] On an erasure.

[4] In the lower margin are drawn two shields of arms, *viz.*, 1. or, a lion rampant gules; 2, azure, on a chief gules, a demi-lion rampant or; and beneath is written in red letters, "¶ *Scutum Willelmi comitis. Primum scutum ejusdem de Holandia, aspirantis ad imperium.*"

A.D. 1247. route to Norway. in regem ungeret Hachonem, ipsius terræ regem, atque sollempniter coronaret; et apud Len prosperum ventum expectabat. Et cum tempus aptum vidisset, illuc perveniens, propositum suum ad votum consummavit.

Tres quoque fratres uterini domini regis applicuerunt.

The three uterine brothers of king Henry arrive in England.

Applicuerunt etiam tunc temporis cum eodem legato in Anglia domini regis tres fratres uterini, ex mandato ejusdem, ut de divitiis et possessionibus Angliæ uberrime ditarentur; videlicet Guido de Lizinnun, primogenitus, Willelmus de Valencia, juvenis, et Athelmarus, clericus, ætate adolescens.

Applicuit B[aldewinus,] imperator Constantinopolitanus.

Baldwin, emperor of Constantinople, comes to England.

Tempore quoque sub eodem applicuerint in Anglia vacui et esurientes, et æri regio improbe[1] inhiantes, quidam magnates advenæ et longinqui, videlicet Baldewinus, dictus imperator Constantinopolitanus, qui se finxit domini regis caute consanguineum, cum quibusdam suis fautoribus, a Græcorum finibus violenter expulsus. Qui, paucis annis ante elapsis, omnibus sacris reliquiis, quas habere potuit, in Francia venditis, et undecunque mendicata pecunia et mutuo accepta, victus, pauper et profugus, et omnibus bonis inde aufugit spoliatus, licet ipsum dominus papa fovere incepisset, et de thesauris suis ditasset. Cujus mali seminarium et causa fuit Vastagius[2] Græcus. Idem igitur imperator

His fall was caused by Vataces.

---

[1] *improbe*] On an erasure. In B. C. *patulis rictibus.*

[2] *Vastagius*] Otherwise, Vataces. See *ante*, vol. ii., p. 487.

in hiis partibus occidentis[1] accepit[2] et juvamen a domino rege Angliæ, cujus munificentiam prægustaverat, ratione consanguinitatis licet longinquissimæ, egenus postulare. A.D. 1247.

Maritatæ sunt quædam advenæ puellæ quibusdam[3] nobilibus Angliæ.

Et eodem anno, mense Maio, domino rege propter hoc a festo sancti Vitalis usque in crastinum[4] apostolorum[5] Philippi et Jacobi apud Wudestoc commorante, maritatæ sunt illæ puellæ alienigenæ, quas adduxerat Petrus de Sabaudia, Edmundo, comiti Lincolniæ, et Ricardo de Burgo, adolescentibus nobilibus valde, quos dominus rex in regia sua per aliquot annos educaverat. fol. 142 *a.* Marriage of some foreign ladies to English nobles. 28 April. 2 May.

Maritata est Aelisia, soror domini regis, J[ohanni], comiti Waranniæ. Et Johanna, filia Warini de Muntcheinsil, W[illelmo] de Valencia, fratri domini regis uterino.

Maritata est insuper Aelesia Pictavensis,[6] soror uterina domini regis, quæ nuper cum fratribus suis in Angliam venerat, Johanni de Warannia comiti, adolescentulo. Marriage of Alice, the king's sister, to John, earl

---

[1] *thesauris . . . occidentis*] With the exception of the two first syllables of *thesauris*, this is written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, now partly erased, but which appears to read, *thesauro . . . . uto, et multiplici prædicatione et indulgentia juvisset contra Vastagium, generum Fretherici, inaniter dimicantem. Egere quippe.* In the lower margin, also, are two lines (one of which has been partly cut off by the binder) which seem to have reference to this passage, namely, *auxilium impendisset; et hoc fecit Vastagius scismaticus in dampnum . . . . . . Constantinopol . . .* Cf. ed. Wats, p. 731.

[2] *accepit*] The original and better reading is *cepit*, as in B. C., but *ac* is added on the slip of vellum.

[3] *quibusdam*] quibus, MS.

[4] *crastinum*] So also B. C. It has been altered to *crastino*, but unnecessarily.

[5] *apostolorum*] apostorum, MS.

[6] *Pictavensis*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1247. Warren, and of Joanna de Muntcheini to William de Valence. Munificence of Henry to his uterine brothers.

Maritata est insuper Johanna, filia Warini de Muntcheinsillo, Willelmo de Valentia, fratri domini regis uterino, cui cito postea contulit dominus rex[1] Hertfordiam, cum castro et honore. Fratri vero suo Athelmaro, clerico, tot procuravit dominus rex conferri beneficia ecclesiastica et de prælatorum cameris,[2] fraterno affectu, ut ad episcopales, immo potius archiepiscopales, divitias ascendisse videretur.[3] Guidoni vero, fratri suo, ab Anglia recedenti, contulit dominus rex denariorum renovatorum pecuniam numerosam; similique ratione Gaufridus de Lezinun multis meruit divitiis saginari.[4]

Multi nobiles de Anglia crucesignantur.

Many English nobles take the cross.

Eodem quoque anno episcopus Wigorniensis, Willelmus Longa-spata, et Galfridus de Luci, cum multis aliis nobilibus Angliæ, exemplo regis Francorum Christianissimi et aliorum Francorum animati, cruce consignantur.

Transfertur beatus Edmundus confessor.

9 July. Translation of the body of St. Edmund, archbishop of Canterbury, at Pontigni.

Ejusdemque[5] anni sub profluvio, videlicet vii°. idus Julii, quo die translatum est nostris temporibus corpus beati Wlstani, episcopi et confessoris, non sine Dei nutu, translatum est et corpus beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris, apud Pontiniacum, in præsentia christianissimi regis Francorum Ludowici multorumque prælatorum autenticorum. Sciendumque est, immo toti mundo prædicandum, quod totum corpus ejus integrum inventum est, incorruptum et odoriferum; et, quod mirabilius est in mortuo, cum omnibus membris

---

[1] *dominus rex*] Interlined.

[2] *et de prælatorum cameris*] Added in marg.

[3] *videretur*] viderentur, E.

[4] *similique . . . saginari*] Added in marg.

[5] *Ejusdemque*] *que* is interlined.

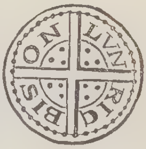
A.D. 1247.

flexibile. Capilli[1] ejus et vestimentum inviolatum colore et substantia. Et, cum vellent monachi Pontiniacenses aliquam partem sacri corporis regi dare transfretaturo, respondit rex, "Non placeat Christo, ut quod integrum tanto tempore reservavit Deus, per me peccatorem aliquo modo mutiletur.[2] Quæ autem circa eandem translationem facta sunt, quia specialem tractatum exigunt, in libris multorum[3] plenius annotantur.

De tonsura monetæ, et ejusdem renovatione.

Design for a new coinage, to prevent the clipping of the coin.

Eodem tempore moneta Anglicana, propter sui materiam desiderabilem, detestabili circumcisione intolerabiliter cœpit deteriorari; unde cœpit dominus rex de remedio cogitare. Inventa est igitur novi cunei impressio, scilicet talis, ut, manente materia et pondere, crucis brachia duplicia extenderentur.[4] In cujus denarii



---

[1] *Capilli*] Capll'i, MS.

[2] *Et, cum vellent . . . mutiletur*] Added in marg.

[3] *in libris multorum*] On an erasure, and originally written *in libro Additamentorum*, as in B. C. The detail is printed in ed. Wats, p. 161, from the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 91]. In the lower margin is written also the following addition, in reference to this Translation :

> "*Compositaque sunt hæc ad missam dicenda in beati Edmundi confessoris translatione.*
>
> Augeat in nobis, quæsumus Domine, beati confessoris tui atque pontificis Edmundi translatio gloriosa sanctæ devotionis affectum, ut quod devote petimus, de tua pietate confisi celerius impetramus, per.
>
> *Sec̃.* Oblata, Domine, sanctus pontifex tuus Edmundus hæc tuæ pietati commendat libamina, et translationis ejus insignia recolentes, tuæ conciliet majestati, per.
>
> *Post com.* Divina, Domine Deus, quæ ob translationem beati pontificis tui Edmundi supplicando libavimus, et vivis prosint ad veniam, et defunctis fidelibus ad levamen, per Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum."

[4] In the margin is a drawing of the obverse of the new coin, and by the side is written in red letters, "¶ *Altera denarii pars pristinam retinet impressionem.*" In B. the coin is rudely drawn, without inscription, and so also in the Chronicle of John of Oxnede, p. 160, and in the Chetham MS. of the "Flores Historiarum." In C. it is omitted. In E. the coin is again copied by Matthew Paris, but the inscription is carelessly given thus, ROI ƆON LON ONT. It is remarkable, that in the Chronicle of John of Wallingford, (which was abridged from the larger Chronicle

A.D. 1247. rotunditate si quid de cruce illa fuisset violatum, pro retonso haberetur et inacceptabilis.

Chorosminorum fortitudo in Terra Sancta dissipata est.

The Chorasmians are utterly destroyed in the Holy Land.

Anno quoque sub eodem Chorosminorum in Terra Sancta fortitudo numerosa, Deo ultore, dissipata penitus expiravit.

Frethericus Parmam obsedit.[1]

The emperor lays siege to Parma.

Sub eisdem diebus, cum sol ad equinoctium descenderet autumpnale, Frethericus cisalpinans versus partes festinavit Lugduni,[2] cum exercitu[3] copiosissimo; unde vehementer timebatur, ne in[4] ipsam personam papalem et cardinales, tanquam obstinatus propter induratum odium quod inter eos inveteraverat, hostiliter irrueret, cum prudenter, procurante eodem[5] domino papa, civitas Parmensis cœpit hostiliter recalcitrare, et se contra F[rethericum] communire. Quod cum audisset F[rethericus], omnes vires suas regressus contra Parmenses congregavit, et civitatem eorum hostiliter obsedit; et ædificavit in circuitu civitatem tam magnam et populosam, sicut et ipsa civitas Parmensis obsessa,[6] proponens certe eam quocunque fine occupare, sed ipsi se viriliter defendebant.

---

under the eye of Matthew Paris,) a drawing is given of this coin with a striking variation in the legend, namely, RIC. BVC ON LON. See MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII. fol. 96.

[1] In the margin has been written "Nobilis urbs," but afterwards erased.

[2] *Lugduni*] Lugdunenses, E.

[3] *exercitu*] excercitu, MS., throughout.

[4] *in*] Interlined.

[5] *eodem*] Added to the text.

[6] *obsessa*] Interlined.

Magnates Alemanniæ Willelmo, quem elegerant in regem, homagium faciunt.

A.D. 1247.

30 Sept. The electors of Germany do homage to William, count of Holland.

In crastino vero sancti Michaelis magnates Alemanniæ, ad quos jus electionis spectat, electo suo Willelmo, comiti Holandiæ, fecerunt homagium et ligantiam; et omnem adhibuerunt diligentiam, ut apud Aquisgranum[1] coronaretur, sed ipsi, qui partem foverunt Fretherici, prohibuerunt.

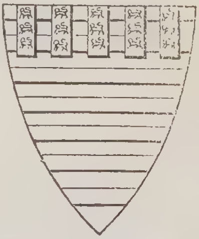
De sanguine Christi Londonias allato.[2]

ct.
lood
ist is
ved
of
nin-
the

Eodem anno, festo scilicet[3] sancti Edwardi, quod est in quindena sancti Michaelis, collatus est sanguis Christi domino regi Angliæ, et allatus usque ad Westmonasterium, ipso rege bajulante. De cujus rei veritate plenissime per literas domini patriarchæ Jerosolimitani et magistrorum militiæ Templi et Hospitalis, et archiepiscoporum et episcoporum Terræ Sanctæ testimoniales certificamur. Collata est igitur omnibus festo illo illum sacratissimum sanguinem venerantibus sex annorum et centum et sexdecim dierum[4] indulgentia. Eodemque die dominus rex fratrem suum Willelmum baltheo cinxit militari.[5]

de
ce is
ed.

Vasculum sanguinis.



Scutum Willelmi de Valentia.

---

[1] *Aquisgranum*] Aquisgrani, MS.

[2] *allato*] alleto, MS. In the margin is a drawing of the vessel ("in quodam vase cristallino venustissimo," B. C.) in which the sacred blood was carried, and above is this rubric: "¶ *Sanguis Christi allatus est et datus ecclesiæ Westmonasterii, die sancti Edwardi, a rege Henrico, et cito post, passus Christi.*"

[3] *scilicet*] Interlined.

[4] *dierum*] On an erasure.

[5] In the margin is drawn his shield of arms, *viz.*, barry of 13, azure and argent, a label of five points gules, and on each point three lions passant or.

A.D. 1247.

Electus Karleolensis in episcopum consecratur.[1]

5 Feb. Consecration of the bishop elect of Carlisle.

Eodemque tempore electus Karleolensis, dominus Silvester, videlicet die sanctæ Agathæ, in episcopum consecratur.

Rediit comes Ricardus de partibus transmarinis.

28 Oct. Return of earl Richard from foreign parts.

Die vero Apostolorum Simonis et Judæ rediit[2] comes Ricardus[3] sanus et incolumis de partibus transmarinis.

Magister Thomas eligitur in episcopum Menevensem.[4]

Thomas, archdeacon of Lincoln, elected bp. of St. David's.

Vacante eodem tempore sede Menevensi, electus est in eundem episcopatum magister Thomas, Walensis, Lincolniensis ecclesiæ archidiaconus.

Quomodo dominus rex fratres suos uterinos egregie ditaverit.[5]

Generosity of Henry to his uterine brothers.

Eodem quoque tempore, recedente Guidone fratre suo ad horam[6] ab Anglia, jussit dominus rex clitellas suas adeo impleri, ut eundem G[uidonem] equorum clitellariorum[7] necessario oportuit numerum[8] ampliare. Alteri vero fratri suo, scilicet Willelmo de Valentia, cui contulerat castrum de Hertfordia, cum honore illud contingente, addidit alias terras et possessiones amplissimas, cum

fol.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, with the word "*Consecratio*" in red.

[2] *rediit*] Written at first *redit*, but *i* inserted above.

[3] *Ricardus*] Interlined.

[4] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, with the word "*Electio*" in red.

[5] This chapter is nearly a repetition of what has been stated previously, at p. 26.

[6] *fratre . . . horam*] Added in marg.

[7] *clitellariorum*] Afterwards altered to *clitellariarum*, but erroneously.

[8] *numerum*] On an erasure.

thesauris impretiabilibus. Tertio autem, scilicet Athelmaro, clerico, tot adquisivit et contulit redditus et præbendas, ut episcopales divitias excedere videretur. A.D. 1247.

Rex Norwagiæ Haco coronatur.

Eodem anno Norwagiæ dominus rex Haco in regem coronatus est et inunctus apud Bergas, per manum Willelmi,[1] Sabinensis episcopi cardinalis, in ipsas partes destinati ad hoc, et ut ibidem legationis officio fungeretur. Coronation of Hacon, king of Norway.

Obitus quorundam nobilium.

Anno sub eodem obierunt quidam nobiles, videlicet, Andegravius Duringiæ, qui, procurante papa, electus fuit in regem Alemanniæ. Obiit etiam Fulco de Castronovo, miles, domini regis Angliæ consobrinus.[2] Die vero sanctæ Katerinæ obiit comes de Ferrariis Willelmus, vir quidem justus et pacificus, ætate centenarius, morbo podagrico longo tempore fatigatus. Eodemque mense obiit uxor ejus comitissa M[argareta] de Ferariis, ejusdem[3] ætatis, famæ ac civilitatis. Obiit quoque episcopus Menevensis, natione Walensis, pro tribulatione Walliæ morte præventus lamentabili. Obierunt insuper alii nobiles, scilicet Ricardus de Burgo [et][4] Willelmus filius-Hamonis. Deaths of personages of rank. 25 Nov.

Annalis conclusio.

Transiit igitur annus ille frugibus et fructibus uberrimus; Angliæ nocivus, Walliæ exterminator; Terræ Sanctæ inimicus, Ecclesiæ spoliator; Ytaliæ cruentus, Alemanniæ turbulentus. Annual summary.

---

[1] *Willelmi*] Interlined.

[2] See the shields of arms of the Landgrave and of Fulk of Newcastle, *ante*, p. 19.

[3] *ejusdem*] The last syllable is interlined.

[4] *et*] Supplied from E.

Dominus rex fuit Wintoniæ.

A.D. 1248. Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester. 26 Dec.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.XL°.VIII°., qui est annus regni domini regis H[enrici] III. xxxii^{us}, fuit dominus rex ad Natale Domini Wintoniæ, multis magnatibus convivantibus. In crastino autem, videlicet die sancti Stephani, cum ipsius civitatis episcopo W[illelmo] prandebat requisitus.

Multi nobiles crucesignantur.

Many nobles assume the cross.

Eodemque tempore comes Legrecestriæ Simon, et multi alii nobiles de regno Francorum et Anglorum, exemplo Christianissimi regis Francorum animati, crucem assumpserunt. Dicebatur enim passim, quod non frustra suscitavit eundem regem Dominus noster Jhesus Christus, immo ut hereditatem ejus potenter adquireret, inimicos crucis conterendo.

Ricardus Suard languet ad mortem.

Death of Richard Suard.

Diebus sub eisdem Ricardus Suard, de quo multa prædicuntur, paralisi percussus, irremediabiliter ad mortem infirmabatur.

Beatrix, mater reginæ, venit in Angliam.

Arrival of Beatrice, the queen's mother, in England.

Anno quoque sub eodem Beatrix, relicta comitis Provinciæ Reimundi, comitante Thoma de Sabaudia, quandoque comite Flandriæ,[1] ut filias suas visitaret, venit honorifice[2] in Angliam, sed[3] ante tempus vernale recessura.

---

[1] *Flandriæ*] The two last letters are on an erasure.

[2] *honorifice*] honorife, MS.

[3] *venit . . . sed*] Written over an erasure, which is continued partially over the top line of the next column, which line can still be read thus, *renovando impregnaret, venit in Angliam.*

A.D. 1248.

Obit episcopus Bathoniensis.[1]

13 Jan.
Death of the bishop of Bath.

Tempore quoque sub eodem, scilicet circa festum sancti Hyllarii, obiit episcopus Bathoniensis Robertus.[2]

Magnum fuit parlamentum Londoniis in octavis Purificationis.

9 Feb.
Parliament held at London.
The king is reproved for his exactions and extravagance.

Sub illius anni curriculo, in octavis videlicet Purificationis, edicto regio convocata totius regni Angliæ nobilitas convenit Londoniis. Et cum dominus rex auxilium pecuniare postularet, reprehensus est non mediocriter ab universitate de tam frequenti exactione, et indiscreta pecuniæ suæ et thesauri regii, in quo magna spes totius regni reposita est, dispersione et rerum dilapidatione, sine sui emendatione vel regni augmentatione.[3] In aliis quamplurimis articulis graviter redargutus est, qui Rotulis multorum[4] possunt reperiri. Ultimo autem calumpniatus est, eo quod, sicut magnifici reges prædecessores sui habuerunt, non habet dominus rex qui præsens est, justiciarium, cancellarium, nec thesaurarium per commune consilium regni, prout deceret et expediret ipsi regi et regno. Hæc autem omnia promisit dominus rex se certissime emendaturum, cum magna modestia et humilitate, per quam omnium corda mitigavit. Et respondit universitas, "Hoc videbitur infra breve tempus. Expectabimus adhuc patienter, et prout se geret dominus rex et se habebit adversus nos, et nos ei in omnibus obtemperabimur."[5] Dilata sunt

Complaints that no chief justice, chancellor or treasurer had been appointed by the council of the kingdom.

The business is postponed.

---

[1] In the margin is drawn a small crosier, reversed.

[2] *Robertus*] So also in B. C. and Edd., but an error for *Rogerus.* See previously, vol. ii. p. 495. He died 20 or 21 Dec., 1247. See "Fasti Eccl. Angl.," i. 131.

[3] *augmentatione*] aucmentatione, MS.

[4] *rotulis multorum*] Originally written *in libro Additamentorum,* but corrected partly on a slip of vellum pasted over, and by altering *mentorum* into *multorum.* These proceedings are not in the "Liber Additamentorum," but in B.C. (ed. Wats, p. 744).

[5] *obtemperabimur*] So also B. E., but in the margin is written *vel mus,* i.e. *obtemperabimus,* which is also in C.

A.D. 1248. 24 June. igitur omnia usque ad quindenam Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Sed[1] res effectu et successu[2] caruit usque in præsentem diem, secundum illud Philosophi, "Qui diu distulit, diu noluit."[3]

Confuso Fretherico, triumpharunt Parmenses.

The citizens of Parma obtain a victory over the emperor.

Anno nempe sub eodem Parmenses obsessi comperientes Fretherícum, qui eos obsederit, ad[4] ulteriora se contulisse, exierunt subito cum impetu magno, invenientesque et invadentes exercitum[5] Fretherici, qui sibi non tantum castra sed etiam civitatem sibi ædificaverat, quam Victoriam appellabat, ipsum totaliter in ore gladii dissiparunt, multosque trucidantes, reliquos in fugam compulerunt. Diruta[6] igitur ipsa nova civitate, asportantes arma, utensilia et thesaurum ipsius Fretherici, occisoque ejusdem speciali consiliario Thadæo, cives cum triumpho in civitatem suam lætantes remearunt. Hæc cum audisset Frethericus, non se præ dolore capiens, argumentose cogitavit sese vindicare, et infra breve tempus exercitu revocato, obsidionem continuavit. Hujus rei[7] eventus series, Deo disponente, ad decus ecclesiæ et dedecus F[retherici] terminum est sortitus.[8]

Thaddeus [of Sessa] killed.

---

[1] *Sed*] Set, MS. throughout.

[2] *successu*] sucessu, MS.

[3] *Sed res . . . . noluit*] Written over an erasure, and in the lower margin is a note, which appears to refer to this passage: *Sed res cum effectu usque in tempus modernum cepit dilationem.* This was written previous to the correction in the text. The authority referred to is Seneca, but the quotation, as usual, is not exact. His words are: "Qui tarde fecit, diu noluit." De Beneficiis, lib. i. cap. 1, p. 161. Cf. lib. ii. cap. 1.

[4] *ad*] al, MS.

[5] *exercitum*] excercitum, MS. throughout.

[6] *Diruta*] Dirruta, MS.

[7] *rei*] Interlined.

[8] *Deo . . . . sortitus*] Written over an erasure, the first words of which appear to have been *in libro Additamentorum.* In B. C. and ed. Wats, p. 747, the same reference is made; and at p. 164 the Letter is printed, describing the victory, from the "Liber Additamentorum." [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. f. 92.] It is also inserted in the *Flores Hist.*, falsely called "Matth. Westm."

Universitas populi pro reformatione monetæ nimis depauperatur.

A.D. 1248.

The people are impoverished on account of the new coinage.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem universitas regni popularis pro reformatione monetæ per tonsores corruptæ miserabiliter dampnificatur,[1] dum pro libra impudenter retonsa et quolibet denario usque ad inferiorem [2] circulum circumcisa, pro [3] libra vix de mensa nummulariorum marca reportaretur.[4]

fol. 143 *a.*

Fretherieus ducit uxorem, et dat nuptui filiam suam Thomæ de Sabaudia.

The emperor marries again. Marriage of his son Conrad, and of his daughter.

Eodemque anno Fretherieus, ut partem suam magis contra papam roboraret, uxorem ducit filiam cujusdam præpotentis; et Conradus, filius suus, similiter. Qui per hoc multis nobilibus sunt confœderati. Memoratusque F[rethericus] filiam suam nuptui dedit Thomæ de Sabaudia,[5] quondam comiti Flandrensi, tum quia miles erat strenuus, tum ut genus suum et Sabaudienses sibi jungeret universos.

De novis nundinis apud Westmonasterium constitutis.[6]

13 Oct. Establishment of a

Eodemque anno, celebrato sancti Eduuardi festo, jussit dominus rex denunciari et voce præconia acclamari,[7]

---

[1] *dampnificatur*] dapnificatur, MS.

[2] *inferiorem*] imferiorem, MS.

[3] *pro*] At first written *vix pro*, but *vix* erased.

[4] *impudenter . . . . reportaretur*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, partially erased, but which can be read, *vix marca de mensa nummulariorum poterat reportari. Comes autem Ricardus, optento a domino rege cunei emolumento, domino papæ crucesignatorum . . . . do thesaurum non modicum sibi (?) . . . s est.* Cf. ed. Wats, p. 748. The words *vix marca de mensa nummulariorum poterat reportari* are also written with a plummet on the lower margin.

[5] In B. C. this marriage is noticed under the preceding year, but it never took place.

[6] In the MS. this chapter is written after the next, but marked to be transposed by the letters A. B. in the margin.

[7] *acclamari*] aclamari, MS.

A.D. 1248. New market at Westminster. quod constituit novas nundinas libere exerceri[1] apud Westmonasterium, a festo sancti memorati, quod est in quindena sancti Michaelis, usque in xv. dies completos; aliis nundinis et civitatis Londoniarum mercaturis suspensis.

Capitur [civitas][2] Aquisgrani, et novus electus ibidem coronatur.

Capture of Aix-la-Chapelle, and coronation of William, count of Holland. Eodemque tempore civitas Aquisgrani, ubi ab antiquo solebant reges Alemanniæ in imperatorem promovendi in regalique cathedra ibi existente sullimari et coronari, et in regem acclamari, cum multos insultus et famem acerbam sustinuisset, nec posset eam Conradus liberare a Germanicis, reddita est eisdem. Et in cathedra[3] Karoli, ut moris est, coronatus est Willelmus, comes Holandiæ, per manum Conradi, Coloniensis archiepiscopi, die Omnium Sanctorum. 1 Nov.

De ascensu maris insolito.

Unusual inundation of the sea. 24 Nov. Anno quoque sub eodem, viii°. videlicet kalendas Decembris, mare solitos per magnum spatium terminos excedens, sibi finitimis dampna[4] intulit irrestaurabilia; luna nempe existente quarta, mare ter ascendit turgidum sine decremento notabili.

Transfretavit Norwicensis episcopus.

29 Sept. The bishop of Norwich goes to Rome. Post festum vero sancti Michaelis episcopus Norwicensis[5] transfretans, curiam Romanam, nescitur pro qua causa, aditurus. Et eisdem diebus, inundationes

---

[1] *exerceri*] excerceri, MS.

[2] *civitas*] Supplied from B. C.

[3] *cathedra*] The two last syllables are on an erasure, and the word is repeated in marg.

[4] *dampna*] dapna, MS.

[5] *Norwicensis*] Norwicensi, MS.

A.D. 1248.

pluviarum spem agriculturæ et exercitium[1] suspenderunt. Civesque, qui apud monasterium inviti in suis tentoriis Londonienses commorabantur, molestias pertulerunt.[2]

Iteratio parlamenti in quindena Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ.

8 July. The parliament reassembles.

Refusal of the king to grant their demand, touching the appointment of a chancellor and others.

Adveniente autem quindena Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ, convenit Londoniis totius Angliæ cum multis incommodis[3] nobilitas, domini regis expectans promissionem. Congregatis igitur universis, tale a domino rege dicitur responsio profluxisse: "Voluistis ad arbitrium vestrum parum civile dominum vestrum regem incurvare, eidemque satis servilem imponere conditionem, dum, quod licet unicuique vestrum, illi denegaretur. Porro licet cuilibet cujus et quolibet uti consilio. Ceterum, licet cuilibet patrifamilias quemcunque de domo sua illi vel illi officio præponere, postponere, vel deponere, quod utique domino vestro et regi temere præsumpsistis denegare. Quapropter nec cancellarium, nec justiciarium, nec thesaurarium, nisi ad beneplacitum suum, creabit vel constituet." Similiter quoque ad alios articulos,[4] super quibus increpatus fuerat, negative[5] responsum fuerat. Tandem instanter postulavit auxilium pecuniare ad jura regni requirenda, sed omnes

Pecuniary aid is refused.

---

[1] *exercitium*] excercicium, MS.

[2] *Romanam . . . . . pertulerunt*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which has been almost wholly defaced, so that only a few words can be deciphered, "*consideravit . . . quod . . . . . multum imperialium* (?) *. . . et Deo in . . . papa* (?) *. . auxilia . . . . designatis . . Anglia reddet . . . . quæ sine sp . . . . . tionis est aggressus.*"

[3] *incommodis*] incomodis, MS. This word and the two preceding are written on two small pieces of vellum pasted over an erasure.

[4] *articulos*] Written at first *arculos*, but corrected by a later hand.

[5] *negative*] Originally written *cavillatorie*, as in B.C., but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted over.

A.D. 1248. The parliament is dissolved. The king sells his plate.

quasi uno spiritu contradicebant. Soluto[1] igitur concilio, unusquisque tristis ad propria remeavit. Et tunc præcepit dominus rex vendi thesaurum suum, vasa scilicet concupiscibilia, opere pretiosa et deaurata, tantummodo pro pondere materiæ, quod nimis indecens censebatur.

De eclipsi lunæ.

1 June. Eclipse of the moon.

Anno quoque eodem, kalendas Junii, luna passa est eclipsim, statim post solis occasum.

Capta est nobilis civitas Hispaniæ, scilicet Sibilla.

Capture of Seville by the king of Castille. 23 April.

Eodem anno capta est nobilis civitas Hispaniæ Sibilla, die sancti Georgii, a victoriosissimo rege Castellæ, et Christianitatis titulo, ad honorem Domini Jhesu Christi, insignita.

De quodam horribili casu in partibus Sabaudiæ.

Several towns destroyed in Savoy by an earthquake.

Eodemque tempore,[2] in partibus Sabaudiæ, videlicet in vallibus Moriani, quædam villæ cum suis inhabitantibus, scilicet quinque, obrutæ sunt, montibus per particularem terræmotum super eas cadentibus; unde circiter vii. milia hominum et tres domus religiosorum miserabiliter perierunt.

Duo nuncii Tartarorum venerunt ad papam.

Messengers sent to the pope by the Tartars.

Anno sub eodem,[3] videlicet in æstate, venerunt duo viri, Tartarorum nuncii, ad dominum papam destinati, mandata ex parte principis eorum secretissima deferentes. Adventus autem eorum causa multos latebat; verumtamen ex sequentibus colligitur, quod memoratus rex vel princeps sacramentum baptismi et gratiam conversionis et informationis[1] in lege Domini nostri Jhesu Christi postulabat; quibusdam tamen adjectis conditionibus, quæ ad notitiam nostram nondum pervenerunt. Dominus autem papa serenissimum vultum eisdem[2] nunciis ostendit, et munera contulit pretiosa, fol. 143 *b.* et ipsos escarleto et cisimis[3] decenter vestivit. Dicebatur quoque, quod domini papæ propositum fuit, inde quoque tractatum fuit[4] secretius, ut si Christianismi titulo insigniretur rex ille Tartarorum, ipsum mitteret cum omnibus viris et viribus suis super Vastagium[5] Græcum, generum Fretherici, scismaticum[6] Christianæ fidei,[7] domino papæ et imperatori Baldeuuino rebellem, et postea super ipsum Fretherricum, contra Romanam curiam recalcitrantem. Ad quod nuncii mutuum odium Christianorum detestantes, per interpretes, quos plures habebant intermedios, responderunt, quod non erat suum imponere domino suo talem[8] conditionem. Sed vehementer formidabant, ne et hoc dominus eorum graviter, cum audiret, acciperet exasperatus.[9]

---

[1] *Soluto*] Solito, MS., but corrected by a later hand in marg.

[2] In the margin is written with a plummet, "Anno Dni. M°.cc°.xl°.iiii°.;" but this event is entered under the present year also in B. C.

[3] *eodem*] eo, MS.

A.D. 1248.

Object of the pope in receiving these messengers favourably.

De mortibus multorum virorum nobilium.[10]

Hoc autem anno mortuus est in Anglia Robertus,[11] episcopus Bathoniensis, circa festum sancti Hillarii. Ricardus vero Suard letifera[12] paralisi tempore vernali

13 Jan. Deaths of many noble personages.

---

[1] *informationis*] imformacionis, MS.

[2] *eisdem*] The last syllable added in marg.

[3] *cisimis*] cisiminis. E. In B. C. *de pellibus variis cisimorum.*

[4] *fuit*] Added in marg.

[5] *Vastagium*] Vastigium, MS., Battatium, C.

[6] *scismaticum*] cismaticum, MS.

[7] *Christianæ fidei*] Added in marg.

[8] *talem*] On an erasure.

[9] From the words *Dicebatur quoque* to the end of the chapter is marked in the margin, in red letters, "*dubium.*"

[10] In the margin are drawn two mitres and crosiers, reversed.

[11] *Robertus*] Read *Rogerus*, as in a previous passage, p. 33.

[12] *letifera*] litifera, MS.

A.D. 1248. percussus est. Episcopus Dunelmensis Nicholaus episcopatum suum resignavit;[1] et sic tanquam mortuus[2] factus est, et vacavit sedes episcopalis. Et circa festum apostolorum Simonis et Judæ obiit[3] Walterus Mauclerc, quondam episcopus Karleolensis. Obiit quoque abbas de Waltham[4] Ricardus, vir quidem eximiæ sanctitatis et religionis expertæ. Obiit quoque magister Symon de Langetuna, archidiaconus Cantuariensis, frater archiepiscopi Cantuariensis. Qui quandoque Lodowico specialissimus cancellarius extitit et consiliarius.[5] Obiit quoque comes Patricius de regno Scociæ, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani perturbator cavillosus. Eodemque anno obierunt tres theologi, quibus non erant majores, immo nec pares, in omni, ut creditur, mundi latitudine, videlicet, magister Johannes Blundus, canonicus ecclesiæ Eboracensis, et magister Robertus Bacun, et magister Ricardus de Fishakele,[6] de Ordine Prædicatorum, egregii prædicatores et lectores. Eodemque anno frater Matheus, hujus opusculi compositor, ex præcepto domini papæ missus est in Norwegiam, ad reformandum Ordinem sancti Benedicti in cœnobiis monachorum Nigri Ordinis; hoc ductus auctentico.

28 Oct.

Deaths of three famous theologians of the Order of Preachers.

Mission of Matthew Paris to Norway to reform the monasteries there.

Letter of pope Innocent IV. to the abbat of St. Alban's.

"Innocentius, etc., dilecto filio, abbati Sancti Albani in Anglia, Ordinis sancti Benedicti, etc. Cum, sicut ex parte dilecti filii . . . . ,[7] abbatis monasterii de Holm, Ordinis sancti Benedicti, Nidrosiensis diocesis,[8] fuit propositum coram nobis, idem monasterium, propter prædecessorum suorum negligentiam, sit in hiis, quæ ad monasticum ordinem pertinent, deformatum, nec inveniatur in partibus illis qui statuta et observantias ejusdem Ordinis bene sciat, nos, ad supplicationem ipsius abbatis, discretionem[1] tuam rogamus attentius et hortamur, per apostolica tibi scripta mandantes, quatinus dilectum filium, fratrem Matheum,[2] monachum tuum, qui dicitur probatæ vitæ ac religionis expertæ, ad idem monasterium, ut dictum abbatem et monachos suos in regularibus disciplinis et statutis, quæ ad eundem Ordinem pertinent, informet et instruat, transmittere, pro divina et apostolicæ sedis ac nostra reverentia, non postponas. Datum Lugduni, v. kalendas Decembris, pontificatus nostri anno v°."[3] A.D. 1248. 27 Nov.

---

[1] In the margin is the word "*resignatio*," in red, with a small crosier falling down. Nicholas de Farnham resigned "Purificatione beatæ Mariæ [2 Feb.] imminente" 1249. (ed. Wats, p. 759.)

[2] *tanquam mortuus*] At first written *mortuus tanquam*, but marked to be transposed.

[3] *obiit*] Repeated by error, but underscored for omission.

[4] *Waltham*] Valtham, MS.

[5] *Cantuariensis . . . consiliarius*] Written over an erasure. In all probability the text stood originally as in B. C., *qui si ecclesiæ suæ, videlicet Cantuariensis, persecutor et perturbator fuisset, non est mirandum.*

[6] *Fishakele*] Fixacle, C., but in marg. *Fissacre.*

[7] A blank is left for the name, which is omitted also in B. C.

[8] In the margin is added this note: "Sciendum est, quod monachis subjecta est una optima insula juxta Thurndeñ [Throndheim] archiepiscopatum, et omnes domus religionis illius regionis illi domui subjacent."

Foundation of the abbey of Holm in Norway.

Sciendum quoque, quod in regno Norwagiæ [inter][4] omnes domus religiosorum Nigri Ordinis supereminet illa domus, quæ dicitur abbatia de Holm, et est de Sancto Benedicto. Et ipsam fundavit rex magnificus Angliæ, Daciæ et Norwagiæ Cnuto, qui et in Anglia quandam domum fundavit in honorem ejusdem sancti Benedicti, videlicet sic nominatam, Sancti Benedicti de Holm. Et idem rex abbatiam nobilissimam Sancti Edmundi instauravit,[5] ampliavit, et monachos instituit.[6] Sciendum insuper, quod in regno memorato, scilicet Norwagia, in monte Sellio est quædam abbatia de Sancto Albano, Anglorum prothomartire.[7]

Abbey of St. Alban's in Norway.

---

[1] *discretionem*] discrescionem, MS.

[2] *Mathæum*] Written *Mathm̃* in the text, and *Matheum* in the margin above.

[3] This date of 27 Nov. 1247 (reckoning from the election of pope Innocent in June 1243) is not given in B. C. Another copy of this letter is entered in the handwriting of Matthew Paris in the "Liber Additamentorum," [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. f. 92 *b*,] but without date.

[4] *inter*] Omitted in MS.

[5] *instauravit*] On an erasure.

[6] *ampliavit . . . instituit*] Added in marg.

[7] From the words *Eodemque anno frater Mathæus* . . . to nearly the end of the chapter, a red line is drawn perpendicularly in the margin, connecting the syllables of the words "*Ne cu-re-tur*;" probably meant by the author to indicate that this portion should be omitted by the copyists of his work.

A.D. 1248.

Nota iterum terræmotum in Anglia.

Earthquake in England.

Eodemque anno, quarta die ante Natale Domini, factus est terræmotus in Anglia, ita ut, secundum domini episcopi Bathoniensis, in cujus diocesi magis evenit, assertionem, dissipatæ sunt maceriæ ædificiorum, et lapides de locis suis avulsi in muris hiatus patulos fecerunt et ruinas. Tolus quoque lapideus, magnæ quantitatis et ponderis, qui per diligentiam cæmentariorum in summitate ecclesiæ de Welles ad decorem ponebatur, raptus de loco suo, non sine dampno fabricæ culminis, cecidit; et cum ab alto rueret, tumultum reddens horribilem, audientibus timorem incussit non minimum. In quo etiam terræmotu hoc accidit mirabile. Caminorum, propugnaculorum,[1] et columpnarum[2] capitella et summitates, cum epistiliis, commotæ sunt, bases vero et fundamenta, cum partibus inferioribus,[3] nequaquam; cum contrarium potius naturaliter, ut videtur, debuit evenire, et[4] cum terra motum talem, non aer turbinem, pateretur. Et notandum, quia notabile est,[5] ille terræmotus tertius fuit, qui in hoc proximo evenit triennio, in partibus Cisalpinis; unus in partibus Sabaudiæ, duo in Anglia, quod a seculis est inauditum.

¶ *Nota mirabile inauditum.*

The third earthquake in the course of three years.

Annalis conclusio.

Annual summary.

Transiit igitur annus ille aere temperatus et serenus, horrea frugum replens abundantia,[6] et torcularia vinis reddens redundantia,[7] ita ut summa frumenti ad duorum descenderet pretium solidorum. Verumtamen Terræ Sanctæ hostilis, Ytaliæ inimicus; Germaniæ letifer, Franciæ et Angliæ depredatorius; mundialis termini multiplicibus argumentis indicativus. Totaque hiems in vernam versa est temperiem; videres igitur arbores in Februario regerminare, et aviculas, velut in Aprili, canendo lascivire. A.D. 1248.

---

[1] *propugnaculorum*] propungnaculorum, MS.

[2] *columpnarum*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[3] *cum partibus inferioribus*] On an erasure.

[4] *et*] Interlined.

[5] *notabile est*] On an erasure, except the first two syllables.

[6] *abundantia*] habundantia, MS.

[7] *redundantia*] The first two syllables are on an erasure.

fol. 144 *a*.

Dominus rex Londoniis fuit ad Natale.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.XLIX°., qui est annus domini regis H[enrici] III. xxxiiius., fuit idem dominus rex ad Natale Domini Londoniis. In qua etiam sollempnitate comes Ricardus, frater ejus, fuit apud Walingeforde, cum copiosa magnatum[1] multitudine convivantium. Comes insuper Gloverniæ in partibus Walliæ conterminis, juxta Gloverniam, non minoris gloriæ secularis curiam suam eisdem diebus sollempniis serenavit. Et dum ibidem dominus rex moraretur, venit comes Legrecestriæ Simon, rediens de partibus Wasconiæ, illuc ad regem, enarrans ei, quomodo de Guastone, filio comitissæ Biardæ, et de aliis domini regis proditoribus gloriose triumpharat.

A.D. 1249. Henry keeps Christmas at London, and earl Richard at Wallingford.

Return of Simon, earl of Leicester.

A civibus Londoniarum extorquetur pecunia.

Anno quoque sub eodem dominus rex a civibus[2] Londoniarum, non obstantibus piis[3] petitionibus vel libertatibus, duo milia librarum sub brevi termino persolvendarum exegit.[4] Ab abbatibus vero sigillatim juvamen pecuniare, et prioribus, precibus imperiosis postulavit,[5] harum literarum tenorem illis transmit-

The king extorts money from the citizens of London. He demands a loan from

---

[1] *magnatum*] mangnatum, MS.

[2] *civibus*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[3] *obstantibus piis*] Partly on an erasure.

[4] *exegit*] On an erasure.

[5] *postulavit*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

A.D. 1249. the abbats and priors. tendo: "H[enricus], Dei gratia, etc. Universis abbatibus et prioribus constitutis in comitatu Esexiæ et Hertfordiæ, salutem." Respice quæ sequuntur in Rotulis super hoc confectis.[1]

Rex, accepto episcopatu Dunelmensi in manu sua, elaborat, ut Athelmarus, frater ejus, substituatur.

The king takes the bishopric of Durham into his own hands. He endeavours to secure the election of his brother Athelmar as bishop. Walter de Kirkeham, dean of York, is elected.

Resignato autem episcopatu Dunelmensi, ut prætactum est, rex episcopatum in manus suas ilico suscepit, et ab omnibus ipsius episcopatus hominibus magnam cepit[2] pecuniam. Et, misso ad conventum Dunelmensem magistro Laurentio de Sancto Martino, petiit instantissime et elaboravit vigilanter, ut Athelmarus, frater ejus, ibidem substitueretur, in episcopum electus Dunelmensem. Sed conventus ejusdem A[thelmari] considerans juventutem,[3] Walterum de Kirkeham, decanum Eboracensem, optenta eligendi licentia, unanimiter in episcopum et pastorem suarum elegit animarum. Assignata sunt igitur episcopo Nicholao, ad sui sustentationem,[4] tria maneria, Hovedene videlicet, cum pertinentiis, Stoctuna, et Esintona. Rex autem, ut fructus episcopatus colligeret,[5] electo de die in diem in funiculo pendentis spei favorem protraxit, moleste ferens[6] quod frater ejus non eligebatur, ut quamplures opinabantur. Erat namque[7] electus memoratus vir idoneus per omnia, et multa merito domino regi familiaritate conjunctus, et qui eidem in arduis nego-

---

[1] *Respice . . . confectis*] Written on an erasure. The king's writ is in B.C. (ed. Wats, p. 759). E. reads, *in Rotulo Scaccarii.*

[2] *magnam cepit*] On an erasure, with the exception of the first two letters, but the corresponding correction in the margin is *magnam accepit.*

[3] *juventutem*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[4] *sustentationem*] sustencionem, MS.

[5] *colligeret*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[6] *moleste ferens*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[7] *namque*] nanque, MS. throughout.

A.D. 1249.

tiis servierat. Nec erat in eo offendiculum reprobationis, nisi senium; et magna fuit quondam capitis reverentia cani.

Fretherici fama et potestas declinat.

The fame and power of the emperor decrease daily.

Marcellinus, bp. of Arezzo, hung, by order of Frederic.

His subsequent defeat.

The body of the bishop buried by the Minorites.

Ipsis quoque temporibus, Fretherici fama et potestas magnum diatim suscepit[1] decrementum; et merito. Desævit enim tirannice in personas ecclesiasticas,[2] nec pepercit viris religiosis, nec etiam episcopis. Inter quos suspendi jussit dominum Marcellinum, Arethimum episcopum,[3] apud Victoriam, ab eodem F[retherico] fundatam, sed titulis fidelium ascribendam. Hoc autem est[4] actum non sine stupendo miraculo, tertio videlicet die ante suum et loci illius exterminium. Et sequebatur tertio die sequenti magna Fretherici confusio. Exercitu[5] enim ejus turpiter dissipato, exturbato et aufugato, interemptus [est][6] magnus ejusdem Fretherici consiliarius Thadeus, qui in concilio Lugdunensi pro viribus nitebatur eundem F[rethericum] justificare. Fratres autem Ordinis Minorum corpus sancti martiris, videlicet de quo superius fecimus mentionem, episcopi, clanculo de loco pœnali pie de nocte rapuerunt. Et, factis pro eo sollempnibus pro posse exequiis, illud honorifice, quod eisdem versum in honorem et commodum,[7] intumularunt.[8]

---

[1] *suscepit*] Added in marg.

[2] *ecclesiasticas*] Added above the line.

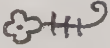
[3] See a fuller account of this, *postea*, p. 52.

[4] *est*] Interlined.

[5] *Exercitu*] Excercito, MS.

[6] *est*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[7] *commodum*] comodum, MS.

[8] *Et sequebatur . . . tumularunt*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which, although partially erased, can be read as follows: *triumphale. Hujus autem eventus seriem in epistola elegantissima et prolixa in Majoribus Cronicis scripta sedulus indagator poterit invenire ad hoc signum* * *Quæ epistola auditu*

* This epistle of Cardinal Reinerius of Viterbo to the pope is inserted in MS. B., fol. 229 *b*, with the same mark of reference annexed as above; also in C, (ed. Wats, p. 761).

A.D. 1249.

De maxima confusione, quæ contigit Wintoniensibus.

Punishment of the robbers at Winchester and the neighbourhood.

Tempore autem instante Quadragesimali, cum apud Wintoniam et in[1] Wintoniæ[2] partibus supra modum latrones multiplicarentur, et Henricus de Mara, justiciarius itinerans, et socii ejus illuc destinati ad mundandum patriam a tali peste, nec, propter multitudinem latronum ad invicem confœderatorum, profecissent, contigit quod dominus rex illuc adventaturus,[3] præmitteret vina sua; quod cum latronibus memoratis innotuisset, positis insidiis, omnia rapuerunt, et duces ac veredarios[4] vulneraverunt et spoliaverunt, cachinnando et dicendo, cum de vinis usque ad ebrietatem biberent, "Bibite, amici, et inebriamini carissimi."[5] Eodemque tempore, duo mercatores de Brebancia, de ducentis marcis spoliati in eisdem partibus, querimoniam super tam enormi injuria coram domino rege lacrimabiliter ac clamose[6] reponentes, ipsum dominum regem usque ad cordis amaritudinem commoverunt. Dixit igitur rex, "Quid adhuc expectamus? Ecce jam latronibus invadimur multiplicatis!" Et venit in propria persona iratus nimis Wintoniam. Et, convo-

---

horribilis ad multos cum evenisset, medullas auditorum penetrando contra Frethericum hostiliter omnes erexisset, nisi curia Romana maculis symoniæ et usuræ, et aliorum vitiorum coinquinaretur. Sed heu! heu! quod sine lacrimis non possumus recitare, cruentissimus hominum adhuc favorem retinet, in odium curiæ memoratæ. Equinimius [sic pro *Æquanimius*] *enim laici deliramenta populus sustinet, quam ipsius, qui speculum morum esse universo mundo reveretur.* Cf. B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 763). In the margin also is added the following note, referring to the latter part of the passage, as corrected: *Fratres autem Minores corpus defuncti, quia sanctum, petierunt, et honorifice penes eos sepelierunt; et hoc in epistola scribitur.*

[1] *et in*] On an erasure.

[2] *Wintoniæ*] Vintonie, MS.

[3] *adventaturus*] At first written *adventurus.*

[4] *veredarios*] veradarios, MS.

[5] *Bibite . . . carissimi*] On an erasure.

[6] *clamose*] clammose, MS.

catis in castro Wintoniæ civibus[1] Wintoniæ et Suhantoniæ et partium adjacentium omnibus ballivis, jussit, postquam intrassent, valvas claudi[2] castri. Et, facta diligentissima et subtilissima inquisitione, cum minis et terribilibus juramentis, quod[3] veritatis archana usque ad plenam certificationem perscrutabitur, ita, ut de regis subtili astutia, omnes vehementer admirarentur. Cujus rei prudentissima executio prolixius ac manifestius [in][4] Rotulis clericorum domini regis poterit inveniri.[5] Sed, ut brevibus expediamus, circiter centum[6] convicti suspendio perierunt. Nec est ipsa curia regis munda inventa a latrocinii contagione. A.D. 1249. fol. 144 b.

De pugna[7] inter scolares et burgenses Cantebrugiæ.

Quarrel between the scholars and burgesses of Cambridge.

Per idem tempus, scilicet in Quadragesima, ex levi occasione orta est discordia apud Cantebrugiam inter scolares et burgenses. Ex qua post lites, pugnæ,[8] spoliationes, domorum confractiones, vulnera et homicidia sunt secuta. Ascendit igitur clamor querulus ad regis audientiam, cum gravi offensa; unde utrobique dampnum et scandalum ventilatum jacturam non minimam suscitavit. Hoc dignum non arbitror silentio, quia, instante humani generis inimico, qui scit de scolaribus nobiles ecclesiæ columpnas surrecturas, de more, in sancto tempore Quadragesimali inter clericos et laicos discordia suscitatur, ut simul cum sacro tempore personæ nobiles violentur.

---

[1] *civibus*] On an erasure.

[2] *claudi*] Added in marg.

[3] *quod*] Added in marg.

[4] *in*] Omitted in MS.

[5] *inveniri*] invenri, MS. From *Rotulis* to *inveniri* is written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which, although much erased, may yet be deciphered thus, *in libro Additamentorum poterit inveniri.* A fuller detail of the affair is in B.C. (ed. Wats, pp. 760, 761), but it does not appear in the "Liber Additamentorum."

[6] *centum*] triginta, B. C.

[7] *pugna*] pungna, MS.

[8] *pugnæ*] pungne, MS.

A.D. 1249.

Quomodo Fretherícus potionem[1] et balneum intoxicatum evasit.

Escape of the emperor from a poisoned draught and bath.

Eodem tempore Fretherícus diversis et arduis causis exagitatus, qui citra montes in ira magna venerat, revocante eum urgentiori negotio, scilicet Parmensium[2] rebellione, cum confusione in Apuliam est reversus. Qui cum infirmaretur, purgatione indiguit medicinali et balneo. Sed, procurantibus Petro de Vineis, consiliario suo speciali, et ejus phisico, in quibus anima sua confidebat, intoxicata fuit medicina, similiter et balneum. Super quo præmunitus Fretherícus, fecit duos[3] morti addictos[4] mortis haurire potionem et balneum intrare, et ilico expirarunt. Fecit igitur tam Petri quam phisici oculos erui. Et quia Pisani letaliter oderant Petrum, pro quibusdam[5] meritis, missus eis est ad eorum arbitrium occidendus. Quod cum Petro innotuit,[6] ait illud Senecæ, "Heu mihi! quia semivivus[7] arbitrio hostium meorum sum perimendus; quia arbitrio inimicorum mori, est bis mori."[8] Et statim ad columpnam, ad quam vinctus fuit, caput suum fortiter allidendo seipsum excerebravit.

Death of Peter de Vinea.

Rex Francorum in Cypro hiemans, penuriam patitur cibariorum, sed cito ei succuritur.

Louis IX. winters at Cyprus, and sends

Per idem tempus, cum dominus rex Francorum in[9] Cypro insula hiemans moraretur, et penuriam cibariorum pateretur, misit comitem de Bar et dominum de

---

[1] *potionem*] pocionacionem, MS. Corr. from B.C.

[2] *Parmensium*] In the text *pmensium*, and *Par* afterwards written in the margin.

[3] *duos*] duos reos, E.

[4] *morti addictos*] Added in marg.

[5] *quibusdam*] The last syllable interlined.

[6] *innotuit*] In the text *innuit*, but corr. in marg.

[7] *semivivus*] semivius, MS.

[8] This quotation is not in Seneca's works, as published. See vol. ii. p. 220.

[9] *in*] Interlined.

A.D. 1249.

to the Venetians for provisions.

Beugiu ad Venetos et alios vicinarum insularum, litorum et urbium incolas, petens obnixius,[1] ut sibi, qui pro ecclesia universali militavit, in cibariis saltem venalibus subvenirent. Cui Veneti miserentes et miserantes, sex magnas naves frumento, vino, carne, ficubus, amigdalis, uvis passis, et aliis victualium generibus onustas, liberaliter transmiserunt.[2] Quod autem Fretherieus cum audisset, ne inferior[3] civibus videretur, transmisit eidem uberiora; unde rex, ne ingratus videretur, supplicavit devotissime domino papæ, ut ipsum F[rethericum] in gratiam suam susciperet, acceptans aliquam pacis formam ab humiliato, ne paganismus de discordia tanta[4] lætaretur, et Christianitas perturbaretur, et ne peregrinationis suæ inceptum negotium præpediretur.

The emperor sends supplies to Louis.

Henricus, filius imperatricis Ysabellæ, supplicat pro rege Angliæ.

Et circa idem tempus sollicitavit Henricus, filius Fretherici et imperatricis Ysabellæ, regem Francorum precibus humillimis,[5] obsecrans pluries per plures, per quos pretiosissima munera eidem transmiserat, pro rege Angliæ, avunculo suo, quatinus pro salute animæ suæ, sic[6] pius ac justus peregrinus, jura reddat ipsum contingentia, ne peccatum patris, ira traduce, in in-

Henry, son of the empress Isabel, solicits Louis in behalf of the king of England.

---

[1] *obnixius*] obnoxius, MS., as elsewhere.

[2] Here is added in the margin the following note: "Ibi missi fuerunt ad eum nuncii Soldani Babilonis, qui optulerunt formam [pacis] Christianis valde utilem et honorabilem; obstitit autem infeliciter magister Odo, frater de Ordine Prædicatorum." It is marked for insertion in the text, but disturbs the narrative. It is omitted in B.C., but in E. is found in the text directly after the mention of the arrival of the king of France in Cyprus. According to Michaud, "Histoire des Crusades," iii. 136, this mission was not sent till after the capture of Damietta.

[3] *inferior*] imferior, MS.

[4] *tanta*] Interlined.

[5] *humillimis*] humilimis, MS.

[6] *sic*] So also B. C., but in Edd. altered to *sit*. Perhaps we should read *sicut*.

A.D. 1249. sontem filium transfunderetur truculenter, et negotium Crucis, Deo vindice, retardaretur. Jussitque tam Fretherìcus quam filius ejusdem H[enricus] memoratus, eodem tempore, ne per Siciliam, Calabriam et Apuliam cibaria venalia domino regi Francorum negarentur; similiter pro rege Anglorum supplicando.[1] Prædictæ autem patris et filii petitioni sic dicitur pius rex Francorum respondisse, "Per sanctissimam[2] qua signor crucem, libenter vellem precibus et desiderio utriusque obsecundare, si consilium meum permitteret, et ipsum Henriotum mihi habere collateralem et adoptivum." Idem autem rex Francorum, in sua petitione prætacta, papam durum invenit et inexorabilem.

Reply of the king of France.

Venerunt in Angliam archiepiscopus Rothomagensis et episcopus de Tortosa.

Arrival of the archbp. of Rouen and bp. of Tortosa in England.

Et in Paschali sollempnitate archiepiscopus Rothomagensis, vir quidem sanctus et discretus et frater de Ordine Minorum,[3] natione Francus, venit in Angliam, ut quasdam terras, quæ in Anglia sunt et ecclesiæ Rothomagensi pertinere dinoscuntur, a quibus, cum a Normannis possessiones in Anglia nuper auferebantur, spoliabatur, ad suam revocaret, facto ob hoc domino regi Anglorum homagio, ditionem. Et, quod petiit a domino rege, liberaliter optinuit. Et eodem tempore episcopus de Tortosa, quæ est in Siria, natione Anglus, in Angliam venit, gratia natale solum et, si quos inveniret, parentes visitandi. Qui cum ad patriam suam, quæ juxta Radingum fuit, venisset,[4] nec domum nationis suæ nec parentes inveniret, dolens reversus est. Hic requisitus inquirentibus enarravit, quod qui residui fuerant in Terra Sancta Chorosmini sese ad invicem, Deo ultore, cujus natale solum coinquinaverant, interfecerant. Principes quoque Sarracenorum, qui sese guerris mutuis infestaverant, contra regis Francorum adventum concordati sunt. Soldanus autem Babiloniæ, qui vel eorum præcipuus, vel de præcipuis esse dinoscitur, eidem regi significavit, quod Sarraceni ipsum fol. 145 *a.* regem et ejus exercitum, si in decuplo major esset, alacres expectant, ut bellum conserant cum eodem campestre ac generale; et cui sors victoriam contulerit, optatam teneat monarchiam. A.D. 1249. News from the Holy Land.

---

[1] *similiter . . . . . supplicando*] Added in marg.

[2] *sanctissimam*] sanctitissimam, MS.

[3] *Minorum*] In E. is added, *Riganus nomine.*

[4] *venisset*] Added in marg.

De magnatibus Londoniis convenientibus.

Ad clausum Pascha convenerunt magnates Angliæ Londoniis, ut, quod dominus rex sæpe promiserat, saltem tunc benivolus adimpleret, videlicet de cancellario, justiciario et thesaurario per communam regni constituendis. Sed cum omnia postularentur, breve responsum reportarunt, videlicet, quod nimis cupiebant dominum suum in servitutem redigere, ut, quod cuilibet eorum licet facere, eidem facere non liceret. Et sic dominus rex ad ulteriora se[1] transtulit jam remotus. 11 April. Meeting of the nobles at London, whose demands are refused by the king.

De fratribus Prædicatoribus et Minoribus de Cruce prædicantibus.

Eisdemque temporibus, fratres Prædicatores et Minores prædicationibus suis intendentes,[2] necnon et alii in peritia prædicandi expediti et eruditi, prædicando

---

[1] *postularetur . . . . ulteriora se*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which, although partially erased, can be read thus, *se certissime sperarent accepturos, comitis Ricardi absentia, qui se, ut dicebatur, gratis absentaverat, progressum negotii penitus impedivit. Ad partes enim Cornubiæ se ante hoc, quasi ex industria;* nearly as in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 765).

[2] *intendentes*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249. et in agro Domini semina profutura spargentes, fructum fecerunt multiformem. Et, ut fideles Christi præmio tantæ veniæ, quam in negotio Crucis promittebant cruce signandis,[1] minime frustrarentur, secundum uniuscujusque possibilitatem redemptionem benigne susceperunt, ut penes Domini largam munificentiam prompta [2] voluntas pro facto reputaretur. Considerarunt namque, quod mulieres, parvuli, valitudinarii, ac plebei pauperes et inermes parum contra infidelium multitudinem proficerent communitam.[3]

Multiplicatur infamia Fretherici.[4]

The ill fame of the emperor Frederic increases in consequence of the execution of the bishop of Arezzo.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem Fretherici fama cœpit non mediocriter denigrari, dominum enim Marcellinum, episcopum Aretinum, irreverenter nimis, postposito Dei timore et contempta ecclesiæ sanctitate, viliter fecit trahi ad patibulum, in eo miserabiliter suspendendum. Positis vero custodibus, ac triduo episcopus furcis pendens miserum spectaculum et toti ecclesiæ probrosum præbuit intuentibus. Minores tandem fratres sanctum [1] corpus intumularunt dampnati [2] episcopi, et [3] illud Fretherici carnifices de tumulo extrahentes, ac per lutum trahentes, iterum suspenderunt, non deponendum absque novi Pilati licentia speciali. Aliosque ecclesiæ eminentes personas, prælatos sanctos, adeo odibiliter persequebatur, ut multorum gratiam amittere cœpit et favorem. Hæc autem in epistola plenius conscripta in libro Additamentorum poterunt reperiri.[4]

---

[1] *cruce signandis*] Originally written after *frustrarentur* (and so copied in E.), but marked to be transposed.

[2] *prompta*] promta, MS.

[3] *suis intendentes . . . communitam*] Written on a piece of vellum fastened down over the original text, which has been partially erased, but can be thus deciphered, *diligenter jam questuosis intendentes, et pro negotiis Crucis multum laborantes, homines cujuscunque ætatis, sexus, vel conditionis, immo etiam valitudinarios, cruce signaverunt, prædicando et usque ad faucium raucitudinem clamitando. Sed in crastino, vel incontinenti pro quantocunque pretio crucem reaccipientes, signatos a voto peregrinationis absolvebant, et in ærarario* (sic) *alicujus potentis coacervabant. Quod simplicibus videbatur inconveniens et absurdum. Et exsuf[f]lata est multorum devotio, quia quasi oves pro velleribus venundabatur; unde non minimum scandalum est exortum;* very much as in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 766), but earl Richard is there named as the person here alluded to, who reaped the profit of this transaction.

[4] The two first words of this rubric are covered over by the piece of vellum on which the preceding correction has been made. In the margin also, opposite to this chapter, is written, " Vacat, quia hoc prius," namely, in fol. 144, but differently there related. See previously p. 45.

De obitu archiepiscopi Maguntini, et de ampliationis potestatis archiepiscopi Coloniensis.

Death of the abp. of Mayence, and favour shown by the pope to the abp. of Cologne.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem obiit archiepiscopus Maguntinus, vir in Germaniæ partibus auctoritatis maximæ, magnus et indefessus inimicus Fretherici. Sed ne de ejus morte idem F[rethericus] diu gratularetur, dominus papa tradidit ipsum archiepiscopatum jam vacantem potestati ac ordinationi archiepiscopi Coloniensis, Deo et ecclesiæ fideliter militantis. Et præterea, omnes proventus cujusdam nobilissimæ abbatiæ tunc vacantis, cujus abbas superstes tenetur obsequio imperatoris tria milia militum exhibere; nomen illius cœnobii Volsa. Memoratus igitur archiepiscopus Coloniensis omnes thesauros utriusque ecclesiæ accepit,[5] et in negotiis expendit militaribus. Significavit insuper domino legato, qui in Alemannia negotia ecclesiæ procuravit, dominus papa, ut hanc suam gratiam et concessionem curaret observare inviolabiliter.

---

[1] *sanctum*] qui sanctum, MS.

[2] *dampnati*] dampni, MS. The words *qui . . . dampnati* are written over an erasure, partly on a slip of vellum pasted above and partly in the margin. The text at first stood thus, *furati sunt corpus ipsius*, as in B. C.

[3] *episcopi, et*] On an erasure.

[4] See note, *ante*, p. 45.

[5] *accepit*] Originally written *abrasit*, but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above.

A.D. 1249.

Civitas Parmensis artatur.[1]

Ensius, son of the emperor, takes 200 soldiers of the city of Parma prisoners.

Sub eisdem diebus, dum Parmenses nimis iterum artati ad quoddam castellum, quod non longe a civitate sua construxerant, ad sui tuitionem ducentos milites transmitterent, Ensius, rex Sardiniæ, filius videlicet Fretherici naturalis, inde secreto præmunitus, paratis insidiis, incautos omnes occupavit. Quos cum vellet patibulis in conspectu civium suspendere, significaverunt ei cives, quod si ipsos suspenderet, ipsi cives quos detinebant captivos de exercitu Fretherici, talionem rependentes, patibulis præsentarent. Et sic suis captivis pepercit Ensius, ipsos reservans redimendos. Parmenses igitur et Bononienses diligentius solito ipsi Ensio insidias paraverunt, et, ut plus nocerent,[2] confœderati sunt indissolubiliter.

De inundationibus pluviarum in mense Junii.

Unusual rains and inundations, particularly near Abingdon.

Eodem anno, mense Junii, quando frumenta florere dicuntur, tanta pluviarum inundatio per omnes fines Angliæ, maxime tamen juxta[3] fines Habenduniæ et ubi fluviales ripæ fuerant, sese dilataverunt, quod salices et alias arbores et domos fluviis conterminas, immo etiam caulas cum ovibus,* et unam capellam, non procul ab Habendunia, obruit et asportavit. Segetes vero tunc florentes et fructus pubescentes irrestaurabiliter deterioravit; unde fructus et fruges ipso anno, quæ spem promittebant, colonos fefellerunt.

De iterata translatione beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris.

Second translation of St. Ed-

Eodemque anno, fabricato elegantissimo ex auro et argento et cristallo feretro, iterato translatum est corpus beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris, apud Pontiniacum, et honorifice ac sollempniter nimis collocatum est, assistente prælatorum et magnatum[1] copiosa multitudine. Inventum est et conservatum integrum et incorruptum, et flexibile ac odoriferum, ad honorem Dei et universalis ecclesiæ, maxime tamen ad gloriam regnorum Franciæ et Angliæ, fol. 145 *b.* die quo fuit de terra levatum, videlicet v°. idus Junii, qui est dies sanctorum Primi et Feliciani.

---

[1] The whole of this chapter is marked in the margin with a red line, and the word "*dubium.*"

[2] *et, ut plus nocerent*] On an erasure.

[3] *omnes . . . juxta*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1249.
mund, abp. of Canterbury.

9 June.

Comes Legrecestriæ Simon inimicos domini regis in Wasconia viriliter expugnat.

Tempore sub eodem comes Legrecestriæ Symon, qui in omnibus studet patrissare, inimicos domini regis in Wasconia viriliter expugnavit; multos ex eis[2] capiens, et multos eorum cogens ad dicti domini regis redire fidelitatem.

Simon, earl of Leicester, defeats the king's enemies in Gascony.

Multi nobiles de regno Anglorum accinguntur ad iter Jerosolimitanum.[3]

Diebusque sub eisdem Willelmus Longa-spata considerans pii regis Francorum indigentiam, filio suo committens omnia, ad iter se accinxit Jerosolimitanum.[4] Similiter et multi nobiles in Anglia, et etiam prælati. Verumtamen idem W[illelmus] cito postea clitellas suas electo replens numismate,[5] adjunctis sibi aliis nobilibus, iter arripuit Jerosolimitanum, ut piissimō Francorum regi jungerentur in auxilium.

William Longespée assumes the cross, with many other nobles.

---

[1] *magnatum*] mangnatum, MS.

[2] *eis*] Interlined.

[3] This chapter has also been originally marked in the margin as "*dubium*," but the word afterwards erased.

[4] *considerans . . . . . Jerosolimitanum*] On an erasure.

[5] *numismate*] nummismate, MS.

A.D. 1249.

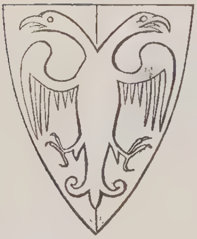
Multa adversa contigerunt Fretherico, nec immerito.

Many adversities befall the emperor.

Circa eosdem dies, cum[1] Fretherićus in multos tirannizans, impudenter nimis Arethinum episcopum, ut prædictum est, et irreverenter suspendisset, et multas alias personas ecclesiasticas turpiter tractasset, immo etiam[2] familiaribus suis et secretis consiliariis ultor fuerat immisericors et punitor, Thadeus insuper[3] sine redemptione interemptus fuerat, Petrus de Vinea et phisicus ejus exoculati, ipso sic jubente, iratus est Dominus, et factus est adversarius[4] eidem, juxta illud Augustini, super illum locum in Psalmo,[5] "Cum sancto sanctus eris:[6] Qualis homo Deo, talis Deus homini; et qualis homo proximo, talis Deus homini."

Capitur Ensius, filius Fretherici.[7]

Ensius is defeated and captured by the Bolognese.



Mense igitur Maio, dum Ensius, filius Fretherici naturalis, rex videlicet Sardaniæ, cum suis commilitonibus, adjunctis Cremonensibus, iter faceret per confinia Bononiæ suis insidiando adversariis, ipsi Bononienses per sagacissimos exploratores de proposito ipsius Ensii certificati et plenius præmuniti, paratis insidiis, subitum impetum fecerunt in ipsum et ejus exercitum, ad quendam pontem, qui dicitur pons Sancti Ambrosii, per quem fuerat transiturus, qui etiam est in medio itineris inter Bononiam et Cremonam. Et, facto congressu repente cruentissimo, captus est ipse Ensius, et de suo exercitu et Cremonensibus ad septem milia armatorum; et ducti sunt Bononiam, vinculis et carceribus mancipandi. Et, ut haberent carcerem tolerabiliorem, coacti sunt dare xviii. milia librarum de moneta imperialium,[1] quæ fere valet monetam esterlingorum. Eodemque tempore obiit quidam alius filius[2] ipsius Fretherici. Alius quoque filius ejus, videlicet Conradus, jam de regno Alemanniæ præcipitatus, Martem in sua guerra sibi sensit adversantem. Ipse insuper Fretherieus in proprio corpore particulari paralisi vel lupo[3] percussus, non jam poterat equo vehi bellicoso, vel saltem palefrido, sed curru vel carpento. In Apulia etiam, Calabria et Sicilia, procurante domino papa non segniter, et legato ad easdem partes destinato, multi, qui ante steterant cum eo, sunt aversi.

---

[1] *cum*] On an erasure.

[2] *etiam*] Added on to the text.

[3] *insuper*] On an erasure.

[4] *adversarius*] In the text *adversus*, but corr. in marg.

[5] *Psalmo*] Salmo, MS.

[6] Ps. xvii. 26; but I do not find the words here quoted in the Commentary of Augustine on this passage, Opp. tom. iv. col. 76, ed. 1691.

[7] In the margin is drawn his shield of arms, *viz.*, party per pale, vert and or, a double eagle displayed sable, and beneath is written in red letters, "*Capitur Ensius, filius Fretherici, a Bononiensibus.*"

Death of another son of Frederic.

Conrad is deprived of the kingdom of Germany.

The emperor himself afflicted with paralysis or 'lupus.'

De novo privilegio Cisterciensium.

Anno quoque sub eodem Cistercienses monachi, ne amplius essent contemptui Prædicatoribus et Minoribus, et secularibus literatis, præcipue decretistis et legistis, qui simplicitatem claustralem deridebant, a sede apostolica privilegium impetrabant, ut Parisius et alibi, ubi universitas foret scolarium, scolas licite exercerent;[4] et ad hoc mansiones[5] præparaverunt. Et, propter mundi nequitias, rigor est monastici ordinis in hoc[6] enervatus. Non enim legimus hoc a regula beati Benedicti emanasse. Quinimmo de ipso legimus et canimus, quod idem sanctus, relictis literarum studiis, deserta petere decreverat, ut liberius orationi vacaret et contemplationi.

Privilege granted to the Cistercians, to establish schools at Paris.

---

[1] *imperialium*] imperalium, MS.

[2] *filius*] filius naturalis, B. C. Probably, says Kington, "Hist. of Frederick II.," vol. ii., 503, Richard, Count of Chieti, vicar-general of Romagna.

[3] *lupo*] In B. C., *morbo qui dicitur lupus, vel sacer ignis.*

[4] *exercerent*] excercerent, MS.

[5] *mansiones*] mansionēs, MS.

[6] *in hoc*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249.

Episcopus Norwicensis rediit a curia Romana.

The bp. of Norwich returns from Rome. His complaints to the pope of the state of ecclesiastical benefices in England.

Eodem anno, videlicet in autumpno, rediit episcopus Norwicensis, vir quidem eleganter literatus et facundus, a curia Romana. Qui misertus ac miserans super variis Angliæ oppressionibus suggesserat, ut creditur, precibus ac lacrimis accumulatis, ut Deum habens præ oculis, paterna pietate regno Angliæ, sibi præ omnibus regnis devoto, parcendo misericorditer subveniret, et, quiete concessa qua valeret respirare, benigne[1] provideret. Provisionibus enim urgentibus jam innumerabilibus[2] diatim supervenientibus, vix valet aliquis prælatus tutus latitare,[3] ut possit alicui clerico pauperi perito, et ad curas animarum idoneo, in aliquo redditu, licet tenui, caritatis intuitu providere, cum constet, quod in ecclesiis, quæ ab incursionibus variis infestantur,[4] et dies mali sunt, necesse sit habere clericos fideles jurisperitos et opportunos[5] animarum pastores, et in patria lingua ad prædicandum peritos et facundos. Et cum humanum sit, indigentibus consanguineis et familiaribus et amicis omni honore dignis, aliquod vel exile non poterant conferre beneficium, cum dicat apostolus, "Qui suis non providet,[6] infidelis et infideli deterior."[7] Episcopus similiter Lincolniensis pro regno interpellavit coram summo pontifice.[8]

---

[1] *benigne*] beningne, MS.

[2] *innumerabilibus*] innumerabibus, MS.

[3] *tutus latitare*] At first, *latitare tutus*, but marked for transposition.

[4] *infestantur*] At first written *infestentur*.

[5] *opportunos*] oportunos, MS.

[6] *providet*] provide, MS.

[7] Altered from 1 Ep. Tim. v. 8.

[8] *episcopus Norwicensis, vir quidem . . . . . summo pontifice*] The whole of this, filling half a column, is written over an erasure so carefully made, that scarcely the trace of a letter is now visible.

Rediit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis a Romana curia.

A.D. 1249.

Et circa idem tempus rediit a Romana curia archi- fol. 146 *a.* episcopus Cantuariensis,[1] jocundos deferens rumores de partibus ultramarinis[2] transmissos recenter, videlicet quod Christianissimus dominus rex Francorum, sine difficultate et mora, miraculose Damiatam occupaverat; et certam[3] domino regi super hoc ostendens epistolam. Magna siquidem armatus potestate venerat, visitandi ordinem monasticum, præcipue apud monasteria exempta. Epistola autem de captione Damiatæ in libris plurimorum[4] plenius annotatur.

Return of the abp. of Canterbury from Rome.

Power given him to visit the exempt monasteries.

Letter respecting the capture of Damietta.

De reformatione Ordinis inter Nigri Ordinis monachos, maxime tamen exemptos.

Circa idem tempus abbates Nigri Ordinis, malentes suos per se excessus corrigere, quam per aliquem alium visitatorem, apud Bermundesheie die sancti Kalixti convenerunt, super reformatione Ordinis sancti Benedicti diligentem tractatum habituri. Cujus reformationis capitula in multorum religiosorum libris plenius annotantur.[5]

Meeting at Bermondsey for the reformation of the Benedictine Order. 14 Oct.

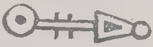
---

[1] *Et circa . . . . Cantuariensis*] Also on an erasure.

[2] *ultramarinis*] Originally written *transmarinis*, but corrected on a piece of vellum pasted above.

[3] *certam*] At first written *hanc*, but corrected on a piece of vellum pasted above. After *epistolam* also a blank slip of vellum is fastened over an erasure of some letters.

[4] *libris plurimorum*] Originally written *libro Additamentorum*, but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above. The same reference is given in B.C. (ed. Wats, p. 768), and three letters on the subject are found in the "Liber Additamentorum," [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. ff. 93, 94 *b*, 95 *b*,] and printed in ed. Wats, pp. 165–169.

[5] *reformationis . . . annotantur*] With the exception of the three first syllables of *reformationis*, this is written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *reformationis capitula in libro Additamentorum plenius conscribuntur, ad hoc signum* . In the margin also is the correction, *libris multorum.* These Statutes are printed in ed. Wats, pp. 169–173, from MS. Cott. Nero D. I. f. 95 *b*, where they are found with the same mark of reference affixed.

A.D. 1249.

Walterus de Kirkeham benigne recipitur a rege in episcopatum Dunelmensem.

Walter de Kirkeham is admitted by the king to the see of Durham.

Eodem tempore dominus rex exhilaratus de rumoribus, qui de Terra Sancta allati ipsum de captione Damiatæ certificaverunt, concessit gratiam suam, et acceptavit electionem de Waltero de Kirkeham, decano Eboracensi factam, ipsique serenum vultum ostendebat cum favore.

De passu Christi domino regi collato.[1]

The impression of the foot of Christ in marble given by the king to the abbey of Westminster.

Tempore quoque sub eodem fratres Prædicatores comperientes Christianissimi domini regis devotionem, sibi adquisierunt, nescio cujus industriæ argumento, quandam petram albi marmoris, in qua vestigium humani pedis, videlicet, ut a multis creditur et dicitur, Salvatoris, quasi in cera molli impressum apparebat. Quam asserunt Terræ Sanctæ incolæ fuisse vestigium in cœlum Domini[2] ascendentis, ut per tale signum memoriam discipulis relinqueret, quoniam ibi ipsum ultimo viderunt. Dominus autem rex illud ecclesiæ Westmonasterii contulit, sicut nuper sanguinem Christi contulerat, et sicut omne, quod poterat, nobile donativum.

De homullulo et gigantulo.

Prodigious births.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem quidam homuncio, non autem nanus, quia membra habens sibi proportionalia, ætatisque habens circiter xviii. annorum,[3] inventus est in insula Vectæ, veluti non plus incrementi susceptorus, staturæque fuit vix tripedalis, nomine Johannes. Quem, quasi prodigium, regina secum circumduxit. Eodemque tempore quidem puer a quodam dæmone incuba, ut dicitur, generatus, in confinio Walliæ apparuit. Qui infra dimidium annum plene dentatus, ad staturam ascendit adolescentis xvi. annos habentis. Cujus mater in puerperio miserabiliter est exanimata.

---

[1] In the lower margin is a drawing representing the ascension of Christ to heaven. The upper portion of the figure is hidden by clouds, and the right foot is in the act of making an impression on the ground. Below is written in red letters, "*Christus ascendens relinquit suis discipulis pro memoriali ultimo passus sui impressionem in marmore candido, quam dominus rex Henricus III. contulit ecclesiæ Westmonasterii.*"

[2] *Domini*] Added in marg.

[3] *annorum*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249.

Walterus, electus Dunelmensis, consecratur.[1]

Anno quoque sub eodem, prima Dominica Adventus Domini, Walterus de Kirkeham, electus Dunelmensis, consecratus est apud Eboracum ab archiepiscopo ejusdem civitatis Waltero, cujus idem episcopus dinoscitur esse suffraganeus.

Consecration of the bishop of Durham. 5 Dec.

Orta est discordia inter abbatem Westmonasterii et ejus conventum, et abbatem de Burgo et ejus conventum.

Circa eosdem quoque dies orta est dissensio inter abbatem Westmonasterii et ejus conventum, in totius Ordinis Nigri scandalum et obprobrium. Cujus causa et series in libris Partium[2] plenius continetur. Tandem vero, procurante domino rege, qui specialis amator illius cœnobii esse dinoscitur, pax est inter eos reformata. Eodemque tempore inter abbatem de Burgo Willelmum et ejus conventum orta est discordia. Idem enim abbas consanguineorum suorum, in dampnum ecclesiæ

Discord between the abbat of Westminster and his convent.

Also between the abbat of Peterborough and his convent.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn a crosier and mitre.

[2] *libris Partium*] Originally written *libro Additamentorum*, then partially erased and altered to *libris*, and *Partium* added in the margin; and lastly corrected, as printed above, on a slip of vellum pasted over the line. In B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 769) a reference is also given to the "Liber Additamentorum," but no documents on the subject are now found in it.

A.D. 1249. suæ, amator et ditator, accusatus de dilapidatione et convictus, depositus est. Cujus loco Johannes de Cadomo, prior ecclesiæ Sancti Suithuni Wintoniæ, domino rege procurante, subrogatur.

He is deposed, and replaced by the prior of St. Swithun's, Winchester.

Orta est discordia inter abbatem Westmonasterii et cives Londoniarum, et abbatem Sancti Albani et abbatem Westmonasterii.[1]

Quarrel between the abbat of Westminster and the citizens of London. Also between the abbat of St. Alban's and abbat of Westminster, relative to Aldenham.

Orta quoque est discordia inter prædictum abbatem Westmonasterii et cives Londoniarum. Vendicabat enim abbas quædam in dampnum et præjudicium civium, per novas cartas, quas abbas adquisierat a rege, cui nimis fuerat familiaris; sed per suorum magnatum sanius consilium, est abbatis propositum infirmatum.[2] Similiter est dissensio orta inter abbatem Sancti Albani et abbatem Westmonasterii sæpedictum, eo quod[3] idem abbas Westmonasterii nova et inaudita quædam in villa de Audenhamia[4] sibi, per quasdam novas sibi a rege adquisitas cartas, vendicavit, contra antiquas cartas Sancti Albani, ante conquestum Angliæ et post a piis regibus et viris apostolicis ecclesiæ ejus concessis et confirmatis.

Item.[5]

Geoffrey de Childewike obtains from the king a grant of

Eisdemque diebus quidam miles, nomine Galfridus de Childewike, infeodatus terris Sancti Albani et ejusdem martiris vassallus, rebellis, perjurus, infidelis et innaturalis, et de multis sibi et antecessoribus ejus[6] impensis beneficiis immemor et ingratus, ope suffultus Johannis Mansel, domini regis consiliarii specialis, ejusdem Johannis sororii, novam a domino rege cartam adquisivit, in suæ fidei enormem læsionem, contra antiquas cartas beati Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, a sanctis et autenticis regibus et prælatis ei datas, confirmatas, et usitatas, ante Angliæ et post conquestum; et etiam a nunc superstite et regnante rege Henrico III. optentas, de warenna habenda super terram Sancti Albani, qua infeodabatur. Insuper, in dedecus ejusdem domini sui abbatis, fecit ipsum abbatem sacramentum facere in propria persona.

---

[1] This claim of the abbat of Westminster against the citizens of London, and the injuries alleged by the abbat of St. Alban's, are noticed in the larger Chronicle under the year 1250 (ed. Wats, p. 783). See hereafter, p. 80.

[2] *infirmatum*] imfirmatum, MS.

[3] *quod*] Added in marg.

[4] *Audenhamia*] Audenham̃, MS., and so in MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 62 *b*. In B. C. *Aldenham*.

[5] Opposite to this chapter is written in the margin the word "*vacat*," in red letters.

[6] *ejus*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1249. warren on lands belonging to St. Alban's.

De Roberto Passelewe.

fol. 146 *b*.

Feria vero v^ta^. ante festum beatæ Luciæ, Robertus Passelewe, de quo multa præscribuntur, curiæ volumina detestans, ad frugem melioris vitæ, quia jam senuit, convolavit, ad gradum promotus sacerdotii.

13 Dec. Robert Passelewe takes priest's orders.

De paagio de Gisnes.

Anno quoque sub eodem dominus rex Francorum relaxando paagium de Gisnes, gravamina injuriosa, pro magna parte,[1] transeuntium miserando multorum delevit.

The king of France abolishes the road-tax at Guisnes.

Ecclesia de Bello-loco dedicatur.

Eodemque anno abbas de Bello-loco, Ordinis Cisterciencis, ecclesiam suam, quam rex Johannes a fundamentis construxerat, præsentibus rege Henrico III. et comite Ricardo, fratre ejus, et multis aliis magnatibus cum prælatis,[2] sollempniter fecit dedicari. Cujus fundatio, simul cum alio memorabili, quod idem rex

Dedication of the abbey of Beaulieu.

---

[1] *pro magna parte*] Interlined.

[2] *cum prælatis*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249. J[ohannes] fecisse commemoratur, facto, animæ suæ multum creditur subvenisse. Quod huic paginæ duximus annotandum.

Nota factum laudabile regis Johannis.[1]

Praiseworthy act of king John, in reference to some Greek philosophers.

Quidam philosophi Græci, vultu et gestu severi et venerabiles, tertio vel quarto anno regni ejusdem regis J[ohannis] in Angliam ab Athenis venientes, curiam regis adierunt, sperantes eum, et alios per consequens occidentales, in arcum pravum in articulis fidei convertisse. Senescallo quoque regis dixerunt, "Habemus sermonem domino regi, ad utilitatem totius ecclesiæ, et regni sui utilitatem declarandum. Latini enim Christiani a tramite veritatis in articulis fidei hactenus exorbitantes, enormiter periclitantur, quos desideramus ad cognitionem veritatis salubriter irrefragabilibus rationibus revocare, ut salventur." Quod cum domino regi plenius intimaretur, Spiritu Sancto, ut creditur, edoctus, respondit, "Multorum sanctorum, de quorum sanctitate et auctoritate toti mundo miraculis constat evidentibus, fides, quam suscepimus, roboratur; nolo, ut eorum disputationibus ullatenus discussa vacillet, nec certa pro incertis commutemus. Possent enim cito multos, etiam in fide stabiles, suis ambagibus et dubiis deceptionibus a statu certitudinis concutere, et aliquam novitatem, qua gaudent moderni, persuadere. Recedant igitur confestim, nec amplius in terra mea videantur, vel audiantur." Et sic, imposito eis silentio, vacui recesserunt et confusi.

---

[1] See a previous notice of this event under the year 1216, in vol. ii. p. 194.

Instauratur domus Ordinis Cisterciensis, a comite Ricardo nuper fundata.

A.D. 1249.

The Cistercian house of Hales is supplied with monks by the abbat of Beaulieu.

Dedicata igitur ecclesia de Bello-loco, ut supradictum est, abbas illius loci, qui in festo dedicationis quingentas marcas exposuerat, ad instantiam comitis Ricardi, domum Cisterciensis Ordinis novam, scilicet Hales,[1] quam idem comes, secundum votum quod in periculis agitatus fecerat marinis, xx. monachis et xxx. fratribus, et quibusdam ad eosdem necessariis, instauravit.

Obiit Alexander rex Scotorum.[2]

3 July. aths of exander , king of ots, and enry, ng of nmark.

Sub ejusdem anni circulo, v°. nonas Julii, obiit Alexander, rex Scotorum ; et infirmatus jam[3] usque ad mortem languit rex Daciæ Henricus.[4] Modus autem, qualiter scilicet obierat rex Scotorum A[lexander], in aliquibus Aquilonarium Rotulis[5] plenius annotatur. Regnaverat autem rex sanctus et pacificus annis[6] .

Scutum regis Scociæ.

---

[1] *scilicet Hales*] Interlined.

[2] In the lower margin is drawn his shield of arms, reversed, *viz.*, or, a lion rampant gules ; a bordure of the first, flory counter-flory of the second.

[3] *jam*] Originally written *est, unde*, but corrected on a small piece of vellum pasted above.

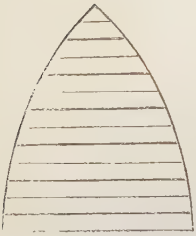
[4] *Henricus*] An error again for *Ericus*, as in vol. ii. p. 447. Eric VI. was treacherously slain by an emissary of his brother Abel, in August 1250.

[5] *in aliquibus . . . Rotulis*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which, although partially erased, reads thus, *in Magnis Cronicis Sancti Albani.* The account is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 770).

[6] *annis*] After this word a mark of reference is added, as if the number was supplied in the margin, but if so, it has been afterwards effaced. Alexander II. reigned nearly 35 years, having been crowned 5 Dec., 1214. He died 8 July 1249.

A.D. 1249.

Obiit Hugo Brun, comes de Marchia,[1] *et multi alii nobiles.*

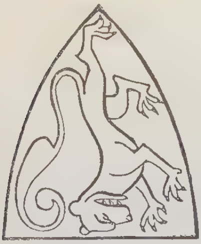


Scutum comitis de Marchia, vel filii ejusdem.

Deaths of Hugh Brun, count of March, and other nobles.

Sub eodem quoque anno Hugo, cognomento[2] Brun, comes de Marchia, domini regis Henrici III. victricus, cum apud Damiatam applicuisset, rebus humanis exemptus est; et filius primogenitus[3] ejus cito post ibidem in fata concessit.[4] Eodem quoque anno, tam in Cypro quam in mari, nobiles multi de regno Franciæ, dum cum[5] rege peregrinarentur[6] Francorum, de hoc mundo ad Deum migraverunt. Quorum nomina longum et Anglorum historiæ impertinens foret huic paginæ inserere.[7] Quod autem præstantius est, in libro vitæ indelebiliter annotantur. Ad memoriam autem Anglorum transeamus.

Obiit Petrus de Geneure.[8]



Scutum Petri de Geneure.

Death of Peter de Geneure.

Obiit autem sub eodem anno Petrus de Geneure, natione alienigena, quem dominus magnifice nimis ditaverat in Hibernia, donando ei nobilem puellam Matildem, filiam Walteri de Lasci, cum terris et possessionibus amplis valde ac[9] opulentis, licet ipse P[etrus] humili, ut dicitur,[10] prosapia fuisset oriundus.

---

[1] In the lower margin is his shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, barry of 13, argent and azure.

[2] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[3] *primogenitus*] primogenius, MS.

[4] *et filius . . . concessit*] Added on to the text.

[5] *cum*] On an erasure.

[6] *peregrinarentur*] Interlined is *vel rent*, i.e., *peregrinarent.*

[7] In the lower margin is drawn a shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, azure, a lion rampant gules, impaling or, a cross cercelée sable, both dimidiated, and below is written in red, "*Per unum istud scutum accipe scuta Barrensium, scilicet nobilium Francorum.*"

[8] In the lower margin is his shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, sable, a lion rampant argent; but below is a smaller shield, with the colours changed, *viz.*, argent, a lion rampant sable.

[9] *amplis valde ac*] Partly on an erasure.

[10] *ut dicitur*] Added to the text.

Obiit magister Simon Normannus.

A.D. 1249.

Anno quoque sub eodem obiit magister Simon Normannus, præcipuus quondam domini regis consiliarius, et sigilli regii bajulus, vices agens cancellarii. In quo suam fortuna experta est volubilitatem; fecit enim de eo, quem sullimaverat, exulem et egenum. Eodemque tempore obiit magister Willelmus de Dunelmo apud Rothomagum, rediens a Romana curia, eminentissime literatus, quondam electus Rothomagensis.[1] Quo mortuo, ilico procuravit rex ecclesiam ejus de Wermue uberrimam conferri fratri suo Athelmaro.

Deaths of Simon le Norman,

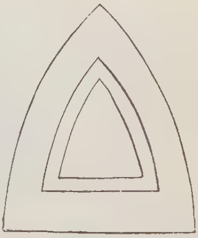
and of William of Durham.

Obiit Rogerus, filius Johannis de Bailloil.[2]

Death of Roger de Bailliol.

The custody of his lands given to William de Valence.

Eodemque tempore obiit Rogerus de Bailloil, nobilissimus de partibus borealibus Angliæ miles et baro,[3] ætate adolescens, in re strenuus militari, conculcatus in quodam torneamento in partibus Franciæ, apud Argenciam. Cujus terræ custodiam rex incontinenti contulit Willelmo de Valentia, fratri suo, cum nobili castro de Wercwurthe, et multis aliis terris ac possessionibus ad prædictum nobilem Rogerum pertinentibus.



Scutum Rogeri de Bailloil.

Annalis conclusio.

Annual summary.

Fluxit igitur annus ille minus fructifer, licet arbores floribus præoperirentur, frugifer tamen abundanter;[4] in autumpno tamen[5] imbres inundantes segetes suffocarunt et denigrarunt. Annus quoque iste Romanæ curiæ inimicus, Ecclesiæ turbulentus; Terræ Sanctæ suspectus, Franciæ, Angliæ, Ytaliæ et Germaniæ im-

---

[1] *quondam electus Rothomagensis*] Added in marg.

[2] In the lower margin is his shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, gules, an inescutcheon voided argent.

[3] *et baro*] Added in marg.

[4] *abundanter*] habundanter, MS.

[5] *tamen*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249. misericors deprædator et perturbator; nam in partibus Germaniæ victus est Willelmus de Hoilande, quem dominus papa, profuso thesauro non minimo, antea sustinuerat, et ad imperium sullimare proposuerat. fol. 147 *a*.

Dominus rex fuit ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam; et in crastino comedit cum episcopo ejusdem civitatis[1] W[illelmo].

A.D. 1250. Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester. He goes thence to London. 5 Jan.

Anno Domini M^o^.CC^o^.L^o^., qui est annus Domini regis Henrici III. xxxiiii^us^, fuit idem rex apud Wintoniam ad Natale Domini, ubi festa Natalicia, ut moris est, magnifice celebravit. Et in crastino cum ipsius civitatis episcopo W[illelmo] magnus conviva dominus rex[2] prandebat. Deinde versus Londonias iter festinus maturavit, ut festum beati Edwardi ibidem magnifice consummaret.

Comitissa Cornubiæ peperit filium.

A son born to the countess of Cornwall, and christened Edmund.

Eodemque tempore, infra[3] videlicet dies Natalicios, comitissa Cornubiæ Cincia, uxor comitis Ricardi, peperit ei filium apud Berkamestude. Ad quem baptizandum comes vocavit archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, infantis avunculum, qui ilico gaudens advenit. Et quia comes amator fuit sancti Edmundi,[4] vocatum est nomen ejus Edmundus, ob honorem sancti Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris.

Citantur coram episcopo Lincolniensi omnes religiosi diocesis suæ.

Robert, bp. of Lincoln, summons

Tempore quoque sub eodem episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus omnes suæ diocesis religiosos fecit citari, ut in festo sancti Hilarii apud Legrecestriam convenirent, mandatum domini papæ ibidem audituri. Ad hoc enim idem episcopus summo conamine anhelabat,[1] ut religiosorum per suam diocesim constitutorum ecclesias et redditus, de quibus iidem[2] assensum capituli et super hoc instrumenta testimonium evidens perhibentia non haberent, in suam revocaret potestatem. Et hoc a summo pontifice, non sine multarum expensarum effusione, impetraverat, sed inaniter, ut rei exitus comprobavit. Papa enim cum eis, qui gravamina sua intimarunt, benigne dispensavit.[3]

---

[1] *civitatis*] civivitatis, MS.

[2] *dominus rex*] On an erasure. In B. C. *et jam assuetus.*

[3] *infra*] imfra, MS., throughout.

[4] *qui ilico . . . Edmundi*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1250. the clergy of his diocese. 13 Jan.

Transfretant multi nobiles Angliæ.

Tempore quoque sub eodem transfretarunt multi Angliæ nobiles, nec patuit causa alicui de populo, videlicet, comes Ricardus, comes Gloverniæ, Henricus de Hastingo, baro, Rogerus de Thurkebi, et multi alii nobiles cum illis. Præterea de prælatis, Lincolniensis, Londoniensis et Wigorniensis episcopi, et de episcopatu Lincolniensi, Oxoniensi et Bedefordensi archidiaconi, et multi alii clerici. Comes autem Ricardus cum maxima gloria et honore[4] inter omnes et præ omnibus, comitante Henrico, filio suo primogenito, Franciam pertransiens, Lugdunum[5] pervenit; et venienti omnes fere cardinales occurrerunt, honorem maximum eidem exibentes. Causa autem solius episcopi Lincolniensis, quare scilicet transfretavit, omnibus patuit manifesta. Sed in fine, cum sese multi versus papam redemissent pe-

Many English nobles and prelates go abroad.

Earl Richard received with much honour in France.

---

[1] *anhelabat*] hanelabat, MS.

[2] *iidem*] At first written *idem*, as in B. C.

[3] *Papa enim . . . . dispensavit*] On an erasure. In the lower margin are some lines written with a plummet, of which the only words legible are, *Ipsis* (?) *autem contra impetum episcopi Lincolniensis ad præsentiam domini papæ appellantibus, causa solius episcopi Lincoln. quia scilicet transire . . . . . .*

[4] *gloria et honore*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[5] *Lugdunum*] Lugdonum, MS.

A.D. 1250 The bishop of Lincoln is foiled in his complaint to the pope.

cunia,[1] venit idem episcopus querulus ad papam, dicens, "Domine, credidi ut, auxiliante consilio vestro, omnes, de quibus conquestus sum, suppeditarem, castigarem, et ab errore potenter revocarem.[2] Ipsi vero de Pratomonstrato[3] et quidam alii[4] sibi pacem, data pecunia, proh pudor![5] redimerunt." Cui papa, "Frater, liberasti animam tuam; quid ad te de gratia mea? Fecimus eis gratiam. Nunquid oculus tuus[6] nequam est, quia bonus sum?" Et sic, de consilio cardinalis Johannis, quem vulgariter[7] Album dicunt cardinalem,[8] vacuus recessit episcopus Lincolniensis, a suo proposito fraudatus et confusus, multorum evacuatis crumenis, et ipso episcopo sene et infirmo, cum multis aliis frustra fatigatis.

Multi nobiles vendunt et impignorant terras suas.

Many nobles sell and pledge their lands, to go to the Holy Land.

Eodem quoque tempore multi nobiles Angliæ crucesignati terras et possessiones suas, in præparationem suæ peregrinationis peragendæ, vendunt et impignorant. Multi autem in cordibus suis secreto propositum pium conceperunt peregrinandi, ut Christi vestigia in Terra Sancta adorarent, sed noluerunt crucem in humeris palam bajulare, piam tamen intentionem retinentes.[9]

---

[1] *pecunia*] This word is underscored with red, for omission.

[2] *castigarem . . . . . revocarem*] Added in marg.

[3] *de Prato-monstrato*] Probably the Premonstratensian monastery of Newhus is here referred to.

[4] *alii*] Added in marg.

[5] *data . . . pudor*] These words are underscored with red, for omission.

[6] *tuus*] Added in marg.

[7] *vulgariter*] uulgariter, MS.

[8] *cardinalem*] The cardinal alluded to was John de Toleto, otherwise Johannes Anglicus (so called from his English origin), who having been a Cistercian, was named *Albus* from the habit of his Order. See the larger Chronicle of Matthew Paris, ed. Wats, pp. 636, 842; and Ciacconius, *Vitæ Pontif.* ii. 118.

[9] *piam . . . retinentes*] On an erasure. In B. C., *muscipulas Romanæ curiæ formidantes.*

Fretherícus de multis suis triumphat adversariis.

A.D. 1250.

Ipsis quoque diebus, devicto et affugato Willelmo de Holande, nuper in regem Alemanniæ promoto, et multum per papam ditato et elevato prius, sed in fine confuso, et multis aliis adversariis suis contritis, Fretheriçus in Parmenses et alios Ytalicos desævit et debacchatur,[1] et in multos tirannizat[2] vehementer.

The emperor Frederic triumphs over many of his enemies.

Dominus rex Angliæ cruce signatur.[3]

Tempore quoque sub eodem dominus rex crucem accepit de manu archiepiscopi Cantuariensis B[onefacii],[4] et postea ipse archiepiscopus, Willelmus de Valentia, frater domini regis, Radulfus filius-Nicholai, domini regis senescallus, Paulinus Peivre, domini regis consiliarius specialis, et multi alii nobiles et aulici; clerici quoque, domini regis consiliarii, Johannes Mansel, Ædwardus, Philippus Luvel, et multi alii, regis vestigia sequi cupientes. Solus autem abbas Sancti Edmundi, nomine Edmundus, licet monachus, spiritu tamen pio admonitus,[5] cruce signatus est.

Henry assumes the cross, with many of the nobility.

The abbat of St. Edmund's alone imitates their example.

De unanimi concilio magnatum Angliæ crucesignatorum.[6]

Eodem etiam tempore dominus rex omnes cives Londoniarum apud Westmonasterium fecit convocari.

The king asks forgiveness of

---

[1] *debacchatur*] debacatur, MS.

[2] *et in multos tirannizat*] On an erasure.

[3] In the margin is drawn a crown surmounted by a cross, and this note is added: "Dubium a quo recepit crucem, creditur tamen quod de manu Norwicensis episcopi."

[4] *B[onefacii]* At first written *archiepiscopi B.*, but *archiepiscopi* afterwards expuncted.

[5] *licet . . . admonitus*] On an erasure.

[6] This rubric applies only to a portion of the chapter, beginning with the words, "Magnates autem interim." The previous portion is entered in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 774),

A.D. 1250. the citizens of London, on account of the taxes imposed on them.

Quibus ex parte domini regis supplicatum est, ut pro Deo remitterent ei omnes offensas, injurias et peccata, quibus ipse[1] se timebat irretiri, eorum pecuniam multotiens et multipliciter accipiendo[2] per tallias, per injuriosas extorsiones, tam mercimoniorum quam victualium, quas Prisas vocant, contra civium voluntatem et libertatem. Rex tamen in illa supplicatione læsis vel spoliatis nihil satisfecit. Cives tamen videntes aliud sibi fol. 147 *b*. non expedire, omnia benigne remiserunt. Rex igitur incontinenti ad dominum papam nuncios destinavit expeditos, ad impediendum progressum magnatum Angliæ crucesignatorum, ut potius regis transitum expectarent. Cui dominus papa, immemor, ut dicitur,[3] regis Francorum Deo in Terra Sancta militantis, et impetus Sarracenorum cotidianos sustinentis, assensum præbuit repentinum. Magnates autem interim hoc nescientes, v°. kalendas Maii Londoniis apud Bermundeshei de communi assensu convenerunt, de sua peregrinatione tractaturi. Non mediocriter enim condolebant Francorum regi et exercitui[4] Christiano, sese pro ecclesia universali mortis periculis exponenti. Hujus congregationis et concilii capitaneus constituebatur episcopus Wigorniensis Walterus, crucesignatus. Et cum constituissent sibi terminum suæ communis motionis, festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ, ecce, tam regalis quam papalis urgens prohibitio, ne scilicet ante regis transitum se ullatenus movere præsumerent, sicut terras et possessiones suas diligebant et excommunicationis sententiam devitare. Quod cum intelligeretur, tristes ad propria remearunt, turpiter decepti, quod suas terras et possessiones inaniter in armorum et equorum atque viatico-

He sends to the pope to obtain authority to prevent the English crusaders from embarking.

27 April. Meeting of those who had taken the cross at Bermondsey.

The bp. of Worcester appointed their head.

24 June. The papal prohibition is made known to them, and they return home.

---

before the last chapter, and has this heading, "*Dominus rex petit veniam a civibus Londoniarum.*"

[1] *ipse*] On an erasure.

[2] *accipiendo*] In the text, *acceperat*, on an erasure, which is evidently wrong; and in the margin we have *precipiendo*, half erased.

[3] *immemor, ut dicitur*] On an erasure.

[4] *exercitui*] excercitui, MS., as elsewhere.

rum præparationes vendiderant, vel impignoraverant.[1] Verum licet hoc ad laudem impedientium non sit ascribendum,[2] hoc feliciter evenit, quia per idem tempus infeliciter accidit regi Francorum et ejus exercitui, sicut in sequentibus plenius declarabitur. A.D. 1250.

Wasconienses regi rebelles edomantur.

Eodem quoque anno Guasto de Biarde,[3] in quem dominus rex, quando fuerat in Wasconia[4] multa congesserat beneficia, et Burdegalenses et alii Wasconenses, domino regi Anglorum ingrati et rebelles, per comitem Legrecestriæ Simonem edomantur, et suppeditantur, atque depauperantur. Unde creditur, Burdegalenses hoc promeruisse, proditionem enormem domino suo regi, cum ad ipsos confidenter confugisset declinans persecutionem Francorum, facientes. Dicuntur enim ipsum violenter retinuisse repatriare proponentem, donec, ad voluntatem eorum, cartam de multa pecunia ipsis, ut fertur, persolvenda,[5] extorsissent. Guasto autem, proditor convictus, captus est, et domino regi præsentatus, sed precibus amicorum[6] in pace dimissus. Sed postea cito, in arcum versus deteriorem, multa domino regi dampna irrogavit.[7]

The rebels in Gascony are subdued by Simon, earl of Leicester.

Gaston of Bearn brought to the king, and pardoned.

---

[1] *impignoraverant*] impugnoraverant, MS.

[2] *ascribendum*] asscribendum, MS.

[3] *Biarde*] Biardo, MS.

[4] *in Wasconia*] Interlined.

[5] *ipsis . . . persolvenda*] On an erasure.

[6] *amicorum*] On an erasure. In B. C., *intercedente regina.*

[7] *multa . . . irrogavit*] On an erasure. In the margin the last four lines relative to Gaston were marked in red "*vacat,*" to be omitted, but the word has afterwards been erased.

A.D. 1250. *Franci apud Damiatam commorantes, impetum faciunt in hostes, primo quidem bene, sed crastino adverse contigit.*

The French forces at Damietta attack the enemy.

Anno quoque sub eodem Franci in castris commorantes juxta Damiatam, convocatis ipsis qui in civitate commorabantur, impetum fecerunt in hostes, qui vias et convalles obsidentes, victualia arcebant. Invaluerat enim fames vehementer in Christi exercitu. Quibus prima die, scilicet Cinerum, prospere accidit, sed in crastino, in idipsum redeuntes, deteriorem calculum reportarunt; unde tanta fames in exercitu, Deo irato, invaluit, ut confecti fame, equos suos in Quadragesima comedere cogerentur. Unde multi exeuntes et hostibus additi apostatarunt, et plus aliis nobis nocuerunt. Verumtamen Soldanus Babiloniæ, omnium regum famosissimum regem Francorum formidans, maxime quia Damiatam tam cito et leviter subjugarat, pacem optulit honestissimam, ut videlicet Terra Sancta et quæcunque aliquando Christianorum fuerat, Christianis restitueretur. Et multa alia ad commodum[1] et honorem Christianorum optulit profutura, ad quæ superbia Francorum minime potuit inclinari, nisi dictus Soldanus Cairum, Babiloniam et Alexandriam Christianis resignaret. Super quo cum postulasset Soldanus tempus aliquot dierum, ut, convocatis suis magnatibus, super hoc deliberaret, ventilatus est rumor vanus per diversa Christianorum climata, quod memoratæ tres civitates redderentur ditioni Christianæ. Sed cum congregarentur nobiles Sarracenorum coram domino suo Soldano, et audissent avaritiam et superbiam Francorum, nullatenus adquieverunt. Quinimmo dixerunt, "Christiani nimis improbi et superbi exigunt quod injustum est, et nobis intolerabile. Ut quid impetunt nos, nisi ratione Terræ Sanctæ? Quid eis cum Damiata? quid cum Cairo, Babilonia vel Alexandria?

9 Feb.

Famine in the camp, and many apostatize.

The Soldan offers terms of peace, but the French require the cities of Cairo, Babylon, and Alexandria to be given up.

The Saracen chiefs refuse.

---

[1] *commodum*] comodum, MS.

Jesus, Deus eorum, odio habens super omnia arrogantiam, qui humillimus[1] fuit, et præbens eis exemplum omnimodæ humilitatis et mansuetudinis, confundet eos in hac eorum improba exactione et superbia intolerabili!" Ex tunc igitur, meritis eorum exigentibus, cœpit Francorum conditio non mediocriter deteriorari, maxime, cum secreta eorum inedia per apostatas, qui ad Soldanum se contulerunt, patuit revelata. Tempore sub eodem obiit ille Soldanus, et alius, Christianis nocivior, est loco ejus substitutus.

A.D. 1250.

The condition of the French army becomes worse.

Death of the Soldan.

De maximo honore, quem exhibuit Blanchia, et postea papa, comiti Ricardo.

Temporibus sub eisdem regina Francorum Blanchia tot et tantos congessit honores in comitem Ricardum, et in eos qui in comitatu ipsius[2] erant, ut omnes videntes et audientes merito poterant admirari. Et Lugdunum venienti, occurrit fere tota curia papalis. Et ipse sereno vultu illi applaudens dominus papa,[3] ipsum ad mensam invitavit, et coepulabantur immediate, scilicet octavis Paschæ. Eadem die captus est rex Francorum, ut dicetur in sequentibus.[4] Et, facto negotio pro quo ierat, occulto tamen, rediit per Sanctum Dionisium. Et comparavit sibi quoddam manerium ab abbate, quod idem abbas habuit in Anglia, satis opulentum, cum pertinentiis, non procul existens a Glovernia, Derhurst[5] appellatum.[6] Die vero Lunæ proxima ante dies Rogationum venit prospere in Angliam. Remansit autem in partibus transmarinis per fol. 148 *a.* aliquot dies, ut sibi parceret perendinaturus episcopus Wintoniensis Willelmus, qui comitis Ricardi vestigia secutus fuerat irrediturus.

Great honours paid to earl Richard by queen Blanche of France and the pope.

Earl Richard purchases the manor of Deerhurst from the abbat of St. Denys.

He returns to England, 25 April.

William, bp. of Winchester, remains abroad.

---

[1] *humillimus*] humilimus, MS.

[2] *ipsius*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[3] *dominus papa*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[4] *scilicet . . . sequentibus*] Added in marg.

[5] *Derhurst*] In C. *Hurst*, but incorrectly. See Monasticon, iv. 665.

[6] *appellatum*] apelatum, MS.

A.D. 1250.

De brachio sancti Edmundi confessoris absciso.[1]

The arm of St. Edmund is cut off by the monks of Pontigni, and miracles cease then.

Anno sub eodem monachi Pontiniacenses ausu temerario brachium beati corporis sancti Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris, nescitur qua consideratione, quod Deus conservarat incorruptum, absciderunt. Deo igitur proinde irato, cessarunt miracula ibidem ut prius celebrari.

De horribilibus et variis tempestatibus.[2]

Horrible thunder-storms.

Tempore quoque sub eodem dampnosa in diversis locis mugierunt tonitrua; fulgura muros turrium et robora maxima dissiparunt, et inundationes pluviales vias invias reddiderunt,

Judæorum pecunia ab illis extorquetur.

The Jews are heavily mulcted, but pitied by no one.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem tota fere, quam habuerunt Judæi, pecunia ab eisdem est extorta. Verumtamen ipsi nulli miserabiles extiterunt, quia de falsitate cartarum, sigillorum et monetæ crebro convinci probatum est ipsos fuisse,[3] atque manifestum. Quorum facinora tractatus exigunt diffusiores.[4]

De quodam Armenio, qui apud Sanctum Yvonem obiit.

Death of an Armenian bishop at St. Ives.

Anno quoque sub eodem tres fratres Armenii, exterminio Tartarorum effugati de partibus natalibus, vene-

---

[1] *absciso*] abciso, MS.

[2] This rubric, with the entire chapter (with the exception of the first four words), is written over an erasure. In the lower margin is a plummet note, "Dapsilitas regiæ mensæ abbreviatur;" and it is probable that the text originally referred to this subject, as related in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 778).

[3] *fuisse*] Added in marg.

[4] *tractatus exigunt diffusiores*] On an erasure. Fuller detail is given in B. C.

A.D. 1250.

runt ad Sanctum Yvonem ibidem oraturi; fuerat enim beatus Yvo natione orientalis. Erantque facie barbata, et gestu ac sanctitate viri venerabiles. Ibidem quoque unus eorum, qui videbatur eorum summus, infirmitate præreptus est, et sanctissime migravit ibidem a seculo, nomine Georgius; et quia episcopus fuisse credebatur, prout a sociis suis, qui barbari erant, elici potuit, juxta ecclesiam est veneranter sepultus, ubi et miraculis cœpit choruscare.[1]

Remansit in curia Romana episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus, proposito[2] suo exequendo.[3]

15 May. The bishop of Lincoln fails in his suit at Rome.

Redeuntibus[4] a partibus transmarinis magnatibus memoratis anno eodem, circa Pentecosten, remansit in curia Romana Lincolniensis episcopus, ut propositum conceptum effectui manciparet. Sed cum foret in enorme dampnum religiosorum, multi sibi pacem redimerunt, ut prædictum est.[5] Unde episcopus, circa festum sancti Michaelis, spe frustratus[6] ad propria[7] remeavit.

29 Sept.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] venit Londoniam, visitationem facturus.

12 May. Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury, holds his visitation at London.

Quarto vero idus Maii, videlicet die sancti Pancratii sociorumque ejus, venit archiepiscopus B[onefacius] Londoniam, ut ibidem episcopum Londoniensem et ejus capitulum, necnon et religiosos civitatis visitaret, sicut jam abbatiam de Feversham et prioratum Rofensem, ubi procurationes opimas,—numerosam enim

---

[1] *choruscare*] In the margin is added this note, "in [et ?] postea, in ecclesia est sepultus."

[2] *proposito*] proprosito, MS.

[3] *Robertus . . . exequendo*] On an erasure. This chapter is marked in the margin "*vacat.*"

[4] *Redeuntibus*] Rediuntibus, MS.

[5] *est*] Interlined. See *ante*, p. 70.

[6] *frustratus*] frustatus, MS.

[7] *propria*] pripria, MS.

A.D. 1250. habuit familiam, et, ut archiepiscopum decuit, honorabilem comitatum,—recepit ab illis ecclesiis, non sine earum gravamine non modico.[1]

Qualiter archiepiscopus visitandus receptus sit ab episcopo Londoniensi.

How the abp. was received by the bishop of London at Fulham.

Cum igitur archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Londonias appropinquasset, ut ecclesiam Sancti Pauli et alias ecclesias religiosorum, quæ in civitate Londoniarum sunt, visitaret, episcopus Londoniensis Fulco, vir quidem moribus, literatura et sanguine spectabilis, occurrit eidem adventanti, et apud Fulham,[2] manerium suum, quod non multum distat a Londoniis, ducens enim, splendide serenoque vultu procuravit quicquid ei necessarium videbatur. Necnon in munusculis, quæ etiam nobiles munera cara poterant appellare,[3] ipsum archiepiscopum et suos clericos, et milites ac servientes gratanter respexit ac munifice. Quæ omnia cum servientes non nobiles sed vulgares archiepiscopi obliquis oculis ingratanter respexissent, dixerunt hæc non de gratia, sed debito et uberiora sibi exhibenda. Nesciente igitur domino suo archiepiscopo, prout credendum est, fecerunt ferros a suorum equorum pedibus, licet bonos, avelli, novosque apponendos sibi incontinenti exhiberi, comminantes et improbe tumultuantes. Unde tam canonici Sancti Pauli et alii de civitate Londoniarum, quam ipse episcopus, talibus angariis adhibere remedia procurarunt, videntes quod plus pro oppressionibus quam moram reformationibus talis fieret, ut censebant, visitatio.

Shameful conduct of the abp.'s servants.

---

[1] *modico*] medico, MS. The whole passage, from *ubi procurationes* to *modico*, is written on an erasure.

[2] *Cum igitur . . . Fulham*] On an erasure. Some words also have been added in the margin, and then erased, but which can be deciphered as follows: *Sciens se, asportata favore papali et regali, efficaciter auxiliari.*

[3] *appellare*] apelare, MS.

Ut archiepiscopus receptus sit apud Sanctum Paulum.

A.D. 1250.

Veniens inde archiepiscopus ad ecclesiam Sancti Pauli, cum ibidem visitaturus non admitteretur, excommunicavit decanum cum quibusdam aliis ecclesiæ personis dignioribus. Similiter ad ecclesiam canonicorum Sanctæ Trinitatis. Inde ad Sanctum Bartholomæum, nec hic nec ibi admissus, ipsos excommunicavit. Deinde venire ad Herwes,[1] manerium suum, quod non multum a cœnobio Sancti Albani distat, properavit, ut ad idem cœnobium veniens, abbatem et monachos visitaret. Sed cum audisset, magistro Hugone de

The abp. excommunicates the dean of St. Paul's and others.

He proceeds to his manor of Harrow, in order to visit St.

---

[1] *Herwes*] From the beginning of the previous chapter, "Cum igitur," to this word, the whole of the original text has been partially or entirely erased, and re-written, partly over the erasure, and partly on a piece of vellum pasted above. The first seven lines are totally erased, and five others only in part to be deciphered. The rest is tolerably clear, as follows: . . . . *cum visitasset sua* . . . . . *visitaret. Ubi cum non admitteretur, excommunicavit decanum et quosdam alios canonicos digniores ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli* . . . . *Et confestim veniens ad prioratum Sanctæ Trinitatis, ubi non admissus, venit ad* . . . . . . *ad prioratum Sancti Bartholomæi, ut ibi canonicos visitaret. Et cum non admitteretur, iratus est valde, et in verba abusiva et contumeliosa prorumpens, ipsos canonicos multam passos* (?) *injuriam indecenter nimis tractavit; ejusque ministri catervatim irreverenter ruentes sanguinem, ut dicitur, fuderunt. Tanti igitur patris excessus in factis et dictis, suæ obliti conditionis, longum esset et probrosum recitare. Et quia multi ipsum in archiepiscopatu præcesserunt viri sanctissimi, tam martires quam confessores, factum istud enorme enormius videbatur, cum contraria juxta se posita magis apparent. Omnes igitur eos, qui visitationem suam non admiserunt, et episcopum de consensu excommunicavit. Decanus autem et canonici appellantes dominum papam adierunt, super talibus conquesturi. Et cito post ipse archiepiscopus transfretavit, se ipsum justificaturus. Et secum deferens literas domini regis et reginæ, quam dominus papa suam dixit* (?) *consanguineam, ab ipso papa favorabiliter receptus est et exauditus, sicut actus sequentes protestantur. Sed hæc in sequentibus plenius describentur.*

Archiepiscopus veniens apud Herues, et ibi pernoctans, reversus est.

Archiepiscopus vero adhuc ira vehementi pertumescens, in crastino, postquam apud Londonias tam irreverenter quam impetuose se gesserat, ad Herewes. Cf. B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 780, 781.)

A.D. 1250. Alban's, but turns back. Mortuo-mari, officiali suo, suggerente,[1] quod ipsa Beati Albani ecclesia supra omnia Angliæ cœnobia privilegiata fuisset, ne forte novissimus error pejor priore esset, reversus est. The bp. of London appeals to the pope. Episcopus autem Londoniensis non mediocriter perturbatus, petens consilium et auxilium ab amicis in jure peritis, appellavit ad summum pontificem pro enormi gravamine. Quia si ab pauperibus domibus procuraretur, omnes miserabiliter depauperaret.[2]

De capitulo fratrum Prædicatorum generalissimo.

General chapter held of the Friars Preachers. 24 June. Diebus autem sub eisdem, videlicet circa festum Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ, communi vocatione congregati sunt de universis terris Christianitatis, etiam de Terra Sancta, fratres de Ordine Prædicatorum apud domum suam de Holeburne Londoniis, ut de statu Ordinis sui et eorum officio diligenter contractarent. The king and others supply them with provisions. Et quia proprias non habebant facul- fol. 148 *b.* tates, magnates et prælati ex liberalitate sua eis per aliquot dies victualia invenerunt. Erant autem fratres quadringenti et amplius. Rex autem prima die capituli venit illuc, orationum suffragia petiturus ab eisdem; et pavit eos eadem die. Postea in crastino, regina; deinde episcopus Londoniensis. Postea Johannes Mansel. Deinde alii, utpote abbas Sancti Albani, abbas de Wautham, et alii prælati circumdegentes, quibus et ipsi literatorie supplicabant.

De perturbatione Londoniensium.

Claim of certain liberties Diebus sub eisdem cives Londonienses perturbati sunt[3] vehementer, eo quod dominus rex quasdam exegit libertates ad opus abbatis Westmonasterii, in enorme dampnum[1] eorum, et contra libertates civitatis eorumdem.[2] Rex autem a magnatibus suis super hoc correptus, saniori usus consilio, civibus Londoniarum sua jura, tam per aquam quam per terram, præcepit restitui. Quod cum vidisset abbas, ab incepta lite, quam moverat, benigne cessavit.[3]

---

[1] *magistro . . . suggerente*] Added in marg.

[2] *ab amicis . . . . depauperaret*] On an erasure.

[3] *sunt*] On an erasure, as also the first syllable of the next word.

A.D. 1250. made on the Londoners in behalf of the abbat of Westminster.

Commissum est sigillum regium magistro Willelmo de Kilkenni.

Tempore quoque sub eodem dominus rex, sano fretus consilio, custodiam sigilli sui magistro Willelmo de Kilkenni, viro prudenti et circumspecto ac juris perito commendavit.[4]

The custody of the Great Seal given to William de Kilkenni.

Rex Francorum a Damiata recedens, versus plagam tendit orientalem.

Per idem tempus, postquam dominus rex Francorum exierat a castris Damiatæ, apposita diligenti ac fideli custodia in civitate, ducis videlicet Burgundiæ et quamplurimorum magnatum cum eo, militum ac manus pedestris numerosæ; simulque legato et quibusdam cum ipso prælatis, regina quoque, et multis nobilibus dominabus cum suis familiis; versus plagam orientalem infelici sidere cum exercitu suo iter direxit et vexilla. Secutusque est eum Deo devotus Willelmus Longa-spata, licet in exercitu Francorum multas

The king of France leaves Damietta, and proceeds eastward.

He is followed by William Longespée.

---

[1] *dampnum*] Interlined.

[2] *eorumdem*] On an erasure.

[3] *consilio . . . cessavit*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, in great measure erased, but still to be deciphered thus, *consilio a proposito resilivit, abbate, qui ad hoc dominum regem inclinaverat (?), graviter [a] multis redarguto. Similiter autem per quasdam cartas de novo a domino rege impetratas . . . . avit abbas memoratus abbatem et conventum de Sancto Albano, [contra] cartas regum antiquorum.*

[4] *ac . . . commendavit*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1250. antea injurias tolerasset, exercitu suo ipsum consequente. Et sic divisus est exercitus[1] Christianus in plures partes, et ideo nimis enervatus; magna enim pars remansit ad classem tuendam, et major ad custodiam civitatis, ut prænotatur.

Galfridus de Langeleia, miles, constitutus justiciarius de foresta, pecuniam adquirit[2] infinitam.

Large sums of money exacted for the king's use by Geoffrey de Langeley.

Sub eisdem itaque temporibus quidam miles, domini regis ballivus et de foresta justiciarius, inquisitor argumentosus nimis transgressionum factarum in eadem, nomine Galfridus, cognomento[3] de Langeleia, plures Angliæ partes peragrans, adeo in pecuniam, ad opus regis, de forestis, præcipue in partibus Angliæ borealibus, intendit adquirendam,[4] ut quantitas thesauri collecti fidem in auditorum cordibus excederet, vel stuporem generaret. Respectu autem hujus quilibet præcedens, Robertus etiam Passeleuue, piissimus censebatur. In transgressionibus enim compertis, licet minimis, pœna culpæ minime valuit respondere.[5]

Transfretat archiepiscopus B[onefacius].

The abp. of Canterbury goes to Rome.

Tempore quoque sub eodem archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius], comperiens quod decanus Sancti Pauli, concomitantibus quibusdam ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicis, et eorum, quos læserat, procuratoribus,[6] consilio legistarum animatus, et regiis literis armatus, necnon et generis sui potentiæ confisus, curiam Romanam aditurus in magno[1] apparatu transfretavit. Consideravit perspicaciter, quod si ecclesiam Londoniensem posset subpeditare, nulla ei in Anglia resistere præsumeret.

---

[1] *exercitus*] excercitus, MS. throughout.

[2] *adquirit*] On an erasure.

[3] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[4] *in pecuniam . . . adquirendam*] On an erasure.

[5] From the words *ut quantitas* to *respondere*, the text is marked in the margin for omission by the word "*vacat*," in red letters.

[6] Some words appear to be here wanting, but B. C. agree with the text.

A.D. 1250.

Obiit Robertus de Lexintona.

Eodemque anno, iiii^{o}. kalendas Junii, obiit Robertus de Lexintona, clericus, qui in justiciariæ officio diu commoratus, nomen famosum et amplas sibi adquisierat possessiones. De quo etiam multa in hoc libro præscribuntur.

29 May. Death of Robert de Lexington.

Fretherieus Parmenses et multos rebelles oppressit.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem rumores jocundissimi aures Occidentalium vanis demulcebant consolationibus, videlicet de captione Kairi, Babiloniæ et Alexandriæ. Quorum causam prætermitto, quia,

False rumours of the capture of Cairo and Alexandria.

> "Tota trahit series ex turpi fine pudorem."[2]

Et per idem tempus Fretherieus Parmenses et alios Ytalicos sibi rebelles vehementer, victo Willelmo de Holandia, oppressit.

Oppression of the Parmesans by the emperor.

Mandatum flebile transmissum de Terra Sancta comiti Ricardo.

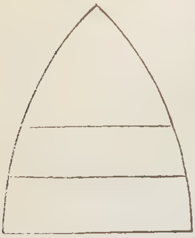
Die vero beati Kenelmi, videlicet kalendis Augusti, comite Ricardo existente Londoniis, et ad scaccarium sedente, venit ad ipsum nuncius quidam festinus et tristis, rumorum et literarum bajulus teterrimarum, hujus sententiæ tenorem continentium: "Totus exercitus Christianus in Terra Sancta, constans ex exercitu

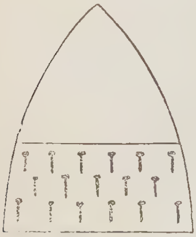
1 Aug. News brought to earl Richard from the Holy Land of the defeat of the

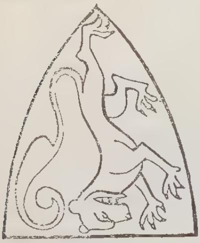
---

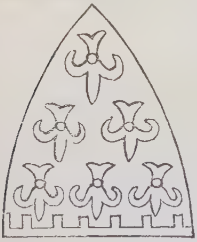
[1] *magno*] On an erasure. In the margin is added *et pompa*. In B.C., *in magna pompa et apparatu.*

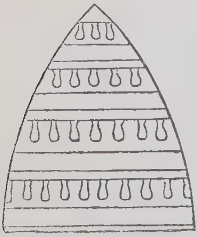
[2] From the "Nova Poetria" of Geoffrey de Vinesauf. Cf. vol. ii. p. 276.











regis Francorum et quorumdam Anglorum, Templariorum, Hospitalariorum, Theutonicorum et fratrum Sancti Lazari, confusus, triumphantibus Crucis hostibus, devictus occubuit.[1] Cujus ruinæ causa comes Atrabatensis Robertus, infelix et superbus, fuisse perhibetur. Hujus autem infortunii plena enarratio in carta missa domino regi prolixius enarratur.[2] Quod autem lugubrius erat, multi Christiani apostatarunt et fides titubavit Christiana, et Damiata restituta est Sarracenis; et dominus rex Francorum, quod nunquam antea evenerat, a Sarracenis captus est, et pro multis[3] milibus marcarum redemptus; unde tota Francia, immo etiam tota Christianitas, induit dolorem et cum diffidentia confusionem.

Christian army, and capture of Louis. The cause of this disaster ascribed to Robert, count o Artois.

Rex Francorum remittit fratres suos in Franciam, pro succursu.

fol. 149 *a*.

Rex igitur Francorum sub conductu Sarracenorum Acon perductus, post solutionem redemptionis suæ, misit duos fratres suos superstites, quia comes Atraba-

Louis sends his brothers home to raise

---

[1] In the lower margin are drawn six shields of arms reversed of nobles who were slain in the conflict with the Saracens, with inscriptions in red letters beneath each shield, namely, 1, azure six lioncels, 3, 2, 1, rampant or; above the shield are two hands issuing from the clouds, holding a dove, as the emblem of the Holy Spirit; and beneath, "*Comitis Willelmi Longæspatæ;*" 2, azure a fess argent, "*Castellani de S. Ædemaro;*" 3, party per fess, ermine and sable, "*Castellani de Gant;*" 4, gules, a lion rampant argent, "*Comitis Boloniæ;*" 5, azure, six fleurs-de-lis, 3, 2, 1, or, a bend of 8 points gules, "*Comitis Atrabatensis Roberti,*" by the side of which is drawn a black bird, as the symbol of the Evil Spirit; 6, barry of eight, argent and vaire gules, "*Engelrami de Cusci.*" Below these inscriptions is written in red, "*Multique alii de nobilitate Franciæ ceciderunt, quorum nec scuta nec nomina nobis innotuerunt. Præter eos, militia Templi et Hospitalis confusa est.*" There are also two lines written below with a plummet, but so indistinct that only the following words are legible . . . . *cia confusionem, et . . . . si placuit, plus animarum quam corporum lucra s . . ti.*

[2] *in carta . . . enarratur*] Written on an erasure. The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 796.) See also *postea*, p. 102.

[3] *multis*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

tensis Robertus, tertius frater, in Nilo submersus perierat, in Franciam, ad matrem suam Blanchiam et magnates terræ, supplicans attentius, quatinus ei in arcto posito succursum mitterent, in ultionem tantæ, quam perpessus est,[1] pro Christo confusionis. Et cum desideraret domino regi Anglorum[2] omnia jura ultramarina reddere, ea conditione, ut ei efficaciter succurreret, et hoc suis nobilibus Franciæ significaret per fratres suos memoratos, scilicet Pictaviæ et Provinciæ comites, non adquieverunt primates Francorum, ne Franciæ prosperitas penitus expiraret.[3]

A.D. 1250. forces to aid him.

He proposes to restore to Henry his continental territories, but the French nobles refuse to sanction it.

De insolita maris commotione.

Sub eisdem temporibus, mense videlicet Octobris, luna existente prima, die mensis quoque prima, cœpit mare densa caligine perturbari, et perturbatum fines solitos pertransire, occupans partes litoreas, quas nunquam se meminit aliquis prævidisse.

Unusual inundation of the sea.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] multorum constantiam enervavit.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] adeo per suum officialem et alios suos[4] ministeriales canonicos de Sancto Bartholomæo[5] perterruit, quod causam suam non sunt ausi, licet enormiter læsi, ventilare, nec querimoniam coram papa vel aliquo alio reponere; unde, quia pauper ubique jacet,[6] siluerunt, nec sunt jus suum, ut ultio debita sequeretur, prosecuti, sed causam suam Deo et patrono suo beato Bartholomæo commendarunt.

The canons of St. Bartholomew's abandon their suit against the archbishop of Canterbury.

---

[1] *est*] Interlined.

[2] *Anglorum*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[3] *Et cum . . . . expiraret*] The whole of this is marked in the margin "*dubium*," in red letters.

[4] *suos*] Repeated superfluously after *ministeriales*.

[5] *canonicos . . . . Bartholomæo*] Added in marg.

[6] *jacet*] Interlined.

A.D. 1250.

De obitu episcopi Wintoniensis Willelmi.[1]

21 Sept. Death of William de Rale, bp. of Winchester.

Eodemque anno, circiter festum sancti Mathæi, obiit episcopus Wintoniæ Willelmus de Rale, apud Turonim. Qui, ut sibi parceret in expensis, ibidem circiter xi. mensibus moram cum castigata familia continuarat. Obligabatur enim episcopatus ejus debitis inæstimabilibus. Exposuerat enim non minimam pecuniam, tam in primitiis sui præsulatus ac relegatione.[2]

Monachi Wintonienses coacti sunt postulare Æthelmarum, fratrem regis.

The monks of Winchester are compelled to elect Æthelmar as their bishop.

Monachi igitur Wintonienses ex tunc[3] in arcto constituti, inter se[4] hoc[5] diligenter conferentes, pristinas tribulationes, quas pro Willelmo, electo[6] Valentino, graves, et graviores pro postulatione Willelmi, episcopi Norwicensis jam defuncti, perpessi sunt, memoriter recitarunt. Elegerunt igitur vel postularunt ipsum Æthelmarum, secundum domini regis urgentem[7] petitionem, in episcopum et pastorem animarum suarum,[8] licet ætate tenerum et scientia erudiendum.[9] Rex autem ilico nuncios sollempnes ad curiam Romanam destinavit, ut idem Æ[thelmarus], frater suus,[10] confirmaretur.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed.

[2] *Exposuerat . . . . relegatione*] Written on an erasure, and the sense seems incomplete. Cf. ed. Wats, p. 800.

[3] *ex tunc*] On an erasure.

[4] *inter se*] On an erasure.

[5] *hoc*] Added in marg.

[6] *electo*] elicto, MS.

[7] *urgentem*] On an erasure.

[8] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier.

[9] *tenerum . . . erudiendum*] On an erasure.

[10] *frater suus*] Written above the line.

A.D. 1250.

Obiit Rofensis episcopus. Eligitur magister Laurentius de Sancto Martino.[1]

Eodemque anni tempore, circa festum videlicet sancti Michaelis, obiit episcopus Rofensis, et, procurante domino rege, sepultum est corpus ejus apud Westmonasterium. Cujus loco monachi Rofenses elegerunt magistrum Laurentium de Sancto Martino in episcopum suum, domini regis clericum et consiliarium specialem, et in curia Romana efficacem procuratorem, natione Anglicum, et eleganter literatum. Archiepiscopus autem Cantuariensis B[onefacius], malens jure[2] magistrum Hugonem de Mortuo mari, officialem suum, in eundem episcopatum promovere, electionem illam nitebatur enervare.[3]

Death of [Richard de Wendene,] bishop of Rochester. 29 Sept. Laurence de S. Martino elected to succeed him. The abp. of Canterbury endeavours to make the election void.

Redit episcopus Lincolniensis a curia Romana, frustratus a desiderio suo.

Et circa idem festum, beati scilicet Michaelis, episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus, cum in curia Romana infinitam pecuniam et dies plurimos frustra[4] expendisset, et conceptum propositum ad votum [perficere][5] minime[6] valuisset, tristis et vacuus, cum multos religiosos multipliciter fatigasset, ad propria remeavit.

Return of the bp. of Lincoln from Rome.

De terræmotu in Anglia, scilicet in Ciltria.

Anno quoque sub eodem, die videlicet sanctæ Luciæ, circa horam tertiam, factus est terræmotus in Ciltria,

13 Dec. Unusual earthquake in the Chilterns.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed, and in the lower margin another mitre and crosier, erect, with these words in red, "*Magister Laurentius de Sancto Martino creatur in episcopum Rofensem.*" By the side of this appear a second mitre and crosier, with some words in red, now erased.

[2] *jure*] On an erasure.

[3] *Archiepiscopus . . . . enervare*] This passage is marked "*vacat*" in the margin in red letters, and some additional words have been added, but afterwards wholly erased.

[4] *frustra*] On an erasure.

[5] *perficere*] Supplied from B. C.

[6] *minime*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1250. ubi a tempore, cujus non extat memoria, nullatenus visum est tale quid evenisse. Ipsa enim patria solida est et cretosa, nullatenus cavernosa. Unde talis eventus insolitus et innaturalis admiratione dignus censebatur, licet in ædificiis non dampnosus.[1] Factus est etiam cum ipso terræmotu tanquam terribilis tonitrus et mugitus subterraneus. Significare igitur dicebantur vel futuram pestem non minimam, vel regnorum immutationem, vel mortem alicujus principis famosissimi.[2]

At the end of this year twenty-five quinquagenaries of years had

Finito hoc anno, consummatæ sunt viginti quinque quinquagenæ ex tempore gratiæ.

Completo igitur hoc anno, jam fluxerunt ex tempore gratiæ viginti quinque quinquagenæ amorum, id est, mille ducenti et quinquaginta. Notandum autem est, et non leviter attendendum, quod in nulla xx^{ti}iiii^{or}.

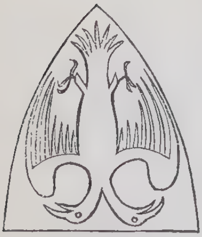
---

[1] *dampnosus*] dapnosus, MS.

[2] At the end of this chapter another has been added in the margin, relative to the death of the emperor Frederic, but the latter and larger portion of it subsequently erased, so that only the following fragment can be read:

"*De morte Fretherici.*

Obiit igitur eodem die maximus principum, mundi stupor, Fretherícus, in Apulia, absolutus a sententia qua innodebatur, et . . . . habitu Cisterciensium . . . . . . condidit nobilissimum testamentum, quo . . . per ipsum dam . . ." Cf. B. C. and ed. Wats, p. 804. In the margin, also, is a drawing of the imperial shield, reversed, *viz.*, or, a double-headed eagle displayed sable, with the words beneath, "*Scutum imperatoris F*[*retherici*]," in red. On each side of the shield is a crown reversed, inscribed "*Corona Jerusalem,*" and "*Corona Siciliæ,*" with the addition, "*Hee* [sic pro *Hæ*] *sunt adeptæ.*" Lower down, are three other crowns, also reversed, with the following long rubric: ¶ *Triplici corona coronatur imperator Romanorum. Aurea, ratione imperii Romani; quod quasi aurum toti mundo. Argentea, ratione Alemanniæ, quæ nummismate argenteo ditatur, et habundat commerciis. Necnon est famosa, unde vulgariter dicitur imperator Alemaniæ. Argentum enim sonorum est. Ferrea, ratione Ytaliæ, quæ armis et commu* (sic) *urbibus roboratur; ferrum namque pro armis accipitur, scilicet materia pro materiato.*" Beneath this again is written in red, "¶ *Rex autem Angliæ tres in scuto suo gerit leopardos, quia rex, dux et comes est.*"



quinquagenarum antecedentium tot evenerunt mirabilia et insolitæ novitates, sicut in hac ultima quinquagena, scilicet vicesima quinta. Et sunt nonnulli historiographi qui asserunt, quod nec in omnibus aliis quinquagenis visa sunt tot prodigia aut novitates admirandæ, sicut in hac jam terminata.

A.D. 1250. elapsed since the æra of Grace.

Nota mirabilia, quæ in hac quinquagena annorum contigerunt.

In hac enim quinquagena Tartari de suis longinquis et occultis sedibus exeuntes, multa Orientalium climata[1] tam fidelium quam infidelium ferali exterminio vastaverunt. Admiralius Murmelinus, Affricanorum et Hispanorum rex potentissimus incredulorum, cum toto suo exercitu a Christianis dissipato, victus est in Hispania, et vexillum ejus captum, et primogenitus ejus, eo elapso, peremptus est.[2] Prædicante magistro Olivero in partibus Germaniæ, apparuit omnibus manifeste in aere crucifixus Dominus[3] noster Jhesus Christus. Recessit Græca ecclesia a subjectione Romanæ, Battacio scismatizante.[4] Damiata, civitas Ægipti famosissima, bis capta est a Christianis, et bis amissa. Anglia interdictum passa est per annos circiter vii., et tantundem fere temporis guerram intestinam, et a rege Francorum procuratam et illatam, toleravit. Ipsa autem tandem facta est tributaria. Rex Anglorum Johannes Normanniam et multas alias terras[5] ultramarinas cum jam amiserat, et[6] Angliam papæ Innocentio III. subjugaverat, in extremis laborans, nihil[7] terræ pacifice possedit. Unde, juxta multorum

fol. 149 *b*.

Marvellous events in this half-century, *viz.:* Incursion of the Tartars. Defeat of the Moors in Spain.

Appearance of a Crucifix in the air.

Schism of the Greek church. Damietta twice captured and lost. Interdict and civil war in England.

King John loses his continental dominions.

---

[1] *climata*] climita, MS.

[2] *et vexillum . . . peremptus est*] On an erasure.

[3] *crucifixus Dominus*] At first written *Dominus* only.

[4] *scismatizante*] Written on a small slip of vellum pasted over an erasure.

[5] *terras*] Added to the text.

[6] *et*] On an erasure.

[7] *nihil*] nichil, MS.

A.D. 1250.

Ordeal of fire and water forbidden.

Several bishoprics held by a person not a bishop.

Usurers allowed in England.

No rector permitted to succeed to his father, or hold two benefices.

Louis of France elected king of England.

The emperors Otho and Frederic excommunicated.

The Templars and Hospitallers defeated.

Jerusalem twice destroyed.

Two eclipses of the sun, and other atmospheric phenomenon.

Frequent earthquakes.

prænostica, mortuus est[1] in summa cordis amaritudine. Prohibitum est judicium, quod solebat fieri per ignem et aquam. Permissum est impudenter uni personæ fructus plurium episcopatuum recipere, et tamen episcopum non esse.[2] Permissum est, ut in Anglia, et maxime Londoniis, ut[3] habitent Christiani usurarii, et sub nomine mercatorum papalium palliari; quos populos Caursinos appellant. Prohibitum est, ne quis ecclesiæ rector patri suo, rectori ecclesiæ, succedat immediate; et ne quis duos redditus possideat. Sed papa cum multis talibus non patrissantibus[4] dispensavit. Illegitimi quoque simili modo legitimantur. Electus est ab Anglis in regem et dominum, filius regis Francorum Philippi, Ludowicus, patris sui primogenitus[5] et heres; sed in superbiam erectus, a pactis resilivit fere optinens.[6] Ludouuicus tamen, fidei et promissorum transgressor, inglorius recessit. Otto et Fretherícus, imperatores Romanorum, papæ rebelles, excommunicantur et cassantur, et turpiter obierunt.[7] Capti,[8] occisi sunt et dissipati conventus Templi, Hospitalis, Sanctæ Mariæ Theutonicorum, et Sancti Lazari, bis. Et civitas sancta Jerusalem, cum suis ecclesiis et locis, Christi præsentia consecratis, bis destructa, nunc a Chorosminis, nunc a Babiloniæ Soldano exterminata. Eclipsis solis bis contigit per triennium; et aliud mirabile signum apparuit, prout evidenter describitur in hoc libro, anno gratiæ M^{o}.CC^{o}.XXX^{o}III^{o}. Terræmotus in Anglia pluries. In partibus Sabaudiæ v. villæ, cum suis ecclesiis, domibus et incolis, montibus conglomeratis sunt subversæ. Maris ascensus factus est insolitus et dampnosus, qualis non est prævisus. Una noctium visæ sunt stellæ cadere, ita quod semel x. vel amplius. Item, in bello commisso apud Bovenas, die vii. Dormientium, scilicet Dominica, imperator Otho prostratus de equo et iterum vix insellatus, victus fugit, cum omnibus suis. Et Hugo de Boves, cum omnibus suis ex alia parte, et cito post submersus in mari. Rex quoque Francorum Philippus, equo prostratus, vix a mortis discrimine liberatus est; victor tamen et voti compos a campo recessit. Capti vero ibidem sunt Saresbiriæ, Flandriæ et Bononiæ comites præclari; et omnes complices regis Anglorum J[ohannis] confusi. Comes quoque Pelu, et omnes qui venerant cum imperatore, vel victi vel capti fuerunt ignominiose.[1] Concilium generale bis celebratum est, Romæ scilicet[2] et Lugduni. In ultimo cassatus est imperator Fretherieus. In mari, non procul a Janua, captus est Otto cardinalis, quondam legatus in Anglia, cum pluribus archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus, prælatis et clericis quamplurimis, necnon et Januensibus multis ducatum prestituris. Wallia quoque,[3] Leolino, principe suo, viduata, et postea duobus filiis suis, legitimo David[4] et naturali Griffino, præmatura morte occumbentibus, legibus Angliæ et dominatui regis incurvatur. Wasconia quoque recalcitrans, per comitem Legrecestriæ Simonem edomatur. Rex Henricus III. bis, ut jura sua ultramarina adquireret, transfretavit; sed Fretherici falsis promissionibus delusus, nihil profecit in suo proposito, scilicet, ut ea[5] in manu forti reposceret, cum exercitu

---

[1] *multorum . . . mortuus est*] On an erasure.

[2] *Permissum est . . . non esse*] This paragraph is marked "*vacat*" in the margin, in red letters.

[3] *ut*] Interlined.

[4] *non patrissantibus*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over an erasure in the original text.

[5] *primogenitus*] promogenitus, MS.

[6] *Sed in . . . optinens*] On an erasure. The sense seems imperfect.

[7] *et turpiter obierunt*] The first and third of these words are on an erasure, and the second added in marg.

[8] *Capti*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1250.

Inundations of the sea.

Falling stars.

Battle of Bovines. 27 July.

A General Council twice celebrated.

Cardinal Otho and other prelates captured at sea.

Wales subjected to the English rule.

Gascony subdued.

Henry III. fails to recover his continental territories.

---

[1] *Item in bello . . . ignominiose*] Added on to the text in the lower margin.

[2] *scilicet*] silicet, MS.

[3] *Wallia quoque*] On an erasure.

[4] *David*] On an erasure.

[5] *adquireret . . . ut ea*] Written over an erasure. After *sed*, the words *per imperato*[*rem*] were at first written, but subsequently expuncted.

A.D. 1250. bis transfretavit, et bis inglorius remeavit. Magna pars Hispaniæ, cum suis nobilibus civitatibus Corduba et Sibilla, et multis aliis urbibus et insulis, cultui Christiano et regi Castellæ mancipatur. In partibus autem aquilonaribus, ampla pars Frisiæ et Rusciæ per regem Daciæ Æthelmarum Christianis inhabitatur, expulsis infidelibus. Papa velut exul et profugus, persequente imperatore Fretherico, et expulsus ab urbe, latitans nunc Agnaniæ, nunc Perusii,[1] nunc aliis commoratur civitatibus. Imposuit enim ipse[2] imperator F[rethericus] papæ, quod cum Deo in Terra Sancta militaret, sibi imperium niteretur subjugare. Templarios quoque, de proditione accusatos,[3] idem imperator persequebatur. Post obitum Gregorii, papæ, vacavit sedes papalis per annum et ix. menses. Tres apostolici viri sederunt infra duos annos. Unus quoque cardinalis, omnibus præstantior, Anglicus natione, magister scilicet Robertus de Sumercote, dum de[4] electione tractaretur in palatio, quod dicitur Regia Solis, obiit, ut dicitur, potionatus; cœptis tamen residui insistebant.[5] Tandem electus Sinebaldus cardinalis, qui et dictus Innocentius IIII.; sequens sui prædecessoris vestigia, ipsum imperatorem F[rethericum] excommunicavit et persequebatur; fugiensque de loco ad locum, tandem Lugdunum pervenit, ubi, concilio generali celebrato, ipsum deposuit. Et, post ejusdem F[retherici] depositionem elegit ecclesia dominum[6] Andegravium de Duringia, et postea Willelmum, comitem Holandiæ, nitebatur subrogare; sed uno mortuo, alio victo, minime adhuc[7] profecit in proposito. Suspenduntur prælati a collatione beneficiorum, donec satisfiant illis pro quibus

Great part of Spain subdued by the king of Castille.

Friesland and Russia conquered by the king of Denmark.

The pope exiled from Rome.

The Templars accused of treachery.

The papal chair vacant a year and nine months.

Three popes filled the see within two years.

Cardinal Robert de Sumercote poisoned.

Innocent IV. excommunicates the emperor.

General Council held at Lyons, where Frederic is deposed.

The Landgrave of Thuringia and William count of Holland elected in his place.

Prelates compelled to provide

---

[1] *Perusii*] Perisii, MS.

[2] *ipse*] Repeated by error, but underscored for omission in the second instance.

[3] *accusatos*] acusatos, MS.

[4] *de*] Interlined.

[5] *dum de . . . . insistebant*] On an erasure.

[6] *post ejusdem . . . dominum*] On an erasure, and no doubt written at first, as in B. C., *extorta ab ecclesiæ prælatis impudenter infinita pecunia.*

[7] *adhuc*] Added to the text.

A.D. 1250

beneficies for the pope's nominees. The Orders of Preachers and Minorites favoured by the pope.

papa scribit, ut illis in beneficiis uberibus provideatur, ita quod ad tantam pecuniæ quantitatem ascenderunt, fol. 150 *a.* ut regii redditus creduntur æstimari.[1] Fratres Prædicatores et Minores, ex præcepto domini papæ urgente et obedientia cogente, officium subeunt in negotiis papalibus peragendis. Quibus a domino papa conceditur potestas supra præcellentes ecclesiarum, tam cathedralium quam conventualium, prælatos. Quod, paucis elapsis annis, videlicet triginta, non credidimus posse evenire. Multi[2] sancti in Anglia, et præcipue sanctus Edmundus,[3] archiepiscopus[4] et confessor, sollempniter canonizatus, apud Pontiniacum choruscat miraculis. Sanctus Robertus heremita apud Knareburc virtutibus claret manifestis. Episcopus quoque Londoniensis Rogerus, et alii plures in Anglia, et sancta Elizabeth in Alemannia, filia regis Hungariæ, vidua; necnon et sancta Hildegardis, prophetissa, signis insignibus decorantur. Insuper in eisdem partibus ecclesia militans sanctas novæ religionis quasdam mulieres producit, quas

Many Saints in England.

St. Elizabeth and St. Hildegardis in Germany.

---

[1] *illis . . . æstimari*] On an erasure. Instead of *ut* (inserted by a recent hand) before *regii*, the word *quantitatem* was at first repeated, and then erased. After this sentence, in the lower margin is written with a plummet, "Plurimorum Ordinum fratres floruerunt, Prædicatores, Minores, Cruciferi, Carmeliani, Begewini."

[2] *Multi*] The small capital letter has been omitted to be filled in.

[3] *Fratres . . . Edmundus*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, half erased, and partly added in the margin, which reads thus: *Papa de ipsis, licet aliquibus invitis, suos facit theo*[*l*]*oneareos et legatos transformatos et nuncios secretos, atque moriturorum vel mortuorum in testamentis executores. Insuper collectarum in negotio Crucis potentes executores, et in prædicationibus quæstores, et pecuniarum multiformes exactores. Unde in pluribus sanctitas et fama primitiva videret expirare, nisi violentia obedientiæ ipsos excusaret, qui propter obedientiam optemperarunt. Sanctus Ædmundus, Cantuariensis archi.* Cf. ed. Wats, p. 805. In the lower margin five lines have also been written with a plummet, but only a part can now be read, as follows: *nobilis sedes Cant. in qua sederunt sancti præelecti, ut Alphegus, Anselmus, Lanfrancus, Ricardus, Edmundus, viri sanctissimi, ad libitum regis aliis prioribus dissimilibus contradix . . . . electoribus . . . . possidenda.*

[4] *archiepiscopus*] episcopus, MS., as now left.

A.D. 1250.

Rise of the Beguines.

The church of Westminster rebuilt by Henry III.

Gifts made to the church.

Various heresies are put down in Italy.

The Cistercians found a school at Paris.

populus nominat Beguinas, continentiæ, orationum et jejuniorum virtutibus insignitas. Reædificatur ecclesia Westmonasterii, sumptibus domini regis Henrici III.; et feretrum aureum, ad opus sancti Edwardi, gemmis et artificio pretiosissimum, ejusdem regis sumptibus fabricatur. Vasa autem carissima et admiratione digna, olosericis et gemmis, cum novis cartis et libertatibus, necnon et nundinis,[1] ab eodem rege eidem ecclesiæ conferuntur. Albigensium, Jovinianorum, et multorum Ytalicorum hæreses, quæ pullulaverunt, diligentia vigilantissima prælatorum, fratrum Prædicatorum et Minorum, necnon et[2] miraculis, quibus choruscabant, qui in hac diligentia prædicando, disputando, convertendo et docendo fideliter decertarunt, et pro eadem causa feliciter occubuerunt, exsufflantur.[3] Monachi Ordinis Cisterciensis, ne propter eorum simplicitatem contemptui a viris literatis et scolas exercentibus[4] haberentur, qui in eosdem probra congesserunt, ita ut ipsos bubulcos et ovium tonsores appellarent, salubre sibi[5] remedium procurarunt. Procurante enim abbate Clarevallis, natione Anglico, constructa est Parisius nobilissima mansio, ubi ipsi monachi decenter et honeste conversari possunt et studere, ita ut confluant ad ipsos scolarium numerosa multitudo, qui in theologia, decretis[6] et libris moralibus non minimum profecerunt, de re publica sustentati; licet legamus de sancto Benedicto, quod[7] relictis literarum studiis, ut[8] liberius orationi et con-

---

[1] *necnon et nundinis*] On a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *utinam non in aliorum læsionem.*

[2] *et*] Added in marg.

[3] *exsufflantur*] exuflantur, MS., added in marg.

[4] *exercentibus*] excercentibus, MS.

[5] *sibi*] In the text *si*, but corr. in marg.

[6] *decretis*] decreti, MS.

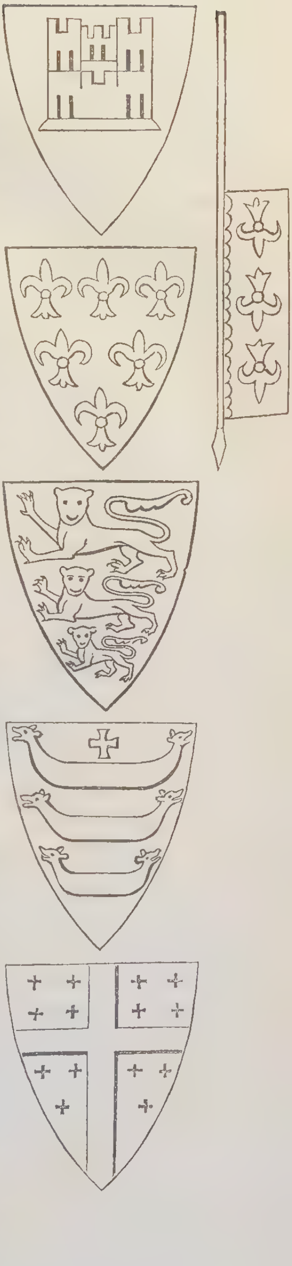
[7] *quod*] Added in marg.

[8] *diligentia vigilantissima . . . . studiis, ut*] The whole of this is written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which has been partly erased, but can still be read, as follows: *destruuntur. Tepuit fidelium omnium tam cleri quam populi devotio, immo potius exasperatum est odium contra Romanam ecclesiam, adeo quod Fretherieus,*

. 1250. templationi vacaret, [deserta][1] petere decrevisset. Hæc autem novitas adinventa[2] est propter moderni temporis malitiam, ut obstruatur[3] os iniqua loquentium.[4] Sarracenis ad votum multotiens triumphantibus, Christianorum generalis exercitus, videlicet Francorum, rege præsente, Templariorum, Hospitaliarorum, Theutonicorum, fratrum Sancti Lazari et incolarum Terræ Sanctæ, proh dolor! vincitur, captivatur, trucidatur. Rex Angliæ, H[enricus] III., crucesignatur, et multi in Anglia nobiles cum illo; in Francia in multo plures. Multi quoque reges crucesignantur[5] in diversis mundi partibus, rex scilicet Hispaniæ, et rex Norwagiæ.[6]

at of
French
y by the
cens.

y sove-
ns and
es take
ross.



---

licet suspecta in fide persona, omnium fere Christianorum favorem habuerit, in odium Romanæ curiæ. Rex Norwagiæ Haco, antea princeps, in regem unctus coronatur. Monachi Cisterciences, ex dispensatione papali, constructis competentibus ædificiis Parisius et alibi, ubi viget scolarium universitas, student; et hoc factum est, ne amplius Prædicatoribus, de sua scientia jactantibus, contemptui habeantur. Nobilis sedes Cantuariensis, suorum prædecessorum archipræsulum illustrata sanctitate, viluit omnibus odiosa, eo quod causa vel occasio fuisse videbatur multorum et magnorum malorum in Anglia, videlicet, interdicti generalis, tributi et guerræ, et ultimo, quod, spretis viris sanctis et indigenis, alienigenam insufficientem, Bonefacium, sibi in pastorem suarum animarum, in archipræsulem Cantuariensem, et totius Angliæ primatem incircumspectius sibi monachi elegerunt. Unde idem archiepiscopus . . . . to factus est flagellum totius . . . . . . Cf. ed. Wats, p. 806.

[1] *deserta*] Supplied from a previous passage in p. 57.

[2] *adinventa*] adinvenīta, MS.

[3] *obstruatur*] obstrua, MS.

[4] *liberius . . . loquentium*] Written on an erasure.

[5] In the margin are drawn five shields of arms of sovereigns who had taken the cross, in the following order: 1, gules, a castle or triple tower argent, with the inscription, "*Scutum regis Castellæ, cruce signati;*" 2, azure, six fleurs-de-lis, 3, 2, 1, or, with a banner reversed, by the side, bearing azure, three fleurs-de-lis or, "*Scutum regis Francorum, sed vexillum prostratum in bello;*" 3, gules, three lions passant gardant or, "*Scutum regis Anglorum, cruce signati;*" 4, gules, three gallies or, the first of which bears a cross, "*Scutum regis Norwagiæ, cruce signati;*" 5, or, a cross argent between fourteen smaller crosses, "*Scutum regis Jerusalem, cognomento Bresne.*" All these shields have a crown by the side of each, and each is surmounted by a red cross.

[6] *in diversis . . . Norwagiæ*] On an erasure. Some words by the side are also erased.

A.D. 1250. Siege of Antioch. Deaths of many noble crusaders.

Antiochia artatur, quam Turci obsident, facto usque ad muros exterminio. Migraverunt autem ad Christum hoc anno nimis letali, pro Dei hereditate adquirenda decertantes fideliter, relictis natali patria, uxoribus et liberis, consanguineis et amicis, nobiles infiniti, præcipue autem de Francorum regione, quos constat esse martires gloriosos, et eorum nomina, quæ propter sui multitudinem hoc volumine scribi nequeunt, in libro vitæ titulo indelebili suis profecto meritis annotantur. Hæc autem mirabilia et novitates, quæ nec visa nec audita, immo nec scripta [1] reperiuntur a cunctis patrum nostrorum retroactis temporibus, in hujus ultimæ annorum quadragenæ [2] tempore contigerunt.[3]

Operis hujus finalis conclusio.

Proposed termination of the Chronicles of Matthew Paris.

Hic terminantur fratris Mathei Parisiensis, monachi Sancti Albani, Cronica. Quæ pro utilitate posteritatis subsecuturæ, et amore Dei, et beati Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, honore, ne memoriam eventuum modernorum vetustas aut oblivio deleret, literis commendavit. Creditur quoque non vacare a significatione, quod omnia hoc ultimo anno elementa insolitum et irregulare passa sunt detrimentum. Ignis, quia nuper, transacta nocte Natalis Domini, fulgur, quod est ignis, terribiliter emicuit, contra naturæ cursum consuetum. Aer, quia innaturalis tonitrus et intempestivus reboavit [4] eadem nocte in episcopatu Norwicensi, et in [5] confiniis audientes perterruit aera perturbando. Mare, quia solitas metas transgrediens, loca contermina de-

Disturbance of all the elements in this last year.

¶ *Ignis.*

¶ *Aer.*

¶ *Aqua.*

---

[1] *immo nec scripta*] On an erasure.

[2] *quadragenæ*] So also B. C. In Edd. altered to *quinquagenæ*.

[3] In the margin is here added the following note: "Pascha in suo loco anno quinquagesimo evenit. Hoc nunquam ante." On which the bishop of Lincoln [John Russell] remarks, "Mentiris!"

[4] *reboavit*] On an erasure.

[5] *in*] Supplied from B. C.

vastavit. Terra, quia in Anglia, immo etiam in Ciltria, A.D. 1250
quæ cretosa est et solida, pluries contigit terræmotus. ¶ *Terra.*

Versus.

Virginis a partu jam mille volumina Phœbus,
Cum bis centenis et quinquaginta peregit
Annua; sed visum[1] non est sub tempore tanto,
Aprilis sexto fuerit quod Pascha kalendas,
Dum quinquagenus orbem percurreret annus,
Hoc tamen evenit anno, cui terminus hic est.

fol. 150 *b.* Terminantur hic Mathei
Cronica, nam Jubilei
Anni dispensatio
Tempus spondet requiei;
Detur ergo quies[2] ei,
Hic, et cœli solio.

Hucusque scripsit frater Matheus Parisiensis.[3]

Siste tui metas studii, Mathee, quietas,
Nec ventura petas, quæ postea proferet ætas.[4]

---

[1] On this word the bishop of Lincoln has made the following note: "Erras, Mathee, erras nimis, quia is idem casus accidit a^{o}. d^{i}. clxxxvi. et a^{o}. d^{i}. DCCXVIII. et a^{o}. d^{i}. DCCLXV. et a^{o}. d^{i}. DCCCXCVII. et multis aliis annis. Mirum est, quod Matheus ita volebat scribere, quia, inspecto kalendario in mense Marcii, patet quod quocienscumque *b.* est litera dominicalis, et luna currit per xvi., per v., per xiii., aut ii., oportet ut Pascha cadat vi^{to}. kalendas Aprilis, ubi scribitur *Resurrectio Domini*, per hanc regulam,

'Post nonas Martis, ubi sit nova luna requiras,
Inde dies Domini tercia Pascha tenet.'

Jo. LINCOLN."

This censure is ill-founded (as proved by Selden in his *Notæ*, in ed. Wats, for Matthew Paris does not say that Easter had never fallen on the 6 kal. Apr. [27 March], but that in no quinquagenary year (such as 1050, 1150, etc.) since the birth of Christ had Easter fallen on that day.

[2] *quies*] ques, MS.

[3] *Parisiensis*] Pariensis, MS.

[4] Here ends the Cottonian MS. Nero D. V. (marked C.)

A.D. 1251.

Dominus rex fuit apud Wintoniam ad Natale Domini. De tonitru hiemali intempestivo.

Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.LI°., qui est annus regni domini regis Henrici III. xxx^{us}v^{us}., fuit idem dominus rex ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam. Et quia sedes episcopalis vacabat, et ad eandem promovendus erat[1] Æthelmarus, frater ejus, cohibuit manus suas,[2] ne bona distraheret episcopatus, ut solebat; verumtamen, quia ægre dediscitur usus, partem silvarum[3] præcepit abscidi et vendi, et inde pecuniam ærario suo addi accumulandam, licet satis ei diceretur, quod peregrinaturis et Deo militaturis talis rapina nullatenus fuerat profutura.

His conduct in regard to the vacant see.

Pronosticum.

A thunderstorm on Christmas day prognosticates evil.

Nocte autem Natalis, in signum, ut timebatur, iræ Domini, tonitrua horribilia nimis, per episcopatum præcipue Norwicensem et confinia, reboarunt, choruscationes terribiles emicuerunt, et intempestiva aeris perturbatio auribus audientium et cordibus intelligentium maximum timorem incussit pariter et horrorem. Dicebantque augurantes, hoc in triste pronosticum secundum plebeiam[4] opinionem evenisse.[5]

Rex solito parcior effectus in distribuendis[6] festivis indumentis. Factusque est rex amator auri.[7]

He omits to give festive gar-

Eisdemque diebus dominus rex de peregrinationis suæ viaticis sollicitus et solito parcior effectus, prout

---

[1] *promovendus erat*] On an erasure.

[2] *manus suas*] On an erasure.

[3] *partem silvarum*] On an erasure.

[4] *plebeiam*] plebeam, MS.

[5] *secundum . . . . evenisse*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over an erasure.

[6] *distribuendis*] distribuendiis, MS.

[7] This chapter, and the one following, are written on a piece of vellum pasted down over the original text, much erased, but still legible, as follows: (*Rubric totally erased.*) *Eodemque celeber-*

A.D. 1251.

consueverat, festiva indumenta in Nataliciis sollempnitatibus minime distribuit. Et qui videbantur in regia diariis cotidianis refici superflue, tam milites quam servientes, jussit ad tempus, ut sic thesaurus suus susciperet incrementum, subtractos amoveri. Et quia noverat se iturum in partes orientales, ubi aurum cedit in monetam, mercimonia et præmia stipendiariorum in expeditione militantium, aureos cœpit desiderare et colligere. Unde magnates regia gratia indigentes, jam tam in aureis quam argenteis sibi xenia pretiosa facere studuerunt.

ments at Christmas, and diminishes his household.

He collects gold from the nobles.

De quibusdam factis in imperio.[1]

Tempore quoque sub eodem tres vel iiii^or^. ad minus de qualibet civitate Ytaliæ, et aliqui de civitatibus Apuliæ Fretherico adversantibus, in carceribus sunt[2] detenti, quos omnes proditores suos et rebelles vocare solebat. Mortuoque[3] Fretherico, missi sunt omnes ad

The prisoners taken by the emperor are sent to Palermo.

---

rimo festo, licet omnes prædecessores sui indumenta regalia et jocalia pretiosa soliti fuissent distribuere, ipse tamen rex, forte de sua peregrinatione sollicitus, et iccirco factus parcus, nulla penitus distribuit Immo cum abbatibus et clericis et viris humilibus hospitia quæsivit et prandia, moraturus et munera postulaturus. Nec jam civilis habebatur, qui regi et regalibus hospitia et prandia ministraret, licet sumptuosa, nisi muneribus nobilibus et magnis regem ipsum et aulicos suos respectos honoraret. Immo nec erubuit ipsa quasi debita postulare. Cum Roberto quoque Passelowe, quem nuper obprobriis in capella sua apud Westmonasterium turpibus lacessivit, prandens dominus rex, amplis est respectus muneribus. Nec appretiebantur (sic) *aulici et regales donativa, nisi pretiosa et sumptuosa, utpote palefridos desiderabiles, cup[p]as aureas vel argenteas deauratas, monilia cum gemmis præelectis, et zonis imperialibus, et consimilia. Et facta est curia regalis Romanæ consimilis, in quæstu pro meretrice sedens vel prostans veracius;* nearly as in B. and ed. Wats, p. 807.

[1] This is the rubric prefixed, but at the lower corner of the slip of vellum, on which the two last chapters are written, another rubric is added, *De statu imperii*, which is superfluous.

[2] *carceribus sunt*] The second word and last two syllables of the first are on an erasure.

[3] *que*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1251.

Palernam, civitatem Siciliæ, ut ibi tutius custodirentur, a Conrado, filio F[retherici]. Et hoc de consilio patris, dum in extremis ageret. Aliqui tamen captivorum dati sunt Henrico,[1] filio F[retherici] et nepoti domini regis Angliæ, quos tradidit Conrado custodiendos. Inter quos incarceratos fuit filius marchisii Montis-Ferrati, qui commutabilis fuit pro Ensio, filio F[retherici], quem Bononienses adhuc captivum retinebant. Cœperunt igitur filii et amici F[retherici] roborari, et roborati calcaneum contra papam levare; et sic, amputato uno capite, more Ydræ, quam Hercules occidisse dicitur, multa capita succreverunt. Erat autem Conradus, quia filius fuit filiæ regis Jerusalem, Johannis de Bresne, militis invictissimi, et ipse Conradus[2] miles strenuissimus, omnibus de imperio formidabilis. Et Henricus, frater ejus,[3] quia filius fuit imperatricis[4] Ysabellæ, omnibus amabilis, et nepos Christianissimi regis Angliæ, universis imperialibus extitit carissimus. Erat insuper uterque elegans et[5] speciosus. Henricus autem, secundum suæ ætatis exigentiam, prudens et civilis, et nobilium amator specialis;[6] unde ecclesia, multiplicatis persecutoribus, non mediocriter periclitabatur, dampna multiformia tolerando. Eratque præteritorum infortuniorum recordatio quasi spina in oculo, omnibus papæ consentientibus. Henricus enim Raspe, Andegravius Duringiæ, quem papa proposuerat in imperatorem sullimare, et pro cujus promotione infinitam effuderat pecuniam, periit in mortem præcipitatus. Post mortem cujus, in loco

A son of the marquis of Monferrat is exchanged for Ensius, son of Frederic.

Characters of Conrad and Henry, sons of the emperor.

Ill success of the papal party in the election of an emperor.

---

[1] *Henrico*] Henrio, MS.

[2] *Conradus*] Superfluous, but so also in B.

[3] *frater ejus*] On an erasure.

[4] *imperatricis*] ymperatricis, MS.

[5] *elegans et*] After this word was added in the margin, *pro sua ætate*, but afterwards erased.

[6] *Henricus . . . specialis*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, partially erased, which reads, *Papa vero, tum propter curiæ suæ (?) avaritiam, tum propter sui generis aviditatem, exosus omnibus habebatur*, nearly as in B. (ed. Wats, p. 807).

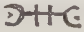
A.D. 1251.

ejusdem H.[1] electus est comes Gelrensis; sed mortem ignominiosam prioris considerans, recusavit. Post hunc dux Brabantiæ, qui et Lotharingiæ, sed et ipse refutavit.[2] Post hunc comes Ricardus, frater domini regis Angliæ, qui et onus renuit et pericula. Post quem, elegit papa Willelmum, Holandiæ comitem. Qui temere consensit, et jam, omnibus amissis, ad suam terram, quam fratri suo reliquerat et dederat, est[3] repulsus; unde muscipulas et promissiones papales detestans, mendicare cogebatur.

Mota est discordia inter duos potentissimos Soldanos Sarracenorum.

Discord between the Soldans of Aleppo and Babylon.

Letter from the Master of the Hospital.

Diebus autem sub eisdem mota est discordia inter duos Sarracenorum potentissimos, scilicet Alapiensium et Babiloniorum Soldanos, quæ discordia spem de sua tribulatione Christianis generavit. Super quo, ut melius certificaremur, literas a Magistro Hospitalis suscepimus, sub hac forma. Respice in libro Additamentorum, ad fol. 151 *a.* hoc signum .[4] Qui enim Soldanum Babiloniæ interfecerat, in tantum elatus est superbiam, quod omnes ad iram commovit orientales. Ipse enim Soldanus vir fuerat discretus et modestus, et suæ legis zelator indefessus. Et cum graviter redargueretur super hoc, quod regem Francorum vivum et redemptum abire permisisset, sic dicitur respondisse, "Amici, scitis quoniam omnium Christianorum nobilissimus est ille. Si igitur occideretur, consanguinei ejus et successores toto spiritu anhelarent[5] ad vindictam. Præterea, suam

The Soldan of Babylon blamed for allowing the king of France to be ransomed.

---

[1] *H.*] The count of Gueldres at this period was named *Otho.* His brother *Henry* was made bishop of Liege in 1247. See Pertz, "Monumenta Germanica," x. 396.

[2] *refutavit*] On an erasure.

[3] *est*] Interlined.

[4] *in libro Additamentorum*] The same reference is given in B. (ed. Wats, p. 808), and the Letter is printed by Wats, p. 181, from MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 121.

[5] *anhelarent*] hanelarent, MS.

A.D. 1251. penitus amisissem redemptionem. Sufficiat igitur nobis, Machometo propitio, tanta tanti regis confusio; victus est,[1] captus est, redemptus est, nec erat notabilis qui evaderet. Corporibus, armis eorum et equis gaudemus, et de victoria, quæ omnem thesaurum exsuperat,[2] gloriamur." Hæc autem responsio, cum non sufficeret protervientibus, immo magis accenderet, ut dicerent, "Mentiris! immo, si ipsum regem Francorum interfecisses, omnibus per secula occidentalibus formidini essemus et honori, sed avaritia excæcavit te," percussus Soldanus interiit. Hujus quoque mors significata est comiti Ricardo, ut præscriptum est,[3] sed modus mortis ipsum latuit atque causa. Et sic commovebantur Orientales universi. Rex autem Francorum omnia adversa patienter tolerans, cumque silentio[4] apud Acchon commorans, misericordiamque Dei præstolabatur, fratres suos, ut prætactum est, pro succursu in partes Cisalpinas destinando, precibus[5] pulsavit præcordialibus, ut, in solamen et succursum Terræ Sanctæ, collectioni armatorum et pecuniæ insisterent diligenter. Sed ipsi præteriti memores infortunii, et mandatum tepide exequebantur atque distulerunt, adeo ut nolle viderentur, secundum illud Philosophicum,[6] "Diu noluit, qui diu distulit."[7]

He is put to death.

The brothers of Louis, sent to obtain aid for the Holy Land, neglect to do so.

De peremptis. Nota numerum.[8]

Numerus interfectorum in exercitu Francorum per superbiam comitis Atrabatensis R[oberti], fratris regis Francorum, sexaginta milia armatorum, et viginti milia et amplius, exceptis submersis, fugitivis, dispersis, et eis qui se ultro hostibus reddiderunt, qui cito post apostatarunt, et plus aliis nocuerunt.[1] A.D. 1251.

---

[1] *victus est*] Added in marg.

[2] *exsuperat*] exuperat, MS.

[3] *est*] Interlined.

[4] *cumque silentio*] At first written, *cum silentio.*

[5] *precibus*] In the margin has been written with a plummet, *nuncios precibus sollicitavit.*

[6] *Philosophicum*] Philosoficum, MS. This quotation has occurred previously. See p. 34.

[7] *precibus . . . distulit*] Written over an erasure.

[8] This short chapter and the next are added in the lower margin, (as also in B.,) with a reference

Summa redemptionis.

Summa redemptionis regis Francorum, quasi Deo irato, non multum dissidet a numero interfectorum, scilicet sexaginta milia librarum auri primi et purissimi, exceptis aliis denariis communibus, scilicet sterlingis Turonensibus et Parisiensibus, qui ad infinitum numerum ascendunt. Occisio evenit anno gratiæ M°.CC°.L. Redemptio sequenti anno, scilicet, M°.CC°.LI°., est soluta, ita videlicet, quod satisfactum est inde.

Qualiter rex tunc prohibuit, ne Judæi comederent carnes feria vi^{a}., vel in Quadragesima.

The Jews are driven out of France.

Tempore quoque sub eodem, cum idem dominus rex Francorum, inter cetera proba quæ sustinuit, reprehensionem amaram audisset, ex eo quod[2] Christiani Judæos, qui Christum crucifixerunt, inter se conversari paterentur cum eisdem etiam communicando, præcepit Judæos a regno suo irrevocabiliter exulare, et a finibus suis amoveri remotius. Sed quia dictum fuit, quod non placet Domino nostro Jhesu Christo, ut penitus de sub cælo deleantur, sed sint in signum instar Caym

---

to the text after the words *Orientales universi*, but I have preferred inserting them here. In ed. Wats, p. 807, they are introduced into the text higher up, where they are certainly out of place, and the first no doubt refers to the defeat of the French in 1250. See *ante*, p. 84. A portion of the second of these chapters has been originally written in the margin, with a reference to the word *gloriamur*, and afterwards erased. In the MS. the authority is added on which they are given, namely, "Secundum assertionem Magistri Templi in Scocia," but this is omitted in B.

[1] *nocuerunt*] nocuerunt Christianis, B.

[2] *ex eo quod*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1251. maledicti, ne quandoque obliviscantur, nec omnino occidantur, jussit ut paucissimi sub solita captivitate reservarentur, ut eorum miseria toti mundo pateat continuata. Quod cum domino regi Anglorum innotuisset, vix se continuit, ne similia de ipsis imperasset. Sed cum diceretur ei, quod detestabilius erat falsos Christianos, scilicet Caursinos usurarios, qui de protectione domini papæ gratulantur impinguati, hos et illos ægra mente toleravit, ne videretur in Judæorum omnimoda exstirpatione Deum offendisse, et Caursinorum effugatione ipsum papam aliquatenus provocasse. Verumtamen districte jussit, ne quis Judæus extunc carnes in Quadragesima vel vi.[1] feria comedere præsumeret. Et si quis regale edictum ac præceptum generale transgrederetur, tam corporaliter quam pecunialiter[2] graviter puniretur.

Henry wishes to follow this example, but is dissuaded from it.

He orders that no Jew should eat meat on Friday or during Lent.

Rediens Guido, frater regis, venit in Angliam.

Et dum adhuc solempnitas dierum Nataliciorum[3] continuaretur,[4] advenit Guido, frater domini regis Angliæ, de partibus Terræ Sanctæ, festinus valde; nescitur si de prælio fugitivus. Honestius tamen dici potest, quod de custodia Damiatæ, post pacem formatam, prudenter et licenter est elapsus. Hic cum pauper in Anglia applicuisset, equos abbatis de Fevershamia, licet eodem abbate invito, ascendit, et veniens ad regem, fratrem suum, sacculos suos vacuos approbata moneta implevit. Si autem equos abbatis remiserit, novit abbas. In ipsum autem Guidonem et in alios fratres ditandos, tot congessit rex thesauros, quod

Return of Guy, uterine brother of the king, to England.

His conduct to the abbat of Evesham.

Prodigality of the king to his brothers.

---

[1] *vi.*] On an erasure, by a later hand.

[2] *tam . . . . pecunialiter*] Originally written *tam pecunialiter quam corporaliter*, but marked to be transposed.

[3] *Nataliciorum*] Natalicorum, MS.

[4] *continuaretur*] At first written, *continuarentur*, but the last two syllables partly erased.

suum ærarium penitus exinanivit,[1] hujus immemor versiculi,

A.D. 1251.

"Tu quovis caro carior esto tibi."

Papa Perusium venit, et ibi moratur.

The pope remains at Perugia.

Papa a Mediolano recedens Perusiumque perveniens, ibidem morabatur, quia datum fuit illi intelligi, quod si Romam perveniret, Romani exigerent ab eo inæstimabilem pecuniam quasi debitam, quia immutabiliter steterant[2] cum eo contra Frethericum, et sic multum thesaurum exposuerant.

Insidiantur multi regi Francorum.

Conspiracy of the Pisans and Genoese against the king of France.

Pisani et Januenses insidiantur regi Francorum, quem credebant per mare in Franciam rediturum. Quia cum primo in Damiatam intrassent, et ejus magnam partem occupassent, Franci supervenientes eosdem occuparunt[3] et procaciter affugarunt, et quæ adquisierant violenter abstulerunt;[4] et sic adversitates diversæ regem afflixerunt. Insuper navis, quæ suum sibi thesaurum[5] apportavit, onusta non procul ab Achon in mari est submersa.

Accusatus[6] comes Legrecestriæ eleganter respondit.[7]

Reply of the earl of Leicester to the accusations made

Comes Legrecestriæ rediens a Wasconia, a Wasconensibus graviter accusatur, quod, scilicet, quosdam nobiles terræ illius quasi pacifice sed in dolo ad se convocatos, incarcerat et interimit. Quibus verbis comes inficiando

---

[1] *exinanivit*] exinnavit, MS.

[2] *steterant*] At first written *steterunt*.

[3] *occuparunt*] occupare, MS., but *e* erased, and a blank space of three letters left.

[4] *abstulerunt*] obstulerunt, MS.

[5] *thesaurum*] thesarum, MS.

[6] *Accusatus*] Acusatus, MS.

[7] *respondit*] respondet, MS.

A.D. 1251. respondit coram rege in propatulo, "Domine, istorum proditio vobis satis nota et experta reddit illos incredibiles." Et sic, confusis accusatoribus, fortior ad certamen remeavit.

against him.

De "non obstante."

The odious clause '*Non obstante*,' borrowed from the Roman Court.

Hæc detestabilis[1] adjectio "Non obstante"[2] a curia Romana derivata, ad curias laicorum extenditur, et sic de fontis sulphure rivus olet. Aliqui igitur laicorum, sed infidelium, exemplo Romanorum cartas suorum cassarunt progenitorum. fol. 151 *b*.

Redimuntur quidam, qui mortui credebantur.

Redemption of some nobles in the Holy Land.

Liberantur quidam nobilium in Terra Sancta a vinculis infidelium et evadunt, qui mortui fuisse in prælio credebantur, videlicet, Magister Hospitalis, cujus bulla donec redimeretur fuerat suspensa.

Henricus de Bathonia accusatur.[3]

Henry de Bath, the justiciary, is accused of treachery.

Henricus de Bathonia graviter accusatur et diffamatur, quod proditiose nimis suum peregisset officium justiciariæ. Et cum ipsum regem et multos alios habuisset adversarios, tandem, intermeantibus amicis, videlicet episcopo Londoniensi F[ulcone] et aliis uxoris suæ consanguineis, necnon et muneribus, liberatus est.

Comitissa de Harundellia fundavit domum sanctimonialium.

Foundation of the nunnery of

Fundatur quædam domus religiosarum sanctimonialium ab Ysabella, comitissa Harundelliæ, relicta comitis Harundelliæ, non procul a Len, sumptibus propriis et de libero maritagio. Quæ Marram dicitur.

---

[1] *detestabilis*] Originally written *detestabiles*, but *es* erased, and corr. in marg.

[2] *obstante*] ostante, MS.

[3] *accusatur*] acussatur, MS.

A.D. 1251. Marram by Isabel, countess of Arundel.

Scandalum per archiepiscopum B[onefacium], propter visitationem.

Scandal occasioned on account of the quarrel between the abp. of Canterbury and the bp. of London.

Ortum est scandalum in ecclesia Anglicana, dum orta discordia inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem B[onefacium] et episcopum Londoniensem et ejus canonicos ex[1] altera parte, dum sese quasi relativo odio persequentes diffamantur, et nunc hii nunc alii denunciantur excommunicati. Rex autem, quia ipsum creaverat, et quia genus suum formidabat, et regina, quia ejus extitit avunculus, dissimulantes tacuerunt. Papa, qui persecutionem toleravit, noluit sibi plures inimicos suscitare. Et sic justitia detrimentum passa [est][2] manifestum.

Confirmatur Ælmarus, frater regis, in episcopatum Wintoniensem.

Æthelmar is confirmed in the see of Winchester.

Confirmatus est in episcopum Wintoniensem Æthelmarus, frater regis, non obstante juventute vel alia insufficientia, papali indulgente paternitate; procurante tamen hæc omnia urgenter regis vigili diligentia. Sed ne videretur dominus papa in sterili litore sine messis utilitate seminasse, ilico exegit a rege provideri filio regis[3] Burgundiæ cuidam puerulo, in redditu marcarum quingentarum.

---

[1] *ex*] et, MS.

[2] *est*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[3] *regis*] A mistake for *comitis*, (as in B.). The person alluded to was Jean le Sage, Sire de Salins, who assumed the title of Count of Burgundy. In the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 93 *b*] are Letters of Innocent IV. to the archbishop of Canterbury, to provide a benefice of 300 marks for Robert, clerk, son of this John, count of Burgundy. In the Transcripts from the Vatican in MS. Add. 15,356, fol. 355, these letters are dated Lyons, 4 Oct. [1250].

A.D. 1251.

Obiit Willelmus de Cantelupo.

Death of William de Cantelupe.

Tempore sub eodem obiit Willelmus de Cantelupo, vir quidam potens et miles strenuus, et regni fidelis amicus, frater episcopi Vigorniensis. Patri autem successit filius ejus Willelmus, cui rex nimis severus extitit, antequam hereditatis suæ plenitudinem valeret adipisci, licet ipse pater et avus diu domino regi famulatum diuturnum impendisset.

Facta est visitatio de religiosis per episcopum Lincolniensem Robertum.

Visitation made by Robert, bp. of Lincoln, in his diocese.

Diebus sub eisdem episcopus Lincolniensis R[obertus] visitationem [fecit][1] in domibus religiosis in sua diocesi[2] rigide nimis et severe.

Confirmantur Wintoniensis et Rofensis [electi.][3]

Confirmation of the bps. elect of Winchester and Rochester.

Confirmantur Romæ electi Wintoniensis et Rofensis.[4] Obiit magister Johannes de Offintona, canonicus Saresbiriensis, quo non erat in Anglia clericus celebrior.

Death of John of Offintone.

Literæ papales oppressivæ.

Letters of pope Innocent IV. to the abbat of St. Alban's in favour of John de Camerzana.

Tempore quoque sub eodem transmisit dominus papa abbati Sancti Albani literas sub hac forma:

"Innocentius IIII. episcopus, etc., dilectis filiis abbati et conventui Sancti Albani, Lincolniensis diocesis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Cum dilectus filius Johannes de Camezana, nepos et capellanus noster, ecclesiam de Wengrave, in qua, sicut intelleximus, jus patronatus ad vos dinoscatur pertinere,[5] discretionem[6] vestram affectione paterna rogamus, per

---

[1] *fecit*] Supplied from B.

[2] *diocesi*] diocisi, MS.

[3] *electi*] Supplied from B.

[4] *Rofensis*] Refensis, MS.

[5] *ad vos dinoscatur pertinere*] So also in B. over an erasure (but originally *optinere*), and ed. Wats, p. 818, but the text seems faulty. In the copy of these letters in the "Liber Additamentorum," fol. 63, the reading is given thus, *habetis, optinere noscatur.*

[6] *discretionem*] discrescōm, MS.

A.D. 1251.

apostolica vobis scripta mandantes, quatinus eidem capellano dictam ecclesiam cum alia ecclesia primo vacatura, quæ ad præsentationem vestram spectare noscatur, quam etiam dictus capellanus, vel ejus procurator, duxerit acceptandam, commutetis, illam donationi nostræ nihilominus[1] reservando; inhibitione[2] seu reservatione qualibet non obstante, aut etiam indulgentia illa, quæ dicitur Anglicis esse concessa, ne beneficia clericorum Ytalicorum cedentium vel decedentium immediate alicui clerico Ytalico conferatur. Datum Lugduni, ii. idus Decembris."

Nota.

¶ Hæc vero huic libro duximus inserenda, ut legentibus innotescat, quot pressuris et angustiis et servitute Romana curia nos Anglos exagitat miserandos. Et qualiter corda multorum[3] a dilectione domini papæ, quem paterna caritate totis visceribus teneremur amplecti, discedant et longius amoveantur.

Oppression suffered from the court of Rome.

Recessit papa a Lugduno.

Eodem anno, arridente verna serenitate, dominus papa recessit a Lugduno, comitantibus cardinalibus et ejus familiaribus. Philippus quoque, Lugdunensis[4] electus, ipsum papam cum ingenti armatorum[5] comitatu salvo conduxit, propter Frethericalium laqueos absconditos et insultus.

The pope leaves Lyons, escorted by Philip, the abp. elect.

Obiit Paulinus[6] Piper.

Anno sub eodem obiit domini regis dapifer et consiliarius specialis, Paulinus Piper.

Death of Paulin Piper.

---

[1] *nihilominus*] nichilominus, MS.

[2] *inhibitione*] inibicione, MS.

[3] *multorum*] At first written *multa*, but corr. in marg.

[4] *Lugdunensis*] Luguduñ, MS.

[5] *armatorum*] Written at first *armatura*, but the last three letters erased, and corr. in marg.

[6] *Paulinus*] Paulus, MS.

A.D. 1251.

Abbas Cluniacensis venit in Angliam.

The abbat of Cluny visits his Order in England.

Diebus sub eisdem abbas Cluniacensis venit in Angliam, monachorum suorum visitator, Ordinis reformator, et pecuniæ sedulus investigator. Et dum in Anglicanis partibus moraretur,[1] quidam confines sui in ultramarinis partibus sua quædam castra [cum][2] pertinentiis infestantes occuparunt; unde oportuit ipsum festinanter remeare.

Nota miraculum de ossibus mortuorum.

The bones of the deceased monks of St. Alban's are collected together and placed in a vault.

Sub ejusdem anni circulo, cum consummatum[3] fuisset quoddam opusculum structuræ lapideæ, juxta majus altare Sancti Albani, in parte scilicet australi, ossa fratrum mortuorum in cimiterio, qui ad xxx. æstimabantur ibidem, centum vel quater xx. annis in sarchofagis tumulatorum transactis, diligenter sunt collecta; fol. 152 *a.* et, facto quodam arcu in muro forinsecus, quasi thesaurus sunt reposita pretiosus. Quorumdam enim ossa inventa sunt instar eboris candentia, et in fragmentis candidiora, et quasi lita balsamo redolentia. Calciamentorum[4] insuper eorumdem soleæ integræ, ita ut viderentur adhuc pauperibus profuturæ. Quæ in anteriori parte, sicut in posteriori, rotundæ, et, corrigiis insutis, in circuitu circumseptæ; et calciamentorum superiora corrigiis circumligata. Et talia fuerant calciamenta, ut viderentur indifferenter tam uni quam alteri pedibus convenire; et aliquæ corrigiarum adhuc apparuerunt integræ, ac in substantia et colore, etsi[5] robur non retinuerint[6] primitivum, incorruptæ. Quod

Marvellous state of preservation of their shoes or sandals.

---

[1] *moraretur*] In the text *mora* . . ., with an erasure of some letters, but corr. in marg.

[2] *cum*] Supplied from B.

[3] *consummatum*] consumatum, MS.

[4] *Calciamentorum*] Repeated again after *insuper*, and then struck out in the first instance.

[5] *etsi*] etsi non, MS.

[6] *retinuerint*] retinerint, MS.

intuentibus omnibus non tantum admirationem, sed etiam stuporem suscitavit, cum tumbæ circiter centenariæ censerentur. Fratrum igitur superstitum aliqui hæc perpendentes ingemuerunt, et ab alto trahentes suspiria intra se, dixerunt, "O quam venerabiles extitere priores ac patres nostri præambuli, quorum sequi vestigia teneremur et voto obligamur, dum talibus uterentur, quæ indicia sunt sanctitatis, humilitatis et religionis. O qualiter, Deus, testimonia tua credibilia facta sunt nimis, ac bonitatis tuæ ac fidelitatis argumenta manifesta, præcipue in ossium[1] suorum[2] humiliatorum illorum candore et fragrantia! Tunc nimirum in spiritualibus et temporalibus religiosorum ecclesiæ felix susceperunt incrementum, quæ in præsentiarum, Deo vindice, contempnitur et impugnatur. Erubescant moderni mollibus, subtilibus et pretiosis vestiti, immo potius adornati, cum præcipiat sanctus Benedictus quod est vilius, non pretiosius, monachis induendum. O si hæc sanctus idem Benedictus[3] videret in præsenti, immo certe quia videt, qui adhuc in corpore universum mundum[4] sub solari radio collectum contemplabatur, qualiter offenderetur? O si cerneret hæc beatus Bernardus, qualiter obgrunniret? Dicebat namque et scripsit, "Monacho lautius pasto, decentius vestito, strictius[5] calciato, nihil Deo abominabilius, nam superbiæ sunt indicia."

A.D. 1251.

Superior sanctity of the ancient monks, in comparison with those then living.

Obiit Galfridus Dispensator. Crudelitas ad terrorem.

Et[6] eodem tempore obiit vir nobilis et strenuus, Galfridus Dispensator, in palatio regis consiliator specialis. Dominus papa excommunicavit die Cœnæ solempniter

Death of Geoffrey Despenser.

25 May.

---

[1] *ossium*] osium, MS.

[2] *suorum*] horum, B., omitting *illorum*.

[3] *idem Benedictus*] Written *Benedictus idem*, but marked to be transposed.

[4] *mundum*] The second syllable interlined by a late hand.

[5] *strictius*] st^{i}cius, MS.

[6] *Et*] The letter *t* is on an erasure.

A.D. 1251.

The pope excommunicates the emperor's son Conrad.

Expenses incurred in escorting the pope from France.

Increase of the Pastoureaux in France.

nimis et nominatum Conradum, filium Fretherici, et omnes ejusdem Fretherici fautores. Sciendumque, quod die Mercurii in ebdomada Paschali, expensæ papæ, quas adinvenit Philippus, electus Lugdunensis, ut sub manu armata tutius conduceretur, ad plus quam ad trium milium marcarum pretium ascenderunt. Recessus igitur papæ a Francorum finibus et absentia, cornua dederunt popello illi, qui Pastores in Francia dicebantur, in periculum fidei catholicæ, et ecclesiæ non minimam læsionem. Isti nempe jam adeo multiplicati et roborati sunt, ut plusquam quingenta signa, quæ vulgariter vexilla vel baneræ dicuntur, in suo deferent comitatu; et cuilibet signo xl^a^. vel l. ex ipsis intendebant. Civitates igitur et civitatum universitates ipsos jam mediocriter formidabant, ita ut viderentur Antichristi tempora suscitari. Accesserunt igitur Aurelianim, totum ibi clerum exturbarunt, et, consentientibus civibus, libros clericorum combusserunt; et, aliquibus ex clericis in Ligerim submersis, aliquibus aliter interfectis, fere omnes affugarunt. Tandem apud Biturim[1] magistro eorum interfecto, detunicata fuit fraus eorum. Et dicebatur fuisse idem impostor, qui, jam transactis circiter xl. annis, in Francia pueros processionaliter incedentes congregavit, et cantantes versus mare minavit Mediterraneum.[2] Sed tam isti Pastores quam dicti pueri perierunt. Non tamen, ut viri discreti asserebant, post tempora Machomethi tam metuenda pestis ingruebat, nec citra tempora Antichristi creditur affutura, maxime cum captio regis Francorum corda multorum in fide fecerat vacillare.

Excesses committed by them at Orleans.

Death of their leaders at Bourges.

Damiata solo tenus complanatur.

Damietta is destroyed, by order of the Soldan.

Tempore quoque sub eodem Soldanus Babiloniæ comperiens quod Damiata bis jam præda, in obprobrium totius paganismi, et adquisitio extitisset [Christianorum],[1] jussit eam cum magna indignatione, ne iterum Christiani illuc causam haberent veniendi, solo tenus complanari.[2]

---

[1] *Biturim*] Butirim, MS.

[2] *Mediterraneum*] Mediteraneum, MS.

A.D. 1251.

De quibusdam decretalibus.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem [3] dominus papa quasdam novas composuit decretales, quas sedulus indagator in libris Legistarum [4] poterit reperire.

New decretals made by the pope.

Episcopus Lincolniensis beneficiatis [5] cartas exigit castitatis.

Diebus sub eisdem episcopus Lincolniensis, facto scrutinio diligenti per suam diocesim, beneficiatos cogit esse continentes, et suspectas mulierculas ab ipsis longius amoveri. Transgressores autem per beneficiorum suorum privationem puniens, episcopatum suum a viciis studuit emundare; precibus quoque blandis et austeris persuasionsibus multos trahens et impellens, ad ordinem et officium subvexit sacerdotale.[6] Coegitque eos cartas conficere, ut cœlibem vitam ducerent; et si infames [7] se legitime non purgarent, fecit fustigari. Et si sic se non emendarent, ipsos privavit beneficio optento, et ab episcopatu studuit elongare. Improbos autem Romanos literas provisionis afferentes, quasi venenum respuit aspidale.

The bishop of Lincoln compels the beneficed clergy in his diocese to observe chastity.

---

[1] *Christianorum*] Supplied from B.

[2] *complanari*] fecit complanari, MS., but *fecit* is superfluous.

[3] *eisdem*] eidem, MS.

[4] *in libris Legistarum*] In B. the reference is, *in libro Additamentorum*; and in ed. Wats, p. 182, these Decretals are printed from MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 103.

[5] *beneficiatis*] benefiatis, MS.

[6] *sacerdotale*] sacerdale, MS.

[7] *infames*] imfames, MS.

A.D. 1251.

Rex Francorum preces postulat. Mandatum ejusdem regis.

fol. 152 b.

Letter from the king of France read at the general council of the Cistercians.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem, videlicet quando abbates Cisterciensis Ordinis congregabantur ad generale eorum capitulum, domini regis Francorum nuncius, scilicet quidam abbas ejusdem Ordinis, in capitulo eorum fecit legi literas dicti regis. Quarum tenor talis fuerat: "Rex Francorum et ejus uxor, et parva familia eorumdem, in quali[quali][1] sanitate fuerant corporali, præstolantes Dei misericordiam post flagella. Spei autem fomitem ministravit funesta discordia et guerra, cum ira et odio inexorabili, mota inter Sarracenorum Soldanos potentissimos sese corrodentes, Babiloniæ scilicet et Halapiæ." Scripsit insuper idem rex fratribus suis, rogans subsidium humiliter, tam pecuniare quam militare. Ipsi autem literas ejus fascinnati verbo et obliquo oculo respexerunt, et sic de proximis suis facti sunt, excepta matre, amici fortunales. Ipse autem rex morabatur apud Cæsaream, firmans eam Templariorum consilio et Hospitalariorum.[2]

Discord between the Soldans of Babylon and Aleppo.

Louis writes to his brothers for aid, but in vain.

He fortifies Cæsarea.

Quid rex fecerit apud Sanctum Albanum.

15 Sept.

Offerings made by king Henry at St. Alban's.

Eodemque anno, in octavis Nativitatis beatæ Virginis, dominus rex Angliæ venit apud Sanctum Albanum, et intrans, prout consuevit, primo ecclesiam, optulit tria oloserica; et tunc ipsa cum aliis prius ab eo oblatis ad xxx^{ta} computabantur. Eaque vice optulit duo monilia pretiosa valde, et jussit ea feretro sancti Albani indelebiliter, ad memoriam sui, clavis fortiter affirmari. Et ibidem moram continuavit quadriduanam. In nocte vero sancti Lamberti tenebræ

17 Sept.

Unusual darkness

---

[1] *qualiquali*] quali, MS. Corr. from B.

[2] *Hospitalariorum*] Templariorum, MS. Corr. from B.

factæ sunt palpabiles et horribiles, et facta tanta pluviarum inundatio, ut se viderentur nubes terris infundere perituris.

A.D. 1251. and storm of rain.

Visitatio facta est apud Sanctum Albanum.

Facta est visitatio apud Sanctum Albanum per priorem de Hurle Theobaldum, et suppriorem Sancti Augustini Cantuariæ Jacobum. Sed antequam in capitulum intrassent, omnia reformanda prudenter reformabantur.[1]

Visitation of St. Alban's.

Philippus [Luvel][2] ad consilium regis adest.

Philippus Luvel, clericus, vir prudens et circumspectus, a senescalcia[3] comitis Wintoniæ Rogeri translatus est ad servitium domini regis familiare. Et cito postea graviter accusatus, et se rite purgans, regali gratiæ est restitutus.

Philip Luvel is taken into the king's service.

Ecclesia de Hales magnifice dedicatur.

Eodem anno, nonas Novembris, comes Ricardus solempniter nimis et magnifice[4] fecit dedicari ecclesiam suam de Hales, quam fundaverat, præsentibus rege et regina et omnibus fere Angliæ magnatibus.

5 Nov. Dedication of the church of Hales.

---

[1] In the lower margin is here added the following note, by a later hand: "Hic visitatus erat Johannes abbas II., sed antequam capitulum intraret, promisit conventui, quod generale suum et pitancias, quas primus omnium ad cameram suam attraxit, totaliter remitteret, nisi in refectorio vel aliis locis solatio deputatis cum fratribus reficeret, et quod pitancias, quas W[illelmus], prædecessor suus, a fratribus infirmis abstulerat, integraliter restitueret; sed, completa visitatione, cum nichil de præmissis sibi objectum fuerat, quod prius promisit, adimplere contempsit;" nearly as in B. *marg.* (by the same hand), and ed. Wats, p. 826.

[2] *Luvel*] Omitted in MS.

[3] *senescalcia*] senescaltia, MS.

[4] *magnifice*] magnife, MS.

A.D. 1251.

De fulgure.

Effects of a thunderstorm at Windsor and St. Alban's. 19 May.

Fulgur cecidit super thalamum reginæ, et totum caminum contrivit apud Windelshores, die sancti Dunstani, et multa robora in foresta de Windelshores, et homines et pecora dejecit. Et apud Sanctum Albanum in tribus locis pariter, sed non multum dampnum irrogavit, sed omnium corda perterruit[1] vehementer.

Inundation of the sea.

Iterum, eodem anno, tempore æquinoctiali, mare terminos transiens consuetos, dampna[2] finitimis non minima generavit; litora namque per sex pedum spatia, ultra quam unquam visum est præteritis temporibus quando etiam se dilatavit, terribiliter occupavit.

The queen of Scotland returns home.

Et tunc temporis[3] regina Scociæ, relicta videlicet regis Alexandri, repatriavit.

De quodam torneamento.

Tournament at Rochester.

Et eodem tempore[4] apud Rofam factum est torneamentum subdolum et aculeatum inter Anglos, quos alienigenæ jam deridentes contempserant, et ipsos alienos. In quo contriti sunt turpiter alienigenæ, dissipati et affugati,[5] ita ut probrose fugientes ad civitatem gratia refugii, armigeris obviam irruentibus iterum recepti, prostrati, spoliati, et egregie baculis et clavis palluerunt malleati. Et insequentes milites cum supra dorsa eorum fabricassent, ad votum ditati triumpharunt. Et sic ictus, quos injuriose in torneamento[6] receperant, multiplicato fœnore reddiderunt. Crevit igitur ira et odium inter Anglos et alienigenas, et diatim successive formidabile suscepit incrementum.

---

[1] *perterruit*] perturruit, MS.

[2] *dampna*] dapna, MS.

[3] In B., *circa festum sancti Michaelis* [29 Sept.].

[4] In B., *in festo Conceptionis beatæ Virginis* [8 Dec.].

[5] *affugati*] afugati, MS.

[6] *torneamento*] tornamento, MS. In B., *torneamento de Bracke*[*le*]. Cf. ed. Wats, p. 768 (under the year 1249).

Annalis conclusio.

A.D. 1251.

Annual summary.

Transiit ergo annus ille frugifer et fructifer usque ad sufficientiam et potius abundantiam,[1] quamvis procellosus et fulgure formidabilis. Domino vero papæ et curiæ Romanæ laboriosus, sumptuosus, et propter transmigrationem periculosus. Franciæ et Angliæ sub pace pendula suspiciosus. Romanis autem, Ytalicis, Germanicis, Siculis, Appulis et Calabribus adhuc acephalis, minime securus. Daciæ cruentus, fratres duos inimicos sustinendo, et fraternas acies alternaque regna prophanis decertata odiis. Scociæ quoque, cujus puer [rex][2] extitit, titubans,[3] exemplo Pompei Magni, prout Lucanus commemorat dicens,

> "Ætas Niliaci nimium suspecta tiranni est,
> Ardua nempe fides maturos exigit annos,
> Sub ocillo tamen fortunali tremebundus."[4]

Margareta, filia regis, maritatur Alexandro, regi Scotorum.

A.D. 1252.

Henry keeps Christmas at York, to celebrate the marriage of his daughter with Alexander II., king of Scots.

The king of Scots is

Anno Domini M^o^.CC^o^.LII^o^., qui est annus domini regis H[enrici] III. xxxv^us^., fuit idem dominus rex ad Natale Domini apud Eboracum, et regina, cum multitudine prælatorum et magnatum copiosa, ut filiam suam Margaretam Alexandro, regi Sociæ, matrimonialiter copularet, et ibidem nuptias, ut decuit, celebraret. Die igitur Natalis Domini rex Angliæ baltheo donavit militari ipsum regem Scociæ, et cum eo tirones xx. Qui omnes vestibus pretiosis et excogitatis, sicut fol. 153 *a.* in tam celebri tirocinio debuit et decuit,[5] ornabantur.

---

[1] *abundantiam*] habundanciam, MS.

[2] *rex*] Supplied from B.

[3] *titubans*] titubas, MS.

[4] Altered somewhat from Lucan, Pharsal., lib. viii. 281, ed. Oudendorp. In B. the last line reads, *Sub ocillo fortunæ tacitus et tremebundus.*

[5] *decuit*] In the text *debuit*, but corrected with a plummet.

A.D. 1252. 26 Dec. knighted, and does homage. The queen committed to the charge of Robert le Noreys.

In crastino autem, scilicet die sancti Stephani, rex Scociæ, ætate ,[1] filiam domini regis Angliæ, ætate ,[1] solempniter nimis desponsavit. Fecit igitur rex Scociæ domino regi Angliæ homagium. Commissa est igitur regina Scociæ tutelæ Roberti,[2] et regnum Scociæ cum rege, de consilio magnatum utriusque regni, quia integræ famæ et irreprehensibilis habebatur. Dictumque illi et præceptum, ne permitteret regem et reginam Scociæ condormire, propter eorum ætatis teneritudinem.

Obiit Nicholaus de Sanforde.[3]

Death of Nicholas de Sanford. 20 Jan.

Diebus sub eisdem obiit quidam miles strenuissimus, xiii°. kalendas Februarii, Nicholaus de Sanford. Qui quamvis non fuisset divitiis, fama tamen probitatis fuerat insignitus.

Extorquetur a Judæis pecunia.

The king extorts money from the Jews.

Rex, ut se instauret divitiis peregrinaturus, a miseris Judæis, quicquid habere videbantur, abradendo extorsit, et in aureis plurimis ærarium instauravit.

Creantur multi cardinales.

Creation of cardinals.

Verno quoque tempore imminente,[4] ut serenitate anni respiraret ipsa ecclesia, septem Perusii[5] creavit [papa][6] cardinales provisionibus inhiantes.

---

[1] Blanks are left here in the MS. Alexander was now nine years old, (Ann. Burton., p. 296, ed. Luard,) and Margaret was nearly eleven, having been born 5 Oct. 1240.

[2] *Roberti*] He is styled in B. "Robertus Norensis, domini regis hospicialis marescallus."

[3] *Sanforde*] Samforde, MS.

[4] *imminente*] iminente, MS.

[5] *Perusii*] Perisii, MS.

[6] *papa*] Supplied from B.

A.D. 1252.

Depauperatur Willelmus de Holand.

Eodemque tempore per varios Martis eventus minoratus et depauperatus est, tam fama quam pecunia, Willelmus de Holand, rex Alemanniæ.

William, count of Holland, loses both fame and money.

De primis bubalis in Angliam missis.

Missi sunt comiti Ricardo de partibus transmarinis bubali utriusque sexus, ut hujusmodi animalia in partibus nostris multiplicentur. Obiit magister Johannes de Basingestokes, archidiaconus Legrecestriæ, vir in trivio et quadrivio[1] ad plenum eruditus. Graviter accusatur comes Legrecestriæ Simon a Wasconensibus, sed probabiliter comes omnibus respondet. Et circa illud tempus electus est in episcopum Morefensem in Scocia, magister Radulfus, ecclesiæ Lincolniensis canonicus. Venit in Angliam archiepiscopus Burdegalensis, cum multis magnatibus Wasconiæ. Abbas Rameseiæ, cui pertinere ab antiquo constat nundinas sancti Yvonis, consilio Roberti Passelewe privatur, in suæ ecclesiæ dampnum et enormem læsionem. Nec profuerunt ei cartæ regum Edgari vel Edwardi, quas, inter alios, confirmaverat beatus Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et martir. Simili quoque modo imminebat[2] jactura magna nobili ecclesiæ Sancti Edmundi, regis et martiris, cum ventilata fuisset causa inter abbatem et conventum ejusdem loci, ex una parte, et comitem Gloverniæ Ricardum, ex alia. Contentio mota est de donatione ecclesiæ de Flamstude, unde scandala mota sunt, et ecclesia ipsa longo tempore interdicta; ita ibidem cessarent divina, et mortuorum corpora alibi quam in cimiterio sepelirentur.

Buffaloes first sent into England.

Death of John of Basingstoke, archdeacon of Leicester.

Ralph, canon of Lincoln, elected bp. of Moray.

The abp. of Bordeaux comes to England.

The abbat of Ramsey is deprived of his fair at St. Ive's.

Suit between the church of St. Edmund's-bury and earl Richard.

Quarrel respecting the church of Flamstead.

---

[1] *quodrivio*] quadruvio, MS.

[2] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.

A.D. 1252.

De mortibus quorumdam.

6 June. Deaths of Robert Passelewe,

Eodemque anno, viii°. idus Junii, obiit apud Waltham Robertus Passelewe, archidiaconus Lewensis, de quo multa præscribuntur. Hic Robertus mundanis totus deditus, licet clericus opime beneficiatus, non est veritus regi adhærendo multos multiformiter depauperare, ut regem per fas et nefas[1] impinguaret. Sepultus est apud Waltham, sub insculpto marmore[2] tumulatus. Opera autem ejus sequuntur eum. Et sub eodem tempore obiit magister Ricardus de Wendovre, ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli canonicus, phisicus præelectus. Qui sibi providit et præcavit multo circumspectius quam Robertus memoratus. Nam ix. sacerdotibus necessaria providit, qui in perpetuum pro anima ipsius et omnium fidelium hostiam Christo cotidie offerent salutarem. De quo in hoc libro specialem duximus facere mentionem, quia ecclesiæ Sancti Albani quandam crucem legavit et spontanea contulit devotione; in qua plures reliquiæ continentur, prout tituli earum protestantur. Hæc crux, quæ eburnea est, quandoque fuerat papæ Gregorii, et eidem carissima. Et cum memoratus magister R[icardus], ejus phisicus extitisset, papa moriturus carissimum sibi carissimo, scilicet illam crucem, duxerat conferendam.

and of Richard de Wendovre, physician, canon of St. Paul's.

Ivory cross, with reliques, bequeathed by him to St. Alban's.

Episcopus Lincolniensis auget portiones vicariorum.

The bp. of Lincoln increases the portions of the vicars in his diocese.

Episcopus Lincolniensis R[obertus] portiones vicariorum, in dampnum rectorum, adauget,[3] considerans quoniam ipsi fervores diei sustinent et labores.

---

[1] *nefas*] nephas, MS.

[2] *marmore*] Repeated in the text, erroneously.

[3] By authority of a Bull of pope Innocent IV., dated Lyons, "vii. cal. Oct. [25 Sept.], pont. anno viii. [1251], in ed. Wats, p. 840. See *ante*, p. 69.

A.D. 1252.

Concordes fiunt abbas Westmonasterii et ejus conventus.

Sopita est discordia, quæ per multos annos duraverat inter abbatem Westmonasterii et ejus conventum, procurante domino rege, qui ejusdem monasterii amator dinoscitur specialis.

Peace made between the abbat of Westminster and his convent.

Libertas eis est concessa.

Rex utique propter multa, quæ dicta ecclesia toleraverat gravamina, in recompensationem et consolationem concessit benigne eidem, ut, vacante abbatia Westmonasterii, disponatur libere de possessionibus ipsum conventum contingentibus, quas consuevit rex, qui pro tempore fuerat, in manu sua, in magnum dampnum domus, donec alius abbas substitueretur, temere retinere;[1] per quam retentionem, ut protelaretur, impedita fuerat electio, nugatoriis exceptionibus retardata. Hujus rei carta alibi, in domo Sancti Albani, Historiæ commendatur.[2]

Charter granted by the king to the church of Westminster.

Treugæ inter regem Francorum et soldanum Babiloniæ.

Captæ sunt treugæ inter regem Francorum et soldanum Babiloniæ, ex una parte, sibi confaventes, et Soldanum Halapiæ adversantem, ex alia. Et restitutæ sunt quædam terræ cum captivis regi Francorum. Oderant enim se ad invicem Babilonii et Halapenses.

Truce between the king of France and Soldan of Babylon.

---

[1] *retinere*] renere, MS.

[2] *commendatur*] comendatur, MS. This charter is in B., and in ed. Wats, p. 841, dated at St. Edmund's, a°. r. 36.

A.D. 1252.

Mortuus est rex Castellæ.

Death of Alphonso, king of Castille.

Eodemque tempore, ne læta tristibus veniant impermixta, rex Francorum non mediocriter turbabatur, audito rumore, quod illustris rex Castellæ Andefulsus, fol. 153 *b*. qui propter sui præeminentiam rex dicitur Hispaniæ, post præclara gesta sua et super infideles maximas conquisitiones, quæ diffusos et speciales tractatus exigerent, in fata concesserat. Et iccirco molestabatur vehementius, quia promiserat ei subsidium conferre efficax et festinum. Blanchia enim, mater regis, multiplicatis precibus, muneribus et promissis, hoc non muliebriter sed viriliter procuraverat. Verumtamen reliquit dictus rex A[ndefulsus] post se prolem nobilissimam, milites præclaros, strenuos et elegantes, qui Sarracenis protervientibus opponent potenter repagula contradictionis. Et dolorem conceptum hæc Dei misericordia temperavit. Insuper concessit Dominus regi Francorum de uxore sua regina Margarita prolem inclitam, videlicet filium et filiam elegantes. Sed, adversante fortuna, frater dicti regis Andefulsus, comes Pictaviæ, paralisi percussus, in dolorem tam fratris ejus regis quam matris B[lanchiæ] reginæ, irremediabiliter est infirmatus,[1] mortis dispendia protelando. Forte ultione divina sauciatus; fratri enim suo regi in arcto constituto, sicut promiserat, præstito cum fide juramento, renuit subvenire; "Qui enim diu distulit,[2] diu noluit."[3] Insuper in comitatum comitis Ricardi, fratris domini regis Angliæ, se injuste ingessit,[4] dum idem comes R[icardus] in Terra Sancta Deo militavit, et Francos liberavit incarceratos. Blanchia igitur talibus privata pignoribus, ex illo tempore nunquam recipere poterat consolationem.

A son and daughter born to Louis.

His brother Alphonse, count of Poitou, dangerously ill.

Grief of queen Blanche.

---

[1] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[2] *distulit*] distillit, MS.

[3] This quotation occurs twice before. See pp. 34, 102.

[4] *ingessit*] On an erasure.

Wasconia donátur Edwardo, filio regis.

A.D. 1252.

Grant of Gascony to prince Edward.

Rex, congregatis Wasconensibus, qui tunc Londoniis erant, scilicet archiepiscopo Burdegalensi et aliis, [qui][1] cum ipso erant, contulit Edwardo, filio suo, Wasconiam, nulla facta mentione de comite Ricardo, fratre suo, vel Symone, comite Legrecestriæ; unde comes iratus ilico adiit Wasconiam[2] festinando. Et, congregata armata manu copiosa, Wasconensibus illuc occurrens hostiliter venientibus subsequenter, tam de ipsis, qui ipsum conviciis provocaverant mendacibus, quam de aliis,[3] quos ibi invenerát supplantatoribus, non sine multi sanguis effusione triumphavit. Inter quos divitem cepit, scilicet Rustandum de Solariis, quem regi præsentari fecerat moranti Londoniis compeditum.

Simon, earl of Leicester, returns to Gascony, and defeats his enemies.

Rustand de Solars taken prisoner.

Diuturna siccitas et calor.

Intolerable drought and heat.

Æstate sub eadem ariditas et calor intolerabilis mensibus Aprilis, Maii, Junii et Julii, sine pluviarum respersione vel roris refrigerio, continuatus, ita frugum, fructuum[4] et pascuorum spem suspendit, ut caristiam nimiam suscitaret, et infirmitates[5] varias generaret.

Quædam modificatio papalis rigoris.[6]

Papal letters relative to the filling up of ecclesiastical dignities.

Tempore sub eodem concessit dominus papa hiis, qui dignitatibus gaudebant, et supra modum, in partibus maxime Transalpinis, opprimebantur, ut rite de ipsis dignitatibus ipsi, ad quos pertinebat electio, Deum

---

[1] *qui*] Supplied from B.

[2] *Wasconiam*] Vasconiam, MS.

[3] *de aliis*] alios, MS. The last two letters have been partly erased, as if for correction, but replaced by a late hand.

[4] *fructuum*] fructum, MS.

[5] *infirmitates*] imfirmitates, MS.

[6] Before this rubric, at the bottom of the previous column, is written the word "*Temperantia*" in red letters, and was probably meant originally to stand in the place of *Quædam modificatio.*

A.D. 1252. habentes præ oculis, ut melius viderent expedire, sine moræ dispendio ordinarent. Literæ autem super hoc alibi poteris reperire.[1]

Ernaldus de Muntteinni interimitur.

Ernald de Munteinni killed in a joust.

Anno quoque sub eodem milites Angliæ, ut exercitio[2] militari peritiam suam et strenuitatem experirentur, constituerunt, non ut in hastiludio, quod Torneamentum dicitur, sed potius in illo ludo militari, qui Mensa Rotunda dicitur, vires suas attemptarent. Duo igitur milites electissimi, Ernaldus scilicet de Munteinni[3] et Rogerus de Lemburne, dum se lanceis mutuo impeterent, Ernaldus letaliter vulneratus, præceps cadens obiit interfectus, qui in militari exercitio nulli in Anglia secundus censebatur.

Obiit Willelmus de Haverulle.

23 Aug. Death of William de Haverulle, the king's treasurer.

In vigilia autem sancti Bartholomæi obiit Willelmus de Haverulle, clericus, domini regis thesaurarius.

Pestis animalium.

Murrain among the cattle.

Eodem æstate facta est pecudum pestifera mortalitas, ita ut quicunque de carnibus, vel homo, canis, vel volucris comederet, occubuit veluti toxicatus.

Dedicatur ecclesia Elyensis.

17 Sept. Dedication of the church of Ely.

Anno sub eodem, xv. kalendas Octobris, die videlicet sancti Lamberti, dedicata est magnifice ac solempniter nimis Elyensis ecclesia cathedralis; cujus presbiterium elegantissimum, opere admirabili ac sumptuoso nimis, Hugo, ejusdem loci episcopus, propriis sumptibus usque ad perfectionem construxerat. Obiit[1] Margareta, comitissa de Insula, dicta de Ripariis, relicta scilicet Falcasii, de quo multa præscribuntur; de ipso enim multum fortuna lusit, ipsum tandem deludendo.

---

[1] In B. and ed. Wats, p. 846, a reference is here made to the "Liber Additamentorum," for these letters of pope Innocent IV., and they are printed by Wats, p. 184, from MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 118, and dated "iii°. non. Nov., pont. anno xi°."

[2] *exercitio*] excercicio, MS., here and below.

[3] *Munteinni*] Muteinni, MS.

A.D. 1252.

Death of Margaret, countess de Rivers, widow of Faukes [de Breauté].

De magno parlamento, quod fuit Londoniis.

Festo autem beati Edwardi imminente,[2] edicto convocati regio, totius Angliæ prælati et magnates convenerunt. Protulit ergo rex in medium papale mandatum, quod videlicet contulerat regi peregrinaturo cruceque signato totam decimam proventuum ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, ad viatica sua honorifice invenienda. Quod cum auditum esset et diligenter pensatum, omnes[3] inæstimabili dolore sauciabantur, et constanter tantæ contributioni ac servituti contradicentes dicebant, quod si papa tot oppressionibus sciret Angliam fatigari, manum retraheret tantæ severitatis, sed, suggesta falsitate et suppressa veritate, decipiebatur, ut certissime credebatur. Lincolniensis vero episcopus assertive protestabatur, quod papa ita ecclesiam, quam Dominus liberavit, nequaquam subderet[4] servituti, quia manifeste injustum est. Rex igitur humiliter postulavit, ut, nulla auctoritate papali vel alia compulsi districtione, sed tanquam domino suo supplicanti crucesignato, et pro honore universalis ecclesiæ Christo militaturo, conferrent subsidium pecuniare mera ac spontanea voluntate. Prælati igitur æquanimius se habentes responderunt, quod quicquid rex hactenus egerit, si de cetero Cartam Magnam de libertatibus regni, quam pater suus confecit et tenere juravit, et ipse rex præsens totiens promisit et tenere juravit,

13 Oct. Great parliament held at London.

Papal mandate read, demanding a tenth of the revenues of the church for the king's use.

fol. 154 *a.*

It is refused.

Henry begs for a subsidy.

The prelates agree to it, if the king will faithfully observe the articles of the Great Charter.

---

[1] In B. the date of her death is given, "vi. non. [2d] Oct."

[2] *imminente*] iminente, MS.

[3] *omnes*] omnium, MS.

[4] *subderet*] subdere, MS.

A.D. 1252.

The meeting is dissolved, in consequence of the king's cavilling. He extorts money from the citizens of London. Reginald de Mohun appointed justiciary of the Forest. Death of the countess of Winchester. The bones of William Longespée brought to Acre.

inviolabiliter sine aliqua cavillatione tenere vellet, suæ subvenirent indigentiæ. Sed cum rex cavillationes, dilationes, et diverticula[1] quæsisset, cum omnium indignatione solutum est concilium. Tunc quoque rex a civibus Londoniarum extorsit pecuniam. Amoto Galfrido de Langeleia a justiciaria forestæ, substituitur Reginaldus de Moun. Obiit comitissa Wintoniæ sine liberis,[2] sicut alia præmortua, filia scilicet Alani de Galeweia. Ossa Willelmi Longæ-spatæ de loco ubi occubuit, propter sui nobilitatem et mortem pretiosam, Achon deportantur, et ibi veneranter tumulantur.

Venit magister Albertus in Angliam.

11 Nov. Albert, the papal notary, comes to England to offer the kingdom of Apulia to earl Richard.

Circa festum sancti Martini venit magister Albertus, papæ notarius, in Angliam; qui jam elapso biennio prævenerat, quando scilicet parabatur transfretare rex Francorum, ex parte domini papæ prohibiturus ne rex Angliæ terras regis Francorum peregrinantis impeteret.[3] Nunc autem venit, ut offerret comiti Ricardo regnum Apuliæ. Cui respondit comes, "Dominus papa mihi dat, quod optinere non valet. Nonne vivit Conradus, filius Fretherici, qui regnum illud optinet? Verumtamen, si papa me de thesauro suo juvet, exponens quantum ego expositurus forem, et mihi[4] conferat castrorum aliqua, præcipue de suis, ut ibi habeam receptacula et tuta refugia, et salvum conductum de rege Francorum, ut securus ego et mei omnes eundo et redeundo optineam, impetret, et super hiis omnibus me per salvos obsides securum faciat, faciam quod hortaris." Magister autem Albertus respondit, quod hæc omnia sine papæ assensu minime auderet[5] promittere, sed super hoc, misso festino nuncio, papam consuleret. Et dum nuncium idem magister expectaret, negotio proprio vigilanter intendebat, postulando redditus ecclesiasticos ab abbatibus maxime et religiosis aliis, ita ut qui macer venerat, parvo tempore abundavit[1] saginatus.

---

[1] *diverticula*] divercula, MS.

[2] *de liberis*] Repeated in the text, but expuncted.

[3] *impeteret*] impetere, MS.

[4] *mihi*] michi, MS.

[5] *auderet*] audere, MS.

A.D. 1252. He enriches himself from the abbats and clergy.

Mandatum Conradi comiti Ricardo.

Interim Conradus, hujus rei non ignarus, literatorie comiti Ricardo significavit, ne permitteret se fallacibus promissis papæ vel papalium circumveniri, qui plus pecuniæ suæ quam honori inhiabant, nec se periculis, sterlingorum[2] confisus multitudini. Quia plus abundavit ipse Conradus aureis, quam comes argenteis, materia, numero et pondere præstantioribus, et colore rubicundis. Dicebantque comiti amici ejus, quod aer et cibaria nobis Occidentalibus sunt insoliti et nocivi; incolæ autem suspecti, poculis utentes venenatis, quibus Siculi et Apuli sunt infames.[3] Unde cor comitis penitus ab illis est aversum. Cum autem prædicta papæ nunciarentur, corrugans nares ait, "Nolo ipsum comitem thesaurum meum exponendo juvare, nec in aliquo de præmissis." Et sic remansit comes indempnis. Albertus vero, multis ditatus redditibus et refertis numismate[4] clitellis, recessit. Cogitavit autem extunc papa domini regis simplicitatem circumvenire, cum non poterat comitem circumspectum illaqueare. In octavis autem sancti Martini applicuit in Anglia archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius], adventus cujus quosdam lætificavit, quosdam vero perturbavit. Quippe quia si sanctorum sit[5] sequens vestigia prædecessorum suorum, et[6] credebatur malos corripere, bonos vero veneranter confovere.[7]

The emperor Conrad dissuades earl Richard from trusting the pope.

The pope refuses to advance money.

Albert, the papal notary, returns with full money bags.

18 Nov. Arrival of Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury, in England.

---

[1] *abundavit*] habundavit, MS., and so below.

[2] *sterlingorum*] sterligorum, MS.

[3] *infames*] imfames, MS.

[4] *numismate*] nummismate, MS.

[5] *sit*] Interlined.

[6] *et*] Seems to be superfluous.

[7] *quosdam lætificavit . . confovere*] These lines are written over an erasure by the contemporary hand which here first appears, and which has continued the History at fol. 154 *b*. The passage as originally written, may be conjectured from the text of B. and ed. Wats, p. 857.

A.D. 1252. *Orta est gravis discordia inter archiepiscopum B[onefacium] et electum Wintoniensem A[thelmaruum].*

Quarrel between the abp. and Æthelmar, bp. of Winchester.

Anno quoque sub eodem orta est gravis discordia inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem B[onefacium] et electum Wintoniensem Æ[thelmarum]. Captus enim erat magister Eustachius de Len, officialis archiepiscopi, apud Lamheth, et impositus vilissimo jumento, cujus loris uti non est permissus, usque Fernham,[1] tanquam ibi vel incarcerandus vel interficiendus. Evasit tamen solus, et pedes venit ad domum Ordinis Cisterciensis Waverle; ubi receptus humanitus, vix respiravit. Quod cum audisset archiepiscopus, convocatis quibusdam episcopis, omnes hujus temeritatis auctores excommunicavit. Rex autem, quia utrumque feliciter creaverat, vigilanter paci intendens tandem procuravit, quod electus juravit, tactis evangeliis,[2] quod illa captio prædicta non fuit facta per ipsum, immo potius ipso invito et nesciente perpetrata. Et sic sopita est discordia, prout dicetur.[3]

De morte Blanchiæ, matris regis Francorum.

1 Dec. Death of queen Blanche, mother of the king of France.

Circa idem tempus, scilicet prima Dominica Adventus, obiit nobilissima domina Blanchia regina, mater regis Francorum, [et][4] apud Pontem-Thesiæ, ubi[5] nobilem domum sanctimonialium fundaverat, est sepulta. fol. 154 *b*.

Computatum est et compertum, quod iste papa Innocentius IIII. plures redditus contulit quam omnes prædecessores sui.

The bp. of Lincoln proves that

Diebus sub eisdem, episcopo Lincolniensi computante, compertum et probatum est, quod iste papa, scilicet

---

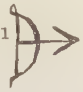
[1] *Fernham*] A verb is wanting, and we should probably supply *trahitur*.

[2] *evangeliis*] ewangeliis, MS.

[3] *prout dicetur*] On an erasure.

[4] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[5] *Pontem-Thesiæ, ubi*] On an erasure.

Innocentius IIII^us., plures redditus extortos ad suam contulit voluntatem, quam omnes ejus prædecessores, prout manifeste patet in lugubri querimonia quam reposuerunt Franci coram papa, pro suis intolerabilibus oppressionibus, quæ redacta est in scriptum epistolæ admodum prolixæ; quæ sic incipit, "Dicturus quod injunctum est mihi," etc. Quære epistolam ad signum arcus et sagittæ.[1] 

A.D. 1252.

Pope Innocent IV. had extorted more money than all his predecessors.

Rex pro accepta pecunia multis warennam concedit.

Multi religiosi, maxime Cisterciensis Ordinis, non propter fugationem, quod pro certo constat, sed ut pace gauderent a venatoribus, warennam sibi comparant, data non minima regi pecuniæ quantitate; ad quam recipiendam rex sinum gaudenter aperuit,[2] transgressores enim pecunialiter puniturus, thesaurum suum non mediocriter sciens taliter accumulare.[3] Sed quod concesserat et cartis confirmaverat, non, ut decuit, warantizavit. Quod experti sunt monachi Waredoniæ, qui infestante eos Willelmo de Bello-campo, suasu uxoris Ydæ, dampna inæstimabilia sunt perpessi. Modo quoque consimili Petrus de Sabaudia, cui regis maxima familiaritas cornua præstitit præsumptionis, non est veritus sanctam domum Girivallensium decennalibus persecutionibus perturbare, et perturbatam continue multipliciter dampnificare.

The king grants rights of warren to the Cistercians, on payment of money.

Oppression of the monks of Wardon abbey by William de Beauchamp.

Peter of Savoy persecutes the monastery of Jervaux.

---

[1] This very important letter is inserted by Matthew Paris in the "Liber Additamentorum," MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 126, but without the mark of reference noted in the text. At the end Matthew Paris remarks, "Hee [*sic pro* Hæ] literæ multos moverunt, sed commotio nondum pervenit ad effectum." It is surprising that so remarkable a document should have been omitted by Wats.

[2] *gaudenter aperuit*] In the text, *apperuit gaudenter*, but marked to be transposed.

[3] *accumulare*] accumalare, MS.

A.D. 1252.

Annalis conclusio.

Annual summary.

Transiit annus ille frugibus et fructibus mediocriter instauratus, pecudum peste mortifera toxicatus, omni hominum generi turbulentus. Cujus perturbationis, [captio regis Francorum,] [1] licet Christianis deploranda, Orientalibus causa fuit exterminii. Sicut enim os projectum in medio canum protervorum, quod cum quilibet nititur apprehendere, alter in alterum nititur desævire, et sese mutuo pro osse corrodendo corrodunt, sic pro optinendo tanto captivo sese Sarraceni infestarunt; [2] ita quod Soldanus Babiloniæ peremptus est, nec est diu de præda sua prædo permissus gratulari. Imperator Romanorum quasi ratis gubernaculo vacillat viduata. Regnum Francorum fama, baronibus, armis et equis, quæ omnia hostes optinent, se deplorat spoliatum. Anglia ab alienigenis [conculcatur]; [3] Flandria inquietatur; Alemannia perturbatur; Ecclesia multipliciter dampnificatur.

Rex ad Natale fuit Wintoniæ.

A.D. 1253. Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester. A Friar Preacher killed at Milan, and canonized.

Anno Domini M°CC°LIII°., qui est annus regni regis Henrici III. xxxvii^us^., fuit idem rex ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam. Et tunc temporis quidam frater de Ordine Prædicatorum, dum prædicasset Mediolani, et civium non palpando redarguisset errores,[4] præventus ipsorum Mediolanensium insidiis peremptus est. Qui quoniam martir extitit,[5] testificantibus miraculis manifestis, canonizatus est.

---

[1] *captio regis Francorum*] Supplied from B.

[2] *infestarunt*] imfestarunt, MS.

[3] *conculcatur*] Supplied from B., which reads, *ab alienigenis conculcata.*

[4] *errores*] Added in marg. by a contemporary hand.

[5] *extitit*] exitit, MS.

Romani constituunt sibi senatorem triennalem.

A.D. 1253

The Romans elect a triennial senator.

Romani quendam civem Bononiensem sibi elegerunt in senatorem. Qui noluit consentire, nisi constitueretur triennalis, contra Romanorum antiquam consuetudinem, et secundum rigorem justitiæ puniret delinquentes. Et hoc ut[1] ratum haberet, exegit obsides frugales a nobilioribus urbis. Quæ omnia concessa sunt illi. Senator igitur constitutus est. Nomen autem illi Brancaleo. Ipso non fuit aliquis senator nostris temporibus justior, aut in executione[2] ultionis in sontes rigidior.[3]

De xenio[4] Wintoniensi.

Henry receives a present from the citizens of Winchester.

Regi autem pransuro festo memorati Natalis, fecerunt cives Wintonienses xenium[5] nobilissimum. Rex vero eosdem in ducentas marcas obligans, Natalis solempnitatem in lugubrem eis convertit lamentationem.

Facta est concordia inter archiepiscopum et electum Wintoniensem.[6]

13 Jan. Peace made between the abp. of Canterbury and bp. elect of Winchester.

In octabis vero Epiphaniæ,[7] rege et regina diligenter procurantibus, rege pro fratre suo electo, regina pro avunculo suo archiepiscopo, plene restitutus est gratiæ et paci electus prædictus cum archiepiscopo, et in osculo pacis restitutus. Juravit enim in publico electus, quod nunquam consenserat illi violentiæ, pro qua

---

[1] *ut*] Interlined.

[2] *executione*] excucōne, MS.

[3] Here ends the handwriting of the author Matthew Paris, and the remainder of this year is written in a different but contemporary hand, which has also completed the fuller Chronicle in the years 1258 and 1259. See Preface to vol. i. p. l.

[4] *xenio*] zenio, MS.

[5] *xenium*] zenium, MS.

[6] *Wintoniensem*] Vintoniensem, MS.

[7] *Epiphaniæ*] Ephiph'e, MS.

A.D. 1253. eum archiepiscopus excommunicaverat, nec illi unquam[1] complacuit, sed, ipso nesciente et invito, fuerat temere perpetrata; et sic est absolutus electus.

De observatione Magnæ Cartæ.

The prelates agree to pay an aid to the king, on condition of his observing the articles of the Great Charter.

Convenientes prælati Angliæ, de concessione memoratæ contributionis pro Cartæ Magnæ observatione, sese contulerunt ad tractandum. Tandem ad hoc inclinarunt, ut efficax auxilium regi præstarent et ultroneum, si ipse a consuetis injuriis, quibus ecclesiam perturbaverat, prout multotiens promiserat, cessare voluisset. Ad quod rex favorabiliter respondit, quod providerent et secreto scriberent articulos offensionis cujuscumque, et ipse omnia emendaret emendanda.[2] Et statutus est dies eosdem pronunciandi, unde eos non modicum exhilaravit spes tam sæpius iterata remedii.

Magister Albertus Romam rediit.

Albert returns to Rome.

Magister Albertus expectans mandatum domini papæ, et non suscipiens, repatriavit. Non enim prævaluit negotia sua erga comitem Ricardum expedire, nec voluit papa petitioni comitis satisfacere ad hoc, quod ipse comes papæ vellet consentire. fol. 155 *a*.

Obiit abbas Sancti Augustini Cantuariæ.[3]

After the death of the abbat, the king wastes the property of the church

Tempore eodem, cum obiisset[4] abbas Sancti Augustini Cantuariæ, dominus rex cartam præconcessam se monstrans minime conservare, bona illius ecclesiæ exterminando non formidavit diripere.[5] Conventus autem volens festinanter contravenire, præcentorem suum sibi elegit in abbatem, finem faciens cum rege difficilem.

---

[1] *unquam*] umquam, MS.

[2] *emendanda*] emendenda, MS.

[3] A small mitre and crosier, reversed, are sketched in the margin by the contemporary hand.

[4] *obiisset*] obisset, MS.

[5] *diripere*] At first written *eripere.*

A.D. 1253. of St. Augustine, Canterbury.

Judæi effugantur a Francia.

Sub eisdem diebus direxit rex Francorum mandatum de Terra Sancta in Franciam, ut omnes Judæi a regno suo expellerentur.[1] Improperatum enim fuit eidem regi a Sarracenis, quod parum nos Christiani Christum nostrum diligimus, qui peremptores ejus Judæos inter nos degere toleramus.

The Jews are banished from France.

Filius comitis Glovernicæ desponsavit uxorem.

Anno eodem, procurante rege, desponsavit filius comitis Gloverniæ Ricardi neptem ejusdem regis, de Pictavia oriundam, filiam videlicet Guidonis, comitis Engolismi, fratris prædicti regis uterini. Cui idem rex cum prædicta puella in maritagio magnifice largitus est v. milia marcarum. In quarum solutione, supplicavit abbatibus de Sancto Albano, de Radingo, et de Wautham, ut fidejuberent pro eo versus comitem, sed minime potuit eorum ad hoc optinere consensum.

Marriage of the son of the earl of Gloucester to the king's niece.

The abbats of St. Alban's, Reading, and Waltham, refuse to be sureties for her dowry.

Rex Hispaniæ vendicavit Wasconiam.

Postquam comes Legrecestriæ S[imon] a Wasconia recesserat, et cartam de custodia ejus resignaverat, ilico rex Hispaniæ sibi vendicavit Wasconiam,[2] sibi prius per cartas et confirmationes regum præcedentium collatam. Volente igitur rege prædictum comitem iterum ad eandem inducere custodiendam, idem comes secessit in Franciam; quem vehementer affectabant[3]

The king of Spain lays claim to Gascony.

Simon, earl of Leicester, retires to France.

---

[1] See before, p. 103.

[2] *Wasconiam*] Hispaniam, MS.

[3] *affectabant*] afftābāt, MS.

A.D. 1253. Gallici retinere pro senescallo Franciæ, sed, ne proditor videretur regi Angliæ fuisse, eisdem renuit consentire.

Moderatio de visitationibus faciendis.

Mandate of the pope respecting visitations.

Tunc temporis dominus papa providit et decrevit, ut archiepiscopi et alii prælati, ad quos spectat visitatio, visitationem facerent in suos subditos debitam et consuetam, ita tamen, ut visitati non gravarentur in procurationibus; et ad hoc taxavit pretium cujuscumque visitationis, prout litteræ plenius declarant, ad hoc signum .[1]

Provisiones novæ regis, sed non servatæ.

New provisions made for Gascony, but not carried out.

Audiens rex quod Wasconenses sibi et verbis et factis injuriarentur, et, captis quibusdam castris in Wasconia, timens ne sic tota pateret Wasconia discrimini, constituit et generaliter acclamari præcepit, ut, secundum antiquam consuetudinem, arma cuilibet assignata monstrarentur, ut, cum necesse fuerit, competentia et parata habeantur. Et quicumque xv. libratas terræ haberet, miles fieret. Præterea, ut excubantes vigiles in qualibet civitate constituerentur, qui vicos et plateas, exitus et introitus diligenter custodirent. Præterea providit, de consilio Sabaudiensium,[2] ut si quis obiter spoliaretur vel dampnificaretur, ipsi quibus patriæ[3] imminebat custodia, læso satisfacerent, et amissa restituerent. Sed, superorto murmure, cepit res dilationem, immo deletionem, præsertim cum tanta legis permutatio sine communi assensu barnagii minime valuisset constitui. A.D. 1253.

---

[1] In B. a reference is here made with the same sign to the "Liber Additamentorum;" and in ed. Wats, p. 188, are printed letters of William, bishop of Norwich, [from MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 110 *b*,] reciting a mandate of the bishops of Lincoln, London, and Bath, touching procurations, dated "iii°. non. Feb. [2 Feb.], pontif. anno viii°." The papal letters are also in ed., p. 186, taken from the same source, fol. 103.

[2] *Sabaudiensium*] Sebaudiensium, MS.

[3] *patriæ*] ptīe, MS.

Obiit episcopus Cicestrensis, magister Ricardus de Wiz.[1]

Quarto nonas Aprilis obiit episcopus Cicestrensis, magister Ricardus de Wiz, vir eminentis scientiæ et eximiæ sanctitatis, beatique Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, clericus quondam et consiliarius specialis. Hic, secundum beati Edmundi vaticinium, promotus est in præsulatum. Hujus autem assertionibus, necnon et magistri Roberti Bacun, fratris de Ordine Prædicatorum, certificatus frater Matheus Parisiensis, vitam memorati archiepiscopi scripsit, et quæ a fidedignis didicit, diligenter digessit.

2 April. Death of the bp. of Chichester.

Life of Edmund, abp. of Canterbury, written by Matthew Paris.

Confirmatio libertatis præconcessæ ecclesiæ de Waltham.

Anno quoque sub eodem, videlicet ad Pascha, dominus rex concessit et confirmavit abbati et conventui de Wautham, prout eis fuerat prius concessum, ut quotienscumque domum eorum vacare contigerit, conventus libere bona domus disponat, et plenam habeat tam de baronia quam de possessionibus ejusdem disponendi facultatem. Duo insuper mercata concessit eisdem, et quædam alia impendit beneficia, confecta super hoc carta præoptata.[2]

Henry confirms the privilege granted to Waltham abbey.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn a small mitre and crosier, reversed.

[2] In B. reference is made for these charters to the "Liber Additamentorum," but they are not found in MS. Cott. Nero D. I.

A.D. 1253.

Rogatus est dominus papa, ut Romam veniret.

The Romans ask the pope to return to them, which he does.

Per idem tempus, cum dominus papa diutius extra Romam moraretur, Romani, missis nunciis solempnibus, rogaverunt eum ut Romam rediret, more boni pastoris gregem suum minaturus.[1] Et cum venire distulisset, iterum vocabant eum sub hac forma, ut, scilicet, tunc veniret, vel nunquam. Volens igitur eisdem satisfacere, et periculum in mora protrahenda evitare, illuc properavit, reverenterque susceptus est, ut decuit.

De transfretatione regis, et contributione sibi facienda,

20 April. Parliament again assembled. The king is required to concede to the church the liberties previously guaranteed.

In quindena vero Paschæ, convocata ad parlamentum nobilitate Angliæ, cum de magna regis exigentia, qui postulavit sibi peregrinaturo infinitam exhiberi pecuniam, diutius pertractassent, tandem rogatum est ex parte omnium prælatorum, ut permitteret dominus rex, prout sæpius jurando promisit, sanctam ecclesiam suis gaudere libertatibus, maxime de electionibus prælatorum, tam in cathedralibus quam conventualibus ecclesiis. Et si hunc et alios errores secundum Magnæ Cartæ tenorem emendaret, ipsi usque ad gravamen magnum petitionibus suis inclinarent. Concessa est igitur regi, eorum petitionem concedenti, decima pars proventuum ecclesiasticorum per triennium recipiendorum; et a militibus scutagium illo anno, scilicet ad scutum tres marcæ. Rex igitur hujusmodi promissione exhilaratus, bona fide promisit se Magnam Cartam et omnes ejus articulos fideliter observaturum; jubens super hoc in omnes contravenientes sententiam proferri in publicum.

¶ *Nota quæ conceduntur regi pro concessione Magnæ Cartæ et libertatum.*

He promises to observe all the articles of the Great Charter.

fol. 155 *b*.

---

[1] *minaturus*] Altered improperly in Edd. to *juvaturus*.

Notantur magnates præsentes.[1]

13 May.

¶ *Concessa est Magna Carta, et sententia datur super hoc.*

Tertio igitur[2] idus[3] Maii, in majori aula regia Westmonasterii, sub præsentia et assensu domini H[enrici] III.,[4] Dei gratia regis Angliæ illustris, et dominorum R[icardi], comitis Cornubiæ, fratris sui, et[5] R[ogeri], comitis Nortfolchiæ et Suthfolchiæ, marescalli Angliæ, H[umfredi], comitis Herefordiæ, H[ugonis], comitis Oxoniæ, J[ohannis], comitis Warwik, et aliorum optimatum regni Angliæ, nos B[onefacius],[6] divina miseratione Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, totius Angliæ primas, F[ulco], Londoniensis,[7] H[ugo], Elyensis, R[obertus], Lincolniensis, W[alterus], Wigorniensis, W[alterus], Norwicensis, P[etrus], Herefordensis, W[illelmus], Saresbiriensis, W[alterus], Dunelmensis, R[icardus], Exoniensis, S[ilvester], Carleolensis, W[illelmus], Bathoniensis, L[aurentius], Rofensis, T[homas], Menevensis episcopi, pontificalibus induti, candelis accensis, in transgressores libertatum ecclesiasticarum,[8] et libertatum seu liberarum consuetudinum regni Angliæ, et præcipue earum, quæ continentur in Carta Libertatum[9] regni Angliæ[10] et Carta de Foresta, excommunicationis sententiam solempniter tulimus, sub hac forma:

Sententia excommunicationis talis.[11]

Sentence of excommunication pronounced on transgressors.

Auctoritate Dei omnipotentis,[12] [Patris][13] et Filii et Spiritus Sancti, et gloriosæ Dei Genitricis semperque Virginis Mariæ, et[14] beatorum apostolorum Petri et Pauli, omniumque apostolorum, et[14] beati Thomæ, archiepiscopi et martiris, omniumque martirum, beati Edwardi, regis Angliæ, omniumque confes-

---

[1] This document has been collated with the copies in B. and E., and the "Liber Additamentorum," [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 112,] as also with the text of Rymer, taken "Ex Orig. inter Archiv. Eccles. Wellensis," i. 289.

[2] Anno Domini M°CC°LIII°., III°., Cott. and Rymer.

[3] *idus*] die, B., interlined, and E.

[4] *III.*] Om. B. and Ry.

[5] *et*] Om. Ry.

[6] *Bonefacius*] After this name has been written, *Dei gratia*, but afterwards expuncted.

[7] *Londoniensis*] MS. Cott. adds *episcopus*.

[8] *libertatum ecclesiasticarum*] libertatum et ecclesiasticorum, MS. and B. E., but corr. from Cott. and Ry.

[9] *Libertatum*] communium libertatum, Ry.

[10] *Angliæ*] Om. Cott.

[11] In the margin, a hand of the 15th century has written, "Nota de illis qui faciunt contra Magnam Cartam Angliæ, quomodo incurrunt sententiam excommunicationis."

[12] *Omnipotentis*] At first written, *patris omnipotentis*, but *patris* afterwards expuncted.

[13] *patris*] Supplied from Cott. and Ry.

[14] *et*] Om. Ry.

A.D. 1253. sorum atque virginum, omniumque sanctorum Dei, excommunicamus, anathematizamus, et a liminibus sanctæ matris ecclesiæ sequestramus omnes illos, qui amodo scienter et malitiose ecclesias privaverint vel spoliaverint suo jure. Item, omnes illos, qui ecclesiasticas libertates vel antiquas regni consuetudines probatas,[1] et præcipue libertates, et liberas consuetudines, quæ in Cartis communium Libertatum Angliæ[2] et de Foresta continentur, concessis a domino rege Angliæ[3] archiepiscopis, episcopis, et ceteris Angliæ prælatis, comitibus, baronibus, militibus et libere tenentibus, qualicunque[4] arte vel ingenio temere[5] violaverint,[6] diminuerint seu immutaverint, clam vel palam, facto, verbo, vel consilio, contra illas vel earum aliquam, in quocumque articulo temere veniendo. Item, in[7] illos, qui contra illas vel earum aliquam statuta ediderint, vel edita servaverint, consuetudines introduxerint, vel servaverint introductas, scriptores statutorum, necnon consiliarios et executores, et[8] qui secundum ea præsumpserint judicare. Qui omnes et singuli superius memorati hanc sententiam incursuros se noverint ipso facto, qui scienter aliquid commiserint de prædictis. Qui vero[9] ignoranter, nisi commoniti infra quindenam a tempore commonitionis se correxerint, et arbitrio ordinariorum plenius satisfecerint de commissis, extunc sint hac sententia involuti. Eadem etiam sententia innodamus omnes illos, qui pacem regis et regni præsumpserint perturbare. In cujus [rei][10] memoriam sempiternam, nos sigilla nostra præsentibus duximus apponenda.

The bp. of Lincoln causes this sentence to be read in his diocese.

Hanc autem sententiam, a rege et omnibus aliis voluntarie concessam, fecit episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus in diocesi sua frequenter recitari.

Fit querimonia a Wasconensibus de Symone, comite Legrecestriæ.

Complaints of the Gascons against the

Per idem tempus fecit rex acclamari in Wasconia, quod nullus extunc comiti S[imoni] intenderet vel obediret. Mandaverant enim prius regi Wasconenses, quod per tirannidem comitis Legrecestriæ S[imonis] multos subditos et amicos perdidisset, quod falsum est; et, nisi festinanter in Wasconiam veniret, omnia foret amissurus. Remandavit igitur rex, quod indubitanter, vita comite, illuc quamcitius veniret, quod multum eisdem, proditione latente, complacuit.

---

[1] *probatas*] approbatas, Cott. and Ry.

[2] *Angliæ*] Om. Ry.

[3] *Angliæ*] Om. Cott. and Ry.

[4] *qualicunque*] quacunque, Cott. and Ry.

[5] *temere*] Om. Cott. and Ry.

[6] *violaverint*] violaverint, infregerint, Cott. and Ry.

[7] *in*] omnes, Cott. and Ry.

[8] *et*] Om. Ry.

[9] *vero*] autem, Cott.

[10] *rei*] Supplied from E., Cott., and Ry.

A.D. 1253.
earl of Leicester.

De miraculis ad tumbam Ricardi, episcopi Cicestrensis.

Sublato, ut prædictum est, de medio episcopo Cicestrensi Ricardo, miracula ad tumbam ejus choruscarunt manifesta; unde sanctitas jam patuit, quæ prius occultata latebat. Cujus corpus cum portaretur ad lavandum, inventum est ciliciatum et circulis ferreis constrictum. Eligitur autem magister Johannes Clippinge, ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicus, eidem in episcopatum successurus.

Miracles at the tomb of Richard, bishop of Chichester.

Election of John Clippinge.

De visitatione facienda in Nigro Ordine.

Tunc temporis providit dominus papa, ut quilibet archiepiscopus et episcopus quoslibet monachos Nigri Ordinis in sua diocesi constitutos visitaret, injungens eisdem, ut eos cogerent quosdam articulos observare regulæ sancti Benedicti impertinentes.[1] Unde Franciæ monachi, datis iiii$^{\text{or}}$ milibus librarum Turonensium domino papæ, hujusmodi impetum compescuerunt; abbas vero et conventus[2] Sancti Albani, cum suis paribus, ad sedem apostolicam appellarunt.[3]

The pope orders a visitation of the Black [Benedictine] Order.

Appeal made by the abbat of St. Alban's.

Summonentur omnes servitium regi debentes milites.

Circa kalendas Junii dominus rex fecit summoneri omnes sibi servitium militare debentes, ut in octavis

1 June.
Henry summons

---

[1] *impertinentes*] inpertinentes, MS.

[2] *et conventus*] Interlined.

[3] See in ed. Wats, p. 173, the Statutes of the Order as emended by Innocent IV., and, at p. 228, the Replies of the Monastery of St. Alban's to the proposed innovations, both taken from the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., ff. 113, 147].

A.D. 1253. his military retainers to accompany him to Gascony, on the 16 June. Trinitatis parati essent apud Portesmue in Wasconiam transfretaturi. Congregatis igitur ibidem cum rege necessariis omnibus, negato diutius vento, mora otiosa protrahitur, et thesaurus cum jacturis aliis minoratur.

Rex transfretat in Wasconiam.

6 Aug. He embarks at Portsmouth, and lands at Bordeaux, 15 Aug. La Réole is besieged. Octavo[1] vero idus Augusti, vento arridente, rex, constitutis comite Ricardo et regina regni custodibus, navem ascendit apud Portesmue, comitantibus trecentis[2] magnis navibus, cum classe numerosa. Circa Assumptionem beatæ Mariæ applicuit apud Burdegalim. Susceptus igitur reverenter, ut decuit, jussit ilico Regulam obsidione vallari, ubi quamplurimi hostium suorum Gasconensium[3] latitabant, ipso Gastone ad regem Hispaniæ confugente.

Litteræ episcopi Lincolniensis Roberti ad papam.

Letters written by Robert, bp. of Lincoln, to the pope. Cum per apostolica scripta significatum esset aliquibus, et præcipue episcopo Lincolniensi Roberto, quatinus quiddam facerent, quod eis videbatur injustum, rescripsit eidem papæ Innocentio episcopus prædictus, in hæc verba:

A.D. 1253.

Litteræ episcopi.[4]

Salutem.[5] Noverit[6] discretio vestra, quod mandatis apostolicis affectione filiali devote[7] et reverenter obedio. Hiis quoque, quæ mandatis apostolicis adversantur, paternum[1] zelans honorem, adversor et obsto. Ad utrumque enim[2] teneor ex divino mandato. Apostolica enim mandata non sunt, nec esse possunt, alia quam apostolorum[3] doctrinæ, et ipsius Domini nostri[4] Jhesu Christi, apostolorum magistri et Domini, cujus tipum et personam maxime gerit in gerarchia[5] ecclesiæ[6] dominus papa, consona et conformis.[7] Ait enim ipse Dominus noster Jhesus Christus, "Qui non est mecum, contra me est."[8] Contra ipsum autem nec est, nec esse potest apostolicæ sedis sanctitas divinissima. Non est igitur prædictæ litteræ tenor apostolicæ sanctitati consonus, sed absonus plurimum et discors. Primo, quia de illius litteræ et ei[9] consimilium[10] longe lateque dispersarum super-accumulato "Non obstante," non ex legis naturalis observandæ necessitate inducto, scatet cathaclismus inconstantiæ, audaciæ et procacitatis, inverecundiæ[11] mentiendi, fallendi,[12] diffidenter[13] alicui[14] credendi, vel fidem adhibendi; et ex hiis consequentium vitiorum, quorum non est numerus, Christianæ religionis puritatem, et socialis conversationis hominum tranquillitatem commovens et perturbans. Præterea, post peccatum Luciferi, quod idem erit in fine temporum ipsius filii perditionis Antichristi, "quem interficiet Dominus spiritu oris sui,"[15] non est, nec esse potest alterum genus peccati tam adversum et contrarium apostolorum doctrinæ et evangelicæ, et[16] ipsi Domino Jhesu Christo tam odibile, detestabile, et tam[17] abominabile, quam animas

---

[1] *Octavo*] On an erasure.

[2] *trecentis*] trescentis, MS.

[3] *Gasconensium*] Gastonensium, MS. and E.

[4] This celebrated letter has been collated with the copies in B. and the "Liber Additamentorum," in MS. Cott., fol. 117 *b*, (both written by the hand of Matthew Paris,) and with E. and the Chetham MS. of *Flores Historiarum* (both written under his own eye); also with "Roberti Grosseteste Episc. Linc. Epistolæ," ed. Luard, p. 432. Many variations in the printed text of Parker and Wats proceed only from the arbitrary alterations made by the former, and are not here noticed.

[5] *Salutem*] Om. Cott. and Luard.

[6] *Noverit*] Noverit autem, Cott.

[7] *devote*] omnino et devote, Cott.; omnino devote, Lu.

A.D. 1253.

fol. 156 *a*.

---

[1] *paternum*] parentalem, Cott. and Lu. In Cott. there is a marginal gloss, *id est, paternum.*

[2] *enim*] After this word Cott. and Lu. insert, *similiter et æqualiter.*

[3] *apostolorum*] apostolicæ, E.

[4] *nostri*] Om. Lu.

[5] *gerarchia*] So also Cott.; ierarchia, E. and Cheth. In our MS. a later hand has interlined, "id est, potestate."

[6] *ecclesiæ*] ecclesiastica, Cott. and Lu.

[7] *conformis*] conforma, Cheth.; conformia, Lu.

[8] Matth. xii. 30.

[9] *ei*] aliarum ei, Lu.

[10] *consimilium*] In Cott. is added this marginal note by Matthew Paris: "per hoc quod dicitur *consimilium*, involvitur reprehensio, sed tacita, de usuris, symonia et rapina, quæ fit per Provisiones, quas Romana Curia committit impudenter. Cogitque nos subdere colla usurariis suas per oppressiones. Usura profecto, quam exemplo etiam Romanorum laici excercerent, in utroque Testamento prohibetur."

[11] *inverecundiæ*] inverecundæ, Cott.; etiam inverecundiæ, Lu.

[12] *fallendi*] et fallendi, Lu.

[13] *diffidenter*] diffidentiæ, Cott. and Lu.; diffidencio, Cheth.

[14] *alicui*] cuiquam, Cott. and Lu.

[15] 2 Thess. ii. 8.

[16] *evangelicæ*] ewangelice, MS.

[17] *tam*] Om. E., Cheth. and Lu.

A.D. 1253. curæ pastoralis officii[1] et ministerii[2] defraudatione mortificare et perdere. Quod peccatum evidentissimis[3] Scripturæ Sacræ testimoniis committere dinoscuntur, qui in potestate curæ pastoralis constituti, de lacte et lana ovium Christi vivificandarum et salvandarum[4] pastoralis officii et ministerii salutem comparant,[5] debita non administrant. Ipsa enim ministeriorum pastoralium non administratio est, Scripturæ testimonio, sed[6] ovium occisio et perditio. Quod autem hæc duo genera peccatorum, licet dispariter, sint pessima et omne alterum genus peccati inæstimabiliter superexcedentia, manifestum est[7] ex hoc, quod ipsa sunt duobus existentibus et dictis, licet dispariter et dissimiliter, optimis directe contraria. Pessimum enim est, quod optimo contrarium est. Quantum autem est in dictis peccantibus, unum peccaminum est ipsius Deitatis superessentialiter et supernaturaliter optimæ.[8] Alterum vero Deiformitatis[9] et Deificationis, ex divini radii gratifica participatione essentialiter et naturaliter optimæ, interemptio. Et quia sicut in bonis causa boni melior est suo causato, sic etiam[10] in malis causa mali pejor est suo causato. Manifestum[11] est,[12] quoniam talium pessimorum interemptorum Deiformitatis[13] et Deificationis in ovibus Christi, in ecclesia[14] Dei introductores, ipsis pessimis interemptoribus sunt pejores, Lucifero[15] et Antichristo proximiores. Et in hac pejoritate gradatim, quanto[16] magis superexcellentes, qui ex majore et diviniore potestate sibi divinitus in ædificationem, non in destructionem tradita, magis tenentur ab ecclesia Dei tales interemptores pessimos excludere et extirpare. Non potest igitur sanctissima sedes apostolica, cui a Sancto Sanctorum Domino Jhesu Christo tradita est potestas omnimoda, testante apostolo, "in ædificationem, non[1] in destructionem,"[2] aliquid vergens in hujusmodi peccatum, Domino Jhesu Christo tam odibile, detestabile et[3] abominabile,[4] et humano generi summe penetrabile,[5] vel mandare vel præcipere, vel quoquo modo ad aliquid tale conari. Hoc enim esset suæ potestatis evidenter sanctissimæ et plenissimæ vel defectio, vel corruptio, vel abusio, et a throno gloriæ Domini[6] nostri[7] Jhesu Christi omnimodo[8] elongatio, et in cathedra pestilentiæ pœnarum gehennalium duobus prædictis tenebrarum principibus proxima coassessio. Nec potest quis immaculata et sincera obedientia eidem sedi subditus et fidelis, et a corpore Christi et eadem sede sancta per scisma non ab[scissus],[9] hujusmodi[10] mandatis vel præceptis, vel quibuscunque conaminibus[11] undecunque emanantibus, etsi[12] a supremo angelorum ordine,[13] obtemperare, sed necesse habet totis viribus contradicere[14] et rebellare. Propter hoc, reverendi domini, ego ex debito obedientiæ et fidelitatis, qua[15] teneor utrique[16] parenti apostolicæ sedis[17] sanctissimæ, et ex amore unionis in corpore Christi cum ea, hiis, quæ in prædicta littera continentur, et maxime quia,[18] ut[19] prætactum, peccatum Domino Jhesu Christo abominabilissimum et humano generi perniciossimum evidentissime vergunt, et apostolicæ sedis sanctitati omnino adversantur, et contrariantur catholicæ fidei[20] unicæ,[21] filialiter et obedienter non obedio, contradico, et rebello. Nec ob hoc potest inde[22] [vestra][23] discretio quicquam durum contra me statuere, quia omnis mea in hac parte

---

[1] *officii*] officio, Cheth.

[2] *ministerii*] ministerio, Lu., after which is inserted, *vivificandas et salvandas, pastoralis officii et ministerii*, and so in Cheth.

[3] *evidentissimis*] evidentissime, Cheth.

[4] *vivificandarum et salvandarum*] vivificandas et salvandas, et, Cott. *marg.*, with the various reading, *vel darum* noted.

[5] *vivificandarum . . . comparant*] In lieu of these words, Luard has, *suis carnalibus et temporalibus desisideriis et necessitatibus prospiciunt, et pastoralis officii ministeria in æternam Christi ovium salutem operandum*, with which Cheth. agrees, except in reading *pastoralia officia et ministeria*, and omitting *Christi* and *debita*.

[6] *sed*] Interlined in Cott. Om. Lu.

[7] *est*] Om. B. and Cott.

[8] *optimæ*] optimæ vilipensio, Lu.

[9] *Deiformitatis*] deformitatis, MS. and B. E., Cheth., and so first written in Cott.

[10] *etiam*] et, B. *sec. m.*, Cott., Cheth., and Lu.

[11] *Manifestum*] Manifestissimum, Lu.

[12] *est*] Om. B.; est igitur, Cott.

[13] *Deiformitatis*] deformitatis, MS. and B. E., Cheth., and so originally in Cott.

[14] *ecclesia*] ecclesiam, Lu.

[15] *Lucifero*] et Lucifero, Cott. at first, but erased, and so Lu.

[16] *quanto*] Om. Cheth. and Lu.

A.D. 1253.

---

[1] *non*] et non, Lu.

[2] 2 Cor. x. 8.

[3] *et*] Om. Lu.

[4] *abominabile*] abhominabile, MS.

[5] *penetrabile*] So Cott. in text, but *perneciabile* in marg.; *pervitabile*, Cheth.; *pernecabile*, Lu.

[6] *Domini*] Om. Lu.

[7] *nostri*] Om. Cott. and Lu.

[8] *omnimodo*] omnimoda, Cott.; summa, Lu.

[9] *abscissus*] ab, MS. and B. E. and Cott. Corrected from Cheth. and Lu.; and so in ed. Wats.

[10] *hujusmodi*] On an erasure in Cott. Om. Cheth.

[11] *conaminibus*] aliis conaminibus, Lu.

[12] *etsi*] etiam si, Cott. and Lu.; si, Cheth.

[13] *ordine*] ordine eveniret, Lu.

[14] *contradicere*] totum contradicere, Lu.

[15] *qua*] quo, Cott. and Lu.

[16] *utrique*] ut utrique, Lu.

[17] *sedis*] sedi, Lu.

[18] *quia*] quæ, Cheth.

[19] *ut*] in, Cott., Cheth. and Lu.

[20] *fidei*] unitati, Lu.

[21] *unicæ*] Om. Lu.

[22] *inde*] Om. Cott.

[23] *vestra*] Supplied from Cott., Cheth. and Lu.

A.D. 1253. et contradictio[1] et actio nec contradictio est nec rebellio, sed filialis divino mandato debita patri et matri honoratio. Breviter autem recolligens dico, apostolicæ sedis sanctitas non potest, nisi quæ in ædificationem sunt et non[2] destructionem. Hæc est enim potestatis plenitudo, omnia posse in ædificationem. Hæ[3] autem quas vocant[4] Provisiones, non sunt in ædificationem, sed in manifestissimam[5] destructionem. Non igitur eas potest beata sedes apostolica attemptare, "quia[6] caro et sanguis, quæ regnum Dei non possidebunt, eas revelavit, et non Pater Domini nostri Jhesu Christi, qui est in cœlis."[7]

Finita est epistola episcopi.

Anger of the pope on receiving this letter. Cum vero ista littera ad notitiam papalem perveniret, ipse papa non se capiens præ ira, ipsum[8] cogitavit in tantam confusionem præcipitare, ut toti mundo stupor foret et exemplum formidabile; sed tamen consilio cardinalium emollitus, sub dissimulatione permisit transire, ne super hoc tumultus excitaretur.

Obiit Ranulfus, abbas Rameseye.

14 Aug. Death of Ralph, abbat of Ramsey. In vigilia vero Assumptionis obiit venerabilis abbas Ranulphus, Rameseye, domum suam bonis tam spiritualibus quam temporalibus abundantem, tempore tunc messis regalibus relinquens diripiendam.[9]

De desponsatione sororis regis Hyspaniæ Edwardo, filio regis.

Espousals of the sister of the king Misit rex nuncios solempnes ad regem Hispaniæ, videlicet episcopum Bathoniensem, et Johannem Man-

---

[1] *contradictio*] dictio, Cott. and Lu.

[2] *non*] non in, Lu.

[3] *Hæ*] Hee, MS.

[4] *quas vocant*] quæ vocantur, Cheth.

[5] *manifestissimam*] manifestam, E. and Cheth.

[6] *quia*] etenim, Lu.

[7] Adapted from Matt. xvi. 17. In Cott. is added at the end, in red letters, "*Hæc omnia asseruit idem episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus se posse sustinere et probare confidenter contra omnes mundi hæreticos, necnon et falsos Christianos.*"

[8] *ipsum*] ipsum mittentem, E.

[9] *diripiendam*] dirripiendam, MS.

A.D. 1253. of Spain to prince Edward.

sel, clericum suum specialem, ut ejus fœdus et amicitiam postularent, et sororem suam uterinam Edwardo, filio suo primogenito et heredi legitimo, matrimonialiter peterent copulandam. Ipse autem rex Angliæ Wasconiam memorato filio suo concesserat, quod non discrepat[1] a concessione facienda prædictæ puellæ præfato E[dwardo] maritandæ. Postulabat autem idem rex Hispaniæ præsentiam Edwardi sibi exhiberi, ut eum, prout tantum decuit adolescentem, cingulo donaret militari, et eorum satisfaceret,[2] prout expediret, petitioni.

Episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus infirmatus taliter conqueritur de statu ecclesiæ.

Complaint of the bp. of Lincoln, on his death-bed, respecting the state of the church.

Diebus sub eisdem episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus apud Bugeden, manerium suum, decubuit graviter infirmatus. Qui in spiritu prænoscens tribulationem ecclesiæ in proximo ingruere, vocavit ad se fratrem fol. 156 *b.* Johannem de Ordine Prædicatorum, scilicet magistrum Johannem de Sancto Egidio, in arte medicinali peritum, et in theologia lectorem. Recitansque facta quædam Romanorum, eum graviter redarguit et confratres suos, necnon et Minores, eo quod Ordo eorum in paupertate voluntaria constituitur, ut liberius vitia potentum acriter reprehendant. In hoc autem, quod ipsi peccata magnatum audacter non redarguunt, eosdem hæreticos dixit manifestos. Interrogans insuper eundem fratrem, "Quid esset hæresis?" et ille hæsitasset, autenticam non recolens diffinitionem, dixit episcopus, "Hæresis est sententia humano sensu electa, Scripturæ Sacræ contraria, palam edocta, pertinaciter defensa. Hæresis enim Græce, electio Latine." Et consequenter reprehendens prælatos, et maxime Romanos, subjunxit, "Dare curam animarum parvulo, sententia est alicujus

¶ *Nota diffinitionem hæresis a Græco sumptam.*

---

[1] *discrepat*] descrepat, MS.

[2] *satisfaceret*] sat'fac'et, MS.

A.D. 1253. prælati, humano sensu electa propter carnem vel teneritatem. Et est contraria Scripturæ Sacræ, quæ prohibet fieri pastores, qui non sunt idonei ad arcendum lupos. Et est palam edocta, quia manifeste portatur carta sigillata. Et est pertinaciter defensa, quia si quis voluerit contradicere, suspenditur, excommunicatur. Cui autem tota diffinitio hæresis convenit, hæreticus est. Sed quisque fidelis tenetur opponere se hæretico, quantum potest. Qui ergo potest contradicere, et non contradicit, peccat, et videtur fautor esse, secundum illud Gregorii, 'Non caret scrupulo societatis occultæ, qui manifesto facinori desinit obviare.' Sed vos fratres maxime obligamini ad oppositionem contra talem, cum habeatis ex officio gratiam prædicandi, et per paupertatem liberiores injustis resistendi. Quia,

'Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator.'"[1]

Hæc et alia multa lugubria proposuit idem episcopus coram clericis suis et aliis ante mortem graviter infirmatus, de cotidianis adhuc condolens ecclesiæ oppressionibus, et maxime earum fautoribus. Quæ qui plenius voluerit perspicere, alibi poterit invenire.[2]

De morte ejus et signis apertis.[3]

9 Oct.

Miraculous signs accompanying his death.

Migravit igitur ab hujus mundi exilio sanctus Robertus, Lincolniensis episcopus, apud Bugedene, in nocte sancti Dionisii, domini papæ et regis redargutor manifestus, prælatorum correptor, monachorum corrector, presbiterorum director, clericorum instructor, scolarium sustentator, populi prædicator, incontinentium persecutor, scripturarum sedulus perscrutator diversarum, Romanorum malleus et contemptor. In mensa refectionis corporalis, dapsilis, copiosus et civilis,

---

[1] Juv. Sat. x. 22.

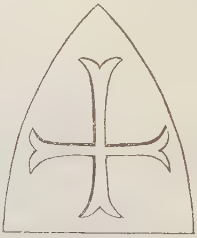
[2] See B. and ed. Wats, pp. 874–876.

[3] A mitre and crosier reversed are drawn in the margin.

A.D. 1253.

hilaris et affabilis; in mensa vero spirituali, devotus, lacrimabilis, et contritus; in officio pontificali, sedulus, venerabilis et infatigabilis. In qua nocte episcopus Londoniensis F[ulco], cum non esset procul a Bugedene, audivit, ut dicitur, signum magnum dulcissimum in sullimi pulsari. Fratres etiam Minores, illuc properantes, audierunt in sullimi classicum melicum campanarum, inter quas unum signum electum et dulcissimum articulatim audierunt. Quo mirabili ulterius ab utrisque propalato, cognoverunt verius illam horam esse, qua episcopus prædictus feliciter migravit a corpore.[1]

Moritur Willelmus de Wescy, de parte boreali.[2]



Scutum Willelmi de Wescy.

Death of William de Vescy.

Post transitum vero domini regis, mortui sunt de suis quamplures. Inter quos Willelmus de Wescy, miles quidam de nobilioribus borealium partium Angliæ baronibus, viam universæ carnis ingressus est. Rex autem incontinenti custodiam tantam cuidam alienigenæ contulit possidendam.

Discordia inter archiepiscopum et capitulum Lincolniense.

Quarrel between the abp. of Canterbury and the chapter of Lincoln.

Ipsis quoque diebus orta est discordia inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et capitulum Lincolniense. Vendicabat enim archiepiscopus potestatem conferendi præbendas et redditus in episcopatu Lincolniensi, pastore suo viduato. Illi vero canonici et clerici multi, consuetudini approbatæ innitentes et certi contradice-

---

[1] In the margin is this mark of reference ☽+☾, but there is no corresponding marginal note or addition.

[2] In the lower margin is drawn his shield of arms, reversed, *viz.*, gules, a cross patonce argent. The same shield is drawn by the hand of Matth. Paris in B., fol. 279.

A.D. 1253. bant; unde eos et omnes contradictores archiepiscopus excommunicavit. Sed a magistro Willelmo Lupo,[1] eidem in faciem contradicente, appellatum est. Quo Romam adeunte, dominus papa misertus super hoc, providit remedium. Quo iterum, nacta spe meliori, redeunte, mors dicitur triumphare.

Appeal to the pope by William Lupus.

Nata est Katerina, filia regis.

Birth of the princess Katherine. 25 Nov.

Regina Angliæ Alienora Londoniis peperit filiam suam. Quæ die sanctæ Katerinæ nata, et ab archiepiscopo baptizata, nomen sortita est Katerina.

Discordia inter scolares et fratres Parisius.

Disagreement between the University of Paris and the Friars Preachers.

Suborta est tunc discordia magna inter universitatem Parisiacensem et fratres Prædicatores, qui in tantum multiplicati sunt et exaltati, ut approbatis consuetudinibus et juribus scolarium renuissent subjacere. Scolares igitur, destinatis nunciis discretissimis, et articulis contra fratres compositis, Romanam curiam super hoc certificarunt; fratres vero e contra miserunt. Effusa igitur multa pecunia, et labore hinc inde consumpto, mutatis consuetudinibus quibusdam, pax reformata est.

De miraculis in ecclesia Lincolniensi.

Miracles in the church of Lincoln.

Miracula miraculis diatim in ecclesia Lincolniensi cumulantur, et, operante Domino pro episcopo Roberto, alii sancti, qui in ecclesia eadem requiescunt, videlicet sancti Remigius et Hugo, ad beneficia suscitantur impendenda. Hic vero Robertus canonicos suos, scilicet Lincolnienses, multum vexavit, et in religiosos terribiliter, religiosas terribilius fulguravit, zelum

Severity of Robert, bp. of Lincoln, in his lifetime.

---

[1] In B. he is styled "Lincolniensis archidiaconus." See Fasti, ii. 43.

bonum habens. Confidenter autem dico, quod plus Deo placuerunt ejus virtutes, quam displicuerunt excessus; sicut in David et in Petro, plus valuit in David[1] mansuetudo, quam viluit facta Uriæ proditio. In Petro trina negatio reprehenditur, sed tamen princeps apostolorum consecratur.[2] A.D. 1253.

Annalis conclusio.

Annual summary. Transiit igitur annus ille satis frugifer et fructifer, ita scilicet, ut summa frumenti ad pretium xxx. descenderet denariorum. Sed in quantum terra profuit, mare obfuit, suos terminos transcendendo. Quod quia repente superundavit, multos homines et pecora occupavit, et si nocte evenisset, multo plures submersisset. Annus iste Terræ Sanctæ extitit exitialis; Flandriæ et confinibus ejus cruentissimus; Franciæ dampnosus et probrosus; Papæ et papalibus arctus et angarialis; Angliæ turbulentus; in spiritualibus temporalibusque bonis inclinativus.[3]

---

[1] *David*] Davit, MS.

[2] Here ends MS. C.C.C.C., No. XVI. (marked B.), as printed from in Edd. See Preface to vol. i. p. lx.

[3] In the corner of the lower margin is written by a different but coeval hand, "Nota mirabilia;" but what this refers to is doubtful; perhaps to the miracles in the church of Chichester, which are noticed in B., but omitted in Edd.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS

ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ.

INTRODUCTORY NOTICE.

THE work which follows seems to have been quite unknown to the earlier biographers of Matthew Paris. Leland, Bale, Parker, and Pits pass it over in silence, nor is it noticed at a more recent period by Vossius, Selden, Wats, Blount, Oudin, Nicolson, and others; yet it certainly must have been seen by Joscelin, archbishop Parker's secretary, since he makes use of it in his historical collections in MS. Cott. Vitell. E. XIV. under the years 1245 and 1250; and in the list of English Historians (printed by Hearne at the end of Avesbury) he speaks of it distinctly in the following terms: "Matthæus Parisiensis scripsit Epitome Historiarum, quod vocat 'Ager Sterilis,' vel 'Abbreviatio compendiosa Cronicorum Angliæ,' ab anno incarn. Dom. Millesimo, regnante Ethelredo . . . Perduxit ad annum Domini 1255 inclusive." Joscelin, however, has here committed a singular error in assuming as the actual title of the work a phrase used by the author in a metaphorical sense, at the end of the year 1250, where he writes, "Libellus iste auctori suo *ager sterilis potest merito appellari;* nam sudor in cultura laboriosus, in colligendæ messis tempore commoditatis omnimodæ carentia, filix, spinæ et tribuli, pro fructibus colliguntur. Et 'quid juvat in sterili spargere semen humo?'" Subsequent, also, to the time when the manuscript containing the work had come into the hands of Sir Robert Cotton, it was consulted by Casaubon, who mentions it in a letter written from

London in Feb. 1614, as "brevem Historiam ejusdem Matthæi [Parisiensis], ubi acrius invehitur in Romanum tyrannidem."[1] Later still (in 1657), some extracts were made from the work by Sir James Ware (MS. Add. 4783, fol. 97), who errs with Joscelin in giving it the title of "Ager Sterilis;" and at the close of the 17th century Dr. Thomas Gale had consulted it, as appears by the following note in his handwriting in the manuscript (fol. 946): "Hic desinit Matth. Paris *Historia Minor,* quæ est epitome Majoris, quæ ad 1258 [1259] continuatur." Two faults are here apparent, first in calling this work the *Historia Minor* (and thus confounding it with the *Historia Anglorum*), and then in stating it to be a compendium of the Greater Chronicle, which it certainly is not. To these scanty notices of the work may be added the brief mention made of it in a note to the second edition of Cave's "Scriptorum Ecclesiasticorum Historia Literaria," vol. ii. p. 298, published in 1743,[2] whence, no doubt, Tanner derived the meagre reference made to the Cotton manuscript in his *Bibliotheca,* p. 752. Since his time the work appears to have been almost wholly ignored; and among recent historical writers, Mrs. Everett Green is the only one who has occasionally availed herself of the information it contains.[3] She quotes it, however, either as the work of an anonymous historian, or as the chronicle of Rishanger, which, of course, is an oversight.

---

[1] Is. Casauboni *Epistolæ*, p. 554, ed. 1709.

[2] This edition was edited by the Rev. Dr. Waterland, to whom probably the note is due, which is thus worded: "*Abbreviatio compendiosa Chronicorum Angliæ*, ab ann. 1000 ad ann. 1255, exstat MS. in Bibl. Cotton. sub *Claudio* D. 6, n. 3. Videtur propria Matthæi mana descripta. Vide prologum ad ann. 1251. Denuo continuata ab alio ad finem R. Hen. 3. ibid. sub *Vitellio* D. 2. n. 1." The latter statement is erroneous, since the MS. Vitellius D. II. contains only an abridged transcript of the Royal MS. 14 C. vii., made in 1565. See Pref. to Vol. i. p. lxx.

[3] *Lives of the Princesses of England*, vol. i. pp. 98, 197, 288, 392; vol. ii. pp. 74, 173, ed. 1849.

Only one manuscript of the "Abbreviatio Chronicorum" is known to exist, which is the author's original copy, and which would appear to have never been subsequently transcribed. It is preserved in the Cottonian collection, under the press-mark Claudius D. VI., and has been bound up with other historical works, composed by monks of the abbey of St. Alban in the 14th century.[1] It is a small folio, written on vellum in double columns, and contains 215 leaves, of which the Chronicle of Matthew Paris occupies eighty-six. Prefixed to the work are some historical *prolegomena* in the author's handwriting, as follows:—

a. A short introduction to the articles which follow, beginning, "Anglia habet in longitudine," occupying only a column. At the top of the page are drawn two circular schemes, in one of which is represented a monarch seated, holding a book (probably meant for Offa), and the other is divided into seven compartments, intended to contain the names of the seven kingdoms of the Heptarchy, but not filled up. In the corner of one is written, "Cenobium sc̃i Albani." . . . . . . fol. 1 *b.*

b. A series of coloured figures of thirty-two sovereigns of Britain, from Brutus to Henry III., seated under ornamented arches, four in a page. The pages are divided into columns by triple coloured vertical bands, and this peculiarity is continued throughout the chronicle. The names of the sovereigns were originally added to each in the margins, but many have been cut off by the binder, and are now replaced in the handwriting of Sir Robert Cotton. . . . . ff. 2–5 *b.*

These figures should be compared with the similar ones prefixed to the *Historia Anglorum* in MS. Reg. 14 C. vii.

---

[1] See an account of these works in Riley's Introduction to *Willelmi Rishanger Chronica*, pp. xvi–xviii.

c. Short Genealogical history from Alfred to the children of Henry III., in a more abridged form than in MS. Coll. Corp. Chr. Camb. No. xxvi. . . . . ff. 6 *b*–8.

d. Map of England, Wales, and Scotland. . . . fol. 8 *b.*

This is badly engraved by Gough in his *British Topography,* 1780, vol. i., pl. iv., and described with many blunders, pp. 68–71. He speaks of it as "the completest map of Great Britain for the period." A small portion has been cut off by the binder, but the names can be supplied from the similar map in MS. Cott. Julius D. VII., fol. 50 *b.*

On the next leaf commences the Compendious Chronicle of Matthew Paris now first printed, which is arranged in the form of Annals, with the years noted in the margin. The text is in the author's autograph to the end of the year 1252 (fol. 57), and the continuation for the years 1253, 1254, and part of 1255 (where the work ends abruptly in the middle of a paragraph) is in the hand of a contemporary monk of St. Alban's, but executed under the eye of the author.[1]

In the 16th century this volume appears to have belonged to one Richard Hatton, whose name is written at the bottom of fol. 5 *b.*, with the words, "Renuncio pape cum suis." It was subsequently in the possession of John Stowe (as appears by some extracts from it in 1575 among his Collectanea, MS. Harl. 545, fol. 186), and after his death it passed, with other of his manuscripts, into the library of Sir Robert Cotton.

The title prefixed to this work was probably borrowed by Matthew Paris from the shorter history of Diceto.[2] In the portion preceding A.D. 1067, the text is partly based on Wendover, but much abbreviated, with additions from Henry of Huntingdon, and other sources. The rest of the work, to the year 1253 inclusive, has been undoubtedly abridged from the *Historia Anglo-*

---

[1] See Pref. to vol. i. p. li.

[2] See note in Pref. vol. i. p. x.

rum, but with numerous alterations and insertions. Some of these are taken from the *Chronica Majora* (references to which, under various titles, are frequently made), but the majority contain new and interesting matter, or give us the opinions of the writer in regard to the conduct of the Sovereign and the affairs of the Roman Court, which it is useful and instructive to compare with those expressed in his other writings. In the last two years, 1254 and 1255, the Greater Chronicle is closely followed.

Although certainly in the handwriting of Matthew Paris, the text exhibits numerous instances of carelessness (as pointed out in the foot-notes), and has never received the author's customary and final revision. Instances of verbal inaccuracies, omissions, and repetitions occur throughout, of which it is sufficient here to refer to those which occur under the years 1053, 1098, 1123, 1125, 1142, and 1201. These errors, however, do not at all detract from the historical value of the work, or from the confidence we should place in the general good faith and accuracy of the historian.

In printing the text of this Chronicle, it has been judged advisable to omit such passages as are verbally the same with the *Historia Anglorum,* and their absence is indicated by *dots.* References are also added in the margin to the printed pages of the latter work, in which the omitted portions occur.

It is also desirable to point out (with greater precision than was indicated in the Preface to vol. i. p. xxiii. note [1]), that the text of the present work has been verbally copied into the original MS. of the *Flores Historiarum,* falsely attributed to "Matthew of Westminster," from the words "Comes Ricardus cum maxima gloria," in 1250 (vol. iii. p. 311), to the end of the year 1255.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS

ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ.

fol. 9 *a.* *Hæc est Abbreviatio compendiosa Cronicorum Angliæ, ab anno Incarnationis Dominicæ millesimo, regnante Etheldredo, fratre Sancti Edwardi, regis et martiris.*

Millesimo. Rex Etheldredus duxit in uxorem Emmam, filiam consulis Normannorum, quem Ducem appellamus, regum piissimus et imbellis, prole felicissimus. Marriage of Æthelred.

M°. primo. Inventus est sanctus Yvo episcopus in partibus orientalibus oriundus, in loco qui non multum distat ab Huntendonia; et translatum est sanctum corpus ejus ad nobile cœnobium Rameseiæ, punito abbate[1] illepido per ocream. Hujus tumba ultro recepit oblationem compatriotarum suorum, miraculose aperta. Invention of St. Ivo.

M°.II°. Angli die uno, hora una, propter oppressiones, quas sustinuerunt intolerabiles, duces qui erant in Anglia tirannizantes trucidaverunt immunitos, scilicet, Dacos. Slaughter of the Danes.

M°.III°. Wilfricus[2] episcopus,[3] vir eximiæ sanctitatis, cœnobium de Burtona fundavit. Daci quoque ira succensi venerunt Burton abbey founded.

---

[1] This is an error, which occurs also in A. C. D., and is copied in the *Flores Historiarum*, ascribed falsely to Matthew of Westminster. For *abbate* we should read *præposito*, as appears by the *Vita S. Ivonis*, compiled by Gocelin in the 11th century, in MS. Cott. Tib. D. III. fol. 242 b., and in the Acta SS. vol. ii. p. 289. The name of the præpositus was *Elnothus*, and that of the abbat *Ednothus*, the similarity of which probably caused the mistake.

[2] *Wilfricus*] Wilfridus, MS., corrected from A. C. D.

[3] *episcopus*] This is a mistake. The founder of Burton abbey was Wulfric Spott. See Monasticon, vol. iii. pp. 32, 39.

Conflicts with the Danes. Eadric Streone.

in Angliam. Multi Daci et Angli in prœlio ceciderunt. Rex Anglorum Ætheldredus ducatum Merciorum Eadrico proditori, cognomento[1] Stroine, dedit.

Arrival of Sweyn.

M°.IIII°. Suein Dacus venit cum innumera multitudine barbarorum, qui omnia feraliter vastans in Anglia ferro et flamma, iram Dei et beati Edmundi, regis et martiris, sibi coacervavit, prout rei exitus comprobavit. Johannes sedit in cathedra Romana annis v.[2]

John XVIII. pope.

Henry II. emperor.

Great famine.

M°.V°. Henricus Romanum adeptus imperium, imperavit annis xxii.[3] Daci, Martis vexati sollicitudinibus, repatriarunt. Fames quoque maxima Angliam invasit, quantam se nullus meminit prævidisse.

Murder of duke Æthelstan.

M°.VI°. Eadricus proditor ducem nobilem Ethelstanum[4] proditiose interemit. Rex Etheldredus, pacificus et imbellis, a Dacis pecunia pacem redemptam optinuit. Jussu regis, duo filii dicti proditoris, in ultionem paterni facinoris, excæcantur.

Treaty with the Danes.

M°.VII°. Angli cum Dacis conventionem fecerunt, et ad pacis observationem triginta milia librarum esterlingorum sunt statuta. Venerat namque Suanus, rex Danorum, omnia exterminans; qui tandem, ultore beato Edmundo, rege et martire, periit interemptus.

A fleet raised.

M°.VIII°. Rex Etheldredus, anno regni sui tricesimo, fecit parari per totam Angliam ex trecentis et decem hidis unam navem, et ex octo hidis loricam et galeam, in spem animatus.

Sergius IV. pope.

Ælmar bishop of Selsey.

M°.IX°. Annis duobus et mensibus novem, Sergius sedit in cathedra Romana.[5] Defuncto Sireburnensi[6] episcopo, Ælmarus successit.

Fresh arrival of Danes.

M°.X°. Novus Danorum exercitus[7] in Angliam veniens, incendiis vacat et rapinis.

---

[1] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[2] John XVIII. was pope from 25 Dec. 1003 to June 1009. See Jaffé, "Regesta Pontificum," p. 348.

[3] Henry II. reigned from June 1002 to July 1024. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 14.

[4] *Ethelstanum*] So also in Wendover, i. 437; but *Ælfhelm* in Flor. Wig. i. 158, ed. Thorpe.

[5] Sergius IV. held the see from July 1009 to July 1012. Jaffé, p. 350.

[6] *Sireburnensi*] So also in Wendover, i. 438, and A. C. D. (where he is named Brihtric), but in Flor. Wig. i. 162, we have *Sælesiensi*, which is the correct reading. See "Fasti Eccles. Anglicanæ," i. 237, ed. Hardy.

[7] *exercitus*] excercitus, MS. throughout, and this orthography is used in all the other cases of the word.

fol. 9 *b*. M°.XI°. Daci debacchantes[1] in Anglia, multos sanctos peremerunt martires, confessores exilio et carcere condempnarunt.[2] Passus est sanctus Ælphegus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, a Danis excerebratus, tempore Paschali. Almarus, abbas Sancti Augustini, abire permittitur. Multi passi sunt pro Christo.

Many holy men slain. Death of archbishop Ælfeah.

M°.XII°. Ætheldredus cum exercitu Dacorum pacem fecit, dans eis septem[3] milia librarum argenti. In villa quadam Saxoniæ chorea in vigilia Nativitatis Domini, in cimiterio Sancti Magni, martiris, miraculose continuatur.

Peace with the Danes. Miraculous dance in Saxony.

M°.XIII°. Suanus Dacus tirannus totam Angliam sibi subjugavit, rege Ætheldredo fugiente in Normanniam.

Sweyn conquers England.

M°.XIIII°. Suanus,[4] vindice beato Edmundo, confossus lancea de nocte, subita nece miraculose peremptus est. Rex Ætheldredus in Angliam remeavit.

Death of Sweyn.

M°.XV°. Cnuto, rex Danorum, in Angliam veniens, omnia obstantia flamma, cædibus et rapinis vastabat. Veniensque Oxoniam, et magno ibi facto concilio, mandavit rex multos Dacorum nobiles,[5] consilio iniquo[6] ducis Eadrici, trucidari.

Arrival of Cnut.

M°.XVI°. Rex Ætheldredus in fata concessit, cui successit Ædmundus filius suus,[7] cognomento[8] Ireneside. Hic, anno regni sui primo, septies strenue contra Cnud pugnavit, triumphans gloriose; ultimo vero singulari duello Cnutonem fatigatum sibi conciliavit. Tandem ignominiosa proditione et morte periit.

Death of Æthelred. Ædmund Ironside.

M°.XVII°. Cnuto Danus totam Angliam occupavit, filios Edmundi regis et alios nobiles Angliæ, et ex antiqua clara stirpe, exilio dampnavit.

Cnut obtains the whole of England.

M°.XVIII°. Cnuto Emmam, Normannicam natione,[9] relictam regis Ætheldredi, caute ducit in uxorem; et sic nobilitatem Anglicanam sibi prudenter inclinavit. Piis operibus insistens, ecclesias fundavit, elemosinas indulsit, hostes ed[omuit].[10]

His marriage to queen Emma.

---

[1] *debacchantes*] debacantes, MS.

[2] *Daci . . . . condempnarunt*] Added by Matthew Paris in the lower margin.

[3] *septem*] octo, Hen. Hunt. p. 754, ed. Petrie, but the correct reading is *xlviii°*., as in Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., and Wendover. In the latter the payment is entered under A.D. 1011.

[4] *Suanus*] Suan, MS.

[5] *nobiles*] nobile, MS.

[6] *iniquo*] iniqua, MS.

[7] *filius suus*] These words are repeated, by error.

[8] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[9] *natione*] nascione, MS.

[10] *Piis . . . . . hostes ed*[*omuit*] Added in the lower margin, but the concluding word has been partly cut off by the binder.

Cnut returns to Denmark. Æthelric bishop of Selsey.

M°.XIX°. Cnuto, rex Anglorum et Danorum, transfretans in Daciam, ibidem disposuit regni negotia hiemando. Eodemque anno, defuncto Æthelmaro, Selesiensi[1] episcopo, Etheldricus successit.

Monastery of St. Edmund founded.

M°.XX°. Cnuto cœnobium Sancti Ædmundi, regis et martiris, ampliavit et locupletavit; et ibidem monachos sub abbate, secundum regulam sancti Benedicti, Deo militare constituit.

Tax imposed by Cnut.

M°.XXI°. Cnuto fecit per Angliam mirabilem extorquendo censum colligi, scilicet, lxxii. milia librarum argenti, præter xx.,[2] quos Londonienses dederunt;[3] sed pœnitens postea, cum vidisset terram patere discrimini, peccatum restitutione et elemosinis expiavit. Domum quoque Sancti Benedicti de Ulmo fundavit.

St. Benet Holm founded.

Laws of king Edward confirmed.

M°.XXII°. Cnuto leges antiquas tenendas inviolabiliter constituit, regis scilicet Edwardi Primi. Et scriptæ sunt in Latino, et in lingua Anglica et Danica, ad auctoritatem.

Translation of St. Ælpheah.

M°.XXIII°. Corpus beati Ælphegi, archiepiscopi et martiris, Cantuariam delatum est. fol. 10 *a*.

Wilfric archbishop of York.

M°.XXIIII°. Cnuto rex multos suorum amisit in bello. Defuncto Wlstano,[4] archiepiscopo Eboracensi, Wilfricus[5] successit. Rex Cnuto, propter victoriam quam sibi Angli adquisierant, eos[6] cœpit amplius honorare.

Endowment of the abbey of Winchester.

M°.XXV°. Cnuto, hortatu Emmæ reginæ, vetus monasterium Wintoniæ tanta munificentia[7] ditavit, ut animos et oculos intuentium ad laudes, propter decorem constructionis, invitaret.

Reverence paid to the tomb of St. Edmund. Abbeys of Holm founded.

M°.XXVI°. Cnuto magnam reverentiam circa sepulchrum beati Edmundi regis, prædecessoris sui, exhibuit. In cujus ecclesia conventum monachorum constituit sub abbate, Deo militare. Abbatiam de Ulmo in Anglia constituit, aliam in Norwegia.[8]

---

[1] *Selesiensi*] Selenesensi, MS.

[2] *xx.*] Written on an erasure.

[3] This tax is mentioned in the Saxon Chronicle, Flor. Wig., Hen. Hunt., and Wendover under the year 1018, and the sum paid by the Londoners is variously stated at 10,500 and 11,000 pounds.

[4] *Wlstano*] Wistano, MS. Wulstan II. died 28 May 1023. Fasti, iii. 96.

[5] *Wilfricus*] Wisfricus, MS. His real name was Ælfric. See *postea*, under A.D. 1052.

[6] *eos*] Added in marg.

[7] *munificentia*] munifentia, MS.

[8] *Norwegia*] Norwegiam, MS.

Defeat of king Olaf.

M°.XXVII°. Cnuto rex cum quinquaginta puppibus Norwegiam hostiliter adiit, regem Olafum fugavit, regnumque cepit,[1] et tota vita sua retinuit.

Olaf is expelled.

M°.XXVIII°. Cnuto Norwagenses in amicitiam sibi studet conciliare. Regem Olaphum victum a regno expulit; qui redierato[2] effugavit; sicque victor rediit in Angliam.

Cnut goes to Rome.

M°.XXIX°. Cnud Romam pompose[3] perrexit,[4] ubi elemosinam, quæ Romescot dicitur, et quam Offa rex, fundator nobilis cœnobii Anglorum prothomartiris Albani, præconcesserat, confirmavit.

Monks placed in St. Benet Holm and St. Benet in Norway.

M°.XXX°. Cnud in ecclesia Sancti Benedicti de Ulmo, jam perfecta, monachos secundum regulam sancti Benedicti sub abbate, Deo militare constituit. Similiter aliam in Norwegia ecclesiam Sancti Benedicti fundavit, et monachos instituit, quas[5] sequenti anno plus locupletavit.

Dedication of St. Benet in Norway.

Cnut leaves off his crown.

M°.XXXI°. Cnud ecclesiam cœnobialem Sancti Benedicti in Norwegia fecit sollempniter[6] valde dedicari. Humiliatus[7] et considerans humanam fragilitatem, et maxime propriam, abdicavit coronam portare, pro eo quod mare intumens præcepto suo non obedivit.[8] Contra Edmundum Yreneside singulari duello dimicans, caute pacificatus est.[9]

Dedication of the ch. of St. Edmund.

18 Oct.

M°.XXXII°. Dedicata est ecclesia Beati Ædmundi, regis et martiris, cum nobili qua decuit solempnitate, in honorem beatæ Dei Genitricis Mariæ et sancti Edmundi, xv. kalendas Novembris.

Road made in the marsh of

M°.XXXIII°. Cnud a Romana curia revertitur; viam in marisco, multiplicatis fossoribus, quæ Kingesdelf[10] dicitur, cru-

---

[1] In Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., Hen. Hunt., and Wendover, placed under the year 1028.

[2] *qui redierato*] So in MS., and evidently an error. Perhaps we should read, *qui redierat, iterato.* Olaf's return to Norway took place in 1030, when he was slain by his own people. See Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., and Hen. Hunt.

[3] *pompose*] ponpose, MS.

[4] Cnut's journey is placed by Flor. Wig., Hen. Hunt., and Wendover under the year 1031.

[5] *quas*] Refers to *ecclesias,* or else we should read *quos.*

[6] *sollempniter*] sollepniter, MS.

[7] *Humiliatus*] Humilatus, MS.

[8] This story is from Wendover, under the year 1035, vol. i. 492, who borrows it from Henry of Huntingdon, p. 757.

[9] This event took place in 1016. See the previous notice under that year, and Wendover, i. 457.

[10] *Kingesdelf*] Kingesdeff, MS. Corrected from A. C. D., which read, "viam in marisco inter Ramesheiam et Burgum, quod Kingesdelf dicitur, ut periculum magnorum stagnorum vitaretur, eruderavit," and so also in the *Flores Hist.,* ascribed to Matth. Westm. p. 209, ed. 1601. See Monasticon, i. 573.

Kingesdelf. His victory over Malcolm king of Scots.

deravit. Eodemque anno contra Scotos rebellantes expeditionem ducens, Malcolmum regem cum duobus aliis regibus levi negotio superavit. Unde gratus Deo pro victoria in senio optenta, religiosis in libertatibus et possessionibus multa contulit beneficia.

Benedict IX. pope. Ædnoth bp. of Dorchester.

M°.XXXIIII°. Benedictus sedit in cathedra Romana annis xiiii.[1] Eodem anno, defuncto Ædrico, Dorkecestrensi episcopo, Ædnothus successit.

Cnut's sons in Denmark and Norway.

M°.XXXV°. Cnuto duos filios suos regnare fecit, unum in Dacia, alterum in Norwegia. fol. 10 *b*.

Regi Cnutoni successit Haraldus rex.

M°.XXXVI°. Rex Cnuto potentissimus, cum regnasset xx. annis, in fata concessit,[2] et sepultus est apud Wintoniam. Haraldus, filius ejus,[3] diadema suscipiens, pro eo regnavit.

Death of Alfred, son of Æthelred.

M°.XXXVII°. Alfredus, Ethelredi primogenitus, proditione comitis Godwini,[4] ignobilis animo et genere, oculorum luce privatus est,[5] nec diu post vixit.

Exile of queen Emma. Eadsi, abp. of Canterbury.

M°.XXXVIII°. Haraldus rex exilio dampnavit[6] nobilem reginam, novercam suam.[7] Æthelnothus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, diem clausit extremum; successit Eadsius.

Hardecnut goes to Flanders. Death of Harald.

M°.XXXIX°. Defuncto Brithmaro,[8] Hardecnutus, rex Danorum, ad Emmam, matrem suam, in Flandriam devectus, cum ipsa apud Berges[9] moram fuit. Eodemque anno obiit Haraldus rex.[10]

---

[1] Benedict IX. was pope from Jan. 1033 to Jan. 1044; again from April 1044 to April 1045; and a third time from Nov. 1047 to July 1048. Jaffé, pp. 359–362.

[2] His death, in Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., and Wendover, is assigned to the year 1035, but Hen. Hunt. and Diceto agree with the date above.

[3] *ejus*] Added in marg.

[4] *Godwini*] Gogwini, MS.

[5] This event is entered under 1036 in Wendover.

[6] *dampnavit*] dapnavit, MS.

[7] Her exile, in Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., and Hen. Hunt., is entered under 1037, and in Wendover under 1035.

[8] The sentence is evidently incomplete, as appears by the text of Wendover, i. 476. Brithmar, bp. of Lichfield, died in 1039, and was succeeded by Wlsi. Fasti, i. 543.

[9] *Berges*] Brigges, Wend. i. 476.

[10] His death is assigned to 1040 in Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., Hen. Hunt., and Wendover.

M°.XL°. Hardecnutus,[1] filius Cnutonis, fratri succedens, coronatus est in regem; cum idem Hardecnutus vix iiii^{or}. annis regnasset, Henricus Romanum adeptus est imperium.[2] Iste etiam Hardecnutus rex corpus regis, fratris sui, defossum in Tamensem projici[3] præcepit.

Haraldo Hardecnutus successit, cui Ædwardus.

M°.XLI°. Hardecnutus rex reddidit exercitui Danorum tributum, scilicet xxi. M. librarum et xcix.;[4] et pro[5] xxii^{bus}.[6] puppibus, M.[7] libr. et xlviii. libr.

Tribute paid to the Danes.

M°.XLII°. Hardecnutus obiit, cui uterinus frater tantum ejus, scilicet Edwardus, confessor sanctus, successit; filius scilicet Ethelredi regis et Emmæ reginæ nobilissimæ, natione Normannicæ.

Death of Hardecnut. Edward the Confessor.

M°.XLIII°. Edsius, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, gravi infirmitate[8] detentus archiepiscopatum resignavit. In cujus loco Sywardus[9] substituitur.

Syward, archbishop of Canterbury.

M°.XLIIII°. Rex Ædwardus, in patrocinium regni sui, filiam Godwini, ditissimi ac potentissimi sed[10] subdolis et ignobilis comitis, nomine Editham, ducit in uxorem. Defuncto Alfrico,[11] Helmhammensi[12] episcopo, Stigandus, regis capellanus, substituitur.

Marriage of Edward to Edith. Stigand, bishop of Elmham.

M°.XLV°. Rex Ædwardus classem magnam sed frustra contra regem Noricorum congregavit. Quia Suanus, rex Danorum, bellum disponit parare contra Angliam.

Fleet collected against the Danes.

M°.XLVI°. Silvester sedit in cathedra Romana. Eodem anno, [Gregorius][13] succedens sedit annis ii., postquam prædecessor ejus S[ilvester] sederat eadem diebus lvi.[14]

Silvester III. antipope. Gregory VI. pope.

---

[1] *Hardecnutus*] Hardecuntus, MS., and so often afterwards.

[2] Henry III. was elected emperor in 1026, but did not succeed till 1039. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 15.

[3] *projici*] proici, MS.

[4] *xcix.*] lxxxix., Hen. Hunt.

[5] *pro*] This word is erroneously written before *xcix.* in MS.

[6] *xxii.*] xxxii., Sax. Chron. and Hen. Hunt.

[7] *M.*] xi. milia, Hen. Hunt., and so Sax. Chron.

[8] *infirmitate*] imfirmitate, MS.

[9] *Sywardus*] At first written *Sawardus*. Syward is omitted in the Fasti, i. 6, but he occurs in 1044 in the Sax. Chron. vol. ii. 134 and as a witness in charters of Edward the Confessor in 1045–6. See *Cod. Diplom. Anglo-Sax.* iv. 94, vi. 197.

[10] *sed*] set, MS., *passim.*

[11] Alfric, bp. of Elmham, died in 1038, according to Flor. Wig. i. 193. See Fasti, ii. 458.

[12] *Helmhammensi*] Belīhāmēsi,MS.

[13] *Gregorius*] Supplied from Wendover, i. 484. He held the see from 1 May 1045 to Dec. 1046. Jaffé, p. 363.

[14] Silvester III. was antipope 49 days, from Feb. to April 1044. Jaffé, p. 362.

Stigand holds two bishoprics.

fol. 11 *a*.

M°.XLVII°. Stigandus duos ex dispensatione papali optinuit episcopatus.[1] Ex tunc Romana curia pecuniæ inclinare cœpit manifeste.

Clement II. pope. Eadred, bp. of Durham.

M°.XLVIII°. Clemens papatum recepit, et rexit mensibus ix. et diebus vi.[2] Defuncto Ædmundo, Dunelmensi episcopo, successit Eadredus.[3]

Damasus II. pope. Leo IX. pope.

M°.XLIX°. Damasus sedit in cathedra Romana diebus xxvi., et obiit; cui eodem anno Leo succedens,[4] sedit annis v. mensibus ii. et diebus vi.[5]

Succession of bishops.

M°.L°. Defuncti sunt episcopi Eadnothus Dorkecestrensis,[6] Siwardus, vicarius Ædsii,[7] Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et, post ipsum, Ædsius. Cui successit Robertus, Londoniensis episcopus, et Roberto Willelmus; ad Dorkecestrensem Ulf, regis capellanus.

M°.LI°.[8]

The Dane-geld abolished. Kinsig, abp. of York. Death of queen Emma.

M°.LII°. Rex Ædwardus a vectigali gravissimo Anglos absolvit, quod, patre vivente, Danis solvi consuevit, scilicet xxxviii. milia librarum. Eodem anno, defuncto Alfrico, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, Kinsius, regis capellanus, successit.[9] Emma quoque regina obiit.

Death of prince [Rhesus] of Wales.

M°.LIII°. Griffinus,[10] frater regis Walensis, rege præstantior, perimitur.[11] Marianus Scotus, veracissimus historiographus, obiit.[13] Comes Godwinus regi rebellis concordatur, et magnatum consilio pristino honori restituitur.

Death of earl Godwin.

M°.LIIII°. Godwinus proditor turpissime de proditione redargutus et, Deo ultore, convictus, obiit.

---

[1] *episcopatus*] Added in marg.

[2] Copied from Wendover, i. 484. Clement II. was pope from 24 Dec. 1046 to 9 Oct. 1047. Jaffé, p. 364.

[3] *Eadredus*] Eadrecus, MS. Wendover places his accession in 1049.

[4] *succedens*] sucedens, MS.

[5] Damasus II. was consecrated 17 July 1048, and died 9 Aug. following. His successor, Leo IX., held the see from Dec. 1048 to April 1054. Jaffé, pp. 366, 367.

[6] *Dorkecestrensis*] Dorkencestris, MS.

[7] *Ædsii*] Ædisii, MS.

[8] This year is left blank in the MS.

[9] These events are placed by Wendover under the year 1051.

[10] *Griffinus*] This is a careless mistake in copying Wendover, i. 492, who has, "Frater Griffini, regis Walanorum, nomine Rhesus;" and so Flor. Wig. i. 211.

[11] *perimitur*] perrimitur, MS.

[12] His death is assigned by Flor. Wig. and Wendover to 1052, but falsely, as he did not die till 1082 or 1083. See Pertz, *Mon. Germ.* v. 484; and cf. *postea*, under A.D. 1082.

M°.LV°. Rex Ædwardus cum ingrederetur thesaurariam suam, ut videret thesaurum suum, vidit diabolum sedentem desuper, quasi totum vendicantem; cum autem audisset rex, quod de collecta et extorsione[1] facta fuisset a pauperibus regni, omnia jussit restitui. Quod pium factum, licet furtum clientis dissimulasset latrunculi; contractum, quem gestavit, sua humilitate curasset; Jesum in manibus sacerdotis sub specie vidisset; septem dormientes se in sinistra latera vertisse contemplatus fuisset; regem Daciæ navem suam ascensurum submersum fuisse asseruisset; et alias multas virtutes in Christi nomine operatus fuisset, in conspectu Domini fuerat acceptissimum. Victor [sedit][2] in cathedra annis ii. et mensibus iii.[3] Nobilis dux Northambrorum Siwardus obiit, cujus ducatum rex Eadwardus Tostio, fratri ducis Haraldi, concessit; comitem vero Algarum exilio dampnavit. Inventa sunt ossa regis et martiris Oswini divina revelatione apud Thinemue, anno a Passione ejus cccc°.xiiii°., v°. idus Martii.[4]

Legends concerning king Edward.

Victor II. pope.

Death of duke Siward.

Exile of earl Algar.

fol. 11 *b*.

M°.LVI°. Ethelstanus, episcopus Herefordensis, perimitur. Cui successit Leovigarus,[5] ducis Haraldi capellanus, vir sanctus et pius. Huic successit[6] Walterus,[7] qui usque ad tempora Willelmi perduravit. Eodem quoque anno Egelricus, Dunelmensis præsul, episcopatu suo sponte resignato, monachus vita et habitu effectus est.[8]

Succession of bishops.

M°.LVII°. Rex Edwardus revocavit ab Hungaria Edgarum Ethelling, nepotem suum, cum sorore sua Margareta, ut post eum regnaret, tanquam heres legitimus; erat enim elegantissimus et præstantissimus.

Edgar Etheling is recalled.

M°.LVIII°. Stephanus Romanam rexit ecclesiam; cui succedens anno eodem Benedictus, novem mensibus, ut prædecessor suus, cathedram gubernavit.[9] Eodemque tempore civis quidam Romanus juvenis liberatus est a dæmone eum vendicante mirabiliter; Historiæ autem docent quomodo.[10]

Stephen X. pope.

Benedict X. pope.

---

[1] *extorsione*] extorsioīe, MS.

[2] *sedit*] Omitted in MS.

[3] Victor II. was pope from Nov. 1054 to July 1057. Jaffé, p. 379.

[4] *Inventa . . . Martii*] Wrongly entered here, but again, more correctly, under 1065.

[5] *Leovigarus*] Leonigarus, MS.

[6] *successu*] successit, MS.

[7] *Walterus*] Willelmus, MS. erroneously, but he is rightly named under 1061. He succeeded in 1060. See Fasti, i. 455.

[8] *Ethelstanus . . . . effectus est*] The whole of this year is written over an erasure.

[9] Stephen X. was pope from Aug. 1057 to March 1058; Benedict X. rom April 1058 to April 1059. Jaffé, pp. 382, 383.

[10] The legend is in Wendover, i. 498, and Malmesbury, i. 355, ed. Hardy.

Capture of duke Harold in Normandy.

M°.LIX°. Cum dux Haroldus in prædio juris sui Boseam perhendinaret, die quadam navem ingressus piscatoriam, mare spaciaturus intravit. Orta igitur subita tempestate, raptus applicuit, etsi invitus, in Pontivum; ubi captus et vinctus Willelmo, duci Normannorum, præsentatus est. Quem Godwinus[1] ita falsis et fallacibus pollicitis fascinavit, ut cum honore multo ad propria remearet. Tradunt autem aliter alii—sed hoc a veritate videtur discrepare—quod videlicet Haroldus a rege Edwardo ad hoc in Normanniam fuerit destinatus, ut ducem Willelmum in Angliam adduceret, quem idem rex heredem sibi constituere cogitavit. Duplicitas autem et fraudulenta mendacia Haroldi[2] hic faciunt hystoriographos in Hystoriis dubitare. Finis autem ejus seriem totius vitæ ejus, Deo ultore, maculavit.

Nicholas II. pope. Succession of bishops.

M°.LX°. Nicholaus[3] sedit in cathedra Romana annis duobus et mensibus vi.[4] Eodem anno Kinsius, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, obiit. Successit Aldredus. Eoque anno, defuncto[5] Deduc, Wellensi episcopo, Gisa successit.

Aldred, abp. of York, returns from Rome.

M°.LXI°. Aldredus, Eboracensis antistes,[6] cum comite Tostio Romam profectus, cum gaudio remeavit; pallium enim a papa Nicholao suscipere meruerat. Ibi etiam consecrati sunt Gisa, fol. 12 *a.* Wellensis episcopus, et Walterus, Herefordensis.

Wulstan, bishop of Worcester.

M°.LXII°. Wlstanus, prior Wigorniensis ecclesiæ, vir magnæ sanctitatis, ad ejusdem ecclesiæ præsulatum consecratus est. Consecratus est autem ab Aldredo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, quia archiepiscopo Stigando officium episcopale tunc fuerat interdictum, pro eo quod, vivente Roberto, illius ecclesiæ archiepiscopo, sibi archipræsulatum occupare præsumpsit.

Expedition of Harold against the Welsh.

M°.LXIII°. Haraldus, Godwini filius, fines Walliæ[7] depopulatur, ut regem Griffinum inquietaret. At Griffinus, ejus adventu præcognito,[8] naves adscendit, et fugiens vix evasit. Haraldus cum illum comperit aufugisse, recessit, et majorem exercitum congregavit. Cui frater ejus Tostius ex mandato regis occurrens, junctis viribus, per terram simul et mare regionem illam depopulari cœperunt. Unde Wallones necessitate compulsi, obsides sibi dederunt, et tributum se regi Edwardo reddituros deinceps promiserunt, regemque suum Griffinum expulerunt.

---

[1] *Godwinus*] An error, copied from Wendover, i. 501, and so also in the pseudo Matthew of Westminster. The name of the count of Ponthieu was *Guido*, as in Malmesb. i. 384.

[2] *Haroldi*] Horaldi, MS. The name is written in the text *Haroldus* and *Haraldus*, indifferently.

[3] *Nicholaus*] Nocholaus, MS.

[4] Nicholas II. was pope from Jan. 1059 to July 1061. Jaffé, p. 384.

[5] *defuncto*] defucto, MS.

[6] *antistes*] antis, MS.

[7] *Walliæ*] Walle, MS.

[8] *præcognito*] precongnito, MS.

Mº.LXIIIIº.[1] Gens Wallensium nonas Augusti, interfecto rege suo Griffino, caput ejus duci Haraldo miserunt. Quod mox Haroldus ad regem Edwardum transmittens, alium Wallensium regem præfecit. Qui Edwardo regi fidelitatem præstito faciens juramento, omnia quæ regibus Anglorum solvi consueverant, ipse fideliter se pensurum spopondit, per insolentiam sui[2] prædecessoris puniti castigatus.

Death of king Griffin of Wales.
5 Aug.

Mº.LXVº. Inventa sunt ossa gloriosi regis et martiris Oswini, revelatione divina apud Thinemue, anno a Passione ejus quadringentesimo quartodecimo, quinto idus Martii.

Invention of St. Oswin.
11 Mar.

Mº.LXVIº. Dedicatum est monasterium Beati Petri Westmonasterii. Sanctus etiam rex Edwardus in vigilia Epiphaniæ pro regno terreno commutavit æternum. Defuncto igitur gloriosissimo rege ac Dei confessore Edwardo, Haraldus, Godwini comitis filius ignobilis et perjurus, statim regnum invasit, seipsum coronavit. Qui cum anno integro nondum regnasset, ab hominibus suis merito derelictus et exosus, spiculo confossus in capite, ultore Deo, apud Hastingum obiit miserabiliter interfectus. Et apud Waltham traditus sepulturæ, quia rex qualisqualis[3] extiterat, et in armis strenuissimus. Willelmus autem cognomento[4] Bastardus, Normannorum dux, tanta potitus victoria, gratus Deo ecclesiam Deo et sancto Martino fundavit, et locupletatam multis possessionibus et libertatibus ampliavit. Castrum quoque, quod festinanter construxerat, Hastingum appellavit, et ecclesiam, quam Bellum appellavit, anno sequenti sollempniter fecit dedicari; ubi jurans et certissime promittens se dilectissimi regis Edwardi leges inviolabiliter observaturum, et vestigia ejus sequendo gentem Anglicanam sincero corde conservatam dilecturum, gratanter ob omnibus est susceptus. Et Londonias veniens, a civibus cunctis est honoratus, et [ab][5] Aldredo, archiepiscopo Eboracensi, apud Westmonasterium coronatus est.

fol. 12 b.

Dedication of St. Peter's, Westminster.
Death of Edward the Confessor.
5 Jan.
Harold's coronation and death.
Battle abbey founded.
Hastings castle built.
Coronation of William.

Mº.LXVIIº. Edgarus Etheling videns regnum Angliæ in præcipiti positum, et cor regis in arcum pravum conversum,

Edgar Etheling goes to Scotland.

---

[1] *Mº.LXIIIIº.*] Mº.XLIIIº., MS., but corr. in margin.

[2] *sui*] Repeated again superfluously after *prædecessoris.*

[3] *qualisqualis*] quaqualis, MS.

[4] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[5] *ab*] Omitted in MS.

navem conscendens, dum conaretur in Hungariam reverti, compulsus[1] est, una cum sorore sua Margareta, in Scocia applicare. Marriage of king Malcolm. Ipsam igitur Margaretam rex Scociæ Malcolmus desponsavit, et de ea filiam genuit, quam Matildem nominavit.

M°.LXVIII°. Natus est . . . . . subjugaret. Eodem anno Hist. Angl. vol. i. p. 11. . . . Northamhumbriæ comitatum. Cui statim homines illius regionis insurgentes, ipsum cum secentis viris suorum peremerunt. Sed rex Willelmus superveniens . . . delevit.

The bp. of Durham imprisoned M°.LXIX°. Episcopus Dunelmensis de proditione accusatus, in villa, quæ Burgum dicitur, captus, ad Westmonasterium ductus est, carcerali custodiæ mancipandus. Eodem vero tempore venerunt filii . . . . ab Anglia aufugarent. Quorum . . . obviam H. A. i. 12. illis Edgarus, filius . . . capere. Tunc fœdere . . . castello occuparunt, et multa hominum milia peremerunt. Inter igitur flumina Vasam[2] et Trentam omnes regionis incolas immisericorditer affligebant. Victory of William. Sed Willelmus superveniens, hostes fugavit, et multos trucidavit. Verumtamen Walthefus comes ibi plures Normannorum solus detruncavit; sed Willelmus multo stipatus milite triumphans, adversariis fugatis, dominabatur. Et sic Edgarus[3] pacem de facili a rege W[illelmo] impetravit.

Spoliation of the monasteries. M°.LXX°. Willelmus, pessimo usus consilio, omnia Anglorum monasteria spolians, calicibus etiam et feretris manifeste jam fol. 13 *a*. perjurus non pepercit. Solus inter omnes Angliæ prælatos Egelwinus, Dunelmensis episcopus, zelum Dei habens, universos ecclesiæ invasores excommunicavit. Abp. Lanfranc consecrated. Lanfrancus, monachus Beccensis, et post abbas Cadomensis, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem consecratur.

Flight of the English nobles. M°.LXXI°. Multi nobiles ex generoso sanguine Britonum et Anglorum oriundi, tirannidem regis Willelmi pejorantis et degenerantis declinantes, loca deserta petierunt, ut laterent. Rex etiam Egelwinum episcopum incarceravit. Rex Francorum Philippus a Roberto comite.[4] Multi Anglici de latibulis[5] Success of William at Ely. Elyensis insulæ cum indignatione prorumpentes, quamplures de Normannis trucidarunt. Rex tandem blandis promissionibus, sed fallacibus, rebelles omnes omnipotentatui suo inclinavit. Hereward. Herewardus tamen præpotens et strenuus, regi valde molestus, nullatenus valuit enervari.

---

[1] *compulsus*] conpulsus, MS.

[2] *Vasam*] Nasam, MS.

[3] *Edgarus*] Egarus, MS.

[4] A verb is here wanting, and the whole paragraph seems out of place. See the Greater Chronicle, under the year 1075, ed. Wats, p. 10.

[5] *latibulis*] latiti, MS., and the last syllable erased.

M°.LXXII°. Rex Willelmus Scociam hostiliter adiens, rebelles ibi superavit quamplurimos. Tandem, accepto regis Scotorum cum obsidibus homagio, in Angliam remeavit. Obiit episcopus Dunelmensis apud Westmonasterium sub custodia, et ibidem est sepultus.

Expedition against the Scots.
Death of the bishop of Durham.

M°.LXXIII°. Invaserunt monachi Sancti Aodoweni Johannem, archiepiscopum Rothomagensem, cum armata manu, cum missam celebraret. Eodemque anno,[1] apud Windelesoram, ex
H. A. i. 17. præcepto Alexandri papæ, rege Willelmo vivente,[2] in . . . . obedire.

John archbishop of Rouen.

M°.LXXIIII°. Beatus Wlstanus per Lamfrancum injuste depositus restituitur; cum baculum pastoralem sepulchro beati Edwardi infixisset, nullus præter eum divellere a lapide potuisset. Gregorius sedit in cathedra Romana annis xii. et iii. diebus. Iste[3] papa, sinodo congregata, symoniacos excommunicavit. Transfertur sedes episcopalis de Selesi[4] apud Cicestriam.[5] Northamhumbrenses episcopum Dunelmensem crudeliter peremerunt. Venitque in Angliam Haco comes, cum Cnutone, filio Suani, ex Dacia. Obiitque Editha regina, et apud Westmonasterium est sepulta.

St. Wulstan restored.
Gregory VII. pope.
See of Selsey transferred to Chichester.
Arrival of the Danes.
Death of queen Edith.

M°.LXXV°. Rex Willelmus jussit Weltheophum, comitem Wintoniæ, decollari, et extra civitatem sepelliri.[6] Rex W[illelmus] et rex Francorum amici facti sunt. Idem rex W[illelmus] in ecclesia Fiscami filiam suam Ceciliam optulit consecrandam.
fol. 13 *b*. Rex W[illelmus] filio Roberto maledixit, eo quod regi Francorum adhærens, prœlium[7] contra eum excitavit; ubi rex pulsus ab equo, graviter vulneratus est. In fine autem anni præcedentis et hujus principio interfectus est episcopus Dunelmensis a comprovincialibus, eo quod nimiam pecuniam extorserat ab eisdem.

Earl Waltheof beheaded.
Peace with France.
Princess Cecily becomes a nun.
William curses his son Robert.
The bp. of Durham killed.

H. A. i. 22. M°.LXXVI°. Rex Willelmus I. cœpit . . . . Francos spoliis eorum saginando, crimen perjurii et suæ promissionis non veritus incurrere; unde quadam . . . cecidit Dunelmensis, sibi paratos vix evasit. Eodemque anno, vi°. kalendas Aprilis
Ibid. i. 23. . . . Quadragesimæ tunc alte perdurans . . . spissitudinem.

---

[1] In *Hist. Angl.* this event is placed under 1072.

[2] *vivente*] vivento, MS.; a mistake for *annuente*.

[3] *Iste*] Inde, MS.

[4] *Selesi*] Selebi, MS.

[5] The transfer of the see took place about the year 1085. See Fasti, i. 238.

[6] *sepelliri*] sepellri, MS.

[7] *prœlium*] prœlium conseruit, MS. which is taken from *Hist. Angl.* i. 21, but here disturbs the sense.

Paul of Caen made abbat of St. Alban's.

Mº.LXXVIIº. Paulus, monachus Cadomensis, archiepiscopi Lamfranci nepos, creatus est in abbatem Sancti Albani; qui fabricam ecclesiæ decenter reformavit. Eodemque anno Herlewinus . . . reddidit Salvatori. Eodemque anno Henricus imperator, collecto Warmatiæ multorum[1] episcoporum concilio, decrevit omnia . . . dicebatur, irritari, Hildebrandum abjurans. Hildebrandus e contra . . . primates imperatori excommunicato contradicerent. Ex sententia . . . . regem benedixit. Hilbrandus autem omnes . . . Radulphum aggressus in fugam compulit, et Suaviam devastavit.

H. A. i. 23.
Ibid. i. 24.

Mº.LXXVIIIº. Ecclesia Becci . . . . cujus operis initiandi ipse . . . lapidem jecit. Et per Gunzonem, ipsius ecclesiæ monachum, resuscitatum fundamentum mirabiliter est ampliatum. Hujus autem autenticæ ecclesiæ consuetudines prosequitur conventus Sancti Albani, per Lamfrancum archiepiscopum et Paulum abbatem, ejus nepotem, suscitatas[2] et inviolabiliter observatas.[3]

H. A. i. 24.

Customs of the church of Bec observed there.

Mº.LXXIXº. Rex Willelmus I. in . . . . . accusatum incarceravit. Eodemque anno imperator Henricus, in concilio . . . Ravennensis urbis . . . designavit. Et eodem anno Antiochia . . . quamplurimis.

H. A. i. 25.
fol. 14 *a*.

Mº.LXXXº. Hildebrandus[4] papa . . . . interfecit.

H. A. i. 25, 26.

Mº.LXXXIº. Willelmus . . . cum magnatibus multis. Eodemque . . . . Aprilis.

H. A. i. 26.

Mº.LXXXIIº. Marianus . . . diligenti facta inquisitione . . . invenitur. Hinc . . . evangelii.[5] Sed hoc facit magnorum numerorum limitatio, quæ parvum numerum deficientem vel supercrescentem non reputat.

H. A. i. 26.

Queen Matilda buried at Caen.

Domesday book.

Mº.LXXXIIIº. Matildis . . . Anglorum, obiit, et apud Cadomum est sepulta, in domo sanctimonialium, quam ipsa sancta construxit. Eodemque tempore Willelmus . . . . reservantur; unde liber conficitur qui Domesdai dicitur. Deinde de . . . solidos suscepit argenti . . . caput congestis, corpore et anima manifeste deteriorari.[6] Hic incepit oppressio Angliæ subarrari.

H. A. i. 26.
Ibid. i. 27.

Henry IV. emperor.

Mº.LXXXIIIIº. Henricus in imperio constituitur, et . . . Romanorum Patricius. Eodem insuper anno . . . militari. Deinde suspecta habens corda eorum, quos læserat, et quos læsurus

H. A. i. 28.
fol. 14 *b*.

---

[1] *multorum*] et multorum, MS.

[2] *suscitatas*] suscitate, MS.

[3] *observatas*] observate, MS.

[4] *Hildebrandus*] Hildebertus, MS.

[5] *evangelii*] ewangelii, MS.

[6] *deteriorari*] deteriori, MS.

erat, cepit . . . tenementi. Extorta igitur maximæ pecuniæ summa violenter vel sophistice, in Normanniam . . . transfretavit.

State of England.

M°.LXXXV°. Ira autem Domini nondum quiescente, cœperunt pullalare in Anglia thelonea iniqua et consuetudines pessimæ, juramenta blasphemialia. Et quanto magis Anglorum primates H A. i. 29. læsi conquerebantur, tanto . . . . . patrocinaretur. Rex homines non reputabat. Ad castra construenda cogebantur et inviti, nec præmia reportabant. Emptores regales prætia non reputabant. Verumtamen rex magnanimus et dives valde, et tanto magis Deo obligatus, Normanniam, tanquam hereditarium, specialiter dilexit et rexit; Britanniam Armoricanam[1] sibi subjugavit . . . rebelles omnes edomuit. Pacem servavit; Deum minus quam decuit, formidavit. Episcopatus Dorkecestrensis transfertur ad Lincolniam.[2]

The see of Dorchester transferred to Lincoln.

Approaching end of William.

M°.LXXXVI°. Rex Willelmus, armis et arduis curis confractus et jam senio confectus, cœpit morti appropinquare. Et quia[3] fero- H. A. i. 30. citates ejus . . . distributor. Duo fundavit cœnobia; unum . . . vocavit, et aliud in Normannia, in honorem sancti Stephani, quod Cadomum nominavit. Regina, uxor ejus, plures ei liberos procreavit, cui nomen Matildis; videlicet, Robertum, Ricardum, Willelmum, et Henricum. Filiæ autem ipsius erant, Cecilia, Cadomi abbatissa, Constantia, Britanniæ comitissa, Adala, Blesencis comitissa, nupta Stephano, comiti Blesenci. Quartæ vero Ibid. i. 31. . . . . regi, maritabatur, nomina historiographi non scripserunt. Rex itaque W[illelmus] subjectis socialis fuit, et humilis atque affabilis; indomitis . . . . . matutinas vigil sedulus . . . audivit. Eodemque[4] anno Gregorius papa, qui et Hildebrandus, obiit; cui successit Clemens.[5] Et, eodem defuncto, post paucos dies successit Desiderius, et Victor nominatur.

His children.

Death of pope Gregory VII.

Victor III. pope.

fol. 15 *a*. M°.LXXXVII°. Willelmus I., rex Anglorum, et dux Apuliæ obi- H. A. i. 32, 33. erunt. Berengarius . . . Galliæ partem maximam maculavit. Papa vero Leo[6] qui Victori successit, Vercellis . . . extersit. Ossa Walwani, militis præclarissimi, inventa sunt in provincia Walliarum, a quo Galeweia corrupto[7] nomine dicitur, quasi Waleweia. Eodem quoque anno, cum regis W[illelmi] [equus][8] quandam amplam fossam transiliendo corpus sui as-

Bones of Walwain found.

---

[1] *Armoricanam*] Armonicam, MS.

[2] As to the date of the transfer of this see, consult Fasti, ii. 7.

[3] *quia*] qui, MS.

[4] *Eodemque*] Edemque, MS.

[5] This is an error. See note in *Hist. Angl.* i. 32.

[6] *Leo*] This is also a mistake. See note in *Hist. Angl.* i. 33.

[7] *corrupto*] corrupno, MS.

[8] *equus*] Om. in MS.

Death of William I.

sessoris concussisset jam senile, decubuit moriturus. Roberto autem, filio suo, Normanniam, non tamen sereno corde delegavit, sed quia pro patre filius Crucem assumpsit. Willelmo autem Rufo Angliam, scilicet conquestum suum, assignavit, ut Anglos . . . . thesauris suis Henrico . . . ut cœnobium pro eo constitueret. Rex igitur viiiº. idus Septembris obiit, anno scilicet regni sui xxºiiº., et apud Cadomum est sepultus. Cui successit in regnum Willelmus, filius ejus, dictus et existens Rufus.

Ibid. i. 34.

Ibid. i. 35.

William Rufus.

The English nobles rise against him.

Mº.LXXXVIIIº. Multi nobiles Angliæ, et præcipue Willelmus, Dunelmensis episcopus, quem Willelmus I. rex justiciarium fecerat, faventes duci Normannorum Roberto, insurgunt contra regem Willelmum II., sed obruuntur.

Death of archbishop Lanfranc.

Mº.LXXXIXº. Odo ex monacho . . . . vocatur. Obiit Lamfrancus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus. Quo defuncto, Willelmus novus rex, postposito Dei et archiepiscopi L[anfranci] timore, jamjam cœpit tirannizare.

H. A. i. 37.

Treaty with duke Robert.

Mº.XCº. Willelmus II. rex contra Robertum, fratrem suum, hostiliter insurgens, tandem vix concordatus est cum eodem. Statuerunt insuper, ut si quis eorum prius obiret absque herede, superstes foret heres illius. Quod et juratum est. Rex Scotorum Malcolmus, timens tirannidem regis Willelmi, ea quæ pacis sunt a rege postulavit; et fecit ei homagium et fidelitatem. Robertus de Munbrai, Northamhunbrorum comes, de consilio et licentia Pauli abbatis, constituit[1] monachos, de claustro Sancti Albani assumptos, Deo apud Thinemue deservire.

Submission of king Malcolm.

Cell at Tynemouth founded.

Mº.XCIº. Remigius . . . disponeret, Thomas . . . . constructam; et appellatum[2] est. Postea . . . fuit amota, procuravit, ut ea magnifice consummaretur.[3]

H. A. i. 42.

Mº.XCIIº. Rex Willelmus II. apud . . . infirmatus;[4] unde formidans mori, firmiter promisit, legibus malis abdicatis, bonas observare. Devotus igitur ad horam dedit . . . sancto, atque Roberto, cognomento[5] Bloet, episcopatum Lincolniensem. Rex tamen . . . se exhibuit solito deteriorem. Eodemque anno pius rex Scotorum Malcolmus interemptus est. Cujus loco subrogatus est Malcolmi regis frater Duncanus;[6] sed Dun-

H. A. i. 42. fol. 15 *b*.

Ibid. i. 43.

Death of Malcolm of Scotland.

---

[1] *constituit*] constuit, MS.

[2] *appellatum*] apellatum, MS.

[3] *consummaretur*] consumaretur, MS.

[4] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[5] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[6] *Duncanus*] An error for *Duvenal*. See note in *Hist. Angl.* i. 43.

Ibid. i. 44. canus . . . . aufugavit. Eodemque anno Johannes . . . regis transtulit in Bathoniam sui cathedram præsulatus.

Carlisle rebuilt.

M°.XCIII°. Rex Willelmus reædificavit Karleolum, et habitatores a finibus Angliæ australibus illuc transmisit. Eodemque
H. A. i. 45. anno Paulus . . . . dum domum rediret, obiit; cujus corpus ad Sanctum Albanum delatum, ibi traditur sepulturæ.
Ibid. i. 46. Remansit autem domus vacans in manu regis . . . destituta, Nemora . . . et thesauros ecclesiæ asportavit. Thomas, Eboracensis antistes, Anselmum in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem consecravit.

Consecration of abp. Anselm.

H. A. i. 47. M°.XCIIII°. Rex Willelmus . . . hostiliter impetere, loco sui. Robertus enim de Munbrai,[1] comes . . . Malcolmum vicerat, curiamque regis factus rebellis adire refutavit. Unde rex ipsum cum magna indignatione hostiliter insecutus, ipsum comitem R[obertum] cum suis captum apud Windelesoram incarceravit exheredandos.[2] Rex insuper Walliam, pro excessibus Walensium, qui jam castrum Montis Gomerici[3] prostraverant et, necatis inclusis, superbierant, graviter punivit. Exulavit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Lamfrancus, præcepto regis irrediturus. Transfretans igitur et Romam veniens, a papa Urbano reverenter est susceptus. Deinde Lugdunum veniens, et ibi moram continuans, exilium diutinum patienter toleravit. Transfertur[4] episcopatus de Theodford[5] ad Norwicum.

Defeat of the Welsh.

Exile of archbishop Lanfranc.

Transfer of the see of Thetford to Norwich.

M°.XCV°. Vir vitæ venerabilis Wlstanus, Wigorniensis epicopus, quem rex patrissans acerbo odio persequebatur, migravit ad Dominum. Eodem anno papa Urbanus, Anselmi instinctu, apud Clarum-montem, Alverniæ civitatem, concilium celebravit; ubi multos nobiles cruce signavit, Petro heremita prævio, prout Historia prolixa super hoc confecta plenius manifestat.[6]

Death of Wulstan, bishop of Worcester.

Council of Clermont.

M°.XCVI°. Gualterus, natione Francus, cognomento[7] Sansavur, cum ingenti armatorum manu pedestri, Petrum sequebatur
fol. 16 *a*. peregrinans; et postea simul proficiscentes, cum xl^a. milibus armatorum, non sine magna difficultate et strage suorum, Nicæam perveniunt,[8] quam cum magno labore ceperunt. Insidias enim et dampna a fraudulentissimo imperatore Constantinopolitano frequenter sustinuerunt. Audiens autem dux Normannorum Robertus, quod multi nobiles de diversis mundi partibus ad

Proceedings of the Crusaders.

---

[1] *de Munbrai*] Added in marg.

[2] In the margin is added, "Hic R[obertus] sepultus est apud Sanctum Albanum."

[3] *Gomerici*] Glomerici, MS.

[4] *Transfretur*] Tranfertur, MS.

[5] *Theodford*] Theford, MS.

[6] See the Greater Chronicle," ed. Wats, pp. 22–25, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 54–59.

[7] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[8] *perveniunt*] perve, MS.

Church of Norwich completed.

iter peregrinationis se accingerent, ut Christi injuriam alacriter vindicarent, videlicet Hugo, dictus Magnus, frater regis Francorum, comes Maniæ præclarissimus, Godefridus, dux Lotharingiæ, Reimundus, comes Tholosanus, et alii quamplures, moræ impatiens, cum numerosa equestris et pedestris manus multitudine, accepta a rege fratre suo licentia et multa pecunia mutuo, prævia agmina sequitur peregrinans. Eodem anno perfecta est ecclesia Norwicensis, et pro clericis monachi subrogati.

Capture of Nice.

Return of archbishop Anselm.

Consecration of Sampson, bishop of Worcester.

Richard, abbat of St. Alban's.

H. A i. 98.

M°.XCVII°. Capta est Nicæa, urbs nobilissima, mense Julii,[1] xx°. die mensis, a Christianis. Proficiscitur exercitus. Antiochia obsidetur. Eodemque anno, opprimente supra modum ecclesiam Anglicanam rege Willelmo, Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, hæc ægre ferens, latenter Angliam ingreditur, sperans quoquo[2] modo cor regis Deo inclinare. Sed cum in remotis Angliæ partibus agens, ad remotiora properaret, Anselmus Londoniis latitans, Samsone in episcopum Wigorniensem in ecclesia beati Pauli consecrato, infecto negotio, sicut clam venerat, clam dolens recessit. Anno quoque sub eodem, Ricardus de Exaquio, natione Neuster, creatus in abbatem Sancti Albani . . . . ampliando, possessionibus, thesauris, ornamentis, et numerosa monachorum approbatorum multitudine ampliando, licet ipsum cœnobium per tirannidem regis W[illelmi], qui illud,[3] in manu sua [4] annis retentum, dissipatum[5] reperisset.

Capture of Antioch.

Extortion of money by William II.

Deaths of Walkelin, bp. of Winchester,

M°.XCVIII°. Capta est Anthiochia, civitas nobilissima et antiqua, sancti Petri primum domicilium. Adveniens autem Corbarannus, princeps[6] Persarum, vir potens et bellicosus, obsidet eam cum Christianis inclusis. Qui obsessi fame periclitantes, exierunt contra ipsum Corbarannum et infinitam cum eo infidelium multitudinem dimicaturi, et omnes miraculose vicerunt. Eodem tempore rex W[illelmus] tam ab Normannis quam Anglis infinitam extorsit pecuniam, mentiens se eam missurum Roberto, fratri suo, Christo in Terra Sancta strenue militanti. Obierunt Willelmus,[7] Wintoniensis, et Hugo, Sal'[8] episcopi. Hugoni Robertus successit. Wintoniensis episcopatus a rege depauperatur.

---

[1] *Julii*] A mistake for *Junii*. See note in *Hist. Angl.* i. 84.

[2] *quoquo*] quoque, MS.

[3] *illud*] eam, MS.

[4] A blank is left here in the MS.

[5] *retentum, dissipatum*] retentam, dissipatam, MS. For *retentum* the construction would require *retinuerat*.

[6] *princeps*] princes, MS.

[7] *Willelmus*] An error for *Walkelinus*. See *Hist. Angl.*, i. 132, and Fasti, iii. 6.

[8] *Sal'*] Apparently, for *Salopesbiriensis*, as in *Hist. Angl.*, but an extraordinary instance of carelessness is evident here (derived from the incorrect rubric in *Hist. Angl.*) in converting Hugh de Montgomery, earl of Shrewsbury, into a bishop! See Flor. Wig., ii. 42, and Dugdale's *Baronage*, i. 28.

and Hugh, earl of Shrewsbury.

M°.XCIX°. Sancta civitas Jerusalem a Christianis obsessa et fol. 16 *b.* potenter expugnata tandem capitur. Fuerant autem in obsidione Christiani, pedites[1] xl^{a}. milia peditum, equitum vero mille quingenti, præter valitudinarios, quorum erat orationibus incumbere. Urbe autem subacta, Soldanus Ægyptiorum, et Damacenorum, princeps inter omnes orientales potentissimus, cum hoc cognovisset,[2] cum omnibus viribus suis illuc ducem exercitus sui destinavit.[3] Sed Christiani nullatenus obsidionem[4] curantes, licet hostium viribus et multitudine impares, invocato de supernis auxilio, occurrerunt, et irruentes in eosdem,[5] prævio duce Roberto, qui in eodem conflictu laudem meruit immortalem, exercitum infidelium potenter dissiparunt. Robertus quoque summum[6] totius exercitus letaliter vulneravit; quo viso, omnes hostes irrevocabiliter aufugerunt. Congregata igitur in civitate sancta tota Christianorum exultans multitudo, tractavit diligenter de regis electione, qui potenter adquisita tueretur. Et cum omnes in ducem Robertum consensissent, dux, candela ejus cœlitus licet accenderetur,[7] regnum refutavit, quia[8] reditum versus Angliam maledictus ab omnibus maturavit. In cujus loco dux Lotaringiæ Godefridus rex est electus. Eodemque anno rex W[illelmus] dedit episcopatum Dunelmensem Ranulpho, prorsus indigno. Obiit episcopus Saresbiriensis Osmundus. Aula Westmonasterii perficitur. Sigebertus monachus hucusque Cronica digessit.[9]

Capture of Jerusalem.

Defeat of the Saracens.

Godfrey elected king of Jerusalem.

Ralph of Durham.

Death of Osmund, bishop of Salisbury.

Westminster Hall completed.

De morte regis Willelmi II., scilicet Rufi.[10]

M°.C°. Rex Anglorum Willelmus II., cum pompose nimis curiam suam ad Natale apud Gloverniam, et ad Pascha apud Wintoniam, deinde Londoniis in Pentecoste tenuisset, in crastino beati Petri ad Vincula perrexit venatum in Nova Foresta;

Death of William II.

2 Aug.

---

[1] *pedites*] This word is superfluous. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, i. 138.

[2] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[3] *ducem . . . destinavit*] On an erasure.

[4] *obsidionem*] obsionem, MS.

[5] *eosdem*] After *eosdem* the MS. reads *exercitum*, but this is rendered unnecessary by what follows.

[6] *summum*] A word is wanting, probably *ducem*. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, i. 154.

[7] *licet accenderetur*] accenderetur licet, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[8] *quia*] qui, MS.

[9] An error, borrowed from Wendover. See Coxe's note, vol. ii. p. 157.

[10] In the lower margin is drawn in trick the royal shield, reversed, with a crown above it, and near it, the same shield and crown, erect.

ubi Walterus Tirel, arcubajulus regis et miles, natione Neuster, cum staret ad tristam accubans cuidam arbori, tenens arcum extentum cum sagitta, cum jam pertransiret cervus, ait rex iratus, "Trahe, diabole, trahe, diabole; quid enim moraris?" Ipse igitur miles sic redargutus, trahere festinavit. Unde incircumspecte emissa sagitta ex obliquo ad quandam arborem repercussa, pectus et cor regis perforavit. Quod et beatus in visu nocturno manifeste consideravit Anselmus.[1] Merito autem, Deo et sanctis ejus, quos læserat, ultoribus, in medio injustitiæ suæ obiit subito sagittatus, nobilibus nequam, humilibus nequior, sibi nequissimus. Defuncto itaque rege Willelmo, et apud Wintoniam sepulto, cum magnates Angliæ quid agendum ignorarent, nescientes quid accidisset duci Normannorum Roberto, regis defuncti fratri primogenito, timuerunt diu sine certo rege vacillare. Quod Henricus, fratrum ultimus, cum cognovisset,[2] congregata[3] Londoniis universa Angliæ universitate, fratrem suum tanquam virum bellicosum, iracundum, pacis ignarum dampnavit, seipsum tanquam pacificum, justum et mansuetum, atque populi Angliæ semper amatorem collaudando. Cum igitur post multas boni promissiones super evangelia[4] jurasset se bonas leges conservaturum, videlicet sancti Edwardi et piorum regum Angliæ antiquorum, respondit universitas Anglorum, asserens . . . quæ floruerunt in regno tempore Edwardi regis, nec patrissando tirannizaret, in ipsum consentirent,[5] et in regem sullimarent. Quod et videbatur omnibus expediens, præsertim cum absens et valde remotus fuisset dux Robertus, licet heres legitimus; nec possent, sine maximo periculo regni, diutius expectare. Henrico autem hæc omnia vultu serenissimo et alacri concedente, et multiplici ac solempni juramento affirmante, consecratus est . . . . gubernandum. Item, maledixerat pater Roberto, et primogenita meritis abstulerat exigentibus.

Election of Henry I.

fol. 17 *a.*

H. A. i. 176.

Ibid. i. 177.

Marriage of Henry.

M°.C°.I°. Rex, Henricus I. Matildem, filiam regis Scotorum Malcolmi, duxit in uxorem. Quæ patrissans et matrissans educata ab infantia in claustro sanctimonialium,[6] et, ut dicitur, velo sacro Deo dicata, doluit quod alii quam Deo debuit matrimonio copulari.[7] Sed rex propter ejus mores et pulchritudinem eam instanter postulavit, et optinuit. Eodem

---

[1] *Anselmus*] The first syllable is on an erasure.

[2] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[3] *congregata*] congregato, MS.

[4] *super evangelia*] super ewangelia, MS., on an erasure.

[5] *consentirent*] consentiret, MS.

[6] *sanctimonialium*] sanctiniolium, MS.

[7] *copulari*] cupulari, MS.

H. A. i. 190. anno Henricus . . . imperavit. Eodem tempore rex Henricus . . . electione, nullatenus curans de prædictis.

Siege of Arundel castle.

M°.C°.II°. Rex Henricus obsedit castellum Harundeliæ et cepit, contra suum juramentum; et dominum castelli ipsius exilio relegavit. H. A. i. 191. Eodem anno Anselmus concilium . . . episcopis suffraganeis.

Archbp. Anselm goes to Rome. Annuity relinquished by duke Robert. Defeat of the Saracens.

M°.C°.III°. Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, post multas injurias a rege sibi irrogatas, Romam petiit. Eodemque anno, regis procurante versutia, dux Normannorum Robertus tria milia marcarum, quas rex singulis annis ex pacto reddere debuerat,[1] condonavit. Anno quoque sub eodem, Christiani de multis milibus Sarracenorum gloriose triumpharunt.

Great mortality. Return of Anselm. Capture of Acre.

H. A. i. 195. M°.C°.IIII°. Surrexit . . . fratres discordia; unde rex Normanniam impetens, eam multum dampnificavit. Mortalitas hominum et pecudum maxima fuit. Anselmus a Roma rediens versus Angliam, ne procederet, a rege H[enrico] I.[2] prohibitus est; perveniens autem Lugdunum, ibi resedit. Rex autem ipsum omnibus bonis suis spoliavit. Achon, quæ et Tholomaida dicitur, regi Jerusalem redditur Baldewino,

H. A. i. 201. M°.C°.V°. Rex Henricus . . . decertaturus; ubi multas civitates et castra occupavit. Et post multa fratri illata dampna, in Angliam remeavit.

Interview of Henry with duke Robert.

fol. 17 *b*. M°.C°.VI°. Dux Normannorum R[obertus], se sentiens non posse a pari contra regem contendere, venit sub pace petita ad regem, sed, ut decuit, sereno vultu est receptus. Primo autem pacifice loquens, sibi petiit de injuriis satisfieri; rege autem renuente, in jurgia et minas proruperunt. Duce autem in Normanniam redeunte, rex Anglos affatur dicens, "Amici H. A. i. 203. . . . Robertus, a Deo vocatus . . . refutavit. Ego vero, rex vester humilis et pacificus, vos in pace et libertatibus vestris, quicquid malo consilio hactenus actum est, gestio confovere. Vos igitur Angli, si constanter stetis mecum, minas et superbiam ultramarinorum minime formidabo." Talibus igitur sermocinationibus omnium corda sibi inclinavit, ut contra quemlibet usque ad capitis expositionem dimicarent. Rex igitur, pacificato populo, cum innumero exercitu transiens, Robertum, Normannorum ducem, hostiliter ordinatis exercitibus impetiit, et, facto congressu cruentissimo, vicit et cepit. In quo prœlio ceciderunt multi nobiles et præclari, ubi Willelmus de Albineto ex parte regis laudem promeruit singularem. Capti sunt itaque dux Robertus [et][3] con-

Robert is taken prisoner.

---

[1] *debuerat*] dubuerat, MS.

[2] *Henrico I.*] On an erasure.

[3] *et*] Omitted in MS., but required.

24 April.
Canons at Salisbury.

sul Moretonii;[1] Robertus vero de Beleasmo fugit. Hoc actum est viii°. kalendas Maii. Rex autem victor in Angliam rediens, fratrem suum Robertum misit ad castrum de Divises, deputatum custodiæ xii. virorum fortium, perpetuo carceri mancipandum. Hoc quoque anno canonicorum Saresbiriensium Ordo incepit.

Archbp. Anselm reconciled to the king.

[M°.C°.VII°.][2] Rex Henricus, subactis omnibus inimicis, ad petitionem magnatum qui secum strenue dimicaverant, duxit secum pacificatum Anselmum, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, rediens in Angliam, et ei ablata restituit. Factus igitur rex ab omnibus securus inimicis, Deo ingratus factus est de rege tirannus, ac promissi sui et juramenti transgressor manifestus, nobilium suorum oppressor, et pecuniæ extortor; neminem formidans nisi papam, et hoc non propter spiritualem, sed propter secularem potius potestatem. Eodemque anno facta est convocatio episcoporum . . . regis. Cui, juxta . . . . . . Ibid. i. 207.
vel aliquam laicam[3] . . . . . et privaretur. Anno vero sub Ibid. i. 208.
eodem consecrati . . . . archiepiscopo. Obiit Mauricius . . . canonicos seculares. Obiitque rex . . . Alexander.

Succession of bishops.
Louis VI. king of France.

M°.C°.VIII°. Defuncto Girardo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, Thomas substituitur. Ricardus, Londoniensis electus, ab Anselmo archiepiscopo consecratur. Eodemque tempore, regi fol. 18 *a*.
Francorum Philippo successit Ludowicus.

Death of archbishop Anselm.
Marriage of Matilda to the emperor.
Consecration of abp. of York.
Nota de Eliensi ecclesia.
Duke Robert is deprived of his eyesight.

M°.C°.IX°. Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, magnus philosophus et doctor eximius, obiit in Quadragesima. Filia regis Henrici Matildis maritatur Henrico imperatori. Consecratur Thomas, Eboracensis electus, facta obedientia Cantuariensi ecclesiæ, a Ricardo, Londoniensi episcopo. Eoque anno rex Henricus Elyensem abbatiam ad sedem transtulit episcopalem, et Herveum, Bangorensem, episcopum Walensium, persecutiones fugientem ibidem constituit. Defunctoque Ricardo, qui . . . . . comitatus. Dux Robertus, dum conaretur, miro H. A. i,
fascinatus consilio, [effugere],[4] capitur, et dum cum minis 210.
ampulosa verba projiceret,[5] luce oculorum privatum jussit rex ipsum perpetuo carceri mancipari. Ubi præ dolore in superbia solita mortuus, animam miseram, ut timetur, efflavit, quia cœlitus electus Deo militare regnando, renuit militare. Sed hæc supra.

Accusation of the earl of Chester.

M°.C°.X°. Rex Henricus gravem movit quæstionem contra comitem Cestrensem, imponens ei quod dans cornua Roberto duci, regnum niteretur perturbare, novum regem subrogando. Tandem vix est,[1] quia re vera reus extitit, cum rege concordatus. Translation of St. Oswin's reliques. 23 Aug. Ricardus, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani abbas, sancti Oswini reliquias in novam Sanctæ Mariæ ecclesiam transtulit apud Thinemue, x°. kalendas Septembris, scilicet die suæ passionis. H. A. i. 214. Sanctus Godricus vitam . . . solutus, ad Deum transmigravit. Sed hæc supra.[2]

---

[1] *Moretonii*] Meretonii, MS.

[2] The year is omitted in MS., but *cvii.* noted in margin.

[3] *laicam*] laicum, MS.

[4] *effugere*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[5] *projiceret*] proiceret, MS.

Invasion of Maine. M°.C°.XI°. Rex Henricus transfretans contra comitem Andegavensem, Cenomanniam, eo invito, tenentem, eam gravi H. A. i. 215. afflixit depopulatione. Eodemque tempore Rogerus, . . . corpus beatæ Frethesithæ requiescit, Wimundo canonico; qui ibi canonicos prior effectus congregavit regulares. Mortality. Mortalitas, tabes et fames facta est, cometa illud præmonstrante.

H. A. i. 216. M°.C°.XII°. Facta est contentio . . . . . qui licite contulerant episcopatus . . . . scilicet, non debere dari sic aliquam prælatiam, per manum videlicet laicalem. Tandem facta est ita, ut . . . . . ad quem pertinuerunt . . . consuetam. Acta fol. 18 *b*. sunt hæc . . . . imperatori.

H. A. i. 217. The Welsh subdued. M°.C°.XIII°. Rex Henricus contulit archiepiscopatum . . . . contradicens infirmavit. Eodem anno rex Wallenses suæ subdidit voluntati, et Angliæ legibus informavit. Earthquake at Rome. Cometa præmissa, fuit terræmotus in Roma.

H. A. i. 219. M°.C°.XIIII°. Rex Henricus fecit . . . . regina sua. The Thames dried up. Eodem anno Thamisia ita in æstate desiccata est, ut in refluxu Londoniis poterat leviter transvadari. Et mare . . . dies. Roffensis episcopus Radulphus postulatur in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem. Dedication of the church of Canterbury. Dedicata est ecclesia Cantuariensis.

H. A. i. 219. Ibid. i. 220. M°.C°.XV°. Consecratus est . . . legato, et pallium suscepit ab eodem. Et eodem die palam idem . . . episcopos consecravit.

Dedication of the church of St. Alban. 28 Dec. M°.C°.XVI°. In contermino anni præteriti et subsequentis, videlicet die Innocentium, dedicata est ecclesia Sancti Albani, præsente rege Henrico et regina, ab archiepiscopo Rothomagensi Gaufrido; Ricardo tunc abbate. Solempnitati autem assistebant Londoniensis Ricardus, Saresbiriensis Rogerus, H. A. i. 221. Dunelmensis Rogerus,[3] episcopi . . . procurante. Grant of Bishopscote. Et rex H[enricus] dedit in dotem ecclesiæ Bissopescote in perpetuum, et carta sua confirmavit.

---

[1] *est*] On an erasure.

[2] *supra*] We should read, apparently, *infra*. See under the year 1170.

[3] *Rogerus*] An error for *Ranulfus*, as also in *Hist. Angl.* See Fasti, iii. 282.

Tempests and earthquakes. Merton abbey founded.

M°.C°.XVII. Tonitrua, grandines et ventorum impetus, et, in Lumbardia et tractibus orientalibus, terræmotus turres, mœnia, ædificia et arbores solotenus contriverunt. Luna . . . sanguinea. Robertus prior . . . Augustini ibidem constituit observari. H. A. i. 222.

Death of queen Matilda. Hospital of St. Giles. Order of the Templars. Death of Baldwin I., king of Jerusalem.

M°.C°.XVIII°. Defuncto papa . . . successit. Obiit autem eodem anno Matildis, Anglorum regina, et sepulta est apud Westmonasterium. Hæc autem regina inter cetera ejus pietatis opera, hospitale Londoniis constituit, quod Hospitale adhuc Reginæ dicitur, scilicet Hospitale Sancti Egidii. Obiit Petrus, primus prior Bermundesheie.[1] Incepit Ordo Templariorum, sicut in Historia Jerosolimitana plenius enarratur. Obiit rex Jerusalem Baldewinus; successit Baldewinus, comes Edessanus. H. A. i. 222.

Calixtus II. pope. Battle in France. Deaths of the abbat of St. Alban's and bishop of Norwich.

M°.C°.XIX°. Defuncto papa Gelasio, successit Calixtus, qui errorem magistri Gileberti Porretæ,[2] condempnavit. Campestre prœlium inter reges Francorum et Anglorum committitur, ubi, victore rege Anglorum, rex Francorum deteriorem calculum reportavit. Obiit Ricardus de Albeneto, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani; cui successit Galfridus de Gorham. Obiit Herbertus, episcopus Norwicensis. Tempore sub eodem . . . collocuti sunt rex magnus et summus sacerdos. fol. 19 *a*. H. A. i. 229.

Shipwreck of the king's family.

M°.C°.XX°. Divina, ut dicitur, ultione, qui . . . velificabant, redeundo a Normannia, filii . . . Ricardus, filia quoque ejus et neptis . . . et multi proceres et regis consiliarii cum eisdem, in mari naufragium perferentes submersi[3] obierunt. Et merito communi sepultura caruerunt, qui luxuriosi et perjuri universitati regni Angliæ adversabantur. Quod enim admiratione dignum, mare, cum absorbebantur, extitit pacatissimum! Hoc etiam anno descendit cœlestis ignis super sepulchrum Domini, xiiii°. kalendas Maii. H. A. i. 230.

Miraculous light. 18 April.

M°.C°.XXI°. Rex Henricus . . . causa suæ pulchritudinis. Quæ . . . archiepiscopo, consecrata . . . coronata. Walenses concordati sunt cum rege. Calixtus . . . et, licet invitum, monachum ordinavit. Luna . . . . in archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem. H. A. i. 230, 231. Ibid. i. 231.

Reading abbey. Death of Ralph, bp. of Bath.

M°.C°.XXII°. Rex Anglorum Henricus I. omnia Redingiæ ædificia, abbate creato, perfecit. Obiit Radulphus, antistes Bathoniensis.

---

[1] *Bermundesheie*] Bermundeh', MS.

[2] *Porretæ*] Porrēt, MS.

[3] *submersi*] et submersi, MS.

Death of the chancellor.

M°.C°.XXIII°. Rex Henricus, ad Natale Domini apud Dunestapliam festo celebrato, se contulit Berckamestudam, ubi regis cancellarius, dum verba probrosa in Sanctum Albanum jacularetur, ex equo corruit excerebratus.

Succession of prelates.

Obiit Robertus, Lincolniensis episcopus; successit Alexander. Rex H[enricus] dedit archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem Willelmo de Corbolio, quem monachi Cantuarenses, rege irrequisito et inde irato, elegerant; et tunc, rege pacificato, consecratur et inthronizatur. Episcopatum Bathoniensem contulit tunc rex Godefrido.

Fortification of Rouen, Caen, and other towns.

Rex Rothomagum muro alto, spisso et propugnaculato, turri[1] quoque castrum Cadomense fortissime communivit.

H. A. i. 232.

Castra etiam . . . de Oxomio, de Abrincis, et Vernonis inexpugnabiliter roboravit. Rex dedit archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem Willelmo de Curbolio, priori de Chicche, et episcopatum Bathoniensem Godefrido, capellano reginæ. Robertus de Mulent recessit a rege.[2]

Ibid. i. 232. fol. 19 *b.*

Rex Jerusalem Baldewinus . . . Edissani hostiliter descendens, dum incautus . . . . irruit subito non præmeditatum, et captum in castro . . . mancipavit. Detinebantur autem in eodem . . . et ejus nepos Gualerannus.

H. A. i. 233.

Principes[3] autem . . . . et strenuum, qui . . . ordinaret. Balach interea cum . . . . cum aliis Terræ Sanctæ principibus, prævia tamen vera Cruce, invocato præcordialiter Spiritus Sancti auxilio, hostes . . . perimentes; unde inter se victores spolia impretiabilia diviserunt.

King Baldwin released from captivity.

Nec mora, rex Baldewinus, multis captivatis et datis obsidibus, cum eis qui cum eo capti sunt, a vinculis liberati sunt. Willelmus . . . suscepit.

H. A. i. 233.

Capture of Tyre.

M°.C°.XXIIII°. Robertus de Meblent[4] . . . de Muntford et Hugone . . . camerarius regis H[enrici] fidelis, aciebus dispositis, contra illos viriliter decertans . . . præsentavit.

Ibid. i. 234.

Scandal caused by the legate John of Crema.

Obierunt Theophus . . . episcopi. Tyrus, Syriæ metropolis, a Michaele, Venetorum duce, et principibus regni Jerosolimitani capitur, et Christianis mancipatur. Johannes Cremensis, apostolicæ sedis legatus, ad Nativitatem beatæ Mariæ[5] Londoniis concilium generale celebrans, concubinas sacerdotum et sacerdotes dampnavit[6] concubinarios. Tandem vero in idem vitium ipse legatus, deliciis crapulatus, corruit comprehensus; unde scandalum non minimum[7] in ecclesia suscitavit. Rex H[enricus]

8 Nov.

---

[1] *turri*] At first written *turrim.*

[2] *Rex dedit . . . a rege*] Apparently added to the original text by the author, and chiefly a repetition of what has been written before.

[3] *Principes*] Princeps, MS.

[4] *Meblent*] So also in *Hist. Angl.*, but written *Meslent* under 1140.

[5] *Mariæ*] Mare, MS.

[6] *dampnavit*] dapnavit, MS.

[7] *minimum*] menium, MS.

Death of Alexander of Scotland. David succeeds. Various events.

Ibid. i. 235.

dedit Simoni Wigorniensem . . . abbati Glastingeberiensi, Cicestrensem præsulatus. Obiit rex Scotorum Alexander; successit David, frater ejus.[1] Rex H[enricus] plures, immo fere omnes, Angliæ monetarios, eo quod falsarii erant, fecit turpiter mutilari. Rex Jerusalem B[aldewinus] de Borsequino, principe orientis potentissimo, gloriose triumphavit. Obiit Kalixtus papa; successit Honorius. Rex Jerusalem B[aldewinus] liberatus est.[2]

Succession of bishops.

M°.C°.XXV°. Rex H[enricus] dedit Symoni Wigorniensem, Johanni Rofensem, Sifredo Cicestrensem præsulatus. Obiit rex Scotorum Alexander.[3]

Arnulph bishop of Ravenna.

M°.C°.XXVI°. Henricus, Romanorum imperator, præsulatum Ravennæ Ærnulpho, viro eleganti, eo quod accusatus, quod quadam nocte dormierat cum quadam sua concubina, imperatori. Jussit igitur imperator, ut legeret sibi evangelium,[4] quod et ipse renuit, nec potuit ulla ad hoc trahi compulsione; unde imperator eum dignum censuit præsulatus.[5] Ipse autem imperator quadam noctium clandestinam[6] fugam arripiens, et fugiens pompam[7] mundi fastidivit, et voluit paupertatis humilitatem experiri. Evanuit igitur ab hominum visu et cognitione;[8] unde uxor ejus, imperatrix Matildis, usque ad mortis angustias contristata,[9] quo diverteret, ignoravit. Et quia ab aliquibus improperatum fuit ei, quod viro suo venenum propinasset, fugit de nocte versus partes tendens occidentales, ut ad patris, scilicet H[enrici] regis, alas fugeret protegenda. Pio igitur . . . imperavit. Diligebat . . . suam specialiter, quia unicam illam habebat filiam; et recepit eam cum summa alacritate. Et rediens rex in Angliam, comfortans[10] eam tanto viro spoliatam. Et, jussu regis, omnes Angliæ et Normanniæ primates fecerunt . . . et Blesentium comite procreatus.

Disappearance of the emperor.

The empress comes to England.

fol. 20 *a*. H. A. i. 238.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn three small bearded heads, each wearing a tall peaked hood, with a crown above each, meant for the kings of Scotland. Over the head of the first is written, "Malcolmus."

[2] Most of the above events are entered under the year 1125 in *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Obiit Kalixtus . . . Alexander*] These lines (partly a repetition of what has been stated immediately above) have been added by Matthew Paris to the text, as originally written.

[4] *sibi evangelium*] ewangelium sibi, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[5] *præsulatus*] presula, MS.

[6] *clandestinam*] clamdestinam, MS.

[7] *pompam*] ponpam, MS.

[8] *cognitione*] congnicione, MS.

[9] *contristata*] contristatata, MS.

[10] *comfortans*] The construction requires *comfortavit.*

H. A. i. 238. M°.C°.XXVII°. Rex H[enricus] . . . archiepiscopus regem . . . . fecerat, cum . . . est ejectus. Eodem [tempore][1] Ibid. i. 239. defuncto . . . Universalis succedens, a Willelmo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo est consecratus. Comes Andegavensis Fulco Jerusolimam sine proposito revertendi . . . filio suo, dicto Plantegenest . . . Jerusalem prospere pervenit. De cujus adventu et pio proposito[2] rex . . . . suam. Quod cum regi[3] Anglorum nunciaretur, transfretavit . . . . copulavit.[4] Obiit Ibid. i. 240. Ricardus, episcopus Herefordensis. Die sancti Johannis . . . . cum quibusdam[5] aliis fratribus, ita scilicet, quod xii. erant quærentes sibi idoneum locum mansionis, vitam et habitum in arctius mutaturi, exemplo . . . inchoarunt. Qui dum vagarentur, locum aptum quærentes mansionis, et invenissent, ut . . . . "Hic state," hoc est, "Manete"; unde locus Ibid. i. 241. ille Ciestaus usque hodie appellatur. Similiter . . . . opacam et aquosam invenerunt, et illam Fontes appellatam inhabitabant. Pauperes autem primo magnum,[6] Deo dante, cito in spiritualibus et temporalibus susceperunt incrementum.

Foundation of Fountains abbey.

H. A. i. 241. M°.C°.XXVIII°. Rex H[enricus] . . . . Hespardum, tam quiete et secure viii°. diebus, ac si in regno suo moraretur . . . coegit. Ranulphus, Dunelmensis, et Willelmus, Wintoniensis, Ibid. i. 242. obierunt. Magister Hugo . . . laudabiliter digessit.

Deaths of prelates.

fol. 20 *b*. H. A. i. 242, 243. M°.C°.XXIX°. Honorio . . . . archiepiscopi; inter quos . . . sacerdotum, ne cohabitarent. Episcopantur Henricus, abbas . . . . in Lincolniensem præsulatus. Philippus . . . . ludens ageret, porco equum offendente, cecidit, et fractis cervicibus, expiravit.

Death of Philip of France.

M°.C°.XXX°. Innocentius papa expulsus a Romanis, Anacleto intruso, se contulit ad Cisalpinos; veniensque in Galliam H. A. i. 244. . . . . recepit eundem apud Rothomagum. Et sic . . . reverenter susceptus, Anglorum rege . . . . coronavit in regem Francorum. In Nativitate vero beatæ . . . destinavit Dedicata est ecclesia Cantuariensis. Hugo, abbas . . . Rothomagensem.

Flight of pope Innocent II.

Church of Canterbury dedicated.

H. A. i. 245. M°.C°.XXXI°. Rex Jerusalem . . . gravem incidit ægritudinem. Et cum vidisset mortem imminere[7] . . . . potestatem; et sic expiravit. Obiit Innocentius[8] . . . Cluniacensis.

---

[1] *tempore*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *proposito*] prosīto, MS.

[3] *regi*] a rege, MS., as in *Hist. Angl.* (but with a different construction.)

[4] *copulavit*] coplavit, MS.

[5] *quibusdam*] quibus, MS.

[6] *magnum*] mangnum, MS.

[7] *imminere*] iminere, MS.

[8] *Innocentius*] A mistake for *Honorius*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*

See of Carlisle founded.

M°.C°.XXXII°. Rex H[enricus] I. novum . . . Karleolum,[1] et H. A. i. 245. posuit primum . . . priorem, cui consuevit peccata sua[2] confiteri. Hic episcopus canonicos ibi constituit regulares, et multis ecclesiam illam ditavit honoribus. Natus est . . . Ibid. i. 246. Henricus.

Succession of bishops.

M°.C°.XXXIII°. Tenebræ factæ sunt. Terra . . . transfretavit. H. A. i. 247. Idem rex . . . Radingum. Herveo, Elyensi episcopo, Nigellus successit. Galfridus cancellarius fit Dunelmensis.[3]

Death of duke Robert of Normandy.

M°.C°.XXXIIII°. Matildis imperatrix, filia regis H[enrici] I. peperit . . . Gaufridum. Obierunt Landavensis et Gilebertus, H. A. i. 247. Londoniensis episcopi. Obiit quoque Robertus, dux quondam Normannorum, longo carcere maceratus.[4]

Death of Henry I.

M°.C°.XXXV°. Rex Henricus I. moratus in Normannia, crapulatus a murena, cum a venatu redisset, infirmatus[5] graviter, regum . . . regnasset magnifice xxxv. annis et iii. mensibus. fol. 21 *a*. Hic pro animæ . . . . providit. H. A. i. 249. Ejusque visceribus, oculis et cerebro humatis Rothomagi, ut ipse vivus præceperat, corpus ejus apud suum cœnobium est humatum.

Coronation of Stephen. 26 Dec.

St. Paul's, London, burnt.

Stephen seizes the royal treasure.

The king of Scots offers homage. 30 April.

M°.C°.XXXVI°. Defuncto autem . . . . regium temere invasit. H. A. i. 251. Unde, Deo vindice, parvo . . . . . . certissime. Willelmus quoque . . . Angliæ, Stephanum in regem sullimavit. Die igitur sancti Stephani coronatus est in regem Stephanus, et ab omnibus rex acclamatus. Quæ autem tunc juravit, in Historiis[6] reperiuntur. Ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniarum, et ipsa urbs usque ad ecclesiam Danorum combusta[7] est. Stephanus de se confisus et bene corroboratus, præsentibus archiepiscopis et quibusdam episcopis, thesaurum, quem avunculus suus congesserat ad exequendum testamentum suum, violenter, jamjam ex rege factus tirannus, occupans, dissipavit. Rex Scotorum . . . fecerat, scilicet David, in Angliam . . . Ibid. i. 253. imposuit. Rex Stephanus occurrens, ipsum regem Scotorum adeo humiliavit, ut homagium regi faceret S[tephano]; et filius ejus regi S[tephano] homagium faceret. Festo autem Ascensionis, nescitur quo casu, disseminata est fama, quod

---

[1] *Karleolum*] Karlel', MS.

[2] *sua*] sui, MS.

[3] The whole of the events under this year have been added by the author to the text, as originally written.

[4] A blank shield, reversed, with a crown, is drawn on the lower margin with a plummet.

[5] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[6] *in Historiis*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 74, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 252.

[7] *combusta*] conbusta, MS.

Rumours of Stephen's death. Geoffrey of Anjou's success in Normandy.

rex procul dubio mortuus extitisset. Rex autem se probans non esse mortuum, multos de inimicis suis, qui jam caput erexerant, occupavit. Galfridus interea, comes Andegaviæ, et uxor ejus Matildis, aliqua castra Normanniæ optinuerunt, et Ibid. i. 255. multum cœpit jamjam dominari. Willelmus . . . obierunt.

H. A. i. 256. M°.C°.XXXVII°. Stephanus transfretavit . . . ubi guerræ indulgens, omnia ad votum consummavit. Concordiam . . . composuit. Et sic in Angliam lætus remeavit. Eodem anno obiit fol. 21 *b*. . . . . juniorem.

Invasions of Northumberland by the Scots. Battle of the Standard. Success of Geoffrey of Anjou. Council at London. Theobald abp. of Canterbury.

H. A. i. 257. M°.C°.XXXVIII°. Conradus . . . est imperium. Rege Anglorum S[tephano] in diebus Nataliciis castrum Bedefordiæ obsidente, Rex Scotorum . . . ducens, rem execrabilem perpetravit. In improperium enim imperatricis, cui etiam fidelitatem fecerat, mulieres . . . anticipatos in altum projectos super hastas recipiebant, ita ut viderentur Herodis tempora renovari. Nec ecclesiæ parcebant monachis vel presbiteris. Rex autem S[tephanus] potenter occurrens, ipsum regem cum suis Scotulis ignominiose coegit retroire, multis ex ipsis trucidatis. Iterum, occupato rege Ibid. i. 258. S[tephano], David . . . proceres boreales, jussu . . . . restiterunt. Factum est autem inter Anglos [et Scotos][1] bellum anceps et cruentissimum; et post multam sanguinis effusionem victi sunt turpiter Scoti, et fugit rex Scotorum David. Et quia Angli[2] vires suas et acies dissipatas ad suum standardum revocarunt, secundum militarem disciplinam, vocatum est illud prœlium, prœlium Standardi, quod sonat in improperium indelebile omnium Scotorum. Interim autem comes Gaufridus multos sibi subjugavit, tam de regno Angliæ quam de Normannia. Albericus, Hostiensis episcopus, legatus celebravit concilium Londoniis, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli. Theobaldus, abbas Beccensis, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem eligitur.

Expedition to Scotland. Stephen ill-treats some bishops. Arrival of empress Matilda.

M°.C°.XXXIX°. Rex Stephanus perrexit[3] hostiliter in Scociam. Et rex Scotorum David, multis amicis intermeantibus, cum rege Anglorum Stephano concordatus est, filio ipsius rege Scotorum Henrico dato in obsidem regi S[tephano]. Rex S[tephanus] quosdam Angliæ episcopos male tractavit. Eodem tempore venit in Angliam M[atildis], quondam imperatrix, cui jurata fuit Anglia; et multiplicata[4] sunt mala diversa, hiis hinc

---

[1] *et Scotos*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[2] In the margin opposite is a note, of which only two words are now legible: ". . . Scotorum . . . derunt."

[3] *perrexit*] perexit, MS.

[4] *multiplicata*] multiplata, MS.

Ecclesiastical events.

illis illinc consentientibus. Obiit Rogerus, episcopus Saresbiriensis. Rex quoque exilio dampnavit Nigellum, episcopum Elyensem. Turstano, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, successit Willelmus.

Prognostics before the capture of Stephen. 2 Feb.

M°.C°.XL°. Rex Anglorum Stephanus apud Lincolniam existens, audivit quod multiplicati sunt inimici ejus, volentes eum violenter occupare. In die igitur Purificationis beatæ Mariæ, rex S[tephanus] pugnaturus, dum cereum suum offerret, cecidit confractus et extinctus. Et vas in quo corpus erat Dominicum, in triste præsagium, funiculo rupto, cecidit super altare coram episcopo celebrante. Eadem quoque die idem rex apud Lincolniam captus est, et ad imperatricem ductus, et præsentatus eidem; inque turri de Bristoldo custodiæ mancipatur. Facta est horribilis eclipsis solis per totam Angliam tenebrosa. Hoc completo sic bello . . . affirmante eodem populo, quod . . . declaravit. Capitur Robertus comes, frater imperatricis, et datus est rex pro eo; et sic ambo liberati sunt a vinculis. Gualerannus, comes de Meslent . . . . . et castrum Falesiæ. Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, successit Robertus de Sigillo. Albericus de Ver Londoniis occiditur.

Eclipse of the sun. Exchange of Stephen for earl Robert. Robert, bp. of London. Death of Albert de Vere.

fol. 22 *a.* H. A. i. 266. Ibid. i. 267

Defeat of Stephen.

M°.C°.XLI°.[1] Cum rex Anglorum Stephanus apud Wintoniam[2] castrum quoddam firmaret, supervenit subito hostium suorum multitudo, ipsumque fugam inire coegerunt, quosdam vel capiendo vel trucidando. In hac pugna captus est Willelmus Martel, et apud Walingefordiam incarceratus. Rex S[tephanus] imperatricem in castello Oxoniæ obsedit. Sed ipsa in tempore nivis, induta veste candida, cum suis, delusis custodibus, de nocte exiens, per posticum evasit.

Escape of the empress.

Council held. Capture of Geoffrey de Mandeville.

M°.C°.XLII°. Willelmus,[3] Wintoniensis episcopus et legatus, in media Quadragesima concilium, rege præsente et aliquibus episcopis, celebravit. Rex S[tephanus] cepit Willelmum[4] de Mandevilla apud Sanctum Albanum, antea facta congressione cruentissima; unde comes . . . . . est, et fere submersus. Reddidit autem dictus Willelmus [turrem Londoniarum][5] regi Stephano. Cœnobium de Rammeseie eo tempore dampna sus-

H. A. i. 270.

Ramsey abbey plundered.

---

[1] *M°.C°.XLI°.*] M°.C°.LXI°., MS., but rightly dated in marg.

[2] *Wintoniam*] A mistake for *Wiltonam.* See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 268.

[3] *Willelmus*] Another mistake for *Henricus.* See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 267.

[4] *Willelmum*] An error for *Gaufridum.* See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 270.

[5] *turrem Londoniarum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 71.

tinuit enormia. Obiit Fulco, rex Jerosolimitanus.[1] Defuncto papa Innocentio, successit Lucius.[2] Willelmus, Malmesburiensis[3] monachus, Anglorum scribens Historiam terminavit.

Death of Fulk of Jerusalem.

William of Malmesbury.

M°.C°.XLIII°. Defuncto papa Lucio, Eugenius successit.[4] Rex S[tephanus] Lincolniam obsedit, sed a Ranulpho, comite Cestriæ, operarii ejus fere octoginta sunt interfecti; et sic, re imperfecta, recessit. Robertus Marmiun obiit, merito excommunicatus. Galfridus, comes de Mandevilla, persecutor Rameseiæ, obiit sensu privatus. Arnulphus, ejus filius, qui post mortem patris ecclesiam illam pro castello tenebat, a rege captus exilio condempnatur. Gaufridus, comes . . . susceptus, dux Normanniæ appellatur.

H. A. i. 274.

Siege of Lincoln.

Deaths of Rob. Marmion and Geoffrey de Mandeville.

M°.C°.XLIIII°. Rex Anglorum . . . aliis hostibus suis a constructione . . . fugavit, et castrum in suam suscepit potestatem. Obiit Gaufridus de Mandevilla. Gaufridus, comes Andegavensis, potiorem Normanniæ partem[5] sibi adquisivit. Eodem anno obiit Celestinus; successit autem Lucius.

H. A. i. 275.

fol. 22 *b*.

Geoffrey of Anjou acquires Normandy.

Lucius II. pope.

M°.C°.XLV°. Rex Anglorum . . . ad ipsum pacifice . . . ei redderet . . . suæ fuerant ditionis . . . pudore suppeditato, apud . . . portavit. Lucius, lucis expers et honoris, obiit.

H. A. i. 275.

M°.C°.XLVI°.[6] Henricus, . . . filius, prosperatur in Normannia, [et][7] apud Beccum honorifice susceptus est, sicut in aliis locis quamplurimis. Willelmus de Sancta Barbara fit episcopus Dunelmensis. [V°.][8] kalendas Martii obiit Gaufridus, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani; cui Radulphus Gubiun successit. Obierunt episcopi, Ascelinus, Rofensis, Rogerus, Cestrensis, et Robertus, Herefordensis; Ascelino successit Rogerus,[9] Rogero Walterus, Roberto vero Gilebertus. Et post Turstanum . . . præsulatum. Eugenius papa venit Parisius. Imperator magnus Conradus peregrinaturus, duxit . . . junioribus, et equitibus levis armaturæ. Secutus est illum . . . memorato. Et cum in remotas partes pervenissent, tradidit omnes illos imperator Constantinopolitanus in manus Soldani Yconiæ; ita ut de tanta multitudine occulto Dei judicio vix decima pars evaderet. Imperator tamen vix evasit.

H. A. i. 276.

Ibid. i. 277.

Ibid. i. 279.

Succession of bishops.

The crusaders betrayed by the Greek emperor.

---

[1] *Jerosolimitanus*] Jerosololimitanus, MS.

[2] Lucius II. did not succeed till March 1144. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 273.

[3] *Malmesbiriensis*] Malmeburiensis, MS.

[4] Lucius II. died in Feb. 1145, when he was succeeded by Eugenius III.

[5] *partem*] par, MS.

[6] *M°.C°.XLVI°.*] M°.C°.LXVI°., MS.

[7] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[8] *V°.*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[9] *Rogerus*] A mistake for *Walterus*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 277.

Their proceedings in the East.

H. A. i. 282.

M°.C°.XLVII°. Imperator Achon applicans Fretherícus,[1] Jerosolimam profectus, a rege Baldewino honorifice susceptus est post dolorem; et, oratione perfecta, recessit. Rex autem Francorum Ludowicus, qui cum lxx. . . . eum sequebatur, illo itinere proficiscebatur,[2] in eosdem confusionis laqueos cecidit irretitus.[3] Et quis potest dicere Deo, "Cur hoc facis?"[4] Cecidit autem ibi corona lætitiæ Francorum et alacritas. Rex vero multum consternatus, orationem votivam perfecit Jerusalem. Post vero imperator et reges Francorum et Jerusalem, ne nil ageretur, [Damascum][5] obsederunt. Et cum prosperatum fuisset opus Martium in manibus eorum, ita ut pateret, hortis[6] destructis, captio civitatis, corrupti auri et argenti multitudine infinita pacifice sed turpiter recesserunt. Proh pudor! immo proh dolor! infideles fidelium detestabantur infidelitatem, teporem et avaritiam. Ex tunc igitur diatim tepuit et languit Christianorum devotio circa liberationem hereditatis Crucifixi.

Robert, bp. of Lincoln.

Robertus factus est episcopus Lincolniensis, per manumque Theobaldi, archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, consecratur.

Successes of Noradin.

fol. 23 *a.*

H. A. i. 285.

M°.C°.XLVIII°. Post recessum autem imperatoris regisque Francorum, post multas et lamentabiles strages, quas exercuit cruentus Sanguineus, Noradinus, ejusdem Sanguinei filius, princeps Turcorum potentissimus, fines Anthiochenos hostiliter ingressus, Reimundum, principem Antiochiæ, contra eum exeuntem cum suis trucidavit. Noradinus igitur jam cornua sumens et erigens, nullo obstante, progressus in partibus Terræ Sanctæ debacchando,[7] castrum Hareng[8] munitissimum[9] cædem exercens[10] occupavit; donec ipse rex Jerosolimorum superveniens hostiliter, ipsum compulit retrocedere fugientem. Facta [est][11] translatio sancti Erkenuualdi.[12] Rex Scotorum David fecit militem Henricum, primogenitum . . . Matildis.

Capture of Lisbon. Gilbert Foliot bp. of Hereford.

H. A. i. 285, 286.

M°.C°.XLIX°. Gaufridus . . . . ab infelici[13] peregrinatione sua. Lexebona capta est a Christianis. Gilebertus Foliot est factus episcopus Herefordensis.

Peace made between

M°.C°.L°. Rex Francorum Ludowicus, Eustachius, filius regis Stephani, dux quoque Normanniæ Henricus, cum copiosissima

---

[1] *Fretherícus*] A mistake for *Conradus.* See *Hist. Angl.*, i. 281.

[2] *proficiscebatur*] profiscebatur, MS.

[3] *irretitus*] Written *irretus* in the text, but corr. in marg.

[4] *facis*] fecis, MS.

[5] *Damascum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *hortis*] ortis, MS.

[7] *debacchando*] debacando, MS.

[8] *nullo . . Hareng*] Written over an erasure.

[9] *munitissimum*] munitissum, MS.

[10] *exercens*] exercens, MS.

[11] *est*] Omitted in MS.

[12] *Erkenuualdi*] Erkeuualdi, MS.

[13] *infelici*] imfelice, MS.

militia utriusque regni, omnino præparati [sunt][1] ad con- A.D. 1150.
gressionem belli. Sed videntes utriusque partis magnates, Louis and
quod legiones tot et tantæ nequibant sine irrestaurabili[2] jactura duke
et sanguinis effusione [congredi],[3] cœperunt de pace contrec- Henry.
tare; et, intermeantibus optimatibus, rex Francorum tandem
H. A. i. cepit . . . recesserunt. Dum dux igitur rediret in Angliam,
287. pater . . . graviter vulneratus,[4] [vii°.][5] idus Septembris obiit. Et 7 Sept.
sic Henricus . . . dux Normannorum. Gelu . . . ad xi. kalen- 19 Feb.
das Martii, ut crederetur omne genus volucrum jam extinctum.
Glacie quoque jam molarem trahente spissitudinem, pauperes The
et pecudes siti arentes et frigore deficientes moriebantur. Thames
Tamisia quoque ita congelata est, ut Londoniis plaustris, frozen.
bigis, et summariis pontem[6] de se præbuit glacialem. Ra- Robert de
dulphus, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani abbas, valitudinarius factus, Gorham
Robertum de Gorham consilio conventus sui suum constituit made "rec-
procuratorem, et totius abbatiæ rectorem. Celebratum est tor" of St.
Ibid. i. 288. . . . suam. Comites et . . . Stephani. Alban's.

H. A. i. M°.C°.LI°. Dux Normannorum . . . Ludovicus dimiserat,
289. propter suam pulchritudinem [desponsavit].[7] Et sic factus
fol. 23 *b*. est dux . . . consul Andegaviæ. Et hoc procuravit ipsius
Alienoræ astutia muliebris, in odium regis Francorum, qui Astuteness
eam dimiserat, ut sic promoveretur æmulus ejus, et potentior of queen
foret Henricus ad expugnandum regem Francorum. Quo Alienor.
audito . . . Henricum, librans subtiliter rerum eventus futu-
rarum; maxime . . . . memoratæ. Cum igitur dux . . . rex
Francorum et multi alii nobiles, cum ingenti copia armatorum
conjurati, ut duci . . . auferrent. Et sic incepit odii semi-
narium per humani generis inimicum, qui per mulierem primam
mundum corrupit, ut et iterum cædibus infinitorum hominum
ipsum cruentaret, sicut sedulus lector in Historia super hoc
confecta poterit invenire. Veniente rege Anglorum Stephano
ad Sanctum Albanum, suggestum fuit ei de languore Ra- Robert de
dulphi abbatis. Concessit igitur rex, ut alius abbas eligeretur. Gorham
Electus est igitur in abbatem Robertus, prior ejusdem eccle- abbat of
siæ, et creatus. Obiit Matildis, uxor regis Stephani; et in St. Al-
Ibid. i. 291. . . . sepulturæ. Obiit Willelmus, episcopus Dunelmensis. ban's
Ibid. i. 292. Johannes de Papiro . . . . vero principalem. Conradus impera- Death of queen Matilda.

---

[1] *sunt*] Om. in MS.

[2] *irrestaurabili*] irrestaurabi, MS.

[3] *congredi*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *vulneratus*] This is an error; and the Greater Chronicle and *Hist. Angl.* read with Wendover, *infirmatus.* Geoffrey of Anjou died of pleurisy, 7 Sept. 1151. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 854.

[5] *vii°.*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *pontem*] ponte, MS.

[7] *desponsavit*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

Death of the emperor Conrad.

tor, vir pius et prudens, diem clausit extremum; cujus facta laudabilia in libro Cronicorum[1] plenius poterunt reperiri.

Anastasius IV. pope. Richard, bishop of London.

M°.C°.LII°. Eugenio successit Anastasius. Ricardus de Beumes fit episcopus Londoniensis. Eustachius . . . subito mortuus, in[2] ecclesia de Fevresham est sepultus. Henricus Murdac . . . excellentis, ab[3] hoc seculo migraverunt. Obiit pius rex . . . nepos ejus.[4]

H. A. i. 292.

Ibid. i. 293.

M°.C°.LIII°. Dux Normannorum . . . xxxvii., milite stipatus copioso, venit in Angliam, [et][5] multa castra hostium suorum occupavit. Et diatim prosperatum est negotium ejus. Natus est . . . . . comitibus Andegaviæ.[6] Natus est autem in confinio illorum duorum annorum, scilicet diebus Nataliciis.[7]

H. A. i. 293.

Ibid. i. 294.

Facta est pax inter reges S[*tephanum*] *et H*[*enricum*] *II.*

Nota formam.

Indignati sunt magnates Angliæ vehementer . . . diuturnitate, dicentes . . . libidine? Experiatur . . . sors victoriam . . . dominator. Cum igitur ad pugnandum[8] acies utrobique disponerentur, Matildis . . . . in corde suo; et, vocato seorsum rege, instillavit regiis auribus quoddam secretissimum. Quod cum bene . . . iræ suæ. Accepto igitur . . . modum. Respice hic librum Hystoriarum.[9]

Ibid. i. 294.

fol. 24 *a*.

Ibid. i. 295.

Nicholas [Adrian IV.] pope.

M°.C°.LIIII°. Anastasius papa, defuncto, ut supradicitur, Henrico . . . . veneno, obiit. Cui successit Rogerus, Cantuariensis archidiaconus. Dux Normannorum transfretans, revocavit in jus proprium successive et diatim dominica . . . . repressit. Defuncto papa Anastasio, successit Nicholaus, propria industria promerente, de territorio[10] Sancti Albani oriundus. Perfecta est concordia . . . Normannorum H[enricum]; formam quære in Cronicis.[11] Rex reddidit[12] . . . duo milia marcarum. Et

H. A. i. 298.

Ibid. i. 299.

---

[1] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 292.

[2] *in*] in in, MS.

[3] *ab*] ad, MS.

[4] In the margin is drawn a small head wearing a peaked hood, with an axe over the shoulder, and crown above; intended for king Malcolm.

[5] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[6] The preceding events are placed under the year 1152 in *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *Natus . . . Nataliciis*] Apparently added by Matthew Paris to the original text.

[8] *pugnandum*] pungnandum, MS.

[9] *librum Hystoriarum*] See *Hist. Angl.*, i. 296, and the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 86.

[10] *territorio*] teritorio, MS.

[11] *in Cronicis*] Only a short abstract of this treaty is given in Wendover and the Greater Chronicle, and I have found it nowhere else at greater length.

[12] *reddidit*] reddit, MS.

sic facta est concordia inter regem Francorum L[udowicum] et
ducem Normanniæ[1] Henricum.[2] Rex Anglorum Stephanus, miles
egregius, mente tamen piissimus . . . quod et ipse construx-
Ibid. i. 300. erat[3] . . . sepulti. Dux igitur, vii. idus Novembris in . . .
. . . . consecratus. Ascalona adquiritur. Sanctus Wilfricus[4]
de Heselberge migravit ad Dominum.

Moritur Stephanus rex.

Ascalon taken.

Death of St. Wilfric.

H. A. i. 301. M°.C°.LV°. Natus est Londoniis, ii. kalendas . . . legitimus,
et vocatus est Henricus. Fuit autem rex Henricus jam pros-
pere undique agens. Et tunc exheredavit Willelmum Peverel,
quia Ranulpho, comiti Cestriæ, venenum propinavit. Rex
Ibid. i. 302. Henricus fecit . . . Henrico. Defuncto Roberto . . . . . suc-
cessit. Henricus episcopus,[5] præmisso thesauro suo, absque
Ibid. i. 303. . . . complanavit.[6] Ludowicus rex . . . Tholetum. Thomas,
Cantuariensis . . . . . humillimus,[7] quia ab eadem ecclesia
promotus cepit redditum primitivum, videlicet ecclesiolam de
Brantefeld. Rex Henricus postulavit a[8] papa Adriano licen-
tiam adquirendi Hiberniam, et in lege Christiana et seculari
fol. 24 *b*. informandi. Rex Henricus . . . cepit castella Mirebellum et
Ibid. i. 306. Chinonem. Alienora . . . nuncupavit.[9]

William Peverel disinherited.

Henry asks leave of the pope to invade Ireland.

M°.C°.LVII°.[10] Rex Henricus venit in Angliam . . . . ei comi-
H. A. i. 307. tatum Huntunduniæ. Willelmus, filius . . . . . possidebat. Hugo
quoque Bigod . . . resignavit. Willelmus . . . diebus Nataliciis,
et sepultus est apud Radingum. Rex H[enricus], Walensibus
subactis, munitiones multas super eo[11] firmavit et diruta re-
stauravit. Et apud Snaudun multorum Walensium homagia
Ibid. i. 308. cepit cum obsidibus. Natus est . . . Alienoræ filius, et vocatus
. . . fuit. Tunica Salvatoris inventa est revelatione divina
Argentomii.[12] Quædam horum in confinio annorum evenerunt,
unde quidam discordant Historiographi, sicut inquam in locis

The Welsh subdued.

Discovery of the tunic of Christ.

---

[1] *Normanniæ*] Normanie, MS.

[2] *Rex . . . . Henricum*] These words have been added by Matth. Paris to the original text, but they are a mere repetition of what precedes.

[3] *construxerat*] constuxerat, MS.

[4] *Wilfricus*] Wilfridus, MS.

[5] *episcopus*] Repeated by error, and *Wintoniensis* omitted.

[6] *complanavit*] In the margin opposite is this note: "¶ Nota servitutem, per sanctum Thomam post deletam."

[7] *humillimus*] humilimus, MS.

[8] *a*] ab, MS.

[9] *Rex . . . . nuncupavit*] These events are assigned in *Hist. Angl.* to the year 1156, and ought so to have been entered in the text.

[10] *M°.C°.LVII°.*] M°.C°.LVI°., MS., erroneously, and the date of year M°.C°.LVII°. omitted.

[11] *super eo*] So in MS.; perhaps we should read *super eis.*

[12] *Tunica . . Argentomii*] Added in marg. In *Hist. Angl.* entered in 1156.

consimilibus; sed inde non est in narrationibus difficultas. Quod in confinio est, utriuslibet est.[1]

Humility of Henry II.

New coinage.

Great pomp of Thomas the chancellor.

M°.C°.LVIII°. H[enricus] rex die Natalis apud Wigorniam coronam portavit in magna gloria; et cum staret coronatus, recordatus humanæ fragilitatis, humiliatus est, reducens ante oculos cordis laudabile regis Cnutonis factum, quod scribitur in Historiis,[2] et merito. Antiqua moneta [reprobatur],[3] quæ Baselard dicebatur; nova successit. Thomas, regis cancellarius, in apparatu et comitatu maximo venit . . . . in conjugem copulam accepturus. Cancellarius utique inter alia magnalia, novem longas bigas habebat. Gaufrido, fratre . . . . . recipiente. H. A. i. 309. Ibid. i. 310

Schism in the papacy.

M°.C°.LIX°. Rex Henricus duxit . . . . facti sunt. Eodem anno, defuncto papa Adriano, et, ut dicitur, præ invidia a Romanis potionato, oritur scisma inter duos, Alexandrum et Octovianum. Imperator cum . . . . in Alexandrum. Tandem Alexander papatum optinuit. H. A. i. 310.

M°.C°.LX°. Rex Henricus a Tholosa rediens, Margaretam . . . . suscepit. Et sic filium regis Anglorum septennem, filia regis Francorum triennis[4] dispensative suscepit. Theobaldus . . . extremum. fol. 25 *a*. H. A. i. 311.

Bartholomew, bp. of Exeter.

Canterbury burnt.

M°.C°.LXI°. Bartholomæus, vir religiosus et optimus theologus, consecratus est in Exoniensem episcopum. Cui accidit quoddam mirabile, sicut patet in Historiis.[5] Maria, abbatissa . . . . seducta, forte volens, Mathæo, Boloniæ comiti, nupsit. Quod matrimonium illicitum nitebatur Thomas cancellarius impedire, sed prævaluit carnalis suggestio. Et hoc fuit primum seminarium persecutionis, quam postea multiplicatam[6] sustinuit beatus Thomas. Cantuaria fere tota combusta est. H. A. i. 314.

Death of the bp. of London.

M°.C°.LXII°. Ludowicus . . . Anglorum, cum magno martio apparatu, cum jam . . . . discretis, ne totus mundus deterioraretur, amici feliciter[7] effecti sunt. Alienora apud . . . imposuit ei nomen suum, scilicet Alienoram. Obiit Ricardus, Londoniensis episcopus. Per idem tempus . . . . quam adjectionem filius non acceptavit. Et ex tunc . . . cancellario, H. A. i. 315. Ibid. i. 316.

---

[1] *Quædam . . . est*] Added by Matthew Paris to the text, as first written.

[2] *in Historiis*] See note *ante*, under A.D. 1031, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 308.

[3] *reprobatur*] Supplied from the marginal note in *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *triennis*] Originally written *triennem*, but corr. in marg.

[5] *in Historiis*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 97, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 312.

[6] *multiplicatam*] multiplatam, MS.

[7] *feliciter*] felicer, MS.

Conduct of Thomas, when archbishop of Canterbury.

carissimum carissimo, commisit alendum et informandum.
Unde deinceps idem . . . appellavit. Idem Thomas cancellarius,
rege vigilanter procurante, eligitur in Cantuariensem
archiepiscopum. Qui intronizatus, suo[1] exuto veteri homine, novum
cum actibus suis induit. Nuncii autem sui ad papam, qui
tunc Cismontanis partibus morabatur, secretius destinati, pallium
ad opus archiepiscopi, cum habitu Nigri Ordinis a papa
benedicto reportarunt; præhabito habitu canonicorum Meretoniæ.
Nam curiæ curis ex tunc interesse recusavit, malens
Dei quam regis gratiam adipisci; unde officium cancellariæ
cum sigillo regio, liber ab omni obligatione, resignavit, quod
Ibid. i. 318. utique regi nimium displicuit murmuranti. Sopita est . . . .
Albani, Roberto tunc episcopo, et Roberto tunc abbate, in
præsentia regis H[enrici]. Cujus pacis formam qui scire
fol. 25 *b*. desiderat, Librum[2] adeat Cronicorum Sancti Albani.[3] Rex Jerosolimorum
Ibid. i. 319. . . . ejusdem Almaricus.

Gilbert, bp. of London.

Henry de Essexe assumes the religious habit.

Council at Tours.

M°.C°.LXIII°. Gilebertus, Herefordensis episcopus, procurante
rege H[enrico], et concedente papa Alexandro, ad sedem
postulatus Londoniensem, illuc translatus est. Translatum est
H. A. i. 320. . . . positum in feretro ab . . . Henrico et illud procurante.
Sciendumque est, quod . . . illibatum. Henricus de Esexia
de proditione convictus, ex regis clementia habitum religionis
apud Radingum suscepit. Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus,
Ibid. i. 321. ad petitionem regis . . . redintegratam. Papa Alexander
Turonis concilium congregavit; ad cujus . . . alii ecclesiarum
Ibid. i. 322. prælati. Thomas . . . . Dunelmensi. Malcolmus, rex[4] Scotorum
. . . . . filio ejus. Rogerus, comes . . . . Thunebruge
cum pertinentiis. Contradixit . . . illud comiti et[5] servitio
. . . . ab archiepiscopo.

Constitutions of Clarendon.

M°.C°.LXIIII°. In præsentia regis et magnatum Angliæ, apud
Clarendonam, facta est . . . consuetudinum sive libertatum
H. A. i. 323. . . . observari deberent in . . . teneri. Quæ abusiones dici possunt
potius quam consuetudines. Quibus etsi primo consensisse
videretur archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Thomas, tamen in
calce[6] sermonis non consensit. Quas consuetudines si quis
videre desiderat, in Cronicis[7] poterit quas censuit tolerabiles,

---

[1] *suo*] su, MS.

[2] *Librum*] Librorum, MS., but the last two syllables partly erased.

[3] *Cronica Sancti Albani*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 99, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 318.

[4] *Malcolmus rex*] Rex Malcolmus, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[5] *comiti et*] At first written *comitis*, but *s* erased. The correct reading is *totum in*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 322.

[6] *calce*] cale, MS.

[7] *Cronicis*] See the Greater Chronicle, p. 100, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 323–32

quas reprobandas, invenire. Rex Henricus inter ceteras tirannides decrevit, quemlibet clericum, in publico flagitio deprehensum, primo exauctorizari, et postea regis curiæ traderetur puniendus; in contrarium sentiens beatus Thomas, ne una culpa bis puniretur: Deus enim non bis punit in id ipsum. Oritur igitur ex ira jam odium inter regem et archiepiscopum induratum, et insidiabatur ei rex nocumenta machinari, immo toti ecclesiæ novercari. Videns igitur archiepiscopus libertates ecclesiæ jam nullo obice expirasse pro magna parte, fugam et exilium subire cogitabat. Sed cum a multo tempore illud proposuisset, ecclesiam de Redingo sollempniter dedicavit. Facta universali concione apud Norhamtonam coram rege, magnatibus et prælatis, archiepiscopus sciens quod rex aspirabat ipsum ex libidine ulciscendi confundere, venit coram omnibus bajulans crucem suam, ut sic saltem ab impetu regis defenderetur. Quod rex molestissime ferens, ait iratus et tumidus, "Sumne diabolus, infidelis,[1] aut scismaticus,[2] ut crucem abhorream et fugiam?" Et gravissimam super hoc omnibus querelam reposuit, exigens ut inde sibi faceret[3] archiepiscopus. Et dilatum est hoc magnum negotium usque in crastinum. Nocte igitur insecuta videns archiepiscopus se tam suffraganeorum[4] suorum quam regis gratia destitutum, clandestinam[5] et nocturnam fugam arripiens, mare in fragili cimba infra[6] paucos dies cum duobus sacerdotibus in Flandria applicuit. Et vix evadens laqueos comitis Bononiæ pro causa prædicta, pervenit indempnis in regis Francorum ditionem, ubi pressuras regis Henrici minime formidabat. Infiscantur igitur omnia, quæ ad archiepiscopum pertinebant, hoc comperto. Et cito post beatus Thomas se ad Pontiniacense contulit[7] cœnobium, consolationem a coexule suo papa Alexandro accipiens et benedictionem; ibidem moraturus donec aura felicior aspiraret. Alienora regina periclitans in puerperio, voto facto cum pœnitentia prosequenda, mortis discrimine liberatur.[8]

Quarrel between the king and archbishp.

Dedication of the church of Reading.

Proceedings at Northampton.

fol. 26 *a*.

Flight of the archbishop.

He arrives at Pontigny.

M°.C°.LXV°. Alienora regina regi Henrico peperit filiam, quam vocavit Johannam. Eodem anno Godefridus, episcopus de Sancto Asaph, confecit crisma in ecclesia Sancti Albani.

Birth of the princess Joanna.

Chrism made at St. Alban's.

---

[1] *infidelis*] imfidelis, MS.

[2] *scismaticus*] cismaticus, MS.

[3] *faceret*] A word is here wanting, perhaps *rationem*.

[4] *suffraganeorum*] sufraganeorum, MS.

[5] *clandestinam*] clamdestinam, MS.

[6] *infra*] imfra, MS., *passim*.

[7] *contulit*] At first *se contulit*, but *se* erased.

[8] *Alienora . . liberatur*] Added subsequently by Matthew Paris to the text.

H. A. i. 337. Noradinus, quidam . . . Antiochenis debacchando[1] Hareng . . . . et Noradinum gladiis et lanceis incumbentes, in fugam propellunt. Quem cum . . . contra nostrates . . . irruptione gravissima, nobiles . . . Halapiam carceribus mancipavit; castrum quod . . . circumcingens. In confinio annorum illorum, in Ely et Northfolckia factus . . . pulsavit. (Ibid. i. 338.) Interea, in confinio annorum illorum, defuncto Octoviano . . . . pontificem.[2] (Ibid. i. 330.)

Proceedings of archbishop Thomas.

M°.C°.LXVI°. Beatus Thomas, Cantuariensis episcopus, excommunicavit omnes observatores legum Angliæ[3] supradictarum. Quo audito, rex commotus procuravit ut interdiceretur solatium quod habuit Pontiniaci, ne amplius ibi moraretur. Quod audiens rex Francorum, venit Pontiniacum, et procuravit archiepiscopo aliam mansionem, consolans eum, scilicet Senonim. (fol. 26 *b*.) Et cum recederet, abbati conducenti eum ob honorem dixit beatus Thomas,[4] "Salutate conventum. Scio, scio, quoniam vobis oneri fui. Sed veniet ab Anglia alius, qui quicquid exposui de vestro, solvet affluenter." Per idem tempus . . . caruca terræ . . . concessi sunt. (H. A. i. 340.) Alienora . . . Johannes. Robertus . . . obiit, postquam ecclesiam illam annis xiiii. magnifice gubernasset. Beatus Thomas,[5] dum in exilio moraretur, elegantissimas epistolas commonitorias et deprecatorias transmisit regi H[enrico], ut mitius ageret cum [eo],[6] immo pro ecclesia universali; et hoc per favorabiles personas et autenticas, tum per imperatricem, matrem suam, tum papam, tum ex parte regis Francorum, tum aliorum nobilium. Sed semper illum invenit inexorabilem. Scripsitque regi Francorum ipse rex H[enricus], quod mirabatur quamplurimum, quod suum inimicum Thomam[7] tam favorabiliter fovisset, et in terra sua receptasset. Scripsit igitur amicabiliter beatus Thomas[8] suffraganeis suis episcopis, ut juvarent eum pro causa totius ecclesiæ universalis dimicantem. Sed ipsi in omnibus eidem adversabantur.

M°.C°.LXVII°. Beatus Thomas,[8] omni humano auxilio, consilio et consolatione, [destitutus],[9] confugit ad divinum [auxi-

---

[1] *debacchando*] debacando, MS.

[2] *Interea . . . pontificem*] This event is placed under 1164 in the Greater Chronicle and in *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Beatus . . . . Angliæ*] These words have been partially erased, but probably in the 16th century.

[4] *beatus Thomas*] Erased.

[5] *Thomas*] Again erased.

[6] *eo*] Omitted in MS.

[7] *Thomam*] Erased.

[8] *Thomas*] Erased.

[9] *destitutus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 343.

Mission of two papal legates.

Death of Robert, bp. of Lincoln.

Symon, abbat of St. Alban's.

lium];[1] se totum effundens coram Deo in vigiliis, jejuniis et assiduis orationibus. Missi sunt duo legati a latere papæ, Vivianus et Gratianus. Sed quorum erat potestas æqualis, effectus et affectus varius disjungebat; unde pacis et pietatis[2] effectu et affectu eorum adventus privabatur.[3] Robertus, episcopus Lincolniensis, obiit. Symon, prior ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, in abbatem illius ecclesiæ creatus est. Eodemque tempore facti sunt discordes . . . . . villam Andeliaci redegit in favillam. Et ipsa . . . suis amisit conmilitonibus. Et non . . . a Normannis. H. A. i. 344.

Henry writes to the abp. of Cologne.

Letter from the pope to the bishop of London.

M°.C°.LXVIII°. Rex Anglorum H[enricus] motus contra papam Alexandrum, eo quod beato Thomæ[4] [præstitit][5] auxilium, consilium, et favorem, necnon pro ipso scripserat, Reginaldo, Coloniensi archiepiscopo, scismatico et hosti papæ publico, consensit, scribens eidem amicabiliter in hæc verba, "Desideravi justam habere occasionem," etc. Respice Epistolarum librum.[6] Eodem tempore dominus papa Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, scripsit eleganter et prolixe; cui ipse episcopus elegantius rescripsit, et[7] prolixius. Erat autem archiepiscopo hostis manifestus. Eodemque anno, Conanus . . . cum in fata concessisset, ex sorore regis Scotorum Constantiam filiam . . . . famam, adquisivit in uxorem. H. A. i. 345, 346.

Excommunication of the bishop of London.

Marriage of the princess Alienor.

Sufferings of the archbp.

M°.C°.LXIX°. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis beatus Thomas[8] Gilebertum, Londoniensem episcopum, excommunicavit. Alienora, filia regis Angliæ, nupsit regi Castellæ Andephulso. Et concessit ei quasdam de terris suis rex H[enricus], sed clam, contradictionem timens suorum consiliatorum. Beatus fol. 27 *a*. Thomas[9] in tot angustiis constitutus, et de morte jam subarratus, cum de manifesta persecutione regis, episcopo Gileberto excommunicato[10] stimulante, certificaretur, immo jam ad exhortationem utriusque vacillaret, suspiria emittens ex profundo, supra quam dici potest, doluit. Cum enim . . . incumbit structura . . . sperandum? Instabat jamjam annus septenus. Parentes et amici sui pro ipso jubente exularunt. Clerici et laici sui episcopatus depauperabantur. Papa, de quo . . . . . odio H. A. i. 351.

---

[1] *auxilium*] Supplied from the same.

[2] *pietatis*] peitatis, MS.

[3] This mission of the legates properly belongs to the year 1169. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 343.

[4] *beato Thomæ*] Erased.

[5] *præstitit*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 345.

[6] *Epistolarum librum*] lib. i. ep. 69, ed. Lupi.

[7] *et*] Originally so written, and then erased.

[8] *beatus Thomas*] Erased.

[9] *Thomas*] Erased.

[10] *excommunicato*] excomunicato, MS.

habentibus; lacrimosis suspiriis Deum sollicitans, ut ecclesiam suam conservare[1] cum suis libertatibus dignaretur, quam redemit. In illa igitur mentis amaritudine, consolationem accepit de supernis.

M^{o}.C^{o}.LXX^{o}. Rex Henricus . . . Nanatensem in Britannia,[2] præsentibus . . . . transfretavit, procellis maximis exagitatus; ubi vovit[3] . . . archiepiscopo multiformiter læso, se satisfaciendo humiliare. Prospere autem perveniens ad portum optatum, nihil meminit præteritorum. Absolutus est episcopus Londoniensis humiliatus. Venerabilis heremita Godricus de Finchale ex hac luce transiens, migravit ad Dominum. Cujus sanctitas tractatus exigit speciales. Idus Julii convenerunt . . . . læsionem. Quod multum Deo credimus displicuisse. Unde, ultore . . . . manifesta laqueos præparare. Cum igitur una dierum, procurantibus rege Francorum, archiepiscopo Senonensi, et multis aliis magnatibus, ut inter tam nobiles personas pax reformaretur, convenerunt in unum rex Anglorum H[enricus] et Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Thomas. Et facta est pax inter eos, ita tamen, ut archiepiscopus jus ecclesiæ suæ prosequendo, in invasores quod jus dictaret licite exerceret.[4] Quod rex sereno vultu concessit. Cum igitur veniens in Angliam, archiepiscopus excommunicasset omnes suæ ecclesiæ læsores, præcipue in coronatione regis junioris, episcopi excommunicati queruli regem, qui tunc in partibus agebat transmarinis, adierunt, et in tantum eum exasperaverunt,[5] ut rex rancore plenus iracundiæ verba contumaciæ et minarum plena congessit in archiepiscopum. Unde quidam de commilitonibus suis, scilicet iiii^{or}., credentes et pro vero arbitrantes se obsequium præstare regi, si ipsum interfecerent,[6] conjurati sunt in necem ipsius. In die autem Nativitatis Dominicæ sermonem faciens populo, palam super pulpitum ecclesiæ Cantuariensis mortem suam propinquam omnibus prædixit. Quosdam autem manifestos libertatum ecclesiæ suæ invasores excommunicavit. Quinta vero die sequenti venerunt milites, videlicet[7] iiii^{or}., Cantuariam, facturi quod sequens sermo plenius declarabit.

H. A. i. 351, 352.

Ibid. i. 352.

Ibid. i. 353.

fol. 27 *b*.

Return of Henry.

The bishop of London absolved.

Death of St. Godric.

Reconciliation of the king and archbishp.

Return of the archbishop, who excommunicates his opponents.

Conspiracy to put him to death.

25 Dec.

M^{o}.C^{o}.LXXI^{o}. Quinta vero die Natalis, circa horam . . . thalamo suo consideret cum clericis suis, Reginaldus . . . . flagi-

H. A. i. 362, 363.

His murder.

---

[1] *conservare*] Written *conservire*, but the *i* afterwards erased.

[2] *Britannia*] Britania, MS.

[3] *vovit*] Deo vovit, MS.

[4] *exerceret*] excerceret, MS.

[5] *exasperaverunt*] experaverunt, MS.

[6] *interfecerent*] inter interfecerent, MS.

[7] *videlicet*] vedelicet, MS.

tiosi, subito in archiepiscopum, quasi furia invecti, jam ad ecclesiam euntem ad vesperas, gladiis extractis et armati irruerunt, et, ut brevibus rem gestam expediamus, ipsum excerebrarunt. Unde quidam de immanitate sceleris admirans dixit,

"Quis . . . . ara Dei." Ibid. i. 364.

Et alius, de termino suæ passionis,

Verses on his death.

"Annus millenus centenus, septuagenus,
Primus erat, primas quoque cadit ense Thomas."

Hoc quoque anno . . . . ejusdem [1] sancti Cuthberti. Ibid. i. 369. Rogerus . . . . susceperat, quodque mortem beati Thomæ Ibid. i. 370. nec verbo, nec scripto, nec facto scienter procuraverat, beneficium meruit absolutionis.

Henry's purgation on account of the archbishop's death.

M°.C°.LXXII°. Rex Henricus sufficienter, quoad hominem, se purgavit de nece beati Thomæ. Diffamabatur non mediocriter inde jam per universitatem totius Christianitatis, quod sanctum virum et tantæ auctoritatis prælatum, pro quo Deus incomparabilia fecerat palam miracula, crudeli morti in ecclesia sua tradidisset. Venit igitur rex cum summa humilitate Cantuariam,[2] ubi a toto conventu accipiens nudus disciplinam, postquam juraverat [se][3] mortem archiepiscopi non procurasse, beneficium meruit absolutionis. Promisit igitur rex . . . . H. A. i. 372. . . . revocaret. Quas qui scire desiderat, librum adeat Historiarum.[4] Præterea, quod possessiones . . . . . martire exularant, in pace revocarentur. Rex vero junior, quicquid . . . promisit. Et sic ecclesiæ plene sunt reconciliati. Hiis ita gestis, . . . Margareta, in Angliam transfretavit; et apud . . . Ibid. i. 373. Angliæ consecravit et coronavit.

Ralph de Warneville chancellor.
Mary, abbess of Barking.
William, archbp. of Bordeaux.

M°.C°.LXXIII°. Rex Anglorum . . . . . sponsam dedit. Rex H. A. i. 373. Henricus juvenis . . . . quam patrem. Unde factæ sunt dissensiones, inimicitiæ, homicidia, rapinæ et incendia. Ad fol. 28 *a*. instantiam . . . concessit. Radulphus de Warannia [5] consti- Ibid. i. 374. tuitur Angliæ cancellarius. Ricardus, Pictavensis . . . . Ibid. i. 375. sunt electi. Suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ et sanior . . . Doverensem. Soror beati Thomæ fit abbatissa de Berkinge, Maria nomine. Willelmus, abbas Redingiæ, assumptus est in archiepiscopum Burdegalensem. Rex Henricus juvenis . . . . ad Ibid. i. 376, 377.

---

[1] *ejusdem*] ejudam, MS.

[2] Henry did not visit Canterbury till 1174. See *postea*, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 385.

[3] *se*] Omitted in MS.

[4] The Constitutions of Clarendon are here again referred to. See previously, p. 195, under 1164.

[5] *Warannia*] We should read *Warnevilla*, as in Wendover, ii. 370, and *Hist. Angl.*

Henry curses the young king his son.

Ibid. i. 377.

War in Normandy.

Siege of Leicester.

Flight of William, king of Scotland.

Earl of Leicester captured.

gravem sine misericordia coegit redemptionem; unde patrem usque ad spiritus offendit amaritudinem. Unde pater filium, quod horribile fuit, præcordialiter maledixit, quod et filius contempsit, quod fuit horribilius. Robertus, comes . . . . fecerunt. Rex Francorum Ludowicus in Normannia magnum fecit exterminium, audax effectus de discordia supradicta. Cui occurrit rex H[enricus] pater, desiderans mori [aut][1] vindicari. Rex autem Francorum sciens cor regis H[enrici] sic amaricatum, nolens ambigua Martis fata experiri, retrocessit. Obsessa est civitas Legrecestriæ, subfossa et capta. Invocavit enim rex auxilium et consolationem beati Thomæ, devotus et humiliatus. Willelmus rex [Scotorum],[2] dum letaliter nimis et hostiliter Northamhumbriam, conatur exterminare, [3] regis Henrici patris, fugere et retroire ad sua Scociæ coactus est receptacula. Comes etiam Legrecestriæ et comitissa, cum suis Flandrensibus, captus est.

Castle of Axholm taken.

H. A. i. 383.

Success of Henry at Saintonge.

Conduct of the earl of Flanders.

Henry's submission at Canterbury.

fol. 28 *b.*

M°.C°.LXXIIII°. Rogerus de Molbraio a fidelitate regis senioris, sicut multi alii fecerunt, recedens, in insula de Anxiholm castrum antiquitus[4] dirutum in regis nocumentum reparavit. Ad quod Lincolnienses navigio pervenientes, castrum obsederunt, et omnes in eo inventos, castro diruto, ad deditionem coegerunt. Rex Anglorum . . . occupasse, illuc festinus et iratus nimis properavit; et, beato Thoma invocato, prosperatum est opus martium in manu sua, obstantes omnes dissipando. Capti sunt igitur, tam in ecclesia quam alibi, milites lx., cum quingentis[5] balistariis. Comes Flandrensis Philippus multa regi H[enrico] patri nocumenta machinatur, et multiplicantur inimici. Rex igitur H[enricus] pater, salubri pœnitentia ductus, comperiens quod ad plenum non satisfecisset[6] ecclesiæ Cantuariensi de tanta offensa, clam et subito transfretando peregrinationis orationem cum summa fecit devotione; postulans cum lacrimis beatum Thomam de instanti periculo consolationem. Consuetudines autem, pro quibus cassandis beatus Thomas usque ad mortem decertavit, dampnavit ut prius et abdicavit. Et quasi victus victori se reddidit dicens, "Me de cetero tibi dedo, beate martir Thoma!" Si con-

---

[1] *aut*] Omitted in MS.

[2] *Scotorum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 379.

[3] The words *captus est subito* have been written here, and afterwards erased, and no others supplied in their place. The passage, as it stands, is not intelligible. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, i. 379.

[4] *antiquitus*] antiquitu, MS.

[5] *quingentis*] quadringentis, *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *satisfecisset*] satisfeciis, MS.

His affairs prosper.

Return of the archbp. of Canterbury from Rome.

dignos pœnitentiæ egerit fructus, novit ille qui nihil[1] ignorat. Deus autem omnibus bonus tradidit in manus regis humiliati in brevi omnes inimicos ejus. Capto enim comite Legrecestriæ cum suis, ut prætactum, fautoribus, rex Scotorum Willelmus iterum insurgens, captus est, et carceri mancipatus. Rex autem juvenis, immo juvenilis et puerilis, navem ascendens, et veniens versus [Angliam],[2] ut eam sibi subjugaret, tempestate suborta, vix mortem evasit. Intelligens igitur elementa pugnare pro patre, cœpit pœnitere contra patrem suum recalcitrasse. Rex quoque Francorum cum confusione recessit ab obsidione Rothomagi. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis a Roma rediens, a papa, jam cum imperatore pacificato, pallium et primatum Angliæ reportavit.

Peace between Henry and his sons.

Council at Westminster.

Death of the earl of Cornwall.

Peace made with the king of Scots.

H. A. i. 391.

Ibid. i. 392.

Ibid. i. 392, 393.

M°.C°.LXXV°. Rex Francorum Ludowicus et comes Flandrensis retrocesserunt, juvene rege rogante ea quæ pacis sunt a patre suo. Quid plura? Filii regis H[enrici] et omnes inimici ejus ad pacem redierunt. Tunc rex pater . . . . . recrearet. Continebatur insuper, quod omnia castella quæ diruta[3] fuerant . . . incepit. Cognovit enim rex feliciter, quoniam Deus exercituum Dominus in hoc eventu operatus est. Concilium[4] habitum est apud Westmonasterium, præsidente Ricardo, novo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et apostolicæ sedis legato. Obiit Reginaldus, comes Cornubiæ. Willelmus autem, rex Scotorum, translatus de carcere ad carcerem, et jam tentus apud Falesiam, cum rege Anglorum pacem fecit in hunc modum. Rex Scotorum . . . . habere. Et inde confecta est carta, appensis[5] sigillis supradictorum. Pro hac autem conventione dedit . . . . ponent, donec quod justum fuerit adimpleatur.

Foreign sovereigns seek Henry's counsel.

Deaths of nobles.

H. A. i. 393.

Ibid. i. 394.

Ibid. i. 396.

fol. 29 *a*.

Ibid. i. 398.

M°.C°.LXXVI°. Reges . . . venientes, cotidie in una mensa sunt refecti. Johannes . . . . episcopus Norwicensis. Johanna, filia regis, Siculorum regi nupta traditur. Quo etiam tempore Willelmus . . . . Johannem, filium regis H[enrici], cognomento[6] Sine-terra, si superviveret, constituit successorem. Diebus illis reges remotissimi se arbitrio regis Anglorum in dubiis casibus subdiderunt, ita quod alter Salomon haberetur. Quod perpendere potest lector Historiarum. Hugo de . . . cursu peracto, Romam revertitur. Eodem anno obiit Willelmus, comes de Strigoil, comes quoque Willelmus . . . Octobris, cujus corpus sepultum est apud Wimundham, prioratum

---

[1] *nihil*] nichil, MS., *passim*.

[2] *Angliam*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 387.

[3] *diruta*] A mistake for *communita*, as in *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *Concilium*] Cognovit, MS., but afterwards erased.

[5] *appensis*] appe, MS.

[6] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

Sancti Albani, cujus patronus extitit. Walterus, prior . . . . Westmonasterii.

H. A. i. 398. Ibid. i. 399.

M°.C°.LXXVII°. Amotis . . . canonicis secularibus, introducti . . . auctoritate, rege procurante H[enrico] II., qui . . . specialis. Et eadem die . . . . collocatus. Concordia firmata inter reges Francorum et Anglorum. Philippus, comes . . . Jerusalem. Fretherieus imperator humiliatus, satisfaciens de offensa, ablata papæ restituit. Amotis secularibus, introducuntur, rege procurante, canonici regulares.[1]

Peace between England and France. Humiliation of the emperor.

H. A. i. 400. Ibid. i. 401.

M°.C°.LXXVIII°. Ricardus de Luci . . . . . martiris, apud Westuude . . . . . sancti Johannis. Gaufridus, filius regis H[enrici], cingulo donatur militari. Eodem anno nix . . . . volatile penitus extinctum . . . . Januarii.

Prince Geoffrey knighted.

Inventus est sanctus Amphibalus cum sociis suis.[2]

Eodemque anno inventus est sanctus Amphibalus martir, cum sociis suis, apud Redburniam. Qui inquam martir[3] beatum Albanum, Anglorum prothomartirem,[4] convertit ad fidem Christianam, pro quo pio facto evisceratus est. Celebratur[5] autem ejusdem et sociorum ejus inventio in crastino Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ.

Invention of St. Amphibalus. 25 June.

H. A. i. 409.

M°.C°.LXXIX°. H[enricus] rex Anglorum junior transfretans, in . . . torneamenta dicuntur, in . . . peregit. Deinde multis insignitus titulis triumphalibus ad patrem reversus, honore debito susceptus est. Rex Francorum Ludowicus beatum Thomam venit in Angliam oraturus. Fuerat enim beato Thomæ amicissimus, et consolator in exilio suo specialis. Rex autem Anglorum venienti occurrit lætabundus, apud Doveram navem ascendens, et quicquid honoris, gaudii ac reverentiæ poterat, ei impendit. Eodem anno habitum Romæ . . . . Alexander III^us^. Relatum fuit papæ, quod . . . deviavit. Similiter et abbas Johachim. Quæ lima indigebant correctionis. Philippus . . . archiepiscopi, consecratus est in regem Francorum, patre adhuc vivente, et omnia necessaria ministrante. Ludowicus,

The king of France visits the tomb of St. Thomas.

fol. 29 *b*. Ibid. i. 411, 414. Ibid. i. 417.

---

[1] *Amotis . . . regulares*] Added by the author after the text was first written, and merely a repetition of what was stated above.

[2] In the lower margin this rubric appears thus: "¶ *Invenitur sanctus Amphibalus martir, cum sociis suis;*" with a drawing of two arms grasping a pickaxe.

[3] *martir*] martir convertit, MS., but the verb is superfluous.

[4] *prothomartirem*] prothomariem, MS.

[5] *Celebratur*] Cebratur, MS.

Death of Louis VII.

Proceedings of duke Richard.

rex Francorum, diem clausit extremum; et sepultus est in monasterio Cisterciensis Ordinis, quod Barbellum dicitur, propriis sumptibus ædificatum. Aquitannorum dux Ricardus et Henrici regis filius, ad superbiam Gaufridi de Rancona[1] reprimendam, castellum ejus obsedit; et, licet ad unguem munitum, occupavit. Quo casu comperto, multa in circuitu ejus castella sine difficultate se sibi dederunt. Omnibus igitur ad votum completis, dux Ricardus in Angliam transfretavit, et triumphator maximus acclamatus, receptus est cum honore a suo merito genitore.[2]

Treaty between France and England.

M°.C°.LXXX°. Fœdus initum est inter reges Anglorum et Francorum. Obiit Lodowicus, pius rex Francorum, beati Thomæ consolator. Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, terras Galfridi de Liziniaco devastat.[3]

Death of the archbp. of York. Eclipse of the sun. 13 Sept.

M°.C°.LXXXI°. Rex Francorum Philippus, de consilio suorum, cum vidisset et bene perpendisset, qualiter rex . . . . . ex alia, undique et pacifice gubernaret, regis Henrici omne regni gubernaculum Francorum et seipsum consilio commendavit.[4] Obiit Rogerus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus. Eclipsis solis facta est, in vigilia Exaltationis sanctæ Crucis. Obiit Papa . . . . Lucius. Eodemque anno moneta . . . nova successit. Baldewinus . . . Wigorniensem.

H. A. i. 420.

Ibid. i. 423.

Death of the bp. of Rochester.

M°.C°.LXXXII°. Gaufridus . . . . præfuisset, præsente rege et episcopis regni, electioni[5] sponte renunciavit. Dux Saxonum . . . . abundanter.[6] Eodem anno Walterus . . . Lincolniensis. Obiit Rogerus, Rofensis episcopus.

H. A. i. 423.

Ibid. i. 424.

Warin, abbat of St. Alban's. Death of the young king.

M°.C°.LXXXIII°. Defuncto Symone, abbate ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, Warinus, ejusdem ecclesiæ prior, successit. Rex Henricus, dum diligentem curam impendisset, ut pacificarentur filii sui, nec potuit ob superbam contumaciam filii sui Ricardi, qui nullo modo voluisset homagium facere primogenito fratri suo, prout voluit pater, frater ejus, sicut contemptus, instinctu patris hostiliter insurrexit[7] in ipsum, tanquam contumacem, et patri et primogenito fratri suo rebellem,

---

[1] *de Rancona*] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 419.

[2] *Ludowicus . . genitore*] These events are placed, more correctly, under 1180 in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 418, and are repeated, in a briefer form, in that year.

[3] *Fœdus . . devastat*] Added by Matthew Paris subsequently to the first writing of the text.

[4] *commendavit*] comendavit, MS.

[5] *electioni*] On an erasure.

[6] *abundanter*] habundantur, MS.

[7] *insurrexit*] insurexit, MS.

et juri inimicum. Et dum hæc agerentur, in flore juventutis
fol. 30 *a.* suæ, cum annum ætatis vicesimum octavum complevisset, in
Turonica rex junior de medio sublatus est, et in Rothomagensi
ecclesia traditus sepulturæ. Girardus, dictus Puella, conse-
H. A. i. 426. cratur episcopus . . . concessit. Walterus de Constanciis,
Lincolniensis episcopus, in . . . collocatus.

H. A. i. 426. M°.C°.LXXXIIII°. Ricardus . . . . . extremum. Rex H[enricus]
duxit . . . familia sua. Ducissa autem peperit filium Wintoniæ, Birth of a son to the duke of Saxony.
quem vocavit Willelmum. Baldewinus, Wigorniensis episco-
Ibid. i. 427. pus, factus est . . . Rothomagensis. Philippus, archiepiscopus
. . . . soluturi. Dominus enim famam ejusdem martiris per Fame of St. Thomas the martyr.
crebro celebrata miracula per totius Christianitatis latitudinem
clarificavit. Magnatibus adventantibus[1] occurrens rex, multis
est honoribus prosecutus. Rex fundavit[2] . . . . anima Henrici
filii sui, qui quandoque beatum Thomam ad iram provo-
caverat. Obiit Jocelinus, episcopus Saresbiriensis. Rex Sar- Death of Jocelin, bishop of Salisbury.
racenorum omnium, qui sunt in Hispania, duxit . . .
regibus xxxvii., ut nomen et fidem delerent. Et post
multa prœlia et cædes utrobique factas, tandem, consentien- Proceedings of the Saracens in Spain.
tibus[3] partibus, decretum est, ut duello totum negotium
Martis determinaretur, videlicet regis Macemund et regis
Galaciæ, ad hoc electorum. Macemund autem ad pugnam[4]
præparatus, etsi invitus, cum equum deberet ascendere, tre-
mebundus præ pavore, febre correptus est; ex quo febre,
dolore et pusillanimitate[5] interiit. Quo mortuo, totus ejus
confusus fugit exercitus, spoliis eorum Christianis derelictis.
Baldewinus, Almarici, quondam regis Jerusalem, filius, tunc King Baldwin resigns his crown.
in Terra Sancta regnavit. Percussus lepra, convocatis utique
regni principibus, matre [præsente][6] et patriarcha, regnum re-
signavit. Guido autem de Liziniaco substituitur[7] regno;[8] quo
non prosperante, Reimundus, comes Tripolitanus, substituitur.
Hac quoque tempestate potentissimus Babiloniæ et Damasci Conquests of Saladin.
Soldanus, vir quidem vafer et bellicosus, nomine Salahadinus,
subjugatis quampluribus orientis[9] regibus, adeo, Deo per-
mittente, in Terra Sancta debacchando[10] invaluit, ut omnia in
ea discrimini paterent et exterminio; et se Salahadinus regem
regum faceret appellari. Mortuo interea Baldewino, rege Death of Baldwin.

---

[1] *adventantibus*] adventabus, MS.

[2] *fundavit*] fundavid, MS.

[3] *consentientibus*] consencienbus, MS.

[4] *pugnam*] pungnam, MS.

[5] *pusillanimitate*] pusillanimite, MS.

[6] *præsente*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 429.

[7] *substituitur*] sustituitur, MS.

[8] *regno*] Added in marg.

[9] *orientis*] orientibus, MS.

[10] *debacchando*] debacando, MS.

Mission of Eraclius to king Henry.

Ibid. i. 431.

fol. 30 *b*.

Jerusalem leproso, Baldewinus, nepos ejus, in regem coronatur, v. annorum puer. Saladinus igitur audiens quod in Jerusalem post . . . . os ejus, omnia licenter absorpturus.[1] Omnibus igitur in Terra Sancta conversantibus in hoc solum consentientibus,[2] mittitur Eraclius, patriarcha Jerusalem, ad regem Henricum, ut regnum Jerosolimitanum[3] desolatum in suum reciperet regimen et dominum, [4] tutor foret, dominus et protector. Interim Saladinus, forte morbo correptus, vel sub treuga, quievit[5] ad horam. Nuncii interim iter versus occidentem arripiunt memorati.

Failure of the patriarch's mission.

Various events.

The duke of Saxony reconciled to the emperor.

H. A. i. 435.

M^o.C^o.LXXXV^o. Eraclius patriarcha et Rogerus, Magister Hospitalis Jerusalem, venerunt in Angliam ad regem H[enricum] apud Radingum, explicantes ei causam adventus sui, et claves sanctæ civitatis ei optulerunt. Tunc[6] omnium amicorum regis fuit consilium, ut regnum suum caute gubernando, illud a barbarorum irruptione in pace ecclesiastica tueretur, quam orientalium consuleret prosperitati. Et sic a spe sua frustati, ipsi nuncii recesserunt. Johannes, filius regis, a patre fit miles. Hugo de Lascy in Hibernia interfectus est. Factus est terræmotus[7] horribilis apud Lincolniam et ejus partibus. Gilebertus de Glanvilla factus est episcopus Rofensis. Symon, comes . . . . pertinentiis. Dux Saxonum reconciliatur imperatori, suo contentus patrimonio. Obiit mulierum . . . . Henrici Secundi. Cujus tale est epitaphium,

"Ortu . . . . parens."

Death of Geoffrey, count of Britanny.

Succession of bishops.

H. A. i. 436.

Ibid. i. 437.

M^o.C^o.LXXXVI^o. Baldewinus . . . sibi dedita suscepit. Gaufridus, comes Britanniæ, filius regis H[enrici], in quodam hastiludio prostratus et confractus, post aliquot dierum languorem cadens in lientariam expiravit; et Parisius est sepultus, in majori ecclesia, juxta chorum canonicorum. Reliquit duas . . . . . . vocavit. Willelmus de Ver factus [est][8] episcopus Herefordensis. Hugo, Ordinis Cartusiæ, factus est episcopus Lincolniensis; Willelmus de Norhale, episcopus Wigorniensis; et Johannes

---

[1] *absorpturus*] absorturus, MS.

[2] *consentientibus*] consenticientibus, MS.

[3] *Jerosolimitanum*] Jerosolimita, MS.

[4] Two words have been here erased, apparently *ei xpē*. Perhaps we should read *et ejus*.

[5] *quievit*] q^{i}u, MS., and *u* afterwards erased.

[6] *Tunc*] Tantu, MS., and *tu* subsequently erased.

[7] *terræmotus*] terromotus, MS.

[8] *est*] Omitted in MS.

Church of Akinton.

Ibid. i. 438.

Gregory VIII. pope. Clement III. pope. Death of Gilbert, bp. of London.

. . . antistes. Urbanus papa Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ut construeret ecclesiam de Akintona, concessit. Baldewino, rege Jerosolimitano puero . . . . Jopensis. Descendit igitur Saladinus ab Ægipto in partes Damascenas, in apparatu magno, et Terram Sanctam vastare disponit. Mortuo Urbano, succedit Gregorius, qui parvo tempore sedens obiit potionatus; cui Clemens subrogatur. Obiit Gilebertus, episcopus Londoniensis. Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, vir martius, ubique timetur.[1]

Proceedings of Saladin.

Chichester burnt.

M°.C°.LXXXVII°.[2] Saladinus, Damascenis partibus vastatis, Terram Sanctam hostiliter ingreditur et vastat, Jerusalem capit et partes conterminas, prælatos exterminat, regem captivum abducit. Omnia nobilia oppida[3] occupat, præter Aschalonam, Tyrum et Crac, quod alio nomine Mons-Regalis dicitur, quod et Petra Deserti in antiquis scripturis dicitur. Mater ecclesia cum tota civitate[4] Cicestriæ comburitur. Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, cruce signatur.

fol. 31 *a*.

The emperor assumes the cross.

Release of Guy, king

M°.C°.LXXXVIII°. Imperator Fretherícus, pacem cum jam inierat cum papa A[lexandro], cruce signatus est. Scribit Saladino. Saladinus rescribit. In Historiis Sancti Albani[5] reperies epistolas. Guido, rex Jerusalem, cum apud Damascum detentus of Jerusalem.

---

[1] *vastare disponit . . . ubique timetur*] These lines, together with the whole of the year 1187, are written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which has been partially obliterated, but which can be deciphered as follows: *miserabili depopulatione vastavit. Quid plura? Sanctam civitatem occupavit, Crucem Christi rapuit* [*et*] *asportavit. Et si quis reliquam rei seriem scire desiderat, librum intueatur Historiæ Jerosolimitanæ. Mortuo Urbano papa, successit Gregorius. Qui cum paucis temporibus sedisset, potionatus defunctus est; cui Clemens III^{us}. subrogatur Obiit Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus. Eodem tempore Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, cruce signatur. Hugo de Nunant factus est episcopus Cestrensis. Saladinus cepit Jerusalem et regem, Crucemque.* [What follows is written over an erasure.] *Imperator humiliatur papæ A*[*lexandro*]. *Saladinus Terram Sanctam depopulatur. Jerusalem et ejus rex cum sancta Cruce capitur. Obiit Galfridus comes, regis* [*Henrici*] *filius, et sepultus est Parisius. Ecclesia cum tota* [at first, *In ecclesia Sanctæ Mariæ*] *civitate Cicestriæ comburetur. Scribit F*[*rethericus*] *imperator Saladino. Rescribit Saladinus.* These events are chiefly entered under the years 1187 and 1188 in the Greater Chronicle, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 441–452.

[2] *M°.C°.LXXXVII°.*] M°.C°.LXXXVI°., MS.

[3] *oppida*] opida, MS.

[4] *civitate*] civi, MS.

[5] *In Historiis Sancti Albani*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 146, 147, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 447–452.

fuisset in vinculis, Saladinus sub tali conditione illum dimisit, ut, abjurato regno, mare quantocius proscriptus transiret.[1]

Hostilities of Philip of France and earl Richard against Henry.

Peace is made.

Death of the emperor Frederic.

Death of Henry II.

M°.C°.LXXXIX°. Post fœdus et concordiam inter reges Francorum et Anglorum, ruptis treugis, multi barones a rege Anglorum [recesserunt],[2] et Ricardo, comiti Pictaviæ, qui a rege patre recesserat, adhæserunt. Rex igitur Francorum Philippus, cum dicto comite Ricardo, congregatis copiis militaribus, intrantes terras regis Anglorum hostiliter, eas cœperunt devastare. Britones insuper a rege Anglorum avertentes, hostibus sunt adjuncti. Doluit igitur pater inconsolabiliter, quod in ipsum sua pignora surrexerunt.[3] Comes[4] Ricardus homagium fecit regi Francorum. Rex Francorum cum comite Ricardo cepit . . . castella regis Anglorum. Rex autem Anglorum Turonim fugiens cum paucis, ibi se in munitione suscepit. Rex Francorum ilico . . . suos reddita fuisset[5] ei turris . . . inde ad horam recedens, multa castella cepit in circuitu. Turonis demum a rege Francorum capitur. Tunc rex Anglorum in arcto positus, pacem sibi turpissimam facere compulsus est; formam, quia flebilem, non hic scribo. Respice plenitudinem Historiarum.[6] Fretherícus, Romanorum imperator, iter arripit Jerosolimitanum, cum numeroso exercitu et forti; sed in parvo flumine periit submersus.[7] Rex autem Henricus nunquam postea in statu prosperitatis erectus, de colloquio mœstus valde recessit. Et ad Chinonem . . . . positus, et summa cordis amaritudine, diem clausit extremum, cum regnasset annis xxx. et quatuor . . . et Pauli. Matildis . . . filia, audito hoc infortunio,[8] præ dolore expiravit.

H. A. i. 459.

Ibid. i. 460.

Ibid. i. 464.

Ibid. i. 465, 466.

Richard comes to England.

Defuncto rege magnifico Henrico, Ricardus dux navem ascendens, apud Portesmue applicuit, idus Augusti; concedens unicuique quod suum erat liberaliter. Deditque fratri suo . . . . confirmavit. Gaufridus, Elyensis [episcopus],[9] obiit intestatus; unde . . . marcarum. Dux Ricardus Londonias venit,

Ibid. ii. 5.

Ibid. ii. 6.

---

[1] *Imperator . . . transiret*] The whole of this year is written over an erasure, the text of which was originally a continuation of 1186. Only the last line of this erasure is now legible, namely, *Respice in libro Historiarum hujus anni.*

[2] *recesserunt*] Supplied from the *Flores Historiarum.*

[3] *surrexerunt*] surexerunt, MS.

[4] *Comes*] From the commencement of the year to this word is written over an erasure.

[5] *fuisset*] Repeated superfluously.

[6] *plenitudinem Historiarum*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 151, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 463.

[7] Frederic I. was drowned 10 June 1190. See note to *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 21.

[8] *infortunio*] infornio, MS.

[9] *episcopus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

ubi, congregatis prælatis et magnatibus, cum maxima solempnitate His coronation.
coronatus est in regem Anglorum. Et quia exigit
plenitudo historiæ officia quorumdam magnatum, qui in coronationibus
habent implere de antiqua consuetudine, lectorem
hujus libelli abbreviati[1] ad historiam transmitto prolixiorem,[2]
quæ in Consuetudinibus[3] Scaccarii poterit reperiri.[4] Rex Grant to the Cistercians.
Ricardus dedit ecclesiam de Scardeburc pro salute animæ suæ,
fol. 31 *b*. et omnium regum Angliæ, antecessorum suorum, Ordini Cisterciensi,
ut monachi, ad capitulum venientes, sumptibus[5]
Ibid. ii. 10. illius redditus reficerentur. Rex Ricardus . . . apud Pipwelle,
suorum fretus consilio, concessit . . . . . Elyensem. Hugo, Dunelmensis Hugh, bp. of Durham, purchases the title of earl.
episcopus, data pecunia, nomen comitis sibi comparavit
Ibid. ii. 11. usurpando. Quo gladio . . . dixit a tergo astantibus, "Juvenem
. . . veterano." Et prior Dunelmensis, "O quam manifeste
jam exorbitat noster episcopus, transformatus a vestigiis
sancti Cuthberti!" Obiit Willelmus, comes de Mandevilla. Death of William de Mandeville.
Missi sunt nuncii . . . . . confirmatum. Willelmus, rex Scotorum,
Ibid. ii. 13. fecit . . . . regi Anglorum decem milia marcarum.
Rex Ricardus dedit . . . de Dorecestre. Quinta die Decembris
apud Doveram transfretavit. Qui cum transisset per Cantuariam, King Richard's vow at Canterbury.
ibi vigiliam, jejunium, orationem et votum, cum nobili
fecit oblatione; promisitque certissime omnia, pro quibus
dimicavit martir sanctus Thomas usque ad mortem, se fideliter
adimpleturum. Et postquam ascendisset navem, promisit se
facere unam capellam in Terra Sancta, si illuc prospere perveniret.
Decima pars rerum mobilium per Angliam concessa Tax in aid of the Holy Land.
est ad Terræ Sanctæ subventionem.

M^{o}.C^{o}.XC^{o}. Post Natale habitum est [colloquium][6] in Normannia
H. A. ii. 14. inter reges Francorum et Anglorum, ubi . . . Domino, in
sincera arriperent dilectione. Baldewinus . . . iter arripuit memoratum.
Ibid. ii. 15. Willelmus, Elyensis episcopus, legationem impetravit. William, bishop of Ely, made legate.
Fabricata est . . . martiris. Regina Alienora . . . faciens
per plana Ytaliæ, tandem ad filium pervenit. Cum quo iiii^{or}.
dierum moram faciens, licenciata tunc ad Angliam remeavit,
relinquens . . . Navariæ, regi nupturam. Baldewinus, Can-

---

[1] *abbreviati*] abreviati, MS.

[2] *prolixiorem*] prolixorem, MS.

[3] *Consuetudinibus*] Consuetudibus, MS.

[4] The details of Richard's coronation do not appear either in the Red or Black books of the Exchequer, but they are given by Benedict Abbas, pp. 557–560, and copied by Hoveden, p. 656, ed. 1601, from whom Wendover somewhat abridges them, and thence repeated in the Greater Chronicle of Matt. Paris, ed. Wats, p. 153, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 6.

[5] *sumptibus*] suptibus, MS.

[6] *colloquium*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 14.

Arrival of English nobles at Tyre.

Return of John, bp. of Norwich, from Rome.

Proceedings of Richard in Sicily and Calabria.

tuariensis archiepiscopus, et quidam alii nobiles apud Tyrum applicuerunt. Johannes, Norwicensis episcopus, absolutus Romæ, reversus est; perniciosum exemplum præbens populo peregrinaturo. Rex Francorum . . . applicuit. Rex [vero][1] Ibid. ii. 16. Ricardus superveniens, ingressum civitatis habere non potuit, Francis prohibentibus, qui dicebant quod victualia duobus regibus non sufficerent. Quod rex Ricardus audiens, misit ad majores civitatis, petens ut sibi victualia venderent, ne inedia deperiret ejus exercitus, qui Deo militavit. Cives igitur mi- fol. 32 *a*. serti, cum hæc audissent, tanto . . . recipere. At Franci contradicentes . . . conabantur. Rex autem Ricardus, ad iram provocatus . . . convolare. Qui illico valvas confringentes, hostibus invitis, aditum sibi violenter præpararunt, atque, prævio rege Ricardo, primoque intrante, omnes in fugam compulerunt. Quod cum audisset rex Francorum, maximam . . . Ibid. ii. 17. mitigavit; sed . . . flamma iracundiæ ministrante . . . incrementum, ut sequens sermo declarabit. Verumtamen reges, inter se colloquium habentes, nullam prorsus de prædictis fecerunt mentionem. Rex autem Ricardus, fluvium transiens, cepit . . . . reginam. In crastino autem cepit aliud castrum, peregrinis rebelle et nocivum, quod Monasterium Grifonum dicebatur; ubi Grifones . . . repulsi sunt. Et accipiens castrum in suum, illud roboravit, et Mategrifun appellavit. Illi vero Grifones humiliati, postea de pace ei observanda jurantes, obsides tradiderunt. Concilium provinciale habitum est apud . . . le- Ibid. ii. 18. gato. Diebus sub iisdem . . . . legavit, Huberto, Sarisbiriensi episcopo, executore constituto. Willelmus, Elyensis episcopus, Angliæ justiciarius et apostolicæ sedis legatus, fecit turrim Londoniarum fossato profundo circumcingi, et muro mirabili sed imperfecto. Et, super modum elatus, titulum in scriptis suis præposuit memoratum. Mille etiam . . . stipatus. Obie- Ibid. ii. 19. runt Willelmus . . . de Glanvilla.

Tower of London fortified.

M°.C°.XCI°. Obierunt apud Achon, post mortem Cantuariensis archiepiscopi B[aldewini], in obsidione Achon, viri nobiles . . . . alii multi, quorum nomina scripta in libro vitæ penitus H. A. ii. 20. ignoramus. Quarto kalendas Aprilis rex . . . ascendit, vela[2] versus Achon dirigendo.[3] Rex vero Ricardus . . . habuit secum xiii. buzas, cum velis triplicibus, et centum . . . tri- Ibid. ii. 21. remes[4] galeas bene communitas. Qui circa . . . veniens insulam, decursis . . . applicuit. Cursac autem . . . se usurpative

29 March.

---

[1] *vero*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *vela*] Repeated erroneously after *Achon.*

[3] *dirigendo*] dirigenda, MS., but the last letter afterwards erased.

[4] *triremes*] trieres, MS.

Death of Philip, count of Flanders. Richard lands at Acre. 12 July. The king of France returns home. Successes of Richard. Various events.

fol. 32 *b.* præ superbia sua imperatorem nominari fecit,[1] in militari magna et forti magnitudine portum . . . homines ceperat et . . . occiderat. Unde rex . . . . . . ditioni;[2] ipsumque Cursac, quia ipsum superbum nimis invenit, argenteis compedibus magni ponderis jussit mancipari. Tandem ibi filiam regis Navariæ, Berengariam, desponsavit. Papa Celestinus . . . filium Fretherici. Comes Flandrensis Philippus obiit in Terra Sancta. Rex Ricardus unam maximam navem, omnibus aliis incomparabilem, cum maxima victualium copia cepit,[3] ad succursum Achonensium destinatam. Tandem rex Ricardus cum maxima mundi gloria apud Achon applicuit; et, applicatis utriusque regis machinis, non est concessa requies inclusis. Ibid. ii. 24. Qui tandem, inito . . . . numeraret.[4] Sic igitur civitas nobilis, quæ . . . . regibus iiii°. idus Julii feliciter est mancipata. Veniente . . . mancipatis. Subjugata igitur tam nobili civitate, rex Francorum, dolens quod omnia regi Anglorum Ricardo ascribebantur, se ad repatriandum præparavit, prætendens ærarii inopiam et defectum. Promisit igitur rex Ricardus promta liberalitate regi Francorum, se communicaturum . . . victualibus, equis . . . Terra Sancta disperderent. Quod rex Francorum facere præcise renuebat. Dimisit tamen ibi ducem Burgundiæ, cum mille armatis, quasi in adjutorium regis Ricardi, proditorem nequissimum, quem etiam instruxit de proditione. Cum autem recessisset rex Francorum, rex Ricardus civitates maritimas indefessus obsedit et cepit. Quod cum videntes infideles perceperunt, ne quod civibus Achonensibus fecerat eis quoque faceret metuentes, diffidentesque de Saladini subventione, fugerunt qui in Caifa, Cesarea, Asur, Jopen, Ibid. ii. 27. Gaza, et Aschalona fuerant habitantes. Et sic rex . . . Jopen, repulso . . . suo, victoriam reportavit gloriosam. Dedit igitur Henrico . . . . de Monteferrato. Robertus, Lincolniensis canonicus, fit episcopus Wigorniensis. Rothomagensis archiepiscopus summus regni Angliæ dispositor constituitur. Cancellarius, in muliebri veste transfiguratus, in portu maris transfretaturus deprehenditur, et pro meritis male ac turpiter Ibid. ii. 29. tractatur. Obiit Clemens . . . Baptistæ. Hugo de Nunant . . . fol. 33 *a.* seculares.

Death of Reginald, abp. elect. Capture of Darum.

M°.C°.XCII°. Obiit Reginaldus, Cantuariensis electus sive postulatus. Rex Francorum, a peregrinatione rediens, Parisius solempni processione receptus est. Rex Ricardus Darum cepit. Et post hanc victoriam, recedens dux Burgundiæ, cui dederat

---

[1] *fecit*] At first written *facit* in MS.

[2] *ditioni*] On an erasure.

[3] *cepit*] Repeated erroneously after *destinatum.*

[4] *numeraret*] numerarent, MS.

H. A. ii. 29.

. . . . hostes Christi, navem clanculo ascendit et subito recessit. Cito post quidam Bedewini, obligati regi Ricardo, nunciaverunt maximam . . . . maxime victualibus, scilicet frumento, . . . et consimilibus.

Ibid. ii. 30.

Quos omnes cum suis caravanis[1] rex Ricardus cepit.

Affront offered to the duke of Austria.

Ipsis diebus, cum lis . . . Austriæ et cujusdam armigeri Normanni, et querimonia ad aures regis commoti ex dictis Normannorum reboantium, rex præcipitanter præcepit, ut vexillum ducis in cloacam projiceretur.[2] Et sic privatus est dux hospitio, probris Normannorum lacessitus. Dux igitur cito postea iratus et tristis, reposita super hiis Deo querimonia, ad propria remeavit. Quidam heremita sanctus revelavit regi Ricardo, Jerusalem tunc non fore capiendam; de cujus sanctitate et dicti veritate satis per signa consequentia certificabatur, sed hoc in Historiarum plenitudine[3] prolixius enucleatur.

Death of the duke of Burgundy.

Dux Burgundiæ, mente alienatus, sese discerpens quasi in manifestam ultionem, obiit; qui in necessitate summa regi Ricardo constituto noluit suffragari.

Proceedings at Joppa.

Rex enim dum obsessis apud Jopen festinavit subvenire, Saladinus interim, crebris insultibus urbe capta, captos jussit perimi, quinque tantum de præstantioribus reservatis; sed ipsi strenuissimi valde evadentes, sese in turrim receperunt.[4] Rex autem, quasi fulgur superveniens, seipsum et paucis, qui cum eo venerant consequentibus sed strenuissimis, prosiliens de navi in medios hostes, projecit, et prorumpens, tanquam sui prodigus, hinc inde hostes multos trucidavit. Quod videntes qui in turri erant, exeuntes animosius regi festinabant auxiliari. Exercitus autem Saladini, quem ipse Saladinus exhortator sedulus sequebatur, videns animositatem regis et suorum, quorum gladii jam sanguine inebriabantur, fugerunt ocius versus Ramulam, Salahadino [in curru][5] rapido currente.

Ibid. ii. 35.

In crastino autem nunciatum . . . paucissimo exercitu illuc advenisse; sed . . . . habuisse. Qui tamen, propter audacem eorum impetum, multa milia milium ibi fuisse credebantur.

fol. 33 *b*.

Puduit igitur et pœnituit ipsum Saladinum a campo prælii recessisse sine victoria, cum numerus sui exercitus tunc fuisset infinitus, et regis Ricardi[6] nullus reputatus. Unde nimio iracundiæ furore succensus, lxii. milia imperiali . . . regem Ricardum vivum . . . nocte quiescente . . . . intrepidus cohortatur.

Ibid. ii. 36.

Nec mora . . . . . prosternunt. Infideles igitur, audaciam Christianorum considerantes, terga fugiendo certatim dederunt. Exercitus enim generalis ab Achon veniens, cui nunciabatur casus iste, imminebat,[1] qui faciem terræ cooperuit. Quod cum vidisset Saladinus, etsi invitus, Deum glorificavit Christianorum, adjungens, quod inter omnes mundi principes fuit rex Anglorum Ricardus admiratione dignissimus, si sui corporis prodigus non extitisset. Considerans autem rex Ricardus, se a rege Francorum derelictum, et thesaurum suum admodum minui, hostiumque diatim numerum augmentari,[2] audivit,[3] quod frater ejus Johannes supplantationem[4] [ejus][5] moliebatur, et quod ex alia parte rex Francorum sibi nocumenta machinabatur, disponit repatriare. Triennalibus treugis[6] constitutis, rex navem ascendit, constructa tamen prius capella in honorem sancti Thomæ martiris. In proximo autem obiit Saladinus, et inter filios suos ortum est prœlium cruentissimum et intestinum. Unde, si rex Ricardus moram continuasset, omnia procul dubio in tota terra orientis sibi subjugasset. Post multa vero maris et terrarum pericula, tandem rex Ricardus per emptores suos, linguam patriæ ignorantes, in Austria captus est. Suam igitur probitatem rex videns non prævalere, Ibid. ii. 40. cessit captioni. Duci igitur . . . adduxit, et deinde . . . custodiendum. Savaricus electus est in episcopum Bathoniensem.[7]

---

[1] *caravanis*] carvanis, MS.

[2] *projiceretur*] proiceretur, MS.

[3] *in Historiarum plenitudine*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 169, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 35.

[4] *receperunt*] ceperunt, MS.

[5] *in curru*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 35.

[6] *regis Ricardi*] Ricardi regis MS., but marked for transposition.

Saladin's praise of Richard.

Death of Saladin.

Capture of Richard in Austria.

Savaric bishop of Bath.

H. A. ii. 41. M°.C°.XCIII°. Rex Ricardus . . . donec ipsum vendidisset[8] imperatori . . . . custodiri. Imperator autem in multis eum graviter accusavit.[9] Sed hæc omnia in Historiis[10] reperiuntur. Tandem pro redemptione sua centum quadraginta milia librarum imperatori numeravit, ad pondus Coloniensium; pro qua redemptione omnes episcopi, clerici, comites et barones, abbatiæ sive prioratus, quartam partem reddituum suorum ad regis redemptionem contulerunt. Insuper ad hoc calices Angliæ sunt collati. Warinus vero, abbas Sancti Albani, omnes suæ ecclesiæ et diocesis de suo adquietavit, centum marcas regiis fol. 34 *a*. ministris persolvendo. Nondum adhuc censu persoluto, Jo-

Ransom of Richard.

---

[1] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.

[2] *augmentari*] aucmentari, MS.

[3] *audivit*] The construction of the sentence would perhaps require us to read *audiensque*.

[4] *supplantationem*] supplacionem, MS.

[5] *ejus*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[6] *treugis*] Before this word something seems wanting, perhaps *igitur*.

[7] *Bathoniensem*] Bothoniensem, MS.

[8] *vendidisset*] After this word *illum* is inserted superfluously, unless we read *ipse* for *ipsum*.

[9] *accusavit*] acusavit, MS.

[10] *in Historiis*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 173, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 42.

Earl John's traitorous attempts frustrated.

Invasion of Normandy by Philip.

Ibid. ii. 46.

Hubert Walter made abp. of Canterbury.

hannes comes, frater regis Ricardi, multas in Anglia occupavit munitiones, fœdusque cum rege[1] Francorum iniit. Dicebat enim periculum esse magnum, regnum omne esse sine rege, sicut navem esse sine gubernaculo. Sed Anglorum fidelitas, licet depauperatorum, ei in faciem contradixit. Rex Francorum sui, quod fecerat, immemor juramenti et fidei, Normanniam hostiliter invadit, et tandem Rothomagum occupasset, nisi fidelium regis Anglorum[2] retroire cogeretur. Rex Francorum . . . Ingelburgam accepit in uxorem. Quam ilico repudians, reclusit inter sanctimoniales, Dacosque . . . repatriare. Hubertus Walteri[3] in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem promovetur, qui episcopus fuerat Saresbiriensis. Cujus industriæ totius . . . administratio. Hic quoque ambitiosos . . . potenter refrænavit.

Richard returns to England.

Siege of Nottingham castle.

Proceedings in Normandy.

Herbert, bp. of Salisbury.

M°.C°.XCIIII°. Rex Ricardus, jam maxima suæ redemptionis parte soluta, obsidibus datis pro residuo, liber permissus est repatriare. Qui, matre sua A[lienora] comitante, beatum Thomam devotus adiens, gratias Deo et martiri egit de liberatione sua. Fuerat enim tempus, quo credidit in frusta pro injuria, quam duci Austriæ præpropere in Terra Sancta fecerat, detruncari. Deinde Londonias veniens, solempni processione receptus est. Indeque Notingham[4] properabat, eos[5] qui castro erant expugnaturus. Inclusi autem, perpendentes se [non][6] posse resistere, se regi præsentaverunt, quos secundum merita graviter punivit. Inter regem autem et comitem J[ohannem], jam humiliatum, intermeantibus amicis, pax est reformata. Tunc autem temporis rex Ricardus audiens quod rex Francorum Vernolium, subactis aliquibus aliis castris, obsidione vallasset, illuc concito advolavit.[7] Franci autem, nolentes dubia Martis fata experiri, ab obsidione recesserunt. Herbertus, cognomento Pauper, fit episcopus Saresbiriensis. Rex Ricardus castrum de Luches cepit. Venitque tunc in auxilium ejusdem regis R[icardi] filius regis Navariæ, exercitum ducens copiosum, cum quingentis[8] balistariis. Rex Francorum Philippus, fines Turoniæ devastans, ibi tutus fixit tentoria; sed cum cognovisset[9] regem Ricardum in furore magno adventare, tentoriis festinanter summo mane avulsis, aufugit. Superveniens autem rex, multa quæ festinantes reliquerant in proprium vendicavit. Deinde omnes adversariorum suorum munitiones et terras sine obice contradictionis occupans, usque ad Crucem-Karoli formidabilis habebatur, nec erat qui eidem rebellis inveniretur.

---

[1] *rege*] At first written *regis*, but *is* erased, and corr. in marg.

[2] *Anglorum*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg. A noun seems here to be wanting, perhaps *probitate*.

[3] *Walteri*] Walterus, MS.

[4] *Notingham*] Notigham, MS.

[5] *eos*] suos, MS. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *non*] Omitted in MS.

[7] *advolavit*] avolavit, MS.

[8] *quingentis*] quinquaginta, *Hist. Angl.* ii. 49.

[9] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

H. A. ii. 51.

Henricus Marescallus . . . Exoniensis. Treugæ captæ sunt inter reges. Alexius quidam, . . . innumerabili armatorum copia congregata, Cursac, tunc imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, cepit hostiliter aggressum;[1] et excæcatum et ementulatum perpetuo carceri mancipavit.

The emperor of Constantinople imprisoned.

Rex Francorum sollempnes nuncios ad regem Ricardum destinans petivit, ut absque majori dampno populorum utriusque regni, pugna quinque virorum electorum utrobique lis dirimeretur.[2]

fol. 34 *b*.

Ibid. ii. 50.

Placuit autem hæc provisio regi . . . . recusavit.

Richard complains to the pope of the duke of Austria.

Mº.Cº.XCVº. Rex Ricardus per nuncios sollempnes[3] papæ destinatos gravem querimoniam de duce [Austriæ][4] reposuit, quod ipsum Deo militantem et de peregrinatione sua tam laboriosa redeuntem cepit, et indecenter afflixit, imperatorique, ac si bos esset vel asinus, vendidit, per quod regnum depauperare cogebatur; ita quod gravior erat illi, quam si ipse Saladinus paganissimus cepisset, quod et ipse Saladinus ante mortem protestatus est. Porro omnes peregrinantes ceperat ecclesia ineundo et redeundo, et maxime eos qui redire proposuerant, usque ad triennium, sub pœna excommunicationis, protegendos.

H. A. ii. 53.

Papa igitur . . . . . qui universali ecclesiæ . . . facere renuisset, papa cum cunctis cardinalibus . . . . denunciatis, dux, omnibus spretis, humiliari recusavit. Percussa est . . . . . derivatus.

26 Dec. Death of the duke, occasioned by an accident.

Die vero sancti Stephani, dum dux pergeret spaciatum, ejus equus offensus, tibiam ejus cum pede ad arborem graviter contrivit. Unde cito post, igne ibidem percussus infernali, cum non posset cruciatum tolerare, pedem dolabro fecit amputari, et sic miseram animam exhalavit.

Ibid. ii. 54.

Imperator Henricus subjugavit . . . . . debebatur. Rex de Marroc . . . . coegerat retroire. Omnes igitur increduli pavore perculsi, ad propria certatim sunt reversi.

Death of abbat Warin. John de Cella succeeds.

Obiit Garinus, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, cui successit magister Johannes de Cella. Papa Celestinus . . . legatum. Admonetur [rex][5] Francorum resumere[6] uxorem suam, auctoritate apostolica.

fol. 35 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 56.

Procurante rege . . . . absolutionem.

War renewed between

Mº.Cº.XCVIº. Facta est pacis conventio salubris inter reges. Sed malignorum sibilis rex Francorum circumventus cœpit

---

[1] *aggressum*] agressum, MS.

[2] *dirimeretur*] diremeretur, MS.

[3] *sollempnes*] solempnos, MS.

[4] *Austriæ*] Omitted in MS.

[5] *rex*] Omitted in MS.

[6] *resumere*] rusumere, MS.

Philip and Richard.

William with the Beard is hung.

Capture of the bp. of Beauvais.

H. A. ii. 61.

Vision of a monk of Evesham.

pœnitere, et resilire a pactis prælocutis. Unde rex Francorum cepit castrum de Alba-marla, et alia castra. Quod rex Ricardus videns, reddit ei talionem. Willelmus, cognomento cum Barba, pro piissima causa Londoniis est suspensus; unde cum causa martirem faciat non pœna, judicio piorum inter martires est computandus. Captus est a Markedeo[1] et Martino Algeis episcopus Belvacensis, et ejus archidiaconus, cum suis complicibus, et regi Ricardo præsentati; erant enim regi valde nocivi et dampnosi. Unde rex jussit eos[2] armatos[3] incarcerari, donec petitione papæ pecunia fuissent redempti.[4] Eodem tempore Henricus . . . . eminentiori prospiciens, in plateæ . . . expiravit; cui successit Johannes de Bresnes, miles illustrissimus. Facta est visio cuidam monacho de Evesham mirabilis; quam qui videre desiderat, quærat Historiam.[5]

H. A. ii. 62.

Robert bp. of Bangor.

Reform of the measures.

Ibid. ii. 65.

M°.C°.XCVII°. Quidam sanctus et bene literatus prædicator, Fulco nomine . . . . . partes infecerat Cisalpinas. Consilio autem ipsius missus est in Angliam ad prædicandum . . . exerceri,[6] delevit. Robertus de Salopesbire consecratus est in episcopum Bangorensem. Rectificatæ sunt mensuræ vini, celiæ,[7] et pannorum. Statutum est insuper, ne quis mercator pannos rubeos prætendat seldæ suæ; nec tinctura fiat,[8] nisi solummodo nigra,[9] in regno, nisi . . . burgis.

H. A. ii. 65.

Order of the Jacobites.

Ibid. ii. 66.

fol. 35 *b*.

M°.C°.XCVIII°. Procurante rege Ricardo, Otto . . . . . sedit cum ea . . . coronata. Sedente et prosperante papa Innocentio Tertio, novum genus Ordinis, videlicet prædicatorum, eodem papa favente, exortum est; qui jam Jacobitæ appellantur.[10] Qui vitam apostolicam . . . . . . quærentibus ædificaverat, quæ . . . Jacobitæ usque hodie nomen sortiuntur. Isti . . . aurum vel argentum, vel etiam aliud proprium non habentes, ibant per civitates et vicos verbum . . . . habitantes in urbibus . . . . erogabant. Et ne scripturarum ignari redarguerentur, scolas congregarunt, in quibus convenienter legentes et disputantes,[11] fidei tenorem roborarunt, et moribus illustrarunt. Palamque in populo prædicantes, audientes omnes moribus informarunt. Ibant autem

---

[1] *Markedeo*] Markede, MS. In B. C. these men are spoken of as "Markadeus, Algais, et Lupescarus, natione Provinciales."

[2] *eos*] At first written *rei*, but afterwards erased, and corr. in marg.

[3] *armatos*] armotos, MS.

[4] *redempti*] redepti, MS.

[5] *Historiam*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 182–189.

[6] *exerceri*] excerceri, MS.

[7] *celiæ*] celi, MS.

[8] *fiat*] Written *fuit*, and then partly erased.

[9] *nigra*] nigri, MS.

[10] *appellantur*] apellantur, MS.

[11] *disputantes*] dispitantes, MS.

calciati in præparatione evangelii,[1] edulio et tecto contenti
populari. Unde plus operibus quam sermonibus populum
docuerunt ; dum, divitiis contemptis, spontaneæ paupertati
literati eleganter et beneficiati adhærerent. Et sic fructum
fecerunt in Dei ecclesia multiplicem, multorum errores et
diversas hæreses extirpantes. Papa præcepit, ut, expulsis clericis
secularibus, qui jam dissolute et enormiter vivebant
apud Coventre, monachi, qui per episcopum Hugonem illius
loci expulsi[2] fuerant, restituerentur ; et, episcopo eodem defuncto,
substitutus est[3] Joibertus. Et per idem tempus, Dominica
qua cantatur "Lætare Jerusalem," Eustachius factus est
episcopus Elyensis, Gaufridus Coventrensis. Surrexit con-
Ibid. ii. 68. tentio . . . . cautelam, apud Lambeth, ubi proposuit[4] monachos
Cantuarienses instituere. Unde querimonia ad papam Innocentium
III. ascendente, scripsit papa [regi][5] Ricardo, ut
ipsum archiepiscopum a justiciaria amoveret, cum non liceat
episcopis negotiis secularibus implicari ; propositum autem
ejus de prædictis[6] remansit, auctoritate apostolica. Quo amoto,
rex Galfridum filium-Petri loco ejus subrogavit. Rege Ricardo
in partibus transmarinis prœliis intendente, Walenses omnes
insurgentes sub innumerabili multitudine, terram Willelmi de
Brause vastantes, castrum Matildis obsederunt ; præerat autem
eis Wenunwen. Quibus, collecto copioso exercitu, occurrit
Petri filius Galfridus, justiciarius, et, contrita eorum fortitudine,
ipsos devictos et multa cæde cruentatos coegit retroire.
Ibid. ii. 71 Occisi autem referuntur ex Walensibus tria . . . vulneratis.
Facto congressu inter reges Francorum et Anglorum inter
Games et Vernonem, rex . . . . antequam castrum ingredi . . .
Ibid. ii. 72. insecutus, xx. milites . . . dignabantur, cepit occupatos, quia
in fuga ultimi extiterunt, et servientes lx. Obiit Ricardus de
Lucy,[7] episcopus Londoniensis.[8] Rex R[icardus], omnibus con-
fol. 36 *a*. gregatis . . . . . et multis communiis, profectus est . . . audisset
rex Ricardus . . . cum eo prœlium commisit. In quo congressu
rex . . . coactus ad Gisortium scilicet castellum aufugit.
Et cum pontem fugiendo ascendisset, confractus . . . . .

Restoration of the monks at Coventry.

8 March. Succession of prelates.

Geoffrey Fitz-Peter made justiciary.

Revolt of the Welsh.

Death of Richard, bishop of London.

---

[1] *evangelii*] ewangelii, MS.

[2] *expulsi*] Originally written *epm̄ si*, and *epm̄* afterwards erased. It would be better to read, *per Hugonem, illius loci episcopum*.

[3] *substitutus est*] This expression is here very equivocal. Joibert was appointed Prior of the convent. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 67.

[4] *proposuit*] prosuit, MS.

[5] *regi*] Omitted in MS.

[6] *de prædictis*] de pᵃdcīs, MS.

[7] *de Lucy*] This is a mistake. His name was Richard Fitz-Nigel. See Fasti, ii. 283.

[8] *Londoniensis*] Lincolniensis, MS., erroneously, and so in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 72.

volutatus, et aqua subintrante ponderosus ridiculose . . . ereptus. Interea acies quædam electissima de Francis, ut . . . reversa de fronte . . . sui exemptione mortis . . . se exponendo. Tunc bellum utrobique factum est acerrimum, nec furor . . . rex R[icardus] aciem illam sub captione conclusit. In quo conflictu cruentissimo rex . . . . . Francorum. Hiis ita . . . Anglorum convictoribus suis pretiosa distribuit donativa. Rex Francorum videns vires regis R[icardi] diatim crescere, misit ad summum pontificem secretos nuncios, significans[1] ei, quod libenter componeret cum rege R[icardo], ne negotium Crucis amplius impediretur. Geminata igitur papali cum regali petitione, rex Ricardus treugas concessit quinquennes, ea intentione et conditione, ut papa promotioni Othonis diligenter intenderet et favorabiliter. Ad quod etiam expediendum cepit rex R[icardus] de unaquaque . . . auxilio. Finxitque se suum[2] sigillum [amisisse][3] in mari; unde, facto novo sigillo, oportuit, ut dicebat et volebat, omnes cartas priori sigillo sigillatas renovare, et eas novo sigillo, cassato veteri, remunire. Unde non minimum turpi commento[4] tali sibi thesaurum[5] adquisivit. Hoc autem non a suo pectore emanavit, sed a sibilis, ut dicitur, Galfridi, justiciarii sui, emanavit.

Ibid. ii. 73.

Truce made between England and France.

Ibid. ii. 75.

A new great seal made, and the charters previously granted re-sealed.

M°.C°.XCIX°. Hubertus . . . suus [fundaverat][6] auctoritate papali, volens nolens complanavit. Statutis, ut . . . . trucidavit. Tandem ad Aquitannicum tractum veniens, in territorio . . . a Petro Basilii telo venenato . . . . apposita. Diebus autem xii. . . . . mancipavit. Cum autem, aggravescente malo, mortem sensisset appropinquare,[7] confessione . . . . præcepit.[8] Corpus autem suum ecclesiæ Fontis-Ebraudi, ad pedes patris sui, cujus proditorem se fuisse cum lacrimis confitebatur, jussit sepeliri.[9] Ecclesiæ autem Rothomagensi, quia Normanniam præcordialiter diligebat, cor suum inexpugnabile[10] delegavit. Apud vero castrum . . . munere relinquens Pictavensibus.

H. A. ii. 75.

Ibid. ii. 76.

fol. 36 *b*.

Testamentary dispositions of Richard, and death.

---

[1] *significans*] signifans, MS.

[2] *suum*] Repeated superfluously after *sigillum*.

[3] *amisisse*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *commento*] comento, MS.

[5] *thesaurum*] thesarum, MS.

[6] *fundaverat*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *appropinquare*] approquintare, MS., but *quinta* afterwards erased.

[8] In the margin is drawn the shield of Richard, with a cross-bow below it, both reversed.

[9] *sepeliri*] sepiliri, MS.

[10] *inexpugnabile*] inexpungnabile, MS.

7 April.

Septimo[1] igitur idus Aprilis rex spiritum exhalavit.[2] De cujus morte et sepultura . . . modum:

Ibid. ii. 77. "Pictavis exta . . . . tanta ruina."
"In Chaluz . . . . lucis adeptæ."
"Christe, tui . . . . æra Crucis."

Proceedings of John to secure the throne. His coronation. John goes to Normandy. Otho IV. emperor. Interdict in France. The bp. of Beauvais released.

Ibid. ii. 78. Victoriosissimo[3] . . . . . . justiciario. Denunciatumque regi
Scotorum, ut veniret in Angliam, eidem J[ohanni] quod jus
dictaret perfacturus. Ortum autem est murmur inter magnates.
Quidam enim adhæserunt Arthuro, quidam Johanni.
Unde comes J[ohannes] cum Alienora, matre ejus, multos
rebelles eis contriverunt. Veniens autem comes Rothomagum,
gladio ducatus ibidem accinctus est, per manum Walteri, Rothomagensis
archiepiscopi. Veniensque in Angliam Londoniis
coronandus, occurrentibus regni magnatibus properavit; et
coronatus est ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi H[uberto]. In
Ibid. ii. 80. qua coronatione triplici . . . . . incursu opprimentium indempnem
. . . regno exerceret.[4] Deinde adjuratus . . . . adimplere. Et
sic archiepiscopus, eo omnia hæc jurante, manu[5] extenta ad
corpus Domini et evangelia,[6] et deinde ad pectus, capiti ejus
coronam apponens, unxit[7] eum in regem. Deinde veniens in
Normanniam, multorum magnatum[8] ibi corda sibi conciliavit.
fol. 37 *a*. Habitumque [est][9] colloquium inter reges, et statutæ . . . beatæ
Ibid. ii. 81. Virginis, ut interim de pace tractarent. Venerunt interea . . .
Flandrensis et multi . . . pepigerunt cum eo fœdus, lucris
inhiantes. Quod et rex Francorum moleste tulit. Eodem tem-
Ibid. ii. 82. pore rex . . . militari; et fecit Arthurus . . . . . perquirenda.
Convenerunt reges ad colloquium, sed discordes discesserunt.
Recedente autem in hunc modum rege Francorum, Willelmus
de Rupibus callide . . . cum rege Anglorum, et Arthurus
Ibid. ii. 83. denuo . . . recessit. Eodem tempore Otho,[10] Romam veniens,
ad imperium est promotus. Francia est interdicta. Et, ne
eandem pœnam subiret,[11] episcopus Belvacensis cum suis, qui
jam per biennium in custodia detinebatur, est abire permissus,
graviter tamen redemptus.

Treaty for the marriage of

[M°.CC°.][12] Alienora regina missa est in Hispaniam ad Andefulsum, regem Castellæ, [propter][13] neptem regis J[ohannis]

---

[1] *Septimo*] A mistake for *Octavo*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 77.

[2] *exhalavit*] exalavit, MS.

[3] In the margin is drawn the shield of John, erect.

[4] *exerceret*] excerceret, MS.

[5] *manu*] Repeated after *evangelia*.

[6] *evangelia*] ewangelia, MS.

[7] *unxit*] uncxit, MS.

[8] *magnatum*] Repeated after *corda*, on an erasure.

[9] *est*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 81.

[10] *Otho*] Otto, MS.

[11] *subiret*] *scil.* rex Anglorum.

[12] The date of the year is omitted in the MS.

[13] *propter*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 85.

John's niece to Louis of France. Cities in Normandy restored. Marriage of John to Isabel of Angoulême. *Sanctus H*[*ugo*] *episcopus migra*[*vit ad Dominum*]. Succession of prelates.

A.D. 1200. Lodouuico, filio regis, maritandam, quia sic inter eos convenit.
Et sic fœdus inter eos firmatum est. Rex Anglorum, in Angliam
transfretans, cepit . . . solidos; et cito post remeavit Ibid. ii. 85.
in Normanniam. Ludowicus, filius regis Francorum, duxit
Blanchiam, filiam regis Hispaniæ, in uxorem. Rex Francorum
reddidit regi Anglorum[1] multas civitates, castella et terras
Normanniæ. Rex Johannes venit in Angliam, qui, repudiata
priore uxore, jam in uxorem duxerat Ysabellam . . . . Marchiæ. Ibid. ii. 86.
Coronata est igitur Ysabella, et portaverunt coronam
rex et regina Londoniis solempniter. Hugo, Lincolniensis episcopus,
debita naturæ persolvit. Qui propter vitæ eminentiam,
et virtutum ac signorum claritatem, sanctorum cathalogo est annumeratus.
Egidius de Brausia consecratus est in episcopum
Herefordensem; Maugerus, in Wigorniensem; Johannes de
Grai, in Norwicensem. Apparuerunt de nocte . . . . . multis Ibid. ii. 89.
stellis.

Coronation of John and his queen at Canterbury. 3 May. They go to Normandy. Peace made with France. Tax in aid of the Holy Land.

M°.CC°.I°. Rex Johannes et regina Ysabella denuo coronam
portarunt insimul solempniter, sicut antea fecerant Londoniis,
Cantuariæ, præsente archiepiscopo H[uberto]; dimissa Hawisa[2]
palam, priore sponsa sua, filia comitis Gloverniæ, propter
sanguinitatem. Sed hæc alibi. Eodem anno, die videlicet
Ascensionis, exiit edictum regale, ut omnes . . . . transfretandum, H. A. ii. 90.
ad Pentecosten. Et tunc rex transfretavit, cum regina.
Deinde convenerunt ad colloquium reges. Videns autem rex
Francorum robur adversantium, consensit ut cum rege Anglorum
pacificaretur. Et tunc rex Anglorum J[ohannes] venit
cum rege Francorum Parisius. Rex Anglorum fecit homagium
regi Francorum. Lodowicus desponsavit Blanchiam.
Francia fuit tunc interdicta. Abbas de Flai floruit in [Gallia].[3]
Ad instantiam Innocentii III. papæ concessa quadragesima
pars reddituum omnium ecclesiarum, ad subventionem Terræ fol. 37 *b*.
Sanctæ. Fulco prædicator floruit in Gallia.

John at Argentan.

M°.CC°.II°. Rex Anglorum J[ohannes] celebravit Natale apud
Argentomium. Et in Quadragesima . . . reges juxta castellum H. A. ii. 92.
de Guletun; ubi rex Francorum oblitus prius actorum, mortali
. . . . quæ rex Anglorum præcise abnegavit. Itaque . . . haberet,
rex Francorum . . . . subvertit. Et ita progrediens, omnia
quasi fulgurans dissipavit. Reversusque Parisius . . . ducentos,
qui cum . . . ut eam sibi subjugaret. Nunciatumque eis

---

[1] *regi Anglorum*] Repeated superfluously after *Normanniæ*.

[2] *Hawisa*] A mistake for *Isabella*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 86.

[3] *Gallia*] Cut off by the binder.

The lines from *Rex Anglorum fecit* to *in Gallia* have been added subsequently by Matthew Paris, and contain partly a repetition of events noticed under the previous year.

. . . dicitur, commorari. Et illuc omnes properarunt castrum vallantes, et obsesso infatigabiliter infestantes, castrum, quod[1] erat immunitum, ad deditionem [compulerunt].[2] Quod cum audisset rex J[ohannes], ocius advolat[3] illuc; Franci autem imperterriti[4] illi obviam pugnaturi[5] occurrunt. Factus est igitur conflictus acerrimus, sed virtute Anglorum cito terminatus. Capti sunt ibi milites ducenti; Arthurus et omnes qui ibidem erant, Pictavenses et Andegavenses.[6] Ligatos igitur captivos misit in Normanniam vel Angliam; Arthurum vero misit ad Falesiam tutius custodiendum. Elapso igitur aliquanto tempore, Arthurus evanuit. Verumtamen ab aliquibus . . . submersus est. Franci vero . . . asserunt, quod præcepto regis J[ohannis] vel etiam manibus fuerat interemptus. Per malitiam tamen obloquentium non mediocriter super hoc rex Anglorum J[ohannes] extitit diffamatus.

A.D. 1202. Proceedings in Normandy.

Victory gained by John.

Death of Arthur.

H. A. ii. 95.

M°.CC°.III°. Rex Anglorum J[ohannes] Natale Domini apud Cadomum celebravit; ubi . . . cotidie, somnos protrahens matutinales. Rex interim Francorum, pervigil, cepit . . . . fortiora sibi reservavit. Venientibus . . . suorum, præcipue Anglorum, qui ob hoc confundebantur, nunciis, rex respondit Johannes, "Sinite . . . ille temere per plures dies occupavit; una die recuperabo." Nobiles igitur, cum non possent aliud responsum reportare, impetrata licentia, ad propria dolentes et indignantes remearunt. Unde rex . . . excelsiora, et cœptis insistebat vigilantius. Quid plura? Captis nobilioribus castris Normanniæ, rex J[ohannes] in Angliam inglorius remeavit, ab omnibus, et tunc præcipue a Normannis, discrimini patentibus, derisus et redargutus. Quo cum pervenisset, desævit in Anglos, asserendo accusans eos, quod ipsum in articulo[7] deseruissent constitutum. Omnia regi Francorum, rege J[ohanne] absente, patuerunt leviter capienda. Willelmus, ecclesiæ Lincolniensis præcentor, factus est episcopus ejusdem ecclesiæ.

H. A. ii. 96.

John at Caen.

fol. 38 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 97.

John returns to England.

William bishop of Lincoln.

M°.CC°.IIII°. Rex J[ohannes] Natale Domini celebravit Cantuariæ, H[uberto] archiepiscopo omnia necessaria ministrante. In crastino vero Circumcisionis, convenientibus Angliæ mag-

John at Canterbury.

2 Jan.

---

[1] *quod*] ad quod, MS.

[2] *compulerunt*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 93.

[3] *advolat*] avolat, MS.

[4] *imperterriti*] ei imperterriti, MS.

[5] *pugnaturi*] pungnaturi, MS.

[6] *Andegavenses*] Angegavenses, MS.

[7] *in articulo*] A phrase similar to *in arcto*, and used elsewhere. See *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 179.

A.D. 1204.

Rouen submits to the king of France.

Succession of prelates.

natibus, concessa . . . quolibet scutico,[1] duæ marcæ et dimidia. Nec ecclesiæ personæ sine promissione recesserunt. Illo tempore Rothomagum et omnes fines contermini in ditionem regis Francorum cesserunt. Simon de Welles factus est episcopus Cicestrensis. Godefridus, Wintoniensis, diem clausit extremum; cui successit Petrus de Rupibus. Baldewinus . . . Constantinopolitanus. Hoc quoque . . . Alienora in abbatia . . . . evangelistæ.[2]

H. A. ii. 100.

Ibid. ii. 102.

John embarks at Portsmouth, but returns.

Death of Hubert, abp. of Canterbury.

Election of his successor, and proceedings thereon.

M°.CC°.V°. Rex Johannes . . . per unum diem. Mense autem Januarii . . . . . vendebatur. Circa Pentecosten rex J[ohannes] se præparavit ad transfretandum. Deinde cum parvo comitatu apud Portesmue naves ascendit, et, mutato per archiepiscopum consilio, apud Stodland juxta Warram applicuit. Reversus . . . infinitam pecuniam, argumentose prætendens causam, quod scilicet nollent ipsum sequi in partes[3] . . . ibi amissam recuperaret. Obiit Hubertus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apud Tenham; rege super hoc gaudente et dicente, "Nunc primum sum rex Angliæ." Et hoc dixit, quia nimis præsumptuosus erat ad regios impetus refrænandos. Defuncto itaque ipso, antequam corpus sepulturæ traderetur, adolescentiores fratres de conventu, regis consensu irrequisito, Reginaldum, eorum suppriorem, in archiepiscopum sibi elegerunt; media nocte super hoc Te Deum decantantes.[4] Timebant enim quod rex, si de morte certificaretur, liberam eorum electionem impediret. Romam autem festinanter et clam perveniens, petiit a papa confirmari, et illud obiter, contra juramentum factum conventui, divulgaverat. Papa vero respondit, quod voluit super hoc deliberare et expectare, donec majorem haberet inde certitudinem. Monachi interea Cantuarienses irati, eo quod perjurus electus consilium eorum detexerat, quosdam de conventu ad regem destinarunt, ut requirerent ab eo licentiam eligendi. Quod et rex annuens, rogavit pro episcopo Norwicensi. Conventus autem hæc audiens, ut sibi regem, quem offenderat, reconciliaret, Johannem, episcopum Norwicensem, in archiepiscopum postularunt. Rex, ut hæc consummarentur, simul cum quibusdam monachis Cantuariensibus quosdam suos clericos Romam destinavit; et hic error, alteri errori adjunctus, seminarium totius discordiæ futuræ generavit.

H. A. ii. 103.

fol. 38 *b*.

John at Oxford.

M°.CC°.VI°. Rex J[ohannes] dies Natalicios Domini apud Oxoniam celebravit. Miserunt episcopi Cantuariensis [ecclesiæ][5]

---

[1] *scutico*] In the text *scō* . . but corr. in marg.

[2] *evangelistæ*] ewangeliste, MS.

[3] *in partes*] Repeated in MS.

[4] *decantantes*] decantes, MS.

[5] *ecclesiæ*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

H. A. ii. 107. suffraganei procuratores suos Romam . . . querimoniam repo- A.D. 1206.
nentes, quod monachi Cantuarienses sine illis electionem vel
postulationem temere præsumpsissent celebrare. Monachi vero
. . . . diffinitiva. Obierunt Willelmus . . . episcopus, et
Henricus . . . de Apulia. Jocelinus . . . Bathoniensem[1] con-
secratur. Eodemque anno rex Johannes, capto fortissimo castro Arrival of John of Ferentino as legate.
. . . Pictavia. Johannes Ferentinus veniens legatus in An-
gliam, cumque perlustrans, magnam ex ea pecuniam congessit.
Et tandem . . . Radingum concilio celebrato, repentinus cum
Ibid. ii. 108. clitellis completis remeavit. Treugæ . . . constituuntur.

M°.CC°.VII°. Rex Johannes dies Domini Natalicios apud Win- John at Winchester.
H. A. ii. 108. toniam celebravit. Deinde in . . . . . cunctis licet obmurmuran-
tibus et præ dolore ingemiscentibus. Solus Gaufridus, archi-
episcopus Eboracensis, plane . . . qui [in][2] suo[3] archiepisco-
patu hanc rapinam facerent, et in genere . . . innodavit.
Otho venit . . . et cum venisset Londonias, ornata est civitas Visit of the emperor Otho to London.
Ibid. ii. 109. coronis, lampadibus et olosericis. Et cum per . . . gaudio,
fol. 39 *a*. multiplicavit imperator . . . restaurare; immo etiam . . .
civitates sibi debitas indubitantur subjugare. Unde idem . . . Order of the Minorites.
marcas meruit reportare. Sub eisdem temporibus fratres qui
dicuntur Minores, favente papa Innocentio, inceperunt per
loca domos ædificare, et eas in capitalibus civitatibus inhabi-
tare, et publice prædicare. Eodem tempore monachis Can- Election of Stephen de Langetone as archbp.
tuariensibus ad invicem decertantibus, ipsi pro suo, alii pro
suo electo, instinctu papæ elegerunt monachi magistrum Ste-
Ibid. ii. 111. phanum de Langetona . . . . et scientia. Dictumque fuit, quod
papa ex invidia hoc procuravit, ut, absente magistro Stephano,
ipse maximus videretur; sed quia ipsum papa creaverat, nullo
modo ei papa potuit in necessitate deesse. Omnes igitur mo-
nachi qui Romæ . . . . archiepiscopum memoratum palam pro-
Ibid. ii. 112. clamaverunt. Papa igitur Innocentius regi . . . . . . speciales in
virtute obedientiæ . . . obedirent. Hoc autem audiens rex J[o-
hannes] iratus est valde, tam de promotione magistri Stephani,
quam cassatione sui electi, episcopi videlicet Norwicensis, unde
monachi Cantuarienses a domo sua sunt expulsi. Dicebat
ipsos suos fuisse inimicos, qui Stephanum illum elegerunt;
regni Angliæ publicum inimicum, qui . . . . . consecrari. Exu- Expulsion of the monks of Canterbury.
lantibus igitur monachis et infiscatis omnibus bonis Cantua-
riensis ecclesiæ, pervenit querimonia tantorum excessuum ad
papam, et tota curia Romana[4] commota est vehementer.

---

[1] *Bathoniensem*] Bothon̄, MS.

[2] *in*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *suo*] Repeated superfluously after *archiepiscopatu.*

[4] *tota curia Romana*] totam curiam Romanam, MS.

A.D. 1207. Death of the bp. of Chichester.

Obiit Symon, episcopus Cicestrensis. Ysabella . . . primogenitum, die sancti Remigii, et aptatum . . . Henricus. Ibid. ii. 114.

John at Windsor. Deaths of bishops. England placed under an interdict, 23 March.

M°.CC°.VIII°. Johannes, rex Anglorum, celebravit dies Natalicios apud Windeleshores.[1] Obierunt Philippus, Dunelmensis, et Gaufridus, Cicestrensis, episcopi. Discurrebant interea diebus singulis hinc inde inter papam et regem nuncii, sed nihil . . . coacervantes. H. A. ii. 114. Cum igitur papa plures et pluries nuncios ad regem destinasset, et nihil proficiebant, prima die Lunæ in Passione Domini, scilicet x°. kalendas Aprilis, sub generali interdicto conclusum est regnum Anglicanum.[2] Unde quidam ait versificator,

> "Mille ducentenis annis, octoque peractis,
> Tollitur Angligenis cultus et ordo sacer."

Infiscantur igitur omnia bona ecclesiæ in Anglia. Rex autem sibi timens, homagia . . . obsides. Philippus, dux . . . Othonis, interimitur. Cisterciensies, qui celebrare præsumebant, sunt suspensi. Ibid. ii. 117. fol. 39 *b*. Hoc quoque anno peperit Ysabella filium, et vocatus est Ricardus. Anglicana viluit ecclesia propter interdictum, exulantibus episcopis.[3]

Birth of prince Richard.

John at Bristol. Fowling and fishing prohibited. Arrival of the duke of Saxony.

M°.CC°.IX°. Rex Anglorum J[ohannes] Natale Domini celebravit apud Bristoldum. Capturam autem avium per totam Angliam interdixit, et in multis fluviis piscaturam; unde, quod admiratione dignum est, aves et pisces facti sunt pauciores. Dux Suaviæ[4] venit in Angliam ex parte Othonis, thesaurum[5] ad opus ipsius Othonis exacturus; unde quod postulavit reportans, repatriavit. Procurante Stephano . . . Angliæ condoluit . . . divina; Cistercienses vero hac . . . prænotatam. H. A. ii. 118. Per idem tempus . . . . militari. Festo autem sancti . . . Londoniensium.

Treaty with the king of Scotland.

Rex Anglorum fœdus iniit cum rege Scotorum. Dedit tamen rex Scotorum regi Anglorum pro bono pacis et fœderis ix. milia marcarum. Insuper, ad majorem securitatem, tradidit[6] eidem regi J[ohanni] dictus rex Scotorum duas filias suas in obsidatum.

Otho IV. consecrated. Two scholars hung at Oxford.

Otho consecratus est in imperatorem Romanum. Henricus, dux Saxoniæ, venit in Angliam, frater Othonis. Duo scolares Oxoniæ propter quandam mulierculam, cum

---

[1] *Windeleshores*] Windelehor', MS.

[2] In the margin is drawn a church bell reversed.

[3] *Anglicana . . episcopis*] Added on to the text, as originally written.

[4] *Suaviæ*] A mistake for *Saxoniæ*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 117.

[5] *thesaurum*] ut thesaurum, MS., and *thesaurum* repeated before *exacturus*.

[6] *tradidit*] tradiit, MS.

tamen insontes essent, sunt suspensi. Recessit igitur universitas A.D. 1209.
Ibid. ii. scolarium . . . quam clerici; quorum . . . . Oxoniæ Walter de
120. vacuam reliquerunt. Hugo de Welles, regis . . . promovetur. Grai made
Rex sigillum suum [tradens][1] Waltero de Grai, fecit eum chancellor.
cancellarium suum.

H. A. ii. M°.CC°.X°. Rex Johannes . . . Windeleshores. Deinde, rege John at
121. . . . . ab eis pecunia extorqueretur; unde ab . . . emunxit.[2] Windsor.
Multi magnatum et etiam quidam de familia sua, quantum His nobles
poterunt, a rege sese retraxerunt. Rex in Hiberniam profectus, desert him.
Ibid. ii. applicuit viii. idus Junii. Et cum ad . . . . supersedentibus, 6 June.
122. loca inexpugnabilia habitantibus. Qui tandem cum comminationibus Ireland is
vocati, venerunt præ timore, et regi homagium fecerunt subdued.
et fidelitatem, leges Anglicanas suscipientes. Et præfecit
fol. 40 *a*. eis custodes . . . . rotunditatem. Progrediens igitur rex in
Hyberniam, plurimas . . . . qui in manus regis incidere metuebant.
Tandem in Midiam fulgurando veniens . . . filium ejus
militem, cum uxore[3] . . . incarcerandos. Ad votum igitur
omnibus dispositis ibidem negotiis, iii°. kalendas Septembris 30 Aug.
Ibid. ii. remeavit. Deinde Londonias . . . . dilapidationem, ut egeret
123. per multum sequens tempus totius Angliæ latitudo, ita videlicet
quod summa extortæ pecuniæ ad centum milia marcarum Tax levied
argenti dicitur ascendisse. Cistercienses quoque . . . . ne querela on the
eorum, qui de diversis et remotis partibus adveniunt, ipsum clergy.
diffamarent. Assidebant . . . Londoniis, Ricardus . . . . milites.
Walterus de Grai . . . Henricus de Staford[4] in Exoniensem.
Eodem tempore Matildis, mulier nobilissima prædicta, filiusque Death of
ejus et heres et uxor ejus, apud Windeleshores incarcerati Matilda de
durissime ac dirissime, fame cum dolore maxima perierunt. Brause, her
Cujus doloris series, si plenius describeretur, lacrimas excuteret son, and
etiam tirannorum. his wife.

H. A. ii. M°.CC°.XI°. Rex J[ohannes] . . . . . . Snaudunam usque perveniens,
124. obvia sibi omnia conterendo . . . accipiens juramenta
et obsides ab eisdem; ex quibus, pro patrum excessibus, xx^ti^.
et viii°. postea suspendi feraliter imperavit. Deinde ad votum
fol. 40 *b*. triumphans, ad Album-monasterium . . . . infecto negotio,
in Galliam redierunt. Quo facto . . . duas marcas. Obiit vir Death of
nobilis et miles invictus Rogerus, Cestrensis constabularius. Reginald,
Ibid. ii. Reginaldus, comes . . . . confugit ad alas regis J[ohannis]; qui constable
125. statim trecentas libratas terræ cum donativis, in odium regis of Chester.
Francorum, eidem contulit pretiosis. Comes autem . . . fideli-

---

[1] *tradens*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 121.

[2] *emunxit*] emuncsit, MS.

[3] *uxore*] xore, MS.

[4] *Staford*] At first written *Sanford*.

A.D. 1211. tatem. Recesserat autem a domino suo rege Francorum, ob suam superbiam et contumaciam. Leolinus autem . . . . et venit ad deditionem; cui rex filiam suam concessit maritandam. Obierunt eodem anno Robertus de Thurnam [et][1] Willelmus . . . fugerat Gallicanas, apud Corbuliam;[2] corpus . . . Sanctum Victorem tumulandum. Innocentius papa . . . nunciis suis, ut prædictum est, contumaciter respondisset, et claves obstinate contempsisset, tam pauperes . . . . . evitarent. Ibid. ii. 126.

M°.CC°.XII°. Rex fuit ad . . . sequente, scilicet Dominica H. A. ii. 126.
John's cruelty to those who avoided him.
. . . Scotorum Willelmi, et . . . militari. Et cum percepisset
aliquos vitare ipsum, propter sententiam papalem, desævit in
eosdem, scilicet Galfridum . . . arctissime incarceratum jussit
tormento perimi excogitato. Magister vero Willelmus de Nectona, regis clericus specialis, fidelis et omni dignus honore,
ne simili ob illam causam subjaceret discrimini, clam . . .
transmarinas, et apud Curboliam latitavit. Multi quoque nobiles . . . ultramarinis ac ignotis . . . . et tandem proscriptus. Ibid. ii. 127.
Obiit etiam Malgerus . . . . . conventus magnum, quem ei iterum
transmisit Anglia, habere confessorem. Obiit etiam Baldeuuinus
. . . Samson.[3] Eisdem[4] temporibus erat in provincia . . . futura infallibiliter prædixerat . . . . palam prædicabat, scilicet, Ibid. ii. 129.
quod non foret . . . . . ipsum duceretur, quæsivit ab illo si . . fol. 41 *a*.
. . . . cui rex, "Fiat tibi secundum verbum tuum." Tunc . . .
videretur. Sollicitavit interim . . . . morabantur, ut in tirannum
. . . . universalis per hanc discordiam . . . pateretur. Combusta[5] est . . . et columpna[6] super pontem . . . . . correptionem Ibid. ii. 131.
civium et correctionem. Roberti filii-Walteri . . . . destruuntur,
ædificia comburuntur, arbusta venduntur, pomeria extirpantur;
eosdemque homines et dominos [rex][7] jussit irrevocabiliter
Faukes [de Breauté].
utlagari. Surrexitque[8] . . . Domini quidam ruptarius, nomine
Falcasius, Neuster natione. Qui quandoque unus custodum
Marchiæ Wallensis[9] a rege J[ohanne] constituebatur, ortu
vero spurius, et pro meritis a patria sua fugitivus. De quo,
cum rex illum nullum genus facinorum cognovisset[10] formidare Ibid. ii. 132.
. . . . . execrabilis.

M°.CC°.XIII°. Rex Johannes . . . Westmonasterium. Tunc H. A. ii. 132.

---

[1] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[2] *Curbuliam*] Curbulium, MS. In *Hist. Angl.* Curbulam.

[3] *Samson*] Sanson, MS.

[4] *Eisdem*] Eidem, MS.

[5] *Combusta*] Conbusta, MS.

[6] *columpna*] An error for *capella*, as in *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *rex*] Omitted in MS.

[8] *Surrexitque*] Surexitque, MS.

[9] *Wallensis*] Valensis, MS.

[10] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

etiam increbruerunt . . . qui merito[1] inter martires computandus A.D. 1213.
est, quia . . . persecutionem. Mense vero Januarii
fol. 41 *b*. . . . . promulgarunt. Tunc rex Francorum . . . . jussit sub
Ibid. ii. 133. nomine . . . mererentur, scilicet exheredationis. Fecit etiam Preparations in France to invade England.
omnes . . . poterat, etiam de Janua et Pisa, bellicosas conducticias
super mare versus Angliam congregare, et congregatas
frumento . . . communire. Rex autem J[ohannes]
e regione sese potenter et prudenter studuit communiendo
Ibid. ii. 134. præparare, proponens cum hostibus navale . . . . . adventum,
venerunt duo fratres . . . et venientes dixerunt ei amicabiliter,
"Mittimur . . . . . . condempnatus." Quod cum regi . . . . . .
et laicis, ut, ipso duce . . . . parendi, et, licet sero, humiliari,
poteris adhuc forsitan ex clementia . . . fuisti abjudicatus."
Hiis igitur intellectis, rex J[ohannes], sed sero,
Ibid. ii. 135. humiliatus est, licet invitus et mente merito perturbatus . . .
imminere.[2] Demersus igitur in abissum desperationis, persuasionibus
. . . probrosam et toti Angliæ dampnosam adquievit.
Cujus summa . . . . satisfaciet. Quod cum rex . . . intimi
cruentam amaritudinem et lacrimarum effusionem commovebatur.
Hoc autem infeliciter factum fuit . . . . J[ohannis] xiiii°.
Instabat autem dies Ascensionis. Et videns rex quod adhuc 16 May.
viveret, jussit Petrum heremitam, propter assertiones suas, et
filium suum suspendi. Hiis factis, P[andulphus] cum carta prædicta Peter the hermit and his son hung.
fol. 42 *a*. Ibid. ii. 137. in Galliam remeavit, viii°. milia librarum . . . . . . diligenter
admonuit, qui jam parabatur . . . remearet. Rex enim
Anglorum J[ohannes] filius factus est obedientiæ et reconciliationis.
Hæc audiens rex Francorum, iratus est nimis, dolens se
verbis fallacibus fuisse muscipulatum. Expenderat enim, stimulante
papa, plusquam[3] lx^{ta}. . . . apparatu, nec aliquid nisi
probra reportaret. Et quia suggestione[4] . . . nullatenus dictis
P[andulphi] . . . . in Anglia? Quinimmo, detines . . .
cismarinas." Quod audiens . . . confestim ut recederet imperavit;
Ibid. ii. 137, 138. et insequens . . . ferro feraliter cœpit exterminare.
Præterea nautis . . . . propter eum constituto suffragaretur,
militare sibi præsidium destinando. Hiis auditis, rex Anglorum Aid sent by John to the count of Flanders.
misit in succursum comitis fratrem suum Willelmum, ducem vel
Ibid. ii. 138. comitem Holandiæ, et Reginaldum . . . . faciebant; ubi totam
navium . . . . regis Francorum, et ipsam . . . marinellis,
caruisse. Exierant enim milites ad prædandum in terra comitis.
Quod cum milites regis Anglorum cognovissent, ad arma prosilientes,
trecentas ex eis frumento, vino, et aliis victualibus et

---

[1] *merito*] Repeated superflously after *martires*.

[2] *imminere*] iminere, MS.

[3] *plusquam*] plus, MS.

[4] *suggestione*] sugestione, MS.

A.D. 1213.

armis onustas . . . stabant, combusserunt . . . . . possiderunt. Ibid. ii. 139. Rex igitur Francorum cum suis confusus et inglorius est reversus. Rex igitur Anglorum, hiis auditis, mente respiravit,

"Ut solet infuso vena redire mero;"[1]

præcepitque[2] multitudini . . . . pecuniæ quantitatem, promittens Ibid. ii. 139. eis . . . regis Francorum vastarent, et ibidem[3] incendiis vacarent et rapinis. fol. 42 *b.*

John proposes to go to Poitou.

Ipse rex apud Portesmuam cum exercitu copioso in Pictaviam transfretavit.[4] Magnates Angliæ, sicut ei aperte prædixerant, ipsum sequi, nec mirum, plenarie noluerunt . . . liber et expeditus, martiis casibus indulgerent. Hac igitur districtione . . . . omnia sibi pacta et placita recepturi. Ascenderunt . . . . . regem pervenerunt. Ductus est igitur in capitulum . . . . pacem recipiente. Fecit insuper rex præ- Ibid. ii. 140. latos et magnates Angliæ universos,[5] quod si, instigante sinistro spiritu, prædictis præsumeret adversari, omnibus quibus possent modis cogerent fidelitati inclinare. Inde præcepit in . . . spoliatis; sed qualiter restituebantur, novit Deus, omnium conscius secretorum. Continuo vero . . . . . negotia tractarentur. Quo facto, venit ibidem militum multitudo copiosa, cui promiserat in omnibus necessariis efficaciter patrocinari.

His troops refuse to accompany him, and he returns to England.

Quæ tamdiu ibidem expectabat voluntatem hoc jubentis, ut, omni pecunia eorum jam exposita, equos et arma vendere cogebantur; unde eum sequi nequiverant qui prius potuerunt, nisi de fisco ipsis rex stipendia necessaria ministraret. Quod cum rex facere recusaret, iratus . . . . reversis. Unde cum Ibid. ii. 141. sese cerneret sic derelictum, ad Angliam remeavit.

Orders given for the observance of the laws.

Denunciatum est vicecomitibus, forestariis et aliis regis ministris, ut, omni pace concessa, nihil attemptent perturbationis, sicut facere consueverant; et hoc, invito vel nescio rege, per Cantuariensem archiepiscopum et G[aufridum] filium-P[etri] et alios regni custodes. Quod cum regi innotuisset, objurgans cœpit pœnitere quod unquam paci consenserit; et, repulsis suis naturalibus baronibus, consiliis alienigenarum et spuriorum, ira successus rediviva.

John goes towards the north, but returns to London.

Juravitque, quod propter unum clerigastrum non omitteret homines suos edomare. Inde raptim se contulit versus partes, nescitur ad quid, aquilonares. Quem modeste prosequens archiepiscopus, vix regem blandimentis simul et comminationibus remeare fecit Londoniam. Eodem

---

[1] Ovid. Ep. ex Ponto, lib. i. 3, 10.

[2] *que*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *et ibidem*] On an erasure.

[4] *transfretavit*] This is a mistake. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *universos*] A verb is here wanting, but the *Hist. Angl.* affords no assistance. Perhaps we may supply *jurare?*

A.D. 1213.

14 Oct. Death of Geoffrey Fitz-Peter. Conduct of the legate Nicholas.

Ibid. ii. 145.

fol. 43 *a*.

anno, ii. idus Octobris, obiit Galfridus filius-Petri, in cujus casu enervatum est robur regni et consilium. Circa festum . . . statum ecclesiæ languentis et regni vacillantis reformaret. Qui apud . . . deposuit, et multos, qui in tempore guerræ regem dampnificaverant, graviter punivit. Summopere[1] enim regi placere, aliis licet offensis, satagebat; dederat enim ei rex ilico donativa pretiosa. Extortos igitur redditus ab Anglis suis compatriotis dedit et consanguineis; unde qui nuper cum quinque equitaturis venerat et uno mulo macilentis, jam triginta vel pluribus stipatus incedebat.

H. A. ii. 147.

The legate's tyranny in bestowing benefices on his unworthy countrymen. An instance of this given.

M°.CC°.XIIII°. Rex Anglorum J[ohannes] ad . . . . et ejusdem suffraganei. Moleste enim et . . . regiis nutibus inclinatus, in ecclesiis vacantibus prælatos instituit insufficientes, intrusione magis quam canonica electione; et suis, quos vocavit[2] consanguineis, affinibus et compatriotis, prorsus indignis, et quampluribus absentibus et ignotis, redditus contulit opulentos, rege benigne hæc acceptante. Unde unum casum huic paginæ ridiculosum, licet videatur inutilis digressio, duximus annectendum. Reliquit idem Nicholaus quandam mulierculam, eidem consanguinitate propinquam, gravidam et in proximo parituram. Cui recessurus a patria sua dixit, "Redditum opimum me promitto certissime proli tuæ collaturum, filius si fuerit; sin autem, iterum ilico concipe, ut filium valeas generare, quem multis redditibus locupletabo. Vado enim legatus in Angliam." Mulier autem filiam edidit, nec unquam prolem edidit postea nisi femininam, quamvis postea immaturas filias tres vel quatuor generasset. Hæc iccirco dixerim, ut sciat lector quam indifferenter redditus Ytalicis indignis et aliquibus nascituris conferuntur. Appellatum est contra hujusmodi legati tirannidem. Legatus autem . . . . . . subjectionem ipsum solum procaciter appellasse. Asserebat insuper idem P[andulphus], regem . . . . restitutionibus nimis protervos fuisse contra regem humiliatum. Et sic . . . detrimentum cepit et dilationem. Papa enim maximum contra eum rancorum concepit. Rex principibus militiæ . . . . inquietarent, transmisit. Rex insuper, missis Romam . . . suo et apud Rupellam applicuit. Quo audito, sititores auri et argenti venerunt ad eum, pecuniam[3] patulis rictibus inhiantes, barones videlicet Pictaviæ; et infideles ei fidelitatem juraverunt, et ei fidem perfidi promiserunt. Dein progrediens . . . hostium ope et opera Anglicorum sibi subjugavit; sed subjugata incaute

Ibid. ii. 148.

The barons of Poitou swear fealty to John.

---

[1] *Summopere*] At first written *Summo opere*, but *opere* afterwards erased.

[2] *vocavit*] After this word *redditus* is added, but is superfluous.

[3] *pecuniam*] pecuniē, MS.

A.D. 1214. alienis commisit, spretis Anglicis, custodienda. Cum autem durasset . . . . interdicti. fol. 43 *b*.

Ibid. ii. 149.

Death of John, abbat of St. Alban's. 17 July.

Johannes, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, vir ad plenum literatus, et in Ordine sancti Benedicti moribus informatus,[1] die beati Kenelmi, sicut idem sanctus multis ante præteritis annis prædixerat, viam universæ carnis est ingressus. Rex ad castrum . . . . . illuc properavit. Rex autem J[ohannes], hoc audito,[2] præparavit . . . ut resisteret. Et cum animassent eum Anglici imperterriti, Pictavenses . . . prœlium conserendum. Tunc rex . . . imminebat.[3]

Joy of the French at the treachery of the Poitevins.

Ibid. ii. 150.

Franci autem plus gaudebant super illo casu, quam unquam de alio qui eis contingebat, immo etiam de illo qui in Flandria evenit. Sed de illo in sequentibus declarabitur. Hiis quoque diebus . . . Francorum perterruit. Erant namque[4] in . . . . et Braibanciæ, qui pari tirannide in Francigenas fremuerunt. Additus etiam est et hiis quidam comes Alemanniæ . . . nominabant. Tandem autem venit . . . paucis militibus comitatus. Cumque hæc . . . nec mirum, perterritus,[5] invocato tamen Dei et sancti Dionisii suffragio, occurrit eis cum . . . .

Ibid. ii. 151.

Battle of Bovines.

Anglorum bellum quod præparaverant conserere, Hugo de Boves, Christianus umbratilis, non reputans . . . dies te, Hugo, proditorem, et me probabit et fidelem experietur." Exclamato igitur hinc "Regales! Regales!" inde "Montis-gaudium! Montis-gaudium!" perstrepentibus[6] tubis et lituis, commissum est bellum cruentissimum. Et rex in medio acierum est prostratus . . . opponeret, Neuster natione, tandem interfectus est. Et rex vix super equum elevatus, dum quidam alius miles Francigena, qui armis regiis fuerat redimitus, hostium[7] turmis extitit impetitus, qui et tandem periit interemptus. Tandem . . . Julio mense, opponuntur[8] hinc inde hii hiis hostiliter; vulnerantur, prosternuntur, occiduntur, capiuntur. Denuo prævaluit pars Francorum; et post conflictum gravissimum, in quo ipse fere occubuit imperator ab equo pulsus, clam se divertit cum suis quibusdam commilitonibus. Capti sunt ibidem, ex parte regis Anglorum, W[illelmus] comes Saresbiriensis, comes . . . . . Reginaldus, comes Pelu Alemanniæ, cum multis aliis præclaris et viris præpotentibus, qui . . . . et cantibus applaudentium splenduit serenata. fol. 44 *a*.

---

[1] *informatus*] imformatus, MS.

[2] *audito*] audito ad, MS.

[3] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.

[4] *namque*] namque, MS. *passim.*

[5] *perterritus*] perteritus, MS., and orignally written *perturbatus* (as in *Hist. Angl.*), but afterwards erased, and corr. in marg.

[6] *perstrepentibus*] prestrepentibus, MS.

[7] *hostium*] Written at first *fustium*, but *fu* erased, and corr. in marg.

[8] *opponuntur*] opprimuntur, *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1214.

Facta est autem hujus belli . . . . complicum suorum rapuerat, credens sed deceptus, quod ex tali emolumento aliquis fructus proveniret, inaniter expendit. Cum autem hujus . . . . præ dolore, cibum nec potum sumpsit[1] illa die. Et renuens consolationem, recordatus est verbi quod dixerat insons Petrus heremita.

Ibid. ii. 152.

Eodem tempore, nonas Octobris . . . . episcopos consecrantur. Rex Anglorum . . . . rediit in Angliam tristis et inglorius, xiiii. kalendas Novembris;

19 Oct.

Hubert de Burgh becomes surety for money paid to the king of France.

datis proinde regi[2] Francorum viii°. milibus marcarum, pro quibus fidejubebat Hubertus de Burgo; de qua fidejussione multi mirabantur et invidebant, et maxime comes Cestrensis Ranulphus. Unde idem comes dictum Hubertum omnibus diebus odio habuit et persequebatur, quia comes, ad pleggagium se offerens, refutabatur.

Deaths of prelates.

Obiit Thomas de Grai, Norwicensis episcopus, magnæ perturbationis in Anglia occasio. Obiit Galfridus de Glanvilla, episcopus Rofensis.

Meeting of the barons at Bury St. Edmund's.

Convenerunt comites et[3] barones ad commune colloquium[4] apud Sanctum Edmundum, quasi in oratione;

Ibid. ii. 153.

ubi cum diu . . . spem per signa manifesta reportabant, producta est . . . Henrici primi, cujus transcriptum in multis libris Angliæ historialibus habetur, quam . . . magnatibus regni, dum frater . . . remearet. Quam cartam . . . archiepiscopo monstratam viderant et audierant Londoniis. Continebat autem quasdam . . . Edwardi, ecclesiæ Anglicanæ et . . . dicti magnates super . . . libertates inscriptas concedere[5] nollet, prout sæpe ultro juravit, et benigne manuteneret, ipsi[6] ei guerram, sicuti ex præcepto ejusdem regis sacramento tenebantur, tam diu . . . comprobaretur. In hoc tamen . . . ad regem accedentes, libertates præscriptas sibi peterent confirmari.

Ibid. ii. 154.

Eodem quoque anno Johanni . . . monachus successit.

H. A. ii. 154, 155. fol. 44 *b*.

John at Worcester.

M°.CC°.XV°. Rex J[ohannes] curiam suam tenuit Wigorniæ vix uno die. Dein Londonias . . . magnates memorati, qui . . . . crucem suscepit, ut . . . et fortior esset ad resistendum; et castra caute communivit. Obiit Eustachius, episcopus Elyensis.

Ibid. ii. 155.

Ebdomada vero Paschali . . . . . armis decenter communitos.

The barons elect the archbp. as their chief.

Hii igitur omnes confœderati S[tephanum], Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, eo quod utrique parti fidelis extitisset, [sibi constituerunt capitaneum],[7] ut una cum . . . . . . exigunt?" Juravitque horribiliter, se nunquam illa, non sine

---

[1] *sumpsit*] Repeated by error in MS.

[2] *regi*] regis, MS.

[3] *comites et*] Added in marg.

[4] *colloquium*] colloquio, MS., but the last letter erased.

[5] *concederet*] The last letter is erased.

[6] *ipsi*] ipse, MS.

[7] *sibi constituerunt capitaneum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1215.

omnium stupore, in vita concessurum. Quod cum magnates intellexissent, constituerunt . . . . . convolantes, violenter voluerunt et attemptarent regem emollire.

Ibid. ii. 156.

The Exchequer suspended.

Suspensum est scaccarium. Cives Londonienses indicant eis, quod quia rex, eorum violatis libertatibus antiquis et incartatis, eos[1] frequenter depauperat, et quasi ultimæ conditionis servos crebro talliat, quod caute ad urbem veniant, et portis patulis recipientur.

The barons occupy London.

At ipsi de nocte iter conficientes, nullo contradicente, clanculo cointrarunt, et civitatem totam ilico sibi subjugarunt. Quod videns rex, iterum misit ad eos, quorum sermones super oleum molliti et super favum melliti, baronum non semel, sed sæpius, simplicitatem credulam circumvenerunt.

The pope annuls the Great Charter.

Interim rex procuravit donis et promissis, ut papa, habita pro voluntate deliberatione, cartam sæpe dictam, licet pia . . . . cassavit; dicens quod extorta fuit per metum, qui potuit cadere in [virum][2] constantem; licet re vera concessisset eam rex sponte et sereno vultu, ad petitionem ipsius.

H. A. ii. 162.

Rochester castle committed to William de Albini.

Committitur interea castrum Rofense, de communi assensu baronum Londoniis commorantium, Willelmo de Albineto ad custodiendum; cui adhæserunt milites præclari septies xx$^{\text{ti}}$., cum sequela sua; et invenerunt locum illum penitus immunitum. Cum ecce rex, cum innumerabili exercitu alienorum, quos antea, in Vecta insula commorans per aliquot dies, convocaverat, superveniens,[3] obsidione acriter vallavit.

fol. 45 *a*.

John besieges it with foreign mercenaries.

Venerant enim cum rege, qui ad regis mandatum venerant, turba nefandissima ex partibus Pictaviæ,[4] et partium conterminarum, cui præerant Savaricus de Malleone et alii, quibus sanguis innocentium pro nihilo erat in conspectu. Et ex regionibus Lovaniæ et Braibantiæ catervæ . . . exules, quibus præerat . . . transmiserunt.

Hugh de Boves perishes at sea.

Ad quos ulciscendos,[5] vocatus a rege, venit de partibus transmarinis Hugo de Boves, in una navi nobilissima a rege sibi missa, quæ vulgo Husser dicebatur; sed, exorta tempestate, ipse cum tota sequela sua periit in profundo.

Ibid. ii. 164.

Rochester castle taken.

Eodem tempore, cum defecisset[6] inclusis in castro Rofensi succursus cum victualibus, captum est castrum; et omnes suspendio rex interemisset, nisi comminationibus Savarici refrænaretur, dicente, "quod si hæc feceris, tantundem facient ipsorum consortes, si in eorum retiacula inciderimus. Omnes igitur, si eos

---

[1] *eos*] In the text *eum*, but corr. in marg.

[2] *virum*] Supplied from the Greater Chronicle, p. 267.

[3] *superveniens*] superveniens rex, MS.

[4] *ex partibus Pictaviæ*] Repeated by error in the MS.

[5] *ulciscendos*] ulciscen, MS.

[6] *defecisset*] In the text *defecissis*, but corr. in marg.

A.D. 1215.

The pope excommunicates the barons.

Election of Simon de Langetone, as abp. of York, annulled, and the abp. of Canterbury suspended.

John marches northwards, and exercises great cruelties.

Excesses of Faukes [de Breauté].

John gives him the castle of Bedford.

interimis, a te discedimus." Hæc cum audisset rex, eos sine misericordia misit ad Corf et alibi, duris ac diris carceribus mancipandos, et supra posse redimendos. Efficacius igitur adjutus a domino papa rex, procuravit ut barones excommunicarentur; et sic papa, qui prius contra regem eos exacuerat et animaverat, versa rota fortunali et amplexato regni dominio, barones feraliter persequebatur. Eligitur magister Simon de Langetona in archiepiscopum Eboracensem, qui credebatur fratrissare et fratris sequi vestigia; sed electores in sua spe decipiebantur. Procuravit igitur rex, jam totus papalis, ut archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, qui tam vigilanter commodum[1] regis et regni procuraverat, suspenderetur, et fratris ejus, scilicet magistri Simonis de Langetona, electio cassaretur. Sicut enim rex jam totus papalis effectus est, sic et papa regalis. Reputabat enim papa, quod quicquid regi, vassallo suo, subtraheretur, et ei diminueretur. Procuravit insuper rex, quod papa suspensionem confirmavit supradictam. Rex insuper, ad partes se conferens aquilonares, terras baronum exterminavit, cædibus vacans et rapinis; exercens[2] extortiones pecuniarum cum tormentis exquisitis; quas qui explicaret, ipsos homines reputaret inhumanos, et diabolicam excedere crudelitatem. Ibid. ii. 170. Fugerunt etiam a facie . . . relinquentes. Falcasius insuper, ruptarius spurcissimus et infernalis, castris subactis, [in][3] nobiles compatriotas, non parcens ætati, sexui vel conditioni, immo nec ecclesiæ, indigna relatu irreverenter exercuit. Quod rex acceptans, dedit ei cum quadam nobili puella, scilicet Margareta de Ripariis, castrum de Bedeford, et multas cum honoribus possessiones. Ibid. ii. 171. Consecrati sunt . . . præcentor [Sancti Pauli][4] Londoniarum in Rofensem, vir literatus, et in theologia lector Parisius; fol. 45 *b*. magister . . . in Cicestrensem. Eodemque anno celebrata . . . Ibid. ii. 167. Novembris; in quo . . . et xii., patriarchæ duo, præsidente papa Innocentio III. pontificatus sui anno xviii°.

John commits the custody of the captured castles to 'men of blood.'

M°.CC°.XVI°. Rex J[ohannes] fuit ad Natale[5] Domini apud castrum de Notingham, commissis omnibus castris et terris, quas in borealibus partibus super barones ceperat, viris sanguinum, misericordiam nescientibus, Hugoni scilicet de Bailloil, Philippo de Hulecotes, Roberto de Veteri-ponte, Brienno de Insula, Galfrido de Lucy, et aliis, omnibus Sarracenis crudelioribus. H. A. ii. 173. Cum igitur omnia ruinæ . . . . . . perpetrantes, vix

---

[1] *commodum*] comodum, MS.

[2] *exercens*] excercens, MS.

[3] *in*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *Sancti Pauli*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *Natale*] Natali, MS.

A.D. 1216.

Prince Louis of France elected king by the barons.

manus ab incendio continuerunt; sed prioris industria, censu multiplicato, ecclesia cum officinis est redempta. Barones igitur in arcto constituti, strictissima necessitate compulsi, scientes quod . . . invenirent, Ludowicum, regis Francorum primogenitum, in regem sibi elegerunt. Quod cum tam . . . et cartas. Barones autem inter duas molas contriti, papæ scilicet et regis, aliud refugium . . . perfecerunt.

Ibid. ii. 174.

The abp. of Canterbury is absolved.

Tunc vero temporis, reclamantibus omnibus cardinalibus, ne papa confratrem eorum S[tephanum], Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, qui cardinalis erat, ad petitionem regis Anglorum deponeret, destitit papa a crudeli proposito suo, [et],[1] etsi invitus, ipsum absolvit. Unde rex dolens factus est et iratus. Ita tamen absolutus est, quod . . . non intraret.

Forced payments from the prelates to the pope

Tunc vero solutum est concilium generale. Papa . . . . auxilium pecuniare exegit, quam recessuri prius adquisiverunt; postea de viaticis sollicitabantur. Cogebantur[2] autem hæc omnia a mercatoribus, id est usurariis, Romanæ curiæ duris conditionibus mutuare. Et sic cum benedictione papali satis empta repatriarunt. Ludowicus misit quosdam de militibus suis ante faciem . . . oppressionibus papalibus ac regalibus comprimebantur.

Ibid. ii. 175.

Death of Geoffrey de Mandeville.

Obiit Gaufridus de Mandevilla, læsus quodam lanceæ fragmento, dum in hastiludio contra eum [quidam][3] de militibus Ludowici decertaret, extra[4] civitatem Londoniarum.

The legate Walo comes to France.

Tunc vero temporis venit Walo legatus[5] in Franciam . . . impediret, nec regem Angliæ in aliquo inquietaret rex Francorum, sed ipsum, ut papalem vassallum, protegeret et defenderet, cujus regnum . . . pertinebat, tanquam beati Petri patrimonium speciale.

Ibid. ii. 176.

fol. 46 *a*.

Rex autem Francorum . . . nunquam fuit patrimonium beati Petri, nec est . . . . . hunc errorem defendat, perniciosum regibus et regnis exemplum perhibebit. Non diligo vel approbo . . . ancillatione. Heu! quantum per eum deterioratur regum conditio . . . Francia." Et tendens manus in cœlum, subdidit, "Quod Deus avertat! quod Deus avertat! Tamen hoc potest formidari[6] quam prius; quia quanto papa magis ditatur et roboratur, tanto efficacior ad quos voluerit conterendum." Tunc quoque . . . cœperunt, "Per mortem . . . Johannes, Anglorum regulus, pro isto

---

[1] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[2] *cogebantur*] Repeated superfluously after *mutuare*.

[3] *quidam*] Supplied from the Greater Chronicle, p. 280.

[4] *extra*] ex, MS.

[5] *legatus*] Added in marg.

[6] *hoc potest formidari*] Some words are evidently wanting, and perhaps we should read, *potest nunc magis formidari*. The paragraph is not in *Hist. Angl.* or in the Greater Chronicle.

Ibid. ii. 177. articulo . . . immo potius usque ad mortem . . . suam A.D. 1216.
motam, vel paucorum adulatorum consensum, regnum valeat[1]
vel principatum suum dare vel tributarium facere, unde
nobiles regni servi efficiantur, præcipue . . . alicujus eccle-
siasticæ personæ. Quid ad tales . . . . vestigia sequentes." Et
cœperunt more suo Gallici horribiliter jurando comminari.
Supervenit ex industria . . . . . impediatis. Impium esset . . .
libertate Angliæ decertantes patulis rictibus luporum exposi-
tos derelinquere, . . . dominum elegerint,[2] et consolatorem."
Cui pater, "Nec te impedio vel promoveo." Tunc recessit The legate leaves France.
legatus tremulus, et timens ne ei in corpore aliquid sinistri
eveniret, ad mare Angliæ clanculo properando. Ludowicus Prince Louis embarks at Calais.
autem, congregato comitatu copioso, festinavit in Angliam
veniendo legatum prævenire, et in portu de Calesio secentas
naves et quater xx. cogas promtas invenit et bene præparatas,
quas Eustachius Monachus contra adventum Ludowici ibidem
congregaverat. Misitque Ludowicus Romam, ut pro jure suo, He sends to Rome to plead his right in England.
quod credebat habere in Anglia, de ipso regno efficaciter
coram papa allegarent. Ludouuicus vero et qui cum eo erant,
ascendentes naves, sese Neptuno commiserunt. Erat autem
Ibid. ii. 179. tunc temporis rex J[ohannes] . . . sed quoniam, ut eidem
dicebatur, alienigenis . . . vallatus, et suorum naturalium
hominum privatus extiterat, Ludowico jam applicanti . . . trans-
marini, eo relicto, ad Ludowicum, transmarinorum dominum,
sese transferrent. Unde præelegit . . . . tanquam fidelissimo,
tutius confidebat; nec cessavit raptim fugere, donec Wintoniam
pervenisset Ludowicus vero . . . . præter Doverense castrum,
fol. 46 *b*. in suam . . . ingenti omnium baronum tripudio est receptus.
Cepitque homagia . . . qui eum ibi expectaverant. Ille vero
. . . . partium borealium, qui . . . . multi præelecti,
Ibid. ii. 180. regem J[ohannem] . . . optineret. Magistrum autem Symonem Simon de Langetone made chancellor by Louis.
de Langetuna, nuper per regem Anglorum cassatum et ab ar-
chiepiscopo Eboracensi repulsum, constituit cancellarium suum;
qui Londoniis commorans, non fratrissans, sed penitus a
vestigiis fratris sui archiepiscopi Cantuariensis exorbitans,
plus sævit in Anglicos quam de regno Angliæ oriundus vel
etiam advena de exteris regionibus procreatus. Ludowicus
Ibid. ii. 181. etiam discurrens, omnem circumjacentem . . . subjugavit,
partes scilicet australes et orientales. Rex autem Scotorum
Ibid. ii. 183. . . . . defendebant. Walo interea legatus in procurationibus Exactions of the legate.
suis et reddituum rapinis suos et quos voluit ditavit, metens
quod non seminavit. Obsidetur interea castrum Doverense a Siege of Dover castle.

---

[1] *valeat*] Repeated after *dare*.

[2] *elegerint*] The first two syllables have been erased.

A.D. 1216.

Ludowico, sed Hubertus de Burgo ei constanter restitit in faciem. Unde L[udowicus] iratus valde juravit, se non inde . . . punirentur.

Siege of Windsor castle raised.

Barones animati obsiderunt Windeleshores, sed per proditionem comitis Nivernensis[1] soluta est obsidio.

Ibid. ii. 184.

Eodem[2] tempore, mense . . . Doveram fecit Ludowico homagium . . . debuit.[3]

Ibid. ii. 186.

Eustace de Vescy killed.

Sed, dum transitum fecit per Castrum-Bernardi, balistarius quidam de castro emittens telum, Eustachium de Vesci telo interemit; unde rex inconsolabiliter doluit, habuit enim idem Eustachius sororem regis Scotiæ desponsatam.

The king of Scotland returns home.

Rex igitur tristis ad propria remeavit, in quo casu pars baronum non mediocriter est infirmata.[4] Contigit autem . . . . Francorum, Londoniis graviter infirmari. Qui, cum mortem sibi comperisset imminere[5] . . . Angliæ; quibus dicebat, "Doleo super . . . . Ludowico[6] juraverunt." Et, hiis dictis, nobilis ille expiravit.

Ibid. ii. 187.

Cum hæc autem . . . vehementer, sed hæc caute palliantes.

Ibid. ii. 188.

The barons incline to renew their fealty to John.

Inter igitur multas angustias constituti, arbitrabantur minus malum ad fidelitatem regis reverti, et gratiam ejus experiri et misericordiam—quia tunc demum regius sanguis vincitur, cum se vicisse conspicit—quam imminenti[7] periculo, quod Deus revelavit, subjacere.

fol. 47 *a*.

John's proceedings in Suffolk and Norfolk.

Dum igitur Ludowicus obsidionem apud Doveram inaniter protraxisset, rex J[ohannes] in fortitudine[8] gravi provincias Sufolcke et Northfolke et postea possessiones habitantium in marisco cum tanta tyrannide, ferro et flamma contrivit, ut qui vera narratione illa prosequeretur, lacrimas excuteret audientium.

He loses his treasure in the quicksands of the Wellstream.

Dum igitur rex apud Wellestrem pervenisset, et sine duce illam aquam marinam transire præsumpsisset, ipsemet vix evadens, ibidem bigas suas et summarios . . . . amisit, sabulo vivo omnia absorbente.

Ibid. ii. 190.

Rex igitur cum residuo exercitus sui, quem vorago[9] reliquerat, nocte sequenti . . . de rebus a fluctibus absorptis[10] tantam . . . . . novi pomacii nimis repletus . . . . versus[11] castrum de Lafford . . .

Ibid. ii. 191.

plus ultionum quam . . . miliaria pertransisset anhelus[12] et gemebundus, descendere coactus, jussit lecticam sibi, uti levius veheretur, præparari. At illi . . . . contexerunt. Quam cum . . . lectisterniis caruisset . . . . immo jam interfecit." Et creditur, quod in lectica . . . . febribus præbet incentivum. Ira enim . . . . leniter vectus est ambulante.

Ibid. ii. 192.

---

[1] *Nivernensis*] Ninivernensis, MS.

[2] *Eodem*] Eo, MS.

[3] *debuit*] debet, MS.

[4] *infirmata*] imfirmata, MS., and *imfirmari* in the next line.

[5] *imminere*] iminere, MS.

[6] *Ludowico*] Luduwico, MS.

[7] *imminenti*] iminenti, MS.

[8] *fortitudine*] fortudine, MS.

[9] *vorago*] varago, MS.

[10] *absorptis*] absortis, MS.

[11] *versus*] Repeated, but underlined for omission.

[12] *anhelus*] hanelus, MS.

Ibique decubans . . . de Crokestuna, viro sancto et literato, A.D. 1216. et in arte medicinæ perito, consilium accipiens corporale, de futuris edocetur, unde confessionem et eucharistiam devotus suscepit. Deinde Henricum . . . fecit. Literas quoque sigillo . . . . ut ei omnes et singuli forent fideliter intendentes. Et Last hours of John. inter . . . circumsedentibus amicis ejus, "Dominus noster Jhesus Christus pro nobis moriturus, pro suis oravit persecutoribus et eum crucifigentibus, nobis pium relinquens exemplum, ad quod in Oratione Dominica obligamur. Necesse habetis fol. 47 *b.* . . . . ipsi, tanquam domino suo . . . et ejusdem regiam experiri misericordiam, propter revelationem illis nuper Lon- Ibid. ii. 193. doniis factam, sicut prædictum . . . vitavit, prout dicit Poeta,

> "Sæpe canem longe visum fugit agna, lupumque
> Credit, et ipsa suam nescia vitat opem."[1]

Et subdidit instanter amicus, qui loqui inceperat, et dixit mentes et proposita regi penitus baronum ignoranti,[2] et persuasit,[3] ut sincero corde omnibus offensoribus noxam condonaret—sitiebat enim salutem animæ suæ—et continuo dixit ei, "Domine . . . . commoti exasperantur. Quia si . . . agendum est cum eisdem; si non . . . corona, omnis remittenda est pro Christo malivolentia." At rex . . . gemitum, et prædicta tamen trutinans, ait, "Si aliter . . . persuasistis. Et hoc . . . ut et ipse similiter faciat, ne et sic anima mea prægravetur, et de cetero . . . et sequatur." Hiis ita gestis . . . . eligere sepulturam. Cui rex, resumpto spiritu, ait, "Deo et . . . commendo." Postea vero, nocte quæ diem sancti Death of John. 18 Oct. Lucæ evangelistæ[4] præcedit proxima, ex hac vita migravit. Facta[5] igitur . . . . apud Crokestunam, ubi et ipse rex redditum[6] legaverat, ab eodem abbate sunt delata et honorifice Ibid. ii. 194. sepulta. Corpus vero, regio scemate redimitum, ad . . . tumulatum. Tempore quoque quo . . . . circiter xl^{a}. festinanter, qui . . . est, cum literis ad pacem . . . valebat. Cum autem regnasset . . . . transmigravit. Sperandum est . . . . . corde suo, ut prætangitur, terram legavit decem libratarum. Et, quod . . . . suam venientes, qui secundum . . . nec eos mutire permittebat. Item, vitam suam in confessione et juribus Christianis terminavit.[7]

---

[1] Ovid, Epp. ex Ponto, lib. ii. 7, 11.

[2] *baronum ignoranti*] ignoranti baronum, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[3] *persuasit*] persuavit, MS.

[4] *evangelistæ*] euuangeliste, MS.

[5] *Facta*] Facto, MS.

[6] *redditum*] reditum, MS.

[7] In the margin is added the following note by Matthew Paris: "Capellæ de infirmaria Sancti Al-" bani contulit reliquias de sancto "Cosma vel Damiano."

A.D. 1216. *De prima coronatione Henrici Tertii, Anglorum regis.*

fol. 48 *a.*

H. A. ii. 195.

Ibid. ii. 196.

Ibid. ii. 197.

Loyalty of Hubert de Burgh in refusing to yield up Dover castle.

fol. 48 *b.*

The siege raised.

12 Nov.

Hertford castle surrendered.

H. A. ii. 200.

Berkamstead castle taken.

Louis visits St. Alban's.

Defuncto Johanne . . . . et turba nimis, ut . . . feliciter coronarent. In crastino autem legatus supradictus, associatis supradictis, duxit . . . . evangeliis[1] et multis reliquiis, quod . . . ecclesiæ omnibus diebus vitæ suæ. Juravit etiam . . . . . . solent decantari. Expletis . . . . ubi omnes epulabantur, spe concepta meliori. Coronatus est . . . et Judæ. Rex autem . . . . donaria magna, ita . . . adhærerent. Regi igitur Henrico . . . . favorabilem, nobiles regni certatim convolando protinus adhæserunt. Castrorum . . . . ceperunt obediendo famulari. Censuerunt . . . . præparantes contra Ludowicum, castra sua cœperunt optime communire. Animabat . . . . complicibus videbant et audiebant solempniter excommunicari.[2] Ludowicus autem ac barones . . . obsidione castri Doverensis, cum de morte . . . sibi jam penitus subjugassent. Una igitur dierum Ludowicus credens fidelitatem et constantiam Hubert de Burgo per avaritiam suis nutibus inclinare, significavit eidem ut ipsum multis honoraret possessionibus, si castrum ilico redderet; sin autem, ipsum et omnes obsessos, et primum fratrem suum, Thomam de Burgo, quem tenebat in vinculis, suspendio condempnaret. Addidit[3] insuper, quod rex J[ohannes] interiit. Ad quod respondit Hubertus, quod antea suspenderetur ipse Hubertus, et frater ejus Thomas, et totum genus,[4] quam talem faceret proditionem; "Dovera enim clavis est Angliæ et repagulum." Et addidit, "Si dominus meus rex J[ohannes] mortuus sit, heredem habet manifestum." Ludowicus autem, cum hæc audisset, recessit ab obsidione. In crastino autem sancti Martini obsedit castrum Hertfordiæ, quod Walterus de Godarvilla resignavit ei, qui erat ibi castellanus, salvis personis et armis obsessorum. Redditoque . . . . murmur inter indigenas et alienigenas, et diatim cœperunt naturales regis homines a Ludowico recedere; et patuit veritas revelationis Londoniis propalatæ. Eodem tempore, die . . . , marcarum. Ludowicus obsedit castrum de Berkamestude, quod et in suam recepit potestatem, salvis personis et rebus obsessorum. Et sic per Sanctum Albanum transitum faciens, homagium ab [abbate][5] habere voluit, nec potuit; et sic Londonias pervenit.

H. A. ii. 201.

M^o^.CC^o^.XVII^o^. Juvenis rex Henricus . . . Marescallo, regis

---

[1] *evangeliis*] ewangeliis, MS.

[2] *excommunicari*] excommunicare, MS.

[3] *Addidit*] Addit, MS.

[4] *genus*] ge, MS.

[5] *abbate*] A blank is left in the MS. for this word.

A.D. 1217.

The garrison of Montsorel defeated.

et regni custode. Exierunt de castro Montis-Sorelli quidam rapinis intendentes; quod cum cognovisset castellanus de Notingham,[1] exivit cum suis, et compulit eos in fugam, multos autem cepit et interemit.

Faukes [de Breauté] ravages St. Alban's. 22 Jan.

Falcasius, collectis undecunque viribus, abbatiam Sancti Albani invasit, et villam deprædatus est in nocte Sancti Vincentii. Quod non fuerat impune perpetratum. Unde in visione nocturna perterritus, mane venit in capitulum, ut absolveretur; unde a singulis fratribus disciplinam absolutus suscepit.

Foray at Wabridge.

Apud Wauberge similiter factus est impetus vehemens et repentinus a Falcasio et suo comitatu; ubi captus de parte baronum Rogerus de Colevilla, et multi milites et servientes.

Ibid. ii. 205.

Nuncii Ludowici, qui pro eo steterant . . . . a papa.

Truce between king Henry and Louis.

Hac igitur de causa statutæ sunt treugæ ad horam inter regem et L[udowicum]. Transfretante igitur Ludowico, plus et plus patuit Francorum superbia.

Many barons join the king.

Et venerunt ad fidelitatem regis, Willelmus, comes Saresbiriensis, W[illelmus], comes Harundelliæ, W[illelmus], comes Waranniæ, et alii multi dicto regi, juranti[2] et promittenti in anima sua illis omnia bona;[3] qui deinceps fideliter et immutabiliter domino suo regi famulantes, fideliter adhæserunt.

Ibid. ii. 206.

Sed et magnus . . . . mutilavit.

Siege of Mountsorel.

fol. 49 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 207.

Obsidetur castrum Montis-Sorelli. Unde, ad petitionem comitis Wintoniæ Saeri, cujus castrum erat, exierunt ad subventionem castri ab urbe Londoniarum . . . armatorum, habentes . . . Marescallum exercitus, comitem . . . multis.

Siege of Lincoln.

Moventes igitur castra per Sanctum Albanum, et quæque obvia deprædantes, tandem ad castrum memoratum venientes et obsidionem solventes, tandem Lincolniam pervenerunt, castrumque obsederunt.

Defeat of the barons by the royalist forces.

Cum autem hæc agerentur, Willelmus, Marescallus magnus, regis et regni custos, de consilio legati et Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, fecit congregari omnes regis amicos et fideles; Lincolniamque hostiliter venientes, ut brevibus multa concludam, omnes regis inimicos vel in fugam compulerunt, vel vinculis constrictos carceri manciparunt.

Death of the count of Perche.

Comes autem Perticensis excerebratus, contemptibiliter est sub cespite sepultus. Hujus autem rei seriem, tam de satisfactione Falcasii et visione, quam hujus belli executione, si quis plenius scire desiderat, librum inspiciat super hiis prolixius declarantem.[4] Capta igitur civitate, victores gratia Dei abutentes, milites in cives, legatus in clerum, tirannice ac immisericorditer sævierunt.

Chief barons captured.

Capti sunt ex baronibus capitaneis, Saerus, comes Wintoniæ, Robertus filius-

---

[1] *Notingham*] Notinham, MS.

[2] *juranti*] jurantanti, MS.

[3] *bona*] A verb is here omitted, perhaps *restituere*.

[4] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 292–296, and cf. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 204–213.

A.D. 1217. Walteri, Henricus de Boun . . . Lincolniæ. Capti sunt insuper barones, Ricardus . . . . . quos longum foret, licet strenuos et præclaros, dinumerare, nedum eorum nomina paginæ[1] huic commendare.[2] Quod audientes qui castrum Montis-Sorelli tenuerunt, castrum relinquentes, aufugerunt; quod rex ilico jussit dirutum complanari. Quod cum Ludowico, qui jam de transmarinis partibus redierat, et Londoniis morabatur, innotuisset, doluit supra modum, [et][3] patri suo, Francorum regi, ut de remedio tanti doloris cogitaret, ilico misso nuncio festino, supplicans et lacrimabiliter persuadendo. Cumque ad patrem . . . pervenissent, tam illa quam ille efficaciter de ultione cogitantes, ccc^tos^. strenuos milites cum innumera armatorum manu in Angliam destinarunt. Quæ regem Angliæ latere minime valuerunt; qui et eis obviare, et Londonias proposuit obsidere. 24 Aug. Die igitur sancti Bartholomæi classis Francorum, ad succursum Ludowici, Eustachio . . . Londoniarum conductam Ludowico præsentaret. Ingressi autem . . . Angliam velut aura fortunata, vehementer urgens impellebat; sed . . . ignorabant. Habuerunt namque naves magnas . . . naves habuerunt, sed optime communitas. Cum autem Hubertus de Burgo, custos Doveriæ,[4] ab alto falesiæ supercilio, vices agens excubitoris, considerans, de adventu eorum certificaretur, dixit episcopo . . . aliis, quos illuc rex destinaverat,[5] "Quid agendum? Si gens ista impune applicet, regnum confundetur. Summopere . . . mari obviare, qui maris sunt ignari. Accingimini et . . . . aut navale bellum experientes. Hubertus igitur . . . responsis, reintrans castrum, divertit a loco paululum, et, accito Luca, capellano et confessore suo, confessus est ei plene cum lacrimis peccata sua; acceptis . . . viatico communivit. Induensque[6] audaciam . . . . . affici et torqueri, antequam, etiam me ad vos acclamante . . . Franco reddatis, vel alicui regis inimico. Clavis enim regni est et tutela." Ipsi autem . . . concessunt. Acceptis igitur . . . . . super litus Doverense stantibus magnatibus et expectantibus, "Si hostes vestri de nobis . . . . . ascendant; ita ut nec eorum unus evadat; et sanguinem nostrum de manibus[7] eorum requirite vindicantes. Vos autem, episcopi, absolvite nos, orantes pro nobis." Erant autem nutui ejus omnes naves

Mountsorel razed.

Prince Louis sends to his father for aid.

Bravery of Hubert de Burgh on the approach of the French fleet.

Ibid. ii. 212.

Ibid. ii. 216.

Ibid. ii. 217.

fol. 49 *b*.

Ibid. ii. 218.

---

[1] *paginæ*] pegine, MS.

[2] *commendare*] comendare, MS.

[3] *et*] Omitted in MS., but evidently required here.

[4] *Doveriæ*] Dovrie MS.

[5] *destinaverat*] destinaverat, ait, MS., but the last word is superfluous.

[6] *Induensque*] Iduensque, MS.

[7] *de manibus*] Repeated in MS. by error.

A.D. 1217.

Engagement with the French ships.

Anglorum intendentes et vexillo. Perrexerunt[1] igitur audacter naves ascendentes, et velificantes benedicebant eos episcopi. Obliquantes igitur dracenam, quæ vulgariter dicitur Lofa, visa classe adversariorum, non obviam eis sed a dextris ibant, ac si vellent adire Calesiam. Quod cum . . . ait, "Scio, scio quid . . . latrunculi, credentes illam invenire immunitam; falluntur hoc opinando, sed magis fallentur, etsi essent plures in decuplo, dimicando." Et ecce Angli, maris periti, cum se . . . transverso sinistrantes, vento . . . alacriter, sinuatis velis et usque ad summitatem mali suspensis; et cum attigissent . . . violenter. Hubertus vero, cum suis amicis et sociis fidelibus ad unguem armatis, unam . . . vexilla Francorum nobilium, quæ noverat, quam specialiter insequebatur, et per hoc perpendit ipsam nobilibus fuisse refertam, attigit, attraxit, et attractam agili saltu intravit. Et qui . . . antennas, et maxime anguinas malum et velum sustinentes; et cecidit[2] . . . irretitas. Angli super eos discurrendo suppeditantes, eos cultellis et lanceis confoderunt; et cum eos detegerent, nobilioribus . . . ceteros conciderunt, et detruncatos in mare projecerunt. Philippus vero de Albineto et milites et balistarii, atque sagittarii cum fundibalariis, in Francos tela mortifera cum lapidibus infatigabiliter transmittentes, nimiam ex obstantibus stragem exercuerunt. Habuerunt . . . . . . excæcarunt. Fuit[3] inter . . . . in brevi fuerat penitus infirmata. Nam ab . . . . . mergebantur. Spes auxilii aut fugæ non imminebat.[4] Unde multi, ne caperentur ab hostibus trucidandi, sese sponte, quasi mergi, in maris fluctus projecerunt . . . voluntate adversariorum capi, incarcerari, dimendi,[5] vel interimi, secundum illud Philosophi,[6] "Hostium . . . mori." Angli igitur . . . . . . intruserunt; perpendentes veraciter, quod si prospere applicuissent, Anglis minime pepercissent. Inter ceteros . . . quæsitus Eustachius Monachus, multumque desideratus, proditor . . . nequissimus. Erat autem Flandrensis natione, aliquando portans habitum religionis, sed pro hereditate consequenda, fratre suo sine liberis præmortuo, relicto . . . . . factus est, et fructus . . . . caput ejus amputavit. Cum autem Hubertus, victor miraculosissimus, ad . . . . solempniter et dicentes, "Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini."[7] Magnates insuper expectantes, ut . . . . argento, equis et armis, cum

Ibid. ii. 219.

fol. 50 *a.*

Ibid. ii. 220.

Eustace the Monk put to death.

Ibid. ii. 221.

---

[1] *Perrexerunt*] Perexerunt, MS.

[2] *cecidit*] cedit, MS.

[3] *Fuit*] Probably a mistake for *Fit*, as in *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.

[5] *dimendi*] Originally written *perdimendi*, but the first syllable erased. We should probably read *perimi.*

[6] *Philosophi*] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 220.

[7] Matt. xxi. 9.

A.D. 1217. Names of the nobles at Dover. . . . triumphantium. Nomina magnatum, tam episcoporum quam militum expectantium, hic duximus annotanda: Petrus fol. 50 *b.* Wintoniensis, Ricardus Saresbiriensis, Jocelinus Bathoniensis, Hugo Cicestrensis [episcopi];[1] magnus Angliæ Marescallus, comes Herefordiæ, comes Warranniæ, comes Albemarliæ; legatus Walo, circumiens provinciam in adjutorium[2] istorum. Robert de Curtenai and others taken prisoners. Hujus autem rei . . . . sibi Lincolniæ irrogato. Erant enim ibidem capti de nobilioribus[3] regni Francorum, Robertus scilicet de Curtenai, et alii multi vel submersi, vel interfecti, vel capti. Zelus quo tendat? Envious enemies of Hubert de Burgh. Multi autem ex tunc Hubertum, cui merito ascribebatur illa fortunata victoria, oderant invidentes et multimodos laqueos paraverunt, sicut in subsequentibus dilucidabitur.[4] Marescallus igitur . . . grandem, atque in fortitudine . . . . non possunt odisse; et propter Ibid. ii. 221, 222. unum verbum miserabile, quod cum suspirio rex Francorum, pater Ludowici, cum certificaretur de periculo ejus, protulit, dicens, "Vivitne adhuc magnus Angliæ Marescallus?" Et Confidence of the king of France in the Great Mareschal [earl of Pembroke]. responsum, "Vivit, et prosperatur regnum Angliæ gubernans dominando; et ipse rex et omnia regni negotia ejus jussu disponuntur." Et rex, "Non igitur sollicitor, nec est mihi de primogenito meo Ludowico formidandum." Quandam igitur . . . . procurarent. Ibid. ii. 222. Hunc igitur . . . recedere. Mandavit ergo legato . . . mancipari. Quod cum provideretur, convenerunt rex Henricus, legatus et Marescallus, et alii multi ex una . . . . . consenserunt. Juravit in primis Ibid. ii. 223. . . . . Philippum, regem Francorum, ad hoc induceret, ut [redderet][5] regi . . . cum rex foret, ipse idem illa restitueret et in pace dimitteret. Juravit insuper, quod omnia . . . . . fol. 51 *a.* Terms of the peace concluded. . . . . . sine difficultate, redemptione et censu liberentur. Nec quomodolibet puniretur vel improperium pateretur, hinc vel inde, qui huic vel alii adhæsisset; sed, secundum evangelium,[6] cujuslibet rancoris offendiculum a cordibus omnium utrobique remitteretur, et amici utrobique utriusque fierent amiciores. Louis returns to London, Hiis itaque gestis, Ludowicus a loco parlamenti hujus, scilicet quadam insula Thamisiæ, non procul a Stanes, Londonias revertitur . . . et a spe optinendi regnum penitus evacuatus; Ibid. ii. 224. servata ecclesiæ forma, datis mutuo osculis ad signum integritatis, in sincera amicitia. Inde a civibus . . . esterlingorum, and goes back to France. ad mare festinanter perveniens, in Galliam inglorius et tristis transfretavit. Cum autem . . . dixit eis, "Manifestum

---

[1] *episcopi*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *adjutorium*] adjutorum, MS.

[3] *nobilioribus*] nobiliorum, MS.

[4] *dilucidabitur*] dilucibabitur, MS.

[5] *redderet*] Omitted in MS. In *Hist. Angl.* the text reads, *induceret reddere.*

[6] *evangelium*] ewangelium, MS.

A.D. 1217.

Persons excepted from the treaty of peace.

The clergy despoiled by the legate.

est, quod nostrum secretissimum consilium, de omnibus videlicet Anglis perpetuo exheredandis, in lucem prodiit. Quis igitur Anglis hoc misterium revelavit?" Et responsum fuit, "Vere scribitur in evangelio,[1] 'Nihil occultum, quod non reveletur.'"[2] Vicecomes . . . . . recesserint, qui eis mala pro bonis recompensare proposuimus." Nulla autem in memorato magnatum[3] concilio mentio facta fuit specialis de magistris Symone de Langetona, fratre archiepiscopi Cantuariensis S[tephani], qui cancellarius et specialis Ludowici[4] consiliarius extiterat, vel Gervasio de Hobrugge, in quos legatus ignobili tyrannide desævit. Similiterque in alios, non tantum clericos sed religiosos, qui aliquantulum, licet inviti, Ludowico favorem videbantur præstitisse; in quo facto juramenti tenorem nuper facti videtur violasse. De spoliis igitur spoliatorum, licet se sufficienter humiliassent, suos clericos, et etiam remotissime consanguineos[5] prorsus indignos, ditavit opulenter. Spoliati igitur curiam Romanam adire cogebantur, papalem misericordiam, quæ parva fuerat, experturi. Legatus autem, ut prætangitur, post victoriam ad votum optentam, ab Hugone, Lincolniensi episcopo, in Angliam nuper veniente, eo quod videbatur Francis consensisse, centum marcas extorsit.

Henry at Northampton.

fol. 51 *b.*

H. A. ii. 226.

Robert de Gaugi punished.

Proceedings at Damietta.

Death of Saphadin.

H. A. ii. 229.

Ibid. ii. 230.

M°.CC°.XVIII°. Rex Henricus III. fuit ad Natale Domini apud Norhamtunam, qui est [annus][6] regni[7] ejusdem regis jam tertius; Falcasio regiæ festivitate necessaria ministrante. Erant autem . . . . contra regis prohibitionem adhuc detinere præsumpserunt. E quibus Robertus de Gaugi, dum castrum[8] de Neuwerc detinere præsumpsit, a Willelmo Marescallo confusus est et punitus. Eodem anno facta est motio universalis exercitus Christiani ab Achon usque ad Damiatam, ubi longa et sumptuosa nimis obsidione quædam turris cum catena miraculose capta est. Saphadinus, dierum malorum plenus, dolore cordis tactus, mortuus est, et sepultus in inferno. Cui successit filius ejus Coradinus . . . . . in acervos. Subjugata . . . Crucis, de diversis . . . . et nobili, natione Anglico[9] et Romanæ ecclesiæ cardinali, et Romanis multis. Venerunt et . . . recessit formidolosus. Venit et tunc . . . . . . sicut nec notitiam non tenemus. In vigilia autem sancti Andreæ . . .

---

[1] *evangelio*] ewangelio, MS.

[2] Altered from Matt. x. 26.

[3] *magnatum*] magnato, MS., but *o* erased.

[4] *Ludowici*] Luduwici, MS.

[5] *consanguineos*] The last syllable is written by a recent hand over an erasure.

[6] *annus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 226.

[7] *regni*] rengni, MS.

[8] *castrum*] cast, MS.

[9] *Anglico*] Anglici, MS.

A.D. 1218. 29 Nov.

nimbis irruentibus, vento et choruscatione, intumuerunt . . . victualibus et omni supellectili[1] dampnose subvertit. Quæ . . . exturbavit. Dedicata est . . . . episcopo, abbatibus, prioribus, et multis aliis ecclesiarum prælatis . . . . abbati ecclesiæ Sancti Albani. Tempore quoque . . . clericus, de familiarioribus[2] regis Johannis, qui diu in clientela illi militaverat . . . . cum ecclesia sua habuit, vel cum monachis, qui ipsum ad tantum apicem sullimarunt. Walo legatus, refertis[3] sarcinis, Romam remeavit. Pandulphus, per ipsum sullimatus in episcopum Norwicensem, in ejusdem successit officium. Rex proprium sigillum optinuit.

Ibid. ii. 231.

Pandulph, succeeds Walo as legate.

M°.CC°.XIX°. Rex Henricus III. . . . . . Willelmus, Marescallus Angliæ magnus, senior, qui propter . . . gubernator, in fata concessit. Londoniis . . . ecclesiæ tumulatus, tali [epitaphio][4] meruit, dictante . . . astrologo, intitulari:

fol. 52 *a*. H. A. ii. 231. Ibid. ii. 232.

“ Sum . . . . Martem.”

Conduct of the legate Pelagius.

Legatus apostolicæ sedis Pelagius exercitum Christianorum apud Damiatam existentium adeo infatuavit et exagitavit, ut in fine Saraceni, in confusionem universalis ecclesiæ et fidei Christianæ labefactionem, triumpharent. Quod in libris Ystoriarum plenius poterit reperiri.[5] Capta tamen fuit Damiata; sed

Capture of Damietta.

“ Tota trahit series ex turpi fine pudorem.”[6]

Siege of Toulouse.

Ludowicus, filius regis Francorum, obsedit Tholosam; sed post inanem et morosam obsidionem, fame et mortalitate invalescente in exercitu suo, inglorius recessit. Cives vero subito irrumpentes in eos, qui ultimi erant de exercitu, multos vel interemerunt vel turpiter mutilarunt. Nobilis vir comes Montisfortis Symon, qui dum fideliter et viriliter contra hæreticos Albigenses pro ecclesia dimicaret, et de rege Arragonum,[7] eorum fautore, miraculose triumpharet,[8] quodam lapide emisso de petraria, tanquam Dei martir, vitam temporalem pro æterna feliciter commutavit.[9] Qui tali epithaphio meruit intitulari:

Death of Simon, earl of Montfort.

“ Dantur item . . . . atque Cato.”[10]

Ibid. ii. 240.

---

[1] *supellectili*] suppelectili, MS.

[2] *familiarioribus*] Partly on an erasure.

[3] *refertis*] refertus, MS., and *s* afterwards erased.

[4] *epitaphio*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 307, 308; and cf. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 236, 237.

[6] From the “Nova Poetria” of Geoffrey de Vinesauf. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 276.

[7] *Arragonum*] Arroganum, MS.

[8] *triumpharet*] triumplaret, MS.

[9] The real date of his death is 25 June 1218. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 239.

[10] *qui dum fideliter . . Cato*] The whole of this passage has been written over an erasure.

M°.CC°.XX°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui [v°.],[1] fuit[2] A.D. 1220.
H. A. ii. 240. ad Natale . . . . idem rex H[enricus] III. apud Westmonasterium,
a Stephano . . . populo regni, ne dignitas ecclesiæ suæ mutilaretur.
In cujus rei testimonio et memoria exiit præceptum, John, abbat of Fountains, consecrated bp. of Ely.
Ibid. ii. 241. ut . . . . . ad propria remeavit. Johannes, abbas de Fontibus,
consecratus est in episcopum Elyensem. Sanctus Hugo . . .
canonizatus est. Eodemque tempore . . . et martiris, in
Ibid. ii. 242. octabis apostolorum Petri . . . passus est martir memoratus,
præsentibus rege Henrico quamplurimisque tam transmarinis
quam cismarinis prælatis et magnatibus. Nec est visa sub
cœlo tam celebris alicujus sancti translatio. Rex Henricus a Foundation of a new chapel at Westminster.
Willelmo . . . et de Sauveia. Rex incepit novam capellam
Westmonasterii, eodem rege primum lapidem ponente in fundamento.
Ibid. ii. 243. Obierunt viri . . . de Quinci, præmortuo Roberto,
filio suo elegantissimo, et Henricus de Boun, comes Herefordiæ.

H. A. ii. 243. M°.CC°.XXI°. Rex Henricus ad Natale Domini, anno regni
fol. 52 *b*. sui vi°., tenuit . . . perturbare, a curia regis non licentiatus
recedens, castellum de Biham victualibus et armis
et servientibus communivit; et prædis intendens et rapinis,
totam patriam, regis præceptis inobediens, perturbavit. Habuit
H. A. ii. 244. autem . . . necessitate ligaverat, Falcasium . . . . armatos,
milvinos et lupinos, ut solitis prædis saginarentur. Sed
cum tandem hæc præsumptio[3] ad notitiam regis et magnatum
pervenisset, obsessos adeo coartarunt, quod regiæ misericordiæ
exeuntes, sese post paucos dies præsentarunt. Venit
interea . . . ad regem. Quo cum, Pandulpho procurante, eo quod
in guerra[4] regi fideliter militaverat, pacificatus est. Milites
Ibid. ii. 245. insuper et servientes . . . . fiducia iterum levarent calcaneum . . . Dissension between the bishop of Durham and the convent.
incentivum. Eisdem diebus orta est dissensio gravis et damposa
inter episcopum Dunelmensem, Ricardum, et priorem et
conventum ejusdem domus. Cujus rei seriem, quia prolixam,
ad librum transmitto Historiarum Annalium.[5] Rex construxit
novum castrum apud Montem-Gomericum, ad reprimendum Castle built at Montgomery.
impetus comprovincialium discurrentium. Concesserunt magnates
Angliæ regi scutagium, duas scilicet marcas, in eorum Scutage granted.
Ibid. ii. 248. gravamen non modicum. Willelmus . . . resignavit episcopatum,
in . . . Pauli. Cui successit Eustachius de Faucunberge. Eustace bp. of London.
Cessavit legatio Pandulphi, ipso Romam non vacuis clitellis Return of the legate Pandulph.
revertente. Rex Henricus III. dedit . . . . . regibus et utri-

---

[1] *v°.*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *fuit*] The first syllable is erased.

[3] *præsumptio*] presumpsisset, MS., but the last two syllables erased.

[4] *guerra*] guera, MS.

[5] *Historiarum Annalium*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 311, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 245.

A.D. 1221.

Death of William de Albini, earl of Arundel.

usque regni multis nobilibus, nuptiæ sunt solempniter celebratæ. Hubertus quoque . . . Margaretam.[1] Obiit Willelmus de Albineto, comes Harundeliæ, rediens a Damiata. Cujus corpus Thomas, monachus ecclesiæ Sancti Albani,[2] qui cum eo peregrinus extiterat, in Angliam transportavit, et in ecclesia prioratus de Wimundham, cujus idem comes patronus extiterat, honorifice tumulavit.

H. A. ii. 249.

Philip de Albini.

Damietta recaptured.

Constantine Fitz-Olaf hung.

fol. 53 *a*.

Thunderstorms.

M°.CC°.XXII°. Rex Henricus III. fuit ad Natale Domini, anno regni sui vii°., apud Wintoniam, episcopo . . . ministrante. Quo etiam tempore Philippus de Albineto de Terra Sancta prospere remeavit.[3] Sarraceni recuperaverunt Damiatam, quam amiserant, pro qua tot nobilium sanguis est effusus. Eodem anno suspensus est quidam de nobilioribus civibus Londoniarum, Constantinus filius-Olavi, et nepos ejus cum eo; quia facientes quidam[4] discordiam palam proclamaverunt[5] edictum Francorum. Rex vero, ad majorem vindictam, magistratus plures deposuit, alios subrogando. Et ab aliquibus non minimam extorsit pecuniæ quantitatem. Hæc cum audisset Ludowicus, cui Constantinus fuerat amicissimus, doluit, et planxit eum. Eodem anno audita sunt tonitrua et variæ tempestates incomparabiles.

Henry at Oxford.

H. A. ii. 253.

Hostilities in Wales.

Ibid. ii. 255.

Ibid. ii. 256.

M°.CC°.XXIII°. Rex Henricus III., viii°. anno regni sui, fuit ad Natale Domini apud Oxoniam. Et postmodum . . . . et aliis magnatibus regni, ut libertates et liberas consuetudines regni, pro . . . suum, benigne confirmaret. Et sicut idem . . . . ad regem, xv°. die post Pascha. Anno sub eodem fuerunt multa et magna prœlia et hominum strages inter Willelmum Marescallum et Leolinum et ejus Walenses. Sed idem princeps Leolinus cum suis Walensibus in fine calculum reportavit deteriorem. Æstimati sunt enim de illis interfecti et vinculis mancipati Walensibus ad novem milia hominum, exceptis paucis per fugam elapsis in locis inaccessibilibus. Walterus, cognomento Maucler, consecratus . . . Eboracensis. Prorupit oleum . . . archiepiscopi. Circa festum beati Petri . . . idus Augusti, diem clausit extremum. Ipsius igitur . . . . . . ab Anglia. Ad hæc autem Ludowicus, quibusdam frivolis errorem

---

[1] *Margaretam*] Marga . . . MS., the latter part of the name being erased.

[2] *Albani*] Interlined by a much later hand.

[3] This is a mistake. Philip de Albini went to Palestine this year. See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 313, and *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *quidam*] dam, MS. A word beginning with *de* was at first written, and then erased.

[5] *proclamaverunt*] proclaverunt, MS.

A.D. 1223. Complaints of Louis VIII. against Henry.

suum pallians, respondit, dicens se Normanniam . . . . ad eam vellet venire . . . . dum imprisii sui et amici, tam clerici quam laici, immo et quidam civis Londoniensis, redditibus, possessionibus et omnibus honoribus spoliati, facti sunt per legatum suum exules et mendici. "Et memoratus civis, scilicet Constantinus, quia me amicum suum recognovit,[1] non sine mei maximo fol. 53 *b.* dedecore, est patibulo præsentatus. Libertates et liberas consuetudines, pro quibus barones sui justam guerram moverunt, et quas totiens juratum est inviolabiliter tenere, minime tenet. Immo nobiles suos odit et opprimit, patris sequens vestigia pedetentim. Et Londonienses, spretis eorum antiquis et novis pactis, frequentibus talliis et angariis, quasi servos ultimæ conditionis, deprædatur et depauperat. Alia autem, quæ relatu sunt indigna, prætermitto. Dum igitur in pectore . . . transgressor optinebit. Ibid. ii. 257. Dignus enim . . . conculcat." Hanc igitur audientes tyrannidem archiepiscopus et episcopi, voluerunt hiis respondere, [sed][2] non sunt exauditi. Et cum non possent aliud responsum reportare, cum sannis . . . audierant relaturi. Quæ cum rex audiens intellexisset, doluit et pœnituit eum vehementer tam favorabilem fuisse Ludowico, cum in retiaculum suum incidisset; imponens hoc affirmative per magnum Marescallum[3] fuisse machinatum. Surrexit murmuratio non modica inter magnates regni et Hubertum de Burgo, Angliæ justiciarium, et quasi regis pedagogum specialem, eo videlicet quod non regni negotia fideliter, sed sua, non reipublicæ sed sui ipsius honores ampliaret et possessiones, elatus propter gratiam quam Deus ei fecerat in mari. Alias autem causas si quis scire desiderat, librum aliquem de Historiis Annalibus sibi quærat intuendum.[4] Apud Bromholm, domum scilicet religiororum monachorum nigrorum, crebruerunt divina miracula, ad gloriam et honorem Dominicæ Crucis et Passionis. Johannes, rex Jerosolimitanus . . . . . civiliter suscepit et honoravit . . . de thesauro affluenter distribuit. Magister [Simon][5] de Apulia, episcopus Exoniensis, et Willelmus de Cornhulle [episcopus Cestrensis][6] obierunt.

Henry repents his leniency to Louis.

Murmurs against Hubert de Burgh.

Miracles at Bromholm.

Deaths of prelates.

H. A. ii. 260. M°.CC° XXIIII°. Rex Henricus, anno regni sui nono, tenuit . . . . . festum suum, quasi æmulus, tenuit ex adverso, tumens . . . exigebat ab eodem. Archiepiscopus . . . tunc ibi habe-

---

[1] *recognovit*] recongnovit, MS.

[2] *sed*] Omitted in MS.

[3] *Marescallum*] Marescalum, MS.

[4] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 318.

[5] *Simon*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 260.

[6] *episcopus Cestrensis*] Supplied from the same.

A.D. 1224. bat episcopis . . . ecclesiæ invasores. Deinde misit sollempnes
nuncios ad Legrecestriam, scilicet ad . . . . firmiter Ibid. ii.
eisdem denuncians . . . . . et ejus complices suum defectum 261.
considerantes, videlicet quod non poterant contra regem a pari
contendere, vel contra justiciarium, qui regiis inseparabiliter fol. 54 *a*.
adhæsit lateribus, consternati sunt valde, et, usi salubriori
consilio . . . castella sua, honores et . . . . . redderet resignata.
Voluit profecto illorum sic fidelitatem experiri. Sed postquam
illa rex clauso pugillo tenuit, noluit expansis digitis illa, licet
postulantibus, reconsignare. Et hoc ex Huberti cautela consilium
pullulavit, et ita comitis Cestriæ, qui[1] semper in occulto
invidus oderat, multiformis proditoris ars artem fefellit. Consilium
The barons conspire to dethrone Henry. et subdolum inierunt multi, ut, rege ultramarinis partibus
intendente, et Ludowico insurgente in Pictavia, moverent
regi guerram; ut sic quasi inter duas molas[2] cum suo justiciario[3]
contereretur. Erant autem . . . Albemarliæ, Falcasius
cum suis ruptariis et castellanis,[4] maxime Bedefordensibus,
Robertus de Veteri-ponte . . . Willelmus de Cantelupo, et
alii quamplures alienigenæ, quorum personas et nomina propter
eorum ignobilitatem dedignor[5] memorare, licet eos rex
Johannes exaltasset et ditasset. Qui regem H[enricum] III.
innocentem cupientes a fastigio regni[6] præcipitare, et, pace
regni perturbata, solitis prædis et rapinis inhiare.[7] Sed Deus,
in cujus manu corda sunt regum, aliter disposuerat. Eodem
quoque anno . . . reservans, propter quod Deus abbreviavit Ibid. ii.
dies suos, duxit exercitum grandem ad Rupellam, instinctu 262.
proditorum prædictorum, ut et illam . . . vel saltem proditione,
flexis quomodolibet ad nutum suum Pictavensibus, sibi
subjugaret. Quo cum . . . . forentque ei ex tunc intendentes,[8]
et desererent regulum fide omnique[9] carentem probitate, qui
Rochelle delivered up to Louis. suos conculcat undique naturales. Quod cives audientes, et
medullitus trutinando intelligentes, et ne rex filius patrissaret
formidantes, civitatem illam præclaram regi Francorum subito,
nescientibus et irrequisitis rege et suis optimatibus, tanquam
nativi proditores tradiderunt, pro tot bonis, quæ eis rex
impenderat, tantum malum recompensantes. Significaverant
enim conspiratores supradicti clanculo, quod rex nullo modo

---

[1] *qui*] On an erasure. We should apparently read *quem*.

[2] *molas*] mo, MS.

[3] *justiciario*] justiario, MS.

[4] *castellanis*] castelanis, MS.

[5] *dedignor*] dedignorum, MS.

[6] *regni*] At first written *rege*, then *rengni*.

[7] A verb seems wanting in this sentence, or else we should read *cupiebant*.

[8] *intendentes*] Originally written *de cetero intendentes*, but *cetero* afterwards erased.

[9] *que*] Interlined.

poterat eis suffragari; et quod haberet brachia plena in brevi A.D. 1224.
de guerra in Anglia; et quod præmunita sunt optime quædam
contra eum castella, quorum primum fuerat castrum Bedefordiæ,
quod eum per unum ad minus annum detinebit. Interim Movements of the rebel barons.
magnates regni, quorum corda exasperaverant rex et
suus justiciarius, discurrent non segniter[1] omnes circumjacentes
provincias, et consequenter totum regnum occupabunt.
Sic enim prælocutum fuerat et præcircinatum. Quod cum
audissent rex et regni optimates naturales, inconsolabiliter
doluerunt. Est enim Rupella introitus et exitus, clavis et Importance of Rochelle.
fol. 54 *b.* conclave, portus et porta regni Anglicani et Pictaviæ, ubi
reges . . . regionum, quæ orientem aut austrum respiciunt,
applicare . . . via hostili repagulo . . . tam in civitate quam
castello . . . et servientes, qui crebro subsannantes, Pictavenses,[2]
et maxime Rupellenses,[3] repulerunt, et de proditione
improperantes angariaverunt. Sic sic igitur rex Francorum
sine ulla sanguinis effusione, de maxima parte Pictaviæ securitate
suscepta, gaudens ad propria remeavit, de Pictavensium
proditione solita subridendo. Per idem tempus . . . . et aliis
nobilibus regni, de negotiis tractaturi. Voluit enim rex, ut Council held by the king.
dicebat, uti ex tunc penitus consilio magnatum suorum fidelium
de terris transmarinis, quas rex Francorum, de quo
bona speraverat se accepturum, de quo mala pro bonis doluit
reaccipisse, [occupaverat].[4] Fuerunt eodem tempore apud
Ibid. ii. 263. Dunstapliam justiciarii[5] itinerantes, Martinus . . . disseisina.[6]
Unde Falcasius inter alios ibi, qui multos spoliaverat et injuste
depauperaverat, cecidit in . . . . . sicut consueto, jussit
. . . . justiciarios caperent memoratos, atque . . . carceralem.
Justiciarii vero talia . . . fortuitus raptim deducebat. Inter
quos . . . . . mancipatus. Rumore igitur divulgato, venit uxor
ejusdem Henrici . . . concilio, de injuria viro suo irrogata
cum lacrimis querelam deposuit. At omnes . . . .
obsessos excommunicaverunt. Quod tamen ante multipliciter
promeruerunt. Erat enim illud castrum spelunca latronum
Ibid. ii. 264. et caverna regulorum. Quod factum est . . . . nocte
continuatus. In quo certamine duo nobiles, præter plebeios
fol. 55 *a.* et vulgares, perierunt. Tandem . . . . cupiebant,
omnes incendio pariter consumpsissent. Tandem . . . . .
postularunt. Sed quia hoc nimis sero . . . addicti. Suspensi
Ibid. ii. 265. sunt igitur inter . . . . . a terra librati sunt, sed non usque
ad mortem vel jugulationem suspensi. Henricus vero . . . .

---

[1] *segniter*] signiter, MS.

[2] *Pictavenses*] Pictaventes, MS.

[3] *Rupellenses*] Rupellentes, MS.

[4] *occupaverat*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *justiciarii*] The first syllable has been erased.

[6] *disseisina*] disseina, MS.

A.D. 1224. gratias exhibebat. Durante vero obsidione, distractæ [sunt][1] res omnimodæ Falcasii, blada, instaura, utensilia, maneriorum possessiones, et omnia quæ poterant inveniri. Falcasius vero, spe falsa seductus, et promissionibus comitis Cestrensis et suorum complicum alienigenarum, . . . deceptus Falcasius, cum de . . . . jacto saxo, beatus quem . . . Albanus, immo Deus per ipsum! Sic enim in nocturna visione, sicut prælibatum est.[2] Erat autem . . . scriptori seriatim enarravit, testimonium perhibens certum de prædictis; et scimus quia verum est testimonium ejus. Post fletum autem et profunda suspiria deprecabatur . . . regem tutius duceretur. Quod . . . apud Bedeford duceretur, corruens . . . periculosis sibi et patri suo in necessitate impensis, misericordiam subiret, non judicium. Tunc . . . . Eustachii, Londoniensis episcopi, donec quid de corpore suo fieret et judicialiter diffiniretur. Quem cum . . . subridendo ait Falcasio . . . . caput meum." Et cum hæc dixisset, vidit . . . . per ordinem suspensos, lacrimabiliter gemuit[3] et dixit, "O quam . . . severior!" ac si sciret illud Gregorianum, "Lento gradu divina procedit severitas, sed tarditatem gravitate compensat." Et addidit dicens, "Heu mihi! quod in tantum protrahitur infelix vita . . . perierunt." De hoc quidem casu quidam sic ait, Ibid. ii. 266. fol. 55 *b*.

"Perdidit . . . . ab ævo."

Episcopus vero Londoniensis, sicut homo misericors fuit et jocundus, superaddit prædictis, dicens eidem Falcasio sic de provocatione sanctorum,

"Si de tot . . . . unus eris."[4]

Hanc itaque feci digressionem, ut viderat quilibet impius quantum decipitur omnis qui in malitia, dum ei conceditur potestas, in ea gloriatur. Consecrantur in episcopos, Alexander in Cestrensem episcopum, Romæ, a domino papa; Willelmus de Briwere in Exoniensem, Radulphus de Noville in Cicestrensem,[5] qui factus est regis cancellarius. Eodem anno quidam senilis . . . . Constantinopolitanum promotus fuerat. Cui multi fidem perhibebant et favorem, et etiam fecerunt, tanquam domino . . . . . nimis patibulo suspensus. Et fecit comitissa duos veteres canes hinc inde collateraliter suspendi, et fimo equino cadavera suffumigari. Si autem sophisticus fuisset ille senex vel non, veraciter non diffinimus.

Consecration of bishops.

Ibid. ii. 267.

An impostor hung.

Henry at Westminster.

M°.CC°.XXV°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui x°., fuit ad Natale Domini apud Westmonasterium, præsentibus clero et

---

[1] *sunt*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] See *ante*, p. 239.

[3] *gemuit*] et gemuit, MS., but *et* erased.

[4] Ovid. Epp., ii. 43.

[5] *Cicestrensem*] Cecestr̄., MS.

populo, et regni magnatibus. Solempnitate igitur, ut decuit, A.D. 1225.
H. A. ii. 268. completa, Hubertus justiciarius . . . et omnibus aliis ad hoc
congregatis . . . transmarinis a Ludowico perjuro et Picta-
vensibus, secus quam deceret[1] stupefactis. Ex quo casu non
solum . . . sint in casu vel causa . . . necessaria. Petiit
ergo . . . . . . et concio tota, habita . . . licet id grave eis gra-
vissimum foret quod postulasset . . . et totiens concessas,
omni amplius cavillatione amota, concedere voluisset. Annuit
igitur rex benigne, precibus ac rationibus ductus suorum
fidelium. Cartis quoque protinus conscriptis et sigillatis, ad The Charters of
singulos Angliæ comitatus cartæ protinus diriguntur. Et ad Liberties
. . . . forestæ. Quæ in Historiis Annalium[2] locis pluribus are sent
fol. 56 *a*. poterit sedulus[3] quisque reperire.[4] Tunc constitutus est . . to each
Ibid. ii. 269. . . . . ., literatorio, ab omnibus observari jubebantur. county.
Eodem anno, in die . . . . civibus porrexit. In qui-
Ibid. ii. 270. bus . . . . multi de partibus illis, nescientes cui fructuo-
sius militarent, quibus cum stipendia . . . . et Cornubiæ
literis suis inscribebatur. Dicebaturque secreto, sed non fuit Report that
palam divulgatum,[5] veraciter inter nobiles vel plebeios, quod the king
rex totam Wasconiam ei dederat et incartaverat. Itaque . . . . had granted Gascony
castra Wasconiæ, et rebellium castra potenter subegit. Cas- to the earl
trum Regulæ . . . . revocavit. Nec adhuc certum fuit, si rex of Corn-
illi Wasconiam dedisset, ut dominus terræ vocaretur et esset. wall.
Rex autem Francorum . . . . et ibi morabatur, hostiliter et
potenter venientes, comitem . . . adjunctis sibi quibusdam . . . .
Ibid. ii. 271. fastigiose satis processit. Sed comes . . . . in fugam
fol. 56 *b*. compulit inimicos. Quos . . . captis, vulneratis vel interfectis.
Eodemque anno Johannes . . . de Burgo. Mense Martio, de
communi concilio regis et magnatum, Falcasius, etsi turpissimæ Faukes is
mortis reus esset, tamen quia pro rege J[ohanne] tempore sentenced
werræ se multis opposuit laboribus et periculis, non membris to exile.
mutilatus est vel vita privatus, sed perpetuo Angliam abju-
ravit. Præcepit quoque rex comiti Warranniæ, ipsum . . .
impositum ac irrediturum ventis committeret et Neptuno.
Falcasius autem, navem ascensurus super litus, dixit comiti His mes-
recessuro, "Salutate dominum meum regem vice mea, vera- sage to
citer dicens ei, quod quicquid feci, instinctu feci quorumdam Henry.
magnatum suorum." Et suspiciens et suspirans addidit,
Ibid. ii. 272. "Maledicatur . . . nominare. Sed fecerunt de me primitivum
vadi temptatorem. Sciatque rex, quod omnes illos barbaros et

---

[1] A word is here erased in the MS.

[2] *Historiis Annalium*] See notes in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 157, 269.

[3] *sedulus*] sedelus, MS.

[4] *reperire*] reperere, MS.

[5] *divulgatum*] divulgatum est, MS., but *est* is superfluous.

A.D. 1225. ignobiles, de mendicitate ad honorum fastigia sullevavit." Ipse
igitur Falcasius Angliam salutans a tergo, Romam petiturus,
illico . . . . ei in tribulatione solatium. Eodemque anno, ad
mensem . . . . carta contentum fuerat intermissum. Hæc
autem infirmando[1] peccavit Robertus Passelewe, et alii de sua
sequela, mortalissime; sed hoc in sequentibus suo loco declarabitur.
Circa eosdem dies . . . . custodia deputavit. Per Ibid. ii. 274.
The earl of Salisbury preserved from shipwreck. idem tempus . . . transmarinis commorabatur, in Angliam
remeavit. Sed maris immania perpessus pericula, per cereum
quem in mari vidit, qui tenebras illuminavit, liberatus est.
Deprehensumque est illum esse veraciter cereum, quem idem
invenit ante altare beatæ Mariæ jugiter comes ardentem. Sed
hoc alibi[2] prolixius memoriæ perpetuæ, comite dictante, commendatur.[3] Ibid. ii. 275.
Magister Otto . . . pro ecclesiæ Romanæ negotiis
. . . . responderent. Eodem tempore dictus magister fol. 57 *a.*
O[tto] ex parte . . . . caritate. Ad quod rex cum respondisset,
torvo respiciens oculo, negative, et hoc præcise,
tacuit O[tto], et ad alias[4] se transtulit sermocinationes. Cepit
idem O[tto][5] ab . . . marcas, nomine procurationis. Cum Ibid. ii. 276.
communiter relatum fuisset, quod comes Saresbiriensis in mari
dimergeretur, exegit Hubertus a rege, ut uxorem . . . nepoti Ibid. ii. 277.
suo, viro superbo videlicet et proditori. Sed cum comitissa
nullo modo ad consensum potuisset inclinari, applicuit comes
sanus et incolumis. Facta est igitur ex tunc præsumptio . . . .
fecisset, cœpit Huberti fama diutius denigrari, prout sequens
sermo declarabit.

Henry at Winchester. M°.CC°.XXVI°. Rex Henricus III. fuit ad Natale apud Wintoniam,
anno regni sui undecimo, præsentibus . . . dies decubuit H. A. ii. 278.
desperatus. Venit . . . clero et magnatibus . . . responderet.
Apertis igitur literis, magister O[tto] contenta palam
recitavit. In quibus allegavit . . . vetustissimum,[6] scilicet
avaritiæ, et nec potest aliquis negotium . . . et munerum
exhibitione . . . debent patris inopiam . . . . abbate
tantundem. Hæc omnia audientes prælati, responsum suum
posuerunt in ore . . . archidiaconi, qui sic ait, "Domine . . . Ibid. ii. 279.
regem specialiter tangunt, qui præ infirmitate non est præsens.
Tangunt etiam generaliter omnes . . . prælatos. Cum
igitur rex et multi episcopi et prælati sint absentes, vobis
nunc respondere . . . quia hoc in præjudicium fieret præla-

---

[1] *infirmando*] imfirmando, MS.

[2] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 325, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 274, 5.

[3] *commendatur*] comendatur, MS.

[4] *alias*] alios, MS.

[5] *Otto*] After this word, *cepit* is repeated by error.

[6] *vetustissimum*] vetussimum, MS.

A.D. 1226.

torum." Et dum talia dicerentur, venit Johannes, regis Marescallus, et cum eo alii regis nuncii, ex parte ejus . . . . . fol. 57 *b.* ecclesiæ obligarent, unde . . . in medio Quadragesimæ . . . . sortiretur. Sed illi absque [regis][1] et aliorum absentium assensu . . . ad propria remearunt. Dictumque illi O[ttoni] in aure secretius, quod si iteraret[2] petita, cum non possit sitis sedari avarorum, citius depauperabitur Romana curia quam ditabitur, et asperius responsum acciperet negativum. Verumtamen aggressus est aliquos de prælatorum præstantioribus super hoc, quid pro responso darent summo pontifici. Dictumque ei fideliter in secreto, quod expectarent, donec vidissent quid alia regna facerent prius, ut sic plenius quid agendum edocerentur. Dominus enim papa ad similem exactionem legatum, scilicet dominum Romanum, destinaverat. Magister igitur O[tto], cum, misso nuncio festino in Galliam, didicisset quod socius suus Romanus durum ibi et negativum responsum reportasset, et durius formidabat, siluit, et doluit propter hoc in Angliam advenisse. Et ecce literæ a domino papa transmissæ eidem O[ttoni] præsentantur. In quibus continebatur . . . enervata. Quibus cum ira in ignem projectis, compositis ex collecta pecunia refertis clitellis, ilico repatriavit. Similiter legatus in Francia Romanus tristis et inglorius infectoque[3] negotio est repulsus. Eodemque tempore Willelmus, comes Sarisbiriensis, glorioso fine[4] vitam terminavit. Ricardus vero de Marisco, religiosorum malleus et ecclesiæ suæ deprædator, e contra fine miserabili apud Burgum vitam pomposam et inutilem consummavit. Cujus epitaphium[5] huic paginæ, quia conveniens, duximus inserendum:

Reply given to the legate Otho touching the pope's demands.

His recall.

Ibid. ii. 284.

Failure of the legate Romanus in France.

Deaths of the earl of Salisbury and bp. of Durham.

Epitaph of the bishop.

Culmina qui cupitis, Laudes pompasque sititis,
Est sedata sitis, Si me pensare velitis.
Qui populos regitis, Memores super omnia sitis,
Quod mors immitis, Non parcit honore potitis.
Vobis præpositis, Similis[6] fueram, bene scitis,
Quod sum, vos eritis, Ad me currendo venitis.

Ejus autem corpus delatum est Dunelmum tumulandum. Elegerunt autem monachi loco ejus subrogandum Willelmum

The elections made of his

---

[1] *regis*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.* The words *et aliorum* are partly erased.

[2] *iteraret*] iteret, MS.

[3] *infectoque*] imfectoque, MS.

[4] *fine*] finem, MS.

[5] This epitaph is omitted in *Hist. Angl.*, but is added by Matthew Paris to the text of the Greater Chronicle in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 332). In the former it is headed, "Epitaphium Ricardi de Marisco, episcopi Dunelmi, editum a quodam monacho Dunelmensi."

[6] *similis*] simul, MS., but corr. from B. C.

A.D. 1226.

successor are annulled by the king.

28 May. The king of France marches against the count of Toulouse. Siege of Avignon.

Louis retires to the abbey of Montpancier.

His death.

Avignon delivered up through treachery. Coronation of Louis IX.

30 Nov. Sinister rumours respecting the legate and queen Blanche.

Ibid. ii. 287.

Ibid. ii. 288.

fol. 58 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 291.

[Wigorniensem][1] archidiaconum, et iterum Thomam, eorum priorem, quos rex quibusdam frivolis exceptionibus cassari procuravit. Pullulante tunc temporis hæresi Albigensium, rex Francorum Ludowicus, super ipsos cruce signatus, die Ascensionis exercitum suum et cruce signatorum congregavit, ut Christi injuriam illuc hostiliter iturus vindicaret. Qui congregatus æstimatus est ad l. milia militum et equitum, præter pedites innumerabiles. Legatus vero, in primis comitem Tholosanum et omnes ejus fautores publice excommunicans, totam terram suam supposuit interdicto, licet ipse comes omnimodam humiliter satisfactionem optulisset. Avinionem igitur perveniens rex cum exercitu, cum denegatus ei fuisset civitatis ingressus, iratus obsedit eam; ubi factus fuit assultus acerrimus, dum . . . valeat, [experitur].[2] Cumque tempus inutiliter protraheretur, procurante comite Tholosano, deficientibus alimentis, hominum in exercitu innumera periit multitudo. Fame . . . exercitus nimis, licet valde numerosus. Divertente igitur rege ad quandam abbatiam non multum inde distantem, Muntpancier vocatam, ut ibi, donec caperetur civitas, et ipse interim respiraret, venit ad eum illuc Henricus,[3] comes Campaniensis . . . . remeandi. Quod cum rex non concessisset, multiplicatis hinc conviciis et inde, tandem proruperunt verba in infamiam Blanchiæ reginæ probrose redundantia. Irato igitur rege vehementer, febris magis accenditur; et, ut dicitur, eidem regi veneno propinato, declinavit ad mortem. Quo mortuo, comes iratus recedens jactitavit se iram vel minas regis minime formidare; unde nota de morte regis non mediocriter denigrabatur. Et dum regis mors celaretur per viii°. dies, legatus proditiose civitatem intrans, sub dolo et mendacio eam Francis subjugavit. Regis autem visceribus in prædicta abbatia tumulatis, corpus solempnius, ut decuit, delatum est sepeliendum. Defuncto igitur rege Ludowico, regina, de consilio legati et Franciæ magnatum, fecit filium suum, puerum vix decenuem, die sancti Andreæ in regem coronari. Orta tunc temporis, secus quam deceret, falsa[4] infamia de pudicitiæ læsione inter legatum et reginam Blanchiam, dispersa est Parisiensium scolarium universitas, necnon et procerum Franciæ fit dissidium[5] non mediocre. Hoc etiam anno . . . ortus est, migravit ad Christum. Eoque anno Falcasius e contra exul et extorris, ad Tartara[1] ex hoc mundo, crapulatus de quodam pisce intoxicato, destinatur, et apud Sanctum Ciriacum tumulatur. Defunctique episcopi, Benedictus, Rofensis, et Pandulphus, Norwicensis. Pandulpho successit . . . scaccario, cujus promotionem, sicut et fratris sui Elyensis Galfridi, procuravit Hubertus justiciarius.

---

[1] *Wigorniensem*] A blank is left here in the MS. See note in *Hist. Angl.* ii. 286.

[2] *experitur*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Henricus*] This is an error. See note in *Hist. Angl.* ii. 288.

[4] *quam . . . falsa*] On an erasure.

[5] *dissidium*] discidium, MS.

A.D. 1226. Death of Faukes [de Breauté]. Deaths of bishops.

Ibid. ii. 292.

M°.CC°.XXVII°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xii°., ad Natale . . . Radingum. Et eisdem diebus obiit . . . profusus. Deinde rex . . . cives, consilio iniquorum adulatorum, et maxime Huberti de Burgo, justiciarii,[2] quod in suum præjudicium dederunt Ludowico, Franciæ heredi, a Londoniis recessuro, v. milia marcarum, jam ultione divina intoxicato, et in perjurio mortuo. Unde compulsi sunt ipsi cives, formidine peccati postposita et injustiæ, regi persolvere tantundem pecuniæ. Et hoc regem Francorum non latuit, vel e[3] consiliariorum; unde illa avaritia[4] et rapina odii occulti præbuit incentivum, et juramenti, ut dicebant Franci, læsionem. Ex tunc igitur fama Huberti justiciarii cœpit non tantum Londoniis sed per totam fœtere regionem, pristinos titulos turpiter commaculandoque diatim superbivit. Mense Februarii rex apud Oxoniam, . . . se jam legitimæ . . . . tutorem habuit Willelmum . . . excussit[5] de aliena voluntate et informatione;[6] et hoc per consilium Huberti justiciarii. Unde non jam mediocrium, sed multorum magnatum, promeruit indignationem. In eodem itaque . . . . . . et consignatæ, dum . . . . usurpatum. Facta est igitur super . . . omnes hujus perturbationis causam refundunt in justiciarium, et auctorem fuisse affirmarunt. Ut igitur odium regis incurreret . . . pedum [vestigia],[7] procurarunt. Tunc denunciatum . . . et aliis, prædicto Huberto omnia hæc procurante, ut qui suis . . . . coacti. Et sic diatim maledictiones cotidie super caput aggerabat, sicut . . . declarabit. Eodem anno, defuncto . . . . mortem suam, cum mortuus crederetur nec tamen erat . . . quod viveret adhuc, per . . . versificator,

H. A. ii. 292.

Henry extorts money from the citizens of London.

Evil fame of Hubert Burgh.

Ibid. ii. 293.

fol. 58 *b*.

Ibid. ii. 294.

Ibid. ii. 295.

"O pater . . . . vade mori."

Per idem tempus . . . . . negotio, propter quod fuerant destinati. Omnes . . . Franciæ pacificabantur. Comes insuper Britan-

---

[1] *Tartara*] Tartaria, MS.

[2] *justiciarii*] justiarii, MS.

[3] A blank space is left in MS. Perhaps we should read *ejus consiliarios*.

[4] *avaritia*] avaracia, MS.

[5] *excussit*] excusit, MS.

[6] *informatione*] informacionis, MS.

[7] *vestigia*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1227. niæ, cujus, ut dicebatur, [filiam][1] nuncii petebant regi Anglorum maritandam, nunciis . . . Francorum fœdus iniit, quod nullo modo poterat violare. Eodem quoque tempore, mense scilicet Maio, [Ricardus, frater regis][2] post multos et varios labores et expensarum profusiones, quas Wasconenses emunxerant,[3] rediit . . . susceptus. Henricus de Sanford . . . episcopatum promovetur. Nonas [Februarii][4] Hubertus justiciarius . . . comitatus. Eodem anno, in fine . . . . . præter valitudinarios et mulieres, profecti referuntur. Ibid. ii. 296. Per idem . . . apparuit populo ad prædicationem congregato crux cum Crucifixo in aere . . . perlectæ, ut, quod incredibile relatu[5] fuit, testimonio fidedignorum crederetur. Ibid. ii. 297. Diebus sub eisdem iter arripiunt viri nobiles Petrus . . . ad commodum multorum et salutem, et præcipue Anglorum, laudabiliter continuarunt. Romanorum autem . . . . . fortium armatorum, spe frustrata et infecto omni negotio, redierunt, et multo plures perierunt. Ibid. ii. 298. Unde ex tunc, Deo . . . ei undique adversitates, tribulationes . . . prælatorum, Templariorum et Hospitalariorum odium et iram in se suscitavit, sicut sequens sermo declarabit.

Order of Minorites flourishes.

Miracula per sanctum Franciscum crebrescunt; unde Ordo Minorum etiam jam in Anglia floruit ampliatus. fol. 59 *a*. Magister Robertus de Bingham[6] . . . ecclesiæ. Ibid. ii. 299.

Henry at York.

M°.CC°.XXVIII°. Rex Anglorum, Henricus III., anno regni sui xiii°., festum Nativitatis Dominicæ tenuit apud Eboracum. Cassata Romæ . . . postulatur. H. A. ii. 300.

Money extracted on account of false measures.

Rege ab Eboraco[7] versus Londonias properante, Marescalli et ballivi ejus, lucris turpiter et improbe inhiantes, mensuras bladi, vini et cervisiæ falsitatis arguentes, tam ab insontibus quam reis, nodum quærentes in scirpo,[8] non modicam pecuniam extorserunt. Quam quia sibi lucriferam sentiebant, consimilem emunctionem annuatim vel frequentius iterabant. Decisa est contentio . . . . . defuncto, alium; hoc tamen . . . . consensu canonicorum.

Complaints of the emperor against the pope.

Papa Gregorius . . . distulisset, tandem . . . . . præcepit. Imperator e contra per suas literas sese justificando, de ipso papa quamplurimum est conquestus, sententiam in eum fuisse latam injuriose. Hoc adjiciens[9] et exhortans[10] . . . Ibid. ii. 301.

---

[1] *filiam*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *Ricardus, frater regis*] Supplied from the same.

[3] *emunxerant*] emuncserant, MS.

[4] *Februarii*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.* In the MS. it was originally written *Novembris*, and afterwards erased.

[5] *relatu*] ralatu, MS.

[6] See note in *Hist. Angl.* ii. 299.

[7] *Eboraco*] Eborace, MS.

[8] *scirpo*] cirpo, MS.

[9] *adjiciens*] adiciens, MS.

[10] *exhortans*] exortans, MS.

A.D. 1228.

iniquitatem, quæ cotidie suscipit incrementum, sese prospiciant. Quia . . . ardet." Et si maximum Christianorum præsumunt conterere[1] Romani, quid de aliis est sentiendum? Ex hac perturbatione motus imperator, excitavit contra papam . . . . sicut ipse papa multis per orbem literatorie conquerendo significavit. Populus autem Romanus . . . excitavit, et illum ejecerunt . . . . . innodavit. Stephanus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, inter omnes occidentales prælatos merito . . . sepultus. Monachi autem Cantuarienses elegerunt Walterum de Einesham, monachum suum, in archiepiscopum. Quem cum regi præsentassent, rex ipsum refutavit, et ejus cassationem procuravit. Eodem anno imperator . . . desidiam insultationes, mare ingressus, apud Achon applicuit. Quem clerus . . . honore susceperunt. Verumtamen . . . . sed eidem[2] consuluerunt Wintoniensis et Exonieniensis episcopi, et omnes alii magnates et prælati, ut, papæ satisfaciens, rediret humiliatus ad ecclesiæ unitatem. Quod . . . gravem de papa omnibus . . . eum injuste sententiam fulminasset; excusans se . . . advenisse. Soldanus . . . . . occidens nec vidit nec cognovit.[3] Sed . . . constantem. Alii tamen non male illud interpretabantur, quia re vera ante illos multos dies, propter intermeantium institorum commercia mutua et donativa pretiosa, unde pacifice licuit hinc indeque negotiari, fuerant amicissimi, sicut et ipsorum patres et antecessores. Maligni autem animi . . . interpretari.[4] Invenit autem imperator, quando Achon . . . . . . octingentis milibus peregrinorum, et peditibus quasi decem milibus. Qui omnes . . . . civitatem. Innumera navium multitudo, post longa tamen maris pericula, cum victualibus Achon applicuit, ita quod in exercitu qui apud Jopen, prævio imperatore, jam profectus fuit, magna fuerat abundantia,[5] usque ad . . . secundus. Floruit fama de Cartaphila Joseph, qui vidit Christum crucifigendum. Eustachius . . . extremum. Qui, quoniam die sancti Eustachii natus fuit, vocabatur Eustachius, et die sancti Eustachii obiit,[6] aptatur ei hoc epitaphium,

Ibid. ii. 302.

Election of Walter de Eynesham as abp. of Canterbury.

Ibid. ii. 303.

The emperor lands at Acre.

fol. 59 *b.*

Friendship between the emperor and the Soldan.

Ibid. ii. 304.

Supplies brought to the army at Acre.

Ibid. ii. 305.

2 Nov. Epitaph of Eustace, bishop of London.

> "Da vitæ portum mihi, qui tria, nomen et ortum,
> Eustachi, Christi miles, tumulumque dedisti."

Cujus loco magister Rogerus, cognomento[7] Niger, vir profecto sanctus et in theologia lector, jocundus in sermone,

Roger Niger succeeds.

---

[1] *conterere*] conterrere, MS.

[2] *eidem*] ei, MS., and *eidem* repeated superfluously after *prælati.*

[3] *cognovit*] congnovit, MS.

[4] In the margin is written with a plummet, "Proverbium."

[5] *abundantia*] habundautia, MS.

[6] According to the Patent Roll, 13 Hen. III. m. 12, he died 31 Oct. 1228. See Fasti, ii. 284.

[7] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

A.D. 1228.

Death of Geoffrey, bp. of Ely.

maturus in moribus, rite subrogatur. Obiit Gaufridus, episcopus Elyensis, frater justiciarii, expers gratiæ, gratia destituti. In cujus loco monachi elegerunt Hugonem, abbatem Sancti Edmundi.

Henry at Oxford.

M°.CC°.XXIX°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xiiii°., fuit ad Natale apud Oxoniam. Ubi venit . . . Pictaviæ. Venerunt et H. A. ii. 306. alii . . . omnium una fuit intentio et desiderium, ut videlicet . . . . . venirent cum equis et armis, et toto populo regionum illarum et militia; et cum illo starent fideliter et immutabiliter usque ad capitum expositionem, ut viriliter revocare posset jura sua amissa et violenter retenta, et hereditates dissipatas. Indignum . . . Blanchiæ, de læsa castitate infami,[1] quæ . . . jam pertrectavit, inclinare. Rex autem, adhuc tener et juvenis, a justiciario, pædagogo suo, quem unicum habebat consiliarium summum, nihil aliud . . . hora et aura gratior arrideret. Dicebat enim suis, quos habuit amicis, secretius, "Novi istos nuncios et eorum præstigia,[2] quoniam nihil quærunt nisi desi- fol. 60 *a*. derabiles regni Angliæ esterlingos." Nuncii vero, nihil aliud habentes in responsis, tristes ad[3] propria remearunt. Circa dies . . . . desperare. Decrevit igitur illum ab imperiali Ibid. ii. 307. culmine præcipitandum, et alium subrogandum. Constituit igitur . . . . pecuniam, licet ab invitis et dolentibus prælatis, maxime religiosis, stipendiariis distribuendam et in prœlio exponendam, imprecantibus cunctis ne bonum finem talis præda et pompa sortiretur. Invasit igitur . . . . . et multa, ut vir martius, occupavit. Habebat . . . . non militia, thesauro . . . omnia per celeriter intermeantes imperatori . . . Ibid. ii. 308. militanti, quantocius nunciabantur. Eodem anno, die Cinerum, orta discordia inter scolares Parisienses et quosdam laicos; reposita est querimonia dominæ Blanchiæ, quæ tunc totius regni fuerat moderatrix. Legatus enim longe erat, regina prope. At illa, impetu muliebri [agitata],[4] jussit clerum graviter puniri. Exeuntes igiter curiales satellites, gravius quam eis[5] fuerat imperatum in clericos sæviebant. Legatus autem, nimis pronus voluntati reginæ, noluit illius iratæ impetus refrænare.[6] Facta[7] igitur seditione gravissima, recessit Universitas Parisiaca a civitate, quæ ab antiquis temporibus nutrix fuerat totius philosophiæ. Pars autem . . . elegit ad Ibid. ii. 309. studium. Regis Anglorum nuncii, videlicet . . . . petitionibus sollicitarent super petitione et desiderio . . . Ricardi.

Money collected by the pope to pay his stipendiaries.

Quarrel between the scholars of Paris and certain laics.

The University leaves the city.

---

[1] *castitate infami*] castitat imfami, MS.

[2] *præstigia*] On an erasure.

[3] *ad*] a, MS.

[4] *agitata*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *eis*] ei, MS.

[6] *refrænare*] Written at first *refrenari*, and *non* prefixed, erroneously.

[7] *Facta*] Originally, *Facta est*, but *est* erased.

A.D. 1229.

Ibid. ii. 310.

Richard le Grand made archbishop of Canterbury.

Et ne repulsam paterentur, promiserunt domino papæ infinitam pecuniam ab Anglia colligendam. Dixerat . . . desiderio. At dominus . . . imperatorem sitienter . . . ad consensum. Cassata igitur electione Walteri, monachi Cantuariensis, promotus est in dignitatem Cantuariensis archiepiscopatus magister Ricardus, cognomento Magnus, lector in theologia, cancellarius eccelesiæ Lincolniensis. Cum autem cognovisset[1] imperator imperium suum patere discrimini, significavit Soldano

Ibid. ii. 311.

. . . . . evitare. Quod cum Soldanus audisset, gavisus omnia concessit; et sic feliciter factum est. Cum autem pax firmaretur, imperator, antequam transfretaret ad propria, voluit omnibus modis loca sancta oraturus visitare.

The enemies of the emperor attempt to betray him to the Soldan.

fol. 60 *b*.

Et cum pergeret ad fluenta Jordanis, significatum fuit Soldano a proditoribus imperatoris, quod ibi leviter nudus pedes[2] et in lancis capi potuit, nullo prohibente. Quod cum audisset Soldanus, mirabatur de tantæ proditionis immanitate. Qui autem honorem Templi et Hospitalis minime diligunt, hæc illis imponunt mentientes. Non enim credibile, ut a viris religiosis tantum nefas[3] scaturiret, licet papam juvare viderentur. Soldanus[4] in argumentum fidei, literas illas detestabiles transmisit imperatori; unde omnibus vitæ eorum diebus fuerunt amicissimi. Gaudens igitur imperator quod laqueos absconditos evasisset, remeando transfretavit. Verumtamen hoc fuit seminarium odii inter imperatorem et Templarios necnon et Hospitalarios.

The papal nuncio, Stephen, sent to England.

Magister Stephanus, domini papæ cancellarius, mittitur in Angliam magna armatus potestate, ad colligendam decimam, prout ei fuerat promissa. Qui cum venisset in Angliam, receptus et acceptus est regi et regalibus universis, illi in omnibus agendis suis patrocinium conferendo. Laici tamen huic exactioni consensum minime præbuerunt. Consenserunt autem viri ecclesiastici, undique suffragio destituti, in mentis cruenta amaritudine illud jugum servitutis et deprædationis subeuntes.

Tyranny of his measures for enforcing payment of the tenth.

Hujus autem collectionis seriem et collectorum tirannidem si quis plenius exequeretur, lacrimas excuteret barbarorum. Habebat enim dictus Stephanus potestatem excommunicandi omnes contradictionem vel etiam dilationem in solutione pecuniæ facienda; unde viri ecclesiastici blada sua et omnem substanceolam suam, immo etiam supellectilem suam, non secundum pretium, sed ad ementium voluntatem vendere cogebantur. Et post plenariam solutionem, non deductis expensis, facta est inquisitio durissima et dirissima super insontes; in qua omnis accusator exaudiebatur, et accu-

---

[1] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[2] *pedes*] pede, MS.

[3] *nefas*] nephas, MS.

[4] *Soldanus*] Written only *S.* with a blank, but filled up by a later hand.

A.D. 1229.

Robert de Bingham consecrated bp. of Salisbury. He completes the church there.

satus, cassato omni defensionis clipeo, ad voluntatem ipsius Stephani puniebatur. Consecratur in episcopum Saresbiriensem[1] magister Robertus de Bingham. Qui opus ecclesiæ Sarisbiriensis imperfecte consummatum,[2] quod[3] episcopus Ricardus, ejus prædecessor, ausu non pusillanimi inchoaverat,[4] et jam de debitis inæstimabilibus, videlicet xl^a. milibus marcarum, quibus Ricardus de Marisco, episcopus Dunelmensis, dicti episcopi Ricardi secundi prædecessor, innodaverat, liberavit. Hic quoque Ricardus secundus ad tres successive promotus est episcopatus. Sed ab anticipatione ad propositum revertamur. Robertus igitur memoratus, episcopus[5] Saresbiriensis jam sacratus, quosdam[6] in dicta ecclesia Saresbiriensi, juvante annuatim prædicto episcopo Ricardo II., ornatus decenter[7] perfecit, scilicet fenestras vitreas, chorum stallatum, frontem ecclesiæ cum culmine plumbato. Hæc iccirco dixerim, quia illa ecclesia Saresbiriensis inter omnes ecclesias Anglicanas vel nobilissima vel de nobilissimis una merito judicatur. De cujus opere quidam ait,

"Rex largitur . . . . stet opus." Ibid. ii. 318.

Consecration of the abp. of Canterbury and bp. of London.

Eodem tempore rex . . . Huberti, cingulo donavit militari. Consecrantur Ricardus, Cantuariensis[8] archiepiscopus, per manum Henrici, Rofensis episcopi, et Rogerus,[9] Londoniensis electus. Sub eisdem . . . Michaelis, congregata innumera armatorum multitudine apud Portesmue,[10] ut rex ad reposcenda jura sua transfretaret, non suffecit classis ad tantum transvehendum exercitum. Unde rex iratus vehementer, totum hujus rei crimen in Hubertum justiciarium refudit. Comes [Britanniæ][11] applicans tunc temporis, et quidam alii, dederunt regi consilium, ut differret illud negotium transfretandi donec aptius tempus, scilicet Paschale, immineret.[12] Comes

Ibid. ii. 319.

Arrival of the count of Britanny.

fol. 61 *a*.

---

[1] *Saresbiriensem*] Sarebir, MS.

[2] *consummatum*] consumma, MS.

[3] *quod*] quam, MS.

[4] The sentence is incomplete, but may be supplied from the *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 318, thus, "viriliter ad consummationem est prosecutus," or from the *Flores Historiarum*, p. 126, ed. 1570, "non segniter prosecutus, feliciter consummavit." By carelessness, the paragraph which follows, in reference to the debts of the church of *Durham*, contracted by Richard de Marisco, and paid off by Richard Poore, is made to apply to *Salisbury*. See *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 396, under the year 1237.

[5] *episcopus*] Repeated superfluously after *Saresbiriensis.*

[6] *quosdam*] Repeated again before *ornatus*, and partially erased.

[7] *decenter*] de . enter, MS.

[8] *Cantuariensis*] Repeated by error after *archiepiscopus.*

[9] *Rogerus*] Rogeri, MS.

[10] *Portesmue*] Originally written *Portumue.*

[11] *Britanniæ*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[12] *immineret*] imineret, MS.

A.D. 1229.

autem . . . homines, et infidelis fidelitatem; et rex . . . Anglia, insuper datis eidem . . . remisit regionem.

The emperor lands in Sicily.

Imperator F[rethericus] rediens applicuit prospere in Sicilia, cui sui fideles et naturales catervatim occurrerunt, gaudenter dicentes, "Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini!"[1] Et confluebant undique ad eum, dicentes se excusando qui dispersi fuerant, quoniam papa et papales eos præoccupatos[2] seduxerat. Quod de cetero non continget.

He recovers his territories from the pope.

Readquisivit igitur imperator una die vel una hora quicquid ei papa per plures menses,[3] effusis infinitis, quos ab ecclesia extorserat, thesauris, cum hominum strage miseranda Christianorum; quorum omnes, qui imperatorem profitebantur dominum, excommunicatos, quod est horribile dictu, papa, animarum Christi prodigus, ad Tartara destinavit, ut timetur.

Henry at York.

II. A. ii. 320.

M°.CC°.XXX°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xv°., tenuit ad Natale Domini curiam . . . Scotorum Alexandro, apud Eboracum. Archiepiscopus vero loci in multis tantum convivium et convivas honorifice respiciendo serenavit.

He makes gifts to the king of Scots.

Rex quoque Anglorum regi Scotorum pretiosa contulit donativa. Die vero Natalis quarta rex . . . regionem; dominus autem rex Anglorum Londonias properavit.

25 Jan. Thunderstorm during mass at St. Paul's.

Die vero Conversionis sancti Pauli, in ecclesia ejusdem sancti Londoniis, cecidit fulgur horribile horribiliter, episcopo missam celebrante; et cum fulgure tonitrus, qui stupefactos et fugitivos reddidit universos. Tempore vero vernali arridente, imperator contra hostes suos ita, fuso multo sanguinis Christiani profluvio, invaluit, quod castra . . . revocavit.

Ibid. ii. 321.

Et præter eos quos extra mœnia fecit trucidari, quoscunque . . . suis papæ adhærentibus poterat invenire vel vivos excoriari, vel in patibulis vento præsentari. Inter quos . . . quem proposuit idem papa multis ditatum honoribus, ut dicebat, sullimasse, cum imperatorem dejecisset. Imperator vero, ne tanti viro prophetia careret veritate . . . suspendi, ad magnam ecclesiæ et domini papæ confusionem, obprobrium et ignominiam, nec manibus imperialibus redimi, cumulata esterlingorum desiderabilium multitudine.

The emperor is hated by the papalists.

Et factum est nomen imperatoris tirannizantis exosum nimis, et cruentum in corde et auribus papalibus vehementer; unde ferventius ultioni insistebat.

John de Breisne flies to France.

Johannes de Bresne, princeps papalis exercitus et dux, horrens incidere in manus tirannicas, fugit in Galliam, ad natale solum, dispersis commilitonibus stipendiariis, sed impregnatis eorum marsupiis et clitellis.

Ibid. ii. 322.

Mediantibus igitur amicis, statutæ . . . convenirent; papa

---

[1] Matth. xxi. 9.

[2] *præoccupatos*] preocupatos, MS.

[3] *menses*] A verb appears here to be wanting.

A.D. 1230.

enim, offenso nimis imperatore,[1] pelli suæ formidebat.

Death of William de Brause.

Per idem tempus Willelmus de Brausa, vir nobilis et inter Walliæ barones conterminos non ultimus, a Leolino, in regis magnum dedecus, perimitur.

Henry exacts money from the religious houses and Londoners.

Tunc vero temporis dominus rex transfretaturus multam collegit [pecuniam],[2] maxime autem a domibus religiosorum et a civibus Londoniarum. Congregatis igitur omnibus qui ei servitium debebant militare, apud Portesmue pridie kalendas Maii[3] cum exercitu suo naves ascendit, (fol. 61 b.)

30 April. He crosses over to Brittany.

et apud Sanctum Macutum in Britannia applicuit. Comes autem . . . . . juraverunt. (Ibid. ii. 323.) Andreas autem de Vitri et alii nobiles pauci ad . . . . præparantes. Eodem anno passus est sol eclipsim in ortu . . . in Rogationibus. (Ibid. ii. 324.) Dux Saxonum, regis . . . Angliam, de absentia regis dolens, quem credidit invenisse, cum . . . susceptus est; ubi adventum regis in domibus Veteris Templi commorans expectabat.

Civil war in France.

Commotum est regnum Francorum pro quadam discordia intestina; unde multi nobiles ad regem Anglorum convolarunt, Fulco videlicet Paganellus, de Normannia, et multi cum [eo][4] de partibus illis. Rex etiam Anglorum, veniens in Wasconiam, cepit ibi multorum homagia.

Reimund de Burgh drowned.

Submersus est Reimundus de Burgo, nepos Huberti. Hoc etiam tempore, mense videlicet Augusti, ... convenerunt. Veniens itaque Romam . . . revocatis. (Ibid. ii. 326.) Comederunt ergo . . . . . confirmata.

Reconciliation of the king of France with his nobles.

Pacificatus est insuper rex Francorum, procurante B[lanchia] regina, cum suis magnatibus, per quod pars regis Anglorum non mediocriter est infirmata.[5] Rediit igitur ad civitatem Nannatensem,[6] ibique diu jacens inutiliter thesauros consumpsit residuos, quos habebat infinitos. Interim nobiles ejus et fideles, consumptis suis viaticis, cœperunt egere, infirmari, depauperari, et miseras animas exhalare.[7]

Henry returns to England. Deaths of nobles.

Tandem rex, naves conscendens, pauper et inglorius rediit ad propria. Et qui cum eo redierunt, applicantes post plurima [maris][8] pericula, infirmitate[9] gravatim contabuerunt. Unde comes de Glovernia et Robertus de Greslei, et multi alii nobiles et potentes ilico in fata concesserunt.

Eclipse of the moon. 22 Nov.

Facta est eclipsis lunæ, x°. kalendas Decembris.

Henry at Lambeth.

M°.CC°.XXXI°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xvi°., tenuit curiam apud Lamhethiam in Natali Domini, Huberto . . . ad (H. A. ii. 329.)

---

[1] *imperatore*] imperator, MS.

[2] *pecuniam*] Omitted in MS. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 323.

[3] *Maii*] Mai, MS.

[4] *eo*] Omitted in MS.

[5] *infirmata*] imfirmata, MS.

[6] *Nannatensem*] Nannanensem, MS.

[7] *exhalare*] exalare, MS.

[8] *maris*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[9] *infirmitate*] imfirmita, MS.

A.D. 1231.

Ibid. ii. 329, 330.

fol. 62 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 331.

Church of Hatfield burnt.

Ibid. ii. 332.

Truce between France and England.

Ibid. ii. 333.

Death of Richard, abp. of Canterbury.

3 Aug.

Ralph, bp. of Chichester, elected abp., but rejected by the pope.

Ibid. ii. 337.

Pillage of the crops of the beneficed Italians.

colloquium rex cum prælatis et aliis magnatibus, ubi . . . . prælatis. Contradixit archiepiscopus R[icardus], propter quod aversum est cor regis, qui eum creaverat, ex tunc et deinceps. Insuper archiepiscopus conquestus est de Huberto . . . . ad recognitionem tenebantur. Qua de causa . . . . destinavit. Combusta est ecclesia et cella de Hætfelde.[1] Mense Aprilis, post . . . de Penbroc. Et, nuptiis . . . clausit extremum, et . . . est sepultus. Suppresso et represso Leolino, principe Norwalliæ, rex fecit reædificare . . . quod antea lignorum extitit, et a Walensibus destructum. Mense vero Junii statutæ sunt treugæ inter reges Francorum et Anglorum triennales. Mense Julio Petrus . . . et honore, ut decuit, pro bonis operibus suis, qui in Historiis plenius scribuntur, ab omnibus est receptus. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Ricardus, expletis negotiis Romæ, redire maturavit; infirmatus[2] autem obiter apud Sanctam Gemmam,[3] in domo fratrum Minorum, tertia dieta citra Romam, iii°. nonas Augusti diem clausit extremum. Revocatus est rex a nuptiis sororis [regis][4] Scociæ. Radulphus, episcopus Cicestrensis, Angliæ cancellarius, postulatus est in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem. Præsentatio ejus regi bene complacuit, sed intimatum fuit secretius papæ, quod si promoveretur in archiepiscopatum, contradiceret tributo, quod ab Anglia papa exigit annuatim. Dixitque adhuc domino papæ idem susurro, videlicet magister Symon de Langetuna, quod dictus episcopus Cicestrensis, Radulphus, aulicus fuit regalis, festinus, et spiritum habens in naribus. Papa vero, hiis auditis, cassavit de ipso factam postulationem, concedens, . . . in pastorem. Anno sub eodem . . . Stephano de Segrave, milite literato, et quibusdam clericis aulicis, qui computabant[5] Romanorum et alienorum quam[6] ipsius regis; et vehementer ab hoc indignantibus, distracta sunt blada ipsorum Romanorum et alienigenarum, et ipsi dispersi sunt subito, ita [quod][7] viderent omnes subito evanuisse. Eorum nempe consuetudo infallibilis est fugere fugantes et fugare fugientes. Fuerunt autem quidam de regno temerarii, qui ipsos ita terruerunt exturbatos. Qui si istam fugationem possent per aliquod tem-

---

[1] *Combusta . . . Hætfelde*] Added in the margin.

[2] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[3] *Sanctam Gemmam*] So also in Wendover, the Greater Chronicle, the *Hist. Angl.*, and *Flores Hist.*, but we should probably read *Sanctum Geminum* [St. Gemini, in the legation of Spoleto], as in the "Annales de Waverleia," p. 309, ed. Luard.

[4] *regis*] Supplied from *Hist Angl.*

[5] *computabant*] Some words are wanting here. Perhaps we might supply *beneficiatos, tam.*

[6] *quam*] q^{a}n, MS.

[7] *quod*] Omitted in MS.

A.D. 1231.

John, treasurer of York, conceals himself.

Others are ill-used at St. Alban's.

fol. 62 *b.*

poris, licet breve, exercuisse, totum regnum ab eorum peste liberassent. Johannes namque Romanus, Eboracensis thesaurarius, canonicus, timens adeo tremulus factus, ut febricitans crederetur; latuit autem in ecclesia Eboracensi in locis et angulis absconditis, ita quod vix turris tuta fuit latitanti. Item, apud Sanctum Albanum, quidam Londoniensis canonicus, Romanus natione, et Johannes Ferentinus, et quidem alii, qui ad quoddam consistorium convenerant, exturbati sunt, et alii capti, ita ut vix aliquis Romanus alicubi appareret. Tandem dominus rex hanc multis desiderabilem sedavit tempestatem.

H. A. ii. 338.

Ibid. ii. 339.

The riots are suppressed.

Ibid. ii. 340.

The election of the prior of Canterbury as abp. set aside.

Peter, bp. of Winchester, chief councillor of the king.

Ibid. ii. 341.

His enmity to Hubert de Burgh.

M°.[CC°.]XXXII°.[1] Rex Anglorum H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xvii°., fuit . . . ejusdem civitatis episcopus, omnia ministravit necessaria. Ipsis diebus . . . blada vero bonis conditionibus et amplis mensuris postulantibus venderentur, vel pauperibus, quia mucida, erogarentur, ipse, cujus erant fruges illæ, gravem super hiis coram . . . querimoniam. Ipse igitur episcopus, convocatis multis aliis episcopis . . . excommunicavit. Præterea papa significavit domino regi, ut talem compesceret præsumptionem.[2] Et sic cessavit frugum dispersio et alienigenarum exturbatio. Tempore vero sub eodem conventus . . . archiepiscopum Cantuariensem. Præsentatus autem regi [et][3] acceptus, profectus est . . . impetraret a domino papa confirmari. Et cum Romam pervenisset, videbatur papæ, quod nimis esset senex, vir tamen bonus, sed non ad hoc.[4] Præcepit igitur monachis Cantuariensibus, qui illuc cum electo venerant, ut alium eligerent ad tantam dignitatem commodiorem.[5] Petrus, episcopus Wintoniensis, principalis effectus regis consiliarius. Circa dies illos Leolinus, princeps Norwalliæ, fines baronum conterminorum ingressus . . . rapinis. Accesserunt igitur ad regem Petrus Wintoniensis et alii cum eo, novi consiliarii . . . scandalum et dedecus, quod Walensium scurræ vulgares, nullius quisquiliæ momenti, formidolosi latrunculi, singulis annis taliter impune debacchantur,[6] depopulantes confinia suarum regionum. Quibus cum . . . . . actiones." Tunc Petrus episcopus, qui a multo tempore, scilicet a quo ipse, victoria optenta est[7] in mari, sicut prædictum est,[8] remansit super litus retrogradens et fictus, Huberto victorioso

---

[1] *M°.CC°.XXXII°.*] M°.XXXII°., MS.

[2] *præsumptionem*] presupcōm, MS.

[3] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *non ad hoc*] non ho, MS., corrected from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 341.

[5] *commodiorem*] comodiorem, MS.

[6] *debacchantur*] debacantur, MS.

[7] *optenta est*] There is something wrong in this sentence, and we must probably read *quando* before *victoria*, or omit *est*.

[8] See *ante*, p. 241.

A.D. 1232.

inviderat et infestus odivit, respondit domino regi, "Si pauper es, tibi et tuæ imputes simplicitati, qui honores, custodias et dignitates vacantes ita transfers ad alios, et a fisco alienas, quod non in divitiis ac reverentia, sed solo nomine umbratili rex vel etiam regulus debeas appellari. Hinc est[1] confines tibi hostes, scilicet tui ministri, formidant nomen tuum." Sic sic igitur rex instructus, cepit ab hiis qui abundabant[2] ballivis plurimis pecuniam multam. Et cum ad hoc specialiter ab episcopo Wintoniensi rex stimularetur, cognoscens Ranulphum Britonem, quem justiciarius promoverat et multis ditaverat honoribus, et cameræ regalis thesaurarium constituerat, deposuit ab officio; et post multam familiaritatem in multam repellens ignominiam, cepit ab illo mille marcas. Et hoc machinabatur episcopus in odium Huberti justiciarii; quem idem Hubertus creaverat et dilexit. Videns igitur episcopus quod in hiis consiliis regi quamplurimum placuisset, ipsum locupletando, suggessit regi, quia ad hoc sitienter anhelavit,[3] ut exigeret ab eo ratiocinium strictum de thesauro regio, quem pro voluntate tractaverat, eo prius deposito a justiciaria. Quod et factum est. Ad hoc respondit Hubertus domino regi, quod patris sui regis J[ohannis] habuit cartam, quæ ipsum absolvit ab omni ratiocinio de rebus omnibus perceptis et percipiendis ad regnum pertinentibus, thesauris et rebus aliis. Qui totiens ejus fidelitatem indubitatam, ut asseruit, est expertus. Ad hæc Petrus, "Talis carta post obitum regis J[ohannis] nullum penitus habet robur aut vigorem." Tunc Laurentius de Sancto Albano, Huberti clericus specialis et consiliarius, ait, "Si dominus meus Hubertus cartam talem pro benefactis suis tunc expletis optinuisset, quanto magis debet[4] dominus rex modernus esse ei gratus et benivolus, et eum fidelissimum reputare. Si enim sciret dominus rex quanta optulit Ludowicus domino meo Huberto obsesso in castro Doveriæ,[5] ut illud sibi redderet, et noluit ullo modo, sciens quod illud esset[6] clavis Angliæ, et si illud optinuisset, totum regnum leviter in ejus cederet dominium, certe diceretis omnes, quod fidelissimus regi esset, immo quod totum regnum ipse[7] in solidum restituisset. Sed hoc parum. Quando supervenit Francis auxilii succursus immanissimus, ipse corpus suum tumidis maris undis et navali bello intre-

Ralph le Breton removed from his office.

fol. 63 *a.*

The justiciary Hubert deposed, and his accompts required.

Defence of Hubert by Laurence of St. Alban's.

---

[1] *Hinc est*] We should perhaps supply *quod* here, and *non* before *formidant.* The *Hist. Angl.* affords no assistance.

[2] *abundabant*] habundabant, MS.

[3] *anhelavit*] hanelavit, MS.

[4] *debet*] Repeated superfluously after *modernus.*

[5] *Doveriæ*] Dovrie, MS., and *certe* erased after it.

[6] *esset*] esse, MS.

[7] *ipse*] ipī, MS.

A.D. 1232.

pidus commisit, et, Deo propitio, triumphavit, ubi tu Pictavensis, domine episcope, qui militarem te facis, immo Willelmus, magnus Marescallus,[1] sed nec multi, quos reges Angliæ J[ohannes] et qui præsens Henricus III. multis honoribus et possessionibus locupletavit, accedere voluerunt. Tanta non fecit tempore regis J[ohannis], qui talem ei cartam concessit; hæc igitur pro carta computentur."

He is accused by the citizens of London for hanging Constantine [Fitz-Olaf] without trial.

Cives Londonienses, qui ipsum Hubertum pro suspendio concivis sui Constantini oderant, lætati sunt de tribulatione sua. Et videntes eum undique impetitum, accusabant et ipsi eum de suspendio civis memorati, quod scelus[2] subito factum clam et sine judicio. Hubertus igitur videns quod multi, licet singulis rationabiliter respondisset, sanguinem suem sitiebant, divertit a loco, et fugit clanculo ad Meretonam, ibique inter canonicos in ecclesia pavidus latitabat.

He takes refuge at Merton.

Innotuit autem hoc regi, quod scilicet Hubertus ob timorem querentium animam suam ad pacem ecclesiæ confugerat. Significavit[3] igitur illi, ut ad curiam rediret juri pariturus, et objiciendis[4] responsurus. Renunciavit autem regi, quod si a pari[5] possit cum adversariis multiplicatis verbis contendere, audacter et libenter veniret, sed iram regis et impetum hostium vehementer formidabat; qui non bona quæ multa fecit, sed mala quæ poterant excogitare malitiose ei objiciebant.[6]

The mayor of London ordered to bring him to the king.

Præcepit igitur rex majori Londoniarum, ex quo respondisset Hubertus præcise quod paci ecclesiæ adhæreret, jam vespere, quatinus statim, conjunctis sibi civibus universis, adiret Meretonam hostiliter, et Hubertum vivum sive mortuum undecunque abstractum sibi præsentarent.[7] Ibid. ii. 346.

At major . . . . et camisia, præcordialiter orans, cum lacrimis corpus . . . frendentes, suggestum . . . . . sedare non posset cum vellet . . . nominis in partibus fuerat transmarinis, erit regi in obprobrium sempiternum. Mutato . . . revocavit. Procurante . . . capellanus ipsius Huberti . . . . Norwicensis episcopi, credebat ibidem tutus requiescere. Quod cum regi . . . metuens ne si ita Hubertus discederet, in regno perturbationem machinaretur.

fol. 63 *b*. Ibid. ii. 347.

He is imprisoned in the tower of London, but afterwards

Unde facti pœnitens . . . præcipiens quatinus illum . . . Londoniarum incarcerarent. Et sic vinctus reductus est, et in turri Londoniarum incarceratus. Rogerus autem, episcopus Londoniensis, fecit eum reduci ad capellam, de qua rapuit eum Godefridus,

---

[1] *Marescallus*] Marecallus, MS.

[2] *scelus*] celus, MS.

[3] *Significavit*] Written *significat*, and the last letter afterwards erased.

[4] *objiciendis*] obiciendis, MS.

[5] *a pari*] Repeated after *multiplicatis*.

[6] *objiciebant*] obiciebant, MS.

[7] *sibi præsentarent*] presentarent sibi, MS., but marked for transposition.

qui eum a capella traxerat violenter; ubi circumquaque ab A.D. 1232.
excubantibus strictissime custoditus est. Eligitur magister taken back
Johannes Blundus in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, qui to the
Ibid. ii. 345. Romam . . . confirmaret. Concessa est regi pro debitis place
solvendis, quibus . . . . regis xvi., in magnum multorum where he
dampnum et detrimentum; unde nec unquam regnum, sicut nec was captured.
ex aliis præsidiis regi impensis, aliquod suscepit vel exile
incrementum.[1] Obiit Ranulphus, comes Cestriæ, apud Death of
Walingeford, cujus viscera ibidem sunt sepulta, corpus vero Ranulph,
Ibid. ii. 349. Cestriam defertur tumulandum. Successit autem . . . . earl of Chester.
Scotorum. Propter hoc cognomento Scotus dicebatur. Alius
autem . . . . . suscepit. Hubertus in arcto positus, in turri Hubert
Londoniarum moram continuans diutinam compeditus, multorum de Burgh
corda compatientium corda cruentavit, qui regis misericordiam again imprisoned
pro ipso rogitabant; sed adhuc non sunt exauditi. Suggestum in the
namque regi fuerat, quod Hubertus non modicum thesaurum Tower.
habuerat depositum apud Novum Templum Londoniis. Rex
Ibid. ii. 350. . . . sua. Hiis ita gestis . . . dicentes, "Quid adhuc egemus
testibus? Convincitur . . . . respondeat accusationibus, ut . . .
existat." Quod et factum est in crastino sancti Martini. Ubi
cum a multis graviter accusaretur, respondit vel in propria 12 Nov.
Ibid. ii. 351. . . . fideliter ausus est stare cum eo, tam eleganter tamque His defence.
prudenter omnibus articulis et objectionibus contra eum
argumentose compositis, quod palam eorum omnibus in cunctis
insontem se probavit. Verumtamen cum quidam protervius
instans vocaret ipsum veterem proditorem,[2] non permisit
Hubertus Laurentium, licet se parasset respondere, pro ipso
loqui, sed ipsemet erectus pro se respondit, dicens, "Vetus
sum, etenim senui; proditor autem, nequaquam. Verumtamen
tibi in proditione convicto[3] peperci, cum te debuissem
suspendisse." Et tundens pectus, ait, "Mea culpa!"
Adversarius igitur ille obmutuit erubescens. Tunc rex, ad
fol. 64 *a*. misericordiam inclinatus, dixit . . . stimularunt!" Concessit
igitur carcerem liberiorem et mitiorem. Et missus [est][4] He is sent
ad castrum de Divises, ubi aliquandiu commorans, una to the
noctium cum audisset quod cogitaverat episcopus Wintoniensis, castle of Devises.

---

[1] On the lower margin of fol. 63 *a* is the following note, which seems to bear reference to this tax: "¶ Summa decimæ omnium proventuum ecclesiasticorum, monachis de Sancto Albano appropriatorum infra eundem archidiaconatum, xxiiii. l. ii. d. et ob. exceptis portionibus elemosinarii, quæ non taxabantur."

[2] *proditorem*] The last three syllables have been erased, and *colubrum* written over the space; but this has also been erased.

[3] *convicto*] convicti, MS.

[4] *est*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1232.

He escapes, but is seized and reimprisoned.

ipsum fame interimere, dormientibus custodibus, se saltu agili, sicut compeditus potuit, misit ultra murum, et cadens super unum dumum erexit se sanus et integer, et intravit quandam vicinam ecclesiam. Quod cum custodes cognovissent,[1] irati intrantes ecclesiam, rapuerunt eum ab ecclesia, et in castro vinculis arctioribus[2] ipsum constrinxerunt. Quod audiens Robertus, episcopus Saresbiriensis, omnes illos pacis ecclesiasticæ[3] violatores excommunicavit. Interim episcopus regem adiit, nec prius discedere voluit quam Huberti liberationem a laicorum vinculis impetrasset. Et sic solutus, reductus est in ecclesiam. Vicecomes[4] autem a rege præceptum recepit, ne permitteret victualia ferri in ecclesiam, ut scilicet ita fame acerba moriturus, exire cogeretur, et sic a castellanis caperetur.[5]

He is again released, and replaced in the church.

M°.[CC°.]XXXIII°.[6] Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xviii°.,[7] fecit ad Natale . . . . amovit officiis, et Pictavenses extraneosque in eorum officiis subrogavit. Willelmum de Rodune . . . gerebat comitis Marescalli, quod idem Ricardus moleste tulit. Walterum quoque . . . thesaurariæ expellens, centum marcas eum coegit sibi, licet invitum, numerare. Consiliarios . . . nobiles refutans, nulli alii, nisi episcopo Wintoniensi et clerico suo, Petro de Rivallis, consilia sua audebat communicando revelare. Idem quoque . . . de Segrave, militem literatum, et Robertum . . . conservabat. Quod comes Ricardus Marescallus cum conspexisset, ita scilicet naturales regni postponi, et alienigenas quamplures præponi, tam . . . . . . tenebatur. Ad hæc autem respondens episcopus, ait, "Bene . . . . homines superbos illius et rebelles . . . . verbo vehementer perturbati . . . proposuerunt, quod pro . . . usque ad capitum expositionem viriliter decertarent. Per idem tempus . . . . Wintoniensis, qui regnum, repulsis naturalibus hominibus, conabatur, et ipsum J[ohannem] habere ad hoc consortem et adjutorem. Electus est igitur loco ejus magister Edmundus de Abendona, theologus, Saresbiriensis thesaurarius, canonicus, legens Oxoniæ in theologia, in moribus et scientia[8] excellenter adornatus. Quem rex ob bonam famam

H. A. ii. 353.

Ibid. ii. 354.

Ibid. ii. 355.

Edmund of Abingdon elected abp. of Canterbury.

fol. 64 *b*.

---

[1] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.

[2] *arctioribus*] arctioris, MS.

[3] *ecclesiasticæ*] ecclesiaste, MS.

[4] *Vicecomes*] Vicem, MS., with some letters erased.

[5] This account of Hubert's escape from the castle, recapture, and release, is entered in Wendover and the Greater Chronicle (ed. Wats, p. 388), as also in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 359, 360, under the following year, 1233.

[6] *M°.CC°.XXXIII°.*] M°.XXXIII°., MS.

[7] *xviii°.*] xviii^{us}., MS.

[8] *scientia*] After this word *et moribus* is repeated superfluously.

A.D. 1233.

Ibid. ii. 356.

suam acceptabat, necnon et papa commendabat.[1] Confœderabantur Marescallo multi Angliæ nobiles . . . et fratres ejus, et multi ejus consanguinei et amici, Ricardus Suard . . . dinumerare. Causa enim favorabilis erat et justa, et tam propter regem quam regnum promovendum, licet rex hoc scire dissimulasset. Rex autem iratus, solius fretus . . . exules eos fecit denunciari . . . invenirentur.

The earl Mareschal joins Lewellyn, prince of Wales.

Fœderatur interim Marescallus Leolino et aliis magnatibus illius regionis, interposito juramento, quod nullus sine alio regi concordaret.

Ibid. ii. 357.

Obiit Warinus . . . de Caardif. Rex de consilio sæpedicti episcopi Wintoniensis diffidavit Ricardum, comitem Marescallum.

Hubert de Burgh is set free and brought to Wales.

Hubertus de Burgo raptus est ab ecclesia de Divisis subito et ante expectatum a viris armatis, amicis suis, qui misericordia ducti de tot ejus tribulationibus, ducebant ei unum equum pretiosum et celerem ac fortem, et eum desuper sedere fecerunt, et adduxerunt eum in Walliam, extra regis potestatem. Quod cum cognovissent castellani, se deceptos doluerunt.

Henry suffers disgrace at Grosmund.

Rex apud Grosmund impetum exulum suorum, vix tamen, dampnum incurrit cum dedecore, quod episcopus Wintoniensis nunquam restauravit.

He builds a church for converted Jews.

Anno illo rex Anglorum H[enricus], pro redemptione animæ suæ et animarum antecessorum suorum, domos decentes cum nobili ecclesia ædificavit Londoniis, non procul a Veteri Templo, ubi Judæi conversi honeste habitare valebant, et instrui in lege Christiana, regiis[2] elemosinis sustentandi.

Ibid. ii. 363.

Simili quoque pietatis . . . hospitale propriis sumptibus Oxoniis . . . perciperent necessitatis.

Henry at Gloucester.

M°.CC°.XXXIIII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xix°.,[3] fuit[4] ad Natale Domini apud Gloverniam, cum parvo valde comitatu, quia recesserunt ab eo multi magnates, qui spoliabantur omnibus bonis suis apud Grosmund.

Unusual frost.

Quo utique tempore cœpit gelu fortissimum et diuturnum terram adeo constringere, ita quod fruges, plantæ et herbæ ita suffocabantur, ut radices mortificarenter, nec in vere potuerunt revivificari. Unde, agricultura suspensa, fames et sterilitas est subsecuta.

26 Dec. John of Monmouth defeated by

In crastino autem Natalis Domini Johannes Monemutensis, dum impetum temerarium fecisset in Marescallum, dissipatis agminibus, in fugam victus[5] [est].[6] Marescallus a tergo[7]

---

[1] *commendabat*] comendabat, MS.

[2] *regiis*] regii, MS.

[3] *xix°.*] xix^{us}., MS. In regard to the change in the numbers of the regnal years of Henry, see note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 363.

[4] *fuit*] fuit rex, MS.

[5] *victus*] So in MS. Perhaps we should read, *versus*.

[6] *est*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[7] *a tergo*] insecutus a tergo, MS.

A.D. 1234. the earl Mareschal. fugientes insecutus, maxime vero Pictavenses, qui ad Johannem venerant et illi militaverant, lancea perforavit. Perempta . . . . elapsus. Equitationes vero . . . septimana, quæ vir Ibid. ii. 364, 365. martius[1] natura . . . . commendare.[2] Sed ut de aliis brevibus concludam, secundum volubilitatem . . . sentiebant. Cumque hæc in partibus Walliæ sic agerentur, rex . . . . . Mare- fol. 65 *a.* scalli. Episcopus igitur A[lexander], sciens quod talia verba emanarunt ab episcopo Wintoniensi, indutus . . . . regis consilium vel auxilium impenderent, vel qui super . . . malitiose imponebant talia delicta.[3] Affuit quidem . . . . . uno ore Complaints made to the king of his evil councillors. dicebant eidem, "Domine . . . securum, sed crudele et peri- Ibid. ii. 366. culosum tibi et regno, quod ab episcopo Wintoniensi et suis novimus emanare." Annectentes, quod nisi ab errore incepto rex desisteret, et cum fidelibus regni pacifice . . . . perversores. Rex autem pius pium audiens prælatorum consilium, respondit, quod consiliis eorum in omnibus obedienter obtemperaret. Unde præcepit Petro . . . de cetero nec ipse nec sui regiis negotiis interessent.[4] Pictavenses insuper . . . castrorum custodiis expellens . . . . . gratia, cum episcopis . . . . concordia efficaciter contrectarent. Et sic . . . . consiliis Ibid. ii. 367. suorum prælatorum. Eodem quoque anno . . . electus, a Rogero . . . a sancto, indigena ab indigena, theologus a theologo, Dominica . . . Aprilis. Huic autem consecrationi interfuit dominus rex cum xiii. episcopis. Et eodem die missam[5] archiepiscopus Edmundus, cum pallio . . . celebravit. Comes autem Marescallus, quod[6] infelici casu contigerat, non fuit inventus a nunciis supradictis; ignorabat enim cor . . . commutatum, in Hiberniam enim festinus transierat. Venerant enim Hiberniensium nuncii ad eum, urgentissime affirmantes, quod . . . indulgebant. Commissum est . . . Ibid. ii. 368. Hiberniæ, penitus de animo regis statum ignorantes. Et cum versum . . . . . cirurgico Hiberniensi quodam proditore ustus . . . expirasset. Actum est hoc prœlium prima die mensis Aprilis, in sabbato. Et dum talia agerentur in partibus occidentalibus, [oritur][7] consimilis . . . inter Christianos etiam religiosos, inter scilicet Templarios et Hospitalarios. Marescallus autem, de quo prætactum est, facta confessione . . . . Ibid. ii. 369. domino suo regi vel regno malum . . . ipsum inclinasse.[8] fol. 65 *b.*

---

[1] *martius*] macius, MS.

[2] *commendare*] comendare, MS.

[3] *delicta*] del, MS., the rest having been erased.

[4] *interessent*] non interessent, MS.

[5] *missam*] missam celebravit, MS., but the verb is repeated at the end of the paragraph.

[6] *quod*] qui quod, MS.

[7] *oritur*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[8] *inclinasse*] So in MS.; but the true reading is *inclinasset, elaborasse*, as in *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1234.

Hubert de Burgh restored to the king's peace.

The bp. of Winchester and others conceal themselves.

Hugh de Pateshulle made treasurer.

The count of Britanny deprived of his honours.

The pope goes to Perusium.

Capture of Majorca.

Tenens igitur . . . Kilkenni. Post Pascha cum dominus rex versus . . . . . pernoctaret. Venerunt igitur ibidem . . . referentes de prædictis. Unde rex, admirantibus cunctis, in fletum . . . graviter, plangens tanti mortem bellatoris. Et, convocatis presbiteris et clericis capellæ suæ, fecit solempniter decantari pro anima ejus obsequium mortuorum, et largas pauperibus elemosinas jussit erogari. Venerunt igitur ad pacem regis, procurantibus archiepiscopo et episcopis, sub ducatu eorumdem, Hubertus de Burgo et alii exules memorati. Frater Ibid. ii. 370. insuper comitis Ricardi, Gilebertus, protestatus mortem . . . susciperet ad ipsum devolutam. Et cum rex diu denegasset, 11 June. tandem archiepiscopi pulsatus precibus benigne concessit, et in die Pentecostes cingulo donavit militari, tradens ei virgam Marescalciæ. Hubertum quoque de Burgo, Gilebertum Basset et Ricardum Suard ad se vocavit reconciliatos. Latuit ergo episcopus Wintoniensis in ecclesia sua, cum suis complicibus. Stephanus quoque de Segrave in abbatia canonicorum Legrecestriæ vix tutum invenit l[atibulum].[1] Robertus quoque Passeleuue apud Novum Templum Londoniarum more latuit leporino. Quo repulso, subrogatus est Hugo de Pateshulle thesaurarius ad scaccarium. Comes Britanniæ, penitus recedens a rege, piraticis repinis in mari indulsit; unde merito rex eum[2] honoribus, quos in Anglia habuit, spoliavit. Papa, orta seditione in urbe, apud Perusium moram facturus[3] discessit. Capta est Majorica insula a rege Castellæ, et obsessa Minorica, festinæ patens captioni. Obiit Hugo Folioth, episcopus Ibid. ii. 374. Herefordensis, cui . . . Maidenestane.

Henry at Westminster.

Some Jews convicted for intending to crucify a boy.

Deaths of bishops.

Death of William, abbat of St. Alban's.

M°.CC°.XXXV°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xix°., fuit ad Natale apud Westmonasterium. Eodemque tempore vii. Judæi adducti coram rege convicti sunt, quod quendam puerum Christianum furto sublatum[4] et circumscisum proposuerant, convocatis aliis in Norwico omnibus Judæis, in instanti Pascha proximo crucifigere; unde rex condignam accepit ultionem. Obiit Hugo de Welles, episcopus Lincolniensis; cui successit Robertus, cognomento Grossum-caput. Concordati sunt cum rege pristini consiliarii ejus, qui hactenus latuerunt. Obiit Henricus de Sanford, episcopus Rofensis; cui successit Ricardus de Wendoure.[5] Obiit Willelmus, abbas 24 Feb. sancti Albani, die sancti Mathiæ; cui successit Johannes,

---

[1] *latibulum*] A blank space is left after the first letter of the word.

[2] *eum*] ei, MS.

[3] *facturus*] fcuturus, MS.

[4] *sublatum*] sullatum, MS.

[5] *Wendoure*] An error for *Wendene*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 377.

A.D. 1235.

Espousals of the emperor Frederic to Isabella, the king's sister.

Arrival of foreign usurers.

H. A. ii. 383.

fol. 66 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 384.

Capture of Cordova.

Deaths of nobles.

prior de Hertfort. Imperator Romanorum, Fredericus, desponsavit Ysabellam, sororem regis Anglorum, cum qua data fuerunt xxx. milia marcarum, absque ornamentis necessariis tantis nuptiis, quæ ad tria milia ascenderunt. Quæ omnia per Angliam fuerant extorta et collecta. Per idem tempus ex partibus ultramarinis venerunt Londonias quidam ignoti, qui se esse domini papæ mercatores vel scambiatores asserebant, cum tamen manifesti existerent usurarii. Quorum usuræ duriores erant conditionis quam Judæorum. Isti autem maxime religiosos suis debitis studuerunt illaqueare, quia illos literis papalibus, pro voluntate impetratis, poterant exagitare. Episcopus vero Londoniensis . . . literatus et sanctus, cum intellexisset hos dictos Caursinos . . . frequentare, et insontes cives Londonienses, talis pestis penitus ignaros, intoxicare, et multos, sed maxime prælatos et religiosos, fatigare, iratus et . . . illos tanquam scismaticos,[1] famam papæ non mediocriter denigrantes, ab urbe decrevit excommunicatos longius amovere, ut sic saltem pœnitentiam agerent de commissis. At ipsi Caursini tumentes, et de suis pecuniis, quibus abundabant,[2] confidentes . . . Romana literas pro voluntate impetrarunt citatorias, ut . . . valitudinarius, citaretur . . . Caursinis, familiaribus sociis, ut . . . . pariturus. Episcopus vero . . . tumultum illum pacifice ac prudenter sedavit suscitatum. Et hæc . . . dissimulatione, quia senuit, pertransiens . . . . . mercatores vel cambiatores esse cum jactantia profitentes, consuetum quæstum, fœnora cum pœnis adjunctis et variis exactionibus, impune et sine contradictionis repagulis exercuerunt. Et sic inter Christianos usura, quæ in utroque Testamento detestabilis habebatur, proh dolor! suscitatur rediviva. Hiis quoque diebus . . . in tantum, Deo favente, [cœpit][3] adaugeri et prosperari per totius Christianitatis latitudinem, ut in . . . prædicationis et scolasticæ disciplinæ, magnis cœnobiis æquipararetur.[4] Corduba, civitas Hispaniæ famosa, a Christianis capitur. Obierunt nobiles, Robertus filius-Walteri, et Rogerus de Sumerico, sine herede de se.

Henry at Winchester.

His marriage to Alienor of Provence.

M°.CC°.XXXVI°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xx°., tenuit festum Natalis apud Wintoniam, expectans ardenti desiderio suorum adventum nunciorum, quos in Provinciam destinaverat ad Reimundum, Provinciæ comitem, a quo poposcerat filiam suam Alienoram, sororem videlicet reginæ Francorum natu consequentem, sibi matrimonio copulandam. Quæ

---

[1] *scismaticos*] cismaticos, MS.

[2] *abundabant*] habundabant, MS.

[3] *cœpit*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *æquipararetur*] equiperaretur, MS.

in Anglia applicans, et Cantuariam prospere veniens, despon- A.D. 1236.
sata est regi officio Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Edmundi.
Nuptiæ vero magnifice Londoniis sunt celebratæ. Diebus
H. A. ii. 387. sub eisdem rex Henricus, pro . . . . . observari. Eodem
Ibid. ii. 388. anno, [iiii°.][1] kalendas Maii . . . colloquium. Admirabantur 28 April.
. . . . repulsis magnatibus naturalibus, electum Valentinum
Willelmum, reginæ avunculum, qui cum ea venerat in Angliam,
sequebatur . . . . rex correptus et correctus, secure spopondit
emendationem. Et tunc . . . . exorbitarunt. Rex instanter He demands his seal from the chancellor.
exegit ab episcopo Cicestrensi Radulpho, cancellario, sigillum
Ibid. ii. 390. suum; qui hoc facere renuit, dicens se nulla . . . suscepisset,
nisi similiter de communi consensu illud resignaret. Obiit
Willelmus de Albineto senior, post multas quas pro regno Death of William de Albini.
fol. 66 *b*. sustinuit tribulationes; adhuc heredibus suis pro redemptionis
suæ debitis illaqueatis, in fata concessit. Eodemque anno
capta est magna pars Hispaniæ per illustrem regem Castellæ, Great part of Spain conquered.
et, catholicis introductis, Christiano cultui mancipatur. Fit
Ibid. ii. 391. magna strages . . . in Hispania. Cruce signantur multi
magnates, videlicet comes Ricardus . . . Ricardus Suard,
et multi alii. Eodemque mense Augusti migraverunt a seculo
Ibid. ii. 392. Wigorniensis Willelmus de Bleis[2] . . . . de Albineto. Et
circa festum sancti Michaelis obiit Rofensis[3] episcopus, et 29 Sept.
Ibid. ii. 393. Thomas . . . . consecravit.

M°.CC°.XXXVII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxi°., Henry at Winchester.
celebravit Natale Domini apud Wintoniam. Convocari fecit
omnes Angliæ magnates, ut in die sancti Hilarii Londoniis 13 Jan.
congregati de negotiis regni contrectarent. Postulavitque ibi- Parliament summoned, and an aid demanded.
dem auxilium pecuniare, ita ut pecunia illa, secundum dispo-
sitionem aliquorum magnatum ad hoc electorum, in usus regni
fructuosos expenderetur. Orto autem multo murmure, volens
rex illud sedare, quia concilium protelatum[4] est in moram,
amaritudine[5] spiritus, quatriduanam,[6] spontanea et alacri volun-
H. A. ii. 394. tate jurans pollicebatur se non amplius nobiles . . . . sol-
veretur. Conquestus est enim graviter, quod sororis suæ,
scilicet imperatricis, matrimonium, necnon uxoris suæ, reginæ
ipsius, thesaurum dissipaverat, et ipsum miserabiliter depau-
peraverat. Sed ut modo suam relevarent inopiam, promisit Henry promises to

---

[1] *iiii°.*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *Willelmus de Bleis*] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 392.

[3] *Rofensis episcopus*] This is an error, as pointed out in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 393.

[4] *protelatum*] protulatum, MS.

[5] *amaritudine*] At first written *in amaritudine*, but *in* erased.

[6] *quatriduanam*] quadruduanam, MS.

A.D. 1237.
observe the liberties of Magna Carta.
He is angry with Hubert de Burgh, on account of his daughter's marriage to Rich. de Clare.

firmiter cum sacramento se ex tunc Magnæ Cartæ libertates
plene inviolabiliter observaturum. Et quia videbatur . . .
archiepiscopus Cantuariensis S[tephanus], cum . . . malo fretus
consilio in magna parte . . . . . recidivaret. Unde omnium
corda in hoc verbo sibi plenius inclinavit. Iterum incanduit
ira regis in Hubertum de Burgo, pro eo quod nitebatur
matrimonio copulare Margaretæ, filiæ suæ, Ricardum de Clare,
sine regis licentia ac benivolentia. Tandem . . . asseruit Ibid. ii. 395.
Hubertus hoc fieri eo penitus . . . indignatio. Ipsisque diebus
. . . comperiens, utpote vir vafer ac providus, magnatum
Angliæ indignationem contra ipsum merito[1] . . . consilium, Ibid. ii. 396.

"Dum . . . . furori."

Tempore sub eodem migraverunt . . . de Bresne, et frater
Jordanus, summus prior . . . submersus. Obiit quoque xvii°.
15 April. kalendas Maii piæ memoriæ Ricardus II., episcopus Dunelmensis,
Death of Richard Poore, bp. of Durham.
cognomento Pauper, postquam tria . . . . a loco cretoso
et convexo, et castro vicino transtulit in locum competentem.
Trium ecclesiarum cathedralium extitit antistes et
competens gubernator, Cicestrensis, Saresbiriensis et Dunelmensis.
Sanctam insuper . . . fundavit, quam moriturus Ibid. ii. 397.
The emperor summons a meeting of Christian princes.
dominæ reginæ commisit gubernandam. Imperator F[rethericus]
omnes Christianitatis principes apud Vauculur vocavit
congregandos, ut de statu omnium regnorum contrectarent;
sed rex Francorum noluit ad tale tam universale concilium fol. 67 *a*.
venire, nisi exercitu suo prudenter communito, unde res effectu
caruit prælocuto. Eodem anno episcopus Hertfertensis Johannes
sanctum . . . confecit. Et circa eosdem . . . . . Ibid. ii. 398.
mortis revocatus est. Eodem quoque anno scribens domino
papæ rex postulavit—nescitur tamen ad quid vel propter quam
regni vel ecclesiæ utilitatem—sibi mitti Ottonem . . . legatum.
Arrival of the legate Otho.
Qui applicans, receptus est cum honore. Circa idem tempus
. . . Saracenis ad ditionem Soldani Halapensis pertinentibus, Ibid. ii. 399.
apud . . . sunt. Et ceciderunt plusquam . . . . . vix apparuit,
sunt interempta. Cecidit autem . . . . cui commissum fuit illa
die, propter . . . quod Balcanus nuncupatur. Quod . . . abscisis,[2]
sanguine cecidisset eliquato . . . tamen aliquibus prius ad
Tartara destinatis. Ad quam injuriam vindicandam missus
est Theodoricus, prior Hospitalariorum in Anglia, cum aliquibus
Favour shown to him by the king.
Templariis sibi associatis. Rex adeo honorat legatum et
ditat plurimis donativis, ut non tantum prælatorum sed et
regum et omnium magnatum fuisse dominus videretur. Solum
comitem Ricardum verebatur, a quo nihil potuit, ut sperabat,

---

[1] *merito*] mito, MS.

[2] *abscisis*] abcisis, MS.

A.D. 1237.

Council held at St. Paul's.

Ibid. ii. 400.

Controversy respecting the seats of the two archbishops.

Statutes passed by the legate.

Council at York.

Victory gained by the emperor over the Milanese.

fol. 67 *b.*

The abp. of Canterbury goes to the pope,

auferre vel alienare. Archiepiscopo autem laqueos et paravit nocumenta. Iste Otto convocavit omnes Angliæ prælatos, et in ecclesia Beati Pauli Londoniis concilium celebravit. In cujus principio missi sunt ex parte regis . . . clericus et consiliarius specialis, ad hoc concilium jam initiatum; ex parte regis et regni firmiter inhibentes, ne . . . attemptarent. Et . . . de Rale, aliis nunciis ilico recedentibus. In hoc concilio mota est controversia, utrum archiepiscopus Cantuariensis deberet sedere a dextris legati, et Eboracensis a sinistris, vel e converso. Ipsi enim assidebant ei collateraliter. Et affirmatum, quod in omnibus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis locum inter omnes Angliæ prælatos, sicut abbas Sancti Albani inter omnes Angliæ abbates, optinet digniorem. In hoc insuper concilio privavit omnes illos beneficiis suis ecclesiasticis, qui successerant patribus suis immediate. Decrevit insuper, ut omnes ecclesiæ non dedicatæ dedicarentur. Et multa alia, quæ alibi[1] literis commendantur.[2] Habitum est concilium inter reges Angliæ et Scociæ, præsente legato, apud Eboracum. Mediolanenses ausi exire hostiliter contra imperatorem F[rethericum], victi sunt, et x. milia eorum ceciderunt. Potestas eorum, scilicet filius ducis Venetorum, captus est et suspensus; et carrochium eorum captum est, in magnam eorum confusionem et obprobrium. Quia illud est Italicis pro standardo, quod cum amiserint, non poterunt aliud sibi recuperare, nisi per strenuitatem sibi readquirant, vel ex gratia imperatoris reconcedatur eisdem. Quorum utrumque erat Mediolanensibus impossibile vel nimis difficile. Eodem tempore Græci, sua ducti levitate, et oppressionibus lacessiti, a . . . scismatici recesserunt.[3] Archiepiscopus, variis fatigatus injuriis,[4] transfretans, sperat a papa recipere consolationem; nec voluit, licet a legato revocaretur, remanere. Papa enim legatum, ut audierat, revocaverat, et verum fuit; sed rex, subito misso magistro Simone Normanno, moram adhuc legati, in regni et regis detrimentum et dampnum, Romæ a papa impetraverat, reditum maturando; unde, ut ait archiepiscopus, potestas ejus expiraverat.

Henry at Westminster.

Marriage of earl Simon to

M°.CC°.XXXVIII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxii°., fuit ad Natale apud Westmonasterium; ubi comes Legrecestriæ Symon,[5] in crastino Epiphaniæ,[6] Alienoram, sororem

---

[1] *alibi*] See note in *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *commendantur*] comendantur, MS.

[3] *recesserunt*] recesserunt soliditate, MS.

[4] *injuriis*] juriis, MS.

[5] *Legrecestriæ Symon*] In the text, *Symon Legrecestriæ*, but marked to be transposed.

[6] *Epiphaniæ*] Epifanie, MS.

A.D. 1238. the king's sister.

regis, desponsavit. Legatus accepit papale mandatum, rege procurante, ut adhuc nesciebatur,[1] tamen ad quid in Anglia; unde ecclesia tota Anglicana dampnum incurrit et fatigationes.

Oppressive conduct of the legate.

Insistebat enim procurationibus et provisionibus, et aliis multis, quæ in ecclesiarum præjudicium multiformiter redundabant. Fovit insuper plus æquo partem comitis de Harundelle, qui manifestus erat archiepiscopi adversarius.

Birth of a son to the emperor.

Natus est imperatori F[retherico] ex Ysabella imperatrice, sorore regis Angliæ, filius, et vocatus Henricus. Et ex tunc magis ac magis imperator Anglicos diligebat, unde majorem[2] spem amissa recuperandi super regem Francorum, prout idem imperator certissime promiserat sed inaniter, conceperunt.

H. A. ii. 405.

Soror regis Angliæ Johanna, regina . . . regem Angliæ visitaret, . . . apud Tarentum, domum sanctimonialium.

Earl Simon obtains the pope's sanction to his marriage.

Indignante comite Ricardo, cum rege similiter irato contra comitem Simonem pro memorato matrimonio, comes, vendita magna nemorum suorum parte, ne vacua manu Romam veniret, clam et subito ab Anglia recedit, Romanam curiam adiit. Datisque non paucis muneribus, dispensationem et gratiam a papa, ut liceret ei uxorem suam retinere, sana conscientia ex plenitudine papalis potestatis impetravit. Unde lætior et securior in Angliam remeavit.

The emperor of Constantinople comes to England.

Constantinopolitanus imperator Baldewinus, adolescens elegans, comperiens quod Anglia manum porrigebat prodigam ignotis et alienis, venit in eandem, ut loculos jejunos satiaret, asserens se esse regis propinquum consanguineum. Unde non minimum thesaurum tam a comite Ricardo quam rege reportavit, et a largitate Angliæ, ad quam vacuus venerat, opime recessit saginatus.

Quarrel at Oxford between the legate and the scholars.

Eodem anno orta est dissensio inter legatum et scolares Oxoniæ, unde magister cocorum suorum, qui, ut dicitur, frater extitit legati, occubuit sagittatus.

Ibid. ii. 408.

Eodem anno post Pascha . . . F[retherico], sororio suo, contra . . . Johannis Mansel, et Willelmi Hardel, cum militia multa et pecunia stipendiariis, prout idem imperator postulaverat, persolvenda. Qui tota . . . multos adversantes potenter edomantes, imperiali ditioni subdiderunt. Anno sub eodem obiit . . . . preparata amicabiliter præmunivit. Hic, ut dicitur, pro amore imperatoris F[retherici]—et ad hoc sitienter anhelavit[3] idem F[rethericus]—baptismi . . . suorum minas et obprobria formidasset.

Ravages of the Tartars.

Tartari cum maxima tirannide inauditum exterminium in terris Sarracenorum exercu-

---

[1] *ut adhuc nesciebatur*] The sentence is faulty, and some words seem omitted. Cf. the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 466.

[2] *majorem*] marem, MS.

[3] *anhelavit*] hanelavit, MS.

A.D. 1238.

erunt; unde præsidium a Christianorum principibus cogebantur implorare, sed optinere non promeruerunt. Si quis autem ipsorum Tartarorum numerum et potentiam exprimeret, fol. 68 *a*. veritatis metas manifeste transgredi videretur. Eodemque Ibid. ii. 409. anno, v°. idus Junii . . . Petrus, cum jam ecclesiam . . . strenue gubernasset. Hic laudabiliter, ad honorem totius Anglicæ nationis, [peregrinationem in Terra Sancta][1] suam, una cum Exoniensi episcopo perfecit. Domos plurimas religiosorum construxit; pacem inter papam et imperatorem reformavit. Hæc sunt nomina domorum quas fundavit: Hales, Ibid. ii. 410. . . . . hospitale de Portesmue. Item, Ordinem fratrum sancti Thomæ martiris in Terra Sancta reparavit, et ipsam domum a loco inepto adaptum transtulit, et eisdem fratribus construxit officinas cum ecclesia; et impetravit a patriarcha, ut speciale signum portantes, vitam ducerent solito arctiorem et honestiorem. Diligebat autem domum illam pro amore regis Ricardi, pro cujus anima ipsam, ut dictum est, ampliavit, utpote primitivi fundatoris. Item Jopen . . . . delegavit. Rex loco ipsius Willelmum, Valentinum[2] electum, subrogare in episcopatu conabatur, licet paulo ante episcopatum Leodiensem sibi adquisisset; unde relatu indignas ecclesia Wintoniensis sustinuit tribulationes. Redit a Romana curia archiepiscopus Cantuariensis E[dmundus], in cujus adventu tristia invenit et dura. Nam quos excommunicaverat, legatus denunciavit absolutos, et omnia facta ejus in irritum revocaverat. Quæ omnia videbantur procul dubio in præjudicium archiepiscopi redundare, et obprobrium cum contemptu generare. Immo etiam domesticos suos, scilicet monachos Cantuarienses, in ipsum suscitans, contra ipsum archiepiscopum exasperavit. Quæ tamen omnia archiepiscopus, utpote vir patientissimus, sereno vultu palliavit, a Deo postulans in tribulatione consolationem. Monachi Wintonienses in pastorem animarum suarum elegerunt sive postularunt episcopum Cicestrensem Radulphum, regis cancellarium. Quod cum papæ innotuisset, timuit ne regem animaret ad contradicendum, ne solveret tributum Romæ; unde dedit conventui Wintoniensi in mandatis, ut alium eligerent aut postularent. Memoratus enim episcopus, ut asserebat papa, festinus fuit in verbo, et incircumspectus. Insuper rex iratus Ibid. ii. 412. abstulit ab eo sigillum, et commisit illud . . . militi, nunc Simoni Normanno, bajulandum. Eodem tempore accidit regi quoddam periculum . . . . infatuatum, qui potius jugulator quam joculator postmodum est repertus. Nocte enim profunda

Good deeds of Peter, bp. of Winchester.

The king favours, as his successor, William, bp. elect of Valentia.

Edmund, abp. of Canterbury, returns from Rome. Practices of the legate against him.

Ralph, bp. of Chichester, elected bp. of Winchester, but not accepted.

---

[1] *peregrinationem . . . Sancta*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *Valentinum*] Walentinum, MS.

A.D. 1238. . . . . cultellum, ut regem evisceraret, se ingessit, quærens ipsum, quem voluit jugulare, regem. Et tunc, Deo sic volente, diverterat rex a loco, quo prius erat. Erat autem . . . mulier sancta, regi et reginæ familiaris, quæ per candelam, ut qualibet nocte consuevit, Psalterium psallebat. Hæc videns . . . . cruentus; non enim poterat exire, ubi intraverat. Mulieris . . . salvavit. Unde rex omnibus vitæ suæ diebus plus tenetur Deo obnoxius et obligatus, qui ea nocte ipsum a turpi morte liberavit. Merito igitur crudeli morte peremptus est, distractus, membratim detruncatus, visceribus combustis, suspensus, et ad plures civitates membra suspendenda sunt transmissa. Eodem anno legatus . . . . ordinavit, super reformatione Ordinis sancti Benedicti, audituri et tractaturi. Quæ statuta alibi plenius scribuntur.[1] Repatriavit imperator Constantinopolitanus, refertis clitellis de Anglorum prodigalitate. Diebus sub eisdem quidam de Ordine Prædicatorum, Robertus Bugre dictus, eo quod aliquando hæreticus et filius hæretici extiterat, in partibus Flandriæ multa milia hominum, auxilio fretus regali, fecit comburi. Tandem ipsemet judicio confratrum suorum, qui neminem ad mortem condempnant, immuratus est, ut ibi de horribilibus commissis[2] suis[3] perpetuo pœnitentiam ageret. Tandem, eo procurante, non sine multæ pecuniæ, ut dicitur, effusione, ex dispensatione papali apud Sanctum Victorem, ne majus scandalum per ipsum oriretur, in canonicum est receptus. Fama imperatoris, forte per æmulos suos disseminantes,[4] non mediocriter est obfuscata. Imponebatur enim ei, quod dixerit quædam deliramenta de sacramento altaris, quæ plus expedit reticere quam recitare. Claruit fama . . . de cujus tumba oleum visum est emanare. Eo anno fuit dies Parasceves dies Annunciationis beatæ Mariæ, et tertia dies sequens dies Paschæ, videlicet recto et debito loco suo.[5]

Ibid. ii. 413.

fol. 68 *b*.

Departure of the emperor of Constantinople.

Robert Bugre becomes canon of St. Victor.

Rumours affecting the fame of the emperor.

Ibid. ii. 415.

M°.CC°.XXXIX°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xxiii°., fuit ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam, episcopatu ei abundanter,[6] qui in manu sua tunc erat, ministrante. Die vero . . . extremum. Die vero Purificationis beatæ Mariæ plene pacificatus regi Simon de Monte-forti, investitus est comitatu Legrecestriæ, pacificato Almarico, fratre ejusdem comitis primogenito. Rex Stephanum de Segrave revocavit ad curiam et

Henry at Winchester.

2 Feb. Simon de Montfort created earl of Leicester.

H. A. ii. 417.

---

[1] *scribuntur*] These Statutes are in the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 475–481.

[2] *commissis*] At first written *commisso,* but *o* erased, and corr. in marg.

[3] *suis*] suo, MS.

[4] *disseminantes*] dissiminantes, MS.

[5] In regard to this date, see the note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 416.

[6] *abundanter*] habunter, MS.

A.D. 1239.

Ibid. ii. 418.

Stephen de Segrave recalled.

William de Rale elected bp. of Chester.

Sardinia restored to the emperor, and given to his son Ensius.

Dispute between the bishop and canons of Lincoln.

Various events.

Ibid. ii. 422.

fol. 69 *a*.

Appearance of a comet.

Arrival of the count of Flanders.

Will. de Rale consecrated bp. of Norwich.

Oppression of the church of Winchester.

ad familiare consilium, ad quod libenter sine moræ dispendio accessit, licet jam senex et podagricus. Cassantur duo electi, electus scilicet[1] Norwicensis, prior illius domus . . . Wintoniensem, scilicet episcopus Cicestrensis, licet idoneus, videlicet cancellarius, quia regi displicuerunt. Circa festum sancti Mathiæ monachi Coventrenses elegerunt Willelmum de Rale, canonicum Sancti Pauli Londoniarum, in episcopum et pastorem animarum suarum. Reddita est imperatori F[retherico] opulentissima insula, Sardaniæ scilicet regnum, contra papæ voluntatem, dicentis illud regnum ad jus ecclesiæ pertinere. F[rethericus] vero asserebat illud liquido ad imperium spectare, et per Romanæ curiæ avaritiam diu alienatum; sed tenebatur obligatus sacramento dispersa imperii et alienata revocare. Et ilico, papa invito et contradicente, contulit illud Ensio, filio suo; unde rediit pristina ira cum incremento rediviva, et odium inexorabile inter papam et imperatorem. Oritur lis gravissima in ecclesia Lincolniensi inter episcopum et canonicos, super visitatione facienda. Optinuit episcopus, scilicet Robertus. Obiit Willelmus de Cantelupo, miles, Neuster natione. Eligitur Willelmus de Rale in episcopum Norwicensem. Willelmus autem, relicto episcopatu Conventrensi, ad quem eligebatur, adhæsit Norwicensi. Roboratur turris Londoniarum opere nimis sumptuoso,[2] sed fundamento falso opus mentitum corruit in acervum. Excommunicatur imperator. Tertio die Junii, hora sexta, passus est sol eclipsim. Natus est regi filius . . . Alienora. Otto vero legatus diaconus ipsum baptizavit, et, rege sic volente, Edwardum fecit appellari; archiepiscopus autem E[dmundus] ipsum confirmavit. Ranulphus Brito, canonicus Sancti Pauli, capitur, incarceratur, et in turri Londoniarum probrose tractatur. Per episcopum tandem et canonicos Londonienses vix liberatur, tamen pecunia non modica interveniente. Imperator per totam Christianitatem denunciatur excommunicatus. Ipsisque diebus apparuit in aere, tam de nocte,[3] quædam facula ignea, quasi maxima stella sed protensa, quæ se jaculabatur de loco ad locum. Contradicitur legato tam frequenter procurationes postulanti. Thomas, comes Flandriæ, venit in Angliam pro suo commodo.[4] Willelmus de Rale, electus Norwicensis, consecratur ab archiepiscopo E[dmundo] in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniarum. Ecclesia Wintoniensis multas tolerat oppressiones et injurias enormes valde. Obiit Willelmus, electus

---

[1] *scilicet*] Repeated superfluously after *Norwicensis*.

[2] *sumptuoso*] suptuoso, MS.

[3] *tam de nocte*] In the Greater Chronicle, p. 407, "non tamen adhuc apparentibus stellis."

[4] *commodo*] comodo, MS.

A.D. 1239.
Deaths of notable personages.
Capture of Valentia.

Valentinus, in partibus transmarinis, in flore suæ juventutis,[1] multis dignitatibus honoratus, immo potius oneratus. Obiit Avelina, mulier miræ pulchritudinis, Albemarliæ comitissa. Obiit strenuissimus et fidelissimus miles, Henricus de Trublevilla.[2] Obiit quoque in mari magno, Terram Sanctam adiens peregrinus, Radulphus de Thoni, ejusdem strenuitatis et fidelitatis miles illustris. Capta est Valentia magna in Hispania, et dilatati sunt ibidem fines Christianorum.

Henry at Winchester.
Hugh de Pateshulle, bp. of Coventry.
Death of the countess of Cornwall.
The king blamed for submitting to papal exactions.
The earl of Leicester goes to the Holy Land.
Death of Llewellyn.
Popular devotion for the crusade decreases.
General Council at Lyons.
H. A. ii. 433.
Edmund, archbishop of Canterbury, retires to Pontigny.
fol. 69 *b.*

M°.CC°.XL°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxiiii°., fuit ad Natale Domini Wintoniæ, ubi Baldewinum de Devonia balteo cinxit militari et comitatu investivit. Hugo de Pateshulle, regis clericus et thesaurarius de scaccario, eligitur in episcopum Coventrensem. Obiit Ysabella, Cornubiæ comitissa, in partus discrimine. Imperator per epistolam magnam et elegantem reprehendit regem Angliæ vehementer et acerrime, eo quod permisit tam frequenter terram suam per papam talliari et depauperari, tanquam servilem et miseram. Comes Legrecestriæ Simon ad iter se præparat Jerosolimitanum, peregrinus et crucesignatus. Obiit Leolinus, princeps Norwalliæ, duos filios post se relinquens, Griffinum scilicet et David, unum naturalem nothum, et alium consequenter natu juniorem, legitimum regis Angliæ nepotem; unde orta est inter ipsos dissensio cruentissima. Ipsis quoque diebus tepuit devotio fidelium circa Crucis negotium, eo quod hiatu emolumenti pecuniaris plus quam animarum, nunc ad prædicationem prædicantium hodie signabantur, cras, data pecunia, absolvebantur. Franci in Terra Sancta . . . congrederentur, interimuntur, et multi captivantur. Consenserunt et oportunum censuerunt tam imperator quam papa et cardinales, ut concilium convocaretur generale apud Lugdunum, quo papa confugerat a facie imperatoris persequentis. Sed postquam papa convocarat ad idem quosdam Fretherici et ejus imperii hostes publicos[3] concilium, obmurmuravit imperator renuens, ne inimici ejus sui forent judices; et præmunivit eos, ne per suam ditionem transirent, per mare vel per terram. Econtra papa persuasit,[4] et eosdem, tam prælatos quam alios, ut venirent, animavit, et in virtute obedientiæ imperavit; asserens plus debere obedire Deo quam hominibus. Archiepiscopus Edmundus videns omnia patere discrimini, et legatum in Anglia tirannizantem et regem infatuantem, exulat irrediturus, licet hoc legatus prohiberet et dissuaderet. Et cum navigans respexisset Angliam, flevit amarissime,[5] prænoscens in spiritu se nun-

---

[1] *juventutis*] juventis, MS.

[2] *Trublevilla*] Trubleville, MS., but *e* afterwards erased.

[3] *hostes publicos*] hospuplicos, MS.

[4] *persuasit*] persuavit, MS.

[5] *amarissime*] amarisse, MS.

quam eam visurum, et infinita mala passurum regnum, et A.D. 1240.
ecclesiam multa deprimendam servitute. Apud Pontiniacum,
ubi beatus Thomas in suo exilio sibi elegit stationem, et
ipse sibi elegit, donec felicior aura arrideret, mansionem,
orans ut ejus sequi vestigia, tanquam sui prædecessoris,
mereretur. Nec est a suo fraudatus desiderio. Quo cum
pervenisset, gaudenter et honorifice receptus est. Ibique
commorans, jejuniis et orationibus sedulo intendens, omnibus
fratribus exemplum præbuit sanctitatis. Die vero beatæ
Ibid. ii. Mariæ Magdalenæ comes . . . Scotus, de medio sublatus 22 July.
436. est. Per eosdem[1] dies venit . . . . pecuniam non minimam
sub silentio eidem persolvendam; tali modo . . . . suscepisse
in alio. Eodemque anno comes Ricardus, valedicto fratri suo
Ibid. ii. regi et aliis amicis suis, paratis omnibus . . . suo Berkamestude
437. versus Londonias, venit in capitulum Sancti Albani, se
ibi fratrum orationibus commendavit.[2] Obiit eodem die, vii°.[3] Death of
kalendas Junii, inclitus comes Waranniæ Willelmus. Qui de William,
stirpe regia extitit procreatus; filius namque fuit Hamelini, earl Warren.
filii regis Henrici. Eoque anno, procurante diligenter rege,
Ibid. ii. electus . . . Transmontanus, præelecto sponte cedente. Et Birth of
438. in festo sancti Michaelis, regina Angliæ Alienora peperit filiam, princess
quam vocavit M[argaretam].[4] Die vero sancti Jeronimi . . . Margaret. 29 Sept.
consecratus est apud Westmonasterium in archiepiscopatum
Armachanæ . . . temporalibus. Die sancti Remigii . . . . annuatim
Ibid. ii. convenientibus concessa . . . tunc præsentes confirmaverunt.
439. Obiit Thomas de Muletone. Cassata electione facta
de archidiacono, monachi . . . . . tristitia in semetipsis contabescerent;
unde mortui sunt quatuor, cum . . . ministris.
Quod cum . . . . . spontaneus. Monachi igitur Dunelmenses
regem adierunt, ut concederet eis eligendi facultatem. Qua The monks
concessa, petiit rex instantissime, ut Bonifacium,[5] reginæ of Durham
avunculum, sibi eligerent in episcopum, quod monachi renuerunt. refuse to
Petiit igitur rex, ut magistrum Petrum de Egeblancke, elect the king's
electum de Hereford, sibi eligerent in pastorem. Quod et monachi nominees
præcise denegarunt. Recesserunt igitur domum suam as bishop.
adituri, ut cum conventu sanius de electione contrectarent.
Magister Symon Normannus, principalis regis clericus et consiliarius, Simon le
ita ut[6] bajulus sigilli fieret, a fastigio sui magistratus Norman
penitus abjectus est [et][7] aufugatus. Imperator F[rethericus], deposed.
timens ne in concilio[8] celebrando, quia illuc veniebant The emperor forbids cer-

---

[1] *eosdem*] eodem, MS.

[2] *commendavit*] comendavit, MS.

[3] *vii°.*] vi°., *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *Margareta*] In the text, *Ma*, and *a* afterwards erased, and a blank left.

[5] *Bonifacium*] Bonificium, MS.

[6] *ita ut*] ut ita ut, MS.

[7] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[8] *concilio*] concil, MS.

A.D. 1240.
tain prelates to come to the General Council.
Earl Richard lands at Acre.
Whales thrown up by the sea.
Death of John Fitz-Robert.

fol. 70 *a.*
Ibid. ii. 442.

hostes,[1] aliquid contra eum statueret papa, qui ipsum persequebatur,[2] prohibuit prælatis et aliquibus magnatibus, causam eis manifestans, ne ad suspectum concilium convenirent, et paravit eis impedimenta; qui prohibitioni[3] ejus non obsecundarunt. Per idem tempus comes Ricardus prospere applicuit[4] cum sua classe in Terra Sancta, scilicet in portu Achonensi . . . præconia publice fecit . . . Christo strenue militaret. Beatus Edmundus . . . Pontiniacum aliquandiu moraretur, orans et plorans pro statu ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, quam vidit spiritu patere discrimini, cœpit graviter infirmari.[5] Et [ut][6] gratiori . . . quandam religiosorum, divertit, moram aliquantulam facturus ibidem; ubi gravius infirmatus[7] . . . ad Dominum. Dominica proxima . . . Herefordensem. Balænæ et aliæ beluæ marinæ in mari tam prodigialiter pugnaverunt, quod factum est, prout dicebatur, in triste pronosticum, ut earum pars maxima periit interempta; unde eo anno mare multas balænas evomuit ad mortem vulneratas. Obiit Johannes filius-Roberti, præcipuus baro in partibus borealibus.

Henry at Westminster.
Departure of the legate.
7 Jan.
Arrival of Peter of Savoy.
5 Jan.
Nich. de Fernham elected bp. of Durham.
Deaths of nobles.
Holy reliques at Paris, and the Sainte

H. A. ii. 446.

M°.CC°.XLI°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui XXV°., tenuit curiam suam ad Natale apud Westmonasterium; ubi convenerat prælatorum numerosa multitudo, ut legatum, quem papa irrefragabiliter revocarat, ad mare conducerent. Et in crastino Epiphaniæ[8] transfretavit. Petrus de Sabaudia venit in Angliam; cui rex gaudenter occurrens, ilico contulit comitatum sive honorem de Richemund, cum multis aliis donativis. Anglia se sensit nimis gravatam per moram legati jam fere triennalem. Die vero sancti Edwardi rex prædictum Petrum balteo cinxit[9] militari. Magister Nicholaus de Fernham eligitur in episcopum Dunelmensem. Obierunt quidam Angliæ magnates deplorandi, scilicet Gilebertus Basset, et filius . . . Fulconem Basset, fratrem Gileberti, decanum scilicet Eboracensem, devoluta. Obiit et Johannes Biset, prothoforestarius. Multi magnates Angliæ arripiunt iter Jerosolimitanum, comes videlicet de Alba-marla Willelmus, Petrus de . . . . de Chandelers, bono exemplo Ricardi comitis provocati. Crux sancta die Paraceves a rege Francorum Ludowico deportatur ab ecclesia Sancti [Antonii][10] usque palatium ejus, quod est Parisius, cum corona spinea, clamide Christi, et spongia; ad quæ reponenda rex construxit miræ capellam pulchritudinis. Ibid. ii. 447. Obiit Walterus de Lascy . . . eminentissimus. Obiit Æthelmarus,[1] rex Daciæ, ætate centenarius, cum jam circiter quinquaginta annis regnasset. Hic insidiabatur et comminabatur Angliæ, non veritus incidere in formidabilem ultionem sancti Edwardi regis et Christi confessoris. Unde eodem sancto Edwardo irato, duo filii dicti Athelmari, scilicet Abel et Christoforus, sese hostiliter infestantes, et pro regno decertantes paterno, tamdiu dimicarunt donec unus alterum interimisset. Apud Cateby, ubi duæ sorores beati Edmundi sanctimoniales existebant, choruscabant miracula. Monachi Cantuarienses, optento absolutionis beneficio, elegerunt, quia sic oportuit, Bonefacium, avunculum reginæ, licet insufficiens videretur, in archiepiscopum. Capti sunt in mari quamplures prælati ab Ensio, imperatoris F[retherici] filio, qui ad concilium, secundum mandatum papæ, properabant; quos tamen fol. 70 *b.* papa minime liberavit. Confirmatus est et consecratus electus Dunelmensis, magister Nicholaus de Fernham, apud Gloverniam, ab archiepiscopo Eboracensi Waltero. Obiit comes Marescallus Gilebertus, apud Hertford, in torneamento miserabiliter. Remanserunt in Anglia post recessum legati duo clerici, collectores pecuniæ ad opus papæ, scilicet Petrus Rubeus, et Petrus de Supino. Rex Francorum contulit comitatum Pictaviæ Andefulso, fratri suo. Captæ sunt treugæ inter Soldanum Babiloniæ et comitem Ricardum, liberatis et redemptis Christianis captivis, scilicet Francis et aliis captis apud[2] Gazam. Comes Ricardus fecit sepeliri omnia ossa occisorum Christianorum in cimiterio, quod fecit propriis sumptibus præparatum dedicari. Ascalonam firmavit. Die autem Inventionis [sanctæ Crucis][3] comes rediturus, navem ascendens, apud Trapes in Sicilia applicuit; ubi[4] malos rumores audivit de rege Francorum, mala pro bonis recompensante, quod videlicet ipsum comitem[5] a comitatu Pictaviæ spoliaverat. Similiter de captione prælatorum in mari. Occurrit ei gaudens imperator, et locutus est comes cum imperatrice Ibid. ii. 452. sorore. Missus est . . . pluries, sed frustra laboravit. Sitienter enim desideravit liberare captivos citra mare, sicut liberaverat ultramarinos; ubi etiam decennales treugas impetraverat. Episcopus Bangorensis nititur liberare Griffinum, quia sub ejus ducatu venerat pacifice ad parlamentum, ubi fraterno dolo captus fuerat; sed episcopus frustra laboravit. Divisis

---

[1] *hostes*] hostis, MS.

[2] *persequebatur*] persequabar, MS.

[3] *prohibitioni*] prohibucioni, MS.

[4] *applicuit*] aplicuit, MS.

[5] *infirmari*] imfirmari, MS.

[6] *ut*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[8] *Epiphaniæ*] Epif', MS.

[9] *cinxit*] cingsit, MS.

[10] *Antonii*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1241.
Chapelle built.
Death of the king of Denmark, and war between his sons.
Miracles at Catesby.
Boniface elected abp. of Canterbury.
Capture of prelates coming to the General Council.
Consecration of the bishop of Durham.
Death of Gilbert, earl Mareschal.
Poitou given to Alphonse of France.
Truce between the Soldan and earl Richard.
Richard lands in Sicily.
The bp. of Bangor endeavours to release prince Griffin.

---

[1] *Æthelmarus*] A mistake for *Waldemarus*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 447.

[2] *apud*] a, MS.

[3] *sanctæ Crucis*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 452.

[4] *ubi*] ub, MS.

[5] *comitem*] comit, MS.

A.D. 1241.
Wales subdued.
Shrine of St. Edward the Confessor.
Dispute between the king and bishop of Norwich.
Death of pope Gregory IX.
Fulk Basset, bp. of London.
Death of Hugh, bp. of Chester.
Death of the emprss. Isabella.

cordibus magnatum Walliæ, subjugata est Wallia regi. Orta est discordia inter episcopum Lincolniensem et ejus capitulum, super visitatione facienda. Optinuit episcopus R[obertus].[1] Dominus rex fecit fabricari nobilissimum[2] feretrum ad opus sancti Edwardi, ex auro purissimo et gemmis pretiosis. Et quamvis materia pretiosissima fuerit, tamen materiam superabat opus. Walterus Marescallus adeptus est hereditatem suam, precibus archiepiscopi Cantuariensis Edmundi. Orta est discordia inter regem et episcopum Norwicensem Willelmum; unde tam in Norwicensi ecclesia quam Wintoniensi, et tam in civitate Wintoniæ quam in conventu Wintoniensi, scandala sunt secuta. Obiit papa Gregorius IX^{us}., ætate centenarius. Obiit Alienora, filia . . . custodiæ reserata ac reservata. Impedita fuit electio papalis pro multiformi desolatione ecclesiæ Romanæ. Pridie kalendas[3] Octobris . . . eclipsim. Tertio vero . . . Londoniensis Rogerus, excellens theologus, vir . . . prædicatione et eloquentia perspicuus. Et . . . . decanus, moribus, scientia et genere clarissimus. Episcopus . . . sarcofagis[4] sunt sepulti; et miracula ad tumbam episcopi liquido claruerunt. Unde, licet non canonizatus, sanctus a populo, sequentibus signis, est acclamatus.[5] Fulco Basset, decanus Eboracensis, loco ipsius subrogatur. Magister Henricus de Cornhulle in decanum[6] substituitur. Obiit episcopus Cestrensis, Hugo de Pateshulle, vii^{o}. idus Septembris. Cardinales . . . dolore, licet dispersi cum difficultate convocati, elegerunt . . . . morte præoccupatus[7] est. Et sub . . . cardinalis. Eodemque anno obierunt quidam Angliæ magnates, Hugo Wac . . . . . frater ejusdem comitis Ricardi, Johannes de . . . et alii quamplures nobiles et strenui, qui in comitatu comitis Ricardi peregrinantes, ab exilio hujus seculi, non sine martirii præmio, ad Christum migraverunt. Obiit quoque Ysabella, imperatrix Romanorum, soror regis Anglorum, gloria et spes Anglorum, in partus discrimine.

Ibid. ii. 456.
Ibid. ii. 457.
Ibid. ii. 458.
Ibid. ii. 459.
fol. 71 *a*.

Henry at Westminster.
Hugh, count of March, applies for

M^{o}.CC^{o}.XLII^{o}. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxvi^{o}., tenuit curiam suam apud Westmonasterium, in magno suo palatio, ad Natale Domini. Ortæ sunt graves inimicitiæ inter Hugonem, comitem de Marchia, regis Angliæ victricum, et regem Francorum, eo quod idem comes Andefulso, novo comiti Pictaviæ, ut dicitur, homagium facere dedignabatur.

---

[1] Cf. *ante*, p. 279.

[2] *nobilissimum*] nobilissum, MS.

[3] *kalendas*] An error for *nonas*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *sarcofagis*] sacofagis, MS.

[5] *acclamatus*] aclamatus, MS.

[6] *Henricus . . . decanum*] On an erasure. See note in *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *præoccupatus*] preocupatus, MS.

Unde regem Angliæ in adjutorium et ultionem per nuncios et epistolas urgentes vocavit, promittens ei omnia jura sua ultramarina potenter revocare. Applicat comes Ricardus prospere in Anglia, kalendis Februarii. Rex et regina et multi Angliæ magnates gaudenter occurrunt venienti. Quod cum cognovissent[1] Pictavenses, tunc demum magis ac magis stimulando exhortabantur tam comitem quam regem, ut in Pictaviam venire non pigritarent, comitatum Pictaviæ et omnia jura regem Anglorum contingentia continuo recepturi; unde rex a transfretatione[2] nullo fidelium suorum consilio poterat retardari. Rex pecuniam exegit a singulis prælatis non minimam, ad hæc sua jura requirenda. Eodem tempore, commisso regno Angliæ archiepiscopo Eboracensi Waltero ad custodiendum, disposita classe, idus Maii cum thesauro maximo, prout[3] comes de Marchia persuaserat, apud Portesmue rex naves ascendit, comitantibus . . . . militibus. Quidam miles de Hibernia, Willelmus de Marisco, filius Galfridi de Marisco, qui exul acclamabatur, in insula de Lunde, non multum a Bristoldo distante, convocatis plurimis vispilionibus, latitans, more piratico prædis inhiat et rapinis. Tandem captus, ipse ad caudas equorum, cum xvi. sociis ejus, in vigilia sancti Jacobi tractus est [ad][4] patibulum, et ibidem miserabiliter omnes sunt suspensi. Rex Francorum, congregato[5] maximo exercitu, occurrit hostiliter regi Anglorum, cum jam prospere in partibus ulterioribus applicuisset. Et irruens primo in comitem de Marchia, castra ejus diruit[6] aut cepit violenter. Et cum vidisset comes partem suam infirmari, pœnituit eum, sed sero, regem Angliæ, jam in arcto constitutum, in suas partes attraxisse. Reversus est igitur, licet invitus, ad dominium regis Francorum, qui eum recepit corde suspecto et animo titubante. Videntes igitur Pictavenses quod fortissimus eorum versus est, stillatim ad regem Francorum sunt reversi. Interim, Deo sic volente, infirmatus[7] est graviter rex Francorum, et pestis et fames invasit exercitum ejus, ita quod in abissum desperationis quasi ultione divina præcipitabantur. Regina interim apud Burdegalim filiam peperit, et vocavit eam nomine matris reginæ Beatricem. Rex Francorum, quia sic feliciter oportuit, treugas cepit cum rege Anglorum, et in lectica in Franciam infirmus deportatus est. Nec unquam postea plene

A.D. 1242.

aid against France.

1 Feb.

Arrival of earl Richard.

The Poitevins urge Henry to come to them.

15 May.

He embarks at Portsmouth.

H. A. ii. 462.

Execution of William de Marisco.

24 July.

Success of Louis against the count of March.

Sickness of the king of France.

Birth of princess Beatrice.

---

[1] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.

[2] *transfretatione*] transfratione, MS.

[3] *prout*] pro, MS.

[4] *ad*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *congregato*] congreto, MS.

[6] *diruit*] dirruit, MS.

[7] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

A.D. 1242.

Louis assumes the Cross.

Dedication of the church of Waltham.

Translation of the Testament of the 12 Patriarchs.

The Cistercian abbats forbidden to go to the General Chapter.

sibi restauratus est, donec post multos dies mente alienatus crucem cepit; unde tota Francia, immo tota Christianitas, induit confusionem. Comes Ricardus et multi cum eo nobiles tædio affecti revertuntur, et in Cornubiam, post longa maris pericula, vix applicuerunt. Rex autem in illis adhuc partibus cum multis Angliæ magnatibus inutiliter commorabatur, donec, omnibus suis depauperatis, ipse, consumpto toto suo thesauro, et multo ære obligatus alieno, ad propria est reversus, anno tamen consequenti, ut dicetur. Dedicatur ecclesia de Waltham conventualis ab episcopo Norwicensi Willelmo. Scutagium . . . extorquetur. Adam, abbas Waredonæ, fit episcopus Cunerensis. Anno sub eodem inundaverunt undæ pluviales . . . sibi conterminos vendicaret. In magna . . . poterant, et homines equis pertransibant. Episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus transtulit Testamenta xii. Patriarcharum de Græco in Latinum, quæ per invidiam Judæorum multis seculis fuerant occultata. Abbates Cisterciensis Ordinis prohibiti sunt transfretare, ne ad eorum generale capitulum ex Anglia valerent pervenire. Obierunt quidam nobiles, Gilebertus . . . Kime. In borealibus autem Angliæ partibus . . . . vices agens cancellarii Ricardi; episcopus [quoque][1] Bathoniensis Jocelinus. Apud Burdegalim sanctissima mulier Margarita Biset. Obiitque unus . . . . maceratus.

fol. 71 *b.*

Ibid. ii. 466.

Ibid. ii. 467.

Ibid. ii. 468.

Henry at Bordeaux.

Election of bp. of Coventry cancelled.

The prelates released by the emperor.

Truce between France and England.

Henry lands at Portsmouth.
25 Sept.

M°.CC°.XLIII°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui XXVII°., tenuit curiam suam ad Natale Domini apud Burdegalim. Et ne penitus . . . . municipia; ubi jactu lapidis et spiculo arcubalistæ[2] læsus est dominus Johannes Mansel in femore. Monachi Coventrenses elegerunt sibi in episcopum suum Willelmum de Monte-Pessulano, commonachum suum; sed quia non erat regi acceptus, cassatus est. Prælati incarcerati postulabant instantissime, ut imperator liberos eos permitteret saltem per tantum tempus abire, donec providissent ecclesiæ de papæ substitutione; promittentes fideliter quod talem eligerent in papam, qui paci profecto consentiret. Quibus . . . . imperator, ipsos liberos abire permisit. Quinquennes treugæ firmatæ sunt inter reges Francorum et Anglorum. Et sic prospere rex Anglorum ad propria remeans, VII°. kalendas Octobris apud Portesmue applicuit; commissa custodia Wasconiæ Nicholao de Molis. Per idem tempus rex Francorum et regni ejus universitas . . . . rite eligentes universali ecclesiæ, diu pastorali solatio destitutæ maturius providerent, vel ipsi

H. A. ii. 469.

Ibid. ii. 470.

---

[1] *quoque*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *arcubalistæ*] baliste, MS.

A.D. 1243.

Franci negligentiam eorum supplentes,[1] privilegio uterentur beati Dionisii, qui a beato Clemente apostolatum accepit citra montes populum Deo acceptabilem adquirendi. Unde ipsi cardinales, licet adhuc ficti et desides, et cordibus divisi,[2] tam imperatoris quam regis supradicti stimulis agitati,[3] die Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Sinebaldum cardinalem in papam creaverunt, imperatori prorsus exosum, et eidem plane adversantem, postquam vacaverat sedes per annum et ix. menses.

24 June. Election of cardinal Sinebald as pope. [Innocent IV.].

Ibid. ii. 472.

Die vero apostolorum . . . Innocentius IIII. Et ilico confirmavit . . . conversa. Et jamjam pœnituit eum graviter prælatos a carcere liberos dismisisse. Posuit igitur in exitibus et introitibus urbium et viarum arctas custodias, ne bullarum portitores libere transmearent, sciens quod exinde non minimum

fol. 72 a.

emolumentum tam papa quam cardinales reportarent. Templarii . . . graviter et hostiliter infestantes . . . . . imperatoris infestabant; unde ipsi etiam infideles gaudentes cachinnabant,[4] et eorum religionem deridebant. Confirmantur Bonefacius

Ibid. ii. 473.

. . . Willelmus in episcopatum Wintoniensem, Romæ, a papa. Eligitur . . . de Sufeld. Quo regi præsentato, placuit eidem electus et electio.

Marriage of earl Richard. 17 Nov.

Comes Ricardus desponsavit Cinciam, sororem reginæ, die sancti Clementis, celebratis nuptiis apud

Ibid. ii. 474.

Westmonasterium cum honore incomparabili. Rex . . . Beatricem, Provinciæ comitissam, matrem scilicet reginæ et Cornubiæ jam comitissæ Cinciæ, quæ cum eadem Cincia comiti [Ricardo],[5] ut dictum [est],[6] maritanda nuper venerat . . . donativis ditavit, et possessionibus ampliavit.

Defamation of the emperor.

Fama imperatoris etiam in fide vacillans, ut dicebatur, non mediocriter denigrata est.

The landgrave of Thuringia elected king of Germany.

Suadente et urgenter stimulante papa, eligitur in regem Alemanniæ, quasi in arram culminis imperialis, Andegravius de Duringe, vir elegans et genere præclarus, et sanctissimæ Elizabeth sanguine propinquus. Unde libentius fecerunt ei homagium magnates Alemanniæ, et maxime prælati, instinctu papali; nomine Fretherici, quem jam nemo imperatorem ausus est dicere vel affirmare vel nominare, fœtente.

War in Germany.

Cui Conradus, Fretherici filius, potenter se opposuit. Et sic orta est guerra exitialis per totam Alemanniam, et effusus sanguis non modicus hinc inde Christianus. Tandem humiliatus imperator, pacem optulit, sed papa noluit assentire, nisi vellet absolute stare censuræ ecclesiasticæ. Imperator autem noluit inimici sui gratiam experiri. Et sic,

---

[1] *supplentes*] suplentes, MS.

[2] *divisi*] On an erasure.

[3] *agitati*] agiti, MS.

[4] *cachinnabant*] cachinabant, MS.

[5] *Ricardo*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *est*] Supplied from the same.

A.D. 1243.

Otho, formerly legate, made bp. of Porto.

The papal supplies intercepted by the emperor.

Growth of the Beguines.

impediente humani generis inimico, ira et guerra gravius solito horruit rediviva. Otto, quondam legatus in Anglia, factus est episcopus Portuensis. Imperator fecit arctius omnes vias Transalpinas custodiri, ne papa ditatus xeniis et pretiosis muneribus Cisalpinorum, maxime Francorum et Anglorum, ut consuevit, abundaret.[1] Unde infinitam pecuniam, quam papa ab Anglia per diversas tallias extorserat, in suum imperator thesaurum accumulavit. Et scribens regi Anglorum, ipsum de talis ac tantæ pecuniæ collectis redarguit castigando. Rex autem dissimulans, obaudivit. Numerus quarundum mulierum, quas Beguinas vulgus nominat, in Alemannia præcipue, usque ad milia milium incredibiliter multiplicabatur,[2] quæ castitatem profituntur et sequuntur, de manuum suarum laboribus vitam exilem protrahentes. Nonas Maii obiit comes . . . . . prioratum ecclesiæ Sancti Albani pertinentem, cujus patronus extitit, est sepultus. Eodem anno . . . . toleraverat tribulationes, comes . . . laudabiliter apud Banstude, manerium suum, diem clausit extremum, et in domo fratrum Prædicatorum[3] Londoniis, quorum amicus erat et benefactor, veneranter est sepultus.

Ibid. i. 477.

Henry at Wallingford.

fol. 72 *b*.

M°.CC°.XLIIII°.[4] Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxviii°., ad Natale Domini fuit apud Walingefordiam, conviva comitis Ricardi; ubi idem comes, convocatis quamplurimis regni nobilibus, nuptiarum suarum cum summo honore reliquias celebravit. Erant nempe ibidem comitissa Provinciæ Beatrix, cum filiabus suis, regina scilicet et Cornubiæ comitissa. Quibus rex . . . cui nobiles dominæ memoratæ interfuere, volente sic rege, ipsa Provinciæ comitissa ad propria remeavit. Magister Martinus a novo papa Innocentio IIII. mittitur in Angliam, ad colligendum pecuniam ad opus papæ, quem imperator F[rethericus] confundere nitebatur. Et sine difficultate concessa est ei licentia a rege, maxime quia idem imperator, quando postulavit sororem[5] regis Ysabellam in uxorem, et cum ipsa quadraginta milia marcarum accepit, promisit efficax auxilium se regi impensurum contra regem Francorum, ad jura sua ultramarina potenter readquisitura; nihil tamen fecit de promissis. Magister Rogerus, præcentor Saresbiriensis, confirmatur in episcopum Bathoniensem. Obiit episcopus

H. A. ii. 478.

Martin sent as papal nuncio to England.

Roger bp. of Bath.

---

[1] *abundaret*] habundaret, MS.

[2] *multiplicabatur*] multipli, MS.

[3] *fratrum Prædicatorum*] Predicatorum fratrum, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[4] *M°.CC°.XLIIII°.*] M°.CC°.LIIII°., MS.

[5] *sororem*] Repeated in MS. by error.

A.D. 1244.

Cicestrensis, Radulphus de Novilla, cancellarius. Rex capit in manu sua terras, quas Normanni habebant in Anglia. Mortuo episcopo Cicestrensi Radulpho, constituit dominus rex sibi[1] consiliarios,[2] dominum Paulinum, militem, et dominum Johannem de Lexintona, militem, et dominum Johannem Mansel, clericum, viros discretos et literatos et indigenas, suos principales consiliarios. Episcopus Wintoniensis . . . . præstolaretur. Griffinus, Leolini principis Northwalliæ filius primogenitus, dolo fratris sui David captus, et in turri Londoniarum incarceratus, dum de nocte evadere cupiebat, demissus per funem de pannis incaute factum, cecidit ab alto, et, fractis cervicibus, miserabiliter expiravit. Anno sub eodem confectum . . . prout moris est, in ecclesia conventuali. Chorosmini, videlicet gens infidelis et detestabilis de partibus orientis, per Tartaros de finibus suis expulsa, hostiliter venerunt in Terram Sanctam;[3] ubi magnum exterminium de Christianis exercuerunt. Episcopus Beritensis Walerannus literas de hoc infortunio detulit,[4] omnium magnatum Terræ Sanctæ sigillis roboratas. Quarum summa hæc est: Succubuerunt in bello cruentissimo de . . . Theutonicorum, xxxiii. Templarii, xxvi. Hospitalarii. De Teuthonicis, tantum tribus per fugam elapsis, pars electissima, omnibus aliis captivatis, præter stragem . . . infinitorum. Optimates vero terræ pro majori parte interempti ceciderunt. De archiepiscopo . . . . . non apparuissent, nescitur quo devenissent. Magister vero . . . abducti. Soldanus Babiloniæ misit istos Chorosminos, et eisdem prestitit patrocinium, in exterminium Christianorum, in Terram Sanctam. Et missus est memoratus episcopus in Europam, ut super hiis casum lugubrem nuncians, auxilium postularet. Disseminatur dedecus et infamia regis per fugam episcopi Wintoniensis inter Francos, qui de levi Anglos diffamant, qui cachinnando ad invicem dicebant, "Ecce . . . . nunc autem istum bonum virum, qui paulo ante ejus fuerat consiliarius specialis. Ecce militia ejus, ecce strenuitas!" Domino papa igitur super hoc sollicitante et scribente, rex, ut fama ejus restauraretur, mitior effectus, episcopum exulantem studuit revocare. Temporibus autem sub . . . . . apprehenderent. Papa igitur nimium attonitus in hora, ... asserebant se esse affines vel consanguineos, Intravit igitur . . . . suis, quia ibi vel non procul natus fuit, et eadem civi-

Ibid. ii. 481.

Ibid. ii. 483.

Ibid. ii. 484.

fol. 73 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 485.

Ibid. ii. 486.

Death of the bp. of Chichester.

The lands held by the Normans seized.

New councillors appointed.

Death of prince Griffin.

Palestine invaded by the Chorasmians, and slaughter of the Christians.

The king is defamed by the French.

---

[1] *dominus rex sibi*] On an erasure.

[2] *consiliarios*] Superfluous here, because repeated at the end of the sentence.

[3] *Sanctam*] Scm̄, MS. and *m* afterwards erased, and a blank left.

[4] *infortunio detulit*] infornio detu, MS.

A.D. 1244. tate a primis annis educatus. Et tunc pro vicissitudine beneficii
et servitii tanti promisit conferre illis et eorum consanguineis,
affinibus et amicis multa ecclesiarum beneficia. Quo
cognito,[1] obstupuit imperator, et dolens . . . argumenta. Fecit
igitur vias custodiri et transitus, ne ad ipsum ferentes munera
et habentes . . . occidentalibus, possent aliquatenus pervenire;
The emperor proclaimed an enemy to the church. perpendens quod non ob aliud applaudebant ei Januenses,
nisi ut ab eodem ditarentur. Ex tunc igitur magis
papa[2] læsus et provocatus fecit acclamari imperatorem esse
manifestum ecclesiæ persecutorem. Animantibus papa . . . Ibid. ii. 487.
Andegravius Duringiæ multis papalibus ditatus thesauris, consilium
The Landgrave of Thuringia favoured by the German prelates. habuit solito urgentius, ut regnum . . . assumeret
citius adquirendum. Qui consilio papali fultus [est][3] et
auxilio, adminiculantibus Alemanniæ prælatis, qui fere omnes,
tanquam filii obedienti parti ecclesiæ faventes, imperatori ac
Conrado, filio suo, et omnibus eorum complicibus viriliter
restiterunt; magnatibus tamen adhuc aliquibus papæ resistentibus. fol. 73 *b.*
Ipso quoque tempore, ut partem . . . . exoso et rebelli
atque scismatico,[4] filiam suam speciosam, cum thesauro
impretiabili. Anni quoque . . . Walenses, nolentes legibus
. . . . juramentorum immemores, guerram moverunt cruentissimam.
Quibus, de præcepto regis, pro terrarum suarum defensione,
viriliter restiterunt comes Gloverniæ, comes de Hereford,
Johannes de Munemue, Rogerus de Muhaut, et . . . . Ibid. ii. 488.
11 June. de aliquibus triumpharunt. Festo vero sancti Barnabæ fuit
rex . . . . . specialis et consiliarii, quem promovere sitienter
proposuerat, cassatione. Qui quidem ad episcopatum Cicestrensem
[electus],[5] rege extiterat procurante, et eo . . . vir
The king seizes the bprics. of Chichester and Chester. quidem sanctus et episcopatui idoneus . . . subrogatus. Rex
igitur iratus, baronias episcopatuum Cicestriæ et Cestriæ,
quia magister Rogerus, electus Cestrensis, simili causæ subjacebat,
jussit seisiri in manu sua et retineri. Rex insuper
Scociæ A[lexander] jura quædam in regno suo ad regem
War with Scotland. Angliæ spectantia recognoscere[6] procaciter renuebat. Eratque
amicitia inter ipsos reges nimis attenuata, ex quo rex Scociæ
per maritagium filiæ Engelrami, Francis, qui sunt regis
Angliæ capitales, ut novit mundus, inimici, fuerat confœderatus.
Ut igitur accinctus ad ultionem rex Angliæ ipsum
regem Scociæ potentius . . . Thomam, reginæ avunculum. Qui Ibid. ii. 489.
mandatis regiis obtemperans, in Angliam cum militia venit

---

[1] *cognito*] congnito, MS.

[2] *papa*] Repeated after *fecit*, superfluously.

[3] *est*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *scismatico*] cismatico, MS.

[5] *electus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *recognoscere*] recongnoscere, MS.

A.D. 1244.

congregata; et regem jam versus Scociam lora dirigentem et vexilla, pedetentim sequebatur. Per idem tempus pars regis Scotorum non mediocriter est infirmata;[1] unde pœnituit jam ipsum contra regem Anglorum recalcitrasse. Engelramus enim de Cuscy, socer ejus, qui eidem regi Scociæ, generi suo, militare præsidium promiserat per mare mittendum, in fata, Deo ultore, miserabiliter concesserat; antiquus enim Clarevallensium et omnium religiosorum persecutor indefessus. Revocatur episcopus Wintoniensis,[2] et sua dignitate et pace regia gratulatur; talium etenim indiguit[3] plus solito familiaritate et consilio. Convenit utriusque regni, scilicet Anglorum et Scotorum, universa nobilitas, cui intererant comes Flandriæ Thomas et alii consanguinei et amici reginæ in partibus regno Scociæ conterminis. Et sub forma pacis inter reges prælocutum est matrimonium contrahendum inter primogenitum regis Scotorum, filium Alexandrum, et filiam regis Anglorum Margaretam; sed quia pueri erant et tenelli, non fuit adhuc desponsatio solempniter per nuptias celebrata. Et sic uterque regum in pace remeavit. Convenerant autem Londoniis, regia submonitione, magnates. In quo concilio petiit rex ore proprio in propatulo, scilicet in . . . . . pecuniare. Cui responsum fuit, quod quia carta libertatum, quam pater suus rex J[ohannes] concesserat, et postmodum rex H[enricus] III., filius ejus, cum juramento multotiens concesserat, nec tamen adhuc observaverat, "istud negotium censemus debere merito capere dilationem." Postulabant insuper instantissime sibi constitui justiciarium et cancellarium, per quos status regni solidaretur, ut consuevit, et qui darent regi fidele consilium et utile reipublicæ. Hoc igitur consilium et negotium cepit dilationem usque in tres septimanas a Purificatione beatæ Mariæ; sed rege familiaribus respondente interim, quod servilis esset ejus conditio, et deterior alicujus baronis[4] vel militis, si non liceret de quo vellet, nunc de uno nunc de alio, illi facere vel cancellarium vel justiciarium, tanquam senescallum. Quod cum cognovissent[5] magnates, non curarunt venire, ut nihil aliud reportarent quam ambages. Tandem rex sperans . . . . hac forma: "Innocentius," etc. Summa fuit: "De vestris . . . . conferatis." Responsio autem, quia omnes tunc ibi prælati non fuerant, cepit dilationem. Magister Martinus interim, papæ clericus, de nuncio sibi injuncto sollicitus, convocatis . . . literas papales. Quarum summa ista fuit: "In ea . . . .

Death of Engelram de Coucy.

The bp. of Winchester recalled.

Meeting of the English and Scottish nobles, and peace made.

Council held at London.

Ibid. ii. 491.

fol. 74 *a*.

Pecuniary aid to the king postponed.

2 Feb.

Ibid. ii. 492.

---

[1] *infirmata*] imfirmata, MS.

[2] *Wintoniensis*] After this word, *episcopus* is repeated.

[3] *etenim indiguit*] indiguit etenim, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[4] *baronis*] boronis, MS.

[5] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.

A.D. 1244.

Contributions raised for the pope and king.

New saints flourish in England.

William de Burgh, bishop of Llandaff.

Roger, bp. of Bath, consecrated.

The bp. and dean of Lincoln go abroad to plead their suit.

Defeat of the king of Navarre in Gascony.

The king of France assumes the Cross, when dangerously ill.

Oppressive counsel of Rob. Passelewe.

fol. 74 *b*.

Ibid. ii. 497.

exprimendam." Interim misit imperator . . . de Ocre, notum nuncium suum et consuetum . . . summa talis erat: "Supplicando, admonendo prohibemus . . . Anglicum in potestate sua inveniret, sive prælatum sive alium, gravi puniret ultione, Tandem ita procuratum est a magnatibus et prælatis vacillantibus et dissidentibus, quod tam papæ quam regi, non sine præcordialibus omnium suspiriis, est satisfactum; nec tantum carta cum libertatibus est propterea conservata, sed tam regnum quam ecclesia obsorduit, ultimæ conditionis servitutibus conculcata. Novi sancti clarent in Anglia, præter beatum Edmundum confessorem, quem, proh dolor! Anglia non meruit retinere. Sanctus Robertus de Knareburg . . . ad[1] cujus tumbam diversa miracula probantur celebrari . . . Edmundi, ad cujus sepulturam certissima miracula choruscabant. Et multi alii, licet non canonizati, Deo manifestante, claruerunt. Magister Willelmus de Burgo, domini regis clericus, fit episcopus Landavensis; sed cito postea lumine oculorum est privatus. Consecratur in episcopum Bathoniensem magister Rogerus, præcentor Saresbiriensis. In octavis sancti Martini episcopus Lincolniensis transfretavit, pro causa ventilata inter ipsum et canonicos suos; et decanus Lincolniensis cum quibusdam canonicis, contra ipsum. Multa pecunia extorquetur a miserrimis[2] Judæis. Nicholaus de Molis a rege Navariæ et aliis circumseptus hostibus in Wasconia, ubi senescallus nuper constituebatur, non tantum se defendit, sed gloriose triumphat. Rex Francorum Parisius graviter infirmatur.[3] Et dum jacuisset duobus diebus penitus, ut dicitur, exanimatus, tandem respirans postulavit crucem sibi dari. Episcopus autem Parisiensis signavit eum, dicens, "Domine, ut ne te conturbem, quod postulas, do, obsecundando Deo, eam tibi. Cum convalueris ad plenum, cum deliberatione et discretorum consilio actus tuos ordinabis." Rex autem nulla noluit illam ratione deponere, sed deosculans eam, imposuit humeri suo. Robertus Passelew, Wellensis[4] archidiaconus, domini regis clericus et consiliarius specialis, dedit regi consilium, in multorum exterminium, paupertatem et dolorem, ut, facta inquisitione per vicinos de regiæ forestæ occupatione, et[5] aliena quicunque invaserunt, gravi . . . invenirentur, sive justam sive injustam haberent excusationem, usque ad exinanitionem et mendicitatem puniti, regi thesaurum, utinam profecturum,[6] cumulabant. Obiit Mar-

---

[1] *ad*] a, MS.

[2] *miserrimis*] miserimis, MS.

[3] *infirmatur*] imfirmatur, MS.

[4] *Wellensis*] An error for *Lewensis*, as in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 497.

[5] *et*] Appears superfluous here.

[6] *profecturum*] profectuturum, MS.

Ibid. ii. 498.

A.D. 1244. Deaths of notable personages.

gareta . . . Londoniis. Obiit episcopus Exoniensis Willelmus, cognomento[1] Briwere. Obiit comitissa Flandriæ, uxor comitis Thomæ, ratione cujus Flandriæ comes extiterat.

Henry at Westminster. John de Gatesdene knighted. The abp. elect of Canterbury and other prelates go abroad. Prayers required by the king for progeny. 16 Jan. Birth of prince Edmund.

H. A. ii. 499. Ibid. ii. 500.

Death of Herbert Fitz-Matthew. Mandate for a General Council at Lyons.

Ibid. ii. 501.

The pope's chamber burnt. 4 June.

M°.CC°.XLV°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxix°., fuit idem rex ad Natale Domini apud Westmonasterium, ubi Johannem de Gatesdene, clericum suum, opulentis redditibus[2] abundantem,[3] cum maluisset sub fœdere vivere matrimoniali quam curis animarum obligari,[4] balteo donavit militari. Cantuariensis electus B[onifacius]. et Wigorniensis et Herefordensis episcopi, clanculo ob secretissimas causas transfretarunt. Rex postulavit orationes a viris religiosis literatorie, ut Dominus, ad robur regni et consolationem, prolem conferre dignaretur. Hoc prius factum est de Edwardo, regis primogenito,[5] sed non publice. Et quia preces effectu non caruerunt, spem bonam omnes conceperunt, quod Dominus vitæ seriem prolis regiæ in beneplacito suo prospere gubernabit. Die vero sancti Marcelli peperit Alienora regina regi filium, quem vocavit, rege sic jubente, Edmundum. Quadragesimali vero tempore sequenti apud Montem-Gomericum[6] interempti sunt . . . præerat dicti castri castellanus. Tempore sub eodem . . . et fecit ipsum publice[7] excommunicatum enunciari per universam Christianitatem. David, dux exercitus Walensium, cupiens . . . . strenuissimus de marchisiis, Herbertus scilicet filius-Mathæi, inter[8] prærupta montium incaute ambularet, a quodam immani saxo, per quendam Walensem in eminenti constitutum [dimisso],[9] obrutus interiit. Anno eodem, circa medium Quadragesimæ auditum est in Anglia mandatum papale de concilio generali convocando et celebrando apud Lugdunum, quo papa cum magna jam venerat difficultate. Eo tempore, dum minus caute ministri papales ignem . . . camera papæ. Ministri autem . . . et ebrietatem, dicebant incendiarios occultos missos ab imperatore ignem occulte domibus supposuisse, ut sic papam combussissent.[10] Fuerunt qui dicerent quædam domino papæ carissima ipso igne fuisse consumpta, et ipsam infelicem cartam, quæ confecta fuit de tributo Angliæ. Doluit enim papa supra modum, et ingemuit usque ad lacrimas super combustione memorata, cum tamen domus illæ suæ propriæ non fuissent. Die vero Pentecostes

---

[1] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[2] *redditibus*] reddibus, MS.

[3] *abundantem*] habundantem, MS.

[4] *obligari*] obgligari, MS.

[5] *primogenito*] primo, MS.

[6] *Gomericum*] Glomericum, MS.

[7] *publice*] At first written *enunciari*, but afterwards erased, and corr. in marg.

[8] *inter*] dum inter, MS.

[9] *dimisso*] Supplied to complete the sense. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*

[10] *combussissent*] combussisset, MS.

A.D. 1245.

fol. 75 *a*.

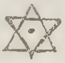
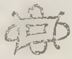
rex Londoniis Ricardum de Clare, comitantibus . . . militari.

Amount of rents in England received by Italians.

Ibid. ii. 502.

Fecit eo tempore rex per . . . Romanorum et Ytalicorum, quos Romana auctoritas violenta ditaverat. Et inventa est ad plus ascendere quam redditus totius regni merus Anglicani, exceptis redditibus, donativis, et diversis Transalpinorum emolumentis, quæ recipiunt de cameris episcoporum et abbatum, quæ ad multa milia marcarum ascendere reperiuntur.

Letter of complaint on this subject addressed to the General Council.

Confecta est igitur carta querimonialis[1] super talibus oppressionibus intolerabilibus, et precipue de carta tributi tempore belli extorta, ad concilium deferenda, et in propatulo relegenda. Franci quoque similiter pro injuriis et oppressionibus, quibus per papam et Transalpinos auctoritate papali opprimuntur, quandam conficiunt prolixam epistolam et elegantem, lugubres querimonias continentem, ad concilium transmittendam, papæ et toti concilio querimonialiter præsentandam. Quas epistolas alibi scriptas hic scribere prætermittimus propter earum prolixitatem, sed alibi illas poterit sedulus indagator[2] reperire, scilicet ad hæc signa . .[3] Hiis quoque diebus,

Ibid. ii. 503.

. . . odio capta apud Luitonam, inter Ricardum de Clare et quosdam alienigenas, auctoritate regia prohibebantur, missus est . . . consentiente ipso rege, sed tacite et caute, ad . . . vultu ipsum intuens, sic affatur, "Recedens ilico exi . . . tibi per me mandat non rex, sed armatorum . . . ne hic moreris . . . frusta detrunceris." Et re vera . . . ipsum truculenter irruisset, sicut postea protestabatur, et pœnituit eum graviter de omissione.

Departure of the papal nuncio.

Rege autem conductum concedente, recessit ab Anglia magister [Martinus][4] trepidus et festinus. Rex autem significavit papæ, quod vix magnates suos cohibere potuit, quin ipsum propter sui rapacitatem interfecissent.

He complains to the pope.

At magister Martinus Lugdunum perveniens, gravem super prædictis coram papam reposuit querimoniam; sed papa propter imminens[5] concilium conniventibus oculis omnia prudenter dissimulavit, tempora conquerenti promittens commodiora.[6]

Ibid. ii. 504, 505.

Rex nec valens . . . . . sequerentur.

Resignation of the bp. elect of Coventry.

Electus Coventrensis Willelmus, monachus, electionem suam sponte resignavit. Cujus loco . . . de Weseham, decanus ecclesiæ Lincolniensis.

Ibid. ii. 505.

Consecrati sunt . . . . . in Cestrensem. Quod cum audisset rex, jussit baronias episcoporum . . . ilico confiscari.

Ibid. ii. 506.

Dominus rex . . . . Westmonasterii con-

---

[1] *querimonialis*] At first written *querimonialibus*, and the last syllable afterwards erased.

[2] *indagator*] indegator, MS.

[3] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, [illegible]

[4] *Martinus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *imminens*] iminens, MS.

[6] *commodiora*] comodiora, MS.

A.D. 1245.

Restoration of Westminster abbey.

Deposition of the emperor.

Messengers sent to the General Council to complain of the papal exactions.

Complaint of the French on the same subject.

The misfortunes attending the Crusaders attributed to the pope.

ventualem veterem jussit funditus cum media turri solotenus dirui, et sumptibus propriis regaliter et magnifice reparari. fol. 75 *b.* In qua ecclesia decenter reparata, corpus beati Edwardi illibatum in feretro aureo proposuit collocare. Altius igitur . . . . celebraturi. Cujus concilii acta, quæ[1] speciales exigunt tractatus, alibi annotantur.[2] Et cum petitum esset ab omnibus fere prælatis, ut solempniter canonizaretur beatus Edmundus confessor, cepit negotium, sub spe tamen ob occultas causas, ad tempus dilationem. Item, imperator F[rethericus] ab culmine imperii ignominiose præcipitatus est. Cujus rei series, quia autentica, alibi plenius enucleatur.[3] Item, per solempnes nuncios suos et procuratores, quos ad hoc dominus rex Angliæ destinaverat, videlicet comitem Rogerum Bigod,[4] Johannem filium-Galfridi, militem, Willelmum de Cantelupo, militem, Philippum Basset, militem, Radulphum filium-Nicholai, militem, et magistrum Willelmum Powic, domini regis clericum, conquestus est dominus rex Angliæ super innumerabilibus exactionibus, et ecclesiarum, quas fundaverunt progenitores ejus, et dotaverunt ex eorum liberis tenementis, servilibus oppressionibus domini papæ, per diversos nuncios, quorum enormitates et improbitates si quis plenius prosequeretur, lacrimas excuteret auditorum. Quasi enim ultimæ conditionis servi vel Judæi, jam annuatim talliantur prælati, et ecclesia, quam Christus liberavit, velut ancillaris pedissequa conculcatur. Item, Ibid. ii. 507. contradictum est . . . rex Angliæ Johannes, amaricatus spiritu, in tempore belli et discordiæ et odii indurati inter ipsum et nobiles de regno; cui obligationi non consensit universitas, immo contradixit Anglorum eminentissimus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis. Franci quoque, ut prætactum est, gravem de oppressionibus et frequentibus exactionibus, quibus ecclesia Gallicana vexabatur, lacrimabiliter sunt conquesti. Episcopus insuper Berithensis . . . sigilla, scilicet magnatum Terræ Sanctæ, primo patriarchæ, consequenter aliorum tam prælatorum quam principum Terræ Sanctæ, de infortunio[5] quod ibidem accidit per Chorosminos; occulte imponens causam hujus rei papæ, qui thesaurum a rege Francorum Philippo legatum, qui papam summum inde constituit executorem, nescitur qualiter alienavit, necnon crucesignatos ad succursum Terræ Sanctæ succinctos et eorum viatica laicis personis vendidit, et a succursu Terræ Sanctæ, in Christi contumeliam, alienavit. Et

---

[1] *quæ*] que q̄, MS. Perhaps we should read *quia*.

[2] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 506.

[3] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 668–672.

[4] *Rogerum Bigod*] Bigod Rogerum, MS.

[5] *infortunio*] infornio, MS.

A.D. 1245. imperatorem F[rethericum], qui omnia certissime restituere promisit, quia hoc ipse solus potuit, quantum potuit, prout nunc apparet, ut solus regnaret et dominaretur, indefesse infestavit. Dominus rex Angliæ, dum apud Gannoc . . . . . ex Anglis milites strenui Alanus Bucel, Adam de Moia, et Reimundus Arcubalastarius; de Walensibus vero multo plures, sed vulgares. Misit igitur rex in Hiberniam, maxime in Engleseiam,[1] pro Hiberniensibus, quos novit esse Walensibus inimicissimos, ut Walliam depopularentur. Quod et ipsi feralius quam præceptum est[2] adimpleverunt. Rex vero post miserabile Walensium exterminium, præclusit eis omne genus victualium. Hostibus igitur ad votum subjugatis, firmavit apud Gannoc castrum elegantissimum, quod est omnibus Walensibus quasi spina in oculo, [et][3] reversus est in festo Symonis et Judæ apostolorum. Rege Francorum convalescente, immo potius resuscitato, multi de regno Francorum nobiles cruce similiter consignantur, videlicet . . . . comes Britanniæ, comes Barrensis, comes R. de Druis, Philippus de Curtenai, Walterus de Juvenni . . . de regno Francorum, quorum nomina non tenemus. Qui omnes votivo signo crucis signati, sui regis sequi vestigia cupiebant, ut tanti ducis tuti patrocinio crucesignati, Christi contererent[4] inimicos. Consecratus est . . . . literatus. Obierunt autem illo anno, Baldewinus [comes][5] Devoniæ, in crastino sancti Valentini, et quidam præclarus baro . . . . Simoni. Obiitque comes Marescallus . . . sui, scilicet Ricardus,[6] Willelmus et Gilebertus, ii. nonas Decembris. Et cito . . . frater eorum junior. Quibus . . . scutum illud Angliæ prostratum est. Et quia de hoc clipeo prostrato mentio recitatur lamentabilis, alienum a materia non arbitror, si de consimilibus prostratis, licet non paribus, faciam mentionem, ut sic ruina regni Anglicani, Deo offenso, pateat recitata. Marescalli, ut dictum est . . . . de Breaute. In Provincia, amici Angliæ, comitis Provinciæ Reimundi, qui eodem anno sublatus est de medio. Obiit quoque in crastino beatæ Virginis comitissa Oxoniæ Ysabella de Bolebec. Obiitque Galfridus de Marisco, exul et pauper, qui aliquando inter primates Hiberniæ non ultimus habebatur. Obiitque Galfridus de Trane, cardinalis papæ merito specialissimus. Obiit insuper apud Sanctum Albanum, ii. idus Octobris, episcopatu suo existente

The king sends to Ireland for forces to ravage Wales.

Gannoc castle fortified.

28 Oct.

fol. 76 *a*.

Many French nobles assume the Cross.

Ibid. ii. 508.

Deaths of English nobles.

Ibid. ii. 509.

4 Dec.

Ibid. ii. 510.

Shields laid low in England.

Deaths of Reimund, count of Provence, and others.

14 Oct.

---

[1] *in Engleseiam*] This is an error, arising from carelessness in abbreviating the text of *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 507.

[2] *præceptum est*] preceptum est preceptum, MS.

[3] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *contererent*] conterent, MS.

[5] *comes*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *Ricardus*] Added on to the text.

A.D. 1245.

Death of John, bp. of Ardfert.

Ibid. ii. 511.

in Hibernia, scilicet Hertfertensi, privatus, sed nequaquam pontificali dignitate, episcopus Johannes, et in ecclesia Sancti Albani est sepultus. Et xvi°. kalendas . . . Burgo.

Henry at Westminster.

H. A. iii. 3. fol. 76 *b*. Ibid. iii. 3, 4. Ibid iii. 4.

M°.CC°.XLVI°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxx°., fuit ad Natale Domini apud Westmonasterium, ubi . . . quibus et cara contulit donativa, una . . . et sorore sua, Cornubiæ comitissa, multisque aliis regni primatibus, qui cum eodem[1] rege in Wallia guerræ pondera . . . . exultatione. Per idem tempus . . . . . benedictionem. Summa[2] vero hæc est: "Damus " . . . . ecclesiæ memoratæ." In hujus . . . dici potest. Rex autem, ut videbatur, usque ad . . . regnum suum tot bonis suis et totiens viderat spoliari. Considerabat insuper, quod . . . inceperat ipse rex, redundare videbantur; quia sic imponebatur ei, quod dilapidator et extirpator substantiæ ecclesiæ Cantuariensis extitisset. Medio vero Quadragesimæ, edicto . . . . contrectarent. Angebat enim omnes gravamen . . . incessanter eisdem totiens irrogatum. Et eo[3] anxiabantur, quod . . . reponentes, minime exaudiebantur, sed tanto magis ac magis opprimebantur. Sed quia . . . sortita, nec se Angli mutuo patrocinabantur, nec a rege consolationem acceperunt, tædium . . . . cur urceus exit?" Sed, ut manifeste pateat, Dominum offensum fuisse, et, juxta illud Jeremiæ,[4] fieri Angliæ tanquam inimicum. Inviti igitur et obmurmurantes omnem illatam injuriam et cotidie tolerarunt multiplicatam. Et sic facta est servitus prælatorum æqualis servituti Judæorum, exsufflata[5] ecclesiæ libertate, qua Christus eam liberavit. Temporibus quoque . . . imperatorem nominare prohibemur, ut . . . exhalavit,[6] restauraret, præcipue quam de hæresi contraxerat, unam epistolam Anglis duxerat transmittendam: "Frethericus, etc. . . . . . præloquium," etc. Quere in libro Historiarum $\circ\,\overset{\circ}{\underset{\circ}{\circ}}\,\bigcirc$[7]. Papa vigili sollicitudine . . . . qui jam in regem Alemanniæ exaltabatur, multo ditaretur thesauro. Fretherieus igitur, positis insidiis, omnia ei transmissa cepit, et suo ærario prudenter cumulavit. Et eo tenus odii venena processerunt, ut alter alteri procuraret mortiferas potiones. Donis autem[8] papalibus corrupti sunt multi de Alemanniæ optimatibus, ita ut in die

Ibid. iii. 5. Ibid. iii. 6. Ibid. iii. 7.

Oppressions submitted to by the clergy.

Mutual enmity of the emperor and pope.

---

[1] *eodem*] eo, MS.

[2] *Summa*] Suma, MS.

[3] *eo*] We should probably read *eo magis*.

[4] Lament. ii. 5.

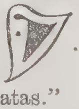
[5] *exsufflata*] exuflata, MS.

[6] *exhalavit*] exalavit, MS.

[7] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 7.

[8] *autem*] autem corrupti, MS., but the last word is superfluous.

A.D. 1246. belli terga dantes facti sunt de amicis inimici; unde Conradus
victus ad patrem inglorius remeavit. Reimundi . . . minor, Ibid. iii. 8.
maritata est . . . Provincia, quæ suæ cessit ditioni. Comes fol. 77 *a.*
Sabaudiæ . . . . fecit homagium et fidelitatem domino regi
Angliæ in manu archiepiscopi memorati, cum juramento et
fidei interpositione. Dominus rex . . . . Manniæ, balteo
. . . . rogitantes, exaudiri meruerunt. Rex precibus . . . in Ibid. iii. 9.
manu iratus tenuerat, restituit, et ipsum in gratiam recepit.
Canonization of St. Edmund.
Die vero apostolorum . . . . . . fugitivus. Beatus Edmundus, Ibid. iii. 11.
Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et confessor gloriosus, clarescente
signorum multitudine, canonizatur. Canonici Saresbirienses
. . . in rege, si alium quam aulicum elegissent, Willelmum Ibid. iii. 14.
de Eboraco, regis clericum specialem et consiliarium Beverlaci
. . . suarum, licet multos competentiores possent invenisse,
pastorem elegerunt. Defuncto piæ memoriæ Ricardo, abbate
. . . . archidiaconum, sibi elegit in abbatem. Eodemque
anno plures magnates regni Angliæ ab hoc seculo . . . . . .
Death of the countess of March, and burial.
clericus et consiliarius specialis. Item, comitissa Marchiæ,
mater regis, quondam regina Angliæ, quæ moritura velum
suscepit sanctimoniale, et desuper, quia regina, coronam. Et
sepulta est apud Fontem-Ebraudi, extra ecclesiam. Obiit insuper
comitissa . . . Galeweia. Ibid. iii. 15.

M°.CC°.XLVII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxi°.,
tenuit curiam suam . . . . episcopus ipsius civitatis Willelmus H. A. iii. 15.
lætabundus . . . episcopo in festo imminenti[1] prandere dignaretur
. . . . dominum ipsum regem . . . episcopum
3 Feb. suum in præsentia . . . revocasse. In crastino vero Purificationis
beatæ Mariæ, convenerat . . . . . ecclesiæ imperiosas Ibid. iii. 16.
postulationes pecuniæ violenter extorquendæ. Tandem de . . .
gravamina regni domino papæ . . . . ex parte universitatis fol. 77 *b.*
cleri et populi eminus ostensuri: "Sanctissimo . . . cleri per Ibid. iii. 17.
provinciam Cantuariensem constituta, devota . . . ecclesia,"
etc. Require .[2] In fine vero epistolæ: "Latores . . .
. . . . consignatas." Similiter et cardinalibus scriptum est,
Foreign ladies married to English nobles.
sed nihil remedii est consecutum, sed si prius virgis, modo
scorpionibus nos cædere non cessabant. Rex fecit maritari quasdam
puellas ultramarinas, quas Petrus de Sabaudia adduxit,
nobilibus adolescentibus, quos rex in custodia sua educaverat.
Two Minorites sent
Mittuntur duo fratres de Ordine Minorum in Angliam, videlicet
frater Johannes de Cantia cum socio suo A[lexandro], de

---

[1] *imminenti*] iminenti, MS.

[2] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 17.

Ibid. iii. 18. præcepto . . . suum exequendum de subventione pecuniari eidem facienda contra Frethericum, validum ecclesiæ persecutorem. Unde non minima facta est papæ contributio, et efficax collatum auxilium; fama enim referente, nitebatur idem F[rethericus] totius ecclesiæ statum concutere, et etiam fidei constantiam enervare. Ibid. iii. 20. Anno sub eodem . . . . dampnosus extitit et terribilis, et eo magis, quia insolitus. Quapropter significativus credebatur. Mare etiam . . . dies, sed tertio . . . non minima finitimis irrogavit. Et iterum redivivus terræmotus, cum quodam . . . lingua *Erthdune* vocant, adjuncto ventorum violento turbine, structuras . . . . dissipavit et avulsit, et robora miræ magnitudinis conterens, radicitus extirpando præcipitavit. Unde comminatio evangelica[1] mundano statui evidenter convenire videbatur. Nam et tonitrus cum terribili fulgure præmissis adjungebantur. Sed miseri mortales nec evangelicis comminationibus, nec elementorum commotionibus perterriti vel castigati, impetus voluntarios avaritiæ et ambitionis cohibuerunt. Diebus sub eisdem missi sunt subdoli sicarii et potionatores ac jugulatores, more Assesinorum, et etiam, ut dicebatur, piper infectum ab institoribus inter papales et Frethericales, ut, aliquibus interemptis, alteruter triumpharet, papa scilicet vel Frethericus. Unde dominus papa timens sibi, latuit inclusus in arcto conclavi, armatis custoditus, vix ausus in populo apparere, vel eidem verbum Dei prædicare, ut decuit, Ibid. iii. 22. in publico et manifeste. Hoc quoque anno, facta est . . . visitatione facienda in . . . de Thynemue, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani pertinentis. Mota autem lis sic conquievit, quod in ipsa episcopus visitationis officium exercebit[2] sine onere procurationis. fol. 78 *a*. Obiit Andegravius de Duringe, in cujus sinu reposita fuit spes papalis et confidentia. In cujus casu totius thesauri pecunia inæstimabilis, quam dominus papa undecunque adquisierat, in Caribdim perditionis irrestaurabiliter est submersa. Obiit et Fulco de Castro-novo, miles, domini regis consobrinus, Londoniis, in Purificatione beatæ Mariæ; et sepultus [est][3] in ecclesia Westmonasterii. Willelmus, comes Holandiæ, papa procurante, in regem Alemanniæ, ut sic in imperium promoveatur, eligitur. In cujus promotione papa thesauros inpretiabiles, quos ab ecclesia emunxit[4] Anglicana præcipue et Gallicana, congessit. Sed omnia quasi in pelagi voratrum vel potius baratrum irrecuperabiliter sunt projecta, sicut sequens sermo plenius suo tempore declarabit; ut luce clarius pateat omnibus,

A.D. 1247.

to England to collect money for the pope.

Emissaries sent to poison the emperor and pope.

The pope hides himself.

Deaths of the Landgrave of Thuringia, and Fulk of Newcastle. 2 Feb.

William, count of Holland, elected king of Germany.

---

[1] *evangelica*] euuangelica, MS., and *euuangelicis* further on.

[2] *exercebit*] excercebit, MS.

[3] *est*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *emunxit*] emuncsit, MS.

A.D. 1247.

Arrival of the cardinal bp. of Sabina, on his way to Norway.

He exacts procurations from the clergy.

Mass celebrated on board ship at Lynne.

Hacon anointed king of Norway.

The monks of the Black Order assembled, with a view to their reform, and the abbat of Holm sent to Rome for that purpose.

The three uterine brothers of the king come to England.

tales ecclesiæ guerras et sanguinis Christiani profluvia Domino exercituum maxime displicuisse. Applicat in Anglia episcopus Sabinensis, apostolicæ sedis cardinalis, de licentia domini regis, iturus in partes boreales, videlicet Norwegiam et Sueciam, ut . . . Haconem et coronaret. Qui, sicut ejus progenitores, rex Norwagiæ extiterat, per diuturna secula, sed non inunctus. Cardinalis igitur memoratus apud Len commorans, procurancias,[1] ac si esset legatus in Angliam destinatus, plurimis diebus ventum prosperum expectans, ab omnibus vicinis et aliquibus remotis episcopis et abbatibus exigebat. Et cum ventus commodus[2] aspirasset, fecit celebrari missam in navi apud Len, dum staret adhuc immobilis super aridam, admirantibus qui illam viderunt novitatem. Et post missam, sinuatis [velis,][3] Angliam a tergo salutans, septentrionalibus fluctibus irrediturus se commisit. Et cum in Norwegiam pervenisset, officium sibi injunctum de rege perfecit inunguendo. Et cum ad se vocatos illius regionis Nigri Ordinis monachos, minus inveniret habitu, moribus et gestu ordinatos, ita ut paucos professos, nullumque silentium observantem, promisit eisdem visitatorem et informatorem auctoritate papali transmittendum. Quos rogabat, ut ipsum reciperent reverenter, et audirent obedienter. Et missus est Romam ob hoc abbas de Holm, Nidrosiensis diocesis, et Hernisius, monachus ejus, cum literis ipsius legati ad dominum papam, ut aliquem idoneum[4] visitatorem et informatorem, monachum Nigri Ordinis, ad reformandum Norwagensium monachorum Ordinem per negligentiam prælatorum deformatum, illuc destinaret. Quod et factum est, prout in sequentibus dicetur. Tres domini regis fratres uterini venerunt in Angliam, a rege vocati, filii comitis de Marchia Hugonis, amplos honores recepturi, videlicet Guido de Lizeinnum, Willelmus de Walentia, et Æthelmarus clericus. Pater autem eorum Hugo, et frater primogenitus Hugo, ammonitu regis Francorum, sicut multi optimates de regno Francorum et regionibus conterminis, cruce signabantur. Tempore quoque sub . . . æri regio inhiantes, magnates ultramarini et longinqui . . . Constantinopolitanus, domini regis, ut asseruit, consanguineus, cum quibusdam . . . annis antea transactis, omnibus reliquiis quas . . . . bonis aufugit spoliatus. Sed a rege et comite Ricardo, ratione consanguinitatis licet longinquæ, meruit recipere de inopia consolationem. Unde, refertis clitellis, ditior remeavit. Eodem anno . . . festo beati Vitalis

Ibid. iii. 23, 24.

fol. 78 *b*.

Ibid. iii. 24.

28 April.

Ibid. iii. 25.

---

[1] *procurancias*] et procuracias, MS., but *et* is superfluous.

[2] *commodus*] comodus, MS.

[3] *velis*] Omitted in MS. Cf. *ante*, p. 241.

[4] *idoneum*] ydoneum, MS.

. . . . quas, ut prætactum est, adduxerat . . . nobilibus, quos A.D. 1247.
rex . . . educaverat. Maritata est insuper Alesia, soror . . .
de Warannia, futuro comiti de Warannia. Maritata insuper
Ibid. iii. 26. Johanna, filia Warini de Montecheinsillo . . . cui contulit cito
postea Hertfordiam, cum castro et honore. Fratri autem suo
Æthelmaro procuravit . . . . viderentur ascendisse. Guidonique,
fratri . . . contulit rex tantam esterlingorum renovatorum
numerosam abundantiam,[1] ut equi sui eisdem recederent onerati.
Episcopus Wigorniensis, Willelmus Longa-spata, Galfridus Many English nobles assume the Cross.
de Lucy, et multi alii nobiles in Anglia, exemplo regis
Francorum Christianissimi, ut cum eo et sub eo Christo militantes
peregrinarentur, cruce signantur. Eodemque anno, vii°.
idus Julii, quo videlicet die . . . . nutu et providentia, translatum 9 July.
est . . . . . quod corpus ejus totaliter integrum inventum
est et incorruptum, et instar balsami odoriferum; et quod . . .
flexibile. Capilli ejus et vestimentum[2] colore et substantia
Ibid. iii. 27. inviolatum. Et cum vellent . . . respondit rex, "Avertat
Dominus a me illa temeritas! Non placeat . . . peccatorem
quomodolibet mutiletur." Eodem tempore moneta . . . . unde
de remedio oportuit cogitare. Inventa est igitur novi cunei New coinage.
impressio talis, ut, manentibus pondere et materia, crucis
brachia usque ad nummi exteriorem circulum extenderentur.[3]
In cujus . . . de cruce violaretur, inacceptabilis haberetur,
nec licuit, nisi [ad][4] mensam, cambiare. In cujus præcepti
transgressione multi postea puniebantur. Anno quoque sub Destruction of the Chorasmians.
eodem Chorosminorum fortitudo pestifera divina ultione dissipata,
et quasi vas figuli irrestaurabiliter deleta de sub cœlo,
tam Sarracenorum quam Christianorum præliis enervata. Fre-
Ibid. iii. 28. thericus cisalpinans . . . copioso, unde . . . papalem irrueret
fol. 79 *a*. truculenter, tanquam propter induratum et inveteratum odium
obstinatus, cum prudenter . . . . Fretherieum martialiter communire.
Quod cum audisset F[rethericus], omnes vires suas
in præparatione obsidionis contra Parmenses regressus [congregavit];[5]
et obsidens eandem civitatem, aliam tanquam castrorum Siege of Parma by the emperor.
dispositionem ædificavit, quam Victoriam jussit appellari.
Quæ postea, Thadeo interfecto, consiliario suo, dissipata est;
unde quidam papalis inde ait,

"Ad nutum Christi Victoria victa fuisti."

---

[1] *abundantiam*] habundanciam, MS.

[2] *vestimentum*] vestimenta, MS.

[3] In the text is introduced a rude drawing of the coin, with an imperfect inscription. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 27.

[4] *ad*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[5] *congregavit*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.* A blank space is left in the MS.

A.D. 1247.
30 Sept.
The blood of Christ carried to Westminster abbey by the king.
Authenticity of the relique.
Succession of bishops.
Deaths of noble personages.

In crastino vero sancti Michaelis[1] magnates Alemanniæ electo . . . homagium, suadente papa, fecerunt et liganciam, . . . Aquisgranum,[2] ubi reges Alemanniæ coronari consueverunt, solempniter coronaretur. Sed Fretheričales viriliter obstiterunt. Eodem anno, in festo Sancti . . . Christi apud Westmonasterium, et domino regi allatus, et diligenter examinatus, præsentibus magnatibus regni et prælatis quamplurimis. Et contulit ipsum sanguinem ecclesiæ Westmonasterii, quem cum summa devotione ipse rex in humili habitu pedes ab ecclesia Sancti Pauli cum processione magna bajulavit, ambobus brachiis et manibus reverenter elevatis. Et revera proposuit nudis pedibus tam tremendum, tam venerandum thesaurum supportasse,[3] nisi cespitationem et casum, dum quod portavit quandoque intueretur, formidasset. Revocavit enim ad memoriam historiam de imperatore Eraclio Crucem ad portas Jerusalem bajulante.[4] De memorati sanguinis veritate plenissime per domini patriarchæ Jerosolimitani literas testimoniales, et magistrorum militiæ Templi et Hospitalis, et aliorum magnatuum Terræ Sanctæ certificamur. Collata est . . . . . militari. Electus Karleolensis Silvester in episcopum consecratur. Die vero apostolorum . . . transmarinis. Electus est in episcopum Menevensem magister Thomas, Walensis, Lincolniensis archidiaconus. Obiit die sanctæ Katerinæ comes de Ferrariis Willelmus, ætate fere centenarius. Obiitque uxor ejus M[argareta] comitissa . . . et civilitatis. Obiitque episcopus Menevensis, natione Walensis. Obierunt insuper quidam nobiles, Ricardus de Burgo et Willelmus filius-Hamonis.

Ibid. iii. 29.
Ibid. iii. 30.
Ibid. iii. 31.

Henry at Winchester.
Many nobles take the Cross.
Richard Suard dies.
9 Feb.

M°.CC°.XLVIII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxii°., fuit ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam; et in crastino cum . . . requisitus. Comes Legrecestriæ Symon et multi alii nobiles cruce signantur, regis Francorum sequi vestigia[5] cupientes. Ricardus Suard paralisi percussus, usque ad mortem infirmabatur.[6] Beatrix . . . Reimundi, mater scilicet reginæ, comitante . . . venit in Angliam, ante tempus vernale recessura. Circa festum . . . Robertus. Illo quoque anno, in octavis Purificationis beatæ Mariæ, edicto . . . . . exactione, et pecuniæ receptæ inutili dispersione, sine sui regni emendatione vel augmentatione.[7] Redargutus est insuper, eo quod,

H. A. iii. 32.
fol. 79 *b*.
Ibid. iii. 33.

---

[1] *Michaelis*] Micaelis, MS.

[2] *Aquisgranum*] Aquisgrani, MS.

[3] *supportasse*] supportasset, MS.

[4] The narrative of this event may be found in Cedrenus, *Histor. Compendium*, cap. 21, p. 410, ed. Paris, 1647.

[5] *vestigia*] vestia, MS.

[6] *infirmabatur*] imfirmatur, MS.

[7] *augmentatione*] aucmentacione, MS.

A.D. 1248.

sicut magnifici[1] reges, progenitores ejus, non habet . . . per commune regni fidele consilium, prout . . . et toti regno, ut non enormia brevia et consilia regem, ut consueverunt, depauperarent. Hæc autem . . . humilitate; unde omnium corda mitigavit. Cui respondit universitas . . . rex adversus nos, et nos ei in omnibus humiliter obtemperabimur." Dilata sunt

Ibid. iii. 34.

. . . Baptistæ. Sed et tunc res successu et effectu caruit adoptato, et[2] per dilationes inutiles languit enervata, secundum . . . noluit."

Defeat of the emperor by the Parmese.

Parmenses fortuitam et fortunatam comperientes Fretherici absentiam, et quod ad horam, vocantibus arduis negotiis, in remotis agebat, cito tamen rediturus, in Victoriam civitatem sibi adversantem repentino impetu irruerunt; et, [ut][3] prætactum est, dissipatis omnibus, victores in suam receperunt civitatem. Quod cum audisset F[rethericus], non se capiens præ furore, nec se moderans præ dolore, obsidionem jussit acrius continuari.

Impoverishment of the people.

Universitas populi Anglicani pro cambio captioso et sumptuoso nimium depauperatur. Comiti Ricardo conceditur cambii commoditas,[4] propter retributionem.

Marriage of the emperor and of his son Conrad.

Conradus, sicut et pater ejus F[rethericus], uxores ducunt potentum, ut partem roborent contra papam.

His daughter married to Thomas of Savoy.

Item F[rethericus] filiam suam dat nuptui Thomæ de Sabaudia, quondam comiti Flandriæ, civitatem Taurinam cum quibusdam castris et honoribus conferendo, ut [non][5] tantum ipsum sed totum genus suum, quod est præclarum, sibi conciliet contra omnes in amicitiam. Eodem anno, celebrato beati Edwardi festo, jussit dominus

Ibid. iii. 35, 36.

rex publice denunciari . . . . a festo memorato, quod . . . suspensis interim mercaturis.

The fair at Ely abolished.

Quo[6] audito, episcopus Elyensis doluit suas nundinas, scilicet Elyenses, contra antiquam regni consuetudinem approbatam, enormiter lædi, in ecclesiæ suæ dampnum et gravamen.

Coronation of William, count of Holland.

Capitur [civitas][7] Aquisgrani, et Willelmus, novus electus, in regem ibidem, invito F[retherico] et omnibus Frethericalibus, coronatur, et rex in publico acclamatur[8] Alemanniæ, die Omnium Sanctorum.

1 Nov.

Mare viii.

Ibid. iii. 36. 24 Nov.

kalendas Decembris solitos . . . excedens,[9] ter[10] ascendit sine decremento notabili, luna existente quarta. Inundationesque pluviarum spem fructuum, maxime autem frugum, suspenderunt, et agriculturam impedierunt.[11]

Ibid. iii. 37.

Adveniente quindena . . .

---

[1] *magnifici*] magnifi, MS.

[2] *et*] sed, MS.

[3] *ut*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[4] *commoditas*] comoditas, MS.

[5] *non*] Omitted in MS.

[6] *Quo*] Quod, MS.

[7] *civitas*] Omitted in MS. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 36.

[8] *acclamatur*] aclamatur, MS.

[9] *excedens*] excedens consuetos, MS.

[10] *ter*] et ter, MS.

[11] *impedierunt*] impedivit, MS.

A.D. 1248.

Pecuniary aid demanded by the king, and refused.

Ibid. iii. 38.

fol. 80 *a*.

Earthquake in Savoy.

Mission of Matthew Paris to Norway.

Ibid. iii. 40 41.

Ibid. iii. 41.

Londoniis barnagium, optatum responsum a domino rege auditurum. Et cum asseruisset rex, se nullatenus jugum servitutis subire, quin ad placitum justiciarium, cancellarium et thesaurarium constitueret, postulavit in fine sermonis auxilium sibi fieri pecuniare, ad jura regni potenter requirenda. Cui cum negative respondissent, gravamina pristina pro excusatione[1] retexentes, quilibet tristis ad propria remeavit. Luna passa est . . . occasum. Capta est . . . Sibilla a victoriosissimo rege Hispaniæ A[lphonso]; unde rex Sibillæ intitulatur. Eodem tempore, in partibus . . . suis habitatoribus et ecclesiis, scilicet v., obrutæ sunt et absorptæ;[2] unde circiter vii. milia hominum cum tribus domibus religiosorum miserabiliter perierunt. In æstate illius anni venerunt . . . . multos latuit; verumtamen ex . . . baptismi postulabat . . . non pervenerunt. Papa autem serenissimum vultum eis ostendit et pretiosa contulit donativa, et [ipsos][3] escarleto cum penulis vestivit cisiminis. Eodemque anno frater Matheus Parisiensis, hujus opusculi compositor, monachus ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, ex præcepto domini papæ, prout legatus missus in Norwegiam eidem papæ, ut prætactum est,[4] suggesserat, missus est in Norwegiam, ad . . . auctentico: "Innocentius . . . . apostolicæ sedis reverentia, non postponas. Datum . . . anno v°." Sciendum quoque . . . . Edmundi, regis et martiris, instauravit. Sciendum insuper . . . . prothomartire. Et tunc temporis scripsit dominus rex Francorum dicto fratri Matheo in Norwegiam profecturo, postulans ut talem literam regi Norwagiæ ex parte sua deferret patentem, peregrinari præparato; quod et ipse rex Norwagiæ antea postulaverat.

Letter from the king of France to the king of Norway.

fol. 80 *b*.

"Ludowicus, Dei gratia Francorum rex, universis amicis et fidelibus suis, ballivis, majoribus et præpositis suis, ad quos præsentes literæ pervenerint, salutem. Cum carissimus noster illustris[5] rex Norwagiæ in subsidium Terræ Sanctæ transfretare proponat, sicut nobis per suas literas intimavit, vobis mandamus, quatinus si eundem regem vel ipsius navigium per mare contiguum litoribus terræ nostræ transire contingat, vel in terram nostram vel in feoda nostra alicubi applicare, ipsum et suos benigne et honorifice recipiatis; permittentes eosdem in terra nostra victualia emere, et sibi per forum legitimum de sibi necessariis providere. Actum apud Sanctum Germanum in Laia, anno Domini M°.CC°. quadragesimo septimo. In cujus rei testimonium huic scripto patenti sigillum meum apposui."[6]

---

[1] *excusatione*] excusicōe, MS.

[2] *absorptæ*] absorte, MS.

[3] *ipsos*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[4] See *ante*, p. 300.

[5] *illustris*] illustristis, MS.

[6] This letter is taken from the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 741, but the last sentence is there omitted.

A.D. 1248.

Earthquake in the diocese of Bath.

Resignation of the bishop of Durham.

Deaths of notable personages.

Dictus autem frater Matheus officium sibi injunctum perfecit. Ibid. iii. 42. Eodemque anno . . . factus est iterum terræmotus in Anglia, ita ut, secundum assertionem domini episcopi Bathoniensis, in cujus diocesi evidentius apparuit, dissipatæ sunt maceriæ ædificiorum, et quarundam columpnarum bases et epistilia, sine earundem columpnarum titubatione, quod mirabile fuit, dirutæ sunt et disjunctæ. Et, quod notabile est, ille . . . . . inauditum. Hoc anno obiit in Anglia Robertus[1] Ibid. iii. 39. Hylarii. Episcopus Dunelmensis Nicholaus episcopatui suo cessit, cui subrogatus est Walterus, decanus Eboracensis. Obiit quoque magister Symon de Langetona, archidiaconus Cantuariensis, multimodæ excitator perturbationis. Obiit quoIbid. iii. 40. que abbas Walthamiæ Ricardus . . . expertæ religionis. Obiitque [comes][2] Patricius . . . cavillosus. Obieruntque tres theologi . . . . . de Fishacle, fratres de Ordine Prædicatorum, egregii prædicatores et lectores præelecti.

Henry at Westminster.

Return of Simon, earl of Leicester, from Gascony.

M°.CC°.XLIX°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxiii°., fuit Londoniis, apud Westmonasterium. Et dum ibi moratur, comes Legrecestriæ Symon rediens de partibus Wasconiæ, venit ibi ad eum, enarrans seriatim quomodo de Guastone[3] de Biarda, et aliis domini regis hostibus et rebellibus, post multa bellorum pericula, Deo triumphaverit protegente. Acceperat enim ipsius terræ custodiam ad defendendum, proteH. A. iii. 43, 44. gendum et pacificandum. Rex a civibus . . . termino solvendarum exegit . . . . salutem." In Rotulo Scaccarii. Ibid. iii. 44. Resignato[4] episcopatu Dunelmensi ab episcopo Nicholao, rex ilico episcopatum in manu sua suscepit . . . hominibus non minimam pecuniæ emunxit[5] quantitatem, ita ut episcopus, quia videbatur esse in causa, usque ad amaritudinem spiritus angebatur. Unde de suo[6] thesauro multis jacturas suas, tanquam vir pius et justus, restauravit.

The king endeavours to secure the election of his brother Athelmar as bp. of Durham.

Rex autem, misso ad conventum Dunelmensem magistro Laurentio de Sancto Martino, clerico ac consiliario suo, petiit instantissime et elaboravit vigilantissime, tam per os dicti magistri L[aurentii], facundi et jurisperiti, quam per literas efficaces, ut Athelmarus, frater ejus, ibidem substitueretur. Sed conventus ejusdem simplicitatem et juventutem considerans, Walterum de Kirkeham, decanum Eboracensem, ut prætactum est sed breviter, optenta

---

[1] *Robertus*] This is an error. See note in *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *comes*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Guastone*] Gaustone, MS.

[4] *Resignato*] Resigno, MS.

[5] *emunxit*] emuncsit, MS.

[6] *suo*] Repeated superfluously after *thesauro.*

A.D. 1249. eligendi licentia, subito et prudenter elegerunt. Rex enim ipsum sibi dilectum et specialem ab antiquo Walterum, minime reprobum habere poterat vel displicentem. Assignata sunt igitur episcopo Nicholao tria de episcopatu Dunelmensi maneria, ad ejus honorabilem vitæ sustentationem, Hovedene, Scottona et Esendona. Consecrato autem et instituto episcopo Waltero plenarie in episcopatu Dunelmensi, cessavit regalium tirannica dominatio. Illis quoque temporibus improbitas leonina Fretherici multis eum privavit[1] amicis et benevolis. Desævit enim in . . . nec etiam fratribus Prædicatoribus vel Minoribus. Inter quos suspendi [jussit] Marcellinum, Arethinum episcopum, titulis martirum ascribendum. Et quia ad patibulum fratres Minores venientes, ut tollerent corpus, et tanquam sanctum in ecclesia sua reverenter sepelirent, punivit eosdem. Et hoc ante exterminium Victoriæ tertia die evenit, non sine miraculo manifesto. Eisdem temporibus vispiliones et latrones adeo in civitate Wintoniæ et in villis finitimis abundabant[2] intolerabiliter, quod oportuit regem illuc venire, ut mundaret tam civitatem de consensu et receptatione, quam ipsos prædones de malefactorum temeraria præsumptione. Tandemque facta diligentissima[3] veritatis inquisitione, inventi sunt et convicti malefactores plusquam centum, in sempiternum civitatis et villarum vicinarum numerosarum[4] obprobrium indelebile. Quos omnes merito jussit dominus rex patibulis præsentari. Et ideo inexorabilius, quia civitatem Wintoniæ locum nativitatis suæ nequiter macularunt. Eodem tempore, levi nacta occasione, procurante humani generis inimico, sacro tempore Quadragesimali, orta est discordia apud Cantebrugiam inter burgenses et scolares, quod sæpe contingit, machinante diabolo, in Quadragesima. Ex qua post . . . domorum effractiones . . . secuta; unde post multa utrobique scandala et dampna, rege procurante et sontes puniente, totus tumultus cessavit pacificatus. Tunc quoque temporis cum Fretherieus infirmatus purgatione medicinali et balneo indiguisset, procurantibus Petro de Vineis, consiliario suo specialissimo, et ejusdem F[retherici] phisico, in quibus maxime confidebat anima ejus, intoxicata fuit medicina et balneum. Super quo præmunitus F[rethericus], fecit duos reos mortis et morti addictos potionem haurire et balneo ablui memorato; qui ilico expirarunt. Fecit igitur judicialiter erui oculos convictorum. Et tunc F[rethericus], præ spiritus

Manors assigned to the late bishop.

fol. 81 *a.*

Unpopularity of the emperor.

Ibid. iii. 45.

Marcellinus, bp. of Arezzo, hung.

Robbers at Winchester punished.

Quarrel at Cambridge between the burgesses and scholars.

Ibid. iii. 47.

Attempt to poison the emperor.

---

[1] *privavit*] privivavit, MS.

[2] *abundabant*] habundabant, MS.

[3] *diligentissima*] diligentissim, MS.

[4] *numerosarum*] nemorosarum, MS.

A.D. 1249.

Lamentation of Frederic.

amaritudine lacrimans præcordialiter, q[uod][1] se quis nunquam meminit prævidisse, ad seipsum reversus conqueri cœpit, et verba, querulis singultibus prorumpentibus et manibus complosis, ait: "O me miserum, immo miserrimum, quanta patior pro imperii juribus conservandis! O quam melior est pauperum vel mediocrium conditio, quam imperatorum, regum vel principum! Pugnant contra me viscera mea, et anima mea mihi insidiatur animato. Ecce Petrus de Vinea, in cujus sinu requievit anima mea; ecce medicus,[2] cujus custodiæ corpus meum commiseram, vitæ meæ laqueos tetenderunt! Quid adhuc protelatur anima mea, quia ab hoc misero non recedit domicilio!" Et desiderabat pro vehementia doloris exanimari.[3] Et tunc humiliatus optulit papæ humilitatem magnam, et jacturarum restaurationem plurimarum, et totam Terram Sanctam. Sed ejus peccata pristina fol. 81 *b*. et consuetæ fallaciæ ipsum reddiderunt incredibilem, nec meruit exaudiri; unde hinc inde induratis cordibus, solis intendebant ultionibus. Rex Francorum ad Ciprum navigaturus, valedicens suis navem ascendit, et remisit ad propria multos de media manu, non curans in exercitu suo numerum ampliorem; unde ipsi, venditis omnibus propter suam peregrinationem, pauperes et confusi sunt reversi. Et cum Ciprum pervenisset, ibidem, ut respiraret, hiemavit. Ibique missi fuerunt ad eum nuncii [Soldani][4] Babiloniæ pacifici, ea quæ pacis erant benigne rogitantes, et formam pacis offerentes Christianis utilem valde, honorabilem atque gratiosam. Obstitit autem magister Odo, frater de Ordine Prædicatorum, in cujus sinu totum consilium regis continebatur, credens uberiora recepisse. Misit igitur rex Francorum ad Venetos et ad insulas vicinas, petens ab eis subsidium victuale; qui et miserunt ampliora quam postulavit. Quia quæ venalia postulavit, gratuita destinarunt. Fretherieus autem, ne illis parcior vel inferior[5] videretur, transmisit eidem uberiora. Unde rex Francorum, ne ingratus videretur, ad supplicationem ejusdem[6] F[retherici], scripsit papæ humiliter et devote, ut paci consentiret competenti, ne peregrinatio sua assimilaretur medicinæ vulneris, in quo[7] jaculum infectum latitat intromissum. Sed papa tirannizanti noluit humiliari, nisi ecclesia ad

He makes overtures to the pope.

Louis IX. embarks and winters at Cyprus.

Messengers of peace come to him from the Soldan of Babylon.

Supplies are sent by the Venetians and the emperor.

Louis writes to the pope to make peace with Frederic.

---

[1] *quod*] qm̄, MS., but *m* afterwards erased.

[2] *medicus*] dicus, MS.

[3] *exanimari*] exaniamari, MS.

[4] *Soldani*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 49.

[5] *inferior*] imferior, MS.

[6] *ejusdem*] ejudem, MS.

[7] *quo*] In the text *qua*, but corrected in margin.

A.D. 1249.

Henry, son of the emperor, applies to Louis in behalf of the king of England.

votum triumpharet. Per idem tempus Henricus, filius imperatoris, literatorie supplicavit humillime[1] regi Francorum, ut redderet regi Anglorum, avunculo suo, jura sua quæ in regno suo ipsum contingebant; quæ etsi pater suus propter suam contumaciam amiserat, ipse nunquam, ira traduce, non demeruit, sicut desideravit jura Jhesu Christi sibi ab infidelibus restitui Christianis. Indigne enim a Deo postulat quilibet Christianus, quod proximo denegat postulanti. Christianissimus autem rex Francorum precibus gratiosi pueri inclinasset, sed consilio procerum suorum obviasse videretur.

Arrival of the abp. of Rouen and bishop of Tortosa.

Eodem anno venerunt in Angliam, [in][2] solempnitate Paschali,[3] archiepiscopus Rothomagensis, frater de Ordine Minorum, Riganus nomine, ut quædam jura ecclesiam suam contingentia reposceret et optinuit, et episcopus de Tortusa, quæ est in Terra Sancta, ut reliquias generis sui visitaret.

11 April.

Ibid. iii. 51.

Ad clausum vero Pascha . . . . . communiam regni pro commodo[4] regni et regis constituendis. Sed cum breve responsum reportarent ac frivolum, pœnituit eos illuc inaniter advenisse.

Reply to the demands made by the nobles.

Dictum est enim eisdem, quod nimis cupiebant subjecti dominum suum in servitutem redigere, si quod cuilibet . . . facere denegaretur; licet enim cuilibet domus suæ constituere procuratorem. Et sic quilibet suo frustratus desiderio, ad propria remeavit, consilium regis plusquam regem detestando.

Preaching of the Mendicant Orders in aid of the crusade.

Ibid. iii. 52.

Fratres Prædicatores et Minores, necnon et alii, in peritia prædicandi theologi expediti et eruditi, in agro . . . . promittebant, minime frustrarentur, crucesignatis, secundum uniuscujusque possibilitatem, in pecunia solvenda redemptionem benigne susceperunt. Immo etiam laicis et penitus secularibus dominus papa, ex suæ plenitudine potestatis, sicut quondam columbæ et turtures in templo vendebantur,[5] ————————.

fol. 82 *a*.

2 June.

Ibid. iii. 55.

Eodem anno, fabricato elegantissimo ex auro et argento feretro, translatum[6] est iterato . . . . . multitudine copiosa, videlicet v. idus Junii . . . Feliciani. Comes Legrecestriæ Simon, in omnibus studens patrissare . . . expugnavit, civitates et castra occupavit, hostium suorum multos capiens, multos cogens ad domini regis fidelitatem redire, et aliquos eidem domino regi captivos Londoniis fecit præsentari.

William Longespée

Willelmus Longaspata, miles elegantissimus, annis pubescens juvenilibus, filio

---

[1] *humillime*] humilime, MS.

[2] *in*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Paschali*] Pascali, MS.

[4] *commodo*] comodo, MS.

[5] *vendebantur*] The text breaks off here suddenly, at the bottom of the page, and no aid is afforded by the *Historia Anglorum* or the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 766.

[6] *translatum*] et translatum, MS.

A.D. 1249.

and other nobles go to the Holy Land.

The Parmese and Bolognese defeat and capture the emperor's son Ensius.

Establishment of schools at Paris by the Cistercians.

Return of the bps. of Lincoln and Norwich from Rome.

Oppression of the

suo sua committens omnia, ad iter se accinxit Jerosolimitanum, pii regis Francorum sequens vestigia pedetentim, et multi nobiles de regno Angliæ, eidem W[illelmo] adhærentes; qui cum venissent ad partes ultramarinas, regis Francorum exercitui sunt adjuncti. Parmenses, ut partem suam contra Fretheric[1] roborarent, Bononiensibus sunt confœderati. Qui, conjunctis Cremonensibus, dum iter agerent[2] per confinia Bononiæ, facto impetu in Ensium, filium Frederici, regis Sardiniæ, et ejus exercitum, juxta quendam pontem, qui dicitur pons Sancti Ambrosii, per quem ipse E[nsius] erat transiturus,[3] captus est, et ejus exercitus dissipatus, et multi ex commilitonibus Ensii, præcipue de Cremonensibus, occupati, et cum suo Ensio Bononiam tracti, ad ipsorum Bononiensium arbitrium, interimendi,[4] incarcerandi, vel graviter redimendi. Unde Parmenses lætificati respirarunt, et Fredericus doluit consternatus. Conradus insuper, alius filius suus, Ibid. iii. 57. jam de regno . . . sibi senserat adversantem. Ipse insuper Fredericus in proprio corpore particulari percussus paralisi, non . . . carpento. Anno quoque sub eodem, abbas Clarevallensis,[5] vir per omnia laudabilis, Anglicus natione, nomine [Stephanus][6] de Lexintona, et alii cum eo abbates Cisterciensis Ordinis, perpendentes quod contemptui habebantur pro[7] defectu literaturæ, fratribus Prædicatoribus et Minoribus, impetrato a domino papa privilegio, Parisius nobile ædificium construxerunt, in quo fratres sui Ordinis convocatos manere fecerunt et studere, legere et disputare, necnon et prædicare, ita quod in brevi magnificis theologis æquipararentur. Rigor tamen Ordinis aliquantulum per hoc extitit enervatus, et claustralis pax et contemplatio mundi tumultibus perturbatus, prout legitur de beato Benedicto, quod relictis . . . decrevit, ut . . . contemplationi. Redierunt a Romana curia episcopus Lincolniensis R[obertus] et episcopus Norwicensis W[alterus], qui Romam adierant, ut animum papalem rectificarent et mitigarent, et a solitis cessaret[8] intolerabilibus oppressionibus. Vix enim valebat aliquis in Anglia prælatus tutus jam latitare pro multiplicatis provisionibus, vel qui possit alicui suo clerico pauperi perito, et in Anglico idiomate

---

[1] *Frethericum*] Frthericum, MS.

[2] *conjunctis . . . agerent*] This sentence refers to the forces of Ensius, but the construction is faulty.

[3] *transiturus*] transsiturus, MS.

[4] *interimendi*] interemendi, MS.

[5] *Clarevallensis*] Clerevallensis, MS.

[6] *Stephanus*] Left blank in the MS. See *Gallia Christiana*, iv. 806.

[7] *pro*] per, MS.

[8] *cessaret*] cessare, MS.

A.D. 1249.

clergy on account of the papal Provisions.

fol. 82 *b*.

Ibid. iii. 58.

Return of the abp. of Canterbury.

Capture of Damietta.

Meeting to reform the Benedictine Order.

Special collect for the king and queen established.

Consecration of Walter, bp of Durham.

Impression of the foot of Christ given to Westminster abbey.

Peace made between the abbat and convent.

Ibid. iii. 61.

expedito, et ad curas animarum idoneo[1] custodiendarum, in aliquo redditu,[2] licet exilī, caritatis intuitu providere. Et cum humanum . . . aliquod conferre beneficium, non valebant; Romani omnia rapiebant. Sed nec propter Deum, nec[3] propter tantorum pontificum supplicationes,[4] prurientes manus e[5] rapinis consuetis[6] retrahere voluerunt. Rediit insuper a Romana curia archiepiscopus Cantuariensis. Qui etiam domino papæ humiliter supplicaverat, ut ecclesiæ parceret Anglicanæ, sed nec ille profecit, quin Romani, Italici, et maxime papæ consanguinei prorsus indigni, bona Angliæ irreverenter occuparent. Eodem tempore rex Francorum in Terra Sancta prospere applicans, Damiatam civitatem munitissimam, pro qua tantus multotiens sanguis est effusus, sine difficultate et moræ dispendio capta est, et cultui Christiano, primo intrantibus Januensibus et Pisanis, mancipata. Abbates Nigri Ordinis auctoritate apostolica visitandi, maluerunt suos, si qui essent, excessus per se corrigere, quam per aliquem alium, maxime Ordinis et regulæ sancti Benedicti ignarum, apud Bermundesheiam[7] convenerunt, super reformatione Ordinis tractatum diligentem habituri. Ubi dominus rex impetravit quasdam preces fieri pro eo specialiter. Et statutum est apud Sanctum Albanum, ut in missa quæ cotidie de sancta Maria solempniter celebratur, una in perpetuum pro rege et regina dicatur collecta.[8] Walterus de Kirkeham in episcopum Dunelmensem consecratur. Rex contulit ecclesiæ Westmonasterii quandam petram albi marmoris, in qua impressio pedis Salvatoris, cum in cœlum ascensurus suis benediceret, manifeste apparuit. Hanc utique petram quidam frater de Ordine Prædicatorum portavit in Angliam, et regi contulit, ut Angli Salvatoris vestigia veneranter adorarent. Discordia orta inter R[icardum],[9] abbatem Westmonasterii, et ejus conventum, procurante domino rege, qui est illius domus amator specialis, feliciter est sopita. Eodemque tempore inter . . . orta est dissensio. Idem enim abbas, minus quam deceret aut expediret discretus, ac tribualiter inflatus, graviter

---

[1] *idoneo*] ydoneo, MS.

[2] *redditu*] rcditu, MS.

[3] *nec*] ne, MS.

[4] *supplicationes*] supplicōs, MS.

[5] *e*] et, MS.

[6] *consuetis*] consuetas, MS.

[7] *Bermundesheiam*] After this word the text has *Lond'*, and we should, perhaps, read *prope Londonias*.

[8] In the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 768, the use of this collect, beginning "Deus, in cujus manu," is said to have been established at the general meeting of the Order, and so also in the *Flores Historiarum*.

[9] *Ricardum*] Richard de Crokesle. See *Monasticon*, i. 271.

A.D. 1249.

Deposition of the abbat of Peterborough.

Injury done to the abbey of St. Alban's by the aid of John Mansel.

accusatus est et convictus[1] super dilapidatione, et de consanguineorum suorum, quibus abundabat,[2] in dampnum enorme suæ ecclesiæ, nimia ditatione. Procurante igitur episcopo Lincolniensi Roberto, qui domum de Burgo paulo ante visitaverat, depositus est. Cujus loco prior ecclesiæ Sancti Suithuni Wintoniæ, Johannes de Cadomo, sic rege volente, subrogatur. Per idem tempus quidam miles[3] de terra Sancti Albani domum ipsam nimium vexavit, et multipliciter dampnificavit, ope suffultus[4] domini Johannis Mansel, cujus extitit sororius. Quæ vexatio diffusos et speciales tractatus exigeret. Tandem, procurante dicto Johanne, feliciter est pax reformata inter eos, et de rebelli benevolus est effectus. Feria v^ta^. ante

The monastery of Hales receives monks from Beaulieu.

Deaths of noble personages.

Ibid. iii. 63. festum . . . detestans, et fugiens ad . . . senuit, ad gradum
promotus sacerdotii, convolavit. Abbas de Bello Loco . . .
Johannes fundaverat, præsentibus . . . ejus, cum multis
prælatis et magnatibus, sollempniter valde fecit dedicari.
fol. 83 *a*. Dedicata igitur illa ecclesia, ad instantiam comitis Ricardi
dictus abbas quandam novam domum Cisterciensis Ordinis de
Ibid. iii. 65. Hales, quam idem comes fundaverat, viginti monachis . . .
instauravit. In qua domo construenda comes plusquam decem
milia marcarum exposuerat. Sub ejusdem anni curriculo, v°.
Ibid. iii. 66. . . . Scotorum. Obiit quoque Hugo . . . regis victricus, et
ejus filius primogenitus, Hugo Brun nuncupatus, in Terram
Sanctam peregrini. Obiit quoque quidam alienigena, Petrus
de Geneure, quem rex in Hibernia multum locupletaverat.
Ibid. iii. 67. Obiit insuper magister . . . regis clericus et consiliarius . . .
vices supplens[5] cancellarii. In quo . . . de eo, [quem][6] in
tantum exaltaverat, exulem et egenum. Obiitque magister
Willelmus de Dunelmo, quondam electus Rothomagensis, vir
literatissimus, transalpinans. Obiitque Rogerus, filius Johannis
[de Bailloil],[7] baro borealis, cujus terræ custodiam rex contulit Willelmo de Valencia,[8] fratri suo, cum pertinentiis.

Henry at Winchester.

26 Dec.

M°.CC°.L°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxiiii°., fuit ad Natale apud Wintoniam; et in crastino, scilicet die sancti Stephani, cum episcopo ipsius civitatis magnus conviva dignabatur epulari. Et infra dies Natalicios . . . . infantis consanguineum; et quia comes amator fuit beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, vocatus est infans Edmundus.
H. A. iii. 68.

---

[1] *convictus*] con, MS.

[2] *abundabat*] habundabat, MS.

[3] *quidam miles*] Geoffrey de Childwike. See *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 62.

[4] *suffultus*] suffultus subfultus, MS.

[5] *supplens*] suplens, MS.

[6] *quem*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *de Bailloil*] Supplied from the same.

[8] *Valencia*] Valncia, MS.

A.D. 1250.

Earl Richard goes abroad, and is honourably received at Lyons.

The bp. of Lincoln complains to the pope, but without effect.

The emperor triumphs over his enemies.

Earl Richard dines with the pope.

25 April.

Defeat of the French, and capture of Louis by the Saracens.

Episcopus Lincolniensis . . . . ut omnium religiosorum Ibid. iii. 69.
per . . . . effusione, et sui senilis corporis vexatione, impetraverat,
sed inaniter, ut rei exitus comprobabat. Papa
. . . dispensavit. Comes Ricardus[1] cum maxima gloria et
honore transfretavit, et, comitante Henrico, filio suo primogenito,
et familia multa, nimis regaliter in equis phaleratis[2]
et carissimis vestimentis adornata, Franciam pertransiens Lugdunum
pervenit, ubi tunc papa morabatur. Et venienti omnes
fere cardinales reverenter occurrerunt. Episcopus autem Lincolniensis
jam illuc advenerat; quia cum multi sese versus
papam, ut pacem haberent, redemissent, querulus papam redarguit,
dicens, "Domine, credidi, auxiliante præcepto vestro,
omnes, de quibus conquestus [sum],[3] castigasse et ab eorum fol. 83 *b*.
errore potenter revocasse; et ecce novissimus error factus est
pejor priore. Omnes enim se redimunt, et panditis sinum
omnibus præmia offerentibus; unde enervatur auctoritas mea
et propositum irritatur." Cui papa, "Frater . . . . quia ego Ibid. iii. 70.
bonus sum?" Et sic recessit episcopus a suo proposito fraudatus,
aliis tamen nimium vexatis propter hoc atque dampnificatis.
Tempore sub eodem, devicto et affugato[4] Willelmo
de Holandia, rege Alemanniæ, licet eum papa multum ditaverit,
Fretherieus in multos sibi rebelles desævit triumphando,[5]
et ad tempus multos conterendo peremit, secundum illud,
"Ante ruinam[6] exaltabitur cor."[7] Tempore sub eodem, cum
venisset comes Ricardus Lugdunum, ut prædictum est, papa
ipsum cum summo honore suscepit, supplicans ut cum eo pranderet;
et refecti sunt in una mensa papa et comes Ricardus
collateraliter. Hoc autem factum est ante dies Rogationum.
Et eadem die, cum Soldanus Babiloniæ optimam pacem obtulisset,
sed Francorum superbia ad pacem oblatam minime
potuit inclinari, commissum est prœlium infelicissimum inter
Christianos et Sarracenos, et captus est rex Francorum ab infidelibus,
quod nunquam antea contigit. Et se reddiderunt

---

[1] *Comes Ricardus*] From these words the text of the *Flores Historiarum*, attributed improperly to Matthew of Westminster, is almost verbally transcribed in the Chetham MS. from the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum* printed above, and goes on to the close of the year 1255. A collation of the two texts has afforded some corrections of the original, and various readings, as indicated onwards in the foot-notes.

[2] *phaleratis*] feleratis, MS.

[3] *sum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 70, and *Flores Hist.*

[4] *affugato*] affligato, MS. and *Flores Hist.*

[5] *triumphando*] triumfando, MS.

[6] *et ad . . ruinam*] These words and part of the next are on an erasure; and are also written with a plummet on the lower margin.

[7] Altered from Prov. xvi. 18.

A.D. 1250.

The count of Artois drowned.

William de Longespée and other nobles slain.

He appears in a vision to his mother the abbess of Lacock.

On being informed of her son's death, she returns thanks to God.

Visitation of London by the abp. of Canterbury.

Sarracenis multi nobiles Francorum sine conflictu vel vulnere, tanquam maledicti a Domino; et capti multi ultro apostatarunt, in ignominiam fidei Christianæ, et totius universalis ecclesiæ obprobrium[1] sempiternum. Et fugit frater regis Francorum, comes Atrabatensis, et submersus periit in quodam flumine, et dissipatus est totus Christianorum exercitus et confusus. Willelmus vero Longa-spata pugnavit usque ad mortem, et alii quamplures nobiles, natione Anglici, exemplo Willelmi provocati et in Domino feliciter animati, videlicet Robertus de Vair, et alii, quorum [nomina][2] in libro vitæ indelebiliter annotantur. Quod autem æterna dignum arbitror memoria, videbatur in nocte præcedenti matri suæ, abbatissæ scilicet de Lacoc, quondam comitissæ Saresbiriensi, quod dictus Willelmus, aperto cœlo, elevatus est totaliter armatus, cujus armatura bene novit, et, angelis eum gaudenter suscipientibus, intravit. Quo intrante, dixisse videbatur mater, "Quis est hic?" Et responsum est ei, "Nonne cognoscis[3] filium tuum Willelmum et ejus armaturam?" Et mater, "Cognosco utique." Ille est, quem tu, mater, contemplaris." Abbatissa vero materna sedulitate tempus notavit et visionem. Elapso autem dimidio anno sequente, cum omnes qui casum sciebant et diu celabant, ne mater pro filii funere plus æquo doleret, tandem proruperunt[4] in hæc verba, "Domina, non expedit diutius celare casum, qui accidit filio tuo W[illelmo]." Et addentes[5] qua die in frusta, prœlians contra infideles pro Christo, martir gloriosus detruncatur. At illa comperiens diem et visionem memoratam rei gestæ respondere, elevatis manibus, gratias egit Deo vultu alacri; dicens, "Gratias refero tibi ego ancilla tua, Domine, quod de carne mea peccatrice talem nasci præcepisti tuorum hostium expugnatorem." Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] causa visitandi episcopum Londoniensem[6] et religiosos in civitate Londoniarum, tam contra episcopum quam viros religiosos civitatis, sicut et contra quosdam alios, licet æquitatis ductus ratione, tanta dicitur austeritate processisse, ut, ipsis instanter resistentibus, multi eum præcollaudantes, de ejus tunc mirarentur feritate.[7] Tandem, post multas hinc

---

[1] *obprobrium*] et obprobrium, MS.

[2] *nomina*] Supplied from *Flores. Hist.*

[3] *cognoscis*] congnoscis, MS.

[4] *proruperunt*] prorupit, MS. Corrected from *Flores Hist.*

[5] *addentes*] addens, MS. Corr. from *Flores Hist.*

[6] *Londoniensem*] Lund', MS.

[7] *quam viros . . feritate*] These lines are written over an erasure by the same contemporary hand, which has continued the text from the beginning of the year 1253. On the lower margin a portion of this correction appears traced with a plummet. The correction is followed in *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1250. inde expensarum effusiones et laborum diversas vexationes, determinatum est, ut suam archiepiscopus, secundum jus commune, rationabilius et tolerabilius exerceret jurisdictionem, et sic visitationem[1] prosequeretur sub diffinita modificatione. Et sic cessavit mota tempestas. Diebus sub eisdem . . . . terris totius Christianitatis . . . domum eorum de Holeburne, quæ est Londiniis, ut ibidem de . . . diligenter, invocata Spiritus Sancti gratia, contrectarent, et si corrigenda[2] cernerent, reformarent. Et quia . . . prælati de partibus vicinis ex mera liberalitate[3] . . . invenerunt. Rex autem prima die capituli accessit illuc personaliter, orationum suffragia petiturus ab eisdem, procuransque[4] eos, pavit ut decuit regulariter. Sequenti die, regina, deinde episcopus Londoniensis, postea dominus Johannes [Mansel];[5] consequenter alii, utpote abbas Westmonasterii, abbas Sancti Albani, abbas de Waltham, et cives Londonienses, prout ipsi literatorie supplicaverant. Erant autem fratres quadringenti et amplius. Eodemque tempore commissum est sigillum regium magistro Willelmo . . . jurisperito. Eisdemque temporibus quidam miles, quondam socius [Roberti de Passelewe][6] et ejusdem in officio custodiæ forestarum successor, Galfridus nomine de Langeleia, boreales partes peragrans, et de forestarum ac venationum transgressionibus perscrutans, quoscunque poterat irretire tam graviter mulctavit, pecuniam extorquendo, ut quantitas thesauri ad opus regis collecti in auditorum cordibus stuporem generaret. Die vero beati Kenelmi pervenerunt rumores de captione regis Francorum, et totius exercitus Christiani confusione, quibus rumoribus nunquam, præcipue in Francia, auditi sunt flebiliores, ad notitiam Catholicorum. Unde tota Christianitas mœrore contabuit et dolore. Eodem anno, mense Octobris . . . . . prævidisse, dampna finitimis maxima irrogavit. Anno quoque sub eodem . . . terræmotus in Anglia. Et quod in Ciltria evenit, maxime constat admirandum, nec est hoc visum a tempore cujus non extat memoria. Ipsa enim patria solida est, et cretosa ac petrosa, et minime cavernosa. Factus insuper cum ipso . . . subterraneus. Quæ dicebantur vel futuram . . . . mortem famosi principis præsignare. Obiit igitur

fol. 84 *a*.

Ibid. iii. 80.

Provisions supplied to the chapter of the Friars Preachers.

Ibid. iii. 81.

Large sums exacted by Geoffrey de Langeley for forest fines.

1 Aug. News arrives of the capture of the king of France in Palestine.

Ibid. iii. 85.

Earthquake in the Chilterns.

Ibid. iii. 87.

Ibid. iii. 88.

---

[1] *tolerabilius . . . . visitationem*] Traced by the same contemporary pen over a correction made on an erasure of the original text; and so copied in *Flores Hist.*

[2] *corrigenda*] corrrigenda, MS.

[3] *liberalitate*] liberalite, MS.

[4] *procuransque*] procurasque, MS.

[5] *Mansel*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.* and *Flores Hist.*

[6] *Roberti de Passelewe*] Omitted in the MS. and *Flores Hist.*, but the name ought certainly to be supplied here, as appears from the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 786.

A.D. 1250. Death of the emperor Frederic. Athelmar elected bp. of Winchester.

fol. 84 b.

eadem[1] die maximus principum, mundi stupor, Fretherieus. Obiitque eodem anno episcopus Wintoniensis Willelmus de Rale in partibus transmarinis, videlicet apud Turonim, ubi circiter xi. mensibus moram continuaverat. Monachi Wintonienses coacti sunt, rege instantius urgente, eligere sibi Æthelmarum, fratrem suum uterinum, in suarum pastorem animarum, licet insufficiens multis videretur. Qui onus suscipiens cum honore, contra omnium prædecessorum suorum sanctorum,[2] non pontifex, sed esse electus et sic permanere cogitavit.[3] Et hæc abusio incepit primo in ipso, in hiis partibus occidentalibus. Obiit insuper episcopus Rofensis, circa festum sancti Michaelis. Et quia sanctus habebatur, procurante rege, sepultum est corpus ejus apud Westmonasterium. Eodem anno, iiii°. kalendas Junii, obiit Robertus de Lexintona, domini regis clericus et consiliarius specialis. Qui etiam in justiciariæ officio diu commorans, amplas sibi cumulavit possessiones, et regis thesauros ampliavit.

29 Sept. Deaths of the bishop of Rochester and Robert de Lexingtone.

Ibid. iii. 88.

Ibid. iii. 89.

Memorable events in the preceding half-century.

Completo igitur hoc anno, jam fluxerant[4] ex . . . . autem est, nec est leviter . . . . novitates, quod evenerunt in hac ultima quinquagena, videlicet vicesima quinta. Et sunt . . . quinquagenis tot prodigia et novitates admirandæ evenerunt, sicut in hac jam terminata. Et si [non][5] omnia, aliqua tamen huic libello duximus annectenda. In hac enim . . . et investigabilibus sedibus erumpentes, climata Orientalium tam . . . vastaverunt. Admiralius[6] Murmelinus, quem Miramumeli[7] vocant,[8] Affricanorum . . . incredulorum, fines Christianorum invadit; sed ipse cum universo exercitu suo victus retrocedit. Prædicante . . . apparuit toti populo manifeste . . . . Battacio, Græcorum potentissimo, scismatizante.[9] Damiata, civitas in introitu Ægypti opulentissima et munitissima atque famosissima . . . amissa. In Anglia pluries terræmotus, et pluries mare prodigaliter terminos suos consuetos transgrediens, finitimis inaudita dampna irrogavit. Anglia insuper

---

[1] *eadem*] eodem, MS.; eodem anno et die, *Flores Hist.*

[2] A word is wanting, probably *exemplum*. In the MS. *electus* was originally written, but afterwards partially erased. The Chetham MS. affords us no aid, as an erasure of five lines occurs here, made after the MS. came into the hands of the monks of Westminster. Cf. MS. Laud. 572, in Bodl. Library.

[3] *cogitavit*] cogitabit, MS., but the last two letters half erased.

[4] *fluxerant*] fluerant, MS.

[5] *non*] Omitted in MS.

[6] *Admiralius*] The initial letter has been left out in the MS.

[7] *Miramumeli*] At first written *Miramumelim*, but the final *m* erased and so copied in *Flores Hist.*

[8] *vocant*] vocat, MS.

[9] *scismatizante*] cismatizante, MS.

A.D. 1250.

Memorable events in the preceding half-century.

interdictum passa est per fere septennium;[1] et per tantundem temporis guerram intestinam toleravit. Tandemque per inertiam regis Johannes, tunc regnantis, facta est tributaria. Idem rex Johannes Normanniam et multas alias terras ultramarinas amisit; Angliam et Hiberniam Innocentio III. papæ jure tributario subjugavit. Facta est ecclesiæ conditio æqualis conditioni Judæorum, ut annuatim tallietur; et hoc per avaritiam papalis curiæ et regum inertiam.[2] Privilegia etiam sanctorum patrum Romanorum suo robore privantur et auctoritate,[3] per hanc adjectionem "Non obstante," non sine eorum injuria et contemptu. Prohibitum est judicium, quod fieri consuevit per ignem et aquam. Permissum est alicui personæ episcopatum habere et episcopum non esse, ut Athelmaro, fratri regis uterino, qui primus erat talis in episcopatu Wintoniensi.[4] Permissumque [est][5] alicui in episcopatum promoto, pristinos redditus retinere. Permissum est in Anglia jam quasi licite, ut habitent Christiani usurarii inter Christianos, papa protegente, cum sit usura in utroque Testamento condempnata; quos usurarios vulgus [Caursinos][6] appellat, et fol. 85 *a*. ipsi se mercatores papæ palam esse profitentur. Prohibitum est, ne quis ecclesiæ [rector][7] patri immediate succedat, sine papali dispensatione, vel illegitimus ad dignitatem promoveatur. Moneta per tonsuram corrupta renovatur. Electus est in dominum et tanquam regem Ludowicus, primogenitus Philippi, regis Francorum,[8] propter intolerabiles regis Johannis[9] oppressiones. Tandem idem Ludovicus, fidei transgressor et promissorum, mortuo læsore[10] rege Johanne, inglorius ad patrem remeavit. Otto et Frethericus, papæ rebelles imperatores, confunduntur; quibus prostratis, culmen emarcuit imperiale. Papa duos in apicem imperii promovere conabatur, sed antequam elevarentur, elisit eos Dominus, videlicet Andegravium[11] de Duringe, et Willelmum, comitem de Holandia. Willelmus tamen cœpit infra memoratam quinquagenam elevari, sed cito

---

[1] *septennium*] septennia, MS., but *a* erased.

[2] *Facta est . . inertiam*] Erased in the Chetham MS. of *Flores Hist.*

[3] *auctoritate*] auctorita, MS.

[4] *Permissum est . . Wintoniensi*] Erased in the Chetham MS.

[5] *est*] Supplied from the *Flores Hist.*

[6] *Caursinos*] Omitted also in *Flores Hist.*, but supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 90.

[7] *rector*] Supplied from the same.

[8] *Francorum*] Francꝰ, MS., and so MS. Arund. 96.

[9] *regis Johannis*] These words have been partially erased, but can still be deciphered, and are copied in *Flores Hist.*

[10] *læsore*] Omitted in *Flores Hist.*

[11] *Andegravium*] In the margin is the following note, "qui vocabatur Henricus Raspe," and so copied in the margin of the Chetham MS.

post periit interfectus. Captus est, et totus exercitus ejus dissipatus, rex Francorum Ludowicus, et multarum magnates regionum cum eo; et conventus Templi, Hospitalis, Theutonicorum et Sancti Lazari. Et civitas Jerusalem cum suis eccle- A.D. 1250. Memorable events in the preceding half-century.
Ibid. iii. 90. siis et locis sanctis Christi . . . . exterminata. Eclipsis . . . triennium. Terræmotus in Anglia pluries, et maris insolita dilatatio. Rex Angliæ J[ohannes], die sanctorum vii. Dormientium, 27 July. dupliciter victus, amotus fuit per Ludowicum ab obsidione Rupis-Monachorum violenter. Et imperator Otto, et omnes qui cum dicto rege J[ohanne] erant, ad pontem de Bovines victi
Ibid. iii. 91. fuerunt,[1] capti, vel per fugam elapsi. Concilium . . . ultimo, imperator Fretherícus excommunicatus et cassatus. Non procul a Janua, videlicet in mari, multi prælati capti sunt et nonnulli submersi. Wallia quoque . . . suis David et Griffino cito [morte][2] præventis, legibus . . . incurvatur. Wasconia per comitem Simonem edomatur; postea recalcitrans regi inclinatur, et a vendicatione regis Hispaniæ liberatur. Maxima pars Hispaniæ Christiano cultui restituitur per regem Castellæ strenuissimum; et nobilissimæ civitates, scilicet Corduba, Sibilla, et magna Valentia, et aliæ quamplures, et insulæ opulentissimæ dicto regi mancipantur, et fide Catholica feliciter illustrantur. Papa, velut exul et profugus, et ab urbe expulsus, fugit a civitate in civitatem, locis plurimis latitando, persequente Fretherico ipsum[3] Innocentium[4] IIII. Qui tandem Lugdunum veniens, ibi tutius latitavit. Iste tamen nullatenus flagellum Domini castigantis recognoscens,[5] ecclesiam plus gravabat quam antecessores ejus universi. Tres apostolici sederunt infra duos
Ibid. iii. 92. annos; vacavit . . . ix. menses. Suspenduntur . . . . scribit, ut eis provideatur. Multiplicantur diatim provisiones, et scribit papa, ut aliquibus provideatur in quantum duxerint acceptan-
Ibid. iii. 93. dum. Fratres Prædicatores . . . urgente obedientia, fiunt
fol. 85 *b*. domini papæ thelonarii, nuncii, et quasi legati, seduli pecuniæ papalis collectores, prædicando, crucesignando, et iterum, facto fine, resumendo;[5] infirmis,[6] morituris, et testamenta condituris assistendo, omnia ad commodum[8] domini papæ diligentes negotiatores multimodis armati potestatibus convertebant. Ordines multiplicantur in Anglia præter Ordines Prædicatorum

---

[1] *fuerunt*] fuerant, MS.

[2] *morte*] Omitted in the MS. and in *Flores Hist.*, but evidently required here.

[3] *persequente . . . ipsum*] On an erasure.

[4] *Innocentium*] Innocium, MS.

[5] *recognoscens*] recongnoscens, MS.

[6] *resumendo*] rusumendo, MS.

[7] *infirmis*] imfirmis, MS., and so again below.

[8] *commodum*] comodum, MS.

A.D. 1250.

Memorable events in the preceding half-century.

et Minorum, videlicet fratres de Monte Carmeli, fratres Cruciferorum, et quidam qui se appellant fratres de Ordine sancti Augustini, et multi alii. Item in Alemannia et Francia mulieres, quæ se Beguinas nominant. Multi sancti in Anglia florent, in Anglia vel de Anglia, beatus scilicet Edmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apud Pontiniacum jacens choruscat miraculis, ejusdemque frater, magister Robertus. Sanctus Robertus . . . Londoniensis Rogerus, ad cujus tumbam signa appenduntur quamplurima beneficiorum collatorum infirmis testimonialia. Item in Alemannia, sancta Elizabeth, Andegravia de Duringe, sanctus Augustinus in Norwegia, claris probatis et approbatis miraculis illustrantur. Et extra istam quinquagenam,[1] cito tamen post, apud Lincolniam, sanctus ejus civitatis episcopus Robertus II., examinatis miraculis, gloriose nimis honoratur. Unde in eadem ecclesia alii pristini sancti, scilicet sanctus Remigius et sanctus Hugo, quasi congaudentes et applaudentes novo confratri suo, sancto Roberto, licet non canonizato, sua Christi fidelibus beneficia miraculorum quasi certatim impenderunt, ut eorum testimonium canonizationi æquipolleret. Et non post multos dies quidam puer circiter [trium][2] annorum, quem Judæi circumciderunt, crucifixerunt, et post excogitata tormenta in cruce occiderunt, in ecclesia Lincolniensi sepultus, multis sanitatis suffragia dicitur contulisse, ita ut ecclesia Lincolniensis beatissima prædicaretur, et a peregrinaliter eam adeuntibus honoraretur. Ipse quoque Cicestrensis Ricardus adeo claruit miraculis, ut viderentur apostolorum tempora renovari. Reædificatur ecclesia Westmonasterialis sumptibus . . . Edwardi, de ejusdem regis thesauro fabricatur. Ibid. iii. 94. Vasa insuper carissima impretiabilia et admiratione digna, cum gemmis olosericis, campanis[3] præelectis, et novis libertatibus eidem domui a rege conferuntur; ædificavitque ibidem[4] dominus rex capitulum incomparabile.[5] Albigensium, Jovinianorum, Bugororum et aliorum errantium hæreses diligentia prædicatorum exsufflantur.[6] In Terra Sancta[7] pars Christianorum, Sarracenis ad votum sæpe triumphantibus, non mediocriter infirmatur; sed in Hispania jactura talis feliciter instauratur. Antiochia Turcis insurgentibus artatur, et usque ad civium vineas et agriculturas, et usque quandoque ad muros ab eisdem appetitur et impugnatur. Pascha hoc anno suo loco debito, scilicet vi°. kalendas Aprilis, evenit; quod nunquam ea die evenit, anno videlicet quinquagesimo. Omnia vero elementa, quod est notabile et significativum, hac ultima annorum quinquagena insolitum et irregulare detrimentum tolerarunt. Ignis, quia[1] fulgur temporibus hyemalibus frequenter reboavit, et terribiliter cecidit et emicuit, contra naturæ cursum consuetum. Aer, quia[1] pregnans, prænotato tonitru, fulgure et pluviarum inundatione, caligavit perturbatum. Aqua, quia[1] mare solitas metas transgrediens, et in mari, ubi profunditas esse consuevit, arida apparuit, loca contermina devastavit. Terra, quia[1] in Anglia, et etiam in Cilteria, terræmotus insolitus pluries perhorruit. Et in Sabaudia, civitatum, villarum, montium, castrorum, ecclesiarum, et multorum milium hominum absorptio[2] terribilis et inaudita. A.D. 1250. 27 March. fol. 86 *a.*

---

[1] *extra istam quinquagenam*] On an erasure, and written *quinquagimam.*

[2] *trium*] A blank space is left for this word in the MS., which is supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[3] *olosericis, campanis*] et sericis pannis, *Flores Hist.*

[4] *ibidem*] At first written *eisdem*, but erased and corr. in marg. Omitted in *Flores Hist.*

[5] *incomparabile*] imcomparabile, MS.

[6] *exsufflantur*] exuflantur, MS.

[7] *In Terra Sancta*] Interea sancta, *Flores Hist.*

Ibid. iii. 97.

Virginis a partu . . . .
. . . . terminus hic est.
Nec quinquagenis aliis tot digna[3] stupore,
Sicut in hac, vidit quis natus sive renatus.

Hic quoque proposuit frater Matheus Cronica sua terminare,[4] propter imminentia[5] quædam pericula. Si enim de potentibus vera dicantur et scripturæ commendentur,[6] bella parantur ei; si taceantur, vel bona pro malis annotentur, mutilabitur, et de blandimentis, adulationibus et falsitatibus graviter opus totale condempnabitur et redarguetur. Libellus iste auctori suo ager sterilis potest merito appellari. Nam sudor in cultura laboriosus, in colligendæ messis tempore, commoditatis[7] omnimodæ carentia, filix,[8] spinæ et tribuli, pro fructibus colliguntur. Et, "quid juvat in sterili spargere semen humo?" Sperandum tamen est, quod bona quæ homo non remunerat ingratus, Dei largitas plenius recompensabit. Bonum quippe est ad Dei laudem eventus rerum notabilium scribendo perpetuare, ut subsequentes legendo castigentur, mala quæ digna sunt ultione devitando, et bona[9] quæ Dominus plene remunerat operando. Dictus autem frater Matheus, dum in proposito fuisset historialem librum suum terminare, sic ait,

Proposed termination of the Chronicles of Matthew Paris.

---

[1] *quia*] quasi, *Flores Hist.*

[2] *absorptio*] absorcio, MS.

[3] *digna*] dingna, MS.

[4] *Hic . . terminare*] Written at first closer to the preceding verses, but afterwards erased, and rewritten lower down.

[5] *imminentia*] iminentia, MS.

[6] *commendentur*] comendentur, MS.

[7] *commoditatis*] comoditatis, MS.

[8] *filix*] filex, MS.

[9] *bona*] bo, MS.

A.D. 1251.

Ibid. iii. 97.

Terminantur hic . . .
. . . . cœli solio.
Siste tui . . . .
. . . . proferet ætas.

Henry at Winchester.

Thunder at Christmas.

The king collects gold coin.

The prisoners captured by the late emperor are sent to Sicily.

Discord between the Soldans of Aleppo and Babylon.

fol. 86 *b.*

Ransom paid for the king of France.

H. A. ii. 103.

The Jews forbidden to eat meat on a Friday, or in Lent.

M°.CC°.LI°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxv°., fuit ad Natale Domini Wintoniæ. Nocte autem Natalis Domini tonitrus est auditus et visa choruscatio.[1] Rex, quia speraverat in partes proficisci Orientalium peregrinus, ubi aurum cedit in monetam, aureos cœpit desiderare et colligere; ut qui negotia expedire in curia regis desideraret, aurum potius quam argentum ipsi regi largiretur. Mortuo, ut prædictum [est],[2] Fretherico, omnes captivos quos idem Fretherico in vinculis tenuerat, fecit filius[3] Conradus ad ulteriora terræ transferri, et ad Palermam vel alias Siciliæ civitates, ut securior esset de illis, transmitti. Aliqui tamen eorum concessi Henrico, filio imperatoris F[retherici], et nepoti regis Anglorum redimendi, vel aliter ad arbitrium suum tractandi. Diebus autem sub eisdem mota est discordia[4] inter Saracenorum potentissimos[5] Soldanos, sed maxime inter Alapensium et Babiloniorum Soldanos et magistratus. Indignabantur et invidebant, eo quod ipse Babiloniorum Soldanus acceperat in bello regem Francorum, Christianorum famosissimum ac potentissimum. Immo plus commovebantur, eo quod[6] ipsum jam redemptum[7] liberum abire permiserat, et jam tutus apud Achon cum Christianis commorabatur. Summa autem redemptionis[8] regis Francorum erat sexaginta milia librarum auri primi et purissimi, absque aliis denariis communibus, videlicet Esterlingis, Turonensibus et Parisiensibus, qui ad infinitum numerum ascenderunt. Numerus autem interfectorum sexaginta milia et viginti milia et amplius . . . reddiderunt, et illi apostatarunt, qui plus aliis nobis nocuerunt.[9] Prohibiti sunt Judæi per regem et regales, sub magna pœna, ne carnes comederent sexta feria, vel in Quadragesima. Odiosiores enim facti sunt regi Anglorum, quia improperatum fuit regi Francorum, quasi pro obprobio et redargutione, quod Christiani sustinent Judæos habitare inter se, qui Dominum eorum et Deum[10] tot lacessitum injuriis tandem crucifixerunt. Memfredus, filius F[retherici] imperatoris naturalis, respirans, insurgit contra papam. Nuchera civitas, in qua plusquam xxxª. milia Sarracenorum habitant, quam construxit F[rethericus] imperator, non destruitur, sed a Memfrido protegitur. Guido, frater regis, vocatus ut ditetur, venit in Angliam; aliis fratribus præditatis. Angli vilescunt et depauperantur, præcipue cives Londonienses. Prælati et viri religiosi, papa jubente et rege spoliante, in ultimam servitutem detruduntur. Papa venit Perusium vix. Rediit comes Legrecestriæ S[imon] de Wasconia, sed multiplicatis[1] viribus iterum remeavit. Hæc detestabilis adjectio, "Non obstante," enervat sanctorum scripta et facta. Cedit episcopus Dunelmensis Nicholaus; assignatur[2] ei proportio competens, videlicet Stoctona, Hovedene et Esentona.[3] Henricus de Bathonia,[4] miles et domini [regis][5] justiciarius,[6] graviter accusatus et diffamatus coram rege, vix mortem evadit. Comitissa Harundelliæ fundat unam ecclesiam sanctimonialium, non procul a Len, quæ Marham dicitur. Rumor increbuit in partibus occidentalibus, quod F[rethericus] imperator obierat die sanctæ Luciæ. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis canonicos Londonienses, eo quod eos visitare vellet cum maximo gravamine, potenter conatur confundere. Tandem visitavit, sed cum moderamine. Comes Legrecestriæ redit de Wasconia.[7] Obiit Willelmus de Cantelupo, regis consiliarius; succedit Willelmus, filius ejus. Wallia incurvatur legibus Angliæ. Confirmantur Wintoniensis et Rofensis electi. Papa recessit a Lugduno, venit sed vix Mediolanum. Obiit Paulinus Piper, regis dapifer et conciliarius. Obiit Gaufridus dispensator, miles strenuus. Mirabilis pestis oritur in Francia de quibusdam nebulonibus, videlicet pastoribus, ad xxx. milia multiplicatis; omnes tamen evanuerunt. Damiata civitas[8] a Sarracenis solo tenus complanatur. Papa novas condit Decretales. Æquinoctiali tempore mare metas suas longo spatio transgressum est. Regina Scociæ, scilicet relicta Alexandri, repatriat. Acceptis torneamentis, apparet odium et invidia inter alienigenas et Anglos, et formidabile suscipit incrementum.

---

[1] *choruscatio*] coruscacio, MS.

[2] *est*] Supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[3] *filius*] After this word is an erasure. In Edd. *filius illius.*

[4] *est discordia*] Repeated, by error, in the MS.

[5] *potentissimos*] potentissimo, MS.

[6] *eo quod*] eo quia, MS. and *Flores Hist.*

[7] *redemptum*] redeptum, MS.

[8] *redemptionis*] redepcionis, MS.

[9] *Summa autem . . . nocuerunt*] See, in regard to these paragraphs, the note in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 102.

[10] *eorum et Deum*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1251.

Frethicales recalcitrant.

Arrival of Guy, brother of the king.

The English laity and clergy are impoverished.

Return of the earl of Leicester.

The odious clause "Non obstante."

Accusation of Henry de Bath.

Nunnery of Marham founded.

Visitation of the canons of London.

Death of William de Cantelupe.

Subjection of Wales.

Deaths of notable personages.

The Pastoreaux in France.

Damietta destroyed.

Inundation of the sea.

Return of the queen of Scotland.

Mº.CCº.LIIº. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxviº., fuit idem rex[9] apud Eboracum; ubi Alexander, jam rex Scociæ,

Henry at York.

---

[1] *multiplicatis*] multiplatis, MS.

[2] *assignatur*] assignantur, MS.

[3] See previously under 1249, p. 305.

[4] *Bathonia*] Both', MS.

[5] *regis*] Supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[6] *justiciarius*] justiarius, MS.

[7] *Comes . . Wasconia*] A mere repetition of what has been stated shortly before, and omitted in *Flores Hist.*

[8] *civitas*] On an erasure.

[9] *idem rex*] These words are superfluous, but they occur also in *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1252.

Marriage of his daughter to the king of Scotland, and guardians appointed.

The earl of Leicester resigns the government of Gascony.

Beneficed persons compelled to take orders.

Success of Conrad against the pope.

Death of Robert Passelewe.

Peace made between the abbat of Westminster and his convent.

Death of king Alphonso.

Gascony given to prince Edward.

Deaths of notable persons.

Church of Ely dedicated.

Great council held at London.

The citizens taxed.

Geoffrey de Langeley appointed one of the guardians of the queen of Scots.

desponsavit filiam regis Angliæ Margaretam, ad Natale Domini, et rex Angliæ regem Scotorum baltheo ibidem donavit militari. Et rex Scociæ fecit homagium regi Anglorum. Committitur custodia regis Scotorum et reginæ ac regni Roberto de Ros et Johanni de Bailloil. Judæi graviter talliantur. Accusatus gravissime comes Legrecestriæ S[imon], resignat custodiam Wasconiæ regi. Ariditas iiii^or. mensibus maxima. Beneficiati in episcopatu Lincolniensi promoventur ad sacerdotium inviti. Conradus prosperatur in guerra contra papam, fol. 87 *a.* nec prosunt papæ rapinæ consuetæ. Obiit Robertus Passelewe, vetus aulicus et inveteratus, quo machinante, amiserat abbas Rameseiæ potissimam partem nundinarum sancti Yvonis. Multorum autem sicut et ejus pacem perturbaverat, et minuit possessionem De ipsius moribus non moralibus multa in hoc libro præscribuntur. Sopita est discordia, quæ fuerat [inter] [1] abbatem Westmonasterii et ejus conventum, rege procurante. Obiit victoriosissimus rex Hispaniæ Andefulsus. Dolet inde rex Angliæ, sed plus Blanchia. Confertur Wasconia Edwardo; nec fit mentio de comite, cui quondam fuerat concessa et incartata; et ipse in possessione constitutus. Æstus et ariditas maxima et diuturna in æstate. Factum est hastiludium, quod Tabula Rotunda vocatur; ubi periit strenuissimus miles Hernaldus de Munteynni. Obiit Willelmus de Haverhulle, clericus, regis thesaurarius. Ecclesia Elyensis nobiliter per episcopum Hugonem reparata, dedicatur. Obiit comitissa de Ripariis.[2] Margareta de Ripariis. Festo sancti Edwardi fuit magnum concilium Londoniis, ubi rex auxilium pecuniare postulavit. Episcopus autem Lincolniensis Robertus primo contradixit; postea alii animati per eum, restiterunt. Talliantur cives Londonienses, quos barones consuevimus appellare,[3] quasi servi ultimæ conditionis. Galfridus de Langeleia, qui miles [et] [4] justiciarius de foresta supra modum nobiles [5] boreales fictis de causis pro captura ferinæ depauperarat, deponitur a balliva, et unus de custodibus reginæ Scotorum constitutus, ibi [6] tantum tirannizavit, ut ipsius impetus nobiles Scociæ non poterant tolerare, et amoverunt eum. Ipse autem ad servitium Edwardi se transtulit, in quo servitio multos regi et Edwardo, sicut dicetur in sequentibus, suscitavit inimicos. Hunc nutrierat et exaltaverat Robertus Passelewe, sed postea, more cuculi, nutritus nutrientem supplantavit. Eodemque anno

---

[1] *inter*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 121.

[2] *de Ripariis*] In *Hist. Angl.* the reading is *de Insula*, and so in the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 848. These words are omitted in *Flores Historiarum*, as superfluous.

[3] *appellare*] apellare, MS.

[4] *et*] Supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[5] *nobiles*] nobile, MS.

[6] *ibi*] et ibi, MS.

A.D. 1252.

venit magister Albertus, domini papæ clericus specialis et notarius, offerre comiti Ricardo regnum Apuliæ. Sed cum comes exigisset securitatem, videlicet quædam castra domini papæ et obsides, ut esset in possessione et aliqua saltem securitate de papali promisso, respondit Albertus se papam super hoc convenire. Albertus interim multa sibi beneficia adquisivit,[1] quibus adquisitis, transalpinavit. Et audita dominus papa comitis responsione, noluit aliquod[2] propositum continuare de præmissis. Eodem tempore venit in Angliam archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onifacius], cujus adventus paucos prælatos et multo pauciores laicos, quod inviti dicimus, lætificavit. Ortum est grave scandalum et discordia hostilis inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et electum Wintoniensem, eo quod electus officialem archiepiscopi, magistrum videlicet Eustachium, fecit capi violenter in ecclesia de Lamhet, cum quodam capellano, et indecenter nimis tractari et abduci. Vigilanter igitur procurantibus rege pro fratre suo Æ[thelmaro], et regina pro avunculo suo archiepiscopo, vix tandem tanta est sedata perturbatio. Eodemque anno, prima Dominica Adventus Domini, obiit dominarum domina secularium Blanchia, post multas quas pro filiis suis sustinuerat tribulationes. Johannes Mansel, domini regis clericus et consiliarius specialis, industria sua promerente, ad inæstimabiles redditus provehitur et possessiones. Ipso quoque anno episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus fecit diligenter computari alienorum redditus in Anglia, per istum papam, videlicet Innocentium IIII. promotorum; et inventum est, quod[3] nunquam aliquis prædecessorum suorum in triplo aliquos sui generis vel patriæ tot ditaverit. Temporibus quoque sub eisdem permisit rex astute nimis viros religiosos affligi a nobilibus viris, qui canibus venaticis utebantur, eorum vicinis, adeo ut eorum libertates enervarentur, et culturæ conculcarentur.[4]

Offer of the kingdom of Apulia to earl Richard.

Return of the abp. of Canterbury.

Quarrel between him and the bp. elect of Winchester.

1 Dec. Death of queen Blanche of France.

Wealth of John Mansel.

Estimate made of the benefices bestowed on foreigners.

The clergy oppressed by the nobles.

fol. 87 *b.*

Facta magnatum et casus varii breviter compositi de anno isto, scilicet M°.CC°.LIII°.

M°.CC°.LIII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxvii°., fuit in Natali Domini apud Wyntoniam; cui, juxta ritum tantæ solempnitatis, cives fecerunt Wyntonienses xenium nobilissimum. Quos idem rex nuper obligaverat ad ducentas marcas

Henry at Winchester.

---

[1] *adquisivit*] adquisit, MS.

[2] *aliquod*] On an erasure.

[3] *et . . quod*] Interlined.

[4] Here ends the handwriting of Matthew Paris; and the Continuation is written by the same contemporary hand which has completed the *Historia Anglorum.* See Preface, vol. i. p. li.

A.D. 1253.

The king promises to observe the ancient charters, and receives an aid from the clergy.

Peter, Friar Preacher of Milan, canonized.

Brancaleo, senator of Rome.

The Jews expelled from France.

Death of the abbat of St. Augustine.

Marriage of the king's niece.

Gascony claimed by the king of Spain.

The earl of Leicester retires to France.

eidem in brevi persolvendas. Quod quidem festum non modicum obscuraverat discordia præmota inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et electum Wyntoniensem, regem tunc procurantem, pro injuria quadam magistro Eustachio de Len, officiali suo, facta per eundem electum, et ob hoc excommunicationis sententia innodatum. Quam tamen commotionem, rege et regina procurantibus, in brevi commutaverunt in pacem. Convocati tunc temporis in præsentia regis prælati Angliæ, et instanter petentes cartas suorum custodiri prædecessorum, regis super hoc quamcitius optinuerunt assensum; et, data super hoc sententia, candelis accensis, hoc manifestarunt in publicum. Unde gratanter annuerunt contributionem, quam ab eis rex petierat, non modicam. Frater quidam de Ordine Prædicatorum, Petrus nomine, a Mediolanensibus, pro assertione veritatis et fidei defensione, eorum vitia, errores et hæreses redarguens, latenter interemptus est. Quem dominus papa A[lexander] miraculorum indiciis manifestatum, martirem duxit magnifice canonizandum. Civis quidam Bononiensis, Brancaleo nomine, creatus est in senatorem Romanum. Qui, potestate suscepta, justitiam in omnibus terribilem exercuit, et, suspensis malefactoribus, commissam sibi urbem et populum laudabiliter gubernavit. Judæi non pauci effugantur a Francia, transmisso super hoc a Terra Sancta regis Francorum mandato. Improperabant enim eidem Sarraceni, quod injuste eos Christiani impugnant, cum falsos Judæos, Christi sui peremptores, inter se degere permittant; justum enim esset eos prius ejicere,[1] et postea ad alios sibi rebelles festinare. Obiit abbas Sancti Augustini,[2] et eorum præcentor eidem eligitur subrogari. Comitis vero Gloverniæ Ricardi filius primogenitus desponsavit neptem regis Angliæ, filiam scilicet Guidonis, comitis Engolismi, de Pictavia oriundam, ætate puerilem[3] immo infantulam, procurante hoc rege, et pro maritagio usque ad $\text{v}^{\text{que.}}$ $\overline{\text{M}}$. marcarum regaliter largiente. Comes Legrecestriæ S[imon] resignavit custodiam Wasconiæ, et eam sibi proposuit rex Hispaniæ vendicare, habens de donatione ejus antiquam cartam regis H[enrici] II. sufficientem, ac regum Ricardi et Johannis confirmationem. Hoc cum audisset rex, vehementer doluit prædictum comitem S[imonem] ab hujusmodi custodia summotum, quippe quia vir potens est et martius, sapiens, et defensor tutissimus, eumque studuit admonere restituendum;[4] unde comes clam secessit in Fran-

---

[1] *ejicere*] eicere, MS.

[2] Robert de Battel. In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed.

[3] *puerilem*] puerulam, *Flores Hist.*; parvulam, MS. Arund. 96.

[4] *admonere restituendum*] admotum restituere, *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1253.

ciam, onus hujus declinans iterum resumendum. Quem Franci non modice affectabant senescallum Franciæ habere, sed minime valuerunt eum ad consensum inflectere. Comes Gloverniæ Ricardus et Willelmus de Valencia transfretarunt,[1] principaliter ut matrimonium prædictum ad effectum perducerent, secundario, ut in quodam hastiludio tunc temporis acclamato[2] trans mare, se suasque vires et audaciam, et equorum suorum ausu probarent temerario celeritatem. Qui prostrati, spoliati et baculati, fomentis et balneis indiguerunt diuturnis. Tunc temporis, quarta die visa est luna, antequam esset pronunciata.[3] Juvenes Londonienses, statuto pavone pro bravio, ad quintenam vires suas et equorum cursus sunt experti. Quidam autem tirones de familia regis super hoc indignantes, conviciabantur eisdem, eis se in certamine opponentes; quos ipsi Londonienses cum fragmentis[4] hastarum rubricatos[5] et liventes[6] ab equis suis dederunt præcipites, et fugaverunt fugientes. Querelis igitur super hoc regi multiplicatis, rex ad solitam se convertens ultionem, magnam a Lundonensibus petivit pecuniam. Post paucos dies auditum est, quod Regula in Wasconia, cum Sancto Milione et multa alia castra capta sunt et amissa, et strages hominum est non minima. Rex igitur non mediocriter formidans, ne per tales amissiones tota Wasconia pateret discrimini, constituit, ut missis brevibus per singulos comitatus clamaretur, ut cujuslibet arma debita et consueta censerentur, et, si sufficientia essent, monstrarentur, ut scilicet, si necesse incumberet, quilibet ad prœliandum paratus existeret; præterea,[7] ut quicunque xv. libratas terræ haberet, miles fieret.[8] Similiter, ut excubantes . . . . custodirent. Providit insuper, ut si quis a latrone vel ab aliis obiter dampnificaretur . . . satisfacerent,[9] et malefactores insequentes, ab eisdem patriam mundarent. Quæ quia sine communi barnagii assensu provisa sunt, constitui generaliter minime valuerunt. Obiit magister Ricardus de Wiz, episcopus Cicestrensis,[10] iiii°. nonas Aprilis, vir . . . sanctitatis, et quandoque beati Edmundi . . . specialis. Hujus autem Ricardi assertionibus et fratris Roberti Bacun, de

fol. 88 *a*.

H. A. iii. 134.

H. A. iii. 135.

The earl of Gloucester and Will. de Valence are worsted in a tournament.

The citizens of London fined, on account of indignities offered to the royal household.

Affairs in Gascony.

Writs issued for a return of persons capable of bearing arms.

2 April. Death of the bp. of Chichester.

---

[1] *transfretarunt*] transfetarunt, MS.

[2] *acclamato*] acclamatum, MS.

[3] *pronunciata*] prima pronunciata, *Flores Hist.*

[4] *fragmentis*] fracmentis, MS.

[5] *rubricatos*] Originally written *rubricantes*, and so in *Flores Hist.*

[6] *liventes*] laniantes, *Flores Hist.*

[7] *præterea*] videret præterea, *Flores Hist.*

[8] *fieret*] efficeretur, *Flores Hist.*

[9] *satisfacerent*] sat'facerent, MS.

[10] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed.

A.D. 1253.

The Life of St. Edmund written by Matthew Paris.

Ordine Prædicatorum, certificatus frater Matheus Parisiensis, memorati sancti Edmundi vitam a fidedignis sibi relatam diligenter perscripsit.

Disturbances in Gascony.

Post recessum comitis S[imonis] de Wasconia, cœperuut Wasconenses bella ad invicem movere, alter alterius castra invadere, homines captivare, ædificia in favillas redigere. Ex quibus primus fuit Gasto, dominus Biarre et Peregoti, qui se transtulit ad regem Hispaniæ, ut inde plus regem Angliæ infestaret. Et sic hostes regis in Wasconia animavit, ita ut Burdegalis, quæ toti Wasconiæ victualia consuevit ministrare, cœpit egere.

Privileges granted to Waltham abbey.

Dominus rex concessit ecclesiæ de Wautham, et confirmavit, ut quotiescunque domum illam contigerit vacare, conventus tam de baronia quam de possessionibus ecclesiæ liberam habeat pro voluntate sua disponendi facultatem. Duo insuper mercata et alia bona eidem contulit, et super hiis cartam suam, licet prius optentam, iterum confecit.

The pope returns to Rome.

Cum ecclesia Romana sui præsulis et pastoris diutius viduaretur præsentia, rogatus est dominus papa solempniter a Romanis ut Romam rediret, gregem suum more pastoris minaturus.[1] Qui tamen retardans, iterum vocatus est et solempnius, hoc adjuncto, ut scilicet tunc veniret aut nunquam. Quo audito, dominus papa de mora timens trahere periculum, a Perusio recedens, Romam usque properavit. Et licet in multa tenebatur pecunia eisdem, quam pro eo contra Frethericum expenderant, gaudenter tamen et reverenter ab omnibus susceptus est.

Parliament assembled, and the observance of the charters and liberties demanded.

In quindena Paschæ, adunato magno parlamento, petierunt prælati fere omnes insimul congregati, ut dominus rex cartas conservans et libertates, quas sæpius promiserat, sanctam insuper ecclesiam permitteret suis gaudere libertatibus, maxime de electionibus prælatorum tam cathedralium ecclesiarum quam conventualium. Quæ omnia rex se indempniter observaturum protestans, eorumdem una cum aliis magnatibus, ad suæ præcipue peregrinationis subsidium, postulatum de contributione reportavit assensum.

Grant of a tenth, and scutage.

Concessa est igitur regi decima pars proventuum ecclesiasticorum per triennium. A militibus vero scutagium illo anno, scilicet ad scutum tres marcæ. Rex autem bona fide promisit se omnia inviolabiliter observaturum, quæ et alias multotiens juraverat, et pater suus Johannes primo affirmabat. Et ut certiores fierent de promisso, præcepit super hoc in præsentia sua sententiam proferri in publico.[2] Quod et factum est, hoc modo.

---

[1] *minaturus*] gubernaturus, *Flores Hist.*

[2] *publico*] publicum, *Hist. Angl.* and *Flores*

A.D. 1253.

Magnates tunc præsentes.[1]

H. A. iii. 137. Tertio igitur die Maii, in majori aula . . . . tulimus, sub hac forma:

Forma sententiæ tunc prolatæ.

fol. 88 *b*. H. A. iii. 137, 138. Auctoritate Dei omnipotentis . . . . præsentibus duximus apponenda.

Quo facto, prolata fuit in medium carta patris sui J[ohannis], in qua iterum concessit idem J[ohannes] rex, mera voluntate; unde recitari fecerunt libertates prædictas. Dum autem rex memoratam sententiam audisset, tenuit manum suam ad pectus suum sereno vultu et voluntario; et in fine, projectis candelis et fumigantibus, dixerunt singuli, "Sic extinguantur[2] et fœteant in inferno omnes hujus sententiæ incursores." Et respondit rex cum omnibus astantibus, "Amen! Amen!" Episcopus autem Lincolniensis Robertus, hujus rei suspicans instabilitatem, fecit ilico per totam diocesim Lincolniensem memoratam renovari sententiam. Tunc temporis Burdegalenses significarunt regi, quod nisi festinanter . . . amissurus; addentes, quod per tirannidem . . . perdidisset. Quod falsum est, quia multo[3] plures rebelles et fortiores edomitos regis subdiderat dominationi. Fecit igitur rex acclamari voce præconia in Wasconia, quod . . . obediret; addens, quod propter oppressiones et querelas eorum deposuit prædictum comitem, et cartam, quam de optinenda Wasconia per triennium sequens præfecerat eidem, pretio redemit. Quæ Wasconibus quamplurimum placuerant, volentibus ex quo sciebant ejus dominationem expirasse, se regi inimicos facilius exhibere. Ernaldus de Bosco miles constitutus est prothoforestarius, loco Roberti Passelewe,[4] scilicet in partibus australibus Angliæ, usque ad fluvium qui dicitur Trenta; Johannes vero de Lexintona miles, a dicto flumine usque ad regnum Scociæ, loco Galfridi de Langeleia. Miracula manifesta celebrantur ad tumbam Ricardi, episcopi Cicestrensis, cujus corpus exanimatum inventum . . . constrictum. Eligitur magister Johannes Clippinge in episcopum Cicestrensem, ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicus. Emanarunt apostolica mandata per circuitum, ut quilibet episcopus, tam transmarinus quam cismarinus, districte visitaret monachos omnes, tam exemptos

Behaviour of the king when the sentence of excommunication was pronounced. The bp. of Lincoln causes it to be read in his diocese.

H. A. iii. 139.

Ibid. iii. 138.

Ernald de Bosco and John de Lexintone made Grand-Foresters. Miracles at the tomb of Richard, bishop of Chichester. Election of John Clippinge as bp. Papal mandate for the

Ibid. iii. 139.

---

[1] *Magnates . . . præsentes*] Instead of these words, in *Flores Hist.* the following rubric is inserted: *Sententia excommunicationis lata contra transgressores libertatis ecclesiæ.*

[2] *extinguantur*] extingantur, MS.

[3] *multo*] multotiens, *Flores Hist.*

[4] *Passelewe*] Passeue, MS.

A.D. 1253. visitation of the Benedictine monasteries.

quam non exemptos, in sua diocesi constitutos, et eosdem compelleret ad quosdam articulos observandos, qui nec regulæ sancti Benedicti pertinent, nec de ejus substantia existunt. Unde Franciæ monachi pacem sibi cogitantes prævidere, datis iiii. milibus librarum Turonensium domino papæ, hujusmodi impetum compescuerunt. Abbas similiter Sancti Albani, cum ceteris paribus suis et eorum conventibus, ad præsentiam domini papæ appellarunt quamcitius.

Summons issued to the military retainers, to embark for Gascony.

Circa kalendas Junii, rex certificatus de desolatione Wasconiæ, milites omnes per Angliam sibi servitium militare debentes fecit summoneri, ut in octavis Trinitatis parati essent apud Portesmue, in Wasconiam cum rege transfretaturi, et eam ad dominium suum et pacem potenter revocaturi. Captis interim usque ad mille navibus, earum custodes vento carentes per tres ibi menses moram protraxerunt, et rex, thesauro pro magna parte jam consumpto, a proposito est præpeditus, ita quod transitus ille Dei videretur favore destitutus.

Death of the bp. of Llandaff. Marriage of Roger Bigod to the daughter of the king of Scotland. The king, embarks, and lands at Bordeaux.

Obiit episcopus Landavensis Willelmus, cujus obitum cæcitas septennis subarravit. Comes Rogerus Bigot, marescallus Angliæ, filiam regis Scociæ, quam antea spreverat, judicio ecclesiæ salubriter eruditus, ad matri- fol. 89 *a.* monium libens accedens et tutus, reaccepit in uxorem. Rex autem, vento diu desiderato sibi prosperante, viij°. idus Augusti valedicens Angliæ, Neptuno se commisit, constitutis regni sui[1] custodibus Ricardo comite, fratre suo,[2] et regina; commisso eorum custodiæ Edwardo primogenito suo. Circa Assumptionem vero beatæ Mariæ applicuit rex in Wasconiam, apud Burdegalim. Occurrentes autem cives ipsum, ut decuit, reverenter susceperunt. Jussit igitur ilico . . . . confugiente, H. A. iii. 140. cujus se fecerat amicum, et Wasconiæ, eum, ut dicebat, contingentis, eidem promisit dominium.

The French send forces to Poitou.

Audientes Franci quod rex Angliæ in Wasconiam adventasset, timentesque Pictavenses transfugium facere ad regem Angliæ, dominum eorum frugalem, manum illuc militarem destinaverunt, non permittentes eos habere custodiam vel dominium castrorum vel civitatum. Et sic, licet inviti, fideles effecti, nec Francis nocuerunt, nec Anglis prodesse potuerunt.

Death of Thomas of Hertford, archdeacon of Northumberland.

Obiit Thomas de Hertfordia, archidiaconus Northamhumbriæ,[3] in octavis sancti Laurentii, fine sancto et beato. Hic quandoque beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, discipulus in scola, et socius extitit familiaris; unde factus ei usque ad mortem simillimus,[4] sicut et magister Ricardus, postea factus episcopus Cicestrensis, ejusdem sequi nitebatur vestigia. Hic quia pauperum fuerat amator, cuidam pauperrimæ domui fratrum, scilicet de Monte Carmeli, corpus suum delegavit. Hunc sanctum archidiaconum Thomam, sicut et episcopum Cicestrensem Ricardum, licet non Romæ canonizentur, sancti Edmundi contubernio credimus indubitanter sociari. Hos igitur tres beatos, Edmundum, Ricardum et Thomam, Dei confessores, Anglia in præsenti produxit gloriosos. Miles quidam de electioribus regis Francorum, existentis tunc in Terra Sancta, non mediocriter accensus de filio suo, milite strenuissimo, quem idem rex, ipso nesciente, fecit suspendi pro transgressione quadam, de quo etiam idem rex fideliter promisit patri suo præbere remedium, cuidam se Soldano, Christianis derelictis, transtulit, et de amico factus est eis inimicus, et paganis additus factus est apostata formidabilis. Cum dominus papa Innocentius IIII. significasset per apostolica scripta episcopo Lincolniensi Roberto, sicut et multis aliis pluries fecerat, præcipiens ut aliquid faceret, quod eidem episcopo videbatur injustum et rationi dissonum, rescripsit idem episcopus domino papæ in hæc verba:

---

[1] *sui*] su, MS.

[2] *suo*] sue, MS.

[3] *Northamhumbriæ*] Northambrie, MS.

[4] *simillimus*] similimus, MS.

A.D. 1253.

Story of a French knight, who deserted to the Soldan.

Letter of Robert, bp. of Lincoln, to the pope, refusing to comply with the papal requisitions.

Litteræ episcopi Lincolniensis Roberti missæ Innocentio papæ.

H. A. iii. 140–144. fol. 89 *b*.

Salutem. Noverit discretio vestra . . . .
. . . . qui est in cœlis."

Cum hæc epistola ad notitiam papalem pervenisset, ipse dominus papa valde commotus, ipsum proposuit mittentem in tantam præcipitare confusionem, ut toti mundo foret stupor et tremoris exemplum. Tandem tamen consilio saniori emollitus, sub dissimulatione permisit transire, ne majorem videretur super hoc tumultum excitare. In vigilia Assumptionis obiit venerabilis vir Ranulphus, abbas Rameseiæ, domum suum et gregem tam in spiritualibus quam temporalibus relinquens abundantem. Rex nuncios suos solempnes destinavit ad regem Hispaniæ, scilicet episcopum Bathoniensem et Johannem Mansel, clericum suum specialem, postulans sororem suam Edwardo, filio suo primogenito et heredi regni Angliæ legitimo matrimonialiter copulari; et ut ipse rex eundem E[dwardum] cingulo donaret militari. Episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus ægritudinis lecto detentus, in spiritu cognoscens tribulationes ecclesiæ in proximo imminere, recitansque coram clericis suis quædam facta Romanæ curiæ, graviter redarguit tam fratres Prædicatores quam Minores, dicens quod eorum Ordo ideo in

Wrath of the pope, on the receipt of the letter.

14 Aug. Death of the abbat of Ramsey.

The sister of the king of Spain demanded in marriage for prince Edward.

The bp. of Lincoln on his deathbed throws blame on

A.D. 1253.
the Mendicant Orders.

paupertate voluntaria, id est, spiritus constituitur, ut liberius magnatum error ab eisdem reprehendatur. Quia,

"Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator."[1]

In hoc autem, quod ipsi peccata magnatum audacter non redarguunt, eosdem hæreticos dixit manifestos.

H. A. iii. 145.

Diffinitio hæresis extracta a Græco.

Et addidit, "Hæresis est sententia . . . . . electio est Latine.

Ibid. iii. 146.

Dare autem curam . . . . . sigillata vel bullata. Et est pertinaciter . . . . . fautor esse erroris, secundum . . . obviare."

fol. 90 *a*.

Cum hæc et alia multa lugubria querula voce de statu ecclesiæ proposuisset episcopus memoratus, ab hujus mundi exilio, quem semper exosum habuit, in nocte sancti Dionisii apud Bugedene, manerium suum, feliciter migravit.[2]

9 Oct.
Miraculous signs attending his death.

In eadem vero nocte, ut dicitur, episcopus Londoniensis Fulco, cum esset prope illud manerium, audivit signum dulcissimum in sullimi pulsari. Fratres etiam quidam Minores versus illum locum properantes, illius mortis ignari, classicum melicum in sullimi audierunt campanarum, inter quas unum signum dulcissimum articulatim audierunt præelectum. Tandem vero cognoverunt utrique illam visionis seu auditionis horam extitisse, in qua idem sanctus episcopus feliciter migravit a corpore.

Death of William de Vescy.

Obiit Willelmus de Wescy, miles quidam de nobilioribus baronibus borealium partium Angliæ, rege tunc in Wasconia existente, et eandem custodiam alienigenæ cuidam committente.

Dispute between the abp. of Canterbury and canons of Lincoln.

Defuncto, ut prædictum est, episcopo Lincolniensi Roberto, orta est discordia inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et canonicos Lincolnienses.

Ibid. iii. 147.

Vendicabat . . . in eodem episcopatu tunc vacante. Canonici vero cum multis clericis, jus hujusmodi non ignorantibus, contradixerunt; unde . . .

Ibid. iii. 148.

excommunicavit. Sed magister Willelmus Lupus ei in faciem contradicens, pro omnibus ad sedem apostolicam appellavit.

25 Nov.
Birth of the princess Katherine.

Alienora, regina Angliæ, peperit filiam Londoniis, die sanctæ Katerinæ; quæ ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi baptizata, a die nativitatis suæ nomen sortita est Katerina.

Quarrel between the University of Paris and the Friars Preachers.

Parisius orta est discordia sumptuosa inter scolares et fratres Prædicatores. Noluerunt enim ipsi fratres approbatis consuetudinibus et juribus universitatis subjacere, sed pro voluntate propria regere et cessare, aliaque communitati contraria perpetrare. Unde utrobique Roma petita, consumpta pecunia et labore, vix est pax reformata. In ecclesia vero Lincolniensi cumulantur diatim miracula miraculis. Operante enim Domino pro præ-

---

[1] Juv. Sat. x. 22.

[2] A mitre and crosier reversed are drawn in the margin.

A.D. 1253.

Religious zeal of Robert, bp. of Lincoln.

Miracles at his tomb.

dicto sancto Roberto . . . . ad beneficia fidelibus impendenda suscitantur. Hic vero Robertus, bonum habens zelum ad Deum et proximum, licet canonicos suos multum vexaverit, et in religiosos terribiliter, religiosas vero terribilius fulguraverit, confidenter tamen dico . . . excessus. Quod nunc per miracula ad tumbam ejus manifestatur choruscantia.[1] Ibid. iii. 149.

Incipit annus gratiæ M^{us}.CC^{us}.LIIII^{us}. *qui est annus regni regis Henrici Tertii* XXXVIII^{us}.

Henry at Bazas, and distributes gifts to the Gascons.

Henry de Lexingtone elected bp. of Lincoln.

The queen and prince Edward are sent for by the king.

Arrival of some converted Saracens in France.

M^{o}.CC^{o}.LIIII^{o}. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xxxviii^{o}., fuit ad Natale Domini in Wasconia, apud Besaceam; ubi Wasconensibus, in vestibus duplicibus et aliis rebus desiderabilibus, pretiosa contulit donativa. Regina autem surgens a puerperio, domino suo regi de suis redditibus quingentas marcas transmisit. In crastino vero beati Thomæ martiris, Lincolnienses canonici elegerunt sibi in episcopum magistrum Henricum de Lexintona, ejusdem ecclesiæ decanum. Qui transfretans, ut regi præsentaretur, coram eo formidabat apparere, quia ipsum et totum capitulum rex precibus sollicitaverat ut episcopum Herefordensem eligerent, quod tamen omnes renuebant; verumtamen rex non inveniens in dicto electo causam reprobationis, ipsum admisit. Circa idem tempus vocaverat rex reginam et primogenitum suum et heredem Edwardum, ut ad eum venire quamtocius non omittant, ut ad effectum duceretur, quod prælocutum est de matrimonio inter ipsum et regem Hispaniæ contrahendo. Venerunt in Franciam quidam Sarraceni ad fidem Christi conversi, quorum quidam erant baptizati, quidam vero baptizandi. Et hoc fuit eorum causa conversionis. Viderant enim quondam regem miraculose a manibus potentissimi Babiloniæ Soldani liberatum, maximam insuper regis in adversitate patientiam, in proposito inflexibilem constantiam, et quod, post captionem suam, moram continuavit, castra firmavit, civitates contra Dei sui hostes communivit; quod pro amore Dei sui regnum suum deseruerit, se maris, bellorum et alienorum regnorum periculis expositurus, pro animabus infidelium fol. 90 *b*. lucrandis laboravit. Orthodoxorum insuper informatione didicerant, quod Machometi lex spurcissima animarum est intoxicativa. Attulerant autem regis Francorum litteras patentes, ut de elemosinis regis sustentarentur, donec ipse veniret in proprias partes, eis plenius provisurus. In Septuagesima vero

8 Feb.

---

[1] With this year ends the text of the *Historia Anglorum*.

A.D. 1254. Some ships come to Berwick, from an unknown country.

applicuerunt naves quædam barbarorum, rabie ventorum agitatæ, magnæ quidem et elegantes, quibus non sunt visæ penes nos consimiles, armamentis navalibus et bellicis, victualibusque omnimodis communitæ. Et appulsæ sunt non longe a Berewico. Et cum interrogarentur, quinam essent? noluerunt vel forte nescierunt intelligibiliter intimare, qui, cur, unde, vel qualiter advenissent. Nec linguam eorum aliquis ex ballivis intellexit, unde permissæ sunt in pace recedere. Visæ sunt etiam aliæ tales naves supra mare.

Attempt of Gaston of Bearn to occupy Bayonne.

Gasto de Biarre, congregata hostium regis multitudine, temere attemptavit civitatem Baoniæ seditiose et hostiliter intrare, eamque sibi occupare. Est autem Baonia [civitas][1] sita supra mare, secunda in tota Wasconia. Sed plerique de civibus quosdam admittentes de hostibus regis, quia et ipsi eum oderant, comprehensi sunt per regis fideles, et cum aliis proditoribus puniti.

Death of John Hansard. Murrain among the flocks and game.

Johannes Hansard, non ultimus inter partium aquilonarium optimates, obiit in expeditione, funere geneali.[2] Cessante autem frigoris asperitate, quæ fere tota illa hyeme inhorruerat continuata, tanta ovium et ferarum pestis sequebatur mortifera, ut ovilia ovibus, forestæ feris vacuarentur. In copiosis autem gregibus vix pars dimidia remaneret.

Letter of pope Innocent IV. against the study of secular law and science.

Dominus papa considerans liberales artes jam in mechanicas[3] fuisse pæne conversas propter lucrum, adolescentesque ætate et scientia satis simplices cathedras ascendere indigne magistrales, ut elevati tumeant, et facti venerabiliores sine fundamento ad culmina scandant celsiora, scripsit elegantem super hoc epistolam ad omnes prælatos in regnis Franciæ, Angliæ, Scociæ, Walliæ, Hispaniæ, et Hungariæ constitutos, salubre providens consilium et conveniens[4] contra hujusmodi indiscretam præsumptionem. Quam alibi sedulus poterit indagator reperire.[5]

Robert, bp. of Lincoln, appears to pope Innocent in a vision.

Cogitante papa Innocentio, ut generaliter dicitur, ossa episcopi Lincolniensis Roberti extra ecclesiam projicere,[6] nocte sequenti apparuit ei idem episcopus, ut dicitur, pontificalibus redimitus, vultuque severo et intuitu austero ac voce terribili ipsum papam affatur, pungens ipsum in latere cuspide baculi pastoalis. Et dixit, "Senebalde papa, proposuistine ossa mea, in

---

[1] *civitas*] Supplied from the Greater Chronicle, p. 882.

[2] *geneali*] So also in the Greater Chronicle, and *Flores Hist.*, but corrected by the editors to *generali*, and so reads MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII.

[3] *mechanicas*] mecanicas, MS.

[4] *conveniens*] cōnue, MS.

[5] This letter is printed by Wats, p. 190, from the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 123].

[6] *projicere*] proicere, MS., here and further on.

A.D. 1254.

mei et ecclesiæ Lincolniensis opprobrium, extra ecclesiam projicere? Unde hæc tibi temeritas? Nullam potestatem in me habere te Dominus amodo patietur. Scripsi tibi in spiritu humilitatis, ut errores tuos corriges, sed tu monita salubria contempsisti. Væ qui spernis, nonne et tu sperneris?" Et sic recedens, ipsum papam quasi lancea transverberatum dereliquit, cum suspiriis ingemiscentem. Quinto kalendas Aprilis confirmatus est electus Lincolniensis, videlicet dominus Henricus de Lexintona, decanus ejusdem, ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi B[onefacio]. Mense autem sub eodem, videlicet iii°. idus Maii,[1] obiit episcopus Karleolensis Silvester,[2] supinus corruens de equo, et ossium dissolutis compagibus expirans. Eodem tempore, scilicet ix°. kalendas Aprilis, obiit comes de Ferrariis Willelmus, filius Willelmi,[3] vir discretus, et legum terræ peritus. Hic in carpento vel lectica vehi solebat, et dum quadam die vehiculum suum super quendam pontem, scilicet apud Sanctum Neotum, caderet evolutum, ipse, contritis membris, ad mortem tendebat velocius. Anno eodem confectum est crisma in ecclesia Sancti Albani a venerabili episcopo Bangorensi Ricardo. Commissum est tunc temporis bellum cruentissimum in confinio Flandriæ et Brabanciæ inter Francos et Flandrenses, ex una parte, et comitissam Flandriæ et ejus complices, videlicet Willelmum de Hoilande, regem Alemanniæ, et multos alios magnates Braibanciæ et Alemanniæ ex altera; pro duobus filiis dictæ comitissæ de viris duobus progenitis. In quo certamine lamentabili ceciderunt bellatores strenuissimi, ita ut de una civitate Flandriæ jacerunt ad decem milia interempti. Tandem cessit victoria Willelmo de Hoilande, regi memorato, et Alemannis. Franci autem victi, vulnerati, et pro majori parte trucidati, deteriorem calculum subierunt. In abissum igitur desperationis et desolationis Franci præcipitati, significabant domino regi Francorum, in partibus adhuc transmarinis commoranti post redemptionem suam, ut ad propria quamtocius redire properaret.

28 March. Confirmation of the bp. elect of Lincoln.

Deaths of the bp. of Carlisle, and of the earl of Ferrers.

Chrism made at St. Alban's by the bp. of Bangor.

Great battle in Flanders.

The French send to Louis to return quickly

---

[1] *iii. idus Maii*] So also the Greater Chronicle, p. 884, and *Flores Hist.*, but since they all agree in stating the bishop's death "mense sub eodem," there is probably some error in the date. The Annals of Burton, p. 317, ed. Luard, date his death ". . . . kal. Aprilis," which would authorize us also to place the bishop's decease in March.

[2] In the margin is drawn a crosier reversed.

[3] In the lower margin is drawn a shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, vaire or and gules; and beneath is written, "¶ *Scutum comitis de Ferrariis.*"

A.D. 1254.

from Palestine.

John, prior of Newburgh, writes an account of these events.

Parliament held at London, and pecuniary aid to the king refused.

Money demanded from the Jews, who ask permission to leave the kingdom.

Another battle between the French and Germans.

17 May. Consecration of the bishop of Lincoln.

Disturbance in the king's army, on

Addentes, qualiter corona Franciæ titubaret[1] per superbiam muliebrem, comitissæ scilicet Flandriæ, quæ duobus innitens filiis et duobus viris, totum regnum Galliæ replevit angustiis. Ipso tempore missus erat pro negotiis regis Angliæ ad partes illas dominus J[ohannes], prior de Neuburgo. Qui super hiis casibus certificatus, hæc scripturæ plenius et processive commendabat. Captorum autem et occisorum magnatum, militum, servientium,[2] et de communiis armatorum in illo prœlio, ad fol. 91 *a.* plus quam centum milia dicitur numerus ascendisse. In quindena Paschæ congregati magnates Angliæ ad parlamentum Londoniis, per tres fere septimanas adventum comitis Ricardi inaniter expectarunt. Quibus rex significavit, quod pecunia et viribus indigebat amplioribus. Responderunt autem omnes, quod nequaquam ad succursum domini sui regis corporaliter venire omitterent, si de hostili adventu regis Hispaniæ hoc comminantis, ut dicebant, plenius certificarentur. Mirabanturque, quod idem rex nunquam tempore quo comes Legrecestriæ Symon Wasconiæ præfuit, eam vendicavit. Unde argumentis hujusmodi, sed et per eundem comitem, qui tunc de partibus rediit transmarinis, veritatem nuncians, super hoc magnates edocti, falsum intelligentes hujusmodi esse mandatum, cum indignatione redierunt. Exigente comite Ricardo non modicam pecuniam ab Judæis, ad opus regis quamplurimum indigentis, Helias de Londonia, pontifex Judæorum, respondit pro omnibus, "O domini, videmus quod dominus rex nos delere proponit de sub cœlo. Det nobis, petimus, licentiam; ecce parati sumus de regno suo exire, et recedemus irredituri." Hæc cum singultibus et lacrimis dicebat amarissimis. Unde magistratus eorum miserti, eos non permiserunt recedere. Irruptio alia hostilis facta est inter Francos et Alemannos. Frisones, qui neutraliter se habebant, a Willelmo de Holande hostiliter impetuntur. Tunc temporis, scilicet xvi. kalendas Junii, consecratus est in episcopum Lincolniensem electus Henricus de Lexintona[3] ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi B[onefacio], in partibus transmarinis. Cum in exercitu regis in Wasconia Walenses quidam punirentur a fratribus regis et Pictavensibus, nulla prius mota querela super hoc coram comite Herefordiæ, qui, secundum antiquum jus, constabularius esse dinoscitur regii exercitus; et super hoc idem comes querimoniam [reponens][4] coram rege, nil nisi sannas reportaret, indignantes super hoc Angli, proposuerunt in Pictavenses irruere. Rex autem pavescens, veniamque humiliter postulans, vix furorem eorum compescuit, quin sanguis latius inundaret; unde quidam magnatum videntes pacis firmitatem elongari, de regis tamen licentia, quamcitius redierunt ad propria. Revocatum est et cassatum judicium injustum, quo Henricus de la Mare, itinerans justiciarius, fecit amerciari domum Sancti Albani ad centum libras, eo quod homines abbatis non venerunt coram eo extra libertatem Sancti Albani, sicut nec debuerunt. Unde impetravit idem abbas litteras regis super hoc, regina et comite Ricardo existentibus regni custodibus, regeque agente in Wasconia. Concessum est eodem anno a rege H[enrico] III., quod monachi de Westmonasterio et eorum successores coram quibuscunque justiciariis regis habeant extractas rotulorum de amerciamentis et omnimodis finibus hominum suorum, et de catallis fugitivorum et dampnatorum eorumdem. Inde autem fuit prius carta confecta et illis concessa, anno gratiæ M°.CC°.LII°. Quo etiam anno concessum est eis, quod conventus habebit quæcunque eos contingunt, tempore vacationis. Cum Winchelienses reginæ transfretaturæ navem paravissent sufficientem, Jeremuenses vero Edwardo multo pulcriorem, mota est inter eos discordia, ita ut, nave pulcriore confracta, nautas invadentes quosdam vulneraverunt, quosdam interemerunt. Unde querela super hoc reposita non modica, ad tantæ transgressionis ultionem unanimiter omnes intenderunt. Regina autem, hujusmodi perturbata contentione, cum ad transfretandum, paratis omnibus, et ipsa pararetur, ecce aliud mandatum regis priori contrarium advenit, ne regina transfretaret. Læsa igitur utrobique et angustiata, quid ageret, excogitat. Ad se autem conversa, a proposito statuit non differre se,[1] sed cum filiis suis et familia nobili, sub ducatu avunculi sui Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, iiii°. kalendas Junii apud Portesmue navem ascendit. Pridie autem [kalendas][2] Junii applicuit apud Burdegalim. Loco autem ipsius reginæ substitutus est regni custos Walterus de Gray, archiepiscopus Eboracensis. Illo autem anno ventus borealis continue perflans, vernos flores et fructus per tres menses et amplius suffocavit. Circa kalendas Julii, tempore solstitiali, subita prorupit inundatio pluvialis cum grandine, qualem non prævidimus, durans per unam horam

---

[1] *titubaret*] tutubaret, MS.

[2] *servientium*] On an erasure.

[3] A crosier is drawn in the margin.

[4] *reponens*] Supplied from the Greater Chronicle, p. 887.

A.D. 1254.

account of the punishment of some Welshmen.

The fine imposed on St. Alban's is remitted.

Privileges granted to the monks of Westminster.

Quarrel between the inhabitants of Winchelsea and Yarmouth.

The queen embarks at Portsmouth.

29 May.

Walter de Gray, abp. of York, appointed guardian of the kingdom.

Storms of

---

[1] *differre se*] se differre, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[2] *kalendas*] Omitted in MS., as also in *Flores Hist.* and Greater Chronicle, but inserted in margin of MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII. In the Chetham MS. a later hand has inserted *nonas*, *i.e.* 4 June.

A.D. 1254. wind and rain. et amplius, abradens coopertoria domorum, et ramos dilacerans arborum. Death of Henry, son of the emperor Frederic. Mense Maii obiit spes Anglorum et gloria, adolescens miræ speciei et desideriorum, Henricus,[1] filius imperatoris Fretherici. fol. 91 *b*. Interiit autem, ut asseritur, ipso rege Conrado procurante. Quod non est credibile, nec videtur, cum idem rex post prædictum mortem nunquam ut ante vultum ostendit serenum. Sed revera quidam flagitiosus, Johannes Maurus, ipsum potionatum, et adhuc sub morte palpitantem, quodam manutergio suffocavit. Quarrel between the pope and Conrad, king of Sicily. Orta est gravissima dissensio inter dominum papam et Conradum, regem Siculorum. Accusavit enim eum papa in multis, de hæresi scilicet et homicidio; ille autem singulis respondit constanter inficiando. Prince Edward sent to Spain to marry the king's sister. Missus est Edwardus, filius regis primogenitus, in magna pompa et apparatu ad regem Hispaniæ Amfulsum; ubi Alienoram, juvenculam, sororem ipsius regis, apud Bures desponsavit, et ab eodem cingulo donatur militari. Rediens autem Edwardus cum nuru sua ad patrem, detulit secum cartam domini regis Hispaniæ, quod quietam clamavit totam Wasconiam pro se et heredibus suis domino regi Angliæ et heredibus suis, auro bullatam. Gascony, Ireland, and Wales granted to prince Edward. Contulit autem ilico dominus rex Angliæ filio suo prædicto et ejus uxori, Wasconiam, Hiberniam, Walliam, Bristoldum, Stanfordiam, Grantham,[2] cum aliis. Ex ipso tempore cœpit rex reditum in Angliam maturare. Compertumque est certis ratiociniis, regem per ipsam in Wasconiam transmigrationem consumpsisse in expensis vicesies et septies centum milia librarum et amplius, exceptis terris, gardis et redditibus, quos contulit alienis, et triginta milibus marcarum in fratribus suis uterinis consumptis. 11 July. Arrival of the bp. of Norwich at St. Alban's, to tax the property of that church. In Translatione sancti Benedicti venit episcopus Norwicensis ad Sanctum Albanum, ex præcepto tam papæ quam regis, ut bona omnia ecclesiæ illius, excepta baronia, decimaret, secundum quod concessum fuit regi per triennium, conditionaliter tamen ad Terræ Sanctæ subventionem peregrinanti. Convocavit igitur omnes ecclesiarum rectores et vicarios, et custodes ecclesiarum de terra Sancti Albani, ut bona eorum præstito taxerentur sacramento. Omnesque obedientiarios ejusdem monasterii fecit bona sua districte et fideliter taxare, asserens quod postmodum fieret super eandem taxationem inquisitio, cum diligenti et districta excussione. Monstraverat insuper autentica sua, tam papalia quam regalia, et quod invitus illa subierat gravamina. Unde novitas excrevit inaudita. Consueverunt hactenus populares prælatis decimas exhibere; nunc, ordine retrogrado et perverso, coguntur prælati decimas persolvere laicis et inviti. Circa Translationem vero prædictam, scilicet sancti Benedicti, venit dominus rex Francorum de Terra Sancta, vocantibus eum urgentissime magnatibus sui regni, ut prædictum est. Qui cum prospere applicuisset in partibus Marsiliæ, quæ non multum distant a Monte-Pessulano, ibidem paulisper quiescens commorabatur; sed, suis stimulantibus proceribus, ad Franciam venire festinabat. Quia vix breves treugas rex Alemanniæ, Willelmus prædictus, Francis concessit seu tenuit. Veniens igitur rex memoratus in propria, ilico tractavit qualiter præfatam[1] dissensionem, advocationis suæ causam, mediante justitia, pacificaret. Quinto idus Augusti obiit episcopus Elyensis Hugo,[2] quandoque abbas Sancti Edmundi, qui in utraque ecclesia circiter xl. annis Deo laudabiliter militaverat. Cujus corpus cum magna sepultum est veneratione in Eliensi ecclesia, in presbiterio nobilissimo, quod a fundamentis sumptibus propriis magnifice construxerat. In cujus obitu flos Nigrorum obiit Monachorum, quia sicut abbas abbatum in Anglia extiterat, ita et episcopus episcoporum choruscavit. In vigilia Assumptionis, circa horam primam, comitante inundatione pluviali, insonuit ictus tonitrui cum fulgure, quod cadens super turrim ecclesiæ Sancti Petri in villa Sancti Albani, et eam penetrans cum horribili fragore, materiem quernam quasi plectam[3] contorsit, et quasi in fila minuta dissipando contrivit. Eligitur magister Thomas de Veteri-Ponte in episcopum Karleolensem, licet dominus rex pro alio, scilicet priore de Neuburgo, urgentissime supplicasset. Venerunt in æstate quidam nobiles de imperio Græcorum, examito vestiti, cum equis, summariis, et familia copiosa ad curiam Romanum. Qui dominum papam aggredientes, verbis asperrimis imposuerunt ei, quod enormiter erravit in fide, et per eum omnes Latini, qui dicunt Spiritum[4] procedere a Patre et Filio. Qui tantum a Patre procedere asseritur,

---

[1] In the margin of the previous page is drawn his shield of arms, reversed, *viz.* gules, 3 leopards (or lions) or, impaling, or, a double-headed eagle displayed sable, both dimidiated. Beneath is written, "¶ *Scutum Henrici, filii imperatoris.*"

[2] *Grantham*] Graham, MS. and *Flores Hist.*, but corrected from the instrument in Rymer, *Fœdera*, i. 297, ed. 1816.

A.D. 1254.

The king of France returns from Palestine.

9 Aug. Death of Hugh, bp. of Ely.

24 Aug. St. Peter's church at St. Alban's struck by lightning.

Election of the bishop of Carlisle.

Certain Greek nobles accuse the pope of false doctrine.

---

[1] *præfatam*] prefata, MS.

[2] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed.

[3] *materiem quernam quasi plectam*] So also in the Greater Chronicle, p. 892, and in *Flores Hist.*, but the Edd. of the latter read *maximam quercum quasi plicam*, which seems to be an arbitrary alteration of the editor.

[4] *Spiritum*] Filium, MS., but corrected from *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1254.

Offer of the kingdom of Sicily made to prince Edmund.

Money is sent to the pope to assist him against Conrad.

Papal forces raised.

Death of Conrad.

The pope takes possession of Apulia, but the nobles adhere to Manfred.

26 Aug. Two monks of

secundum Græcorum probationem et approbationem; et hic est error antiquus Græcorum. Aliaque inconvenientia redarguebant, quæ curia eadem evidentius exercebat. Papa autem pretiosa eis munera contulit, et sane instructos remisit. Cum magister Albertus, ad Romam reversus, responsum comitis fol. 92 *a*. Ricardi domino papæ nunciasset, missis iterum [a][1] papa secretis nunciis ad regem Angliæ, optulit ei et concessit regnum Siciliæ et Apuliæ ad opus Edmundi, filii sui; ut videlicet ipse eas adquirere festinaret regaliter,[2] et[3] juvamen præstare, quale sine gravamine posset. Rex autem de promisso adeo exhilaratus est, ut prædictum Edmundum jam regem Siciliæ palam vocaret, credens profecto se jam subarratum de regno. Rex igitur quicquid pecuniæ habere poterat misit domino papæ, ut Conradum et omnes suos Siculos et Appulos expugnaret. Papa autem non modicum congregans[4] exercitum, et eis necessaria copiose distribuit; cumque defecissent expensæ, regi significavit. Qui mittens ei litteras patentes obligatorias, omnia promisit adquietare. Papa autem mandatis hujusmodi adquiescens, recepto ab usurariis infinito thesauro, innumeros ad exercitum suum congregavit, quorum multitudo parum papali commodo[5] vel regali profecit. Rex igitur Conradus irruptiones perpessus hostiles, comminationes, obprobria, et diffamationes, gravi cœpit dolore contabescere, et letali lecto decumbere. Dicebatque, "Væ mihi misero! ut quid me genuit pater meus? Imperium quod usque nunc floruit, modo marcescit." Maledicens igitur diei nativitatis suæ, miser migravit a corpore.[6] Papa autem hoc audiens, et ad ulteriores partes Apuliæ se transferens, totum fere regnum usurpavit. Quod videntes optimates regionis, indignati sunt; et suscitantes quendam filium Fretherici naturalem, nomine Memfredum, adhæserunt ei, facientes ei homagium.[7] Et sic factus est novissimus error pejor priore. In crastino vero Assumptionis arripuerunt iter duo monachi ecclesiæ Sancti Albani versus Romam, ad repellendum insolentiam episco-

---

[1] *a*] Omitted in MS.

[2] *regaliter*] On an erasure.

[3] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *congregans*] So also in *Flores Hist.*, but we should read *congregavit*, or else omit *et* after *exercitum*.

[5] *commodo*] comodo, MS.

[6] In the lower margin of the preceding page is drawn his shield of arms and crown, both reversed, *viz.*, or, a double-headed eagle displayed sable; in the middle chief point a crescent gules for difference. Beneath is written, "¶ *Scutum Conradi, regis Siculorum.*"

[7] His shield of arms is drawn below, *viz.*, or, a double-headed eagle displayed sable, over all a fess, argent. Above is written, "¶ *Memfredus creatus est.*"

A.D. 1254.

St. Alban's proceed to Rome, to oppose episcopal visitation.

Sterility caused by inundations of the sea.

Some English nobles seized and imprisoned at Pons, in Poitou.

Death of William de Cantelupe.

13 Oct. Writs issued for inquiry into the manors of the Religious Orders.

porum, qui visitationem nitebantur facere in eadem ecclesia secundum apostolica mandata, contra suorum tenorem privilegiorum, videlicet dominus W[illelmus] de Hunteduna,[1] et dominus J[ohannes] de Bolum. Eodem anno, cum hyemali tempore mare omnes terras sibi vicinas occupasset, ita quod nec fruges poterant apparere, nec arbores virere aut frondescere, adveniente tempore autumpnali, inventæ sunt omnes terræ illæ, licet diligenter cultæ, omni frugum genere carentes, salsugine maris debriatæ. Ligna quoque tam silvestria quam fructifera arefacta, solis patuerunt securibus excidenda. Unde nautæ in aquis operantes veraciter sunt experti, quod mare in illa fluctuatione, quasi de alveo suo exiens, arenas[2] in medio sui, ubi solet esse altitudo, patefecit. Cum comes de Warewic, Johannes de Pleysiz, et Gilebertus de Segrave, et alii nobiles Angliæ cum eisdem, per terram proposuissent a Wasconia repatriare, venissentque ad quandam civitatem in Pictavia, quæ Pontes dicitur, occurrentibus civibus et applaudentibus, honorifice suscepti sunt. Quibus in securitate, ut putabant, epulantibus, ecce currentes cives, celata proditione inter eos composita, dixerunt eisdem, "Ecce comites vestri et familia vestra moverunt jam seditionem in civitate." Erant namque in civitate hospitati præter eos viri præclari de regno Angliæ quamplurimi. Et cum clamatum esset ad arma, reposcebant arma sua, hospitibus prius tradita, sibi liberari. Ipsi noluerunt, sed, ut provisum fuit, ipsa retinuerunt. Irruerunt igitur in eos cives armati, et immisericorditer captos custodiæ manciparunt carcerali, nec eis valuerunt litteræ regis Francorum de salvo progressu. Rex autem, hoc audiens, scripsit pro eis civibus eisdem, sed ejus contempserunt mandatum. Obiit Willelmus de Cantilupo,[3] juvenis elegans et dives, qui jam tertius fuit Canteluporum qui infra paucos annos de medio sunt sublati. In festo sancti Edwardi emanavit breve inauditum a cancellaria regis, ut inquiratur in maneriis religiosorum, quot sint carucæ propriæ, et quot consuetudinariæ; et si possint unam carucam facere, vel majus vel minus; similiter de precariis. Item, cujus æstimationis sint[4] quælibet per se communibus annis, deductis expensis. Item, cujus æstimationis sint servitia rusticorum. Item, qui et quanti sint redditus eorum. Et ut hæc inquisitio fiat per

---

[1] *Hunteduna*] In the Greater Chronicle, p. 894, is added, "prior de Haethfeld."

[2] *arenas*] harenas, MS.

[3] In the margin is drawn his shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, gules, 3 fleurs-de-lis or, and beneath is written, "¶ *Obiit Willelmus de Ca*[*ntelupo*]."

[4] *sint*] sit, MS.

A.D. 1254.

William de Kilkenny, elected bp. of Ely.

Deaths of three abbats.

17 Oct.

The king of France on his return refuses all consolation.

iiiior. viros religiosorum fideles, et præpositum loci in singulis maneriis. Supplevit[1] autem tunc officium cancellarii magister Willelmus de Kilkenny modeste et laudabiliter, qui et cancellarius appellatus est. Non multo post electus est idem magister Willelmus in episcopum Elyensem.[2] Circa eosdem dies obierunt tres abbates in Marisco, videlicet de Croylande, de Thorney, et bonus abbas de Rameysey, scilicet Willelmus de Hacholt, xvi. kalendas Novembris.[3] Rex Francorum, ad propria reversus, nullam admittere voluit consolationem, sed, oculis in terram defixis, cum summa tristitia et crebris suspiriis imaginabatur[4] captionem suam, et per eam Christianitatis generalem confusionem. Tandem quidam episcopus sanctus consolans eum, ait, "Cave, domine, ne in tale tædium et tristitiam præcipiteris; maximum est enim peccatum, quia Sancto Spiritui procedit in præjudicium. Reduc ante oculos patientiam Job, tolerantiam Eustachii, et sic de aliis." Cui rex, "Si solus obprobrium paterer et adversitatem, et non redundarent peccata mea in ecclesiam[5] universalem, æquanimiter[6] sustinerem." Decantata igitur missa in honore Sancti Spiritus, per Dei gratiam monita admisit rex consolationis. Rex quoque Angliæ, omnimoda pace composita cum rege Hispaniæ, reditum[7] suum in Angliam maturavit. Qui, licentia de rege Francorum optenta, per terram magis elegit remeare. Cupiens insuper regnum visitare Francorum, missis nunciis ad regem, licentiam impetravit transeundi. Quod audiens comitissa Cornubiæ, quod rex Angliæ simul cum regina, sorore sua, foret transiturus per regnum Franciæ, et quod regina Francorum, altera soror ejus, venientibus occursaret, ex indultu viri sui, scilicet comitis Ricardi, ut sorores[8] visitaret, multo stipata comitatu transfretavit. Electus interim Wintoniensis Æthelmarus monachos suos miserabiliter oppressit, ita ut aliqui eorum, mentis amaritudine fatigati, nunquam postea respirarent. Conventus igitur diverticula quærens tutiora, dispersus est ad diversas domus Nigri Ordinis, gratia perendinandi; rex autem improperans ei super hoc, quod ingratus dedecus reddidit pro honore, pro beneficio malitiam rependendo. Electus autem, mandatis hujusmodi non obtemperans, loco eorum qui recesserant, indignos cucullavit.[9] Priore autem Romam adeunte,

fol. 92 *b*.

Henry obtains leave to return home through France.

The countess of Cornwall crosses over to meet her sisters.

Oppression of the monks of Winchester by the bp. elect.

---

[1] *Supplevit*] Suplevit, MS.

[2] A mitre and crosier are drawn below.

[3] In the margin are drawn three crosiers joined, reversed.

[4] *imaginabatur*] ymaginabatur, MS.

[5] *ecclesiam*] Repeated superfluously after *universalem*.

[6] *æquanimiter*] hæc æquanimiter, *Flores Hist.*

[7] *reditum*] riditum, MS.

[8] *sorores*] sororet, MS.

[9] *cucullavit*] cuculavit, MS.

A.D. 1254.
6 Dec.
Death of pope Innocent IV.

Vision respecting him.

Alexander IV. pope.

He continues the war against Manfred.

Henry causes his mother's remains to be transferred to the church at Fontevraud.

He recovers from sickness at Pontigny.

His honourable reception in France.

prior novus per electum intruditur, qui omni perturbatione in eos, pro electi voluntate, fruebatur. Circa festum sancti Nicholai obiit papa Innocentius IIII^{us}.[1] apud Neapolim, duplici dolore sauciatus. Postquam enim eum episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus cuspide baculi pupugerat, languore continuo laborabat; et postquam exercitus suus dissipatus est et victus, ipse vix postea remanserat semivivus. Eadem vero septimana facta est visio quædam in sompnis cuidam cardinali de eo, quod coram quodam judice[2] sedente pro tribunali incurvatus idem papa, graviter accusatus est a quadam matrona nobilissima; unde ipse, veniam super hoc deprecans, villicationis suæ mercedem sortitus est finalem. Hanc vero visitationem[3] plenius narravit evigilans, et publica facta est in partibus illis. Successit autem ei alius vir, satis benignus et bene religiosus, episcopus videlicet Hostiensis, nepos Gregorii papæ; vocatus est autem Alexander IIII^{us}.[4] In principio autem creationis suæ scripsit cunctis ecclesiarum prælatis, postulans humiliter ut orarent pro ipso, ut Dominus daret ei potestatem, gratiam, et voluntatem ecclesiam Dei congrue gubernare, et vicarius Dei et Petri successor competenter appellari. Hic nempe, quorumdam consilio et persuasu, prædecessoris sui Innocentii guerram inchoatam contra Fretericales, et præcipue Memfredum, filium Fretherici naturalem, continuavit; et ne rex Angliæ de spe fraudaretur concepta, de promissione sibi facta de regno Siciliæ. Tunc temporis veniens rex Angliæ ad nobilem domum sanctimonialium, videlicet Fontem-Ebraudi, fecit transferri corpus matris suæ Isabellæ in ecclesiam, et ibi sepeliri. Similiter veniens apud Pontiniacum infirmatus, ad feretrum beati Edmundi oravit, et sanitatem recepit. Quo in Franciam properante, jussit rex Francorum magnatibus terræ et civibus civitatum, per quas idem rex foret transiturus, ut, omnibus semotis offendiculis, omnia ornamentis redimirent, et ei obviantes et obsequentes reverenter susciperent. Rex autem idem occurrit ei apud Carnotum. Jussit insuper idem rex, omnia[5] mensæ necessaria de sumptibus suis dicto regi, dum esset in regno suo, exhiberi; quod rex Angliæ in parte acceptavit. Habuit enim in comitatu suo M̅. equos pulcherrimos,[6] exceptis

---

[1] In the lower margin are drawn a papal tiara and cross, reversed, with these words, "*Obiit papa Innocentius IIII^{us}.*"

[2] *coram quodam judice*] In the Greater Chronicle, p. 897, we read, *coram Majestate Domini.*

[3] *visitationem*] visionem, Greater Chronicle and *Flores Hist.*

[4] Beneath are drawn a papal tiara and cross, erect, with the words, "*Creatus est Alexander IIII^{us}.*"

[5] *omnia*] ut omnia, MS.

[6] *pulcherrimos*] pulcherimos, MS.

Preparations made by the scholars at Paris to receive him.

Henry is lodged at the Old Temple.

He distributes gifts to the French nobles, and sleeps in the king's palace.

Amount of his expenses at Paris. He comes to Boulogne. Death of Peter Chaseporc.

fol. 93 *a*.

bigis et summariis, et exceptis propriis assessoribus. Advenerunt etiam ei obviam regina Francorum et sorores suæ, comitissæ Andegaviæ et Provinciæ,[1] ut sororibus suis, scilicet reginæ Angliæ et comitissæ Cornubiæ, simul cum rege advenientibus, occursarent. Fuerat autem mater earumdem ibi præsens, nomine Beatrix, quæ et Provinciæ comitissa vocatur. Scolares autem Parisienses, maxime nationis Anglicanæ, suspensis ad horam lectionibus, cereos emerunt vestesque festivas, et diversa quæ gaudium poterant attestari; et, præparatis cantantibus, florigeris, cum sertis et coronis et musicis instrumentis processerunt obviam venientibus. Sicque transegerunt totum diem illum et crastinum, civitate tota Parisius mirabiliter adornata, in gaudio et canticis, luminaribus et exultationibus. Rex autem Angliæ, oblato sibi palatio regis Francorum ad hospitandum, apud Vetus Templum hospitatus est; præcipiens ilico, ut in crastino summo mane omnes domus ejusdem curiæ pauperibus replerentur reficiendis. Visitatis in crastino honorabilibus locis Parisius, epulabatur rex Francorum cum rege Angliæ. Post prandium vero transmisit idem rex Angliæ magnatibus Francigenis cuppas nobiles, et alia pretiosa donativa. Interfuerunt eidem convivio reges ii., reginæ ii., duces xxv., episcopi xii.; militum autem præclarorum numerus inæstimabilis, comitissæ vero xviii. Nocte vero illa hospitatus est rex Angliæ in palatio regis, in medio civitatis; voluit enim ita rex Francorum. Sicque fuerunt duo reges sese simul colloquiis recreantes per viii. dies. Quo recedente, compertum est cum mille libras exposuisse in expensis Parisius, exceptis donativis impretiabilibus. Veniens autem rex ad mare, nec ventum habens prosperum, apud Boloniam moratus est invitus. Ubi obiit Petrus Chaceporc, Pictavensis natione, reginæ thesaurarius, et regis clericus et consiliarius specialis.

Incipit annus gratiæ M^{o}.CC^{o}.LV^{o}., *qui est annus regni regis Henrici Tertii xxxix*^{us}., *in quo fuit idem rex ad Natale Domini ultra mare.*

Henry keeps Christmas at Boulogne.

M^{o}.CC^{o}.LV^{o}. Rex H[enricus] III., cum rediret de Wasconia, fuit apud Sanctam Mariam de Bolonia ad Natale Domini, anno videlicet regni sui xxxix^{o}., ventum expectans prosperum ad transfretandum in Angliam. Fecitque honorifice sepeliri corpus prædicti Petri Chaseporc, qui in vigilia Natalis Domini interiit. Hic sescentas marcas legavit ad comparandam terram in Anglia, ut ibi ecclesia religiosorum canonicorum, de Mertuna electorum, ædificetur, et pro anima ejus et omnium fidelium ibidem Deo inperpetuum serviatur. Die vero Dominica rex transfretans, apud Doveram prospere applicuit. Cui adventanti occurrerunt comes Ricardus, frater ejus, et alii nobiles, ad hoc de longe advocati. Qui simul cum aliis prælatis munera ei optulerunt pretiosa. Cum dominus rex electionem de magistro Willelmo de Kilkenny acceptasset, de fidelitate domini Henrici de Wengham confisus, eidem commisit sigilli sui custodiam, quam dictus magister W[illelmus] electus præhabuit. Londonienses autem regi, quem sitienter desideraverant, adventanti optulerunt centum libras; nec tamen rex hoc pro gratuito reputavit, dicens hoc tanquam pensum sibi debitum persolvi. Qui cum hoc agnoscerent, vas quoddam pretiosissimum ei superaddiderunt, et sic grates reportarunt. Non diu post rex quæstionem movens de Londoniensibus, pro quodam clerico, reo mortis, et incarcerato apud Neugate et elapso, exegit ab eisdem tria milia marcarum, nomine punitionis. Qui responderunt, quod rex ipsum incarceratum concesserat episcopo, eo quod clericus esset; sed quia episcopus idoneum carcerem non habuit, supplicavit civibus, ut eidem carcerem prædictum accommodarent[1] ad præfatum clericum. Qui ibidem impositus, evasit; "unde talis evasio, deceptis custodibus episcopi, nobis non fuerat imputanda." Cumque sic se juste excusarent, remedium impetrare a rege non poterant. Obiit Hernaldus de Bosco, unus de prothoforestariis Angliæ, viii. idus Februarii. Sepultus est autem apud Bethelisdene, ante majus altare. Exegit insuper rex a Judæis viii. milia marcarum, sub pœna suspendii in brevi solvenda. Ipsi vero, petita a rege licentia, voluerunt, ut prius tactum est,[2] exire de Anglia irredituri. Quos tamen rex tradidit comiti Ricardo, ad pecuniam extorquendam puniendos; unde idem comes regi accommodavit[3] non minimam pecuniam, sub pignore auri pretioso. A festo vero sancti Valentini usque in mensem sequentem ventus vehemens cum pluviarum infusionibus diebus ac noctibus inauditam excitavit perturbationem. Ejecitque mare in episcopatu Norwicensi quandam beluam monstruosam nimis, turbinibus fluctuum exagitatam

---

[1] This error occurs also in the Greater Chronicle, pp. 898, 900, and is copied in *Flores Hist.* There were only *four* sisters, and Beatrice, wife of Charles, count of Anjou, was also countess of Provence. See *ante*, p. 8, and cf. Ann. of Dunstable, p. 194.

A.D. 1255.

24 Dec.

Legacy of Peter Chaseporc to build a church in England.

The king lands at Dover.

Henry de Wengham made Keeper of the Seal.

Gift from the citizens of London to the king.

They are fined 3,000 marks, on account of the escape of a prisoner from Newgate.

Death of Ernald de Bosco.

6 Feb.

Money extorted from the Jews.

14 Feb.

Storms of wind and rain.

Marine monster thrown up.

---

[1] *accommodarent*] accomodarent, MS.

[2] See *ante*, p. 334.

[3] *accommodavit*] accomodavit, MS.

A.D. 1255.

An elephant sent to England by the king of France. Gift from his queen. Visit of Henry to St. Alban's.

et interfectam. Quæ multo major balæna extitit, verumptamen non balæna sed monstrum dicebatur, quæ totam patriam vicinam ditavit. Missus est in Angliam quidam elephas, quem rex Francorum pro magno munere dedit regi Angliæ, cum in partibus esset Gallicanis. Nec credimus alium unquam visum fuisse in Anglia. Dedit insuper regina Francorum regi Anglorum unum pavonem, scilicet lavacrum lapideum[1] mirabile, quod similitudem pavonis in forma ostendebat. Et erat lapis pretiosus, qui Perla dicitur, ex auro et argento et saphiris, sicut verus pavo, orbiculatus. Qui [rex][2] ad Sanctum Albanum veniens, per vi. dies moratus est ibidem, die qualibet et nocte cum magno luminari beatum visitans martirem, et pallas offerens pretiosas, et unam capam choralem. Sub diebus autem Dominicæ Passionis, filius cujusdam militis, Johannis nomine de Sceldforde, de militia Sancti Albani, ut ejusdem patris sui hereditatem citius consequeretur, illius mortem procuravit, nec canonicum[3] quendam cum prædicto patre inventum vivum dimisit; unde convictus super hoc, Londoniis tractus,[4] cum alio consanguineo suo, sibi consentiente, suspensus est. Eodem anno, in Quadragesima, ut pro vero accepimus, visio quædam nocturna contigit papæ Alexandro de novo creato, eadem fere quæ prius contigit cuidam cardinali, ut præscriptum est,[5] de Innocentio papa nuper defuncto. Jussit igitur pius papa A[lexander] elemosinas pro ipso erogari, et missas celebrari. In quindena vero Paschæ convenerunt Londoniis ad parlamentum omnes nobiles Angliæ; ubi dominus rex multis se debitis conquestus est implicatum, nec se posse sine eorum auxilio liberari. Postulans, ut de baroniis, sine quibus decimæ sibi fuerant concessæ, plenam reciperet portionem. Inito igitur inter eos consilio, consensum est, quod multum sese gravarent pro Magnæ Cartæ observatione, ex tunc et deinceps. Exigebant igitur, ut de communi consilio regni sibi justiciarium, cancellarium, et thesaurarium eligerent, sicut ab antiquo consuetum est; qui etiam non amoverentur, nisi de communi regni consilio et deliberatione. Quibus responsum est, quod nullo modo hoc faceret. Tandem dilationem sumpsit negotium hoc usque ad festum sancti Michaelis, ut interim fidelitatem regis experirentur versus eos in Cartæ observatione totiens promissæ et redemptæ, et ipsi pro possibilitate ei

fol. 93 *b*.

Execution of [Will.] de Sceldforde.

Vision of pope Alexander relative to Innocent IV.

Parliament held, and the king's demands for a tenth from the baronies postponed.

---

[1] *lapideum*] Omitted in the Greater Chronicle, p. 903.

[2] *rex*] Supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[3] *canonicum*] cononicum, MS.

[4] *tractus*] equis ad furcas tractus, *Flores Hist.*

[5] See *ante*, p. 341.

studerent subvenire. Tunc temporis tantum erat aer intempestivus per totum fere tempus vernale, floribus et arboribus inimicissimus, quod toto mense Aprilis nec imber nec ros terram arentem imbuens vel modicum præstitit refrigerium. Archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Walterus de Gray, in prædicto parlamento cerebrum habens pro cotidianis jejuniis et sollicitudinibus infirmatum, ita ut, amisso penitus appetitu comedendi, supra modum debilitaretur, apud Fuleham, manerium episcopi Londoniensis, divertit, ubi tertia die post adventum suum feliciter expiravit.[1] Hic xl. fere annis ecclesiam suam Eboracensem strenue rexit, exceptis tribus mensibus et tribus septimanis; et sic circa kalendas Maii viam universæ carnis est ingressus. Cujus corpus honorifice delatum est Eboracum, in ducatu episcopi Dunelmensis Walteri, suffraganei[2] sui, et in ecclesia Eboracensi condignæ traditur sepulturæ. Significatum est capitulo Lincolniensi a magistro Hugone de Mortuo-Mari, domini Cantuariensis officiali, ut, cassato W[illelmo] Lupo, quandoque archidiacono Lincolniensi, alium sine dilatione loco ipsius subrogarent; vel ipse magister Hugo, auctoritate apostolica et domini sui Cantuariensis, illud faceret, et canonicos de inobedientia puniret. Canonici[3] igitur novum sibi archidiaconum creaverunt, magistro W[illelmo] prædicto omnia hæc patienter tolerante,[4] et pro ecclesiæ suæ libertate viriliter laborante. Dominus papa Alexander Octovianum cardinalem destinavit cum maximo[5] exercitu ad destruendam civitatem Nucheram, cum Memfredo rege ibi latitante. Cum igitur Octovianus, dispositis agminibus, cum quodam ingenioso et potente bellatore marchisio ad civitatem fere pervenisset, irruit terror super hos et illos, ita ut nec cives advenientes nec advenientes cives auderent hostiliter impetere. Tandem autem ille marchisius dixit Octoviano, "Domine, recedat tertia pars nostri exercitus. Sunt enim quasi obsessi et inclusi Memfredus et ejus exercitus; non enim audent exire." Iterum autem idem marchisius exercitum minuit, ita quod vix xii. milia de lx. milibus remanerent. Quo facto, proditor ille marchisius prædictum Memfredum secrete adivit, et omnia hæc per se facta, quasi per amicum Fretherici fidelissimum, intimavit. Exiit igitur Memfredus et ejus exercitus,

A.D. 1255.

Unseasonable weather in the spring.

Death of the abp. of York.

1 May.

He is buried at York.

An archdeacon appointed at Lincoln, in the place of William Lupus.

Papal forces sent to destroy Nocera.

Treacherous advice of a certain marquis.

Manfred destroys the papal army.

---

[1] In the lower margin are drawn a mitre and archiepiscopal cross, reversed, and below is written, "¶ *Obiit archiepiscopus Eboracensis.*"

[2] *suffraganei*] suffranci, MS.

[3] *Canonici*] Cononici, MS.

[4] *tolerante*] tollerante, MS.

[5] *maximo*] magno, *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1255.

et exercitui papali appropinquantes, Octoviano vix evadente, omnes quasi aviculas illaqueaverunt, præter familiam marchisii omnibus trucidatis.

The observance of Magna Carta is publicly proclaimed.

fol. 94 *a*.

Acclamatum est in comitatibus, et annunciatum est in ecclesiis, ut Magna Carta inviolabiliter teneretur, quam rex Johannes concessit, et iste rex præsens multotiens confirmavit; et lata est sententia solempniter in omnes ejusdem violatores. Quam tamen rex minime observat, bona ecclesiæ Eboracensis vacantis inhumane distrahens, dicensque, "Quare non observant ipsi episcopi et magnates erga subjectos suos cartam illam, quam tantum clamitant observari?" Cui responsum est, "Domine, deceret vos primitus observare, et alii vos sequerentur."

Rob. de Ros and John de Baillol accused of traitorous conduct in Scotland.

Accusantur Robertus de Ros et Johannes de Baillol, quod regnum Scociæ, regem et reginam, quorum tutela eisdem fuit commissa, infideliter et inhoneste contrectarent. Seminarium autem hujus accusationis initium sumpsit a magistro Reginaldo de Bathonia, phisico, qui in Scociam destinatus, ut regi et reginæ curam suam apponeret, eorumdem cognoscens gravamina, regi Angliæ totum significavit; unde dictus magister eorumdem custodes super hoc redarguens, ibidem, ut dicitur, non diu post potionatus, lectulo decubuit quamcitius moriturus.

Death of Reginald de Bath, their accuser.

The church of Canterbury and priories of Rochester and Winchester burthened with debts.

Ecclesiæ quædam nobiles in Anglia debitis prægravantur innumeris: videlicet Cantuariensis, in iiii^{or}. milibus marcarum; unde tradiderunt sex maneria sua Johanni de Gatesdene, militi, ut eos a debitis liberaret, et ea, sub bonis conditionibus, donec debita evacuarentur, retineret. Similiter et Rofensis prioratus, inæstimabilibus debitis illaqueatus, se in manus prædicti Johannis et aliorum creditorum obligavit. Nobilis insuper Wintoniensis prioratus, irrestaurabilibus jacturis prægravatus, suas merito sensit cicatrices, ut prædictum est. Quid ecclesiæ Beatæ Mariæ Eboraci cœnobialis et aliarum nobilium ecclesiarum enarrem confusionem? Sed ut hominibus manifestetur Dei indignatio, in statu corporum supracelestium fit discordiæ manifestatio.

Eclipse of the moon. 13 July.

Luna etenim passa est eclipsim insolitam mense Julio in nocte, post festum sanctæ Margaretæ, quæ fere per iiii^{or}. horas perduravit.

Death of Warin de Muncheinsil.

Obiit nobilis baro, et inter omnes Angliæ nobiles nobilissimus et sapientissimus, Warinus de Muncheinsil;[1] cujus testamentum ad cc. milia marcarum dicitur ascendisse. Heredis[2] autem illius

---

[1] *Muncheinsil*] Muntcheisil, MS.; Munchenesy, *Flores Hist.* In the lower margin is drawn his shield of arms, *viz.*, or, 3 inescutcheons vaire, argent and azure. Beneath is written, "¶ *Scutum Warini de Muncheysil.*"

[2] *Heredis*] His name was William. See the Greater Chronicle, p. 908.

A.D. 1255.

custodiam contulit dominus rex fratri suo, Willelmo de Valencia, qui filiam ejusdem Warini desponsavit. Johannes Franciscus, domini regis clericus præcipuus, paralisi percussus, a monachis Sanctæ Mariæ Eboraci et de Seleby siccis est lacrimis deplorandus. Johannes de Grey, miles modestus et discretus, a curia se subtrahit regis, feliciter edoctus. Dominus rex, convocato exercitu, versus Scociam lora direxit et vexilla, gravem de Roberto de Ros et Johanne de Baillol movens quæstionem. Qui regno Scociæ appropinquans, præmisit comitem Gloverniæ et Johannem Mansel, ut veritatem super præmissis inquirerent. Qui Castro Puellarum, quo rex et regina fuerant, appropinquantes, seposito comitatu sequente, caute intraverunt; deinde eorum comitatus stillatim subsequitur. Accersita igitur a regina veritate super statu suo, et præmissis gravaminibus, eam civiliter et modeste consolabantur, vocantes districte Robertum de Ros, ut veniret responsurus in curia regis Angliæ ad sibi objecta. Qui tandem veniens, sub certa forma spopondit domino suo regi Angliæ de omnibus respondere; verumtamen rex, de consilio suorum, fecit seisiri terras prædicti Roberti, et arctæ custodiæ deputari. Johannes vero de Baillol, qui graviter, sicut et Robertus, accusabatur, de pecunia, qua abundavit,[1] regi satisfaciendo pacem sibi comparavit. Cunctis igitur pacificatis, cum dominus rex Angliæ et regina sufficienter cum rege Scotorum et regina, eorum filia, colloquium mutuum habuissent, rex versus partes australes Angliæ reditum maturavit. Et cum Dunelmum venisset, quorumdam consilio susurronum est certificatus de pecunia non minima in ecclesia eadem deposita, videlicet episcopi Nicholai de Farnham, et episcopi Elyensis Willelmi de Kilkenny, et quorumdam clericorum. Præcepit igitur rex, ut, seris et sigillis confractis, licet invitis monachis, pecuniam inventam ad opus suum tollerent ministri sui, non quasi ablatam aut raptam, sed accommodatam,[2] et bene eisdem persolvendam. Consecratus est magister W[illelmus] de Kilkenny in episcopum Elyensem[3] in partibus transmarinis, scilicet apud Belesium, die Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ, ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi B[onefacio]. Episcopi vero ceteri Angliæ, similiter et conventus Cantuariensis, super hoc doluerunt, ne in consequenciam traheretur; quia semper

John de Grey withdraws from the court.

The king marches towards Scotland.

Robert de Ros summoned to reply to the charges against him, and his lands seized.

John de Baillol, similarly accused, pays a fine to the king.

Henry seizes a sum of money deposited in the church of Durham.

Consecration of the bp. of Ely.

25 Aug.

---

[1] *abundavit*] habundavit, MS.

[2] *accommodatam*] accomodatam, MS.

[3] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, erect, and beneath is written, "*Consecratus est episcopus Elyensis.*"

A.D. 1255.

8 Sept.

Arrival of the archbp. elect of Toledo and a Spanish grandee.

The king of France asks the daughter of the king of Castille in marriage for his son.

Proposal of the bp. of Hereford to raise money by means of the bishops' seals.

He communicates his plan to the pope.

fol. 94 *b.*

in Anglia consueverunt episcopi consecrari. Infra octavas vero Nativitatis beatæ Mariæ venit Londonias electus Tholetanus, frater regis Castellæ, Synchius nomine, ætate xx. annorum, et cum eo quidam potens de Hispania, Garsias Martinus nomine; qua de causa nesciebatur, sed videndi causa terrarum et gentium diversitatem. Quos dominus rex honorifice præcepit suscipi, et nullum eisdem vel suis offendiculum opponi. Audiens rex Francorum regem Angliæ prædictum fœdus matrimonii inisse cum rege Castellæ, suspectam habens hujusmodi copulationem, postulavit filiam ejusdem regis Castellæ filio suo in uxorem exhiberi; ut tanto plus conditionem suam melioraret, quo ipse filiam, rex vero Angliæ sororem, optineret. Quod ad votum impetravit. Episcopus Herefordensis, Petrus de Egeblanche, regis auribus instillavit, ut tria vel quatuor sigilla de aliquibus autenticis Angliæ prælatis habere se faceret, et ipse industria sua ceteros prælatos una cum eis ita obligaret, ut regis indigentia, quam noverat, quamcitius respiraret. Unde, inclinato rege ad consensum, Romam adiens, dominum papam invenit mœstum, et debitis non modicis irretitum. Cui episcopus, "Pater sancte, ne sollicitetur paternitas vestra de quantitate debitorum, quia ante recessum nostrum ab Anglia, de solutione vestra forma providebatur certissima, dummodo de favore et licentia vestra liceat mihi prosequi, quod corde concepi." Quo annuente,[1] * * *

* * * * * *

---

[1] The text here is left unfinished (and so also in the *Flores Historiarum*), and the remaining portion of the page, and two leaves which follow, are blank. At the edge of the lower margin is written with a plummet, "Hic scribatur hæc cedula," which seems to refer to the papal bull obtained by the bishop of Hereford, printed in the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 914.

GLOSSARY.

GLOSSARY.

A.

Accidia, sadness of mind, melancholy (Gr. ἀκηδία), i. 436.

Adletha for Athleta, i. 359, 407.

Admiralis, Admiralius, an Emir, Oriental chief (hence the modern "Admiral"), i. 122 ; ii. 231, 409; iii. 315.

Admiratus, the Podestà or chief magistrate of Genoa, ii. 485.

Admiravisius, Emir-vizir, i. 154, 155.

Adquietare, to acquit, redeem, ii. 44.

Adulterinus, false, spurious, in reference to a gate at Antioch, i. 108 ; and to the castles erected in the reign of Stephen, i. 296, 300.

Æditus, officer of the king's household, i. 271 ; ii. 131.

Ægrotativus, sickly, ii. 383.

Affirmari, to be fastened (with nails), iii. 114.

Afforestatus, afforested, subjected to the forest laws, ii. 269.

Affugare, Aufugare, to drive away, i. 43, 255 ; iii. 105, 112 ; Affugatus, Aufugatus, iii. 45, 71, 116, 281.

Agger, a rick of wheat, ii. 190.

Alcato, a light cuirass, ii. 18 ; perhaps the same as Fr. *hoqueton* or *haketon*, used by Chaucer, *Cant. T.*, l. 13,789.

Alchad, the Cadi or chief magistrate, i. 462.

Amaricatio, bitterness of mind, i. 378.

Amaricatus, embittered, i. 378 ; iii. 295.

Amerciamentum, a lesser pecuniary fine, iii. 335.

Amphibologicus, ambiguous, ii. 233.

Ampulosus, boasting, turgid, i. 203, 206 ; ii. 30, 260, &c.

Anathematio, Anathematisatio, excommunication with curses, i. 366.

Anathematizare, to excommunicate, iii. 138.

Anathomia, dissection or opening of the body after death, ii. 193, 451.

Ancillatio, servitude, ii. 176.

Andegravius, Landgrave, ii. 475 ; iii. 7, 23, 92 ; Andegravia, Landgravine, iii. 318.

Angaria, exaction, oppression by taxation, i. 8, 164 ; iii. 78 ; also anguish of mind, suffering, ii. 235, 464.

Angariare, to oppress grievously, i. 97 ; iii. 249.

Angarialis, grievous, oppressive, iii. 149.

Anguina, cable or rope, rigging, iii. 241.

Angustia, oppression, grievance, iii. 109 ; Angustiatus, ii. 178.

Antemurale, outer wall, i. 139.

Antonomasice, a figure in rhetoric, by the substitution of one form of speech for another, ii. 416.

Apices, papal letters, i. 376 ; ii. 491.

Apostolicus, the Pope, i. 243 ; Apostolatus, the popedom, i. 414 ; ii. 471.

Apoteca, shop, warehouse, i. 109.

Appares, compeers, equals in rank, ii. 27.

Apparitor, officer of the Crown, to confiscate the goods of offenders, i. 52.

Appodium, support or prop of wood, i. 82.

Apporriare, to impoverish, i. 13 ; iii. 12.

Apporiator, one who impoverishes, i. 182.

Appropians, approaching, i. 71.

Archipræsul, archbishop, i. 52 ; ii. 377 ; Archipræsulatus, i. 14.

Arcubajulus, bow-bearer, iii. 178.

Arcubalistarius, crossbow-man, Fr. *arbalestrier*, i. 260 ; ii. 197. Written Arcubalastarius, ii. 399, 507 ; iii. 296 ; hence probably the name of *Arblaster*.

Area, deck of a ship, ii. 23.

Argumentose, cunningly, skilfully, i. 22, 199 ; ii. 103, 118, 383 ; iii. 34, &c.

Argumentosus, cunning, skilful, i. 123 ; ii. 91, 103, 317 ; iii. 82.

Arietes, warlike machines for battering the walls, i. 140.

Arra, earnest, pledge, security, i. 30, 148, 354 ; ii. 487 ; iii. 287.

Articulus, situation of danger, difficulty, i. 166, 188 ; ii. 423 ; in Articulo, i. 378 ; ii. 64, 179, 235 ; iii. 221.

Asinarius, forming a load for an ass, i. 143.

Assarta, assarts, the grubbing up of trees to clear the ground ; ii. 273.

Assessini, a people or sect of Syria, referred to as practising secret murder ; hence the term "Assassin," i. 288 ; ii. 43 ; iii. 21.

Assessor, rider, i. 227 ; ii. 36 ; iii. 173.

Assisus, assessed, ii. 380.

Aureus, a gold coin, i. 89, 138 ; iii. 118.

Aurifrigiaria, embroideress in gold, ii. 380.

Aurifrigiatus, embroidered in gold, or adorned with gold fringe (*see* Du Cange *in v.*), i. 409.

Aurisia, blindness (Gr. ἀορασία), ii. 234.

Autenticum, Auctenticum, an authentic instrument ; generally applied to papal letters or bulls, ii. 281, 500 ; iii. 13, 40, 337.

Autenticus, having authority by office or position, ii. 476 ; iii. 26, 63, 348. In i. 168, it means *customary*, in reference to an oath.

Avitæ, ancestral ; the term applied to the laws of Henry I. in the reign of his grandson, i. 331, 338 ; used improperly, i. 164.

B.

Baculus igneus, a meteor, i. 44.

Baculus pastoralis, pastoral staff or crosier of bishops and abbats, Fr. *crosse*, i. 47, 207, &c.

Baculatus, beaten with staves, ii. 9.

Bajulare, to carry, bear, i. 353, 446 ; ii. 110, 313 ; iii. 70.

Bajulus, bearer (of the king's seal), ii. 440 ; iii. 67, 281 ; (of money), iii. 7.

Bajulator, bearer (of the Cross), i. 442.

Balcanus. *See* Baucan.

Balista, an engine to throw darts, i. 142 ; ii. 94, 287 ; a cross-bow, Fr. *arbaleste*, i. 90, 123 ; ii. 50, 197.

Balistarius, a cross-bow man, i. 92 ; ii. 35 ; iii. 236, &c.

Balliva, jurisdiction of the sheriff, bailywick, i. 332 ; ii. 11, 22.

Ballivus, an officer or bailiff, Fr. *bailli*, 122.

Banera, a banner, iii. 112.

Barbecana, barbican, outer fortification, Fr. *barbacane*, i. 461.

Barnagium, the baronage, ii. 267, 337, &c.

Baro, a title given to the principal citizens of London, iii. 322. See the *Chronica Majora*, pp. 863, 974, ed. Wats.

Baronia, the barony or land held *in capite* of the crown by bishops and abbats, i. 13 ; ii. 279, 436, 488 ; iii. 135, &c.

Baselard, Baseling, base or deteriorated coin, so called in 1158, i. 309 *n.* ; iii. 194.

Baucan, Balcanus, the Standard of the Templars, ii. 399, 433. The blason of *gules and argent*, in p. 433, is false, as it should be *argent and sable* (as in MS. B.). *See* Jac. de Vitriaco, *Hist. Hierosol.*, p. 1084. The name is derived from the Fr. *Bauçeant.*

Beguini, Beguinæ, Begewini, a religious sect, chiefly of women, in Germany, ii. 476 ; iii. 93 *n.*

Beneficium, ecclesiastical benefice or living, i. 317, 328 ; ii. 183 ; Beneficiatus, ii. 292, 335.

Biblioteca, the Bible, ii. 110.

Biga, a cart or chariot, with two wheels, i. 171, 309 ; ii. 94, 190 ; iii. 342.

Bisancius, Bisantius, a gold coin called bezant, from having been struck at Byzantium, i. 155, 430 ; ii. 24, 234, &c.

Bladum, crop of wheat, Fr. *bléd*, ii. 190, 243, 338.

Braccæ, drawers, Fr. *braies*, ii. 7 ; Braccatus, ii. 28.

Bravium, prize given at games, iii. 325.

Broidum, broth, ii. 407.

Bubalus, a buffalo, iii. 119.

Buccella, small piece of meat, i. 166, 362.

Bulgares, a term applied to the Albigeois heretics, otherwise called *Paterini*, ii. 388.

Bulla, the gold seal affixed to imperial documents, ii. 44 ; also the papal bull, ii. 258, 472 ; Bullatus, i. 314 ; ii. 146, 312, 378.

Buza, a large ship or transport, Fr. *busse*, ii. 21 ; iii. 210.

C.

Cadius (written incorrectly *Cadmis*), a magistrate, judge, *Cadi*, i. 194.

Calumnia, suit, action, i. 324.

Cambiare, to exchange money, iii. 301. *See* Escambiare.

Cambium, exchange of money, iii. 303. *See* Escambium.

Camera, chamber or treasury to contain money and muniments, ii. 35, 501, 502; iii. 26.

Camerarius, chamberlain, i. 230.

Campana, a bell, i. 370; ii. 330.

Cancellaria, chancellorship, i. 317, 329; Court of Chancery, iii. 339.

Cancellarius, chancellor, i. 43, 231, &c.; of a church, ii. 310.

Canthathur, chanter, Fr., from the Lat. *cantator*, ii. 59.

Capa, Cappa, cope for the choir, i. 409; ii. 6, 407; iii. 344; hood, i. 248; ii. 126.

Capitaneus, leader, chief, ii. 155, 249; iii. 72.

Capitulum, chapter-house, i. 291; ii. 105, 205, &c.; chapter, i. 318; ii. 10, 467.

Capucium, hood of a robe, i. 248; ii. 109.

Caravana, caravan, ii. 30; iii. 212.

Caravanarius, a person in charge of the caravan, ii. 30.

Carbonator, charcoal-burner, i. 170.

Carrochium, the *Carrochio*, or Standard of the Milanese, captured by the emperor Frederic II. at the battle of Corte Nuova, ii. 401; iii. 275. When this Standard was captured, it could not by custom of the Italians be replaced, except by re-conquest, or by grace of the emperor. Du Cange has a long article on this word.

Caruca, plough, i. 180; ii. 317; iii. 339. In the survey made in 1254 of the manors of the Religious Orders, a return was ordered of the number of ploughs which were *propriæ*, *i.e.* belonged to the land; *consuetudinariæ*, customary, which owed service; and *precariæ*, borrowed or hired.

Carucagium, tax on plough-lands, Fr. *charruage*, ii. 87, 344.

Carucata, plough-land, or hide of land, containing sixty acres, i. 340; ii. 75, 85.

Casalia, villages, ii. 373.

Cassatio, annulling, ii. 166, 418, 488.

Castellania, castellany, the lordship belonging to a castle, i. 329.

Castellanus, castellan, custodian or constable of a castle, i. 19; ii. 99, 158, 208, &c.

Catalla, goods, chattels, i. 326; ii. 48; iii. 335.

Caursini, Cahursini, Caorsins, usurers, money-changers or bankers, said to have derived their name from Cahors in Quercy; ii. 382, 383; iii. 90, 272, 316.

Cellerarius, cellerar of a monastery, i. 361.

Celia, ale made from wheat; ii. 65, 299 *n.*; iii. 216. *See* Orosius, lib. v. c. 7, as quoted by Du Cange.

Cervisia, ale or beer made from barley, Fr. *cervoise*, ii. 299.

Cervicosus, stiff-necked, i. 66; Cervicose, ii. 95.

Cespitatio, a stumbling, iii. 302.

Choricus, composer of verse? ii. 240.

Chorus, the choir, ii. 8.

Cicera, for Sicera, cider, ii. 191.

Cilicium, hair cloth, i. 364, 367; Cilicinus, i. 364; Ciliciatus, iii. 139.

Cinctorium, sword-belt, ii. 249.

Cisalpinare, to cross to this side of the Alps, i. 59.

Cismarinus, on this side of the channel, ii. 137, 242.

Cisimus, Cisiminus, fur called ermine, iii. 39, 304. Du Cange refers to a Gloss. Lat. Gall. in which it is explained, *vers et gris*.

Classicum, peal of bells, i. 8, 358; ii. 149; iii. 147.

Clerigaster, a term of contempt applied to an ecclesiastic, iii. 228.

Cliens, an attendant on a knight, an esquire, ii. 221.

Clientela, office or duty, ii. 71, 391.

Cloera is stated in the text, i. 269, to be the popular term for *uter*, and appears to be equivalent to *carcer*, as expressed in the words "Cloere Brien" in Wendover and the *Chronica Majora*. There seems also to be an equivoque (in reference to the name of *Martel*, *i.e.* marteau) between the Norman Fr. *clouere*, an anvil, and *cloure*, a place inclosed within walls, a prison.

Cnipulus, a short knife, i. 394. It is borrowed from Diceto, col. 587. Du Cange has *Canipulus*.

Coctanus, i. 234. The sense seems uncertain. According to some it means a measure of grain, but Barthius *ap.* Ludewig *Reliq. Manuscr.* interprets it quince, Fr. *coin*, Germ. *quitten*. *See* Du Cange *in v.* The word is borrowed from Olivarius Scholasticus *De captione Damiettæ*, p. 1190, but is printed *coitanum* by Bongars.

Coga, Cogo, a long sailing ship, cog, Fr. *coquet*, i. 12; ii. 178, 227, 228.

Collectæ, taxes, tribute, ii. 499 *n.*

Colloquium, conference, parliament, Fr. *colloque*, i. 457; ii. 100, 153, 253, 329.

Comitatus, earldom, i. 21; ii. 3, 296, 417, 428.

Commensalis, dinner companion, i. 362.

Commessatio for Comissatio, feasting, revel, i. 65, 94.

Communa, community, iii. 51.

Concanonicus, canon of the same church, ii. 458.

Concubinarius, keeping a concubine, i. 191, 234.

Conductus, safe-conduct, i. 100; ii. 431, 504.

Constabularius, constable (of Chester), ii. 124; (of Dover castle), ii. 504; (of the royal army), iii. 334.

Consul, count, earl, i. 45, 48, 167, 207, &c.; once used for duke, iii. 159.

Convicaneus, neighbour, inhabitant of the same place, i. 401.

Convictor, fellow-conqueror, ii. 221.

Coopertorium, roof, iii. 336.

Cortina, hangings, curtain, ii. 109.

Crepundia, an infant's toys (?), i. 187. In a passage quoted by Du Cange from D'Achery's *Spicileg.* tom. ii. p. 341, we read of "novi partus *crepundia.*"

Crisma, the oil consecrated by a bishop for anointment, i. 337; ii. 398; iii. 196.

Cruciferi, an order of monks who bore crosses in their hands, Crutched Friars, ii. 496; iii. 318.

Crucesignatio, crusade, ii. 54, 259.

Cucullare, to make a monk, iii. 340.

Culcitra, pillow, mattrass, i. 142, 144.

Culvertagium, cowardice, from Fr. *cul verter*, ii. 133.

Cumera is used as equivalent to *acervus*, a heap, ii. 225. In Du Cange it is explained only as "vas frumentarium."

Cuneus, coining-irons, iii. 27.

Cuppa, a cup, ii. 47; iii. 342.

Curialitas, courtesy, i. 316.

Custodia, wardship, charge, i. 334; ii. 260, 330, 342, 344; retinue (?), ii. 337; garrison, iii. 81.

D.

Dalmatica, royal mantle, worn at coronations, ii. 7.

Dapifer, butler of the king's household, i. 230, 353.

Deafforestare, to reduce laud from forest into culture or pasture, ii. 269, 273.

Debriatus, inebriated, i. 448; soaked, iii. 339.

Deceptatio for Disceptatio, ii. 203, 289, &c.

Decretista, a student in decretals or canon law, iii. 57.

Dedicius, Dediticius, one who has submitted, or surrendered, without conditions, i. 14.

Deforciare, to deny justice, i. 326.

Degradare, to degrade, i. 191.

Deliberatio, delivery, release, ii. 54.

Deordinare, to deprive of holy orders, ii. 254.

Deprædativus, Deprædatorius, hurtful, ii. 511; iii. 43.

Detrimen, perhaps an error for Detrimentum, ii. 326.

Detunicare, to reveal, ii. 32, 314; Detunicatus, iii. 112.

Dextrarius, a charger used in battle, ii. 211.

Dieta, journey of one day, i. 171, 282, 339; a journey in general, ii. 40.

Diffidare, ii., 358; iii. 269, is usually explained "to defy," but the simpler sense, to declare the fealty of a person void, seems here preferable; and is confirmed by the text of the *Chronica Majora*, p. 398, ed. Wats. Du Cange says, "proprie est a fide, quam quis alicui debet, per litteras deficere, nostris *deffier*, *desafier*. Utuntur passim scriptores hoc significatu."

Diffidatio, voidance of fealty, ii. 358.

Diffiduciare, the same as Diffidare, ii. 137; Diffiduciatus, i. 5.

Diffiguratus, disguised, ii. 161, 220.

Diffinitivus for Definitivus, ii. 300.

Disconsulere, to dissuade, ii. 103.

Discrasia, distemper, bad temperament (Gr. δυσκρασία), ii. 444.

Dispersonatus, dishonoured, i. 353. In ed. Wats, p. 705, the form is Depersonatus.

Dissinteria, dysentery, i. 28; Dissintericus, ii. 288.

Distringere, to distrain, ii. 158.

Dolabrum, an axe, ii. 53.

Dominationes, demesnes (?), ii. 11.

Dominicus, demesne, i. 180, 319; ii. 258, 343.

Domicella, damsel, i. 236.

Dracena, a rudder, called in the vernacular *lofa* or *loof*, ii. 219; iii. 241. *See* my Glossarial Remarks on Layamon, iii. 476.

Draco, dragon, a meteor so termed, ii. 424.

Dromundus, Dromunda, a large transport ship, Fr. *dromon*, i. 429; ii. 23.

Ducatus, safeguard, ii. 504.

Duellum, combat by duel, i. 40, 134, 320; ii. 325.

E.

Ecclesiola, small church, chapel, i. 241, 271, 303.

Effectuose, for Affectuose, effectually, i. 316.

Effigiatus, figured, portrayed, ii. 448.

Effossor, a miner, i. 460.

Elefantinus, leprous, i. 429.

Ementulari, to be emasculated, i. 235; Ementulatus, ii. 52, 381. *See* Mentula.

Emungere, to extort money, i. 21; ii. 121, &c.

Emunctio, extortion of money, iii. 256; Emunctivus, ii. 498.

Emyr, Oriental prince, governor of a city, i. 194.

Equitatura, horses, ii. 304, 479 *n.*; iii. 229.

Erhdune, Erthdune, earthquake, a rumbling noise in the earth, iii. 20, 299.

Escambiator, money-changer, banker, ii. 382; iii. 274. *See* Cambiare.

Escambium, market, ii. 40; exchange, ii. 62. *See* Cambium.

Escarletum, scarlet cloth, iii. 39, 394. *See* Scarletum.

Eschaeta, escheats, ii. 28.

Esclavus, slave, ii. 250. *See* Sclavus.

Esterlingi, sterlings, money of approved weight, i. 458; ii. 136, 224, 462; iii. 57. In the *Chronica Majora* of Matthew Paris, p. 418, the sterling is taken as equivalent to a penny, and by the stat. 3 Edw. I., "denarius Angliæ, qui vocatur *Sterlingus*, ponderabit 32 grana frumenti." *See* Sterlingus.

Eulogium, good news, ii. 441; discourse or hymn (?), ii. 474. In the plural, i. 369, Eulogia are, apparently, the anthems or lessons used on the 10th December and following days. *See* the Glossary at the end of the Rev. R. Littledale's "Offices of the Eastern Church," *v.* Εὐλογητάρια.

EXAMITUM, cloth of gold, or silk worked with gold, Fr. *samit*, iii. 338. *See* SAMITUM.

EXCUSATORIUS, excusatory, ii. 264.

EXENIUM, gift, present, i. 299 ; ii. 18, 44. *See* XENIUM.

EXHEREDATOR, disinheritor, ii. 229.

EXPEDIENTER, quickly, i. 180.

EXPEDITARI, to be lawed, or have the ball of the foot cut out, according to the forest laws regarding dogs, ii. 273.

EXPOLIATURUS, about to despoil, i. 164.

EXSUFFLARE, to destroy, extirpate, i. 330 ; iii. 94, 318.

F.

FABRICARE, to beat, knock, iii. 116. In Du Cange the meaning is, "clavis figere."

FALESIA, a hill, Fr. *Falaise*, ii. 217 ; iii. 240.

FASTIGIOSUS, stately, sumptuous, ii. 400 ; FASTIGIOSE, ii. 478.

FEMORALIA, drawers, ii. 280, 346.

FEODARIUS, FEUDARIUS, a feudatory vassal, holding of a superior lord, ii. 135.

FEODUM, FEUDUM, a fee or fief, i. 28, 322 ; FEODUM LAICUM, ii. 279.

FEOFFAMENTUM, feoffment, ii. 380.

FERETRUM, shrine, i. 13, 214 ; ii. 63 ; iii. 94. *See* the *Gesta Abbat.*, vol. i. p. 69, ed. Riley.

FIDELITAS, fealty, i. 25, 28, 40, &c.

FILIASTRA, step-daughter, ii. 428.

FINIS, a fine, ii. 201 ; iii. 335.

FIRMITAS, a stronghold, fortress, i. 255, 264, 299.

FISCUS, exchequer, revenue, ii. 65, 106, 342.

FLEUBOTOMIA, blood-letting (Gr. φλεβοτομία), i. 169.

FOCARIA, a priest's concubine, i. 243.

FORESTARUIS, forester, one of the king's officers, ii. 141 ; iii. 228.

FORISFACERE, to forfeit, i. 179 ; ii. 9 ; FORISFACTUM, a forfeit, i. 326.

FORISFACTURA, forfeiture, i. 179.

FORIS-BANNIATUS, an outlaw, ii. 494.

FORMIDOLOSITAS, fear, i. 80, 442.

FRONTOSE, arrogantly, i. 203.

FRONTOSUS (apparently for FRUCTUOSUS), beneficial (?), ii. 250.

FRATRISSARE, to take after the brother, i. 181, 196 ; formed in the same manner as *Matrissare* and *Patrissare*.

FRUSTATORIUS, for FRUSTRATORIUS, putting-off, nugatory, ii. 31.

FUGATIO, chace, hunting, iii. 129, 263.

FUNDIBALARIUS, a slinger, iii. 241.

G.

GALEA, GALEIA, a galley, i. 83, 199 ; ii. 73 ; (*triremis*) ii. 21 ; (*rostrata*) ii. 23.

GALEATUS, a seaman on board a galley, i. 83 ; helmeted soldier, i. 227 ; ii. 73.

GARCIO, groom, horse-boy, Fr. *garçon*, ii. 145.

GARDA, ward, custody, iii. 336.

GELDA, tax, i. 173, 180.

GENIALIS (*homo*), natural-born subject, ii. 142 ; (*funus*) native, iii. 332.

GENIMINA, sprouts, roots, i. 224. Used in Bibl. Vulg., Matth. xxvi. 29.

GEOMANTICUS, one who practices geomancy, ii. 240.

GESA, a long heavy javelin, i. 14. In Cæsar, *de Bello Gall.* iii. 4. 1. *gæsum.*

GIRIVAGUS, stroller, i. 366.

GROSSUS, thick, Fr. *gros*, ii. 227.

GUERRA, war, ii. 64, 171, 343, &c. *See* WERRA.

GULERUN, French term for hood, i. 248 ; from Lat. *galerum.*

GULOSITAS, gluttony, i. 436.

H.

HANELACIUS, a dagger or knife worn at the girdle, ii. 368 ; *anelace* in Chaucer, *Cant. Tales,* l. 359.

HASTILUDIUM, tournament, joust, i. 409, 436 ; ii. 175 ; iii. 124, 234 ; applied to a tilt with reeds, ii. 26.

HIDA, hide of land, as much as suffices to one plough, i. 210, 252. *See* CARUCATA.

HOMAGIUM, homage, fealty, i. 8, 16, 25, &c.

HOMULLULUS, small man, manikin, iii. 60.

HONOR, lordship, territorial dignity, Fr. *seigneurie*, ii. 5, 258, 274, &c. ; iii. 26. *See* Hen. Hunt. Epist. ad Walterum, *ap.* Wharton, *Anglia Sacra,* ii. 697.

HORÆ CANONICÆ, services of the church at certain hours, i. 31 ; ii. 143.

HOSPITARE, to lodge, dwell, ii. 407.

HOSPITIUM, house, lodging, Fr. *hospice*, i. 57 ; ii. 30, 120, 407 ; iii. 212 ; household, ii. 389.

HOSTAGIUM, hostage, ii. 250.

HUSSAR, transport ship for cavalry, Fr. *Huissier*, iii. 232. *See* Du Cange, in v. *Huisserium.*

I.

ICTERICIA, jaundice (Gr. ἰκτεριάω), ii. 429.

IGNIS GRÆCUS, Greek fire, used in warfare, ii. 23, 228. *See* the *Additamenta*, p. 167, ed. Wats.

IMPLACITARE, to implead, i. 252.

IMPRISIUS, associate, adherent, ii. 222, 237 ; iii. 247.

INCARTARE, to grant by charter, ii. 270 ; iii. 25 ; INCARTATUS, iii. 232.

INCUBA, female demon, i. 288 ; iii. 61.

INCUBATOR, intruder, i. 362.

INDISTANTER, immediately, i. 283, 359 ; ii. 63.

INFEODARI, to be enfeoffed, iii. 63 ; INFEODATUS, iii. 62.

IMPIGNORARE, to pledge, iii. 70, 73.

INFISCARE, to take to the use of the exchequer, i. 464.

INFORESTATUS, land converted into forest, ii., 497.

INFRUNITUS, foolish, senseless, i. 66; ii. 245.

INHIBITORIÆ (*literæ*), prohibitory, Fr. *lettres de defence*, ii. 285.

INSELLATUS, seated in the saddle, iii. 91.

INSTAURUM, stock, store, iii. 250. *See* STAURUM.

INSULTUS, assault, i. 83, 461; ii. 72, &c.

INTERBAJULUS, go-between, messenger, i. 105.

INTOXICARE, to poison, i. 140; ii. 407; iii. 272; INTOXICATUS, ii. 443; iii. 48. *See* TOXICATUS.

INVESTIRE, to invest in an earldom, ii. 417.

INVESTITURA, ecclesiastical investiture, i. 52, 191.

J.

JOCULATOR, juggler, i. 117; iii. 277.

JUSTICIARE, to do justice to, i. 326.

JUSTICIARIA, office of justiciary, ii. 69; iii. 83, 126.

JUSTICIARIUS, justiciary, i. 27; ii. 11, 22; JUSTICIARIUS ITINERANS, ii. 263; iii. 335.

L.

LAGA, law, i. 180.

LAPICIDA, a mason, ii. 318.

LAVACRUM, iii. 344; presented by the queen of France in 1255 to king Henry III. It was in the form of a peacock, and said to be "lapis pretiosus, qui *Perla* dicitur, ex auro et argento et saphiris, sicut verus pavo, orbiculatus." The meaning of *lavacrum* here is doubtful. Dr. Giles translates it "washing-basin," and Mr. Yonge (*Matth. Westm.*) "a stone bath;" but the French translator renders it "aiguière," and thinks it is the same "qu'on montre encore à Windsor parmi les joyaux de la couronne," valued at 30,000*l.*, tom. viii. p. 98.

LECTICA, a litter, i. 190, 286, 465.

LECTISTERNIUM, mattrass, cushion, i. 364; ii. 191, 214.

LEOPARDUS, leopard, an animal said to resemble a hunting dog or mastiff, and to be the offspring of a pard and lioness, ii. 380, 392. Three of these animals were sent by the emperor Frederic II. to Henry III., because he bore three leopards on his shield of arms.

LEPORARIUS, a hunting-dog, greyhound (?) ii. 380.

LIBRATA, a librate of land, containing 52 acres, ii. 125, 194, 349; iii. 134.

LIENTERIA, looseness, diarrhœa (Gr. λιεντερία), i. 436; iii. 206.

LIGANCIA, allegiance, i. 288, 392; ii. 13, 460.

LIGIUS (*dominus*), sovereign lord, i. 325; ii. 368; (*homo*) liegeman, vassal, i. 392; ii. 64.

LINTHEAMINA, cloths, napkins, sheets, i. 250, 408; ii. 283, 482.

LISURA, border or hem of woollen cloth, ii. 65.

LOFA, LOOF. *See* DRACENA.

Losinga, flatterer, gloser, i. 147; an epithet applied to Herbert, bishop of Hereford.

Lucius, a pike, Fr. *luce*, i. 275.

Lupus, a disease called "le mal de Saint Loup," or "sacer ignis;" paralysis, iii. 57.

M.

Maceria, a low wall (?), iii. 42, 305.

Macerinus, cup made of the maple tree, a mazer, ii. 330; *maselin*, in Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, l. 13,781.

Magnates, nobles, i. 8, 23, 177, &c.

Mahomaria, mosque, i. 462.

Maleveisine, French name of an engine to throw stones, meaning "ill-neighbour," i. 48; ii. 183.

Mancipium, slave, of base position, ii. 272.

Mangonellus, catapult, a warlike engine for throwing stones, i. 92.

Mantea, mantle, ii. 7.

Marbotinus, a Spanish gold coin, a maravedi, i. 397.

Marca, a denomination of money (in gold or silver), and estimated in value at 160 pence or 13*s.* 4*d.*, i. 153, 192, 424. See *Gesta Abbat.*, vol. i. p. 204.

Marchia, the March of Wales, ii. 131.

Marchio, Marchisius, marquis, marchese, i. 30, 429, 431, 4[illegible]0; ii. 25, 43, 474; iii. 100, 335; the Lords Marchers of Wales, ii. 487.

Marescalcia, office of marshal, the marshalsea, ii. 371; iii. 271.

Marescallus, marshal of the camp, harbinger, ii. 16, 30, 150; of the army, ii. 150, 156; of the king's household, ii. 504; iii. 256; Magnus Marescallus, ii. 196, 206, 216, &c.

Margalerius, churchwarden, an official of the church of St. Geneviève at Paris, Fr. *marguillier*, i. 278.

Marinellus, mariner, ii. 138.

Mariscus, the marshlands of Lincolnshire, Huntingdonshire, and Isle of Ely, ii. 189; iii. 340.

Maritagium, dowry, i. 178; ii. 84; iii. 133; right of disposing of minors in marriage, ii. 344; marriage, ii. 87.

Marlera, a marl-pit, ii. 214.

Martellus, a hammer, Fr. *marteau*, i. 269. Of Geoffrey, earl of Anjou, father of Henry II., it was said, "merito *Martellus* nominatus est, quasi suos conterens hostes." *Hist. Andegav. Consul.*

Mastinus, a mastiff, Fr. *mastin*, ii. 488.

Mategrifun, French name of a castle built by Richard I., and signifying "subduer of the Greeks," ii. 17; iii. 210.

Matrissare, to take after the mother, i. 188; iii. 178.

Mensa Rotunda or Tabula Rotunda, a military sport, differing from a tournament, in the greater number, apparently, engaged at once in a *melée*, iii. 124, 322.

Mersor, a diver, i. 429; ii. 23.

Militia, cavalry, i. 274; military tenants of St. Alban's abbey, iii. 344.

Minare, to lead or guide, i. 120; iii. 112; Minaturus, iii. 136, 326.

Mitratus, wearing a mitre, i. 162.

Modius, cask of wine, Fr. *muid,* i. 411.

Monetagium, coinage, i. 179.

Monetarius, moneyer, coiner, i. 235.

Monocubitalis, of the size of a cubit, ii. 33.

Monstrari, to be mustered, iii. 134, 325.

Montanarius, a mountaineer, i. 450.

Montisgaudium, Montjoie! the battle-cry of the French, and used by Constantine Fitz-Olaf, in the disturbance at London, ii. 251; iii. 230. *See* Roquefort, in v. *Mont-joe.*

Morosus, tardy, procrastinated, i. 35, 165; iii. 244; Morosius, i. 72.

Mortalissime, grievously, mortally, ii. 273.

Municeps, castellan or constable, ii. 44.

Municipium, fortress, i. 71, 99, 110, 191, &c.

Murdrum, Murthra, murder, i. 180; ii. 322.

Muscipulare, to entrap, i. 225.

N.

Nundinæ, fair or market, i. 406; ii. 75, 199.

O.

Obedientiarius, sub-officer of a monastery, i. 240; iii. 336. See *Gesta Abbat.*, vol. i. p. 298.

Obgrunnire, to murmur, ii. 24, 361 *n.*; iii. 111.

Obnoxius for Obnixius, i. 35, 41, 361; ii. 93, 206.

Obrizum, pure gold, ii. 18, 241.

Obsequium, divine service, obsequies, i. 98, 247, 314; iii. 271; service (to the king), ii. 265.

Ocularium, eye-hole (of a helmet), ii. 212.

Officina, offices attached to a monastery, i. 23, 37, 222.

Oloserica, robes of silk, silk stuffs, i. 78, 103, 109, &c.

Omnipotentatus, widely spread dominion, i. 207; ii. 342 *n.*; iii. 170.

Onerifer, transport (ship), i. 461.

Ordinari, to be ordained, i. 326; Ordinati, the clergy in orders, ii. 241.

Ordinarius, the ordinary, bishop, iii. 138.

O Sapientia, introit of the anthem for 10 December, i. 359.

P.

Paagium, road-tax or toll, Fr. *péage,* iii. 63.

Pacitator, probably for Placitator, pleader, i. 168.

Palefridus, a palfrey, hack, i. 213; ii. 479 *n.*; iii. 57, 99 *n.*

Palla, hangings, curtain, iii. 344. *See* the *Chronica Majora,* p. 903, ed. Wats.

Pallium, pall of an archbishop, i. 49, 219, &c.; bequeathed by St. Edmund to his sister, ii. 448; a woman's robe, i. 201.

Parapsis, a small oval dish (Gr. παροψίς), i. 194.

Pardus, a pard, panther, ii. 392.

Pares, the twelve peers of France, ii. 64; pares literarum, pairs of legal writs, ii. 263.

Parlamentum, conference, ii. 197; parliament, ii. 393, 397, 453; iii. 5, 16, 33, 125, 136, 344. This term is first used in the latter sense in 1237 (not in 1239, as stated by the French translator of Matthew Paris). It is equivalent to *colloquium* in ii. 397; and so in Joan. de Janua, "colloquium, quod vulgo dicitur *parlamentum*."

Pascha clausum, the first Sunday after Easter, or "Quasimodo," ii. 154; iii. 51.

Passagium, passage (of the Cross) crusade, ii. 229, 403.

Paterini, a sect of heretics, so called, ii. 388. *See* Du Cange, *in v.*

Pax, the vessel containing the Holy Sacrament, ii. 8. [The passage is so understood by Wats.]

Peciatus, pieced, patched (garments), ii. 109.

Pensus, sum of money due at a fixed period, iii. 343.

Penula, tippet (?) (of ermine), iii. 304.

Peplum, wimple or covering for the head, ii. 28.

Perendinare, Perhendinare, to tarry, dwell, i. 190, 234, 281.

Perla, a pearl, iii. 344.

Persicus, a peach, ii. 191.

Persona, beneficed clerk, incumbent, ii. 204.

Petraria, warlike engine to throw stones, i. 81, 92, 140; ii. 24, 94, &c.

Picardi, scholars from Flanders so called, ii. 308.

Pilleum, cap, i. 364; (royal), ii. 7.

Pincerna, butler, cup-bearer, i. 230.

Pitancia, pittance, the portion of food allotted to monks, iii. 115 *n.*

Placita, pleas, i. 21, 326; ii. 156.

Plecta, plait, tress (of twigs or reeds), iii. 20, 337.

Pleggagium, pledge, surety, iii. 231.

Plegius, Plegium, pledge, i. 323, 332.

Pomacium, cider, ii. 191; iii. 236.

Pomerium, orchard, i. 18, 29; ii. 186, 213.

Postulare, to demand or elect as archbishop or bishop, ii. 337, 412 *n.*; iii. 86, 181; Postulatus, i. 320; ii. 29, 418.

Postulatio, the demanding or election of a bishop, ii. 146, 337, 455.

Potestas, chief magistrate or governor of Milan and Genoa, Ital. *Podestà*, ii. 401, 485; iii. 275.

Potionare, to poison, i. 237; Potionatus, i. 445; ii. 280, 398, 427; iii. 92.

Præambulus, fore-goer, predecessor, i. 182; iii. 111.

Præceptor, Provincial Head of the Order of Templars, ii. 399. *See* Jac. de Vitriaco, *Hist. Hieros.*, cap. 65.

Præcircinatus, a report previously circulated, iii. 249.

Prælacia, Prælatio, ecclesiastical dignity, prelacy, i. 335 ; ii. 100, 382.

Prælatus, chief magistrate, i. 350. *See* Du Cange *in v.*

Præloquium, previous report, iii. 7.

Præmunitio for Præmonitio, forewarning, i. 170 ; ii. 128.

Prænosticum for Pronosticum, presage, prophecy, i. 164, 205 ; iii. 90.

Præpectus, a cuirass, i. 85.

Præpositus, provost, ii. 308 ; iii. 14, 340.

Præsentia, a present, i. 360.

Præsentialiter, personally, ii. 412.

Præstigium, trick, wile, iii. 258.

Presbiterium, the chancel or choir, destined for the reception of vestments, sacred vessels, and books, i. 363 ; ii. 330 ; iii. 125, 337.

Primas, primatial, i. 46 ; ii. 409.

Primates, chiefs, i. 65, 397, &c.

Prisæ, fines, ii. 343 ; tax on merchandise or provisions, iii. 72.

Priso, a prisoner, ii. 221, 452.

Procuratia, Procurancia, Procuratio, procuration, the sum paid to the bishop or archdeacon on his visitation, ii. 183, 276, 282, 430 ; iii. 300.

Prodigialis, wonderful, ii. 109, 387 ; Prodigialiter, ii. 220, 482.

Pronosticum, a prognostic, presage, i. 243, 252, 286, &c.

Propugnaculum, battlement, parapet, i. 127, 145 ; ii. 17, 228, 359 ; iii. 42 ; Propugnaculatus, ii. 23 ; iii. 183.

Prothoforestarius, chief forester, ii. 446 ; iii. 282.

Provisio, a benefice to be provided for a foreigner by papal mandate, ii. 495 ; iii. 58, 113, 144. Du Cange refers the word to the papal mandate itself.

Q

Quadrivium, the mathematical course of learning, including arithmetic, geometry, music, and astronomy, ii. 376 ; iii. 119.

Quartenarius, quartan fever, ague, ii. 403.

Quintena, game of quintain, iii. 325.

R.

Rati, Ratones, rats, i. 37.

Ratiocinium, a reckoning, accompt, i. 329 ; ii. 342, 366.

Rato (*literæ de*), authentic, determined, ii. 104, 110, 310.

Recidivare, to fall back, relapse into, ii. 394.

Refectorium, refectory, ii. 330, 491 ; iii. 45 *n.*

Regales ! the battle-cry of the English royalists, i. 85 ; ii. 71 ; iii. 230. It is noticed also by Ordericus Vitalis, at the battle of Bovines, in 1119, lib. xii. c. 11.

Regere, to exercise the office of regent in the schools ; a scholastic term, iii. 330.

Regia, the king's palace, ii. 445; iii. 25, 99; Regia Solis, palace so named at Rome, ii. 457; iii. 92. The French translator of Matthew Paris suggests the true reading to be *Septa Solis*, a corruption of *Septigonium*. See his note, tom. v. pp. 533, 537.

Regratiare, to return thanks, i. 354, 360.

Relevium, the payment or relief due from a vassal to the superior lord, ii. 334.

Reliquiæ, property left by an intestate bishop, ii. 6.

Respondethur, the person who makes the responses in chanting, ii. 59.

Revestitus, explained in Du Cange, "sacris vestibus indutus," i. 358.

Ribaldus, ribald, low person, i. 103.

Rivera, river, ii. 82.

Roba, royal mantle or robe, i. 213, 248.

Romescot, payment made to the pope, under the title of St. Peter's pence, iii. 163.

Rosula, rosette, small rose, ii. 79.

Rotuli, apparently has the same meaning as *Annales* or *Historiæ*, ii. 131, 135, 452; Rotuli Annalium, i. 301; iii. 33, 65; Rotuli Vicecomitum, pipe-rolls (?), ii. 351.

Ruptarius, free-rider, mounted mercenary, of Brabant and Flanders, Fr. *routier*, Germ. *reuter*, i. 382, 412; ii. 59, 84, 170, &c.

S.

Saisire, to take in possession, i. 332; Saisitus, i. 325.

Saisina, seisin, possession, i. 325.

Sarcofagus, a marble tomb, i. 53; ii. 261, 458.

Scaccarium, the exchequer, ii. 118, 156, 335; a chequered cloth, or board, borne at the coronation of Richard I., ii. 7.

Scambiator. *See* Escambiator.

Sclava, Sclavus, a slave, i. 83, 430. *See* Esclavus.

Scottalia, interpreted by Manwood and Wats to mean taverns for the sale of beer, but Spelman thinks it refers to tallage or toll, ii. 141.

Scrinium, sepulchral chest, i. 404.

Scrofa, a warlike engine, used to undermine the walls of a fortress, i. 140.

Scutagium, scutage, a tax levied on the military tenants of the crown, Fr. *escuage*, ii. 329, 344, 380, 466; iii. 136.

Selda, a shop, ii. 65; iii. 216.

Senescalcia, office of seneschal, iii. 115.

Senescallus, seneschal of the king's household, whose duty it was to wait at table, i. 251, 353; ii. 389; of Anjou, ii. 3; of Normandy, ii. 372; of Gascony, ii. 471; of France, iii. 134.

Sequela, suite, retinue, followers, ii. 120, 163, 230; the men attached to some mills at Rouen, ii. 62.

Serpens ignitus, a firework used in war to ignite the enemy's engines, ii. 23.

Serviens, a foot-soldier, used in distinction to *miles*, a horseman or knight, Fr. *sergent*, ii. 72, 166, 181, 302, 328 ; " servientes equites, qui vices poterant equitum adimplere," ii. 209.

Sextarius, a measure of wheat, ii. 23. According to Hen. Hunt., it was a horse-load. *See* Du Cange, *in v.*

Signum, a small bell, ii. 251, 346 ; iii. 147.

Signipotens, worker of miracles, iii. 13 ; Signipotentissima, ii. 233.

Silentiarius, special secretary of the pope, i. 367.

Simplicitas, illiteracy, i. 53.

Smaragdinus, made of emerald, i. 194.

Soldanus, soldan, sultan, i. 104, 134, 151, &c.; Soldanatus, ii. 311.

Soldarius, a soldier, Fr. *soudoier*, i. 450.

Solarium, an upper chamber, a soler, Fr. *solier*, i. 312.

Sophisticus, an impostor, iii. 250.

Sororius, brother-in-law, i. 233 ; ii. 434 ; iii. 63.

Species, spices, i. 250.

Standardum, standard, great military banner, i. 154, 258 ; ii. 401.

Stapha, a stirrup, i. 354.

Staurum, store, stock, ii. 6. *See* Instaurum.

Stagnum, tin, ii. 453 ; Stagnifodina, tin-mine, ii. 453.

Sterlingus, penny sterling (of Tours and Paris), iii. 103, 320. *See* Esterlingus.

Strata, highway, i. 287, 402.

Strepa, a stirrup, 451, 490.

Subarrare, to take earnest of, to be assured of, i. 129 ; iii. 328 ; Subarratus, i. 79, 106, 153, 350 ; ii. 66, 191, 357 ; iii. 338. *See* Arra.

Subarratio, earnest, i. 351.

Subpeditare, Suppeditare, to put under foot, iii. 73, 83.

Subsannare, to jest, speak in mockery, ii. 145, 383.

Subsannatio, jesting, mockery, ii. 11, 463.

Subventio, subsidy, i. 340.

Succursus, succour, i. 211 ; ii. 36, 91 ; iii. 85.

Suffator, iii. 4 ; perhaps a mistake for Suffossor.

Suffossor, one who undermines, sapper, ii. 101.

Summa, a measure of corn, containing eight bushels ; in 1205 it sold for 14*s.* ; in 1244 and 1248 for 2*s.* ; in 1245 for 20*d.*, and in 1253 for 30*d.*, ii. 103, 498, 511 ; iii. 42, 149.

Summarius, a sumpter-horse, i. 287 ; ii. 190, 210, 271 ; iii. 337.

Supra, used in the sense of infra, i. 278, 362, 365 ; iii. 181 ; superius, i. 430.

Sustentamentum, sustenance, ii. 363.

T.

Tabula Rotunda. *See* Mensa Rotunda.

Tabella, tablet (of silver, on which was figured the Passion of Christ), ii. 448.

Taberculum, small tambour, i. 85; for which Taburcinum is the equivalent in Hen. Hunt. and Rog. Wend.

Talares, socks (?), Fr. *talaire*, ii. 109.

Tallia, tax, toll, Fr. *taille*, ii. 499 *n.*; iii. 72, 247.

Talliare, to tax, iii. 232, 280, 295.

Tallagium, tallage, tax, i. 173; iii. 10.

Targia, targe, large shield for defence, i. 142.

Tapecium, a carpet, tapestry, i. 142.

Tenseria, tax or tribute, Fr. *tenserie*, ii. 182. *See* the *Gesta Abbat.*, vol. i. p. 296.

Terratus, banked with earth, ii. 31.

Theca, a shrine, i. 428; ii. 241, 242.

Thelonarius, Thelonearius, Theloneus, a tax-collector, ii. 322 *n.*; iii. 93 *n.*, 317.

Thisis, for Phthisis, consumption, ii. 436.

Tolus, round ball of gold on the top of the vizir's standard, i. 154; vaulted roof or dome (Gr. θόλος), iii. 42.

Torneare, to take part in a tournament, ii. 451.

Torneamentum, tournament, i. 409, 413; ii. 51, 175, &c.

Toxicatus, poisoned, i. 242; iii. 124, 130. *See* Intoxicare.

Tractatus, conference, i. 73, 347.

Transalpinare, to pass the Alps, i. 51; ii. 272.

Trebuculus, Trebunculus, a warlike machine to throw large stones, Fr. *trebuchet*, i. 92, 140, 142.

Treuga, truce, i. 55; ii. 51, 74, &c.

Tribualiter, in regard to kindred (?), iii. 310.

Tridens, a harrow, i. 420.

Triellum, combat of three persons, i. 134.

Tristegus, upper room or cabin of a ship, i. 301. Used in Bibl. Vulg. Gen. vi. 16; and *see* the *Chronica Majora*, p. 731, ed. Wats.

Trista, hunting station, iii. 178. In Chaucer, *triste*, Tr. and Cr. ii. 1534.

Trivium, the course of learning including grammar, rhetoric, and dialectics, ii. 376; iii. 119.

Turbaria, turbary, turf-pit, ii. 252.

U.

Ulmetum, ad Ulmos, the Elms at Smithfield, where malefactors were hung, ii. 57, 251.

Umbraculum, canopy, ii. 7.

Umbratilis, delusive, unsatisfactory, i. 374; ii. 204, 342, 381; iii. 230.

UNCEA, the animal named ounce, said in the text to be "lea notha," i. 37. Malmesbury, from whom the legend is borrowed, has *leopardus*, vol. ii. p. 469.

UTLAGARI, to be outlawed, ii. 131.

V.

VADIUM, a pledge, i. 323.

VASSALLUS, a vassal, liegeman, ii. 162, 167, 307 ; iii. 62.

VEREDARIUS, a carriage or carrier's horse, ii. 191 ; iii. 46. See *Gesta Abbat.* vol. i. p. 259.

VICTRICUS, a father-in-law, ii. 460 ; iii. 66.

VIRGA, pastoral staff, i. 216; sceptre, ii. 6 ; wand of office, ii. 371.

VISIO, view, survey; the same as *Visus*, ii. 273.

VISNETUM, vicinity, i. 324.

VISPILIO, a robber, iii. 285, 306.

VORATRUM, whirlpool, abyss, iii. 299.

VAPINTAKIUM, wapentake, hundred, ii. 11.

W.

WARANTIZARE, to warrant, iii. 129.

WARENNA, warren, ii. 343, iii. 129.

WARENTUM, warrant, ii. 343.

WERRA, war, i. 215, 270, 396, &c. *See* GUERRA.

X.

XENIUM, gift, present, i. 358, 360 ; ii. 47 ; iii. 99, 131. *See* EXENIUM.

XENODOCHIUM, a hospital (Gr. ξενοδοχεῖον), i. 37.

Y.

YRY ! YRY ! a term of reproach used to the Scots, "lingua sua patria," after the battle of the Standard, i. 260. Perhaps connected with the Gaelic, *earadh*, fear. *See* Jamieson's Dict. *in v.* Ery.

Z.

ZELOTIPARE, to covet what belongs to another (Gr. ζηλοτυπέω), i. 189 ; ii. 114.

ZELOTIPIA, a coveting of another's property, i. 188.

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

Abdias, the prophet, buried at Sebaste, i. 159, 163.

Abel, son of Waldemar II., king of Denmark, contests the throne with his brother, ii. 447; iii. 283.

Abergavenny. *See* Bergavenny.

Abgarus, king, buried at Edessa, i. 272; his letter to Jesus Christ, *ib.*

Abingdon (*Habendunia*), injuries caused at, by excessive rains, iii. 54.

Abingdon, Hugh, abbat of, renews the papal sentence against the barons, ii. 174.

Acheldemach, or Field of blood, site of, in the valley of Beennon [Gehennon], i. 161.

Acre (*Achon*, *Acharon*, *Acra*), otherwise called Ptolemais, a maritime city of Phœnicia, arrival of the Crusaders at, i. 136; siege and capture by Baldwin I., i. 199; foundation, and origin of name, *ib.*; added by Baldwin to his kingdom, i. 224; Conrad III. lands at, i. 281; captured by Saladin, i. 443; the forces of king Guy occupy the hill of Toron, near, i. 453; siege of, *ib.*; ii. 18; deaths of nobles at, ii. 20; Philip II. lands at, ii. 23; siege of, by Richard and Philip, and surrender, ii. 24; the walls repaired, ii. 26; the duke of Burgundy not allowed to enter, ii. 32; Richard returns to, ii. 34; plague at, ii. 38; Frederic II. lands at, ii. 303; iii. 257; ships prepared there to carry provisions to the army, ii. 304; a fleet brings supplies to, *ib.*; iii. 257; Richard of Cornwall arrives at, ii. 442; the Hospitallers prevented leaving their house there, ii. 472; Louis IX. taken to, iii. 84, 102; the bones of William Longespée buried at, iii. 126.

Acre, chapel built there by Richard I. in honour of St. Thomas, ii. 14, 38; removed to a better site, and the brethren reformed, ii. 410; iii. 277.

Acre, the bishop of, suffragan to the archbishop of Tyre, i. 161.

Acre, bishops of:

—— [Rufinus], killed at the battle of Marescallia, i. 442.

—— [Jacques de Vitri], accompanies the Crusaders to Damietta, ii. 227.

Adala, daughter of William I., married to Stephen of Blois, i. 31, 251; mother of Stephen of Boulogne, i. 238.

Adam, clerk of archbishop Anselm, his vision respecting William II., i. 172.

Adana, city of [in Cilicia], capture of, i. 88.

Adeliza, daughter of [Godfrey] duke of Louvain, marries Henry I., and is crowned at London, i. 230, 231; remarried to William de Albini, i. 262; held Arundel castle in dowry, *ib.*

Adrian IV., pope, (Nicholas, bishop of Albano,) a native of St. Alban's, created, i. 299; iii. 192; confers pri-

A A 2

Adrian IV.—*cont.*
vileges on St. Alban's, *ib.*; grants a bull for the invasion of Ireland, i. 304; iii. 193; consecrates Frederic I. emperor, i. 305; the episcopal consecrations in Sicily conceded to, i. 306; death of, i. 310; iii. 194.

Adrianus Ælius, emperor of Rome, repairs Jerusalem, and alters the site, i. 160; names it Ælia, *ib.*

Æthelmar or Ælmar [de Lusignan], uterine brother of Henry III., arrives in England, iii. 24, 300; enriched by the king, iii. 26, 31, 301; his election as bishop of Durham rejected, iii. 44, 305; has the church of Wearmouth given him, iii. 67; elected bishop of Winchester, and confirmed by the pope, iii. 86, 107; is the first example of holding a bishopric without consecration, iii. 316; his quarrel with the archbishop of Canterbury, iii. 323, 324; oppresses the monks of Winchester, iii. 340.

Æthelred II., king, son of Eadgar, i. 301; marries Emma, daughter of Richard of Normandy, iii. 159; purchases peace from the Danes, iii. 160, 161; gives the dukedom of Mercia to Eadric Streone, *ib.*; raises a fleet, *ib.*; flies to Normandy, iii. 161; returns to England, and dies, *ib.*

Æthelstan [*a mistake for* Ælfhelm], duke, murdered by Eadric, iii. 160.

Agatha, wife of Eadward, and sister of the emperor Henry II., i. 9, 301; leaves England with her children, and driven by a storm to Scotland, i. 9.

Agosen, castle of, claimed by the king of Castille, i. 396.

Aimeric, chancellor of the Roman see, i. 277.

Aix-la-Chapelle (*Aquisgranum*), Otho IV. crowned king of Germany at, ii. 65; the ancient place of coronation of the emperors, iii. 36; surrenders to the party of William of Holland, who is crowned there, *ib.*, 302, 303.

Akinton, [near Canterbury,] papal licence to build a chapel at, i. 437; iii. 207; the pope afterwards forbids it, iii. 444.

Alban, St., reveals the burial place of St. Amphibalus, i. 401–404; his body carried in procession to meet the reliques, i. 408; his threats against Faukes [de Breaute] verified, ii. 291; necklaces given by Henry III. to his shrine, iii. 114; converted to the faith by Amphibalus, iii. 203.

Albano, bishops of:
—— Walter, brings the pall to archbishop Anselm, i. 51; reconciles William Rufus to the pope, *ib.*
—— Nicholas, created pope. *See* Adrian IV., pope.
—— Henry, cardinal, sent as legate to preach a crusade, i. 445.
—— Alban, consecrates Savaric bishop of Bath, ii. 41.
—— Pelagius, cardinal legate. *See* Pelagius.

Albara, city of, [in Syria,] taken by the count of Toulouse, i. 130.

Albara, Peter of Narbonne made bishop of, i. 130; sent to duke Godfrey, i. 135; left to besiege Archis, i. 136.

Albemarle or Aumarle (*Alba-marla*), county of, subdued by Philip II., ii. 45; given up to Richard, ii. 56.

Albemarle, castle of, captured by William II., i. 39; taken by Louis VII., i. 377; besieged and destroyed by Philip II., ii. 56, 57; iii. 216.

Albemarle, Stephen, count of, assumes the cross, i. 57; joins the duke of Normandy, i. 76; a leader of the third division against Corbaran, i. 120.

Albemarle, William [le Gros], earl of, present at the battle of Alverton, i. 258; at the battle of Lincoln, i. 265; taken prisoner by Louis VII., i. 377.

Albemarle, Baldwin [de Betune], earl of, his death, ii. 127.

Albemarle, William de Forz or Fortibus II., earl of, accompanies John to the North, ii. 170; has the custody of the castles of Rockingham, Sauvey, and

Albemarle, William de Forz—*cont.* Biham, ii. 172; at the siege of Mountsorel, ii. 206; with the army at Newark, ii. 209; at Dover, on the landing of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 221 *n.*; iii. 242; abets the disturbers of the king's peace, ii. 226; his castles captured, ii. 242; retires to Biham, and ravages the neighbourhood, ii. 243, 244; reconciled with the king, ii. 245; joins the earl of Chester in rebellion, ii. 260, 261; appointed a leader of the forces in Britanny, ii. 328; death of his wife Avelina, ii. 427; iii. 280; sets out for Jerusalem, ii. 446; iii. 282.

Albemarle, [Christiana,] countess of, daughter of Alan of Galloway, and wife of [William de Forz III.] earl of, her death, iii. 15.

Albert, cardinal legate, sent to absolve Henry II., i. 372; persuades him to grant free elections to vacant sees, i. 374.

Albert, papal notary, sent to England to prohibit Henry III. from molesting the territories of Louis, iii. 126; again comes to offer the kingdom of Apulia to earl Richard of Cornwall, *ib.*, 323; enriches himself from the English clergy, iii. 127, 323; fails in his negotiations with earl Richard, iii. 132, 323; returns to Rome, *ib.*, 338.

Albigeois, decree made against, as heretics, in the Lateran Council, i. 412; the heresy of, spread over Provence, ii. 143; iii. 254; an army raised against, under prince Louis, ii. 239; suppressed by the preaching of the Mendicant Orders, iii. 94, 318.

Albini, Albeni (*de Albineto, Albeneto*), Odinal de, imprisoned in Corf castle, ii. 166.

Albini, Philip de, accompanies John to the north, ii. 170; at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195; with the army at Newark, ii. 209; appointed one of the chiefs to guard the coasts, ii. 216; his bravery in the naval fight with the French, ii. 219; iii. 241; called "regis informator et magister," ii. 249; goes to the Holy Land, *ib.*; iii. 246; his account of the disastrous affairs of the Crusaders, *ib.*; goes to Acre, ii. 251; accompanies Richard of Cornwall to Gascony, ii. 269, 270; sent as envoy to the transmarine territories, ii. 291; his return, ii. 295; dies, *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Albini, William de [Brito], his bravery at Tenchebrai, i. 204; iii. 179.

Albini, William de [Pincerna]. *See* Arundel, earl of.

Albini, William de, senior, Rochester castle committed to his charge, ii. 163; iii., 232; imprisoned in Corf castle, ii. 166; his castle of Belvoir surrendered to John, ii. 171; released from prison, on paying a fine, ii. 200; has the custody of Ledford castle, *ib.*; with the army at Newark, ii. 209; dies at Offington, ii. 390, 510; iii. 273; his shield of arms, ii. 390; leaves his heirs in debt, iii. 273.

Alchad [*i.e.* Al-Cadi], governor of Silves, surrenders the town to the king of Portugal, i. 462.

Alcobaza (*Alcubaz*), defeat of the Saracens at, i. 428.

Aldefonsus, Aldefunsus, Andefulsus. *See* Alfonso.

Aldenham (*Audenhamia*), vill of, claimed by the abbat of Westminster, iii. 62.

Aldgate (*Alegate*). *See* London.

Aldewin, founder of Malvern priory, his death, i. 268.

Alemannia, the same as Germania, ii. 65.

Aleppo (*Alapia, Halapia*), Saracen forces summoned from the province, in aid of Antioch, i. 98; Christian princes imprisoned in the city of, i. 337.

Aleppo, Rodoam [Emaddedin Zenghi I.,] prince of, invades the territory of Antioch, and kills Boamund II., i. 244. *See* Sanguinius.

Aleppo, [Malek el Nasser,] Soldan of battle of the Templars with, ii. 399; his dispute with the Soldan of Babylon, iii. 101, 114, 320. *See* Noradin.

Alessandria, city of, abandons the emperor's cause, ii. 474.

Alexander II., pope, elected by the synod at Mantua, i. 10; orders the claims of Canterbury and York for the primacy to be settled, i. 17.

Alexander III., pope, acknowledged by France and England, i. 310; iii. 194; sends the pall to archbishop Thomas, i. 316; confirms agreement between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 319; consents to the translation of Gilbert, bishop of Hereford, to Llandaff, i. 320; holds a council at Tours, i. 321; iii. 195; condemns or tolerates the Constitutions of Clarendon, i. 323–326; iii. 195; absolves archbishop Thomas from his oath to observe these Constitutions, i. 327; receives him at Sens, i. 330; allegations against, laid before him, *ib.*; urged to send legates to England, i. 331; and to confirm the liberties of Henry I., *ib.*; annuls the sentence against the archbishop, i. 335; his letters to the king, archbishop, and others, i. 342, 343, 345, 346, 350; iii. 198; appoints the archbishop of York legate of England, i. 350; forbids archbishop Thomas to publish a sentence of interdict or excommunication against the king or kingdom, *ib.*; gives him power to proceed against those who detained the possessions of his church, i. 355; suspends the archbishop of York, i. 356, 357; refuses to receive the king's messengers after the death of the archbishop, i. 367; contemplates a sentence of interdict against the king, *ib.*; excommunicates the archbishop's murderers, i. 368; sends two legates to receive the king's purgation, and absolve him, i. 372; canonizes the archbishop, i. 375; commands a storm at sea to cease, and is obeyed, i. 400; holds a General Council at Rome, i. 412; writes to the archbishop of Sens, against the heresy of Peter Lombard, i. 414; allows the archbishop of York to take the goods of clerks defunct, i. 421; his letter to Prester John, i. 422; dies, i. 423.

Alexander IV., pope, (nephew of Gregory IX. and bishop of Ostia,) succeeds, iii. 341; writes to the prelates to desire their prayers, *ib.*; continues the war against Manfred, *ib.*; still holds out the promise of Sicily made to Henry III., *ib.*; canonizes friar Peter, killed at Milan, iii. 130, 324; his vision relative to Innocent IV., iii. 344; orders masses to be said for him, *ib.*; sends an army to destroy Nocera, iii. 345; consents to the plan of the bishop of Hereford, for paying his debts, iii. 348.

Alexander I., king of Scotland, son of Margaret, succeeds, i. 9, 208; dies, i. 235; iii. 184.

Alexander II., son of William the Lion, knighted by John at London, ii. 126; jocose speech of John in reference to, ii. 172; summoned by prince Louis to do homage, ii. 180; conquers Northumberland for Louis, ii. 183; does homage to him for possessions in England, ii. 186; at Castle-Bernard, when Eustace de Vescy was killed, ii. 187; returns home, *ib.*, iii. 236; his meeting with Henry III. at York, ii. 241; marries Joanna, sister of Henry, ii. 248; his sister Margaret married to Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*, 336; at the Christmas feast with Henry at York, ii. 320; iii. 261; returns to Scotland, *ib.*; demands certain rights granted him by charter, ii. 389; present at the parliament held at York, ii. 401; iii. 275; death of his queen Joanna, ii. 405; iii. 276; marries Mary, daughter of Engelram de Coucy, ii. 419; denies that he held any part of Scotland of Henry, ii. 489; iii. 290; applies to John de Coucy for military aid, ii. 490; complaints made against him by Henry, ii. 494; prepares to resist the English forces, *ib.*; repents of his hostile conduct, iii. 291; peace made at Newcastle, and confirmed by his charter, ii. 494; iii. 291; computed strength of his army, ii. 495; marriage proposed of his son with Henry's daughter, ii.

Alexander II.—*cont.*
488 *n.*; iii. 291; dies, iii. 65; his shield of arms, *ib.*; his widow returns home, iii. 116, 321.

Alexander III., his marriage with the princess Margaret deferred, ii. 488 *n.;* iii. 291; knighted by Henry III., and does homage, iii. 117, 118; celebration of his nuptials with Margaret at York, iii. 117, 322; guardians of himself, queen, and kingdom appointed, iii. 118, 322; complaints of their conduct, iii. 346.

Alexander, Friar Minor, sent to England, to collect money for the pope, iii. 18, 298.

Alexandria, in Egypt, defeat of the Christians at, i., 451; required by the French to be given up, iii. 74; false rumour of its capture, *ib.*

Alexandria, [Nicholas,] patriarch of, sends a deputy to the Lateran Council, ii. 168.

Alexandria, Lesser, in Cilicia, captured by Tancred, i. 88.

Alexius, I. [Comnenus], emperor of Constantinople, gives leave to the Crusaders to encamp near the city, i. 60; orders Peter the Hermit to cross the Bosphorus, i. 62; imprisons Hugh the Great and other chiefs, i. 69; usurped the throne, i. 70; his deceitful conduct, i. 70, 73, 193; iii. 175; form of fealty exacted by him from the Crusaders, i. 73, 78; makes presents to Robert of Normandy, i. 78; takes possession of Nice, i. 84; is dissuaded from the relief of Antioch, i. 114; disbands his forces, i. 115; marches against Boamund I. in Epirus, i. 211; makes a treaty with him for the protection of pilgrims, *ib.*

Alexius III. [Angelus, *incorrectly called* son of Manuel], imprisons the emperor Isaac, and usurps the throne, ii. 51.

Alfonso VI. (*Andefulsus*), king of Galicia, the daughter [Agatha] of William I., betrothed to, i. 31.

Alfonso VII. (*Aldefunsus, Andefulsus*), king of Spain, his daughter [Constance] married to Louis VII., i. 303; takes the title of emperor of Spain, because the kings of Arragon and Galicia were subject to him, *ib.*

Alfonso VIII. (*Andefulsus*), king of Castille, marries Alienor, daughter of Henry II., i. 346; iii. 198; his dispute with the king of Navarre submitted to the arbitration of Henry, i. 396, 397; surnamed Petit, ii. 54; his kingdom devastated by the Moors, *ib.*; marriage of his daughter Blanche to Louis of France, ii. 84, 85; iii. 219.

Alfonso X., king of Spain, his claim to Gascony, iii. 133, 317, 324, 334; Gaston of Bearn seeks his protection, iii. 140, 326, 328; his sister demanded in marriage for prince Edward, iii. 144, 329; requires Edward's presence, to knight him, iii. 145; marriage of his sister at Burgos, iii. 336; gives Edward a charter of quitclaim to Gascony, *ib.*; his daughter asked in marriage by Louis IX. for his son, iii. 348.

Alfred, son of Adulf [Æthelwulf], the genealogy of Henry I. traced up to, i. 301.

Alfred, son of Æthelred, deprived of sight, by treachery of earl Godwin, iii. 164; dies, *ib.*

Algais, Algeis, a Provençal, concerned in the capture of the bishop of Beauvais, iii. 216.

Algar, earl [of Mercia], his exile, iii. 167.

Alice (*Alesia*), sister of Philip II., affianced to earl Richard, i. 458; ii. 4; to be placed in his ward, until he married her, i. 463.

Alice (*Aelisia*), of Poitou, [daughter of Hugh le Brun, count of La Marche,] uterine sister of Henry III., married to John, earl Warren, iii. 25, 301.

Alienor, daughter of William V., duke of Aquitaine, married to Louis VII., i. 256; marriage of her daughters, *ib.*;

Alienor, daughter of William V.—*cont.* accompanies Louis to Jerusalem, i. 282; her divorce, i. 288; defamatory reports respecting her, *ib.*; marries Henry, duke of Normandy [afterwards Henry II.], i. 289; her astute revenge in this matter, *ib.*; iii. 191; gives birth to William, i. 294; Henry, i. 301; Matilda, i. 306; Richard, i. 308; Alienor, i. 315; Joanna, i. 337; iii. 196; John, i. 340; incurs danger of death in childbirth, iii. 196; turns young king Henry's heart against his father, i. 371; induces her sons Richard and Geoffrey to join their brother, i. 374; accompanies Henry II. to England, i. 384; released from prison by Richard, ii. 4; sets free the prisoners throughout England, *ib.*; prophecy of Merlin fulfilled in her, *ib.*, 5; receives her dower, with other lands, ii. 13; joins Richard in Sicily, and leaves Berengaria with him, ii. 15, 21; iii. 209; visits Richard in Germany, and returns with him to England, ii. 46, 47; iii. 214; assists John in the capture of Le Mans, ii. 79; iii. 219; sent to Spain for Blanche of Castille, ii. 84; iii. 219; besieged in the castle of Mirebeau by Arthur of Britanny, ii. 92, 93; sends to John for aid, ii. 93; dies at the abbey of Beaulieu, ii. 102.

Alienor, daughter of Henry II., born at Rouen, i. 315; iii. 194; married to Alfonso VIII., of Castille, i. 346; iii. 198.

Alienor, daughter of Reimund, count of Provence, asked in marriage by Henry III., ii. 385; iii. 272; lands at Dover, ii. 386; married at Canterbury, and crowned at Westminster, *ib.*; iii. 273; the nunnery of Tarent placed under her government, ii. 397; iii. 274; birth of her son Edward, ii. 422; feast for her purification, ii. 424; birth of her daughter Margaret, ii. 438; iii. 281; and of Beatrice, ii. 464; iii. 285; of her son Edmund, ii. 499; iii. 293; carries about with her an infant giant, iii. 61; appointed joint guardian of the kingdom, iii. 140, 328; birth of her daughter Katherine, iii. 148, 330; gives the king 500 marks of rent, iii. 331; sent for by him, in reference to prince Edward's marriage, *ib.*; a ship provided for her at Winchelsea, iii. 335; embarks at Portsmouth, with her children, *ib.*; lands at Bordeaux, *ib.*

Alienor, sister of Henry III. and widow of William earl Mareschal, makes a vow of chastity before the archbishop, ii. 402, 404; marries Simon de Montfort against his advice, ii. 403; commotion caused by her marriage, ii. 404; near her confinement at Kenilworth, ii. 413; birth of her son Henry, ii. 414; goes abroad with her husband, ii. 424; prevented accompanying him to the Holy Land, by pregnancy, ii. 430.

Alienor, daughter of Geoffrey, count of Britanny, her death in imprisonment, ii. 456; iii. 284.

Alnei. *See* Aunay.

Alost. *See* Eu.

Alpibus [d'Aulps?], Peter de, a city in Cilicia given to, i. 88.

Alverton [North Allerton], in Northumberland, battle of the Standard at, i. 258–260.

Amalric, or Almaric I. [Amaury], brother of Baldwin III., succeeds as king of Jerusalem, i. 319; his daughter [Isabel] married to Conrad of Montferrat, ii. 25; siege of Damietta by, 238.

Amanen [Amanjeu?], William, assumes the cross, i. 57; joins the count of Toulouse, i. 72; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 121.

Amboise (*Ambazium*), reconciliation of Henry II. and archbishop Thomas at, i. 354; castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 461.

Ambrières (*Ambretas*), castle of, fortified by Henry I., i. 232.

Amice, daughter of Isabel, countess of Gloucester, married to Baldwin de Rivers, ii. 428.

Amon, region of, beyond Jordan, i. 159; inhabited by Arabs, i. 183.

Amphibalus, St., legend of the invention of his reliques, near St. Alban's, i. 401–409 ; iii. 203 ; manner of his martyrdom, i. 407 ; book of his Passion referred to, *ib.* ; his remains carried to St. Alban's, iii. 408 ; miraculous shower on the occasion, *ib.* ; miracles effected by, i. 409 ; converted St. Alban to the Christian faith, iii. 203 ; anniversary of his invention, *ib.*

Anacletus, anti-pope, elected, and stays at Rome, i. 244.

Anagni, pope Gregory IX. flies to, iii. 92.

Anagni, John of, cardinal, sent to make peace between Philip and Henry II., i. 455 ; excommunicates the opponents to it, i. 456 ; threatens France and England with an interdict, i. 458 ; said to have been bribed by Henry, *ib.* ; goes away for fear of earl Richard, *ib.* ; releases the lands of prince John from the interdict imposed by the archbishop, ii. 14.

Ananias, baptized Joseph Cartaphila [the Wandering Jew], ii. 305.

Anastasius IV., pope, succeeds, i. 292 ; iii. 192 ; restores William to the see of York, and gives him the pall, i. 298 ; consecrates Hugh de Pusat bishop of Durham, *ib.* ; dies, 299 ; iii. 192.

Anavarza (*Anazarbus*), a chief city of Cilicia, i. 88.

Andeli (*Andeliacum*), town of, burnt by Louis VII., i. 344 ; iii. 198 ; ceded by the archbishop of Rouen to Richard I. in exchange, ii. 62 ; meeting of Philip and Richard between Gaillon and, ii. 64 ; a shower of blood at, ii. 68 ; conference of Philip and John at the isle of, ii. 90.

Andeli (*Andella*), river of, duke Henry of Normandy encamps near, i. 290 ; forms the boundary of the Vexin, ii. 82.

Andlena, claimed by the king of Castille, i. 396.

Andrew, St., the apostle, reveals the Holy Lance to Peter of Provence, i. 118.

Angers (*Andegavis*), city of, given up to Arthur of Britanny, ii. 78 ; chosen as a place of study by the scholars of Paris, ii. 309 ; Louis IX. encamps at, ii. 324.

Angers, archdeacon of. *See* Berengarius.

Anglesey (*Engleseia*), devastated by Irish troops, ii. 507 ; iii. 296.

Angoulême, [Ademar or Aimar,] count of, his lands ravaged by the son of the king of Navarre, ii. 49 ; subdued by Richard I., ii. 50 ; his daughter Isabel [*called incorrectly* Hawise] affianced to the count of La Marche, but marries king John, ii. 86, 93.

Angoulême, Guy [de Lusignan], count of, uterine brother of Henry III., marriage of his daughter [Alice] to the son of the earl of Gloucester, iii. 133, 324.

Anjou (*Andegavia*), the nobles of, adhere to Arthur of Britanny, ii. 78 ; right of his father to, had he survived, *ib.* ; he does homage to Philip II. for, ii. 82 ; demanded for him from John, *ib.*, 92 ; the nobles of captured by John, ii. 94 ; iii. 221 ; submits to Philip, ii. 102 ; Henry sends envoys to, ii. 291 ; foray of the earl of Chester in, ii. 328.

Anjou, Fulk IV., count of, his wife [Bertrade] taken from him by Philip I. of France, i. 56.

Anjou [Geoffrey Martel, son of Fulk IV.], count of, assists Henry I. against duke Robert, i. 201.

Anjou, Fulk V., [*incorrectly named* Geoffrey,] count of, receives Maine with [Ermengarde] the daughter of count Elias, i. 214 ; iii. 181 ; Henry I. ravages his territories, i. 215 ; swears to restore Normandy to the son of duke Robert, i. 221 ; relinquishes Anjou to his son Geoffrey, and goes to Jerusalem, i. 239 ; iii. 185 ; marries the eldest daughter of Baldwin II., *ib.* ; crowned king of Jerusalem, i. 245. *See* Fulk.

Anjou, Geoffrey Plantagenet, son of Fulk V., count of, receives the province from his father, i. 239 ; marries the empress Matilda, i. 240, 244 ; birth of his son Henry, i. 246 ; of Geoffrey, i. 247 ; of William, i. 253 ; acquires some castles in Normandy, i. 255 ; flies from Stephen, i. 256 ; makes a truce with him, *ib* ; sub-

Anjou, Geoffrey Plantagenet—*cont.* dues Hiesmes and Bayeux, and besieges Falaise, i. 261 ; iii. 187 ; makes peace with the count of Mellent, i. 267 ; refuses to come to England, i. 268 ; takes some castles of the count of Mortain, *ib.* ; received at Rouen, and takes the title of duke of Normandy, i. 274; iii. 189; acquires the greater part of Normandy, i. 275 ; iii. 189 ; makes it over to his son Henry, i. 285, 286 ; encounters Louis VII. at Arques, i. 286 ; surrenders the Vexin to him, i. 290 ; ii. 82 ; dies, i. 287 ; iii. 191.

Anjou and Provence, Charles, count of, brother of Louis IX., receives Provence with [Beatrice] the daughter of count Reimund, iii. 8 ; sent from Acre by Louis to raise forces, iii. 84 ; neglects to do so, iii. 102; his wife comes to meet Henry III. and her sisters, iii. 342.

Annals, ancient, referred to, i. 331.

Annual summary of the weather, crops, and political events (1234), ii. 375 ; (1237), ii. 402 ; (1238), ii. 416 ; (1239), ii. 428 ; (1240), ii. 444 ; (1241), ii. 459 ; (1242), ii. 468 ; (1243), ii. 477 ; (1244), ii. 498 ; (1245), ii. 511 ; (1246), iii. 15 ; (1247), iii. 31 ; (1248), iii. 42 ; (1249), iii. 67 ; (1251), iii. 117 ; (1252), iii. 130 ; (1253), iii. 149.

Ansard, John, sets out for Jerusalem, ii. 446.

Anselm, chaplain to Richard I., with him on his landing at Zara, ii. 40.

Anselm, papal legate, consecrates Ralph, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 219.

Antaradus. *See* Tortosa.

Antioch, metropolis of Syria, captured by the infidels, i. 25 ; derivation of the name, i. 90, 128 ; pontifical see of St. Peter, i. 91 ; iii. 176 ; called also Theofilis and Reblata, *ib.* ; siege of, i. 91–95, 98–106 ; famine at, i. 93, 113 ; betrayed to Boamund by Emyfer, i. 105, 107, 108 ; iii. 176 ; massacre at and pillage of, i. 109 ; fate of the nobles, *ib.* ; the citadel found impregnable, i. 110 ; besieged by Corbaran, i. 111–114 ; iii. 176 ; many Christians escape from, i. 113 ; misery of the besieged, i. 114 ; the Greek emperor dissuaded from advancing to its aid, *ib.* ; contrition of the people, i. 117 ; revelation of the Holy Lance at, i. 118 ; the churches of, repaired, i. 127 ; given to Boamund, i. 128 ; description and limits of, *ib.* ; duration of the sieges, *ib.* ; pestilence and mortality at, i. 129 ; benefits received by the church of, from Tancred, i. 158 ; temporally governed by him, i. 186 ; given to Boamund II., i. 240 ; remained in the hands of the Christians, i. 451 ; besieged by the Turks, iii. 96, 319.

Antioch, princes of. *See* Boamund I. ; Boamund II. ; Fitz - Richard, Roger ; Châtillon, Reginald de ; Poitou, Reimund of.

Antioch, patriarchs of:
——— John, restored to his see, i. 128.
——— [Peter], prevented by illness from going to the Lateran Council, ii. 167.

Antioch the Less [Antiochetta] the capital of Pisidia, i. 87.

Antiochus, founder of Antioch, i. 90, 128.

Antipatris, in Palestine, passed by the Crusaders, i. 137.

Antonia, castle of, within Jerusalem, i. 160.

Antwerp, Isabel lands at, on her route to the emperor Frederic II., ii. 379.

Anxa, Robert de, joins Boamund as a crusader, i. 71.

Anxianus, or Garsianus [Aky-Sian, or Baghi-Sian ?], Turkish governor of Antioch during its siege, i. 91 ; orders the gates to be opened, to admit a body of citizens, i. 101, 102 ; flies from the city, and is slain, i. 109.

Apamea, metropolis of Cœle-Syria, taken by Tancred, i. 198.

Aptol, castle of, claimed by the king of Castille, i. 396.

Apulia, the forces of Robert of Normandy winter there, i. 76 ; Boamund I. returns to, i. 211 ; Frederic retreats to, ii. 48 ; the kingdom offered to earl Richard

Apulia—*cont.*
of Cornwall, ii. 126, 323; taken possession of by Innocent IV., i. 338; the nobles adhere to Manfred, *ib.* *See* Sicily.

Apulia, [Robert Guiscard,] duke of, dies, i. 32; succeeded by his sons Roger and Boamund, *ib.*

Aquila [L'Aigle], Richer de, his lands harassed by duke Henry, i. 290.

Aquitaine, rebellion in, suppressed by duke Henry, i. 298; the nobles send to Henry III. for aid, ii. 306.

Aquitaine, Richard, duke of. *See* Richard I. of England.

Aquitaine, William V., duke of, his daughter Alienor marries Louis VII., i. 256.

Arabia, countries comprised under, i. 159; ravaged by Saladin, i. 430.

Arabic numerals, used by Matthew Paris, i. 298 *n.*

Arabs, interview of a prince of with king Godfrey, i. 184; a chief of, enables Baldwin I. to escape from Ramla, i. 197.

Aracheus, son of Canaan, reputed founder of Archis, i. 133.

Arbath, *a mistake for* Arsuth, i. 224.

Archenbrai [Auchy-en-Bray?], battle at, between William I. and his son Robert, i. 21.

Archis, or Archeas [Arka], a city of Phœnicia, foundation, and origin of name, i. 132, 133; siege of, by the Crusaders, i. 133; the Crusaders encamp at, i. 135.

Ardfert (*Hertfert*), in Ireland, John, bishop of, makes the holy chrism at St. Alban's, ii. 398, 483; iii. 274; his death and burial there, ii. 511; iii. 296.

Arezzo (*Aretinum*), Marcellinus, bishop of, hung by order of Frederic II., iii. 45, 52, 56, 306; his body privately buried, but again suspended, iii. 45, 53; two Friars Minors punished for taking away the body, iii. 306.

Argences (*Argencia*), in Normandy, death of Roger de Bailloil in a tournament there, iii. 67.

Argentan (*Argentomium*), castle of, taken by duke Robert of Normandy, i. 45; fortified by Henry I., i. 232; tunic of Christ found at [some MSS. read *Argenteuil*], i. 306; iii. 193.

Argenton, Reginald de, knight Templar and standard bearer, his bravery and death, ii. 399.

Argenteuil. *See* Argentan.

Aristotle, his book on Meteors referred to, i. 70; his "Topica" quoted, ii. 41.

Armagh (*Armacha*), the chief of four archbishoprics in Ireland, i. 292; the see of Connor subject to, ii. 466.

Armagh, Andelm [Albert?] of Cologne consecrated archbishop of, ii. 438; iii. 281.

Armenia, prince of. *See* Thoros.

Armesbach, Reginald de, dies at Antioch, i. 129.

Armenians, three brothers, driven from their country come to St. Ives, iii. 76; death of one, believed to be a bishop, iii. 77.

Armorica, or Britanny, the "Sinus Armoricus" mentioned by Merlin, i. 388; offers a safe passage between England and France, i. 464.

Arnulph, Ærnulph, a deacon, anecdote respecting him, i. 236; iii. 184; made archbishop of Ravenna, by the emperor Henry V., *ib.*

Arques (*Archis*), castle of, fortified by Henry I., i. 232; the forces of Louis VII. and Geoffrey of Anjou meet at, i. 286; Louis marches to, i. 377; given up to Richard I., ii. 56; siege of, raised by Philip II., ii. 94.

Arragon, the king of, subject to the king of Castille, i. 303.

Arragon, [Peter II.,] king of, joins the Tholousans and Albigeois, and attacks Simon de Montfort, ii. 144; is defeated and slain, *ib.*; iii. 244.

Arragon, [James I.,] king of, sends envoys to the Lateran Council, ii. 168; takes Majorca, ii. 374.

Arras (*Arraz, Atrabatum*), castle of, besieged by the count of Flanders, ii. 64.

Arras, the castellan of, takes flight from Lincoln, ii. 214.

Arsic, Alexander, dies *s. p. m.* ii. 510 *n.*

Arsuth. *See* Assur.

Artasia, otherwise Calquis [Chalcis], a city in Syria, slaughter of the Turks in, i. 89.

Arthur, king of Britain, gave Galloway to his nephew Walwain, i. 33; his reign apparently renewed by Henry II., i. 397; discovery of his bones at Glastonbury, ii. 27.

Arthur, son of Geoffrey, count of Britanny, his posthumous birth, i. 437; constituted by Richard I. his heir, ii. 15; the city of Angers given up to, ii. 78; the nobles of Anjou, Maine, and Touraine, adhere to, *ib.*; iii. 219; delivered to Philip II., and sent to Paris to be educated, ii. 79; his towns and castles held by Philip, *ib.*; is knighted, ii. 82; does homage to Philip for his territories, *ib.*; demands made by Philip in his behalf from John, *ib.*, 92; taken away and pacified with John, *ib.*; escapes back to Philip, ii. 83; does homage to John for Britanny and other territories, ii. 86; military force assigned to, to invade Poitou, ii. 92; besieges the castle of Mirebeau, ii. 93; joined by the Poitevin nobles, *ib.*; taken prisoner, and imprisoned at Falaise, ii. 94; iii. 221; interview with John, ii. 95; removed to Rouen, *ib.*; rumours respecting his death, *ib.*; iii. 221; ascribed by the French to John, *ib.*

Artois, Robert, count of, brother of Louis IX., assumes the cross, ii. 508; causes the destruction of the French army, iii. 84, 102; drowned in the Nile, iii. 85, 313; his shield of arms, iii. 84.

Arundel (*Harundel, Harundelle*), castle of, captured by Henry I., i. 190, 191; iii. 179; belonged to Robert de Belesme, *ib.*; held by queen Adeliza, in dowry, i. 262; the empress Matilda received at, *ib.*

Arundel, William de Albini [Pincerna], earl of, marries Adeliza, widow of Henry I., i. 262; receives the empress Matilda, *ib.*; nearly drowned at St. Alban's, i. 270; dies at Waverley, and buried at Wimundham, i. 398.

Arundel, William de Albini, [son of preceding,] earl of, deserts John and adheres to prince Louis, ii. 180; his possessions ravaged by John, ii. 185; resumes allegiance to Henry III., ii. 206; iii. 239; joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230; advocates the acceptance of the Soldan's offers, ii. 237; his anger against the legate Pelagius, *ib.*; dies on his return from Damietta, ii. 249; iii. 246; his body brought home and buried at Wimundham, *ib.*; shield of arms, *ib.*

Arundel [William de Albini, son of the last], earl of, obtains 500 librates of land, at the death of his uncle, the earl of Chester, ii. 349.

Arundel, Hugh de Albini, earl of, gains his cause at Rome, against archbishop Edmund, ii. 411; favoured by the legate Otho, *ib.*; iii. 276; dies young, *s. p. m.* ii. 477, 510; buried at Wimundham, ii. 477; iii. 288; his shield of arms, ii. 477; Isabel, his widow, founds the nunnery of Marham, iii. 106, 321.

Ascalon, city of Palestine, the army of Elafdal arrives at, i. 151; subject to the bishop of Bethlehem i. 162; booty gained by Baldwin II. near, i. 236; captured by Baldwin, i. 300; iii. 193; unsubdued by Saladin, i. 444; iii. 207; submits to Richard I., ii. 26; fortified by him, ii. 452; iii. 283.

Ascha, Asca, Hascha, Henry de, a German noble, takes the cross, i. 57; joins duke Godfrey, i. 68; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120; at the siege of Nice, i. 82; dies i. 129.

Ascha, Godfrey de, brother of Henry, joins duke Godfrey, i. 68.

Asia Minor, passed on the right by the Crusaders under Conrad III., i. 280.

Assassins (*Assessini*), sect of, murder Reimund, count of Tripoli, i. 288; account of, referred to in the "*Liber de Historiis Orientalium*," *ib.*; the marquis of Montferrat killed by, ii. 43; their secret practice of murder, iii. 21, 299.

Assisi, St. Francis dies at St. Mary de Portiuncula in, ii. 291.

Assur, Arsuth [Arsuf], a city of Palestine, besieged and taken by Baldwin I., i. 194, 224; Baldwin flies to, i. 198; joined there by Hugh de St. Omer, *ib.*; submits to Richard I., ii. 26.

Asti, city of, pope Innocent IV. betakes himself to, ii. 496.

Athens, some Greek philosophers of, come to England, iii. 64.

Athie, Engelram de, aids the earl of Albemarle in disturbance of the peace, ii. 244.

Auco, William de. *See* Eu.

Augustine, St., his Rule observed at Merton priory, i. 222; followed by the Order of St. Dominic, ii. 298; his Commentary on the Psalms quoted, iii. 56; miracles of, in Norway, iii. 318.

Augustine, St., Friars of, a new Order established in England, iii. 318.

Aumarle. *See* Albemarle.

Aunay (*Alnei*), castle of, taken by Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 268.

Austria, the Crusaders under Louis VII. pass through, i. 279; Richard I. comes to, ii. 40.

Austria, [Leopold V.,] duke of, affront offered to by Richard I., ii. 30, 43; iii. 212; returns home, ii. 31; iii. 212; Richard gives himself up to, ii. 40; sells Richard to the emperor, ii. 41; Richard complains of him to the pope, ii. 52; iii. 215; thrown from his horse, and his foot crushed, ii. 53; iii. 215; releases Richard's hostages, and promises to return his ransom money, to obtain absolution, *ib.*; his body lies unburied a long time, ii. 54.

Austria, [Leopold VI.,] duke of, accompanies the Crusaders from Acre to Damietta, ii. 227; his scaling-ladders break, in the attack on the Nile tower, ii. 228; the tower surrenders to, ii. 229.

Auvergne (*Alvernia*, *Arvernia*), dispute respecting, referred to arbitration, i. 418; Philip II. relinquishes his right to, ii. 56; hostilities in, between Philip and Richard, ii. 63.

Auxerre, Peter, count of. *See* Baldwin II., emperor of Constantinople.

Avelina, countess of Albemarle. *See* Albemarle, William de Forz, earl of.

Avignon (*Avinio*), city of, the forces of Louis VIII. refused admission to, ii. 287; siege of, *ib.*, 288; iii. 254; the legate offers to treat with, ii. 289; captured by his treachery, *ib.*; iii. 254.

Avignon (*de Avinione*), William de, *apparently a mistake for* Amanen, i. 121.

"Avitæ," the laws of Henry I. so called, i. 331, 338.

Avranches (*Abrincæ*), submits to Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 268; castle of, fortified by Henry I., iii. 183.

Avranches (*de Abrincis*), Henry of, a book of his poems, in the hands of Matthew Paris, ii. 232 *n.*

Axholme (*Anxiholme*), castle in the island of, repaired by Roger de Mowbray, i. 383; iii. 201; captured and destroyed, *ib.*

Azena, city of, [in Lesser Armenia?] taken by Robert of Normandy, and given to a knight named Symeon, i. 88.

B.

Baalun, castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 459.

Babylon, city of, under the power of Saladin, i. 451; required by the French to be given up, iii. 74; false rumour of its capture, *ib.*, 83.

Babylon, [Malek el Kamel, elder brother of Coradin,] Soldan of, wishes to make peace with the Christians, ii. 234; proposes to cede Jerusalem to them, ii. 235; sends to offer terms, which are opposed by the legate, ii. 236, 237; takes flight after the capture of Damietta, ii. 238; sends presents to Frederic II. on his landing, ii. 303; cedes Jerusalem and the Holy Land to him, ii. 311; iii. 259; makes a truce of ten years, *ib.*; is written to by the Templars and Hospitallers, to betray Frederic into his hands, ii. 313; iii. 259; he sends the letter to the emperor, ii. 313, 314; friendship formed between them, ii. 314, 408; sends an elephant to Frederic, ii. 314; dies, ii. 408; was disposed to receive baptism, *ib.*; iii. 276.

Babylon, [Malek Saleh Nodgemeddin, son of preceding,] Soldan of, alliance made against him by the Soldan of Damascus and the Christians, ii. 441; the French nobles captured by, treated severely, ii. 443; makes a truce with earl Richard of Cornwall and releases the French nobles, ii. 452; iii. 283; sends the Chorasmians to destroy the Christians in Palestine, ii. 484; iii. 289; writes to the pope, iii. 11; signifies to Louis IX. the desire of the Saracens for battle, iii. 51; offers favourable terms of peace to Louis, iii. 49 *n.*, 307; renews these offers, iii. 74, 312; dies, iii. 75. *See* Saladin and Saphadin.

Babylon, [Almoadam Touran Shah,] Soldan of, more hostile to the Christians than his predecessor, iii. 75; quarrels with the Soldan of Aleppo, iii. 101, 114, 320; favourable character of, *ib.*; blamed for allowing Louis IX., to be ransomed, *ib.*, 320; his death, iii. 102, 130.

Babylon, [Ezz-eddin?] Soldan of, orders Damietta to be razed, iii. 112; alliance with Louis IX. against the Soldan of Aleppo, iii. 121. *See* Egypt.

Bacun, Robert, Friar Preacher, and famous theologian, dies, iii. 40; from his information Matthew Paris wrote the Life of St. Edmund, iii. 135, 326.

Bailloil, Henry de, his death, iii. 14.

Bailloil, Hugh de, the territory between the Tees and Scotland committed to his joint charge, ii. 172; defends castles for John in the North, ii. 183; iii. 233; abets the disturbers of the king's peace, iii. 226.

Bailloil, John de, appointed joint guardian of Scotland, iii. 322; accused of traitorous practices, iii. 346; pays a fine to the king, iii. 347.

Bailloil, Roger Fitz-John de, a northern baron, killed in a tournament at Argences, iii. 67, 311; his shield of arms, *ib.*; custody of his lands granted to William de Valence, *ib.*

Bailluil, Joscelin de, excommunicated by archbishop Thomas, i. 338.

Balac, Balach, Turkish admiral or emir, takes the count of Edessa prisoner, i. 231; captures Baldwin II., king of Jerusalem, i. 232; besieges Joppa, and is defeated, i. 233.

Baldach [*i.e.* Bagdad], caliph of, i. 451.

Baldwin I., brother of duke Godfrey, count of Edessa and king of Jerusalem, assumes the cross, i. 56; joins Godfrey, i. 68; subdues Tharsus, i. 83; conquers the country to the Euphrates, i. 88; obtains the sovereignty at Edessa, *ib.*, 89; purchases Samosata, *ib.*; takes Serorgia, *ib.*; at the siege of Antioch, i. 91; sends presents to the army, and duke Godfrey, i. 103; elected and crowned king of Jerusalem, i. 185, 186; explores the region beyond Jordan, i. 186; his humanity to the wife of an Arab prince, i. 187; takes Assur and Cæsarea, i. 194; appoints Baldwin archbishop, i. 195; marches to Ramla, *ib.*; defeats the forces of the caliph of Egypt, *ib.*; is defeated by the Arabs and Egyptians, i. 197; escapes from Ramla, *ib.*; arrives at Assur, i. 198; defeats the Arabs, *ib.*; captures Acre, i. 199; iii. 179; subdues Tripoli, and gives it to count Bertrand

Baldwin I. -*cont.*
of Toulouse, i. 212 ; summons Roger, prince of Antioch, to his aid, i. 218 ; defeated by Menduc, *ib.* ; takes refuge in a castle, and surrenders on condition of return to his territory, i. 219 ; grants a mansion to the Knights Templars in Jerusalem, i. 223 ; dies, i. 224 ; iii. 182 ; his conquests, *ib.*

Baldwin II., de Bourg, [cousin of Baldwin I.,] count of Edessa, and king of Jerusalem, assumes the cross, i. 57 ; joins duke Godfrey, i. 68 ; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120 ; besieges Haran, i. 200 ; quarrel with Boamund as to its occupation, *ib.* ; taken prisoner by the Turks, *ib.* ; released, i. 212 ; crowned king of Jerusalem, i. 224 ; iii. 182 ; defeats the Turks, and recovers Cerepum and Sardonas, i. 229 ; taken prisoner by Balach, i. 232 ; released, i. 234 ; iii. 183, 184 ; defeats the Turks under Borsequin, i. 236 ; iii. 184 ; ransoms his daughter, *ib.* ; collects booty near Ascalon, *ib.* ; marries his eldest daughter [Melisent] to Fulk of Anjou, i. 239 ; bestows his second daughter [Alice] on Boamund II., with the inheritance of Antioch, i. 240 ; defeats Rodoam, Soldan of Aleppo, i. 245 ; gives his daughter [widow of Boamund II.,] Laodicea and Gabala for dowry, *ib.* ; causes the principality of Antioch to be assured to the daughter of Boamund, *ib.* ; returns to Jerusalem, *ib.* ; dies, and makes over his kingdom to Fulk of Anjou, *ib.*

Baldwin III., son of Fulk of Anjou, and king of Jerusalem, only two years old at the death of Baldwin II., i. 245 ; receives the emperor Conrad III. at Jerusalem, i. 281 ; iii. 190 ; besieges Damascus, i. 283 ; iii. 190 ; compels Noradin to retreat from Antioch, i. 285 ; iii. 290 ; captures Ascalon, i. 300 ; dies, i. 319.

Baldwin IV., son of Amaury I., and king of Jerusalem, suffers from leprosy, i. 429 ; iii. 205 ; resigns the throne, *ib.* ; dies, i. 431 ; iii. 205.

Baldwin V., king of Jerusalem, son of William, marquis of Montferrat, and nephew of Baldwin IV., i. 431 ; crowned when five years old, *ib.* ; iii. 206 ; committed to the charge of Reimund, count of Tripoli, *ib.* ; dies, i. 438.

Baldwin I., count of Flanders, made emperor of Constantinople, ii. 102 ; an impostor asserts himself to be the emperor, and is hung with ignominy, ii. 267.

Baldwin II., emperor of Constantinople, son of Peter, count of Auxerre, ii. 406 ; expelled from the empire, and seeks pecuniary aid in England, ii. 407 ; iii. 276 ; claims relationship with Henry III., *ib.* ; iii. 24, 25, 300 ; sells holy reliques to Louis IX., ii. 407, 446 ; iii. 24 ; returns to his country, ii. 414 ; iii. 278 ; again visits England, iii. 24 ; his fall occasioned by Vataces, *ib.* ; obtains money from the king and Richard of Cornwall, iii. 25, 300.

Baldwin, leader of the forces of William II. in attack on Le Mans, i. 166 ; advises retreat, i. 167.

Balian, [lord of Ibelin,] escapes from the battle of Marescallia, i. 442.

Bamborough (*Bamburc*, *Bamburgum*), castle of, captured by William Rufus, i. 48 ; given up to Henry II. by Malcolm, i. 307.

Bangor, bishops of :
—— Hervey, present at the consecration of the archbishop of York, i. 210. *See* Ely, bishops of.
—— Robert of Shrewsbury, consecrated, ii. 62 ; iii. 216.
—— Richard, escorts prince Griffin, of North Wales, to meet his brother David, ii. 431, 483 ; endeavours to obtain Griffin's release from the Tower, ii. 453 ; iii. 283 ; makes the holy chrism at St. Alban's, iii. 333.

Banstead (*Banstude*), death of Hubert de Burgh at, ii. 477 ; iii. 288.

Bar, Genton de, takes the cross, i. 57 ; joins the count of Toulouse, i. 72.

Bar, [Henry II.,] count of, killed at the battle of Gaza, ii. 433 ; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Bar, [Theobald II.,] count of, assumes the cross, ii. 508; iii. 296; sent to the Venetians by Louis IX., iii. 48.

Bar, counts of, their shield of arms, iii. 66.

Barbeaux (*Barbellum*), burial of Louis VII. in the monastery of, i. 418; iii. 204.

Bardolf, Hugh, appointed an administrator of the realm by Richard I., ii. 27.

Barfleur (*Barbefluvium*), Henry duke of Normandy comes to, i. 289; embarks from, i. 299, 384; Richard I. embarks at, ii. 5.

Barham-down (*Beramdona*), John's forces assemble at, ii. 133.

Bari, council held at, against the errors of the Greeks, i. 52; Peter the Hermit comes to, i. 59; destroyed by William of Sicily, i. 306.

Barking, abbey of, Mary, sister of St. Thomas, made abbess at, i. 376, iii. 200.

Barneville, Roger de, takes the cross, i. 57; joins Robert of Normandy, i. 76; slain by the Persians, i. 111.

Barons, English, swear to compel John to grant the liberties of Henry I. and Edward the Confessor, ii. 153; meet at St. Edmund's, *ib.*; demand from John the liberties he had sworn to observe, ii. 154; return to their homes, ii. 155; meet again at Brackley, and elect a chief, *ib.*; iii. 231; send to John a schedule of the liberties demanded, *ib.*; elect Robert Fitz-Walter their leader, ii. 156; besiege the castle of Northampton, *ib.*; go on to Bedford, *ib.*; take possession of London, *ib.*; iii. 232; receive overtures from John, ii. 157; the Great Charter conceded to, *ib.*; twenty-five appointed to carry out its provisions, ii. 158; return to London, ii. 159; spend their time idly there, ii. 161; receive a threatening letter from pope Innocent, ii. 162; resolve to persevere, ii. 163; commit Rochester castle to the custody of William de Albini, *ib.*; march to its aid, but turn back, ii. 165; are excommunicated by the pope, ii. 166; elect prince Louis of France as king, ii. 173; iii. 234; papal sentence against them renewed, ii. 174; hold a tournament near London, ii. 175; do homage to Louis, ii. 179; ravage the counties of Cambridge, Norfolk and Suffolk, ii. 184; plunder Colchester, *ib.*; besiege Windsor castle, ii. 185; march towards Cambridge, ii. 186; return to London, *ib.*; secret intentions of Louis to destroy them, ii. 187, 188; many wish to renew their fealty to John, ii. 188, 192, 194; gradually abandon Louis, ii. 200, 216; hesitation to which side they should adhere, ii. 201, 202; proceedings at Lincoln, and names of those captured, ii. 211, 212; murmur against Hubert de Burgh, ii. 257; ordered by the pope to give up their castles of the king's demesne, ii. 258; conspire against Henry III., *ib.*, 261; hold a conference at London, ii. 388.

Barre, Richard, sent to the pope, i. 349.

Barres, John de, killed near Gaza, ii. 433; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Barri, [Bar-sur-Seine,] [Milo III.], count of, joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230.

Bashan, beyond Jordan, i. 159.

Basingestoc, Basingstokes, John de. *See* Leicester, archdeacons of; London, archdeacon of.

Basingwerk, castle of, repaired by Henry II., i. 307.

Basset, Fulk, dean of York, becomes heir of his brother Gilbert, ii. 446; iii. 282. *See* London, bishops of.

Basset, Gilbert, joins the confederacy of Richard, earl Mareschal, ii. 356; received into the favour of Henry III., ii. 371; iii. 271; dies by a fall from his horse, ii. 466; iii. 282; death of his son, *ib.*

Basset, Philip, sent envoy to the General Council at Lyons, ii. 502; iii. 295.

Basset, Thomas, with the army of Henry III. at Newark, ii. 209.

Basset, Warin, killed at assault of Cardiff castle, ii. 357.

Bath, see of Wells transferred to, i. 44; effects of an earthquake in the diocese, iii. 42, 305.

Bath, bishops of:

—— John, his death, i. 231; iii. 182.

—— Godfrey, the queen's chaplain, appointed, i. 232; iii. 183.

—— Reginald, archdeacon of Salisbury, elected, i. 375; goes to Rome, i. 382. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

—— Savaric, archdeacon of Northampton, elected, ii. 41; iii. 213; goes to Rome, and is ordained priest, *ib.*; consecrated by the bishop of Albano, *ib.*

—— Jocelin de Welles, consecrated, ii. 107; leaves England, ii. 116; dictates the oath at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195; assists in anointing him, *ib.*; at Dover, on the landing of Hubert de Burgh, iii. 242; dies, ii. 468; iii. 286.

—— Roger, precentor of Salisbury, confirmed, ii. 480; iii. 288; his prebend promised to the pope's nephew, *ib.*; consecrated, ii. 495; iii. 292; dies, iii. 33, 39.

—— [William Button] referred to, for account of an earthquake, iii. 42, 305; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; sent envoy to the king of Spain, iii. 144, 329.

Bath, Henry de, justiciary, accused of treachery, iii. 106, 321.

Bath, Reginald de, physician, sent to Scotland to attend the king and queen, iii. 346; reveals to Henry III. their complaints against their guardians, *ib.*; is poisoned, *ib.*

Batintona [Bachentone, *Hen. Hunt.*], castle of, taken by Stephen, i. 254.

Battacius. *See* Vataces.

Battle abbey, founded by William the Bastard, i. 30, 34 *n.*; iii. 169.

Battle-cry, of the English royalists, i. 85; ii. 71; iii. 230; of the French, ii. 251; iii. 230; of the Scotch, i. 259.

Baugency, Ralph de, takes the cross, i. 57.

Bavaria, traversed by the Crusaders under Louis VII., i. 279.

Bavaria, [Louis I.,] duke of, one of the leaders at Damietta, ii. 249; a hostage in the hands of the Soldan, ii. 250.

Bayeux (*Baiocum*), taken by Henry I., i. 201; submits to Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 261; legates sent to Henry II. at, i. 347.

Bayeux, Odo, bishop of, brother of William I., accused of treason and imprisoned, i. 25.

Bayonne, the second city in Gascony, iii. 332; Gaston of Bearn attempts to occupy, *ib.*

Bearn (*Biarda*), [Marthe de Bigorre], countess of, her visit to Henry III., ii. 464; her great obesity, *ib.*; promises aid, and obtains much money, *ib.*

Bearn, Gaston de, son of above [and Gaston VII.], ii. 464; defeated by the earl of Leicester, iii. 43, 305; taken prisoner, and brought to the king, iii. 73; pardoned, and again revolts, *ib.*, 326; seeks refuge with the king of Spain, iii. 140, 326; styled lord of Bearn and Perigord, iii. 326; attempts to occupy Bayonne, iii. 332.

Beatrice, daughter of Henry III., her birth at Bordeaux, ii. 464; iii. 285.

Beatrice, wife of Reimund IV., count of Provence. *See* Provence.

Beauchamp (*de Bello-Campo*), nobles of that name take the cross, i. 57.

Beauchamp, William de, welcomes the barons at Bedford, ii. 156; taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212; persuaded by his wife Yda to harass the monks of Wardon abbey, iii. 129.

Beaujeu (*Beugiu*), [Imbert,] lord of, sent to the Venetians by Louis IX., iii. 49.

Beaulieu (*Bellus locus*), abbey of, founded by John, ii. 103, 194; iii. 63, 311; death of queen Alienor at, *ib.*; dedication of, iii. 63, 311.

Beaulieu, abbats of:

—— [Hugh], envoy of John at the Lateran Council, ii. 168.

Beaulieu, abbats of—*cont.*

—— [Azius de Gisors ?], expends 500 marks on the dedication of the abbey, iii. 65; supplies the monastery of Hayles with monks, *ib.*, 311.

Beaulieu (*de Bello-loco*, but *Bello-Campo* in MS. C.), John de, his death, ii. 459.

Beaumont (*Mons-bellus*), castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 459 *n.*, 461.

Beaumont (*Belli-montis*), Rocelin, viscount of, takes Robert, earl of Leicester, prisoner, ii. 51.

Beauvais (*Belvacum*), prince John makes a foray to, ii. 59.

Beauvais, Philip [de Dreux], bishop of, addicted to fighting more than to the Bible, ii. 59; defeated and captured, *ib.*, iii. 216; presented to Richard I., and imprisoned, *ib.*; his canons complain to the pope, *ib.*; his coat of mail sent to the pope, ii. 60; released on paying ransom, ii. 84; iii. 219.

Beauvais, Reginald of, a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Beauvoir (*Bealveria*), valley of, ii. 208.

Beauvoir (*Bealver*, *Belver*), castle of, surrendered to John, ii. 171.

Beauvoir (*Belverium*), castle in Palestine, belonging to the Hospitallers, i. 431.

Bec, church of, foundation stone of, laid by archbishop Lanfranc, i. 24; the building carried on by Gunzo, *ib.*; dedication of, *ib.*; its customs adopted at St. Alban's, *ib.*; Henry II. received at, i. 276.

Bec, abbats of:

—— Herlewin, first abbat, his death, i. 23.

—— Theobald, elected archbishop of Canterbury, i. 261. *See* Canterbury.

—— Roger, elected archbishop of Canterbury, but refuses, i. 373.

—— [Hugh], present at the death-bed of Hugh, bishop of Coventry, iii. 67.

Beda, the Venerable, ecclesiastical writer, mentioned, *Prol.*, i. 4.

Beders. *See* Beziers.

Bedford, castle of, besieged by Stephen, i. 257; the barons welcomed at, ii. 156; surrendered to Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 170; given to Faukes by John, ii. 172; iii. 233; Faukes brings booty and prisoners to, ii. 203; Henry de Braibroc imprisoned there, ii. 263; fortified against Henry III., ii. 264; iii. 249; besieged, and surrenders, *ib.*; the garrison hung, with exception of three, *ib.*

Bedford, church of St. Paul at, destroyed by Faukes, ii. 265.

Bedford, archdeacons of:

—— John de Hotune or Houtune, conveys the reply of the council to the nuncio, touching the papal demands, ii. 279; envoy of Henry III. at Rome against the archbishop elect of Canterbury, ii. 309. *See* Northampton, archdeacon of.

—— Almaric [de Buggedene], dies intestate, iii. 9.

—— [John de Crakehale ?], goes abroad, iii. 69.

Bedouins, were subject to Saladin, i. 450; inform Richard I. of the caravan journeying from Babylon to Jerusalem, ii. 30.

Beennon [Ben-hinnom], valley of, at Jerusalem, i. 161. *See* Ennon.

Beguins (*Beguini*, *Beguinæ*), rise of the community (chiefly women) in Germany and France, ii. 476; iii. 93, 288, 318; great numbers at Cologne, ii. 476.

Beirout (*Baruth*, *Berithus*), city of, the Crusaders encamp at, i. 136; Hippocrates said to have lived there, i. 215; captured by Baldwin I., and made an episcopal see, *ib.*; situated between Byblos and Sidon, *ib.*; added by Baldwin to his kingdom, i. 224.

Beirout, the bishop of, suffragan to the archbishop of Tyre, i. 161.

Beirout, Waleran, bishop of, brings disastrous news from the Holy Land to England, ii. 483; iii. 289; reads the letter in the General Council at Lyons, ii. 507; iii. 295.

Belesme (*de Beleasmo*), Robert de, earl of Shrewsbury. *See* Shrewsbury.

Belfecho, Soldan of Persia, had subdued Syria, i. 91 ; rumours of the approach of, i. 104.

Belgrave, city of, in Bulgaria, the Crusaders under Walter Sansavoir arrive at, i. 60 ; the Crusaders under Godeschalc defeated at, i. 66 ; the forces of duke Godfrey arrive at, i. 68.

Belina. *See* Cæsarea Philippi.

Belley (*Belesium*), William de Kilkenni consecrated bishop of Ely at, iii. 347.

Benedict IX., pope, iii. 164.

Benedict X., pope, iii. 167.

Benedict, St., his Rule opposed to secular studies, iii. 57, 94, 309 ; directed vile garments to be worn by monks, iii. 111.

Benedictine or Black Order, meeting of the abbats to reform their statutes, ii. 413 ; iii. 278 ; the monasteries of, in Norway, reformed by Matthew Paris, iii. 40, 304 ; meeting of the abbats of, at Bermondsey, for reform, iii. 59, 210 ; visitation of, ordered by Innocent IV., to enforce certain articles, iii. 139, 328 ; the monks of, in France, escape by paying money, *ib.* ; the legate takes steps to reform the Order in Norway, ii. 300.

Benifield [Binfield, co. Northampton], castle of, Faukes employs the garrison to collect booty, ii. 203.

Benjamin and Juda, the valley of Ennon fell to their lot, i. 161.

Beornred, king of Mercia, his tyranny, i. 8.

Berengaria, daughter of the king of Navarre, taken to Sicily as bride to Richard I., ii. 15, 21 ; married to him in Cyprus, ii. 21 ; iii. 211.

Berengarius, archdeacon of Angers, his heresy disseminated in France, i. 32 ; council held at Vercelli against, i. 33.

Bergavenny (*Bergeveni*), castle of, many Welshmen put to death in, i. 393.

Bergen (*Bergæ*), in Norway, Hacon crowned at, iii. 31.

Bergerac (*Bregerac*), castle of, besieged by earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 270.

Berkhampstead (*Berchamstede, Berchamestude, Berkamestude*), Henry I. at, i. 231 ; iii. 183 ; the castellany possessed by archbishop Thomas, i. 329 ; custody of the castle committed to Ranulph [Waleran] the German, ii. 172, 296 ; surrendered to prince Louis, ii. 201 ; iii. 238 ; earl Richard of Cornwall leaves, ii. 437 ; iii. 281 ; birth of his son there, iii. 68.

Bermondsey, meeting of the Black Order at, iii. 59, 310.

Bermondsey (*Bermundesheie*), Peter, first prior of, dies, i. 222 ; iii. 182 ; ruled by Joibert, a Norman, ii. 67.

Bernard, St., modern refinements in dress unpleasing to, iii. 111.

Bernardus Silvester, his poem "Cosmographia" quoted, ii. 392.

Berry, the divisions of, referred to arbitration, i. 418 ; Philip II. relinquishes his right in, to Richard, ii. 56.

Bersheba (*Bersebee*), rebuilt by Fulk of Jerusalem, i. 246.

Bertram, Roger, his death, ii. 468.

Berwick, arrival of some strange ships at, iii. 332.

Berwick (*Berewic*), castle of, ceded to Henry II. by William [the Lion], i. 393 ; restored to him, ii. 13 ; taken by John, 172.

Besace, Besaz, Ranulph, physician of Richard I., canon of St. Paul's, ii. 37 ; present at the decapitation of the prince of Antioch by Saladin, *ib.* ; blind from old age, *ib.*

Bethany, village of, where Lazarus was raised, i. 162.

Bethel, on the north of Jerusalem, i. 159.

Bethelon, [Botrun ?] castle of, [in Syria,] passed by the Crusaders, i. 136.

Bethlehem, Bethleem, birthplace of Jesus Christ, i. 159, 162 ; the bishop of, suffragan to the patriarch of Jerusalem, i. 162 ; the prior of, mentioned, ii. 32.

Bethlehem, [Peter,] bishop of, accompanies the Crusaders to Damietta, ii. 227.

Bethonoble [Beit-Nuba], near Emmaus, in Palestine, arrival of Richard I. at, ii. 30; the duke of Burgundy at, ii. 32.

Bethune (*Bettun*), Baldwin de, accompanies Richard I. on landing at Zara, ii. 40; his death, ii. 459.

Bethune, [Robert,] advocate of, assumes the cross, ii. 508.

Beumais, Richard de, ordained deacon by the bishop of London, i. 261. *See* London, bishops of.

Beumunt, Richard de, killed at Gaza; ii. 433.

Beverley, William of York, provost of, elected bishop of Salisbury, iii. 14. *See* Salisbury.

Beveron, St., John [James] de, castle at, fortified by the earl of Chester, ii. 327; belonged to his wife, *ib.*; given up to him by the count of Britanny, *ib.*

Beziers (*Beders*), city of, taken by Simon de Montfort, ii. 144.

Beziers (*Beders*), Gaston de, takes the cross, i. 57; joins the count of Toulouse, i. 72; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Bigod, Bigot, Hugh, seneschal of Henry I., swears that Stephen had been appointed by Henry his successor, i. 251; seizes the castle of Norwich, i. 254; as earl of East Anglia [Norfolk], at the battle of Lincoln, i. 265; surrenders his castles to Henry II., i. 307; is excommunicated, i. 333; gives up Fremingham castle to the earl of Leicester, i. 381; attacked by the English nobles, i. 382; makes a truce, and embarks from Dover, *ib.*; joins the Flemish troops in Norfolk, i. 384; his castles of Bungay and Fremingham threatened by the king, i. 388; makes peace by payment of money, *ib.*

Bigod, Roger, earl [of Norfolk, son of Hugh I.], his possessions in Norfolk and Suffolk ravaged by John, ii. 185.

Bigod, Hugh, earl of East Anglia, [son of Roger I.,] his death, ii. 274; his lands placed in charge of the justiciary, *ib.*; shield of arms, *ib.*

Bigod, Roger, earl of Norfolk and Suffolk, [son of Hugh II.,] Mareschal of England, envoy to the General Council at Lyons, ii. 502; iii. 295; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; takes back his wife [Isabel], daughter of the king of Scotland, iii. 328.

Biham, [Bitham, co. Linc.,] castle of, placed in the custody of the earl of Albemarle, ii. 172; he withdraws to, and provisions, ii. 244; iii. 245; taken by Henry III. *ib.*

Binard, William, disinherited by Henry I., i. 214.

Birds, a schism in the papacy presaged by flocks of, i. 243; forbidden to be captured by John, iii. 224.

Births, prodigious, of a manikin and infant giant, iii. 60, 61.

Biset, John, chief forester of England, dies, ii. 446; iii. 282.

Biset, Margaret, nurse of the princess Isabel, remains with her when empress, ii. 380; when attendant on the queen, saves the life of Henry III., ii. 413; iii. 278; dies at Bordeaux, ii. 468; iii. 286.

Bishopric, permitted to be held without consecration, and with other benefices, iii. 316.

Bissopescote, given to St. Alban's by Henry I., i. 221; iii. 181.

Bithinia, advance of Peter the Hermit to, i. 62; the Crusaders under Louis VII. arrive at, i. 279.

Bitlesden (*Bethelesdene*), abbey of, Ernald de Bosco buried at, iii. 343.

Black Order. *See* Benedictine Order.

Blanche, daughter of Alfonso VIII. of Castille, her marriage arranged with Louis of France [afterwards Louis VIII.], ii. 84; brought to France by queen Alienor, ii. 85; iii. 219; married to Louis at Portmort, *ib.*; sends forces to him in England, ii. 216; when queen regent, causes Louis IX. to be crowned, ii. 290; iii. 254; rumours touching her liaison with the legate, *ib.*; iii. 254; the nobles of Normandy dissatisfied with

Blanche, daughter of Alfonso VIII.—*cont.* her rule, ii. 306; iii. 258; orders the authors of the tumult at St. Marcel to be punished, ii. 308; iii. 258; her astute conduct in reference to the complaints of the nobles, ii. 325; she reconciles Louis with his nobles, ii. 327; iii. 262; the nobles rise against her, ii. 390; iii. 252; peace made with them, ii. 392; present at the reception of the Holy Cross at Paris, ii. 446; saves Louis from death by means of the holy reliques, ii. 497; loads earl Richard of Cornwall with honours, iii. 75; Louis IX. sends to her for aid, iii. 85; her grief at the fate of her children, iii. 122; her death, and burial at Pontoise, iii. 128, 323.

Blaye (*Blavium*), Henry III. retreats to, ii. 464.

Bloet, Robert, chancellor of William II. made bishop of Lincoln, i. 43. *See* Lincoln.

Blois and Chartres, Stephen, count of, marries Adala, daughter of William I., i. 31, 251; iii. 173; assumes the cross, i. 56; joins Robert of Normandy, i. 76; at the battle of Gorgoni, i. 84; withdraws from Antioch, i. 104; dissuades the Greek emperor from the relief of the city, i. 114; returns to Constantinople, i. 193; killed at Ramla, i. 197; was the father of Stephen, count of Boulogne, i. 238.

Blois, Theobald IV., count of, nephew of Henry I., takes arms against Louis VI., i. 221; eldest son of count Stephen, i. 251; Normandy offered to him by the nobles, i. 255; comes to Lisieux, *ib.*; Falaise given up to him, *ib.*; receives an annual payment from Stephen, i. 256.

Blois, Theobald V., count of, marries [Alice,] daughter of Louis VII., i. 256; killed at Acre, ii. 20.

Boamund I., prince of Tarento, son of Robert Guiscard, duke of Apulia, succeeds to the dukedom, i. 32; assumes the cross, i. 56; names of his chief adherents, i. 71; his progress to Pelagonia, *ib.*; mediates between the Greek emperor and the count of Toulouse, i. 73; assists to defeat Soliman before Nice, i. 80; his station at the siege, i. 81; marches to the valley of Gorgoni, i. 84; helps to take a city, given to Peter de Alpibus, i. 88; his post at the siege of Antioch, i. 91; aids in the defeat of the Turks, i. 92; his stratagem to get rid of spies, i. 94, 95; fails to protect a body of pilgrims, i. 100; discloses a plot for the surrender of Antioch, i. 106; is the first to ascend one of the towers, i. 108; makes an unsuccessful sally, i. 112; forces some to remain who meditated flight, i. 113; urges the Crusaders to persevere until they reach Jerusalem, i. 117; leader of the twelfth division against Corbaran, i. 121; the city of Antioch assigned to him, i. 128; styled prince of Antioch, *ib.*; quarrels with the count of Toulouse, i. 132; taken prisoner at Meletemia, i. 186; ransomed, i. 198; aids in the siege of Haran, i. 200; his dispute with count Baldwin, *ib.*; defeated, and flies to Edessa, *ib.*; leads a force against the emperor Alexius, i. 211; besieges Durazzo and ravages Epirus, *ib.*; makes a treaty with Alexius, *ib.*; returns to Apulia, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*

Boamund II., son of Boamund I. by Constance, daughter of Philip I., i. 211; his claim to Antioch allowed, i. 217; marries [Alice,] daughter of Baldwin II., and receives his inheritance of Antioch, i. 240; takes the castle of Caphardan, *ib.*; slain by the prince of Aleppo, i. 244; his widow receives Laodicea and Gabala as dowry, i. 245; his principality secured to his daughter [Constance], *ib.*

Boamund, III., [son of Reimund of Poitou by Constance,] prince of Antioch, taken prisoner by Noradin, i. 337.

Bobi, Osbert de, imprisoned in Corf castle, ii. 166.

Boisars [Brentwood], vill of, belonged to the bishop of Norwich, ii. 347; Hubert de Burgh takes refuge in the chapel at,

Boisars [Brentwood]—*cont.*
ii. 347; dragged thence, and afterwards taken back to, ii. 348.

Bolebec, Isabella de, countess of Oxford, her death, ii. 509; iii. 296.

Bologna, the citizens of, join the Parmese, iii. 54, 309; defeat of Ensio between Cremona and, iii. 56; prisoners taken sent to, iii. 57, 309.

Bolsover (*Bolsoveres*), castle of, granted to prince John, ii. 5.

Bolum, John de, monk of St. Alban's, sent to Rome to oppose episcopal visitation, iii. 339.

Boniface [of Savoy], uncle of the queen, recommended by Henry III. to be elected bishop of Durham, ii. 440; iii. 281. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

Boniface, marquis. *See* Montferrat.

Bon-Mulins, castle of, burnt by duke Henry of Normandy, i. 290.

Bordeaux (*Burdegalis*), earl Richard of Cornwall lands at, ii. 269; his proceedings there, *ib.*; birth of princess Beatrice at, ii. 464; iii. 285; Henry III. keeps Christmas at, ii. 468; iii. 286; subdued by the earl of Leicester, iii. 73; traitorous conduct of the inhabitants to the king, *ib.*; Henry lands at, iii. 140, 328; his queen lands at, iii. 335; in want of provisions, iii. 326; the citizens invite Henry to come over, iii. 327.

Bordeaux, archbishops of:
—— William, abbat of Reading, elected, i. 376; iii. 200.
—— [Elias de Malmort], marries Louis of France to Blanche of Castille, ii. 85.
—— [Gerald de Malmort], sent to Henry III. to invite him over, ii. 306; comes again to England, iii. 119; present, when Gascony was granted to prince Edward, iii. 123.

Borsequin, a Turkish prince [Soldan of Aleppo ?], captures the castle of Caphardan, i. 235; besieges Harsad, *ib.*; defeated by Baldwin II., i. 236; iii. 184.

Boscherville (*Baschevilla*), castle of, burnt by duke Henry, i. 290.

Bosco, Ernald de, made chief forester of the southern parts, iii. 327; dies, and buried at Bitlesden, iii. 343.

Boseham (*Boseam*), a manor belonging to Harold, iii. 168.

Bosphorus, named also [*incorrectly*] the Hellespont, and Arm of St. George, i. 72, 78; duke Robert of Normandy arrives at with his forces, and crosses, *ib.*; crossed by the army of Louis VII., i. 279; and of Conrad III., i. 280.

Botilda, queen of Philip II. *See* Ingelburga.

Bougars, otherwise called Paterins, a sect of heretics in France and Flanders, ii. 388; their errors exposed, and numbers burnt, *ib.*; iii. 318. *See* Bugre, Robert.

Boulogne, Henry III. keeps Christmas there, iii. 342; Peter Chaceporc dies at, *ib.*

Boulogne, Eustace, count of, brother of duke Godfrey, assumes the cross, i. 56; joins Robert of Normandy, i. 76; at the siege of Antioch, i. 91; a leader of the seventh division against Corbaran, i. 120; one of the first to enter Jerusalem, i. 145.

Boulogne, Stephen, count of. *See* Stephen, king of England.

Boulogne, Matthew, count of, marries Mary, daughter of Stephen, abbess of Romsey, i. 314; iii. 194; unfriendly to the chancellor Thomas, i. 315; iii. 196; dies, i. 377.

Boulogne, Reginald [de Dammartin], count of, expelled by Philip II., ii. 125; does homage to John for lands granted, *ib.*; iii. 125; sent to the aid of the count of Flanders, ii. 138, 150; his reply to Hugh de Boves on being called traitor, ii. 151; taken prisoner at the battle of Bovines, *ib.*; iii. 91; his lands after his decease granted to earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 297.

Boulogne, Philip, count of, acts for Louis IX. in the truce made with Henry III., ii. 333.

Boulogne [Philip Hurepel], count of, [killed in Egypt], his shield of arms, iii. 84.

Bourges (*Bituris*), council held at, and the pope's claim to prebends disallowed, ii. 281; the leader of the Pastoureaux killed at, iii. 112.

Bourges, Peter, nephew of Aimeric, chancellor of the Roman see, consecrated archbishop of, by the pope, i. 277.

Boves, Hugh de, one of the chiefs of John's forces in Flanders, ii. 150; reproaches the count of Boulogne as a traitor, ii. 151; takes flight at the battle of Bovines, *ib.*; iii. 91; sent abroad to raise forces, ii. 160; perishes at sea, ii. 164; iii. 91, 232.

Bovines, battle of, between Philip II. and the English and German allies, ii. 151; iii. 91; gained by the French, *ib.*; iii. 230, 317.

Boxley (*Boxsleia*), the abbat of, assists in the burial of archbishop Thomas, i. 365.

Brabançons, decree of the Lateran council against, i. 412.

Brabant, mercenary forces from, at the battle of Dol, i. 382; employed by John, ii. 163, 170; iii. 232; two merchants of, robbed in Hampshire, iii. 46.

Brabant, [Henry II.,] duke of, assumes the cross, ii. 508.

Brabant and Lorraine, [Henry III.,] duke of, refuses to be elected emperor, iii. 101. *See* Louvain.

Brackley (*Brackele*), the barons assemble at, ii. 155.

Braibroc, Henry de, defends the castle of Mountsorel, ii. 206; justice itinerant at Dunstable, ii. 263; imprisoned in Bedford castle by Faukes [de Breaute], *ib.*; his wife [Christiana] complains to the king, *ib.*; escapes unhurt, ii. 265.

Bramton (*Brantona*), not far from Huntingdon, the forest rights violated by Stephen at, i. 255.

Brancoleo, a citizen of Bologna, elected triennial senator of Rome, iii. 131, 324; his character for justice, *ib.*

Branfield (*Brantefeld*), the first living held by archbishop Thomas, i. 303, 317; iii. 193; collated to it by the abbat of St. Alban's, i. 361.

Brause, or Braose (*Brausia*), Philip de, disinherited by Henry I., i. 214.

Brause, Reginald de, [son of William, senior,] lord of Builth, asks aid against the Welsh, ii. 247.

Brause, William de, senior, kills many of the Welsh in the castle of Bergavenny, i. 393; besieged by Wenunwen in Castle Maud, ii. 70; iii. 217; resists the demand of John for homage and hostages, ii. 117; flies to Ireland, *ib.*; his wife Matilda, and son and wife, imprisoned at Windsor, and die by starvation, ii. 123; iii. 225; he seeks refuge in France, ii. 125; dies at Corbeil, and buried at St. Victor, Paris, *ib.*

Brause, William de, junior, [son of preceding,] imprisoned with his wife, and dies at Windsor, ii. 123; iii. 225.

Brause, William de, [son of Reginald,] put to death by Llewellyn of North Wales, ii. 322; iii. 262; his shield of arms, *ib.*; his lands ravaged by the Welsh, ii. 331.

Breaute, Falco de, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

[Breaute], Falcasius or Faukes de, of Norman origin, but spurious birth, ii. 131; iii. 226; "æditus" of king John and Lord Marcher of Wales, *ib.*; iii. 226; a leader of the royalist army, ii. 169; razes the castle of Hanslape, ii. 170; his horrible excesses, iii. 233; the castle of Bedford given to him, with Margaret de Rivers, ii. 170; iii. 233; several castles committed to his custody, ii. 172; assists in ravaging the isle of Ely, ii. 173; returns to Bedford with booty and prisoners, ii. 203; collects forces from several garrisons, and plunders St. Alban's, ii. 203; iii. 239; seizes many laymen and clerks at Wabridge, ii. 204; iii. 239; is frightened

[Breaute] Falcasius or Faukes de—*cont.* by a dream, *ib.*; comes to St. Alban's and obtains absolution, ii. 205 ; iii. 239 ; does not repair the injury done, *ib.*; at the siege of Mountsorel, ii. 206 ; with the army at Newark, ii. 209 ; he gains admission to the castle at Lincoln, ii. 211 ; taken prisoner, but rescued, *ib.*; supplies the necessaries for the Christmas feast at Northampton, ii. 226 ; iii. 243 ; abets the disturbers of the king's peace, ii. 226 ; aids the earl of Albemarle in making ravages, ii. 244 ; hangs Constantine Fitz-Olaf at London, ii. 251 ; beheads a deacon who had apostatized, ii. 254 ; joins the earl of Chester in rebellion, ii. 260, 261 ; iii. 248 ; condemned to pay heavy fines by the justices at Dunstable, ii. 263 ; orders the justices to be captured, *ib.*; the crops and goods of his manors seized, ii. 265 ; iii. 250 ; his repentance, *ib.*; brought to the king by the bishop of Chester, *ib.*; committed to the charge of the bishop of London, *ib.*; iii. 250 ; had destroyed the church of St. Paul at Bedford, *ib.*; confesses his enormities, ii. 266 ; jocose application of some lines of Ovid to him, *ib.*; sentenced to exile, ii. 271 ; iii. 251 ; committed to safe conduct of the earl of Warren, *ib.*; embarks, and lands in Normandy, ii. 272 ; iii. 251 ; brought in fetters to Louis VIII., *ib.*; despised and set free, *ib.*; goes to Rome, and is counselled by Robert Passelewe, *ib.*; iii. 252 ; intercession made for him by the pope, ii. 275 ; iii. 252 ; obtains leave to have his wife and lands restored, ii. 291 ; his death from poison, and burial at St. Cyriac, *ib.*; iii. 255 ; the threats of St. Alban verified in his fate, *ib.*; death of his widow Margaret, iii. 125.

Breaute, William de, brother of Faukes, refuses to give up Bedford castle, ii. 263 ; is hung after the surrender, ii. 265 ; his body buried between Newenham and the castle, ii. 266 *n.*

Breges. *See* Bridgenorth.

Breis, Reginald de, killed near Nice, i. 64.

Breisne, or Brienne (*Bresne*, *Bresnes*), elected king of Jerusalem, ii. 61 ; iii. 216 ; his envoys present at the Lateran Council, ii. 168 ; sails with forces from Acre to Damietta, ii. 227 ; is willing to accept the proposals of the Soldan of Babylon, iii. 236 ; his disastrous position before Babylon, ii. 249 ; remains a hostage with the Soldan, ii. 250 ; comes to England for aid, ii. 259 ; prays at the tomb of St. Thomas, and presents four saphires, ii. 260 ; appointed leader of the papal army, ii. 307 ; invades the emperor's territories, *ib.*; a brother of the pope associated with him, *ib.*; takes flight to France, ii. 322 ; iii. 261 ; dies, ii. 396 ; his shield of arms, *ib.*; his daughter [Yolande] married to Frederic II. ; his religious character, *ib. n.*

Breisne or Brienne (*Bresne*), Walter [count of Joppa, nephew of John], taken prisoner by the Chorasmians, ii. 484.

Brentwood. *See* Boisars.

Bretons, their bravery at Tenchebrai, i. 204 ; desert Henry II., and join earl Richard, i. 455 ; iii. 208 ; obtain letters patent from Philip II. to be included in any peace made with Henry, i. 462 ; adhere to Richard, ii. 63.

Breton, le, or Brito, Ranulph, justiciary and treasurer of the chamber, deposed from office, ii. 342 ; iii. 265 ; when canon of St. Paul's, falsely accused of treason, ii. 422, 423 ; imprisoned in the Tower, *ib.*; iii. 279 ; released, *ib.*; his accuser hung, *ib.*; dies, iii. 14.

Breton, le, or Brito, Richard, assists in the murder of archbishop Thomas, i. 363, 364.

Bridgenorth (*Breges*, *Bruges*), castle of, taken by Henry I., i. 19 ; fortified by Hugh de Mortimer, i. 303; captured, *ib.*

Bridlington, the crops of the canons of, at Edenham, carried off, ii. 243.

Brienne. *See* Breisne.

Brightwell (*Bercewelle*, *Bretewelle*), castle of, surrenders to duke Henry, i. 293.

Bristol (*Bristoldum*), castle of, held by earl Robert against Stephen, i. 258; Stephen imprisoned in, i. 266; iii. 188; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 117, 201; iii. 224; garrisoned by him, ii. 181; the city granted to prince Edward, iii. 336.

Britanny (*Britannia Minor*), subdued by William I., iii. 173; the bishops and nobles swear fealty to Henry II. and his son Geoffrey, i. 352; Arthur does homage for, to Philip II., ii. 82; afterwards to John, ii. 86; John marches into, ii. 149; Henry III. sends envoys to, ii. 291; many nobles of, do homage to him, ii. 323; forces left there under the earl of Chester, ii. 328; invaded by Louis IX., ii. 333.

Britanny, [Alan Fergant,] count of, marries Constance, daughter of William I., i. 31.

Britanny, Alan, [son of Stephen,] count of, makes alliance with Henry I., i. 221; at the battle of Lincoln with Stephen, i. 265.

Britanny, Hoel, [son of Conan III,,] count of, expelled from Nantes, i. 306.

Britanny, Conan IV., [son of Alan,] count of, his death, i. 345; his daughter Constance married to Geoffrey, son of Henry II., i. 346, 437.

Britanny, Geoffrey, count of, son of Henry II., marries Constance of Britanny, i. 346, 437; the nobles swear fealty to, i. 352; does homage to his father, i. 391; knighted at Woodstock, i. 401; iii. 203; does homage to the young king, i. 425; joins him against their father, i. 374; dies from injuries at a tournament at Paris, i. 436; iii. 206; buried in the cathedral, i. 437; iii. 206; left two daughters, and his wife pregnant of Arthur, *ib.*; his right to the succession of Anjou, ii. 78; death of his daughter Alienor, ii. 456; iii. 284.

Britanny, Arthur, count of. *See* Arthur.

Britanny, [Peter de Dreux, surnamed Mauclerc,] count of, his daughter asked in marriage for Henry III., ii. 295; iii. 256; refuses to break his treaty with Louis IX., *ib.*; his lands in England granted to earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 297; does homage to Henry, ii. 319; receives back his rights in England, *ib.*; lands at Portsmouth, and persuades Henry to defer his expedition, ii. 319; iii. 260; delivers up his castles to him, ii. 323; gives up S. John [James] de Beveron, to the earl of Chester, ii. 327; captures the baggage waggons of Louis IX., on his invasion of Britanny, ii. 333; acts for Henry in making a truce with Louis, *ib.*; joins Henry in Wales, *ib.*; dissuades him from marriage with a sister of the king of Scots, ii. 336; returns home, *ib.*; aid granted to pay off the king's debts to, ii. 345; renounces his homage to Henry, and forfeits his rights in England, ii. 372; iii. 271; becomes a pirate, *ib.*; rebels against the queen regent of France, ii. 390; obtains much booty in a raid to Damascus, ii. 433; re-assumes the cross, ii. 508; iii. 296.

Britanny, [John, son of Peter,] count of, treaty with Louis IX. on behalf of the count of La Marche, ii. 463; turns pirate, but restrained by Louis, ii. 470; takes the cross, ii. 508.

Brithmar. *See* Lichfield, bishop of.

Brito, Ralph. *See* Breton, le.

Briwere, William, appointed an administrator of the realm by Richard I., ii. 27; helps to carry out the tax on the clergy, ii. 123; one of the royalist leaders, ii. 170; councillor of John and Henry, iii. 253; declares the liberties extorted by the barons ought not to be observed, *ib.*

Broc, Philip de, canon of Bedford, tried for homicide, and exiled, i. 328.

Broc, Robert de, excommunicated by archbishop Thomas, i. 362.

Broillun, Geoffrey de, taken prisoner at Le Mans, i. 460.

Bromholm, miracles of the holy cross at, ii. 258; iii. 247.

Brueboles, Brueholes, Brueroles [Bresolles ?], castle of, burnt by duke Henry, i. 290.

Bruges (*Berges*), queen Emma resides at, iii. 164 ; Charles, count of Flanders, murdered at, i. 239.

Bruges. *See* Bridgenorth.

Bruis [Bures ?], in Normandy, Richard I. reconciled to John at, ii. 48.

Bruis, Brus, Peter de, helps to subject Yorkshire to prince Louis, ii. 182 ; his death, ii. 459.

Buc, Walter, a leader of the Flemish mercenaries employed by John, ii. 164, 170.

Bucel, Alan, knight, slain by the Welsh, ii. 507 ; iii. 296.

Buceles, Butelles [Bouteille ?], town of, ceded to the archbishop of Rouen by Richard I., ii. 62.

Buckden (*Bugeden*), a manor of Robert, bishop of Lincoln, where he died, iii. 145, 146, 330.

Buffaloes, first sent to England, to earl Richard, iii. 119.

Bugre, Robert, Friar Preacher, so named from having been a heretic, ii. 338, 415 ; iii. 278 ; causes many thousands to be burnt in Flanders, *ib.* ; sentenced to perpetual imprisonment, *ib.* ; received as canon at St. Victor, Paris, by papal dispensation, iii. 278.

Builth (*Buet*, *Bueth*), castle of, besieged by Llewellyn, ii. 247 ; belonged to Reginald de Brause, *ib.* ; the siege raised, *ib.*

Bulgaria, conflicts of the Crusaders in, i. 60, 61 ; traversed by the forces of Louis VII., i. 279.

Bulun, Robert de, his death, *s. p. m.*, and of his brother, ii. 510.

Bungay (*Bungheie*), castle of, belonging to Hugh Bigod, threatened with siege, i. 388.

Bures or Bur (*Burum*), in Normandy, castle of, taken by William II., i. 45 ; the young king Henry submits to his father at, i. 391 ; Richard I. keeps Christmas there, ii. 14 ; Richard again at, ii. 61.

Burgat, Robert de, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Burgh, Geoffrey de, brother of Hubert. *See* Ely, bishops of.

Burgh, Hubert de, surety for money to be paid by John to Philip II., iii. 231; incurs the enmity of the earl of Chester, *ib.* ; has the custody of the castle of Dover, ii. 179 ; his brave defence of it, ii. 184 ; iii. 236 ; refuses to surrender it, and rejects the offers of prince Louis, ii. 197–199 ; iii. 238, 265 ; apprised of the approach of the French fleet, ii. 217 ; advises an engagement at sea, but the nobles refuse, ii. 218 ; confesses, and receives the sacrament, *ib.* ; iii. 240 ; his instructions before embarking, *ib.* ; encounters the French ships, and obtains the victory, ii. 219, 220 ; iii. 241, 265 ; received with triumph on his return, ii. 221 ; his enemies become envious of him, iii. 242, 264 ; marries Margaret, sister of the king of Scots, ii. 248, 336 ; as justiciary, suppresses a tumult at London, ii. 251 ; the barons murmur against him, ii. 257 ; iii. 247 ; accused of giving ill counsel to the king, iii. 258 ; advises Henry to retain the castles of the rebel barons in his hands, iii. 248 ; asks an aid for the king from the prelates and nobles, ii. 268 ; the lands of Hugh Bigod placed in his ward, ii. 274 ; obtains leave for his nephew to marry the countess of Salisbury, ii. 277 ; iii. 252 ; his reputation much deteriorated, *ib.* ; complaints of him made by the earl of Salisbury, ii. 280 ; by his advice, the forest charters are cancelled, ii. 293, 296 ; his name becomes hateful ; ii. 294 ; iii. 255 ; created earl of Kent, ii. 296 ; advises Henry to postpone going to Normandy, ii. 306 ; iii. 258 ; his son knighted, ii. 318 ; blamed for the insufficiency of the fleet, ii. 319 ; iii. 260 ; advises Henry to march into Poitou and Gascony, ii. 326 ; the lands of the earl of Gloucester committed to his ward, ii. 328 ; complaint of the archbishop against him in reference to Tunbridge castle, ii. 330, 335 ; fur-

Burgh, Hubert de—*cont.*
nishes the necessaries for the Christmas feast at Lambeth, ii. 330; represses incursions of the Welsh, and beheads the prisoners, ii. 331; favours the rioters against the Italian clergy, ii. 337, 343; removed from the office of justiciary, ii. 343; his accompts demanded, and charges made against him, ii. 344; he pleads exemption by a charter of John, ii. 344; iii. 265; apology offered for him by Matthew Paris, *ib.*; accused by the Londoners of hanging a citizen without trial, ii. 345; iii. 266; flies to Merton priory, *ib.*; refuses to appear in court, ii. 346; iii. 266; the mayor of London ordered to bring him by force, *ib.*; takes refuge at the high altar, *ib.*; obtains respite from the king, ii. 347; goes towards St. Edmund's, *ib.*; stops at Boisars [Brentwood], in the house of the bishop of Norwich, *ib.*; takes refuge in the chapel there, *ib.*; taken out by force, ii. 348; a smith refuses to put fetters on him, *ib.*; imprisoned in the Tower of London, *ib.*; iii. 266; taken back to the chapel, and strictly guarded, ii. 348, 350; iii. 267; recites the psalter for the soul of his enemy the earl of Chester, ii. 349; surrenders, and again brought to the Tower, ii. 350; iii. 367; his treasure seized at the New Temple, *ib.*; taken to Cornhill, and replies to charges against him, *ib.*, iii. 351; the king restores his lands, ii. 351; sureties given for him, and taken to the castle of Devises, *ib.*; iii. 267; escapes from the castle, ii. 359; iii. 268; subsequently relates the facts himself to Matthew Paris, ii. 359 *n.*; seeks refuge in the church, ii. 359; iii. 268; brought back to the castle, ii. 360; iii. 268; his detainers excommunicated by the bishop of Salisbury, *ib.*; replaced in the church, ii. 361; rescued by his friends, and escapes to Wales, *ib.*; iii. 269; makes his peace with the king, ii. 370; iii. 271; becomes his familiar councillor, ii. 371; incurs his anger for the marriage of his daughter Margaret to Richard de Clare, ii. 395; iii. 274; heavy charges made against him, ii. 426; four of his castles ceded to Henry, *ib.*; his death at Banstead, ii. 477; iii. 288; buried at the Friars Preachers, London, *ib.*; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Burgh, John de, son of Hubert, knighted, ii. 318.

Burgh, Reimund de, nephew of Hubert, the wife of the earl of Salisbury asked for in marriage, ii. 277; visits the countess and is refused, *ib.*; drowned [in the Loire], ii. 326; iii. 262; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Burgh, Richard de, his death, ii. 468; iii. 302; shield of arms, *ib.*

Burgh, Richard de, ward of the king, married to a foreign lady, iii. 25; dies, iii. 31.

Burgh, Thomas de, brother of Hubert, castellan of Norwich, taken prisoner by prince Louis, ii. 182, 197; iii. 238; brought bound to Hubert at Dover, to persuade him to surrender the castle, ii. 197, 198.

Burgos (*Bures*), marriage of prince Edward at, iii. 336.

Burgundy, Radulph, duke of, elected king of Germany, and crowned at Mentz, i. 24; put to flight by the emperor, *ib.*

Burgundy, Stephen, count of, leads a party of crusaders to Constantinople, i. 193; killed at Ramla, i. 197.

Burgundy, Hugh III., duke of, present at the conference for peace at Saumur, i. 462; left in command of the French troops at Acre, ii. 26; iii. 211; joins Richard I., ii. 29; had received money from Richard previously, *ib.*; refuses to march to Jerusalem, ii. 31; receives bribes from Saladin at Bethonoble, ii. 32; withdraws with his forces to Acre, *ib.*; refuses to succour Joppa, ii. 34; marches to Tyre, *ib.*; his death, *ib.*; iii. 212.

Burgundy, [Hugh IV.,] duke of, takes flight from the battle at Gaza, ii. 433; re-assumes the cross, ii. 508; left in garrison at Damietta, iii. 81.

Burgundy, [Jean le Sage, Sieur de Salins, titular] count of Burgundy, the pope requires a benefice to be given to his son [Robert], iii. 107.

Burriz, Burtiz, castle of, [in the Vexin,] taken by Richard I., ii. 72.

Burton, abbey of, founded by Wilfric [Spot], iii. 159.

Butavant, castle of, conferences of Philip II. and John between Gaillon [Guletune] and, ii. 82, 84; razed by Philip, ii. 92.

Butteville, Geoffrey de, a leader of the mercenaries from Poitou and Gascony, ii. 163.

Butteville, Oliver de, a leader of the Poitevin and Gascon mercenaries, ii. 163.

Byblus (*Biblium*), maritime city of Phœnicia, passed by the Crusaders, i. 136; taken by Bertram of Toulouse, i. 212.

C.

[Caboccio, Peter], papal legate, carries out the concessions made to the archbishop of Cologne, iii. 53; turns many away from the emperor, in Apulia, iii. 57.

Cadelo, expelled from the papal see, i. 10.

Cadwalan, prince of [North] Wales, brought to Henry II. to answer charges, i. 417; slain by treachery, *ib.*

Cæsarea, summoned to the aid of Antioch, i. 98; the capital of Palestine, also named the Tower of Strato, i. 136; advance of the Crusaders to, *ib.*; the archbishop of, subject to the patriarch of Jerusalem, i. 161; taken by assault by Baldwin I., i. 194; smaragdine vessel found there, bought by the Genoese, *ib.*; added by Baldwin to his kingdom, i. 224; submits to Richard I., ii. 26; fortified by the Crusaders, ii. 301; and again by Louis IX., iii. 114.

Cæsarea, archbishops of:
—— Baldwin, appointed, i. 194.
—— [Peter?], one of the leaders of the army at the landing of Frederic II. at Acre, ii. 304.

Cæsarea Philippi, or Belina [*Banias*], the bishop of, suffragan to the archbishop of Tyre, i. 161.

Caen (*Cadomum*), nunnery founded there by Matilda, queen of William I., in which she was buried, i. 26; iii. 172; abbey of St. Stephen at, founded by William I., i. 30; Cecily, his daughter, abbess [of the convent of the Holy Trinity] at, i. 31; William I. buried at, i. 35; iii. 174; taken by Henry I., i. 201; fortified by him, i. 232; iii. 183; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 96; iii. 221.

Cairo (*Cairun*, *Kairian*), required by the French to be given up, iii. 74; false rumour of its capture, *ib.*

Calabria, Richard I. captures several castles in, ii. 17; the people swear fealty to Henry, son of Frederic II., iii. 23; many become estranged from the emperor there, iii. 57.

Calais, fleet collected there by Eustace the Monk, ii. 178; iii. 235.

Calderun, Baldwin de, his death at Nice, i. 81.

Calixtus II., pope, (Wido, bishop of Vienne,) succeeds, i. 225; holds a council at Rheims, *ib.*; condemns the errors of Gilbert de la Porrée, *ib.*; iii. 182; holds a conference with Henry I. at Gisors, i. 229; compels the anti-pope Maurice to become a monk, i. 231; dies, i. 234; iii. 184.

Calquis. *See* Artasia.

Calvaria [Tabaria ?], besieged by Saladin, i. 440. *See* Tiberias.

Calvary, the site of the Crucifixion, i. 162.

Cambray, [John de Bethune,] the brother of Peter of Douay, bishop elect of, imprisoned, ii. 83 ; France placed under an interdict on this account, *ib.* ; is released, ii. 84.

Cambridge (*Cantebrugge*), county of, taken from the see of Lincoln and subjected to Ely, i. 210 ; some of the Oxford scholars come to study at, ii. 120 ; the castle of, committed to the custody of Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 172 ; taken by the barons, ii. 184 ; quarrel between the scholars and burgesses, iii. 47, 306.

Camel, the neck of one struck off by duke Godfrey, i. 186 ; its powerful structure, *ib.*

Camezana, John de, nephew and chaplain of the pope, papal letters to the abbat of St. Alban's in favour of, iii. 108.

Campedene, Roger de, physician of Robert bishop of Lincoln, saves the bishop's life by his skill, ii. 398.

Cangnano, Albered de, joins Boamund as a crusader, with Humphrey, his son, i. 71.

Cantelu, Fulk de, sent to expel the monks from Canterbury, ii. 113.

Cantelu, Roger de, goes to Rome, to plead the king's suit against archbishop Richard, ii. 330.

Cantelupe (*de Cantelupo*), Walter de, son of William, jurist, afterwards made bishop of Worcester, ii. 419. *See* Worcester.

Cantelupe, William de, at the siege of Mountsorel, ii. 206 ; with the army at Newark, ii. 209 ; joins the earl of Chester in rebellion, with his son, ii. 260, 261 ; iii. 248 ; of Norman origin, ii. 419 ; his death, *ib.* ; iii. 279 ; had served under John and Henry III., *ib.* ; left two sons, *ib.* ; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Cantelupe, William de, at Newark, ii. 209 ; son and heir of William [the Elder], ii. 419 ; envoy to the General Council at Lyons, ii. 502 ; iii. 295 ; dies, iii. 108, 321.

Cantelupe, William de, son of the last, treated with severity by the king, iii. 108 ; his death, iii. 339 ; shield of arms, *ib.*

Canterbury, city of, two hospitals built outside by archbishop Lanfranc, i. 37 ; great part burnt, i. 315 ; archbishop Hubert keeps Christmas at, ii. 89 ; John and his queen crowned at, *ib.*, 96 ; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 100 ; iii. 221 ; Henry III. married to Alienor at, ii. 386 ; iii. 273.

Canterbury, see of, dispute with the see of York, as to the primacy, i. 17 ; declared to be primatial and not metropolitan, i. 46 ; oppressed by William Rufus, i. 52, 97 ; canonical obedience paid to by the see of York, i. 209 ; question of supremacy over the see of York submitted to the king and pope, i. 217 ; held by William II. at his death, i. 173 ; confiscated by Henry II., i. 333 ; had the privilege of crowning the sovereign, i. 357 ; the suffragans of, assist at the coronation of the young king's queen, i. 373 ; three archdeacons appointed in the diocese, i. 394 ; complaint to the pope that the suffragans held secular offices, ii. 335 ; they are directed to visit the religious Orders, ii. 352 ; payment ordered of the debts of the see, iii. 4 ; letters to the pope and cardinals, from the clergy of the province, against papal exactions, iii. 17 ; the see became odious from various events, iii. 95 *n.* ; controversy as to the seats of Canterbury and York in the council at St. Paul's, iii. 275.

Canterbury, archbishops of :

—— Ælfeah (*Ælphegus*), put to death by the Danes, iii. 161 ; his body brought to Canterbury, iii. 162.

—— Æthelnoth, his death, iii. 164.

—— Eadsi, succeeds, iii. 164 ; resigns, iii. 165 ; dies, iii. 166.

—— Syward, appointed deputy of Eadsi, iii. 165 ; dies, iii. 166.

—— Robert, bishop of London, translated to, iii. 166.

—— Stigand, usurps the see improperly, i. 8 ; iii. 168 ; deposed from his office, i. 13 ; iii. 168 ; takes refuge in Scotland, *ib.* ; dies, *ib.*

Canterbury, archbishops of :—*cont.*

—— Lanfranc, formerly monk of Bec and abbat of Caen, succeeds, i. 13 ; iii. 170 ; despises the English prelates for their illiteracy, i. 14 ; dedicates the church of Bec, i. 24 ; had educated and knighted William Rufus, i. 35 ; crowns him, *ib.* ; by his advice the English nobles are conciliated, i. 36 ; his death, i. 37 ; a great benefactor to Christ Church, Canterbury, *ib.* ; reforms and repairs St. Alban's, *ib.* ; ruled England in the king's absence, i. 38 ; corrected some books of the Old and New Testament, *ib.* ; his humility, *ib.* ; he erred in the proposed deposition of Wulstan, bishop of Worcester, *ib.*, 53.

—— Anselm, abbat of Bec, succeeds, i. 42 ; consecrated, i. 46 ; iii. 175 ; William II. extorts money from, i. 49, 51 ; asks leave to go to pope Urban for his pall, *ib.* ; opposes the king, in regard to the pope's temporal power, i. 50 ; receives his pall, i. 51 ; again asks leave to go to Rome, and refused, *ib.* ; flies to Dover, *ib.* ; his person searched for money, i. 52 ; permitted to depart, as an exile, *ib.* ; iii. 175 ; his acts annulled by the king's apparitors, *ib.* ; honourably received by the pope, *ib.* ; assists at the councils of Bari and Rome, *ib.* ; gives the pope much advice, i. 53 ; retires to Lyons, *ib.* ; remonstrates against the oppression of the church, i. 97 ; comes to England, and lies hid at London, *ib.* ; iii. 176 ; consecrates Samson bishop of Worcester, *ib.* ; leaves England, *ib.* ; comes to Marcigny from Rome, i. 171 ; conversation with the abbat of Cluny, i. 172 ; returns to Lyons, *ib.* ; certified by a vision of the death of William II., i. 172 ; iii. 178 ; recalled by Henry I., i. 181 ; marries the king to Matilda, i. 189 ; holds a council at London, i. 191 ; degrades certain abbats for purchasing their abbeys from laymen, *ib.* ; refuses to consecrate some bishops, *ib.* ; goes to Rome, i. 192 ; iii. 179 ; by his intercession, the degraded prelates are reinstated, i. 192 ; his return forbidden by Henry, i. 196 ; resides at Lyons, *ib.* ; iii. 179 ; meets the king at Bec, and is reconciled, i. 207 ; iii. 180 ; returns to England, *ib.* ; holds a council at London, *ib.* ; consecrates several bishops, i. 208, 209 ; iii. 180 ; exacts canonical obedience from the archbishop elect of York, i. 209 ; his death and miracles, *ib.* ; iii. 180.

—— Ralph, bishop of Rochester, translated to, i. 217, 219 ; iii. 181 ; invested "per anulum et baculum," *ib.* ; his dispute with the archbishop of York, touching canonical obedience, i. 217, 220 ; consecrated by the legate Anselm, and receives his pall, i. 219 ; crowns Adeliza of Louvain, i. 230.

—— William dè Curboil, prior of Chicche, succeeds, i. 231, 232 ; receives his pall at Rome, i. 233 ; consecrated at Canterbury, *ib.* ; iii. 183 ; disputes the primacy with the archbishop of York, i. 235 ; consecrates William bishop of London, i. 239 ; present at a council at London, i. 243 ; had sworn fealty to the empress Matilda, but crowns Stephen, i. 251 ; dies, i. 255.

—— Theobald, abbat of Bec, elected, i. 261 ; iii. 187 ; consecrated by the legate, and goes to Rome for his pall, *ib.* ; present at a meeting of prelates at Winchester, i. 263 ; consecrates Robert bishop of Lincoln, i. 285 ; iii. 190 ; makes peace between Stephen and duke Henry, i. 294 ; Stephen confesses to him the secret of Henry's birth, i. 295 ; crowns Henry II. at Westminster, i. 300, 357 ; dies, i. 311.

—— Thomas [Becket], chancellor of Henry II., elected at Winchester, i. 316 ; iii. 195 ; ordained priest, and consecrated, *ib.* ; receives his pall from the pope, with the habit of the Black Order *ib. n.* ; iii. 195 ; had previously worn the dress of the canons of Merton, *ib.* ; renounces the chancellorship, i. 317 ; iii. 195 ; present at the concord between

Canterbury, archbishops of:—*cont.*
Thomas [Becket]—*cont.*
the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318; confirms it by charter, i. 319; meets the king on his return from Normandy, i. 320; translates the body of Edward the Confessor, *ib.*; appoints Geoffrey Ridel archdeacon of Canterbury, i. 321; sits on the right of the pope at the council of Tours, *ib.*; summons the earl of Clare to do homage for Tunbridge castle, i. 322; assents to the Constitutions of Clarendon, i. 326; iii. 195; repents, and undergoes penance, i. 327; sends to the pope to be absolved from his obligation, *ib.*; his "Vita" referred to, i. 341, 343; opposes Henry, in reference to lay jurisdiction over the clergy, *ib.*; iii. 196; dedicates the church of Reading, i. 330; iii. 196; rancour of the king towards him, *ib.*; embarks at Romney, but forced back by the wind, i. 328; condemned to pay a fine in a suit brought by John, earl Mareschal, *ib.*; attends the council at Northampton, to answer charges for acts done when chancellor, *ib.*, 334; his accounts required for the castellanies of Eye and Berkhampstead, i. 329; had been declared free from all demands before his consecration, *ib.*, 334; appeals to the pope, and forbids the suffragans and the nobles to pass sentence on him, *ib.*; leaves the court, holding his cross, *ib.*; embarks at Sandwich, and lands in Flanders, *ib.*; iii. 196; receives pope Alexander's benediction at Sens, i. 330; iii. 196; retires to Pontigny, *ib.*; allegations against him laid before the pope, *ib.*, 331; writs issued by Henry against his clerks, i. 332, 333; his goods confiscated, and kindred exiled, *ib.*, 333; appeals personally to the pope, *ib.*, 334; the sentence against him annulled, i. 335; returns to Pontigny, i. 336; excommunicates at Vezelay all who held the laws called "avitæ," i. 338; iii. 197; cited to Montmirail by the legates, but refuses to admit their proceedings, *ib.*; Henry prevents his further stay at Pontigny, iii. 197; Louis VII. brings him to Sens, i. 339; his prophecy relative to Pontigny, *ib.*; iii. 197; his letters to the king and others, i. 341, 342; iii. 197; excommunicates Alan de Neville, *ib.*; his suffragans appeal against his excommunication of certain persons, *ib.*; excommunicates the bishop of London, i. 342, 346; iii. 198; two legates sent to effect a reconciliation with the king, but without result, i. 343, 347; his tribulation and mental sufferings, i. 343, 351; iii. 197, 198; the bishop of London concerts measures against him with the king, i. 348; the pope influenced against him, i. 349; letters of the pope to, forbidding him to publish a sentence of interdict or excommunication, i. 350; conference with Henry at Freteval, i. 354; is reconciled to him, *ib.*; iii. 199; obtains leave to punish his suffragans, *ib.*; writes to the pope, i. 355; returns to England, and lands at Sandwich, i. 356; sends papal letters to the prelates who assisted at the young king's coronation, suspending them from their offices, i. 356, 357; excommunicates the bishops, iii. 199; received joyfully at London, i. 358; proceeds towards Harrow, *ib.*; ordered by the king's officers to absolve the bishops, *ib.*; consents to do so, on conditions they refuse, *ib.*; ordered by the young king's messengers to proceed no further, i. 359; keeps feast-days at Harrow, *ib.*; his pleasant speech to the abbat of St. Alban's, i. 360; sends the abbat to the young king, to soften him, but without effect, *ib.*; forebodings of his death, i. 360, 361; iii. 199; praises the abbat's liberality, i. 361; declines to visit St. Alban's, *ib.*; returns to Canterbury, and celebrates Christmas there, i. 362; preaches on Christmas Day, *ib.*; iii. 199; excommunicates Nigel de Sackville and Robert de Broc, *ib.*; his pleasant discourse at table, i. 362; verses

Canterbury, archbishops of:—*cont.*

Thomas [Becket]—*cont.*

on the date of his death, i. 362 *n.*; iii. 200; four of the king's knights order him to absolve the bishops, i. 363; he refuses, *ib.*; goes into the church to sing vespers, *ib.*; is followed by the knights and murdered, i. 364; iii. 200; verses on his martyrdom, i. 364; his murderers take away his household goods, *ib.*; his body placed before the high altar, *ib.*; his practice to wear hair-cloth, *ib.*; presage of Tuesday, as exemplified in his life, i. 365; is buried by the abbat of Boxley and prior of Canterbury, *ib.*; notable facts in regard to his martyrdom, *ib.*; lamention of Matthew Paris, on the disastrous results of the young king's coronation, i. 366; grief of Henry at the archbishop's death; i. 367; the pope excommunicates his murderers, i. 368; they take refuge at Knaresborough, and afterwards go the Holy Land, *ib.*; miracles at his tomb, *ib.*, 369; terms of the king's purgation, i. 372; iii. 206; papal letters for his canonization, and anniversary, i. 375; confession made by his suffragans, by prayer, i. 376; his sister made abbess of Barking, *ib.*; vows paid to him by Henry, and acts of penance at Canterbury, i. 385, 386; mass celebrated for him by the king's order, *ib.*; the successes of Henry due to his intercession, i. 389; Henry and the young king pay their devotions to, i. 393; a church founded in his honour at Westwood, by Richard de Luci, i. 400; his tomb visited by the king, i. 401; and by Louis VII., i. 410, 411; iii. 203; the kingdoms of England and France placed under his protection, i. 421; the archbishop of Cologne and count of Flanders pay their vows to, i. 427; the fame of his miracles, iii. 205; vision seen by, relative to the death of Henry and two of his sons, i. 436; pope Urban III. directs the apportionment of the oblations made to him, i. 438; the divine vengeance for his murder manifested on the king, i. 464; Richard I. pays his vows to, ii. 14; a chapel built by Richard at Acre in his honour, ii. 14, 15, 38; much reverenced by Richard, ii. 19; his tomb visited by Richard, on his return from captivity, ii. 47; iii. 214; the offerings at his tomb given to the pope, ii. 69; a church built in his honour at Lambeth pulled down, ii. 75; translation of his body from the crypt of Canterbury to a shrine, ii. 241, 242; iii. 245; names of the artists who prepared the shrine, ii. 242; the king of Jerusalem visits his tomb, ii. 260; had confirmed ancient charters to Ramsey abbey, iii. 119. *See* Thomas.

—— Roger, abbat of Bec, elected, but refuses, i. 373.

—— Richard, prior of Dover, elected, and takes oath of fealty to the king, i. 375; goes to Rome, i. 382; returns with his pall, i. 390; iii. 202; consecrates several bishops, *ib.*; as apostolic legate, present at the general council at Westminster, i. 392; iii. 202; appoints three archdeacons in his diocese, i. 394; consecrates Walter bishop of Lincoln, i. 424; dies at Halling, i. 426.

—— Baldwin, bishop of Worcester, elected, i. 426; receives his pall, with the office of legate, i. 436; obtains licence from Urban III. to build a church at Akinton, i. 437; iii. 207; the pope afterwards forbids it, i. 444; letter to him from Conrad of Montferrat, on the affairs of the Holy Land, i. 456, 457; prohibits prince John from marrying the daughter of the earl of Gloucester, ii. 6; anoints and crowns Richard I., ii. 7, 8; sits on his right hand at the banquet, ii. 8; forbids the archbishop of York to receive consecration, unless from himself, ii. 10; lays an interdict on the lands of prince John, ii. 14; holds a council at Westminster, ii. 15; sets out for Jerusalem, and arrives at Tyre, *ib.*; iii. 210; dies at Acre, ii. 18; iii. 210; bequeaths all his property in aid of the Holy Land, *ib.*

Canterbury, archbishops of:—*cont.*

—— Reginald, bishop of Bath, archbishop elect, dies, and is buried at Bath, ii. 29; iii. 211.

—— Hubert Walter, bishop of Salisbury, translated, ii. 46; iii. 214; excommunicates Matthew de Clere, constable of Dover, ii. 44; appointed guardian of England, *ib.*; celebrates mass at Winchester, when Richard I. wears the crown, ii. 48; consecrates Herbert bishop of Salisbury, ii. 49; appointed legate of England, ii. 54; causes a crusade to be preached, ii. 56; laws enacted for uniform measures by his advice, when justiciary, ii. 65; appoints Joibert prior of Coventry, ii. 67; consecrates the bishops of Ely and Coventry, ii. 68; his dispute with the monks of Canterbury, relative to a church at Lambeth, ii. 68; complaints made of him to the pope, ii. 69; the pope orders Richard to remove him from the post of justiciary, *ib.*; he pulls down the church at Lambeth, ii. 75; sent to England by John, to maintain peace and receive fealty, ii. 78; his speech at the coronation of John, ii. 80; anoints and crowns him, ii. 81; iii. 219; declares he had been miraculously certified as to John's future acts, *ib.*; present at the coronation of John and Isabel at Westminster, ii. 88; keeps Christmas at Canterbury, ii. 89; supplies the expenses for the coronation of the king and queen there, *ib.*; again crowns John at Canterbury, ii. 96; iii. 220; carries out the tax imposed on church property, ii. 99; prevented by illness from consecrating William bishop of Lincoln, ii. 100; supplies the necessaries for the Christmas festivity at Canterbury, *ib.*; iii. 221; opposes the assembling a fleet at Portsmouth, ii. 103; dies at Tenham, ii. 104; iii. 222.

—— Reginald, subprior of Canterbury, elected by the younger monks without the king's consent, ii. 104; iii. 222; goes to Rome for confirmation, *ib.*; lands in Flanders, and boasts of his election, *ib.*;

Canterbury, archbishops of:—*cont.*

Reginald—*cont.*

exhibits his letters of election to the pope, who demurs, ii. 105; iii. 222; his election annulled, ii. 111.

—— John de Grai, bishop of Norwich, elected on the king's recommendation, ii. 106, 111; iii. 222; installed at Canterbury, and put in possession of the see, *ib.*; John sends some monks to Rome, to procure his confirmation, *ib.*; suit of the suffragans of Canterbury against the monks, in reference to his election, ii. 107; iii. 222; the election annulled, ii. 111.

—— Stephen de Langetune, cardinal priest of St. Grisogonus, elected by advice of the pope, ii. 111; iii. 223; the pope writes to John in his favour, ii. 112; John objects to receive him, ii. 114, 115; he obtains leave for the conventual churches to have divine service once a week, ii. 118; consecrates Hugh bishop of Lincoln, in Normandy, ii. 120; goes to Rome, to complain of John, ii. 130; returns to France, and publishes the sentence of John's deposition, ii. 132; enjoins Philip II. to attack John and dethrone him, *ib.*; returns to England, with other prelates, ii. 139; John is reconciled to them at Winchester, ii. 140; the affairs of the kingdom guided by his counsels, *ib.*; present at the council of St. Alban's, ii. 141; iii. 228; follows John to Northampton, and induces him to relinquish his enterprise, ii. 142; iii. 228; holds a council at St. Paul's, and produces the charter of liberties of Henry I., ii. 143, 153; protests against John's subjecting his kingdom to the pope, ii. 146, 147, 507; iii. 295; appeals against the legate's proceedings, ii. 147; is vilified to the pope by Pandulph, ii. 148, 167; one of John's sureties for his giving satisfaction to the barons, ii. 155; chosen by the barons head of their party, *ib.*; iii. 231; present at the concession of the Great Charter, ii. 159; the castle of Rochester

Canterbury, archbishops of :—*cont.*

Stephen de Langetune—*cont.*

given up to him, *ib.*; suspended from celebrating divine service, ii. 167; charges against him in the Lateran council, ii. 168; sentence of suspension confirmed by the pope, ii. 170; the intention to depose him relinquished, and his suspension taken off, ii. 174; iii. 234; crowns Henry III. at Westminster, ii. 241; makes inquiry as to the miracles of Hugh, bishop of Lincoln, *ib.*; translates the body of St. Thomas, *ib.*; requires Henry to confirm the liberties fought for under his father, ii. 253; rebukes William Briwere, *ib.*; deprives a deacon of orders, for apostacy, ii. 254; sent to Louis VIII. to require the restitution of Normandy and other territories, ii. 256; present with the king at Christmas, at Northampton, ii. 260; excommunicates all disturbers of the realm, *ib.*; threatens the earl of Chester with excommunication, ii. 261; consecrates the bishops of Exeter and Chichester, ii. 267; Norwich, ii. 292; Rochester, ii. 295; by his advice, a day appointed to discuss the papal demands, ii. 275; procures the recall of the nuncio Otho, ii. 284; causes the pope's letter to be read in a council at Westminster, *ib.*; written to by pope Gregory to publish the sentence of excommunication against the emperor, ii. 300; dies at Slindon, and buried at Canterbury, ii. 302; iii. 257; his sentence against the violators of Magna Carta renewed, ii. 394.

—— Walter de Heinesham, or Einesham, monk of Canterbury, elected, ii. 302; iii. 257; rejected by the king, *ib.*; annulled by the pope, ii. 310.

—— Richard le Grand, chancellor of Lincoln, elected, and approved by the pope, ii. 310, 311; iii. 259; consecrated at Canterbury, ii. 318; iii. 260; receives his pall, ii. 319; opposes the demands for scutage, ii. 329; iii. 263; enmity between him and the king, *ib.*; complains against Hubert de Burgh, for holding Tunbridge castle, ii. 330; excommunicates the intruders, and goes to Rome to urge his suit, *ib.*; complaints laid by him before the pope against the king and justiciary, and his suffragans, ii. 335; dies on his return, at St. Gemini, ii. 336; iii. 263; attempt made to plunder his tomb, *ib.*

—— Ralph de Noville or Neville, bishop of Chichester, and chancellor, elected and approved, ii. 337; annulled by the pope, on account of ill report of him, *ib.*

—— John, prior of Çanterbury, elected and approved, ii. 340; goes to Rome to be confirmed, *ib.*; iii. 264; set aside by the pope, as incompetent, ii. 341; iii. 264.

—— John Blund, lecturer in theology at Oxford, elected and approved, ii. 345; iii. 267; goes to Rome for confirmation, *ib.*; annulled by the pope, ii. 355; had received money from the bishop of Winchester to assist his promotion, *ib.*; the bishop wished to have him as his coadjutor, iii. 268; held two livings, against the statutes of the General Council; ii. 355; his death, as canon [and chancellor] of York, iii. 40.

—— Edmund [Rich,] of Abingdon, [canon of Salisbury,] elected, ii. 355; his pall sent to him at once by the pope, *ib.*; his election consented to by the convent of Canterbury, ii. 356; his favour in the sight of God and man, *ib.*; present at the parliament held at Westminster, ii. 365; remonstrates against the counsels followed by the king, ii. 366; sent with other prelates, to make peace with Llewellyn, *ib.*; consecrated by the bishop of London, ii. 367; iii. 270; celebrates mass the same day, *ib.*; by his intercession the proscribed nobles are recalled, and reconciled to the king, ii. 370, 371; iii. 271; consecrates the bishops of Hereford and Lincoln, ii. 375, 376; refuses to confirm Richard

Canterbury, archbishops of :—*cont.*

Edmund [Rich] of Abingdon—*cont.*

de Wendene, bishop elect of Rochester, ii. 377 ; marries Henry III. to Alienor of Provence, ii. 386 ; present at the reception of the legate Otho, ii. 398 ; leaves England, in spite of the legate's prohibition, ii. 402 ; iii. 275 ; against his will, the king's sister Alienor breaks her vow of widowhood, ii. 402, 404 ; the Rochester election decided against him by the pope, ii. 406 ; he returns impoverished from Rome, having failed in his suits there, ii. 410, 411 ; the king and pope influenced against him by the legate, ii. 411 ; iii. 277 ; his dispute with the monks of Canterbury, *ib* ; present at the baptism of prince Edmund, and confirms him, ii. 422 ; iii. 279 ; consecrates William bishop of Norwich, ii. 426 ; iii. 279 ; induces the prelates to grant the pope a fifth part of their goods, ii. 432 ; consecrates Hugh bishop of Coventry, ii. 434 ; afflicted at the state of the English church, ii. 435 ; goes over to France, and resides at Pontigny, *ib.*; iii. 280, 281, removes to Soissy, ii. 442 ; dies there, *ib.* ; iii. 282 ; becomes famous in France by his miracles, ii. 444 ; iii. 93, 318 ; and at Cateby, ii. 448 ; bequeaths his pall and a silver tablet to his sisters in Cateby nunnery, *ib.* ; by his means Walter earl Mareschal obtained his lands, iii. 284 ; had pledged himself for the observance of the liberties of Magna Carta, ii. 491 ; his canonization postponed at the council of Lyons, ii. 506 ; iii. 295 ; is canonized by pope Innocent III., iii. 13, 298 ; the "liber de Vita ipsius" referred to, *ib.* ; translation of, at Pontigny, iii. 26, 301 ; Louis IX. refuses to accept a portion of his remains, iii. 27 ; prayers to be said at the mass in his translation, iii. 27 *n.* ; second translation of, at Pontigny, iii. 54, 55, 308 ; his arm cut off by the monks there, and his miracles cease, iii. 76 ; his life written by Matthew Paris, iii. 135, 326 ; Henry III. cured of sickness by prayer at his tomb, iii. 341.

—— Boniface of Provence [Savoy], uncle of the queen, elected, although incompetent, ii. 448, 449 ; iii. 95 *n.*, 283 ; confirmed by the pope, ii. 472 ; tries to reconcile the king to the bishop of Winchester, ii. 484 ; oppresses the monks of Canterbury, ii. 490 *n.* ; comes to St. Alban's with the count of Flanders, ii. 493 ; confirms the bishop elect of Norwich, *ib.* ; goes to the Roman court, ii. 498 ; iii. 293 ; orders the woods of his see to be sold, and tallages to be made, ii. 499 *n.* ; consecrated at Lyons by the pope, ii. 505 ; injures the memory of his predecessors, iii. 5 *n.* ; receives the homage of the count of Savoy, in the king's absence, iii. 8 ; returns to England, and brings over the news of the capture of Damietta, iii. 59 ; power given him to visit the monastic Orders, and chiefly the exempt monasteries, *ib.* ; had solicited the pope to spare the English church, iii. 310 ; baptises Edmund, son of earl Richard of Cornwall, iii. 68 ; Henry III. receives the cross from him, iii. 71 ; assumes it himself, *ib.* ; comes to London to hold his visitation, iii. 77 ; had previously visited Feversham and Rochester, *ib.* ; entertained at Fulham by the bishop of London, iii. 78 ; shameful conduct of his servants there, *ib.* ; not admitted to St. Paul's or to the priories of the Holy Trinity and St. Bartholomew, iii. 79 ; excommunicates the dean and canons, *ib.* ; his violence at the priory of St. Bartholomew, 79 *n.* ; severity of his proceedings, iii. 313 ; comes to Harrow, iii. 79 ; proposes to visit St. Alban's, but turns back, *ib.*, 80 ; goes to the pope, to justify himself, iii. 79 *n.*, 82 ; endeavours to set aside the election of the bishop of Rochester, iii. 87 ; scandal occasioned by his quarrel with the bishop of London, iii. 107, 321 ; his

Canterbury, archbishops of:—*cont.*

Boniface of Savoy—*cont.*

visitation hereafter to be made with more moderation, iii. 314, 321; returns to England, iii. 127, 323; quarrels with the bishop of Winchester, iii. 128, 323; excommunicates the authors of the outrage on his official, *ib.*; peace made with the bishop, by the mediation of the king and queen, *ib.*, 131; present at the excommunication of the transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; quarrels with the chapter of Lincoln, and excommunicates them, iii. 147, 148, 330; consecrates the bishop elect of Lincoln, iii. 333, 334; accompanies the queen to Bordeaux, iii. 335; consecrates the bishop of Ely at Belley, iii. 347.

Canterbury, archdeacons of:

—— Savaric, Nicholas and Herbert, appointed, i. 394.

—— John. *See* Rochester, bishops of.

—— Walter. *See* Rochester, bishops of.

—— Roger [de Pont l'Eveque]. *See* York, archbishops of.

—— Geoffrey Ridel, elerk of the king, appointed, i. 321. *See* Ely, bishops of.

—— Herbert Poore. *See* Salisbury, bishops of.

—— Simon de Langetune. *See* Langetune.

—— Henry de Sanford. *See* Rochester, bishops of.

Canterbury, St. Augustine's, Ælmar, abbat of, allowed to depart by the Danes, iii. 161; James, sub-prior of, one of the commissioners to visit St. Alban's, iii. 115; on death of the abbat [Robert de Battel], the king seizes the goods of the church, iii. 132, 324; the precentor [Roger] elected in his place, iii. 133, 324.

Canterbury, Christ Church or Holy Trinity, repaired and enriched by archbishop Lanfranc, i. 37; the charter of liberties of Henry I. preserved at, i. 181; consecration of bishops at, i. 208; ii. 318, 367; dedication of, i. 244; iii. 181, 185; the prior Jeremias present at the election of archbishop Theobald, i. 261; Walter, the prior, made bishop of Chester, i. 277; the prior [Odo?] and convent assist in the burial of archbishop Thomas, i. 365; humiliated state of, amended by order of the pope, i. 370; Henry II. promises to restore its possessions, i. 372; acts of penance of Henry at, i. 385; iii. 200, 201; grant of wine to, by Louis VII., i. 411; dissension with archbishop Hubert, ii. 68, 69; the monks claim the privilege of electing an archbishop, without the suffragans, ii. 107; are exiled by John, ii. 113; iii. 223; receive money from Pandulph, ii. 137; remonstrate against the consecration of the bishop of Lincoln at Reading, ii. 376; their dispute with archbishop Edmund, ii. 411; the prior [Roger de la Lee?] removed, and some of the monks transferred to a stricter Order, *ib.*; are absolved by the pope from the sentence of the archbishop, ii. 448; greatly oppressed by archbishop Boniface, ii. 490; burthened with debts, and six manors mortgaged to raise money, ii. 346.

Caorsins (*Caorsini*, *Caursini*, *Cahursini*), usurers so named, their number and influence, ii. 382; settle in London, and call themselves the pope's bankers, *ib.*; iii. 90, 272, 316; resist the bishop of London successfully, ii. 383; iii. 272; are protected by the pope, *ib.*, 316; study to get religious persons into their debt, iii. 272.

Caphardan [Kafertab], castle of, captured by the Turks, i. 235; taken by Boamund II., i. 240.

Capua, Peter de, cardinal legate, sent to arrange a truce between Philip II. and Richard, ii. 74; places France under an interdict, ii. 83; asks the release of the bishop of Beauvais from John, ii. 84; follows the pope in his flight, ii. 485.

Cardiff (*Caardif*), castle of, Warin Bassett killed at assault of, ii. 357.

Cari [Castle-Cary, co. Som.], castle, held against Stephen, i. 258.

Cariatarbe. *See* Ebron.

Carlisle (*Karleolum*), city of, rebuilt and repeopled by William Rufus, i. 44 ; iii. 175 ; taken by David of Scotland, i. 253 ; he retains possession by consent of Stephen, *ib.* ; given up to Henry II. by Malcolm, i. 307 ; episcopal see founded at, i. 245 ; iii. 186.

Carlisle, bishops of:

—— Athelulph, prior of St. Oswald [at Nostell], confessor of Henry I., appointed, i. 245 ; introduces regular canons, i. 246.

—— Walter Mauclerc, consecrated, ii. 255 ; iii. 246 ; returns from abroad, ii. 295 ; dismissed from the office of treasurer, ii. 353 ; iii. 268 ; accused of building a treasury with money not his own, *ib.* ; prevented from embarking at Dover by the king's officers, ii. 358 ; lifted prince Edward from the font, ii. 422 : resigns his bishopric, and assumes the habit of a Friar Preacher at Oxford, iii. 11 ; dies, iii. 40.

—— Silvester, consecrated, iii. 30, 302 ; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137 ; killed by a fall from his horse, iii. 333.

—— Thomas de Vipont, elected, iii. 337.

Carmelites. *See* Mount Carmel.

Carnoto, William de. *See* Chartres.

Carrochio, captured from the Milanese by Frederic II., ii. 401 ; iii. 275 ; custom of the Italians, when lost, *ib.*

Carthusians, Hugh, prior of the Order in England, consecrated bishop of Lincoln, i. 437. *See* Lincoln.

Carucage, of 6*s.* taken by William I., i. 27 ; of 5*s.* raised by Richard I., ii. 75 ; of 3*s.* imposed by John, ii. 85 ; not allowed to be collected in the diocese of York, ii. 87. *See* Hidage.

Castello, Hugh de, taken as prisoner by Henry II. to Normandy, i. 389.

Castille, kings of :

See Alfonso VI., VII., VIII., X. ; Ferdinand III.

Castle-Bernard, in the province of Haliwercfolc [co. Durham], belonged to the fee of Hugh de Bailloil, ii. 186 ; Alexander of Scotland stops at, *ib.*

Castle-Hernald, Richard arrives at, ii. 30 ; distant three miles from Jerusalem, ii. 31.

Castle-Maud, besieged by Wenunwen, king of North Wales, ii. 70 ; iii. 217 ; rebuilt of stone, the previous structure of wood having been destroyed by the Welsh, ii. 332 ; iii. 263.

Castles, erected in the reign of Stephen, razed, i. 296 ; built in England and Normandy during the war, ordered to be levelled, i. 393 ; given up to Henry II. throughout England, i. 395.

Castorea [in Macedonia], town of, arrival of Boamund's forces at, i. 71, 77.

Castro-Novo [Chateauneuf or Castelnau ?], Fulk de, knight, a relation of Henry III., iii. 20 *n.*, 31, 299 ; his death, and burial at Westminster, 20 *n.* ; shield of arms, *ib.*

Cateby (*Kateby*), nunnery of, miracles of St. Edmund at, ii. 448 ; iii. 283 ; two of his sisters nuns there, *ib.*

Caypha, Cayphas, [Haifa], maritime city [in Syria], passed by the crusaders, i. 136 ; called also Porphiria, i. 157 ; given to Tancred by duke Godfrey, *ib.* ; subject to the archbishop of Cæsarea, i. 162 ; given back by Tancred to Baldwin I., i. 186 ; submits to Richard I., ii. 26.

Cecily, eldest daughter of William I., becomes a nun at Fécamp, i. 20 ; iii. 171 ; made abbess at Caen, i. 31.

Cedron, brook of, fed by rainfalls, i. 161.

Celestine II., pope, succeeds, i. 273 ; dies, i. 275 ; iii. 189.

Celestine III., pope, succeeds, ii. 20, 29 ; consecrates Henry VI. emperor, ii. 21 ; excommunicates the duke of Austria, and lays his territories under an interdict, ii. 53 ; appoints archbishop Hubert legate of England, ii. 54 ; writes to

Celestine III., pope—*cont.* Richard I. in behalf of the bishop of Beauvais, ii. 59 ; dies, ii. 66.

Celestine IV., (Geoffrey of Milan,) elected pope, but dies shortly after, ii. 458.

Cerenches, castle of, [in the Avranchin,] taken by Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 268.

Cerepum, town of, [in Syria?] taken by the Turks, but recovered by Baldwin II., i. 229.

Ceresy (*de Ceresiaco*), Gerald de, takes the cross, i. 57.

Cerne or Cernel, [Haimo,] abbat of, degraded by archbishop Anselm, i. 191 ; reinstated, i. 192.

Chaceporc, Peter, Poitevin, treasurer of the king, dies at Bordeaux, iii. 342 ; bequeaths money to build a church in England, iii. 343.

Chalcedon, the forces of Louis VII. encamp at, i. 280.

Chalus, Chaluz, castle of, in the Limousin, besieged and taken by Richard I., ii. 76 ; he bequeaths his bowels to be buried at, *ib.*

Champagne, Odo, count of, disinherited by William Rufus, i. 48.

Champagne, Henry, count of, son of Theobald of Blois, marries [Mary] daughter of Louis VII., i. 256 ; joins Louis against duke Henry of Normandy, i. 289 ; receives from Richard I. the kingdom of Jerusalem, with the widow of the marquis of Montferrat, ii. 27 ; his death, ii. 61 ; shield of arms, *ib.*

Champagne [Theobald IV.], count of, leaves the army against the will of Louis VIII., ii. 288 ; report of his having caused Louis to be poisoned, *ib.*, 325 ; iii. 254 ; hostilities of the French nobles against, ii. 325 ; appeal against, by duel, *ib.* ; bound to go to the Holy Land, ii. 327. *See* Navarre.

Champenois, adhere to Richard I., ii. 63.

Chancellor, the appointment of, demanded by parliament, ii. 491 ; iii. 33, 51, 344 ; refused by the king, ii. 37, 51, 304, 344.

Chandeleurs, Geoffrey de, sets out for Jerusalem, ii. 446.

Charlemagne, chair of, at Aix-la-Chapelle, in which the emperors were crowned, iii. 36.

Charité, La (*Caritas*), the abbat of, [Savaric,] one of the sureties of Philip II., ii. 57 ; his possessions seized by Richard, *ib.*

Charter of Liberties, granted by Henry I., i. 177 ; copies of it sent to the abbeys of each county, i. 180 ; iii. 251 ; only three copies remained in the time of Matthew Paris, *ib.* ; violated by the king, i. 217 ; read at the council held at St. Paul's, ii. 143 ; produced at the meeting at St. Alban's, ii. 153 ; its observance demanded of John by the barons, *ib.*

Charter, Great, or Magna Carta, and Forest Charter, granted by John, ii. 157 ; appointment of twenty-five barons to carry out the provisions, ii. 158 ; annulled by the pope, ii. 162 ; iii. 232 ; confirmed by Henry III., and copies sent to each county, ii. 268 ; did not differ from the charter of John, ii. 269 ; the sentence of archbishop Stephen renewed against violators of, ii. 394 ; its articles required by Parliament to be observed, ii. 491 ; iii. 125, 132, 136, 344 ; openly read, and the transgressors solemnly excommunicated, ii. 137 ; iii. 327 ; its observance publicly proclaimed, iii. 346.

Charter of Subjection and tribute granted by John to the pope, ii. 135 ; given to Pandulph, sealed with wax, but afterwards with a bulla of gold, ii. 146 ; taken to Rome by Pandulph, ii. 148 ; burnt in the pope's chamber at Lyons, ii. 501 ; remonstrance against, addressed to the General Council, iii. 294.

Charters, renewed with the new seal of Richard I., ii. 70 ; iii. 218 ; and again by Henry III., ii. 294.

Chartre, La (*Castrum-Carceris*), castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 461.

Chartres (*Carnotum*), city of, pope Innocent II. received at, by Henry I., i. 244; meeting of Louis IX. and Henry III. at, iii. 341.

Chartres, Yvo, bishop of, his death, i. 222.

Chartres, counts of. *See* Blois.

Chartres, Boeleis de, joins Boamund as a crusader, i. 71.

Chartres (*de Carnoto*), William de, joins the crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230.

Châstillon (*de Castellione*), Reginald de, plunders the treasure of Saladin's mother, i. 439; refuses satisfaction, *ib.*; beheaded by Saladin (?), ii. 37.

Château-Gaillard. *See* Roche-d'Andeli.

Château-Neuf (*Novum-Castrum*), on the Sarthe, taken by the earl of Chester, ii. 329.

Château-Roux (*Castrum-Radulphi*), fief of, referred to arbitration, in the treaty between Philip II. and Henry II., i. 418; captured by Philip, i. 447.

Chaumont (*Calvus-Mons*), castle of, fortified by Louis VII., i. 311; captured by Henry II., *ib.*; burnt by the Normans, i. 344; taken by Philip II., i. 461; conference of Philip and Richard between Trie and, ii. 4.

Chaumont (*de Calvo-Monte*), Gualo de, takes the cross, i. 57; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Chaumont, Hugh de, taken prisoner by Richard I., ii. 58; escapes from the custody of Robert de Ros, *ib.*

Chaumont, Richard de, fights with and conquers two Turks, i. 134; liberated by Corbaran, *ib.*

Cheinduit, Ralph, taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212.

Chertsey (*Certesheia*), [Martin,] abbat of, sent to Rome by Richard I., ii. 75.

Chester, see of. *See* Coventry.

Chester, Richard, earl of, his secret conference with Robert of Normandy, i. 213; accused of treason, *ib.*; iii. 180; reconciled to Henry I., i. 214; iii. 181; perishes by shipwreck, with his wife [Matilda], the king's niece, i. 230; iii. 182.

Chester [Hugh Cyvelioc (*called incorrectly* Ranulph), son of Ranulph de Gernons], captured at Dol, i. 382.

Chester, Ranulph [de Gernons], earl of, son-in-law of Robert, earl of Gloucester, holds Lincoln against Stephen, i. 264; iii. 189; one of the leaders in the battle of Lincoln, *ib.*; defends the castle against Stephen, i. 273; taken prisoner, and forced to surrender the castle, i. 275; poisoned by William Peverel, i. 302; iii. 193.

Chester and Lincoln, Ranulph [Blundeville], earl of, carried the crown at the coronation of Richard I., ii. 7; refused as one of John's sureties to Philip II., and hence his enmity to Hubert de Burgh, iii. 231; present at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195; at the siege of Mountsorel, ii. 206; retires to Nottingham, ii. 208; one of the chiefs of the army at Newark, ii. 209; joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230; returns home, ii. 239; had the custody of Biham castle, ii. 244; letter to him from Philip de Albini, on affairs in the Holy Land, ii. 249; holds out at Leicester against the king and justiciary, ii. 260; threatened with excommunication by the legate, ii. 261; he and his associates surrender their castles, *ib.*; Faukes [de Breaute] professes to have been deceived by, ii. 265; iii. 250; takes the part of earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 296; fortifies his castle at St. John [James] de Beveron, ii. 327; left one of the commanders in Britanny, ii. 328; makes forays into Anjou and Normandy, and takes some castles and towns, ii. 328, 329; captures the baggage-waggons of the French, on their invasion of Britanny, ii. 333; acts for Henry in making a truce with Louis IX., *ib.*; joins the king in Wales, *ib.*; refuses, on the part of the barons, to grant an aid, ii. 339; suggests the danger of exciting the populace, in reference to Hubert de Burgh, ii. 347, dies at Wallingford, *s. p. m.*, and buried at Chester, ii. 349, 510; iii. 267; his shield of arms, ii. 349:

Chester and Huntingdon, John le Scot, earl of, son of David, brother of William [the Lion], and nephew of earl Randulph, succeeds to the earldom, ii. 349; gained over from the party of the earl Mareschal by bribery, ii. 357; assumes the cross, ii. 391; dies from poison, *s. p.m.*, ii. 398, 510.

Chester, constables of. *See* Lascy.

Chichester, the city and cathedral of, burnt, i. 443; iii. 207.

Chichester, see of, transferred to, from Selsey, iii. 171; seized by Henry III., ii. 488, 489; iii. 290.

Chichester, bishops of:

—— Ralph, present at the consecration of Thomas archbishop of York, i. 210.

—— Sifred, abbat of Glastonbury, appointed, i. 235; iii. 184.

—— Hilary, present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318.

—— John, dean of Chichester, elected, i. 375; consecrated, i. 390.

—— Simon de Welles, consecrated, ii. 102; iii. 222; dies, ii. 113; iii. 224.

—— Richard [Poore], dean of Salisbury, consecrated, ii. 152, 171. *See* Salisbury, bishops of.

—— Ralph de Noville or Neville, chancellor, consecrated, ii. 267; iii. 250; elected archbishop of Canterbury, but annulled by the pope, ii. 337; refuses to give up the seal to the king, ii. 389; iii. 273; elected bishop of Winchester, ii. 412; the seal taken from him, but allowed to keep the emoluments, *ib.*; his election to Winchester annulled by the pope, ii. 418; iii. 263, 277; dies at London, in his palace near the New Temple, which he built, ii. 480.

—— Robert Passelewe, [archdeacon of Lewes,] elected, but annulled, ii. 488.

—— Richard de Wiz or Withz [Wich ?], elected, ii. 488; consecrated at Lyons by the pope, ii. 505; dies, iii. 135, 325; formerly clerk and councillor of archbishop Edmund, *ib.*; from his information Matthew Paris wrote the Life of St. Edmund, *ib.*; miracles at his tomb, iii. 139, 318, 327; his body found clothed in hair-cloth and bound by iron hoops, iii. 139; a saint, although not canonized, iii. 329.

—— John Clippinge, canon of Chichester, elected, iii. 139, 327.

Childewike, Geoffrey de, obtains a grant of warren on lands held of St. Alban's, iii. 62; protected by John Mansel, his brother-in-law, *ib.*

Chilterns (*Ciltria*), earthquake in the district so called, iii. 87, 97, 314, 319.

Chinon (*Chynun*), castle of, taken by Henry II., i. 306; iii. 193; Henry dies at, i. 464; treasure of Richard I. at, given up to John, ii. 78; surrendered to Philip II., ii. 103; bravery of Hubert de Burgh at, ii. 344.

Chorasmians or Chorosmians [Kharizmians], expelled from their country by the Tartars, and sent by the Soldan of Egypt to attack the Christians, ii. 484; iii. 289; slaughter of the Christians by, near Gaza, *ib.*, 507; iii. 295; utterly destroyed in the Holy Land, iii. 28, 51, 301.

Chore [Cork?], the Regulus of, does homage to Henry II., i. 370.

Chrism, Holy, made at St. Alban's, ii. 398, 483; iii. 274, 333.

Christiana, countess of Albemarle. *See* Albemarle.

Christopher [*a mistake for* Eric?], son of Athelmar II. king of Denmark, makes war against his brother, iii. 283.

Chronica Magna, or Majora, S. Albani. *See* Historiæ, and Paris, Matthew.

Chronology, corrected by Marianus Scotus, i. 26; events after Christmas Day may belong to that year or the next, i. 307; iii. 193; change in the regnal years of Henry III. noted, ii. 196 *n.*; marvellous events in the quinquagenary from 1201 to 1250, iii. 88, 89, 315.

Cilicia, arrival of the Crusaders in, i. 88; limits of, *ib.*; Salaman, governor of, captured by Noradin, i. 337.

Cincia, daughter of Reimund, count of Provence, married to earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 473; iii. 287; nuptials celebrated at Wallingford, ii. 478; birth of her son Edmund, iii. 68; goes to France, to meet her sisters, iii. 340.

Cincio, canon of St. Paul's, ill-used returning from St. Alban's, ii. 338.

Cirencester, abbey of, founded by Henry I., 249.

Cireth [Sereth or Saratt, co. Herts.], castle of, forces drawn from the garrison by Faukes, ii. 203.

Cisoing (*Cisonium*), nunnery at, ii. 46 *n.*

Cistercian Order, origin of, i. 240; receive a grant of money from Richard I., ii. 10; contribute the wool of one year towards his ransom, ii. 44; the ransom money bequeathed to them by Henry VI., and refused, ii. 58; suspended by the pope for celebrating divine service during the interdict, ii. 117, 118; iii. 224; a large sum taken from them for tallage, ii. 123, 151; the abbats not allowed to go to the general chapter, ii. 123, 467; iii. 286; compelled by John to give deeds of gift for money extorted from them, ii. 132; at their general chapter, prayers desired for Louis IX., ii. 471; obtain papal privilege to build schools at Paris and elsewhere, iii. 57, 94, 95 *n.*, 309; letter of Louis IX. read in a general chapter, iii. 114; obtain right of warren from Henry III., iii. 129; grant of the church of Scarborough to, iii. 209.

Citeaux (*Cisteus*), abbey of, derivation of the name, i. 240; iii. 185.

Città Vecchia, Innocent IV. embarks at, ii. 485.

Civitot [on the gulf of Nicomedia], arrival of the Crusaders at, i. 62.

Clairvaux, abbey of, persecuted by Engelram de Coucy, ii. 490; iii. 291.

Clairvaux, abbats of:

—— Bernard, reconciles Louis VII. to the pope, i. 278; dies, i. 292.

Clairvaux, abbats of:—*cont.*

—— Stephen de Lexintone, obtains for the Cistercians the privilege to found schools at Paris, iii. 94, 309.

Clare, Roger, earl of, refuses homage to archbishop Thomas for the castle of Tunbridge, i. 322.

Clare, Richard [son of Roger], earl of, submits to Henry II., i. 389; his castle of Tunbridge captured by John's partizans, ii. 170.

Clare and Gloucester, Gilbert [son of Richard], earl of, takes the part of Richard of Cornwall against Henry III., ii. 296; his death, ii. 328; iii. 262; custody of his lands given to Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*; his shield of arms, *ib.*; claim of the archbishop to Tunbridge castle, part of his possessions, ii. 330.

Clare and Gloucester, Richard [son of Gilbert], earl of, referred to, for account of atmospheric phenomena in Ireland, ii. 391; marries Margaret, daughter of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 395; as one of the lords Marchers, opposes the Welsh, ii. 487; iii. 290; knighted at London, ii. 502; his shield of arms, *ib.*; on account of the enmity between him and the foreigners, a tournament is prohibited, iii. 294; holds a court at Christmas near Gloucester, iii. 43; goes abroad, iii. 69; his suit with the abbat of St. Edmund's, iii. 119; his son Gilbert married to [Alice] the king's niece, iii. 133, 324; is worsted in a tournament in France, iii. 325; sent to inquire into the charges against the guardians of Scotland, iii. 347; hears from the queen her complaints, *ib.*

Clarendon, Constitutions approved at the council of, i. 322–326; iii. 95; condemned or tolerated by Alexander III., *ib.*; sworn to by the prelates and nobles, i. 326; renounced by Henry II., but some still observed, i. 386; are abuses, iii. 195.

Claudian, quoted, i. 218.

Clement, St., granted privilege to St. Denis for the clergy of France to elect their own pope, ii. 471; iii. 287.

Clement II., pope, succeeds, iii. 166.

Clement III., anti-pope, (Wibert, archbishop of Ravenna,) nominated in the council of Mayence, i. 25; enthroned, i. 27, 33; gives the emperor Henry IV. his benediction, i. 28; was intruded into the papacy by the emperor, i. 50.

Clement III., pope, succeeds, i. 445; iii. 207; directs the bishop of Albano to preach a crusade, *ib.*; sends John of Anagni to make peace between Philip II. and Richard, i. 455; dies, ii. 20, 27.

Clement, Henry, clerk, of Ireland, boasts of having caused the death of Richard earl Mareschal, ii. 381; killed in London, *ib.*

Cleophas, Christ walked with, at Emmaus, i. 137.

Clere, Matthew de, sheriff of Kent, and constable of Dover, imprisons the archbishop of York, ii. 22; excommunicated by archbishop Hubert, ii. 44.

Clergy, the English prelates despised by Lanfranc for their illiteracy, i. 14; order of the general synod, respecting married priests, i. 18; general statutes concerning, passed in the council at Clermont, i. 54-56; concubines of the priests prohibited, i. 234, 243; iii. 183; decrees relative to, in the Constitutions of Clarendon, i. 323-326; subjected to lay jurisdiction, i. 327, 334; to be tried before the secular judge for forfeiture of forest and lay fees, i. 392, 395; exempted from duel, i. 395; other concessions respecting, made to the legate by Henry II., *ib.*; decrees made in reference to, in the General Council at Rome, i. 412-414; their property confiscated by John, ii. 116; their concubines inhumanly treated, *ib.*; oppressed by the legate Walo, ii. 225; demands of Honorius III. for prebends, ii. 278, 281, 284; objections made by the French clergy, ii. 282; the English prelates forbidden by the king to subject their lay fiefs to Rome, ii. 279; compelled to renew their charters, ii. 294; papal claim of tithes, ii. 315, 316; tyranny of the legate in enforcing the tax, ii. 317; iii. 259; complaints laid before the pope by archbishop Stephen, touching pluralities, ii. 335; papal demand of a fifth of their goods, ii. 431, 432, 436; complaint to the General Council at Lyons, of the papal exactions, ii. 507; iii. 295; intolerable grievances suffered by, from Rome, iii. 5, 58, 297, 310, 316, 321; papal mandate to seize the goods of the rich intestate clergy, iii. 9, 21 *n.*; further demands of pope Innocent on, iii. 12; complaints of, in parliament, iii. 16; contribution granted by, to the pope, iii. 19; permission granted to one person to hold several bishoprics, iii. 90, 316; no rector allowed to succeed his father, or hold two benefices, *ib.*; the free election of prelates demanded in parliament, iii. 136, 326; novelty of the payment of tithes by the clergy to the laity, iii. 337. *See* Investiture; Procurations; Provisions.

Clergy, Italian. *See* Italian.

Clerkenwell (*Fons-Clericorum*), London, council held at by Henry II., i. 433.

Clermont (*Clarus-Mons*), in Auvergne, council held at by Urban II., and decrees passed, i. 54-56; iii. 175.

Clermont (*de Claro-Monte*), Simon de, killed near Gaza, ii. 433.

Clifford, Walter de, joins the party of the earl Mareschal, ii. 356.

Cloths, woollen, statute relative to the measure and sale of, ii. 65; iii. 216.

Cluniac Order, money exacted from by John, ii. 123.

Cluny, church of, dedicated by Innocent II., ii. 245.

Cluny, abbats of:

—— Hugh I., his dream respecting William Rufus, i. 172.

—— [Peter], conveys away the treasure of Henry bishop of Winchester, i. 302.

Cluny, abbats of :—*cont.*

—— [Hugh IV.], by his mediation Richard is summoned before the emperor, ii. 42; one of the sureties of Philip II., ii. 57; his possessions seized by Richard, *ib.*

—— [William de Pontoise], comes to England, to visit his Order, iii. 110; compelled to return quickly, *ib.*

Cnut, king of Denmark and England, lands in England, and ravages it, iii. 161; holds a council at Oxford, and puts some Danish nobles to death, *ib.*; fights seven battles with Edmund Ironside, and in single combat, *ib.* 163; acquires the whole of England, and exiles the sons of Edmund, iii. 161; marries Emma, widow of Æthelred, *ib.*; employs himself in pious works, *ib.*; winters in Denmark, iii. 162; endows the abbey of St. Edmund, and places monks there, iii. 41, 162; imposes a tax on England, iii. 162; founds the abbey of St. Benet Holm, iii. 41, 162; orders the laws of Edward the Confessor to be observed, iii. 162; honours the English for gaining a battle for him [in Sweden], *ib.*; enriches the Old Minister of Winchester, *ib.*; shows reverence to the tomb of king Edmund, *ib.*; founds the abbey of Holm in Norway, iii. 41, 162, 163; goes to Norway, and expels king Olaf, iii. 163; goes to Rome, and confirms Romescot, *ib.*; places Benedictine monks in the abbey of Holm, *ib.*; causes Holm in Norway to be dedicated, *ib.*; returns from Rome, *ib.*; makes a road between Ramsey and Peterborough, *ib.*; defeats Malcolm, king of Scots, iii. 164; gives Denmark and Norway to his sons, *ib.*; dies, and is buried at Winchester, *ib.*

Cnut, son of Sweyn II., king of Denmark, arrives in a fleet, to aid the conspirators against William I., i. 20; iii. 171; ravages Flanders, *ib.*

Coinage, new, in 1158, i. 309; iii. 194; names of base coin, *ib. n.*; new, in 1181, i. 423; form of the Irish changed, ii. 122; many punished for clipping, iii. 27, 301, 316; a new design adopted in consequence, *ib.*; the people impoverished by the exchange of the clipt coin, iii. 35, 303.

Coiners or Moneyers, punished for debasing the coin, i. 235; iii. 184.

Colchester, plundered by the barons, ii. 184; conventual church of, founded by the seneschal of Henry I., i. 400.

Colchester, Ralph de Alta-ripa [Hauterive?], archdeacon of, his death at Acre, ii. 20.

Colchester, Walter of, sacrist of St. Alban's, joint artist of the shrine of St. Thomas at Canterbury, ii. 242.

Coleville, Roger de, seized by Faukes [de Breaute] in the forest of Wabridge, ii. 204; iii. 239.

Coleville, William de, taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212.

Colewich, death of Paul, abbat of St. Alban's, at, i. 45.

[Colewick], miraculous dance in the churchyard of St. Magnus at, in Saxony, iii. 161.

Cologne (*Colonia*), slaughter of the Jews at, i. 67; arrival of the empress Isabel at, ii. 380; number of Beguines there, ii. 476.

Cologne, archbishops of:

—— Anno, assists at the synod of Mantua, i. 10.

—— Reginald, favoured the anti-pope Octavian [Victor IV.], i. 336; comes to England to receive Matilda as wife of the duke of Saxony, *ib.*; treated as an excommunicated person, *ib.*; enemy of pope Alexander III., and of archbishop Thomas, i. 345; iii. 198; letter of Henry II. to, *ib.*

—— Philip, visits England, to pay his vows to St. Thomas, i. 427; received honourably at London, *ib.*

—— [Henry], comes to England for Isabel, betrothed to Frederic II., ii. 379; present at the feast held at Westminster, *ib.*; sets out from Dartford, and embarks

Cologne, archbishops of :—*cont.*
Henry—*cont.*
with the empress, *ib.*; lands at Antwerp, *ib.*
—— Conrad, abandons the emperor's cause, ii. 474; the see of Mentz bestowed on him, and the abbey of Volsa, iii. 53; expends the treasure of the church on military affairs, *ib.*

Colonna (*Columpna*), John de, cardinal, his death, ii. 479 *n.*; foments the enmity between the emperor and pope, *ib.*

Comets, appearances of, in (1104), i. 196; (1106), i. 205; (1110), i. 215; iii. 181; (1113), i. 218; iii. 181; (1114), i. 219; (1146), i. 277; (1239), ii. 424; iii. 279; (1240), ii. 429; baleful presage of, i. 218; predicts death of Philip II., ii. 256.

Compiegne (*Compendium*), Robert Fitz-Walter and Saer de Quinci imprisoned at, ii. 98.

Conan of Britanny, joins the crusade, i. 76; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Concubines of priests. *See* Clergy.

Connaught (*Comnat*), wild character of the country, i. 370.

Connor, Adam, abbat of Wardon, elected bishop of, ii. 466; iii. 286; the see subject to the archbishop of Armagh, *ib.*

Conrad III., emperor of Germany, elected, i. 257; assumes the cross, i. 279; amount of his forces, *ib.*; progress of his army to Lycaonia, i. 280; his army betrayed by the Greek guides, *ib.*; iii. 189; defeated by the Soldan of Iconium, i. 181; iii. 189; escapes to Nice, and thence to Constantinople, *ib.*; goes by sea to Acre, *ib.*; iii. 190; proceeds to Jerusalem, *ib.*; confers with the kings of Jerusalem and France, i. 283; personal bravery at the siege of Damascus, *ib.*; abandons the siege, and returns home, i. 284, 286; dies, i. 292; iii. 192; memorable acts of, *ib.*

Conrad IV., son of Frederic II. by the daughter of John de Brienne, ii. 396 *n.*; iii. 100; opposed by the German prelates, iii. 290; when king of Germany, sent against the Landgrave of Thuringia, iii. 7, 287; deserted by the nobles, and forced to fly, *ib.*; iii. 298; marries [Elizabeth, daughter of Otho duke of Bavaria], iii. 35, 303; unable to prevent the surrender of Aix-la-Chapelle, iii. 36; dispossessed of the kingdom of Germany, iii. 57; sends the prisoners taken by his father to Palermo, iii. 100, 320; his warlike disposition, *ib.*; excommunicated by the pope, iii. 112; his success against him, iii. 322; writes to earl Richard of Cornwall not to be deceived by the pope, iii. 127; when king of Sicily, accused unjustly of his brother Henry's death, iii. 336; replies to the charges against him, *ib.*; the pope assisted against him by Henry III., iii. 338; his lamentation before his death, *ib.*; shield of arms, as king of Sicily, *ib.*

Cons, Dodo de, joins duke Godfrey as a crusader, i. 68.

Constance, daughter of William I., married to [Alan Fergant] count of Britanny, i. 31.

Constance, daughter of Philip I., mother of Boamund II., i. 211.

Constance, daughter of Boamund II., has the principality of Antioch secured to her, i. 245; marries Reimund, count of Poitou, i. 246.

Constance, sister of Louis VII., married to Eustace, son of Stephen, i. 262; remarried to the count of Toulouse, i. 310.

Constance, daughter of Conan, count of Britanny, married to Geoffrey, son of Henry II., i. 346; birth of her son Arthur, i. 437; delivers him to the charge of Philip, ii. 79.

Constantine, nephew of Constantine Fitz-Olaf, hung with him, ii. 252.

Constantinople, arrival at, of the Crusaders under Walter Sensavoir, i. 60; under Peter the Hermit, i. 62; under Louis VII., i. 279; Conrad III. returns to, i. 281; reports of the alliance of the emperor [Isaac Angelus] with Saladin, i.

Constantinople—*cont.*
457 ; Saladin sent his idol to be worshipped there, *ib.* ; any person taking the cross at, is imprisoned, *ib.* ; legates of the emperor [Henry I.] at the Lateran Council, ii. 168.

Constantinople, emperors of :
See Alexius I. ; Alexius III. ; Baldwin I. ; Baldwin III. ; Cursac.

Constantinople, [Maximus,] patriarch of, present at the Lateran Council, ii. 167.

"Consuetudines Scaccarii," or "Rotuli Scaccarii," referred to, for the coronation of Richard I., ii. 8 ; iii. 209.

Coradin, [Soldan of Damascus,] son of Saphadin, succeeds his father, ii. 229 ; destroys the walls of Jerusalem, *ib.* ; iii. 243.

Corbaran, [Kerboga], prince of Persia [Moussoul], leaves Edessa to aid the city of Antioch, i. 106 ; conference with Sensabolus, and surrender of the castle, i. 111 ; besieges Antioch, i. 112, 114 ; iii. 176 ; conflicts with the besieged, *ib.* ; offer of battle sent to, by Peter the Hermit, i. 119 ; causes an apostate spy to be beheaded, *ib. n.* ; names of the emirs and kings under him, i. 122 ; defeated, and flies beyond the Euphrates, i. 126, 134 ; accused of treachery by the Soldan, iii. 134 ; challenged to produce a Christian to fight two infidels, *ib.* ; releases Richard de Chaumont, *ib.*

Corbeil (*Curbola*, *Curbula*), William de Brause dies at, ii. 125 ; William de Necton takes refuge there, ii. 126 ; iii. 226.

Cordova (*Corduba*), captured by the king of Castille, ii. 384 ; iii. 92, 272, 317 ; the poet Lucan born at, ii. 384.

Corf, castle of, Peter the Hermit and son imprisoned at, ii. 136 ; nobles imprisoned there, ii. 166 ; iii. 233 ; garrisoned by John, ii. 181.

Corn, price of a measure of, ii. 103, 498, 511 ; iii. 42, 149. *See* Glossary *v.* Summa.

Cornhill (*Cornhulle*), Hubert de Burgh taken there, ii. 350.

Cornhulle, Henry de, knight [sheriff of Kent], sent by John to expel the monks from Canterbury, ii. 113.

Cornhulle, Reginald de, knight, employed to enforce the tax on the clergy, ii. 123.

Cornwall, county or earldom of, given by Richard to prince John, ii. 13 *n.* ; tin mines there, ii. 453.

Cornwall [William of Mortain, nephew of William I.], earl of, meets the devil carrying William Rufus to judgment, if 171. *See* Mortain.

Cornwall, Reginald [natural son of Henry I.], earl of, his death, i. 392 ; iii. 202.

Cornwall, Richard, earl of. *See* Richard, son of John.

Coucy (*Cuscy*), Engelram de, his daughter [Mary] marries Alexander II. of Scotland, ii. 419 ; promised military aid to the king, iii. 291 ; his death, ii. 490 ; iii. 291 ; persecuted the monks of Clairvaux, iii. 291.

Coucy, Engelram [Raoul] de, [eldest son of preceding, killed in Egypt,] his shield of arms, iii. 84 *n.*

Coucy, John de, son of Engelram, ii. 490 ; applied to by Alexander II. for military aid, *ib.*

Councils, General, held, of the Lateran (1179), i. 412 ; of the Lateran (1215), i. 416 ; ii. 161, 167 ; iii. 91 ; of Rome (1240, summoned but not held), ii. 434 ; of Lyons (1245), ii. 500, 506 ; iii. 91.

Councils, held at :
Bari, i. 52 ; Bourges, ii. 281 ; Clarendon, i. 322 ; Clermont, i. 54 ; Lismore, i. 371 ; London, i. 191, 234 ; iii. 183 ; i. 243, 261 ; iii. 187 ; i. 270 ; iii. 188 ; i. 433 ; ii. 143, 146 ; 400 ; iii. 275 ; Northampton, i. 328 ; Reading, ii. 107 ; iii. 223 ; ii. 431 ; Rheims, i. 225, 278 ; Rome, i. 18, 52 ; St. Alban's, ii. 141 ; Tours, i. 321 ; iii. 198 ; Troyes, i. 223 Vercelli, i. 33 ; Westminster, i. 207, 392 ; iii. 202 ; ii. 15, 18, 278, 315 ; Winchester, i. 263. *See* Parliaments.

Coutances, submits to Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 268.

Coventry, see of Chester transferred to, i. 246; papal decision as to the right of election of the bishop, ii. 300; the king seizes the barony of, ii. 488; iii. 290.

Coventry, Chester, or Lichfield, bishops of:

—— Robert, chaplain of William I., appointed, i. 32.

—— Robert, surnamed Pecceth or Peché (*Peccatum*), his death, i. 246.

—— Roger, archdeacon of Lincoln, succeeds, i. 246; dies, i. 277.

—— Walter, prior of Canterbury, succeeds, i. 277.

—— Richard, present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's i. 318; suspended from his office, i. 357.

—— Girard, surnamed Pucelle (*Puella*), consecrated, i. 426; iii. 205; dies, *ib.*

—— Hugh de Nunant, succeeds, i. 445; iii. 207 *n.*; expels the monks from Coventry, and substitutes seculars, ii. 29; robbed of gifts for Richard I., ii. 44; repents having driven out the monks, ii. 66; his penitence and death, ii. 67.

—— Geoffrey de Muschamp, elected, ii. 67; iii. 217; consecrated, ii. 68; dies, ii. 114; iii. 224.

—— Walter de Grai, elected, ii. 123.

—— William de Cornhulle, consecrated, ii. 171; dies, ii. 260; iii. 247.

—— Alexander de Stavenesbi, witness of the repentance of Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 265; takes him to the king, *ib.*; consecrated at Rome by the pope, ii. 267; iii. 250; sent to Rome, to oppose the election of the bishop of Durham, ii. 286; his proceedings touching the election of the archbishop elect, ii. 309; blamed for his intimacy with the earl Mareschal, ii. 365; excommunicates the authors of the disturbances, *ib.*; iii. 270; sent to make peace with Llewellyn and the earl Mareschal, ii. 366; baptizes the son of Simon de Montfort, ii. 414; dies, ii. 417.

—— William de Rale, canon of St. Paul's, elected, ii. 418; iii. 279.

Coventry, Chester, or Lichfield, bishops of:—*cont.*

—— Hugh de Pateshulle, treasurer of the king, elected, ii. 429; iii. 280; consecrated, ii. 434; dies, ii. 458; iii. 284.

—— [Richard le Gras], abbat of Evesham, elected by some of the monks, ii. 469; dies, *ib.*

—— William of Montpellier, precentor, elected by the greater part of the monks, but rejected by the king, ii. 469; iii. 286; resigns, ii. 505; iii. 294.

—— Roger de Weseham, dean of Lincoln, elected, ii. 505; iii. 290; consecrated by the pope at Lyons, *ib.*; iii. 294; his temporalities restored, iii. 9.

Coventry, priory of, the monks driven out by Robert Marmiun, i. 273; secular canons substituted, ii. 29; the monks replaced by the pope, ii. 66; iii. 217; death of the prior, and appointment of Joibert, ii. 67; iii. 217; dispute with the canons of Lichfield, as to the election of bishop, ii. 300.

Crac, Crach [Kerak], castle of, the vicinity ravaged by Saladin, i. 430; also called Petra-Deserti and Montreal, i. 444; passed by merchants on their road to Mecca, ii. 236; the Soldan offers to pay tribute for, *ib.*

Cradoc, seneschal of Normandy, rose from an ignoble position, and died in prison, ii. 272.

Craucumbe, Godfrey de, knight, one of John's envoys at the Lateran Council, ii. 168; sent to seiz Hubert de Burgh, ii. 347; drags him out of the chapel of Brentwood, and takes him to the Tower, ii. 348; iii. 266.

Crema, John of, cardinal legate, holds a council at London, i. 234; iii. 183; condemns the concubines of priests, but is caught with one, *ib.*

Cremonese, defeated by the Bolognese, and the prisoners taken to Bologna, iii. 56, 309; pay a sum of money to obtain mild treatment, iii. 57.

Crepin [Crispin?], William, constable of Eu, gives up the castle to Richard I., ii. 63.

Crescencio, castle of, at Rome [the Mole of Adrian], belonged to the brothers of pope Anacletus, i. 244.

Cressi, Roger de, taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212.

Crispin, William [*erroneously called* count of Evreux], exiled by Henry I., i. 227; wounds the king at the battle of Bremule, *ib.*; is unhorsed and taken prisoner, *ib.*

Cristina, sister of Eadgar Etheling, accompanies her brother to Scotland, i. 9; becomes a nun, *ib.*

Crokestone (*Crokestune*), abbey of, [Thomas,] abbat of, confesses John, and administers the sacrament, ii. 192; iii. 237; opens his body after death, *ib.*; John's bowels buried in, ii. 193; his heart bequeathed to, with ten librates of land, ii. 194; iii. 237.

Crops, failure of, in 1234 and 1249, ii. 375; iii. 54; abundant, in 1244, 1245, and 1248, ii. 498, 511; iii. 42.

Cross, Holy, a piece of, given to the Crusaders at Jerusalem, i. 152; borne at the battle of Ascalon, *ib.*; captured by Saladin at the battle of Marescallia, i. 442; proposed to be given up, ii. 24; a small cross made out of, presented to Richard I., ii. 33; offered by the Soldan of Babylon to the Christians, ii. 236; purchased of the emperor Baldwin II. by Louis IX., ii. 407, 443, 446; carried in procession at Paris, ii. 446; deposited in the Sainte Chapelle, ii. 447.

Cross-bearers or Crutched Friars (*Cruciferi*), new Order of, established in England, ii. 496; iii. 318.

Crowmarsh (*Craumerse*), castle of, besieged by duke Henry, and razed by Stephen, i. 293.

Crown of Thorns, Holy, purchased of Baldwin II. by Louis IX., ii. 407, 443, 447; kept in the Sainte Chapelle, ii. 447.

Croyland, the body of earl Waltheof transferred to, i. 20; John orders the abbey and town to be burnt, ii. 189; spared by Savary de Mauleon, but the inmates treated with cruelty, *ib.*; crops of, in Hoiland, burnt by John, ii. 190.

Croyland:—*cont.*

Croyland, abbats of:

—— [Henry de Longchamp], hated by John, because a relation of the chancellor William, ii. 189; dies, ii. 393.

—— [Thomas de Welles], his death, iii. 340.

Crucifix, appears in the sky in Germany, ii. 297; iii. 256.

Crusade, Crusaders, advocated by Urban II., i. 56; names of the chief leaders, i. 56, 57; preaching of Peter the Hermit, i. 57, 59; march and proceedings of the forces under Walter Sansavoir, i. 59, 60; iii. 175; under Peter the Hermit, i. 61–64; under Godeschal, i. 65, 66; of a separate body, i. 66–68; under duke Godfrey of Lorraine, i. 68, 69; under Boamund, i. 71; under the count of Toulouse, i. 71, 72; under Robert of Normandy, i. 76, 78; iii. 175; laws made to repress rapine, i. 77; advance to Nicomedia, *ib.*; siege and capture of Nice, *ib.*, 79–83; battle of Gorgoni [Dorylæum], i. 84–87; progress to Antioch, i. 87–90; siege and capture of Antioch, i. 91–95; 98–109; regulations made in the army, i. 94; decree to prevent desertion, i. 104; resist Corbaran, i. 111, 112; resolve to persevere, i. 117; names of the leaders, and defeat of Corbaran, i. 119–127; iii. 176; agree to separate, i. 129; reassemble at Antioch, i. 130; take Marrah, *ib.*; march on to Jerusalem, i. 132, 133, 135–137; arrive at, and besiege it, i. 138, 139; assault and capture of, i. 139–147; iii. 177; law made as to the appropriation of houses, i. 147; the princes elect a king, i. 149; march to Ascalon, and defeat Elafdal, i. 152–155; the greater part return home, i. 157; many nobles assume the cross, for the second crusade, i. 193; defeated by the Turks, *ib.*; take Tortosa, i. 194; obtains a victory over the caliph of Egypt, i. 195; iii. 179; arrive at Jerusalem, *ib.*;

Crusade, Crusaders—*cont.*
preachers appointed for a new crusade, i. 279; preaching of St. Bernard in favour of, *ib.*; march of Conrad III., *ib.*, 280; and of Louis VII., *ib.*; defeat of Conrad, i. 281; progress of Louis to Jerusalem, *ib.*, 282, 283; siege of Damascus, i. 283; the Crusaders return homewards, i. 284; zeal for the enterprise becomes lukewarm, *ib.*; iii. 189; many nobles take the cross in France, i. 434; enthusiasm for the third crusade, under Philip II. and Henry II., i. 446; various colours of crosses adopted, *ib.*; many start without leaders, i. 453; impediments to its progress, i. 454; march of Frederic I., i. 464; iii. 208; Philip and Richard agree to undertake it, ii. 13, 14; their proceedings in Palestine, ii. 24–27, 29–36, 38; iii. 211, 212; persons who had laid down the cross, compelled to resume it, ii. 91; proceedings of the army of the fifth crusade in Egypt, ii. 227–230; truce with the Soldan, ii. 250; great stir made in aid of, ii. 297; its progress impeded by Frederic II., ii. 298; his proceedings in Palestine, ii. 303, 304, 311, 312; another crusade preached, by bull of Gregory IX., ii. 378; many English nobles take the cross, ii. 391, 446; iii. 273, 282; many persons allowed to redeem their vows, ii. 431; iii. 52; popular devotion for the crusade decreases, iii. 52, 280; slaughter of the French near Gaza, ii. 433; many French nobles assume the cross, for a sixth crusade, ii. 508; iii. 296; and also English, iii. 26, 32, 55, 70, 301, 302; preaching of the Mendicant Orders in behalf of, iii. 51; meeting of the English Crusaders, to arrange a day for departure, iii. 72; they are forbidden to embark by the pope, *ib.*; proceedings of the French in Egypt, iii. 74, 75, 81, 82; false rumours of the capture of several towns, iii. 83; destruction of the Christian army, iii. 83, 84, 95; many sovereigns and nobles assume the cross, iii. 95;

Crusade, Crusaders:—*cont.*
deaths of many, iii. 96. *See* Holy Land; Jerusalem.

Crusade, proposal of, against the Moors in Spain, to be commanded by Richard I., ii. 54.

Crux-Caroli, Richard I. subdues the rebels as far as, ii. 50; iii. 215.

Culeswurthe, William de, appointed an assessor of the tax in Hertfordshire, ii. 349.

Cumhyre [co. Radnor], abbey of, escape of Llewellyn by aid of a monk of, ii. 332; ordered to be burnt, but redeemed by the abbat, *ib.*

Cumin, Walter, fortifies castles in Galloway and Lothian, to the king's prejudice, ii. 494.

Cunrad, St. Elizabeth receives the habit of religion from, ii. 233.

Curceles, castle of [in the Vexin ?], taken by Richard I., ii. 72.

Curcun, Robert de, cardinal legate in France, mediates the truce between John and Philip II., ii. 152; of English birth, ii. 229; arrives in Damietta, *ib.*

Cursac [Isaac Angelus], emperor of Constantinople, blinded and imprisoned by his brother Alexius, ii. 51; iii. 215.

Cursac [Isaac Comnenus], lord of Cyprus, assumes the title of emperor, ii. 21; taken prisoner by Richard I., with his daughter [Bourgogne], *ib.*; iii. 211; charges against Richard, in reference to, ii. 42.

[Curtenai, de], Jocelin, at the siege of Haran, i. 200; taken prisoner by the Turks, *ib.*; obtains his release, i. 212; when count of Edessa, captured by Balac, i. 231.

Curtenai (*de Curteniaco*), Philip de, assumes the cross, ii. 508; iii. 296.

Curtenai, Robert de, taken prisoner in a naval combat, ii. 221; iii. 242.

Cuthbert, St., his chapel at St. Alban's dedicated, i. 369.

Cyprian, bishop of Carthage, theological writer, mentioned, *Prol.*, i. 4.

Cyprus, island of, Richard I. lands at, ii. 21 ; subdues it, and imprisons the emperor, *ib.* ; embarks from, ii. 23 ; envoys of [Hugh I.,] king of, at the Lateran Council, ii. 168 ; Louis IX. winters in, iii. 48, 307 ; many French nobles die at, iii. 66. *See* Cursac.

D.

Dacia, passed through by the Crusaders under Louis VII., i. 279.

Dalmatia, traversed by the forces of count Reimund, i. 72.

Damascus, forces sent from, to the aid of Antioch, i. 98 ; siege of, by Conrad III. and the kings of Jerusalem and France, i. 283 ; iii. 190 ; the siege raised by bribery of the Latin princes, i. 284 ; iii. 190 ; Guy, king of Jerusalem, sent prisoner to, i. 443 ; under the power of Saladin, i. 451.

Damascus, [Toghteghin ?] prince of, assists in the defeat of Roger, prince of Antioch, i. 229. *See* Doldequin.

Damascus, [Malek Saleh Nodgemeddin,] Soldan of, cedes Palestine to the Christians, ii. 440 ; alliance with the Christians against the Soldan of Babylon, ii. 441 ; proposed to be baptized, *ib.* ; the French nobles captured by, treated rigorously, ii. 443. *See* Egypt.

Damasus II., pope, succeeds, iii. 166.

Damietta, in Egypt, the Crusaders defeated at, i. 451 ; arrival of the Christian forces at, ii. 227 ; attack on the Nile tower, and capture, ii. 228 ; iii. 243 ; arrival of the legate and other prelates at, ii. 229 ; siege of, ii. 232 ; afflicted with pestilence and famine, ii. 234 ; the key of Egypt, ii. 235 ; capture of, ii. 237 ; iii. 310 ; state of the city, ii. 238 ; three sieges of, on record, *ib.* ; division of the spoils, *ib.* ; the chief mosque dedicated to the Virgin, *ib.* ; capture of, by Louis IX., iii. 59, 244 ; the French forces at, attack the enemy, iii. 74 ; a garrison left in, by Louis, iii. 81 ; surrendered to the Saracens, iii. 84, 246, 315 ; twice captured and twice lost, iii. 89, 112 ; the Pisans and Genoese had been expelled from, by the French, iii. 105, 310 ; razed by the Soldan, iii. 112, 321.

Danecastre, *an error for* Lancastre, ii. 510.

Danegeld, abolished by Stephen, i. 252 ; iii. 166.

Danes, slaughter of their chiefs in England, iii. 159 ; fresh invasions of, and conflicts, *ib.*, 160 ; return home, *ib.* ; money paid to, for peace, *ib.* ; treaty of Æthelred with, *ib.* ; put to death many holy men, iii. 161 ; peace again made by Æthelred, *ib.* ; come to England, and join Eadgar Etheling against William I., i. 12 ; are defeated, *ib.* ; another force arrives, i. 20 ; they sail to Flanders, and extort booty, *ib.* ; fleet of, arrives at Acre, to aid the Christians, i. 454. *See* Denmark.

Dangu (*Dango*), castle of, taken by Philip II., ii. 63.

Danube, river of, destruction caused by its overflow, ii. 53.

Dareines, shield of arms of, ii. 433.

Dartford (*Derteforde*), town of, the barons march to, on their way to Rochester, ii. 165 ; the empress Isabel and her suite journey from, ii. 379.

Dartmouth (*Dertemue*), some transports with crusaders, sail from, i. 461.

Darum [*Daroun*], castle of, captured by Richard I., ii. 29 ; iii. 211.

Daventre, priory of, ruled by Joibert, ii. 66.

David I., king of Scotland, son of Malcolm III. and Margaret, i. 9 ; comes to visit his sister, queen Maud, i. 201 ; remonstrates with her for kissing the feet of some lepers, *ib.* ; succeeds to the throne, i. 235 ; iii. 184 ; captures Carlisle and Newcastle, i. 253 ; makes peace with Stephen, and retains Newcastle, *ib.* ; had sworn fealty to the empress, and did not do homage [does homage, iii. 186] to Stephen, i. 254 ; his son does homage, *ib.*, iii. 186 ; invades Northumberland,

David I., king of Scotland—*cont.*
i. 257 ; iii. 187 ; cruelties committed by his army, *ib.* ; compelled to retreat, *ib.* ; again invades Northumberland, i. 258 ; opposed by the Northern barons at Alverton, *ib.* ; defeated at the battle of "the Standard," i. 259 ; iii. 187 ; makes terms with Stephen, i. 261 ; his son Henry given as a hostage, *ib.* ; iii. 187 ; assists the empress at the siege of Winchester castle, i. 267 ; knights duke Henry, son of Geoffrey Plantagenet, i. 285 ; iii. 190 ; dies, i. 293.

David, brother of William [the Lion,] of Scotland, and father of John, earl of Chester, by [Matilda,] sister of earl Ranulph, ii. 349.

David, prince of North Wales, legitimate son of Llewellyn, by the sister of Henry III., at enmity with his illegitimate brother Griffin, ii. 430, 431 ; iii. 280 ; captures Griffin by treachery, and sends him to Henry, ii. 431, 453, 482, 483 ; iii. 283, 289 ; hated, on account of his treachery, and as excommunicate, ii. 453 ; offers to hold Wales of the pope, ii. 482, 483 *n.* ; heads the Welsh in rebellion, but is defeated, ii. 487, 488 ; harasses the English forces, ii. 500 ; iii. 293 ; dies, iii. 14.

Deacon, story of one born at Coventry, who apostatized, ii. 254.

Dead Sea, situated to the east of Jerusalem, i. 159.

Decretals, an abridgment of the, published by Gregory IX., ii. 381.

Deerhurst, near Gloucester, the manor of, purchased by earl Richard of Cornwall from the abbat of St. Denis, iii. 75.

Demetia, the name of South Wales, i. 322.

Demetrius, St., aids the Christian army against Corbaran, i. 125.

Denis, St., privilege conceded to him by pope Clement, that the French clergy might elect their own pope, ii. 471 ; iii. 287.

Denis, St., abbats of:
[Hugh V.], one of the sureties of Louis VII., ii. 57 ; his possessions seized by Richard I., *ib.*

Denis, St., abbats of :—*cont.*
[William III.], Richard of Cornwall purchases the manor of Deerhurst from, iii. 75.

Denmark, the king of, seen to be drowned by Edward the Confessor in a vision, iii. 167.

Denmark, kings of. *See* Hardecnut ; Sweyn; Waldemar.

Depinge, town of, plundered by the earl of Albemarle, ii. 243.

Derham, Elyas de, canon of Salisbury, joint artist of the shrine of St. Thomas at Canterbury, ii. 242.

Desiderius, abbat of Monte Cassino. *See* Victor III., pope.

Despenser, Geoffrey, special councillor of Henry III., his death ; iii. 111, 321.

Devon, county or earldom of, given by Richard I. to prince John, ii. 13 *n.*

Devon, Baldwin de Rivers, earl of, knighted, and invested with the earldom, ii. 428 ; iii. 280 ; had married Amicia, daughter of Isabel, countess of Gloucester, *ib.* ; dies, ii. 509 ; iii. 296 ; his shield of arms, *ib.* *See* Rivers.

Devises, Divises, castle of, Robert duke of Normandy imprisoned at, i. 206 ; surrendered to Stephen by the bishop of Salisbury, i. 262; garrisoned by John, ii. 181 ; Hubert de Burgh a prisoner there, i. 351, 359, 360 ; iii. 267, 268 ; he takes refuge in the church of, *ib.* ; the castellans of, excommunicated by the bishop of Salisbury, i. 360.

Die, Hysoard, count of, takes the cross, i. 57 ; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Diencourt, castle of, captured by Louis VII., i. 377.

Dieppe, town of, granted by Richard I. to the archbishop of Rouen, ii. 62.

Dina, daughter of Jacob, violated by Sichem, i. 159.

Dionysius [Exiguus], correction of his cycle, i. 26 ; iii. 172.

Diospolis. *See* Lydda.

Diva, William de, a knight of the household of the bishop of Lincoln, killed at the siege of the city, ii. 226.

Dol, in Brittany, castle of, besieged by William I., i. 20; the young king's forces defeated at, i. 382.

Doldequin, [Toghteghin?] Soldan of Damascus, an ally of Borsequin, i. 235. *See* Damascus.

Domedaet, Domedart, Walter de, a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Domesday Book, compilation of, and name, i. 27; iii. 172.

Damfront (*Danfronte*), castle of, fortified by Henry I., i. 232.

Dominic, St., founder of the Order of Friars Preachers, canonized, ii. 396.

Dominicans. *See* Friars Preachers.

Donald (*Duvenal*), brother of Malcolm III., elected king of Scotland, i. 43; iii. 174; driven out by his nephew Duncan, *ib.*

Dorchester, the see of. *See* Lincoln.

Dorchester, bishops of:

—— Ædric, his death, iii. 164.

—— Ædnoth, Eadnoth, succeeds, iii. 164; dies, iii. 166.

—— Ulf, chaplain of Edward Confessor, succeeds, iii. 166.

Dorset, county or earldom of, given by Richard I. to prince John, ii. 13.

Dorylæum. *See* Gorgoni.

Douay, Peter of. *See* Cambray.

Doure, [Dover,] Richard de, dies *s.p.m.*, ii. 510.

Dover, Henry II. embarks at, to meet Louis VII., i. 410; iii. 203; Richard I. embarks from, ii. 14; Geoffrey, archbishop of York, lands at, ii. 22; the chancellor [William, bishop of Ely,] seized there, ii. 28; John lands at, ii. 88; two Templars come to John there, ii. 134; charter conceded at, by John, ii. 135; the proscribed prelates land at, ii. 140; the French ships captured by Hubert de Burgh, brought to, ii. 220; foreign mercenaries land at, ii. 357; the bishop of Carlisle prevented embarking at, ii. 358; Alienor of Provence lands at, ii. 386; earl Richard of Cornwall embarks from, ii. 437; Thomas, count of Flanders, lands at, ii. 493; the nuncio Martin conducted to, ii. 504.

Dover, castle of, the chief valve of Eng- i. 49; surrendered to the queen of Stephen, i. 258; committed to the custody of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 179; the key and bolt of England against foreigners, *ib.* 218; iii. 238; besieged by prince Louis, ii. 183; iii. 235; fruitless attempt of Louis for its surrender, ii. 197; iii. 238, 265; the siege raised, ii. 199; iii. 238; sally of the garrison, *ib.*

Dover castle, constables of:

—— Matthew de Clere. *See* Clere.

—— [?], promises made to him by the nuncio Martin, ii. 504.

Dover, priory of St. Martin of, Geoffrey, archbishop of York, lodges at, ii. 22.

Dreux (*Druis*), Robert de, count of, his son taken prisoner by John, ii. 149.

Dreux, [John,] count of, assumes the cross, ii. 508; iii. 296.

Dromund, a large Saracen ship so called, sunk at Lisbon, i. 429; captured by Richard I., ii. 23.

Drought, long continued, ii. 459; iii. 123, 322, 345.

Dublin, John receives homage of the "Reguli" at, ii. 122.

Dublin, archbishops of:

—— [John Comyn], present at the coronation of Richard I., ii. 6.

—— Henry, present at John's concession of the Great Charter, ii. 159.

—— Luke, formerly chaplain to Hubert de Burgh, obtains Hubert's respite, ii. 347.

Dunbar, earl of. *See* Patricius.

Duncan, son of Malcolm III. of Scotland, hostage in the court of William II., i. 43; drives out the usurper Donald, and succeeds to the throne, *ib.*

Dunster (*Dunestor*), castle of, held against Stephen by William de Moiun, i. 258.

Dunstable (*Dunestaplia*), Henry I. keeps Christmas at, i. 231; the traders of, come to market at St. Alban's, i. 402; meeting at, of archbishop Stephen and his suffragans, ii. 147; the army of prince Louis comes to, ii. 208; pleas held at, by the justices itinerant, ii. 263; iii. 249.

Dunton, Duvinton [Dunnington, co. Leicester ?], castle of, belonged to John de Lascy, ii. 171; razed by king John, *ib.*

Dunwich (*Dunewicum*), town of, compelled to pay ransom by the barons, ii. 184.

Durand, knight Templar, sent to John, to reconcile him with the church, ii. 124.

Durazzo (*Durachium*), some Crusaders propose to land at, i. 68; Hugh the Great captured there, i. 69; arrival of Raimund of Toulouse at, i. 72; metropolis of Epirus Prima, i. 211; besieged by Boamund of Antioch, *ib.*

Durham, see of, taken by Henry III. into his hands, during vacancy, iii. 44, 305.

Durham, bishops of:

—— Ædmund, dies, iii, 166.

—— Eadred, succeeds, iii. 166.

—— Ægelric or Eilric, resigns, and takes the monastic habit, iii. 167; accused of treason, i. 11; seized at Peterborough, and imprisoned at Westminster, *ib.*; iii. 170; dies, and is buried at Westminster, i. 17; iii. 171.

—— Ægelwine, brother of Ægelric, succeeds, i. 12; is exiled, *ib.*; excommunicates the invaders of the church, i. 13; iii. 170; retreats to the isle of Ely, i. 14.

—— Walcher, purchases the county of Northumberland, i. 21; oppresses the people, *ib.*; slain by them, i. 22; iii. 171.

—— William, made justiciary by William I., i. 174; rebels against William II., in favour of Robert, iii. 174.

—— Ranulph [Flambard], succeeds, i. 168; iii. 177; was the agent of William II. to exact money, i. 182; his bad character, *ib.*; imprisoned by Henry I., *ib.*; escapes to Normandy, and excites Robert against his brother, *ib.*; at the consecration of the archbishop of York, iii. 210; and at the dedication of St. Alban's, ii. 220; iii. 181; dies, ii. 242; iii. 185.

—— Geoffrey, chancellor, succeeds, i. 247; iii. 186.

Durham, bishops of:—*cont.*

—— William de S. Barbara, dean of York, succeeds, i. 276; iii. 189; dies, i. 292; iii. 191.

—— Hugh de Pusat, Pusatz, or Pusaz, nephew of king Stephen, consecrated by pope Anastasius at Rome, i. 291; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318; at the council of Tours, i. 321; dedicates the chapel of St. Cuthbert, at St. Alban's, i. 369; buys the vill of Seggesfeld and the wapentake, also the county of Northumberland for his life, ii. 11; takes the title of earl, *ib.*; iii. 209; pays 1,000 marks to be made justiciary of England, and be exempt from the crusade, *ib.*; obtains the papal license to remain, *ib.*; prophecy of St. Godric fulfilled at his death, ii. 12.

—— Philip of Poitiers, consecrated, ii. 58; sent to Rome to defend the king's cause against the archbishop of Rouen, ii. 61; dies, ii. 114; iii. 224.

—— Richard de Marisco, consecrated, ii. 231; quarrels with his monks, ii. 245; iii. 245; his cruel conduct, *ib.*; complaints of him to the pope, ii. 246; goes to Rome, and gains the suit by bribery, *ib.*; his church impoverished by him, *ib.*; iii. 260; dies at Peterborough, ii. 286; buried in the chapter house, Durham, *ib.*; his epitaph, ii. 253.

—— William Scot, archdeacon of Worcester, elected, but rejected by the king, ii. 286; iii. 254; appeal made to the pope, *ib.*; annulled, ii. 300.

—— Richard II., Poore, bishop of Salisbury, translated to, ii. 300; ordered to excommunicate the authors of the riots against the Italian clergy, ii. 340; his death and good works, ii. 396; iii. 274; relieved the church of Durham from debt, *ib.*; iii. 260; removed the church of Salisbury to a fitter place, ii. 397; founded the nunnery of Tarent, *ib.*; ruled three episcopal churches, *ib.*; iii. 274.

Durham, bishops of:—*cont.*
—— Thomas, prior of Durham, elected, ii. 439; resigns, *ib.*
—— Nicholas de Fernham, elected, ii. 445; iii. 282; consecrated, ii. 450; iii. 283; his composition with St. Alban's, touching the visitation of Tynemouth, iii. 22, 299; resigns, iii. 40, 305; three manors assigned to him for sustenance, iii. 44, 306, 321; restores the money extorted by Henry III. from the see, iii. 305; money belonging to him seized by the king, iii. 347; his testimony alleged, in reference to Nicholas de Thurnay, ii. 90.
—— Walter de Kirkeham, dean of York, elected and accepted, iii. 44, 60, 305; consecrated, iii. 61, 306, 310; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; takes charge of the body of Walter, archbishop of York, iii. 345.

Durham, church of, dispute of the monks with their bishop, concerning their liberties, ii. 245; relieved from its debts, ii. 396; iii. 260; suit at Rome, as to the election of bishop, ii. 286, 439; refuse to elect the king's nominees, *ib.*; iii. 281.

Durham, William of, archbishop elect of Rouen. *See* Rouen.

Duvenal. *See* Donald.

Dyes, statute made, relative to the making of, ii. 65.

E.

Eadric, surnamed Streone (*Stroine*), made duke of Mercia, iii. 160; murders duke Æthelstan [*a mistake for* Ælfhelm], *ib.*; his two sons blinded, *ib.*; advises Cnut to put some Danish chiefs to death, iii. 161.

Eadgar, son of Eadmund, i. 301; his charter to Ramsey abbey, iii. 119.

Eadgar Etheling, son of Edward, and great-nephew of Edward the Confessor, born in Hungary, i. 9; recalled to England by Edward as his heir, iii. 167; driven by a storm to Scotland, with his mother and sisters, i. 9; iii. 169; joins the Danes, and occupies York, i. 12; submits to William I., and does fealty, *ib.*; iii. 170; flies to Scotland, iii. 14; goes to William in Normandy, and is pensioned, *ib.*

Eadmund. *See* Edmund.

Eadward. *See* Edward.

Eadwin, earl [of Mercia], brother of earl Morcar, flies from the tyranny of William I., i. 9.

Earthquakes, in England, i. 22, 26, 247, 338, 434; iii. 20, 42, 87, 90, 97, 206, 299, 305, 314, 315, 317, 319; in Syria, i. 218; in Lombardy and the East, i. 222; iii. 182; in Savoy, iii. 38, 90, 304, in Rome, iii. 181; said to predict deaths of great persons, iii. 314.

East-Anglia, earls of. *See* Bigod, Hugh; Ralph.

Easter-day, fell on 25th April 1204 (*ultimum Pascha*), ii. 103; the time of its proper occurrence in 1238 [1239?], ii. 416; iii. 278; first fell on 27th March 1250 in a quinquagenary year, iii. 97, 278, 319.

Ebron, also called Cariatarbe, to the south of Jerusalem, i. 159; the bishop of, suffragan to the patriarch of Jerusalem, i. 162; the burial place of Adam and Eve, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, *ib.*

Eclipses of the moon (1114), i. 219; (1135), i. 249; (1204), ii. 102; (1207), ii. 113; (1218), ii. 227; (1230), ii. 329; iii. 262; (1248), iii. 38; (1255), iii. 346; interpreted differently by the Christians and Saracens, ii. 227.

Eclipses of the sun (1140), i. 266; iii. 188; (1178), i. 401; (1181), i. 423; iii. 204; (1191), ii. 23; (1207), ii. 113; (1230), ii. 324; iii. 262; (1239), ii. 421; iii. 279; (1241), i. 457; twice in three years, iii. 90.

Edenham [Tenham (?)], the crops of, carried off by the earl of Albemarle, ii. 243.

Edessa, city of Mesopotamia, submits to Baldwin, i. 88, 89; called also Rages, i. 89; besieged by Corbaran, i. 106; placed under the temporary rule of Tancred, i. 200; captured by Sanguinius, i. 272; converted by the preaching of Thadæus, *ib.*; bodies of saints buried at, *ib.*; acts of king Abgarus preserved there, *ib.*; often taken and re-taken by the Christians and Saracens, *ib.* *See* Roasia.

Edessa, counts of. *See* Baldwin I.; Baldwin de Bourg; Curtenai, Jocelin de.

Edgar, son of Malcolm III., becomes king of Scotland, i. 9; dies, i. 208.

Edith, daughter of earl Godwin, married to Edward the Confessor, iii. 165; her death and burial, i. 20; iii. 171.

Edmund, St., [king of East-Anglia,] causes the death of Sweyn, iii. 160, 161; reverence paid to his tomb by Cnut, iii. 162.

Edmund, son of Edward the Elder, i. 302.

Edmund, surnamed Ireneside, son of Æthelred, i. 301; succeeds to the throne, iii. 161; fights seven battles with Cnut, and in single combat, iii. 163; killed by treachery, *ib.*; his sons exiled by Cnut, *ib.*

Edmund, son of Henry III., his birth, ii. 499; iii. 293; the kingdom of Sicily and Apulia offered to, iii. 338.

Edmund, son of Richard earl of Cornwall, born, iii. 68, 311; baptized by archbishop Boniface, *ib.*

Edmund, St., archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.

Edward the Elder, son of Alfred, i. 302; his laws ordered to be observed, iii. 162.

Edward the Confessor, St., son of Æthelred and Emma, succeeds, iii. 165; marries Edith, daughter of earl Godwin, *ib.*; collects a fleet against the Danes, *ib.*; abolishes Danegeld, iii. 166; legends concerning, iii. 167; gives the earldom of Northumberland to Tosti, *ib.*; exiles earl Algar, *ib.*; recalls Eadgar Etheling from Hungary, *ib.*; the Welsh king does fealty to, iii. 169; dies, *ib.*; his laws promised to be observed, by William II., by Henry I., and by John, i. 35, 176; ii. 140; some of these laws were in the charter of Henry I., ii. 153; confers the bishopric of Worcester on Wulstan, i. 53; his body translated to a shrine of gold by archbishop Thomas, i. 320; another shrine made for his remains by Henry III., ii. 455, 506 *n.*; iii. 94, 284, 295; his anniversary observed by Henry, ii. 445; the death of Waldemar, king of Denmark, ascribed to, ii. 447; charter to Ramsey abbey granted by, iii. 119; report that Harold was sent by him to bring over William of Normandy, iii. 168.

Edward, or Eadward, son of Edmund Ironside, i. 301; his genealogy up to Noah, *ib.*

Edward, eldest son of Henry III., born at Westminster, ii. 422; prayers for, previous to his birth, *ib.*; iii. 293; baptized by the legate Otho, and confirmed by archbishop Edmund, *ib.*; iii. 279; Alienor of Castille asked in marriage for, iii. 145, 329; Gascony given to, iii. 322; committed to the charge of earl Richard of Cornwall and the queen, iii. 328; sent for by king Henry, iii. 331; a ship got ready for, by the people of Yarmouth, iii. 335; joins his father abroad, *ib.*; marries Alienor at Burgos, iii. 336; knighted by Alfonso X., *ib.*; grant of Gascony, Ireland, and Wales to, *ib.*

Edward, councillor of Henry III., takes the cross, iii. 71.

Egelawe, plain of, in the west of England, where the battle between Stephen and duke Henry was about to take place, i. 301.

Egypt, chosen as the battle ground of the Christians, by advice of Innocent III., ii. 227.

Egypt and Damascus, [Mostali,] Soldan of, his deputy at Gibel bribes the count of Toulouse, i. 135; sends an army under Elafdal to Syria, i. 151; iii. 177.

Egypt, [Abul-Manzor-Amer ?] caliph of, sends forces against Baldwin I., i. 195.

Elafdal [Afdhal], emir of the Soldan, i. 151; an Armenian by birth, and apostate, previously named Emyreius, *ib.*; leads an army to Ascalon, *ib.*; defeated by duke Godfrey, and himself wounded, i. 154, 155; his lamentation, i. 154; escapes on a dromedary, i. 155; his standard purchased by Robert of Normandy, and offered at the Holy Sepulchre, *ib.*

Elephant, sent by the Soldan as a present to Frederic II., ii. 314; one given to Henry III. by Louis IX., iii. 344; the first seen in England, *ib.*

Eleucheria [Eleutherus], river of, crossed by the crusaders, i. 137.

Elisabeth, St., daughter of [Andrew II.,] king of Hungary, and wife of the landgrave of Thuringia, her life and miracles, ii. 233; her mother's death, *ib.*; illustrious in Germany by her miracles, ii. 444; iii. 93, 318.

Elisha (*Helisæus*), the prophet, resided at Galgala, i. 159; buried at Sebaste, *ib.*, 163.

Ellington (*Elintona*), bravery of the parson of, against Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 204; he is brought to the legate Walo, *ib.*

Elmham (*Helmham*), Alfric, bishop of, dies, iii. 165; succeeded by Stigand, *ib.*, i. 13. *See* Stigand.

Elms, the (*Ulmetum*), at Smithfield. *See* London.

[Elnoth], provost of Ramsey, punished on account of St. Ivo, iii. 159.

Ely, isle of, the English nobles retreat to, i. 15; subdued by William I., *ib.*, iii. 170; earthquake at, i. 338; devastated by the forces of the earl of Salisbury, ii. 173; the fair at, suppressed, iii. 303.

Ely, Richard, abbat of, degraded by archbishop Anselm, i. 191; reinstated, i. 192.

Ely, church of, created into an episcopal see, i. 210; iii. 180; the county of Cambridge assigned to, *ib.*; saved from being burnt, by payment of money, ii. 173; dedication of, iii. 124, 322; restored, and presbytery built, iii. 125, 322, 337.

Ely, bishops of:

—— Hervey, bishop of Bangor, appointed, i. 210; dies, i. 247; iii. 180.

—— Nigel, succeeds, i. 247; exiled, on account of relationship to the bishop of Salisbury, i. 264; iii. 186.

—— Geoffrey [Ridel], archdeacon of Canterbury, elected, i. 375; consecrated, i. 390; dies intestate, and his property confiscated, ii. 6; iii. 208.

—— William de Longchamp, elected, ii. 10; appointed legate in England, ii. 15; iii. 209; holds a council at Westminster, ii. 18; when justiciary, causes the Tower of London to be surrounded by a fosse, ii. 19; iii. 210; his great pride, *ib.*; orders the sheriff of Kent to arrest the archbishop of York, ii. 22; consecrates Robert bishop of Worcester, ii. 27; complaints against him as chancellor, *ib.*; flies to Dover, disguised in a woman's dress, ii. 28; iii. 211; imprisoned, and surrenders his castles, *ib.*; by his mediation, Richard I. is cited before the emperor, ii. 42; brings to England the agreement for Richard's ransom, ii. 44; returns home with Richard, ii. 47; sent to Rome, to plead the king's suit against the archbishop of Rouen, ii. 61; dies at Poitiers, *ib.*

—— Eustace, dean of Salisbury, consecrated, ii. 68; iii. 217; ordered by the pope to threaten John with an interdict, ii. 115; leaves England, ii. 116; goes to Rome, to complain of John, ii. 130; returns to France, and assists in pronouncing the sentence of John's deposition, ii. 132; comes back to England, ii. 139; bestows his benediction on William, abbat of St. Alban's, ii. 154; is one of John's sureties, to satisfy the barons, ii. 155; dies, *ib.*; iii. 231.

—— John, abbat of Fountains, consecrated, ii. 241; iii. 245; dies, ii. 271.

Ely, bishops of :—*cont.*

—— Geoffrey de Burgh, archdeacon of Norwich, appointed, ii. 271 ; owes his promotion to his brother Hubert, *ib.* ; iii. 255 ; his death and burial, ii. 305 ; iii. 258.

—— Hugh [Northwold], abbat of St. Edmund's, elected, ii. 305 ; iii. 258 ; retained his monastic habit, *ib.* ; consecrated at Coventry, ii. 318 ; sent by Henry III. to ask Alienor of Provence in marriage, ii. 385 ; builds the presbytery of his church, iii. 125, 322, 337 ; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137 ; injury sustained by, in the suppression of the fair at Ely, iii. 303 ; his death and burial, iii. 337 ; called the "Flos Nigrorum Monachorum," *ib.*

—— William de Kilkenny, vice-chancellor, elected, and accepted by the king, iii. 340, 343 ; consecrated at Belley, iii. 347 ; money belonging to him taken by Henry III., *ib.*

Ely, Richard Fitz-Nigel, archdeacon of. *See* London, bishops of.

Elyas [Elijah], prophet, resided at Sarepta, i. 136.

Elyopolis, the same as Lydda, [*a mistake*], i. 137. *See* Lydda.

Emaus, castle of, between Jerusalem and the sea, i. 158. *See* Nicopolis.

Emaus, on the coast of Syria, [Ain-Mahûs, between Byblus and Beyrout], i. 136.

Emedelisius, an apostate spy, beheaded by Corbaran, i. 119.

Emeford, William de, imprisoned in Corf castle, ii. 166.

Emico, count, causes the massacre of the Jews in Germany, i. 67 ; flies to his country, i. 68.

Emissa [Hems], forces collected from, in aid of Antioch, i. 98.

Emma, daughter of duke Richard of Normandy, marries Æthelred, iii. 159 ; remarried to Cnut, iii. 161 ; obtains the endowment of the Old Minster at Winchester, iii. 162 ; exiled by Harold, iii. 164 ; her son Hardecnut joins her at Bruges in Flanders, *ib.* ; dies, iii. 166.

Emyfer, a Christian armourer and notary, betrays the city of Antioch to Boamund, i. 104–108 ; his exultation at the defeat of Corbaran, i. 127.

Emyreius. *See* Elafdal.

Eneas, cured of paralysis by St. Peter, i. 158.

England and English, reduced to slavery by William I., i. 8 ; shave their heads and hair, in imitation of the Normans, i. 11 ; usage to suspend arms to the walls for defence, i. 14 ; repent not having opposed the Normans, i. 15 ; oppressed, and their lands given to foreigners, i. 22 ; territorial survey made, by order of William, i. 27 ; servile state under the Normans, i. 28 ; introduction of bad customs, taxes, and oaths, i. 29 ; iii. 173 ; no great person allowed to quit the country, without the king's leave, i. 49 ; grievously oppressed by William II., i. 173, 175 ; miserable condition of, under Stephen, i, 264, 270 ; state of, during the interdict, ii. 116 ; iii. 224 ; fowling and fishing prohibited in, ii. 117 ; iii. 224 ; made tributary to the pope, ii. 135, 136, 146 ; iii. 316 ; specially belonged to the Roman church, ii. 161 ; never was the patrimony of St. Peter, ii. 176 ; the English skilled in naval warfare, ii. 220 ; impoverished by the papal exactions, ii. 292 ; iii. 321 ; the tribute imposed by John protested against, ii. 507 ; hatred between the English and foreigners, iii. 116 ; trodden under foot by strangers, iii. 130.

Ennon [Hinnon or Ge-hennon], valley of, to the south of Jerusalem, i. 161.

Ensius, king of Sardinia, natural son of the emperor Frederic II., receives Sardinia from his father, ii. 418 ; iii. 279 ; captures the prelates going by sea to the General Council, ii. 450 ; iii. 283 ; captures some soldiers of the Parmese, iii.

Ensius, king of Sardinia—*cont.* 54 ; defeated and taken prisoner by the Bolognese, ii. 56, 309 ; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Epernon (*Sparnum*), Henry I. stops at, i. 241.

Ephraim, tribe of, to the north of Jerusalem, i. 159.

Epirus, devastated by Boamund I., i. 211.

Epte (*Eethe*), the river, Philip II. falls into, ii. 72 ; the limit of the Vexin, ii. 82.

Eraclius, the emperor, his example imitated by Louis IX., ii. 446 ; and by Henry III., iii. 302.

Eric VI., king of Denmark, [*named incorrectly* Henry,] son of Waldemar II., contests the throne with his brother, ii. 447 ; his death, iii. 65.

Erkenwald, St., translation of, i. 285 ; iii. 190.

Esexe, Henry de, accused of treason, and convicted by trial of duel, i. 320 ; iii. 195 ; allowed to take the monastic habit at Reading, i. 321 ; carried the cross in procession there, *ib.* ; accused of having thrown down the king's standard in battle, *ib.*

Espec, Walter, one of the leaders at the battle of Alverton, i. 256.

Essex, county of, subdued for prince Louis, ii. 181 ; ravaged by him, ii. 182 ; writs to the sheriffs of, to watch Hubert de Burgh, ii. 348 ; writs of Henry III. to the abbats and priors of, for a loan, iii. 44.

[Essex], Geoffrey de Mandeville, earl of, fortifies the Tower of London, i. 268 ; taken prisoner [*named incorrectly* William] at St. Alban's, i. 270 ; iii. 188 ; gives up the Tower of London and castles of Walden and Plessy, i. 271 ; iii. 188 ; expels the monks from Ramsey, and plunders the adjoining churches, *ib.* ; punished with insanity by the patron saints of Ramsey, i. 271 *n.* ; killed by an arrow, i. 274 ; his chief commanders perish, *ib.*

[Essex], William de Mandeville, earl of, [son of Geoffrey,] goes to Jerusalem, i. 399 ; death of, ii. 12 ; iii. 209.

[Essex], Geoffrey de Mandeville [Fitz-Piers], earl of, killed in a tournament at London, ii. 175 ; iii. 234 ; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Essex, William de Mandeville [Fitz-Piers], earl of, helps to subdue Essex and Suffolk for prince Louis, ii. 181 ; dies, ii. 292, 510 ; his shield of arms, *ib.*, 292. *See* Mandeville.

Essex, Henry de Boun, earl of Hereford and. *See* Hereford.

Essington (*Esendone*, *Esintona*), manor of, assigned to Nicholas, bishop of Durham, iii. 44, 306, 321.

Estan, father of bishop Wulstan, i. 53.

Esturmy, Geoffrey, knight, slain by the Welsh, ii. 507.

Etampes (*Estampeia*), ironical speech of Philip II. relative to, ii. 83, 109.

Etrepagni (*Stirpinieum*), castle of, burnt by duke Henry, i. 290.

Eu (*Aucum*, *Augum*), castle of, Philip I. asked to besiege, i. 45 ; Baldwin of Flanders wounded at, i. 228 ; besieged by William of Flanders [*a mistake for* Alost], i. 242 ; delivered up to Richard I., ii. 63 ; town of, taken by Philip II., ii. 92.

Eu (*de Auco*), William, count of, deprived of his sight, i. 48.

[Eudo Dapifer], seneschal of Henry I., founds the abbey of Colchester, i. 400.

Eudo [de Stella], his heresy condemned in the council at Rheims, i. 279.

Eugenius III., pope, succeeds, i. 273 ; iii. 189 ; consecrates the archbishop of Bourges at Paris, i. 277 ; received solemnly at St. Geneviève, i. 278 ; his clerks beaten by the ministers of the church, *ib.* ; holds a council at Rheims, *ib.* ; dies, 292 ; iii. 192.

Euphrates, the river, Boamund and others advance beyond, i. 200.

Eusebius, bishop of Cæsarea, mentioned, *Prol.* i. 4 ; his Ecclesiastical History referred to, i. 272.

Eustace, St., his forbearance, iii. 240.

Eustace, son of king Stephen, does homage to Louis VII. for Normandy, i. 256; marries Constance, sister of Louis, i. 262; receives the homage of the nobles of Anjou [England?], i. 288; joins Louis against duke Henry, i. 289; iii. 190; dies when about to plunder the territory of St. Edmund, i. 293; buried at Feversham, *ib.*

Eustace the Monk, collects a fleet at Calais for prince Louis, ii. 178; iii. 235; placed under his guidance, to take to London, ii. 217; iii. 240; engagement at sea with the English, ii. 219; captured and put to death, ii. 220; iii. 241; of Flemish origin, and an apostate monk, *ib.*

Evesham, abbats of:

—— Thomas, his death, ii. 393.

—— Richard [le Gras], prior of Hurley, succeeds, ii. 393; keeper of the king's seal, and elected bishop of Coventry, ii. 469; dies at La Reole in Gascony, *ib.*

Evesham, vision seen by a monk of, ii. 60; iii. 216; the written account of, preserved there, and at St. Alban's, *ib.*

Evreux (*Ebroicæ*), taken by Philip II. and delivered to prince John, ii. 45, 85; given by John to prince Louis, with his niece in marriage, ii. 84, 85.

Evreux, Simon, earl of. *See* Montfort.

Exchequer, rolls of, referred to, ii. 8; iii. 4, 305; removed from Westminster to Northampton, ii. 118; suspended, ii. 156; iii. 232.

Excommunication, sentence of, pronounced against the transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137.

Exempt abbats, protected against the bishops by the Friars Minors, iii. 19; hence the exempt monasteries become favourable to the Mendicant Orders, *ib.*

Exeter [*incorrectly called* Oxford], taken by William I., i. 10; and by Stephen, i. 254.

Exeter, bishops of:

—— William, consecrated, i. 208; dies, i. 255.

Exeter, bishops of:—*cont.*

—— Robert, his death, i. 302.

—— Robert [Warlewast], dean of Salisbury, succeeds, i. 302.

—— Bartholomew, consecrated, i. 312; vision seen by, *ib.*; endows a priest, to say masses for Levenoth, i. 314; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318; suspended by the pope, i. 357; says mass and preaches on the reconciliation of the church of Canterbury, i. 371.

—— John, precentor of Exeter, consecrated, i. 437.

—— Henry Mareschal, brother of William Mareschal the elder, appointed, ii. 51; dies, ii. 107.

—— Simon de Apulia, dean of York, succeeds, ii. 107, 152; dies, ii. 260; iii. 247.

—— Henry, archdeacon of Stafford, elected, ii. 123.

—— William Briwere, nephew of William Briwere, consecrated, ii. 267; iii. 250; goes to the Holy Land, ii. 297, 409; iii. 277; at Acre, when Frederic II. landed, ii. 304; the empress Isabel placed under his joint charge, ii. 379; dies, ii. 498; iii. 293.

—— Richard, chancellor of Exeter, consecrated at Reading, ii. 508; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137.

Exeter, Robert de Maldon, archdeacon of. *See* Hereford, bishops of.

Eye, castellany of, possessed by archbishop Thomas, i. 329.

Ezechias, the prophet, Henry II. compared to, i. 385.

F.

Fær, or Farfar, name of the river Orontes, i. 90, 128.

Faie, Ralph de, uncle of queen Alienor turns the young king's heart against his father, i. 371.

Falaise (*Falesia*), castle of, fortified by Henry I., i. 232 ; surrendered to Theobald IV. of Blois, i. 255 ; besieged by Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 261 ; given up to him, i. 267 ; William, king of Scots, kept a prisoner at, i. 392 ; iii. 202 ; Arthur of Britanny imprisoned there, ii. 94 ; iii. 221 ; his interview with John at, ii. 95.

Famine and mortality in England, i. 44 ; iii. 160.

Far, the *Faro* or Strait of Messina, passed by Richard I., ii. 17.

Faringdon, castle of, taken by Stephen, i. 275.

Farnham (*Fernham*), Eustace of Lynn imprisoned at, i. 128.

Fécamp (*Fiscamus*), Cecily, daughter of William I., a nun at, i. 20 ; iii. 171.

Ferdinand III., [*named incorrectly* Alfonso,] king of Castille, or Spain, aids in the capture of Majorca, ii. 374 ; iii. 271 ; takes Cordova, ii. 384 ; conquers great part of Spain, ii. 390 ; iii. 273, 317 ; captures Seville, iii. 38, 304 ; Gascony freed from his claim, iii. 317 ; assumes the cross, iii. 95 ; his shield of arms, *ib.* ; dies, iii. 122, 322 ; had promised aid to Louis IX., *ib.*

Ferentino, John of, sent as legate to England, ii. 107 ; iii. 223 ; collects much money, and holds a council at Reading, *ib.* ; returns to Rome, ii. 108.

Feria, Thomas de, joins the crusade, i. 66 ; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Fernant or Fergant, of Britanny, joins the crusade with Robert of Normandy, i. 76.

Ferrers (*de Ferrariis*), Robert, earl of, submits to Henry II., i. 389.

Ferrers, William I., earl of, [son of Robert,] dies at Acre, ii. 20.

Ferrers, William II., earl of, [son of the preceding,] at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195 ; at the siege of Mountsorel, ii. 206 ; one of the chiefs of the army at Newark, ii. 209 ; takes the part of earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 296 ; one of the sureties for Hubert de Burgh, ii. 351 ; added to the king's council, ii. 394 ; dies, very old, iii. 31, 302 ; death of his wife Margaret [*incorrectly called* Agnes], *ib.*

Ferrers, William III., earl of, [son of the last,] thrown out of a carriage at St. Neot's, and dies, iii. 333.

Ferte, La, (*Feritas*,) [en Braie ?] the castle of Hugh de Gournay, destroyed by duke Henry, i. 290.

Ferté - Bernard (*Feritas - Bernardi*), the castle of, burnt by duke Henry, i. 290 ; conferences there, between Philip and Henry II., i. 457, 458 ; taken by Philip, i. 459.

Feugères, Ralph de. *See* Fougères.

Feversham, abbey of, founded by Stephen, i. 291, 299 ; his queen Matilda and son Eustace buried in, i. 291, 293, 299 ; iii. 192 ; Stephen buried there, i. 299 ; visitation of, by archbishop Boniface, iii. 77.

Feversham, [Peter de Linstede,] abbat of, supplies Guy de Lusignan with horses, iii. 104.

Finchale, St. Godric the hermit lived at, i. 214.

Finchampstead (*Finchamstede*), in Berkshire, bloody spring at, i. 168.

Fishakele, Fissacre, Richard de, Friar Preacher, a famous theologian, his death, iii. 40, 305.

Fitz-Alan, William, held the castle of Shrewsbury against Stephen, i. 258.

Fitz-Count, Brian, [son of Robert, earl of Gloucester,] takes the part of the empress, i. 263 ; makes a special prison for William Martel at Wallingford, i. 268 ; the empress seeks his protection, i. 269.

Fitz-Elyas, Conan, his crops in Hoiland burnt by John, ii. 190.

Fitz-Gerald, Robert, a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Fitz-Geoffrey, John, added to the king's council, ii. 394 ; sent to the legate Otho, ii. 400 ; one of the envoys to the General Council at Lyons, ii. 502 ; iii. 295.

Fitz-Gervase, Hugh, enters Normandy hostilely, i. 233 ; taken prisoner, *ib.*

Fitz-Gilbert, Walter, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Fitz-Godfrey, Ralph, a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Fitz-Hamon, Robert, dream of a monk repeated by him to William Rufus, i. 169.

Fitz-Hamon, William, his death, iii. 31, 302.

Fitz-Herbert, Matthew, killed in Wales, ii. 500 ; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Fitz-John, Eustace, holds the castle of Milton against Stephen, i. 258.

Fitz-John, John, seneschal of earl Richard of Cornwall, his death, ii. 459.

Fitz-John, Roger. *See* Bailloil.

Fitz-Matthew, Herbert, killed in Wales, ii. 509 ; iii. 293.

Fitz-Nicholas, Ralph, seneschal of the king's household, the empress Isabel placed under his joint charge, ii. 379 ; removed from his office, ii. 389 ; envoy to the General Council at Lyons, ii. 502; iii. 295 ; takes the cross, iii. 71.

Fitz-Olaf, Constantine, citizen of London, heads a seditious tumult, in favour of prince Louis, ii. 251 ; iii. 246 ; seized and hung, ii. 252 ; offers ransom for his life, *ib.* ; complaints made on the subject by Louis, ii. 257 ; iii. 247 ; Hubert de Burgh accused of hanging him without trial, iii. 266.

Fitz-Osbert, William, surnamed "with the Beard," citizen of London, advocates the cause of the poor against taxation, ii. 57 ; takes refuge in the church of St. Mary of the Arches, *ib.* ; captured and hung, ii. 57 ; iii. 216 ; believed to have been a martyr, ii. 58 ; iii. 216 ; archbishop Hubert complained of, on his account, to the pope, ii. 69.

Fitz-Peter, Geoffrey, appointed by Richard I. an administrator of the kingdom, ii. 27 ; made justiciary, ii. 69 ; iii. 217 ; assembles forces, and leads them against the Welsh, ii. 70 ; iii. 217 ; by his advice the king has a new seal made, ii. 75 ; iii. 218 ; aids in causing the oath of fidelity to be taken to John, ii. 78 ; enforces a tax on the laity, ii. 99 ; iii. 228 ; has the joint charge of the kingdom in the king's absence, ii. 140 ; present at a council at St. Alban's, ii. 141 ; his death, ii. 144 ; iii. 228 ; John's jocose speech on the occasion, ii. 145.

Fitz-Piers, Geoffrey, earl of Essex. *See* Essex.

Fitz-Piers, William, earl of Essex. *See* Essex.

Fitz-Ralph, Humphrey, joins Boamund as a crusader, i. 71.

[Fitz-Ralph], William, seneschal of Normandy, his son made bishop of Worcester, ii. 27.

Fitz-Richard, Roger, succeeds Tancred, as prince of Antioch, conditionally, i. 216 ; summoned to the aid of Baldwin, i. 218 ; killed in a battle with the Turks, i. 229.

Fitz-Robert, John, a powerful baron in the north, his death, ii. 443 ; iii. 282.

Fitz-Roger, Richard, of Chilham, dies, ii. 510 *n.*

Fitz-Thurstan, Robert, takes the cross, i. 71.

Fitz-Urse, Reginald, one of the murderers of archbishop Thomas, i. 363, 364.

Fitz-Walter, Robert, surrenders the castle of Vaudreuil to Philip II., ii. 98 ; imprisoned at Compiegne, and pays ransom, *ib.* ; takes refuge in France, to avoid John, ii. 128 ; outlawed and his possessions confiscated, ii. 131 ; iii. 226 ; appointed by the barons their leader, ii. 156 ; his standard-bearer killed at Northampton, *ib.* ; marches to the aid of Rochester castle, but returns to London, ii. 165 ; spends his time in feasting, *ib.* ; helps to subdue Essex and Suffolk for prince Louis, ii. 181 ; claims the custody of Hertford castle, ii. 200 ; one of the leaders against the royalists, ii. 207 ; reconnoitres the king's forces before Lincoln, ii. 210 ; taken prisoner, ii. 212 ; iii. 240 ; joins the crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230 ; dies, very old, ii. 385 ; iii. 226, 272 ; his last directions to his wife [Rose], ii. 385.

Fitz-Warin, Fulk, sent to the nuncio Martin, to order him to leave the kingdom, ii. 503 ; iii. 294 ; could scarcely refrain from personal violence, *ib.*

Fitz-William, Adam, appointed an assessor of the tax in Hertfordshire, ii. 349.

Flai, Eustace, abbat of, a famous preacher in France, ii. 62; iii. 220; sent to England, to put down the practice of trading on Sundays, *ib.*; his success, ii. 86.

Flamstead (*Flamstude*), quarrel respecting the church of, between St. Edmund's and the earl of Gloucester, iii. 119.

Flanders, hostile incursion of duke Theodoric into, i. 242; success of John's forces there, ii. 150; mercenaries from, in the service of John, ii. 164, 181; spread of heretics in, ii. 388, 415; attacked by William of Holland, iii. 334. *See* Flemings.

Flanders, Baldwin V., count of, his daughter Matilda married to William I., i. 26.

Flanders, Robert II., count of, assumes the cross, i. 56; joins duke Robert of Normandy, i. 76; at the siege of Antioch, i. 81, 91; marches to Artasia, i. 89; assists in the defeat of the Turks, i. 92; leader of the second division against Corbaran, i. 120; arrives at Ramla, i. 137; at the siege of Jerusalem, and among the first to enter, i. 139, 145; returns home, i. 157.

Flanders, Baldwin VII., count of, swears to restore Normandy to William, son of duke Robert, i. 221; wounded at Eu, i. 228; dies, *ib.*

Flanders, Charles, count of, son of Cnut, king of Denmark, succeeds to Baldwin VII., i. 229; murdered at Bruges, i. 239.

Flanders, William, count of, nephew of Henry I., receives Flanders from Louis VI., i. 239; defeats count Theodoric of Germany, i. 242; killed at the siege of Eu [Alost], *ib.*

Flanders, Theobald, count of, assists Louis VII. to fortify the castle of Chaumont, i. 311.

Flanders, Philip, count of, returns home on account of his brother's death, the count of Boulogne, i. 377; swears to invade England, and subject it to the young king, i. 384; iii. 201; sends some troops in advance, *ib.*; who are allowed to depart, on oath not to return, i. 389; assists Louis VII. at the siege of Rouen, *ib.*; ceases from hostilities, i. 390; iii. 302; seeks counsel of Henry II., i. 397; goes to Jerusalem, i. 399; comes to England, and pays his vows to St. Thomas, i. 427; received honourably at St. Paul's, London, *ib.*; takes the cross, i. 446; present at the conference at Saumur, i. 462; dies, ii. 21, 26; iii. 211.

Flanders, Baldwin VIII., count of, does homage to Richard I., ii. 63; besieges the castle of Arras, ii. 64; retreats, on approach of Philip II., *ib.*; forces Philip to agree to terms, *ib.*

Flanders, Baldwin IX., count of, makes alliance with John, ii. 81; chosen emperor of Constantinople, ii. 102. *See* Baldwin I.

Flanders, Ferrand, count of, refuses to join Philip II. against John, ii. 137; applies to John for aid, ii. 138; one of the leaders of John's forces, ii. 150; taken prisoner at the battle of Bovines, ii. 151; iii. 91.

Flanders, [Jeanne,] daughter of Baldwin IX., and wife of Thomas, count of, causes an impostor to be hung, who asserted himself to be Baldwin IX., ii. 267; iii. 250; dies, ii. 498; iii. 293.

Flanders, Thomas [of Savoy], count of, uncle of the queen of Henry III., arrives in England, ii. 425; iii. 279; his reception in London, *ib.*; does homage to the king, and receives a pension, *ib.*; Simon the Norman refuses to seal a grant to him of a tax [on wool], ii. 440; summoned by Henry, to aid him against the king of Scots, ii. 489; iii. 290; arrives at Dover, with forces, ii. 493; iii. 290; comes to St. Alban's, *ib.* *See* Savoy.

Flanders, [Margaret,] countess of, assumes the cross, with her two sons [John and Baldwin], ii. 508; great battle fought with the French, on behalf of her sons, iii. 333; gains the victory by help of her German allies, *ib.*

Flemings, expelled by Henry II., as detestable people, i. 300 ; large force brought over by the earl of Leicester, i. 380 ; their vernacular songs, i. 381 ; defeated, and the greater part slain or drowned, *ib.*

Fontaines (*Fontes*), castle of, destroyed by Philip II., ii. 49.

Fontevraud (*Fons-Ebraudi*), Henry II. buried at, i. 465 ; Richard I. bequeaths his body to, ii. 77 ; iii. 218 ; [Isabel,] countess of La Marche, buried at, outside the church, iii. 298 ; her body transferred into the church by Henry III., iii. 341.

Ford, Baldwin, abbat of, made bishop of Worcester, i. 433. *See* Worcester.

Forests, severity of Henry I. concerning, relaxed by Stephen, i. 252 ; Stephen violates his oath respecting, i. 255 ; John orders all hedges and ditches to be levelled in, ii. 119 ; juries appointed to view, and disafforest such as were afforested after the coronation of Henry II., ii. 269, 273 ; the charters of liberties cancelled by Henry III., ii. 293 ; money raised by fines imposed on an inquisition into the state of, ii. 497 ; iii. 292. *See* Charter, Great.

Fortunatus [Venantius], ecclesiastical writer, mentioned, *Prol.* i. 4.

Forz, Forez, Foreis, William, count of, takes the cross, i. 57 ; joins the count of Toulouse, i. 72 ; killed at Nice, i. 82.

Fotheringay (*Fotheringeia*), castle of, taken by the earl of Albemarle, ii. 244.

Fougères, Feugères (*de Fulgeriis*), Ralph de, captured at Dol, i. 382 ; adheres to earl Richard against his father, i. 464 ; dies at Acre, ii. 20.

Fountains (*Fontes*), abbey of, founded near Ripon, i. 240 ; iii. 185 ; extreme poverty of, and subsequent wealth, i. 241 ; John, abbat of, consecrated bishop of Ely, *ib.* *See* Ely.

France, genealogy of the kings of, i. 241 ; placed under an interdict, ii. 83 ; iii. 219 ; the emperor Otho promises to conquer it for John, ii. 109 ; the nobles swear never to allow the kingdom to be given away by the sovereign, or subjected to the pope, ii. 177 ; failure of crops in, ii. 375 ; increase of heretic sects in, ii. 388, 415 ; insurrection of the nobles in, ii. 390 ; always hostile to England, ii. 419 ; deprived of fame by the losses in the Holy Land, iii. 130. *See* French.

Francis, St., founder of the Order of Friars Minors, ii. 291 ; died at Assisi, *ib.* ; his miracles, ii. 298 ; iii. 256.

Franciscans. *See* Friars Minors.

Francis, John, chief clerk of the king, struck with palsy, iii. 347 ; his death not lamented by the monks of York and Selby, *ib.*

Frederic I., emperor of Germany, consecrated by pope Adrian, i. 305 ; substitutes Paschal III. as pope, i. 330 ; Henry II. writes to, i. 345 ; seeks counsel of Henry, i. 397 ; humbles himself to Alexander III., i. 399 ; iii. 203 ; assumes the cross, i. 445 ; iii. 207 ; his letter to Saladin, i. 447 ; iii. 207 ; sets out for the Holy Land, i. 464 ; iii. 208 ; his son [Frederic] dies at Acre, ii. 20 ; drowned in a small river [the Selof], ii. 21 ; iii. 208.

Frederic II., king of Sicily, and emperor of Germany, encouraged by Innocent III. against Otho IV., ii. 121 ; elected king of the Romans, ii. 168 ; his envoys present at the Lateran council, *ib.* ; hostilities of Honorius III. against him, ii. 259 ; marries [Yolande,] daughter of the king of Jerusalem, ii. 396 *n.* ; impedes the crusade, by delaying his departure, ii. 298 ; excommunicated by Gregory IX., ii. 300 ; writes to the Christian princes, to vindicate himself, ii. 301 ; adopts hostile measures against the pope, *ib.* ; embarks for Palestine, and lands at Acre, ii. 303 ; iii. 257 ; treated as excommunicate, and complains of his unjust sentence, *ib.* ; receives presents from the Soldan of Babylon, *ib.* ; marches to Joppa, ii. 304 ; iii. 257 ; pope Gregory makes war on him, ii. 307, 311 ; re-

Frederic II., emperor—*cont.*
quires from the Soldan the restoration of the Holy Land, ii. 311; the Soldan consents, and makes a truce, *ib.*; iii. 259; his letter to Henry III., ii. 312; enters Jerusalem, but mass not said during his stay, *ib.*; proposes to visit the river Jordan, ii. 313; iii. 259; his intention betrayed to the Soldan by the Templars and Hospitallers, *ib.*; their letter sent to him by the Soldan, ii. 314; hence the ill will between them, *ib.*; iii. 259; he prepares to return home, *ib.*; his friendship with the Soldan, from whom he receives an elephant as a gift, *ib.*; lands in Sicily, ii. 320; recovers all he had lost, and punishes the rebels, *ib.*, 321; iii. 261; hangs a brother of pope Gregory, ii. 321; makes a truce with him, ii. 322; is reconciled to him, and absolved at Rome, ii. 326; joins his forces to those of pope Gregory against the Romans, ii. 373; sends to ask the sister of Henry III. in marriage, ii. 378; iii. 272; sends other envoys, to conduct her to Germany, ii. 379; captures and imprisons his son Henry [by Yolande], ii. 380; consummates his marriage with Isabel at Worms, *ib.*; iii. 272; sends three leopards to Henry III., *ib.*; places the empress in charge of Moorish eunuchs, ii. 381; asks Henry to send earl Richard over to him, to make war against France, ii. 386, 387; iii. 276; obtains money from the king, ii. 387; makes presents of horses and mules to Henry and Richard, ii. 392; summons a general parliament of Christian princes at Vaucouleur, ii. 397; iii. 274; defeats the Milanese [at Corte Nuova], and takes their Carrochio, ii. 401; iii. 275; writes to invite earl Richard to Sicily, ii. 403; birth of his son Henry, ii. 404; iii. 276; writes to Henry and Richard on the occasion, *ib.*; gives letters of recommendation to Simon de Montfort, ii. 406; receives military aid from Henry, ii. 408; sinister rumours respecting his heterodoxy, ii. 415, 474; iii. 278, 287; Sardinia is restored to him, and given to his son Ensius, ii. 418; iii. 279; increase of hatred between him and the pope, *ib.*; again solemnly excommunicated, ii. 420; iii. 279; he oppresses the church, ii. 421, 428; denounced at St. Paul's as excommunicate, ii. 423; writes twice to Henry, blaming him for allowing the papal exactions, ii. 429, 432; iii. 280, 288; his letter of condolence to Henry on the bad news from the Holy Land, ii. 434; advises a General Council to be convened, *ib.*; repents of this, and cautions certain prelates not to attend, ii. 441; iii. 281; directs Ensius to capture the prelates at sea, and sends them prisoners to Naples, ii. 450; receives earl Richard with great honours, ii. 452; iii. 283; tries to make peace with the pope by his mediation, *ib.*; writes to Henry III. to signify the death of the empress, ii. 459; releases the prelates, to enable them to elect a pope, ii. 470; iii. 286; Innocent IV. confirms the sentence against him, ii. 472; causes the roads to be guarded against the bearers of papal bulls, or money to the pope, ii. 476, 486; iii. 287, 288, 290; hangs two Minorites, *ib.*; his fame much deteriorated, and many recede from him, ii. 474, 479; iii. 290; humiliated, but peace fruitlessly treated of with the pope, ii. 475; iii. 287; endeavours in all ways to injure pope Innocent, ii. 478; accused of having Saracen concubines, and making friendship with the Soldan, ii. 479; had not fulfilled his promises to Henry, in reference to his continental territories, *ib.*; iii. 91, 288; report of his intention to seize the pope, ii. 485; proclaimed an open enemy of the church, ii. 486; iii. 290, 299; marries his daughter [Anne] to Vataces, ii. 487; sends Walter de Ocra to Henry, to remonstrate against contributions to the pope, ii. 492; iii. 292; again excommunicated, ii. 500; reported to have caused the pope's chamber at Lyons to be burnt, ii. 501; iii. 293;

Frederic II., emperor—*cont.*
deposed in the General Council at Lyons, ii. 506 ; iii. 91, 92, 295, 317 ; writes to the English prelates and nobles, to vindicate himself from the charge of heresy, iii. 6, 297 ; intercepts money sent to the pope, iii. 7, 297 ; mutual enmity between the pope and himself so great, that they procure poisonous draughts for each other, iii. 297 ; sends his son Conrad to oppose the Landgrave, iii. 7 ; conspiracy against his life, iii. 12 ; writes to Henry on the subject, *ib.* ; emissaries bribed to kill him and the pope, iii. 21, 299 ; causes the Calabrians, Sicilians and Apulians to swear fealty to his son Henry, iii. 23 ; marches towards Lyons, but returns and besieges Parma, iii. 28, 301 ; builds a city called Victoria, outside the walls, *ib.* ; is defeated by the Parmese, iii. 34, 45, 303 ; renews the siege, *ib.* ; marries again [*a marriage contemplated only, with a daughter of the duke of Saxony*], iii. 35, 303 ; marries his daughter to Thomas of Savoy, and gives him the city of Turin, iii. 303 ; his power and fame decrease, iii. 45, 52, 306 ; persecutes the clergy, and hangs the bishop of Arezzo, *ib.* ; punishes two Minorites, iii. 306 ; held in favour, in consequence of the vices of the Roman court, iii. 46 *n.*, 95 *n.* ; returns to Apulia, iii. 48 ; escapes being poisoned, *ib.*, 306 ; causes Peter de Vinea and his physician to be blinded, *ib.* ; his lamentation at the treachery of those he trusted, iii. 307 ; makes overtures to the pope, which are rejected, *ib.* ; directs supplies to be furnished to Louis IX., iii. 49, 50, 307 ; solicits Louis on behalf of Henry III., iii. 50, 307 ; many adversities befall him, iii. 56 ; capture of his son Ensius, *ib.*, 309 ; death of his natural son [Richard ?], iii. 57 ; afflicted with paralysis, *ib.*, 309 ; many desert him in Apulia and Sicily, *ib.* ; triumphs over his enemies, iii. 71, 312 ; acts tyranically to the Italians, *ib.*, 83 ; dies in Apulia, iii. 88 *n.*, 315 ; his shield of arms, *ib.* ; reason of his being

Frederic II., emperor—*cont.*
crowned with three crowns, iii. 88 *n.* ; the prisoners taken by him, sent to Sicily, iii. 100, 320.

Fremingeham, Frammingheham [Framlingham], castle of, given up to the earl of Leicester by Hugh Bigod, i. 381 ; threatened with siege by Henry II., i. 388.

French, descended from the Trojans, i. 241, 259 ; their intolerable pride, ii. 16, 24, 325 ; iii. 239 ; expose themselves to death for their sovereign, ii. 73 ; notorious for their hostile feeling to the English, ii. 95, 419, 489 ; iii. 290 ; not used to naval warfare, ii. 219 ; love to throw obloquy on the English, ii. 485 ; threaten to elect a pope for themselves, ii. 470 ; complaints made by, to the General Council at Lyons, touching papal exactions, ii. 503 ; iii. 129, 294 ; their habit of swearing, iii. 235 ; send to Louis IX. to return to France, iii. 333 ; their battles with the Germans in Flanders, iii. 334.

Freteval (*Fertevallum, Fractavallis*), peace made there between Louis VII. and Henry II., i. 315 ; meeting at, for the reconciliation of archbishop Thomas, i. 354 ; Philip retreats to, ii. 50.

Friars Minors, Minorites, or Franciscans, Order of, their increase of, ii. 109, 298 ; iii. 223 ; dress and rule of living, *ib.* ; obtain the privilege to build churches, celebrate mass, and hear confession, ii. 110 ; establish schools of theology, *ib.* ; founded by St. Francis of Assisi, ii. 291 ; their prosperity, ii. 384 ; iii. 256 ; suppress heretical sects by their preaching, ii. 388 ; iii. 94 ; two of the Order hung by Frederic II., ii. 472 ; two sent by the pope to England, to collect money, iii. 18, 298 ; appointed to execute the mandate touching the property of intestate clergy, iii. 21 ; employed as agents by the pope, iii. 21 *n.*, 93, 317 ; preach in behalf of a crusade, iii. 51, 308 ; obtain great powers from the pope, iii. 93 ; blamed for not reproving the

Friars Minors —*cont.*
vices of the rich, iii. 145; some brethren hear a melodious peal of bells on their way to Buckden, iii. 147, 330.

Friars Preachers, or Dominicans, Order of, their origin in Italy, ii. 66; iii. 216; called Jacobites or Jacobins, from their house of St. James at Paris, *ib.* 298; their increase in England and abroad, *ib.*; rules of the Order, dress and mode of living, ii. 66; their rule similar to that of St. Augustine, ii. 298; by their preaching suppress heretical sects, ii. 388; iii. 94; death of Jordan, prior of the Order, ii. 396; iii. 274; employed as agents by the pope, iii. 21 *n.*, 93, 317; preach in behalf of a crusade, iii. 51, 308; give to Henry III. the impression of Christ's foot in marble, iii. 60; hold a general chapter in their house in Holborn, iii. 80, 314; obtain great powers from the pope, iii. 93; blamed for not censuring the vices of the rich, iii. 145; refuse to be subject to the rules of the University of Paris, iii. 148, 331.

Frigia, passed by the Crusaders, i. 280.

Frost, long-continued and severe, i. 22, 44, 287; ii. 103, 364, 459; iii. 191, 269, 332.

Fruntenai, castle of, taken by Louis IX., ii. 463.

Fulham (*Fuleham*), manor of the bishop of London, iii. 78; archbishop Boniface entertained there, *ib.*; death of the archbishop of York at, iii. 345.

Fulk V., of Anjou, crowned king of Jerusalem, i. 245; defeats the Turks near Antioch, i. 246; rebuilds the city of Bersabee, *ib.*; dies by a fall from his horse, i. 271; iii. 189; his shield of arms, i. 271; buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre, i. 272.

Fulk [of Neuilly], a famous preacher in France, ii. 62; iii. 216; his endeavours to extirpate usury, *ib.*; by his advice, the abbat of Flai sent to England, *ib.*

Furneus, Thomas de, nephew of Robert de Thurnham, ii. 78; gives up to Arthur of Britanny the city and castle of Angers, *ib.*

Furnivaus, Girard de, his death, ii. 459.

G.

Gabaon, famous for the victory of Joshua, i. 159.

Gabelus, of Rages, Tobit sent to, for money owed, i. 89.

Gad, tribe of, situate beyond Jordan, i. 159.

Gaillon (*Wailum*, *Waillun*), castle of, meeting of Philip II. and Richard appointed, between Andeli and, ii. 64.

Galaad, beyond Jordan, i. 159.

Galatia, passed by the Crusaders under Conrad III., i. 280.

Galgala [*Gilgal*], the residence of the prophet Elisha, i. 159.

Galicia (*Galacia*), the king of, subject to the king of Castille, i. 303.

Galicia, Alfonso VI., king of. *See* Alfonso VI.

Galicia, [Ferdinand II.,] king of, challenges Macemunt, the Saracen monarch, in single combat, i. 428; iii. 205.

Galilee, passed by the Crusaders, i. 136; given to count Tancred, i. 157.

Galloway (*Galweia*, *Galeweia*, *Galwallia*), a province of Wales [Strathclwyd], i. 33; given by king Arthur to Walwain, *ib.*; derivation of the name, *ib.*; iii. 173; Carlisle situate on the limits of, i. 245; castles fortified in, by Walter Cumin, ii. 494.

Galloway (*de Galweia*), Alan de, death of his daughter [Christiana], countess of Albemarle, iii. 15; death of his daughter [Helen], countess of Winchester, iii. 126.

Gameges, Games [Gamaches], castle of, taken by Richard I., ii. 57; battle of Philip II. and Richard between Vernon and, ii. 71; iii. 217.

Gamius [Aben-Gania?], king of the Saracens in Spain, leads the emperor Macemund into Portugal, i. 427; his death, i. 428.

Gannoc, Gannoch, castle of, loss of the English near, ii. 507; iii. 296; fortified by Henry III. *ib.*

Gant, Baldwin de, his death at Nice, i. 81.

Gant, Gilbert de. *See* Lincoln, earl of.

Gant [Ghent], the castellan of, [killed in Egypt,] his shield of arms, iii. 84.

Garlanda, Guy de, takes the cross, i. 57.

Garsianus, Garsitherius. *See* Anxianus.

Gascony (*Wasconia*), Philip II. relinquishes his right in, to Richard, ii. 56; mercenaries from, come to assist John, ii. 163; Richard of Cornwall sent to, with forces, ii. 269; granted to him by charter, ii. 270; iii. 251; many castles and towns in, taken by, *ib.*; the nobles promise their support to Henry III., ii. 306; he receives the homage of many, ii. 326; iii. 262; failure of crops in, ii. 375; hostilities there, on account of the count of La Marche, ii. 463; Henry lavishes his treasure in, ii. 465; Nicholas de Molis appointed seneschal of, ii. 471; iii. 286; the earl of Leicester subdues the king's enemies in, iii. 43, 55, 73, 91, 305, 317; he resigns the government of, iii. 322, 324; grant of, to prince Edward, iii. 123, 145, 322; earl Simon again defeats his enemies there, iii. 123, 321; claim made by the king of Spain to, iii. 133, 324, 334 [cf. iii. 198]; hostile rising in, iii. 134, 325, 326; proclamation made in, of the removal of earl Simon, iii. 138, 327; Henry crosses over to, iii. 140, 328; Alfonso quits claim to, on prince Edward's marriage, iii. 336; regranted to Edward, *ib.*; expense of the expedition to, *ib.*

Gatesdene, John de, clerk to the king, sent privately to the count of Provence, touching his daughter's marriage, ii. 385; knighted, ii. 498; iii. 293; receives some manors of the church of Canterbury in mortgage, iii. 346; a creditor of the church of Rochester, *ib.*

Gaugi, Robert de, at the siege of Mountsorel, ii. 206; held Newark against the king's prohibition, ii. 226; defeated by the royal forces, *ib.*; iii. 243; compounds with the bishop of Lincoln, for the surrender of the castle, ii. 227.

Gaza, Gazera, submits to Richard I., ii. 26; defeat of the French crusaders near, ii. 433; slaughter of the Christians by the Chorasmians near, ii. 507.

Gelasius II., antipope, i. 222; dies, i. 225; iii. 182.

Genesareth, Genesir, lake of, miracles performed there, i. 157, 162.

Geneure, Peter de, [a Provençal,] of low origin, iii. 66, 311; his death, *ib.*; had married Matilda de Laci, with lands in Ireland, of the king's gift, *ib.*; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Genoese, arrival of pilgrims at Antioch in their galleys, i. 100; and at Joppa, i. 141, 194; purchase a smaragdine vessel found at Cæsarea, *ib.*; assist in the siege of Acre, i. 199; their fleet comes to Tripoli, with Bertram of Toulouse, i. 212; assist again in the attack on Acre, i. 453; capture a ship with the idol of Saladin, i. 457; their ships taken by the emperor's son Ensius, ii. 450; convey the pope from Cività Vecchia to Genoa, ii. 485; plot with the Pisans against Louis IX., iii. 105; entered Damietta previous to the French, iii. 310.

Genoa (*Janua*), certain prelates embark from, to go to the General Council at Rome, ii. 450; pope Innocent IV. received at joyfully, because born there, ii. 486.

Geoffrey [count of Nantes], younger son of Geoffrey Plantagenet, joins Louis VII. against his brother Henry, i. 289; sent to attack him, but compelled to make peace, i. 290; expels the count of

Geoffrey [count of Nantes]—*cont.* Britanny from Nantes, i. 306; makes terms with Henry II., *ib.*; his death, i. 310.

Geoffrey, son of Henry II., count of Britanny. *See* Britanny.

Geoffrey, natural son of Henry II., bishop elect of Lincoln, and archbishop of York. *See* Lincoln and York.

Geoffrey, brother of earl Richard, his death, ii. 459.

Geoffrey Arthur, [of Monmouth,] bishop of St. Asaph. *See* St. Asaph.

Geoffrey, the Templar, has charge of the seal of Henry II., ii. 252.

George, St., assists the Christian army against Corbaran, i. 125; buried at Lydda, i. 137; church of, destroyed by the Turks, *ib.*

George, an Armenian bishop, his death and burial at St. Ives, iii. 77; miracles of, *ib.*

Gerberai, battle of, between William I. and his son Robert, i. 21.

Gerin, Great, [Zerin?] castle of, destroyed by Saladin, i. 431.

Gerin, Little, [Jezrael? *Will. Tyr.*,] belonging to the Templars, devastated by Saladin, i. 431.

Germany, the emperors of, crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, iii. 36.

Gernun, William, sent abroad by John, to raise mercenaries, ii. 160.

Gethsemani. *See* Joshaphat.

Gethsura [Al-Jesirah, in Mesopotamia], under the power of Saladin, i. 451.

Gibel, (*Gabula, Gabulum, Gibelum*), a city twelve miles from Antioch, i. 135; the siege of, raised by the treachery of the count of Toulouse, *ib.*; given for dower to the widow of Boamund II., i. 245.

Gibelet, *a mistake for* Galilee, i. 157.

Giffard, Osbert, imprisoned in Corf castle, ii. 166; dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Gilbert, of Tournay, among the first to enter Jerusalem, i. 145.

Gilervallis, Fulk de, captured by Richard I., ii. 73.

Gisors (*Gisortium*), meeting of Henry I. and Calixtus II. at, i. 229; castle of, fortified by Henry, i. 232; surrendered to Henry II., i. 311; conference of Philip II. and Henry between Trie and, i. 446; treacherously surrendered to Philip, ii. 45; given up to him by Richard, ii. 56; battle near, between Philip and Richard, ii. 72; the French take refuge in the castle, *ib.*; iii. 217.

Glamorgan, Urban, bishop of, consecrated, i. 208.

Glanville, Ranulph de, justiciary, deposed by Richard I., ii. 11; arrives at Tyre, ii. 15; dies, ii. 19.

Glastonbury (*Glastonia*) abbey of, the bones of king Arthur found at, ii. 27.

Glastonbury, abbats of:

—— Turstin, his cruelty to the monks i. 25; imprisonment and death, *ib.*

—— Sifred, made bishop of Chichester, i. 235; iii. 184. *See* Chichester.

Gloucester (*Glovernia*), earl Robert arrives at, i. 263; the castle of, fortified by Hugh de Mortimer, i. 303; taken and destroyed by Henry II., *ib.*; the legate Walo comes to, ii. 180; coronation of Henry III. at, ii. 195; foreign mercenaries join the king there, ii. 357; army assembled at, ii. 361; Henry returns to, ii. 362; keeps Christmas at, ii. 363; iii. 269; comes there again, ii. 369; the proscribed nobles summoned to, ii. 370.

Gloucester, Robert, natural son of Henry I., earl of, arrives in England, i. 253; gives up Falaise to the count of Blois, i. 255; holds Ledes and Bristol castles against Stephen, i. 258; comes to England with the ex-empress Matilda, i. 262; goes to Wallingford and Gloucester to announce her arrival, i. 263; fights against Stephen at Lincoln, i. 264; assists Matilda at the siege of Winchester castle, i. 267; taken prisoner, and exchanged for Stephen, *ib.*; iii. 188; passes over to Normandy, i. 268; driven from Faringdon castle, i. 275.

Gloucester, William, earl of, submits to Henry II., i. 389; constitutes prince John his heir, i. 396; his daughter [Isabel] married to John, and the earldom granted to him, ii. 5.

Gloucester, Isabel, countess of, sister of William Mareschal, earl of Pembroke, married to Richard, earl of Cornwall, ii. 331; her daughter Amice married to the earl of Devon, ii. 428; dies in childbirth, ii. 429; iii. 280.

Gloucester, Gilbert de Clare, earl of. *See* Clare.

Gloucester, Richard de Clare, earl of. *See* Clare.

Gloucester, conventual church of, duke Robert of Normandy buried in, i. 30 *n.*, 248; Nicholas, bishop of Durham, consecrated at, ii. 450.

Gloucester, abbats of:

—— Henry, made bishop of Winchester, i. 243. *See* Winchester.

—— Gilbert, made bishop of Hereford, i. 277. *See* Hereford.

Godardville, Walter de, the castle of Hertford committed to his charge, ii. 172; surrenders it to prince Louis, ii. 200; iii. 238.

Godeschal, a German priest, leads a body of Crusaders to Hungary, i. 65.

Godeschal, a leader of the Brabançon mercenaries, who assist John, ii. 164; marches to the northern counties, ii. 170.

Godfrey, duke of Lorraine, assumes the cross, i. 56; names of his chief adherents, i. 68; progress of his forces to Constantinople, *ib.*, 69; iii. 176; demands the release of Hugh the Great and others, i. 69; refuses to go to the Greek emperor, i. 70; advances to Nice, i. 77; defeats Soliman, i. 80; his post at the siege of Nice, *ib.*; kills a Turk with an arrow, i. 83; the battle of Gorgoni gained by his aid; i. 86; his station at the siege of Antioch, i. 91; severely wounded in a conflict with a bear, i. 95; his prowess during the siege, i. 101, 102; chief leader of the seventh division against Corbaran, i. 120; brings aid to Boamund, i. 123; marches to Laodicea, i. 133; frees Guenemer of Bologne from prison, *ib.*; his post at the siege of Jerusalem, i. 139; gained immortal renown in the assault, i. 143; recalls his troops, when about to give way, i. 144; his preparations for a renewed attack, *ib.*; is the first to gain a footing on the walls, i. 145; elected king, i. 150; iii. 177; leads the army to Ascalon againt Elafdal, i. 152; offers the throne of Jerusalem to Robert of Normandy, i. 156; administers affairs prudently, i. 157; grants Tiberias and Galilee to Tancred, *ib.*; captures booty in the region of the Amonites, i. 183; his great strength displayed before an Arab prince, i. 184; his death, and burial in the church of the Holy Sepulchre, i. 185; shield of arms, as king of Jerusalem, *ib.*

Godin, castle of, claimed by the king of Navarre, i. 396.

Godric, St., lives as a hermit at Finchale, i. 214; dies, i. 352; iii. 199; his prophecy to Hugh, bishop of Durham, fulfilled, ii. 11.

Godwin, earl, by his treachery the Etheling Alfred was deprived of sight, iii. 164; his daughter Edith married to Edward the Confessor, iii. 165; reconciled to the king, iii. 166; dies, *ib.*

Goimer, William, mayor of London, seizes and imprisons Ranulph le Breton, ii. 422.

Good Friday, fell on the 25th March in 1238 [1239], ii. 416; iii. 278.

Gorgoni, [Dorylæum,] valley of, arrival of the Crusaders at, and battle there, i. 84.

Gournay, castle of, captured and burnt by the young king Henry, i. 376; town of, taken by Philip II., ii. 92.

Gournay, (*de Gurnaco*), Hugh de, his castle of La Ferté burnt by duke Henry, i. 290; taken prisoner by the young king, i. 376; delivers his castle of Montfort to Philip II., ii. 97.

Graham, church of, in Lincolnshire, struck by lightning and partially destroyed, ii. 252.

Grai, Walter de, made chancellor, and the seal delivered to him, ii. 131; iii. 225; studies the king's rather than God's will, *ib.* *See* Worcester, bishops of.

Grantemenil, Alberic de, brother of William, deserts from Antioch, i. 113.

Grantemenil, William de, of Apulia, deserts from Antioch, i. 113.

Grantham, granted to prince Edward, iii. 336.

Gratian, sent legate to Normandy, to effect a reconciliation between Henry II. and archbishop Thomas, i. 343, 347, 349; iii. 198.

Greek fire, used by the Saracens in war, i. 123.; ii. 228; a Saracen ship laden with, ii. 23.

Greeks, errors of, confuted at the council of Bari, i. 52; certain philosophers come to John, to alter articles of faith, ii. 194; iii. 64; secession of, from the Roman church, ii. 401, 414; iii. 89, 375; some nobles come to Rome, and accuse the pope of false doctrine, iii. 337; are dismissed with gifts, iii. 338.

Greeks, of Sicily, attack the count of La Marche, and are defeated by Richard I., ii. 17.

Gregory, St., quoted, ii. 260 *n.*; iii. 146, 250.

Gregory VI., pope, iii. 165.

Gregory VII., pope, his acts in a general synod, i. 18; iii. 171; previously named Hildebrand, i. 24; iii. 171; his decrees annulled by the council of Worms, *ib.*; excommunicates the emperor Henry, and sends a crown to Radulph, duke of Burgundy, *ib.*; his false prophecy respecting the emperor, i. 25; deposed from the papacy, i. 27; dies at Salerno, i. 32; iii. 173; his decrees renewed in the council of Clermont, i. 56.

Gregory VIII., pope, succeeds, i. 445; dies poisoned, *ib.*; iii. 207.

Gregory VIII., antipope. *See* Maurice.

Gregory IX., pope, (bishop of Ostia,) succeeds, ii. 294; his cruel character, *ib. n.*; decision as to the election of the bishop of Coventry, ii. 300; excommunicates the emperor Frederic II., *ib.*; writes to archbishop Stephen to publish the sentence, *ib.*; and to the legate Romanus, on the hostile steps taken by Frederic, ii. 301; expelled from Rome, and flies to Viterbo and Perugia, *ib.*; resolves to depose the emperor, ii. 307; appoints John de Brienne leader of his mercenaries, and makes war on Frederic, *ib.*; collects money to pay the troops, *ib.*; iii. 258; his brother associated with John de Brienne, *ib.*; approves of Richard le Grand as archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 310; writes to the suffragans in his favour, ii. 311; demands a tithe of moveables in England, Ireland and Wales, ii. 315; his instructions to the nuncio, how to levy the tax, ii. 317; rapacity of his agents, ii. 322 *n.*; makes a truce with the emperor, *ib.*; employs the money to put down the enemies of the church, *ib.*; reconciled with Frederic, ii. 326; iii. 262; listens favourably to the complaints of archbishop Richard, ii. 335; annuls the election of Ralph de Neville, as archbishop, ii. 337; iii. 263; writes to Henry III. to punish the authors of the riots against the Italian clergy, ii, 340; iii. 264; commissions certain prelates to excommunicate the offenders, *ib.*; directs a general visitation of the religious orders, ii. 352; annuls the election of John Blund as archbishop, ii. 355; iii. 264; gives the pall at once to Edmund of Abingdon, *ib.*, 367; issues a bull in aid of the Holy Land, ii. 368, 378; discord between him and the Romans, ii. 373; he goes to Perugia, Anagni, and elsewhere, *ib.*; iii. 92, 271; excommunicates the Romans, contrary to their privileges, *ib.*; his forces are joined by the emperor's, and the Romans defeated, *ib.*; causes the Decretals to be abridged, ii. 381; some innovations made in them, ii. 382; by his direction, the "Summa" of Reimund is compiled, *ib.*; prevents the conference of princes at Vaucouleur, ii. 397; recalls the legate Otho from England, ii.

Gregory IX., pope—*cont.*
402, 404; iii. 275; confirms the election of Richard de Wendene, as bishop of Rochester, ii. 406; reforms the statutes of the Black [Benedictine] Order, ii. 413; rejects the election of Ralph, bishop of Chichester, as bishop of Winchester, ii. 418; iii. 277; claims Sardinia as the patrimony of St. Peter, *ib.*; iii. 279; mutual hatred between him and the emperor, *ib.*; solemnly excommunicates the emperor, ii. 420; demands a fifth part of the goods of the English clergy, ii. 431; convokes a General Council at Rome, ii. 434; iii. 280; summons to it the enemies of Frederic, and urges their attendance, ii. 441; iii. 280; absolves the monks of Canterbury from the sentence of archbishop Edmund, ii. 448; two collectors of money for him remain in England, ii. 451; his death, ii. 456; iii. 284; gave an ivory cross, when dying, to his physician, iii. 120.

Grenet, [Grener,] Eustace, [count of Sidon,] appointed governor of Jerusalem, i. 233; defeats Balach before Joppa, *ib.*

Greslei, Robert, his death, ii. 328; iii. 262.

Gres, Garnier, count of, takes the cross, i. 57; joins duke Godfrey, i. 68; sent to escort some pilgrims to the camp, i. 100; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, ii. 120; remains with Godfrey at Jerusalem, i. 157.

Grey, John de, knight, withdraws from the court, iii. 347.

Griffin, or Griffith, king of North Wales, flies from Harold, iii. 168; expelled by the Welsh, iii. 169; killed, and his head brought to Harold, *ib.*

Griffin, eldest but illegitimate son of Llewellyn, prince of North Wales, captured by his brother David, and sent to Henry III., ii. 430, 453; iii. 280; imprisoned in the Tower, ii. 431; the bishop of Bangor tries to obtain his release, ii. 453; iii. 283; killed in an attempt to escape, ii. 483; iii. 289.

Groby, castle of, surrendered to Henry II. by the earl of Leicester, i. 388; razed to the ground, i. 394.

Grosmund, castle of, in Wales [co. Monm.], Henry III. makes some stay at, ii. 362; his army surprised there, *ib.*; iii. 269; given up to the king by Hubert de Burgh, ii. 426.

Gualdemar, sent to escort some pilgrims to Jerusalem, i. 141.

Guascun, castle of, [in Syria,] battle fought near, between the Templars and Saracens, ii. 399.

Gué Saint-Remi (*Vadum S. Remigii*), conference of Philip II. and Richard at, ii. 14.

Gueldres, Otho, count of, chosen emperor of Germany, but refuses, iii. 101.

Guelf, a Burgundian, takes the city of Adana, i. 88.

Guenelon, [the traitor of romance,] the count of Nevers descended from, ii. 185.

Guenemer of Bologne, released from prison at Laodicea, i. 133; restored to the command of the fleet, *ib.*

Guildford (*Guldeford*), John keeps Christmas at, ii. 89.

Guisnes (*Gisnes*), the road tax there abolished, iii. 63.

Guisnes (*Gisnes*), Baldwin de, with his followers, in the pay of Henry III., ii. 351.

Guitri (*Chitreium*), castle of, burnt by duke Henry, i. 290.

Guletune [le Goulet, on the Seine], castle of, meetings of Philip II. and John between Butavant and, ii. 82, 84, 85, 92.

Gunnord (*Gunner*), castle of, razed by the earl of Chester, ii. 329.

Gunzo, monk of Bec, carries on the buildings of the church there, i. 24; iii. 172.

Guthlac, St., Croyland abbey dedicated to, ii. 189.

Guy, brother of William the Carpenter, deserts from Antioch, i. 113.

Gynacia [Erperg?], Richard I. gives himself up to the duke of Austria at, ii. 40.

H.

Hackesalt, Geoffrey, servant of the abbat of St. Alban's, carries presents to Richard I. at Westminster, ii. 47.

Hacon, earl, comes with forces to England from Denmark, i. 20; iii. 171; ravages Flanders, *ib.*

Hacon VI., king of Norway, crowned at Bergen by the legate, iii. 31, 300; assumes the cross, iii. 95; his shield of arms, *ib.*; letters patent of Louis IX. in his behalf, iii. 304.

Hagenet, castle of, burnt by the earl of Leicester, i. 380.

Haie, castle of, razed to the ground, i. 394.

Haie, Ralph de la, captured at Dol, i. 382; sent to England with troops by the young king, i. 384; allowed to leave the country, i. 389.

Hainault, Baldwin, count of, assumes the cross, i. 57; joins duke Godfrey, i. 68; marriage of his daughter Isabel [*incorrectly named* Margaret] to Philip II., i. 423.

Hales [Owen] abbey, of the Premonstratensian Order, founded by Peter, bishop of Winchester, ii. 410.

Hales [Hayles, co. Glouc.] abbey, of the Cistercian Order, founded by Richard of Cornwall, iii. 65; supplied with monks from Beaulieu, *ib.*; dedicated, iii. 115, 311.

Haliwelle, a stream at St. Alban's, i. 271.

Halingeham or Haingeham, [Hengham, co. Essex,] castle of, queen Matilda dies at, i. 291.

Haliwercfolc, [co. Durham,] province of, Castle-Bernard situated in, ii. 186.

Halling, a vill belonging to the bishop of Rochester, i. 426; death of archbishop Richard at, *ib.*

Hamah, [in Syria, *incorrectly called* Haman,] forces collected from, in aid of Antioch, i. 98.

Hameslape, castle of, razed to the ground by Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 170.

Hamme, Walter de, born at Trumpington, ii. 70; a servant of the justiciary, *ib.*; his bravery in a battle with the Welsh, *ib.*

Hanibal, Richard, cardinal, his death, ii. 458.

Hansard, John, his death and funeral, iii. 332.

Harald [Harefoot], son of Cnut, succeeds to the throne, iii. 164; exiles his stepmother Emma, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*; his body thrown into the Thames, iii. 165.

Harald, king of Man, knighted by Henry III. at London, iii. 8.

Haran, (*Charran*, *Carra*,) besieged by Boamund, i. 200; spoken of in the story of Abraham, *ib.*

Hardecnut, son of Cnut, reigns in Denmark, iii. 164; goes to his mother in Flanders, *ib.*; crowned king of England, iii. 165; causes his brother's body to be thrown into the Thames, *ib.*; pays money to the Danish forces, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*

Hardel, William, clerk, and citizen of London, sent to pay the troops furnished to the emperor Frederic II., ii. 408; iii. 276.

Harecurt, Oliver de, taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212.

Harecurt, William de, joins the crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230.

Hareng, castle of, near Antioch, slaughter of the Turks at, i. 98; surrendered to the Christians, i. 99; captured by Noradin, i. 285; iii. 190.

Harold or Harald, son of earl Godwin, when at his manor of Boseham, goes out in a fishing vessel, iii. 168; driven by the wind to Ponthieu, i. 5; iii. 168; taken prisoner, and brought to William duke of Normandy, *ib.*; asserts he wished to obtain William's daughter in marriage, *ib.*; swears to secure England to the duke, after Edward's death, *ib.*; his falsehood and duplicity, i. 6; iii. 168; returns to England, *ib.*; according to other accounts, sent by Edward to bring William over to England, iii. 168; leads an expedition to Wales, and devastates the country, *ib.*; sends the head of

Harold or Harald—*cont.*
Griffin to Edward, iii. 169; usurps the throne, and crowns himself, i. 6; iii. 169; ill-treats the messengers of William, *ib.*; defeats Harold king of Norway, *ib.*; oppressed the citizens of London by taxes, i. 8; killed at Hastings, *ib.*; iii. 169; buried at Waltham, iii. 169; his shield of arms, i. 7; a daughter of William I. had been betrothed to him, i. 31.

Harold, king of Norway, defeated by Harold of England, i. 6.

Harrow, (*Harewes, Herges,*) a manor of the see of Canterbury, i. 358; archbishop Thomas keeps some feast days at, i. 359; Nigel de Sackville, intruder in the church of, i. 362.

Harsad, town of, besieged by Borsequin, i. 235.

Hascha. *See* Ascha.

Hasting, Henry de, goes abroad, iii. 69.

Hastings (*Hastingum*), castle of, built by William I., i. 9; iii. 169; why so named, *ib.*

Hatfield, (*Hafeldia, Hauefeldia,*) castle of, given up by Hubert de Burgh to the king, ii. 426.

Hatfield, (*Haethfield, Hatfeld,*) a cell of St. Alban's, the church and offices burnt, ii. 330; iii. 263. *See* Huntendune, William de.

Haverhulle, William de, clerk, treasurer of the king, his death, iii. 124, 322.

Hebron. *See* Ebron.

Helen, verses of Ovid relating to, i. 314.

Helias of London, high-priest of the Jews, asks leave for his people to quit the country, iii. 334.

Hellespont. *See* Bosphorus.

Henry II., emperor of Germany, succeeds, iii. 160; his sister Agatha married to Eadward, i. 301.

Henry III., emperor, succeeds, iii. 165.

Henry IV., emperor, causes the council of Worms to annul the decrees of Gregory VII., i. 24; iii. 172; excommunicated by the pope, and abjured by his nobles, *ib.*; puts Radulph of Burgundy to flight, and ravages Suabia, *ib.*; causes Wibert of Ravenna to be nominated pope, i. 25; his death falsely predicted by Gregory, *ib.*; defeats the Saxons and kills Radulph, i. 26; acknowledged as emperor by the Romans, i. 27; receives the benediction of Clement III. as "Patricius Romanorum," i. 28; claimed the right to elect the pope, i. 50.

Henry V., emperor, succeeds, i. 190; sends envoys to ask the daughter of Henry I. in marriage, i. 210; married to her, *ib.*; iii. 180; contends with Paschal II. respecting lay investitures, i. 216; appoints Maurice [of Braga] anti-pope, i. 231; confers the archbishopric of Ravenna on Arnulph, i. 236; iii. 184; resigns the throne, and disappears from the world, i. 237; iii. 184; is seen again just before his death, *ib.*; rumours of his having been put to death by the empress, *ib.*

Henry VI., emperor, son of Frederic I., consecrated and crowned by pope Celestine II., ii. 21, 29; pays a sum of money to the duke of Austria for Richard I., ii. 41; imprisons him at Trifels, *ib.*; makes charges against him, ii. 42; subdues Apulia and Sicily, ii. 54; fearful of divine punishment, on account of his treatment of Richard, ii. 58; bequeaths the ransom money to the Cistercians, *ib.*

Henry I., king of England, youngest son of William I., his birth, i. 11; knighted at Westminster, i. 28; his character, i. 31; addicted to study, and a jurist, *ib.*, 163; his father's favourite, i. 35; much treasure bequeathed to him, *ib.*, 75, 163, 205; directed to found a monastery for his father's soul, *ib.*; prophetic speech of William to him, i. 164, 206; present at his father's funeral, i. 35; leads an army into Northumberland, i. 47; lends money to his brother Robert, for the crusade, i. 75; allures the English nobles, by gifts and promises, i. 163, 165, 176, 203; depreciates Robert, i. 164, 176, 203; iii. 178; promises to amend

Henry I., king of England—*cont.* the laws, and maintain the liberties of Edward the Confessor, i. 176, 203; iii. 178; crowned at Westminster, i. 177; iii. 178; his shield of arms, i. 176; reply to the objections raised by the Normans to his succession, i. 177; grants a charter of liberties *ib.*; gives the bishopric of Winchester to William Giffard, but appropriates the possessions, i. 181; recalls archbishop Anselm from abroad, *ib.*; asks the daughter of Malcolm III. in marriage, i. 188, 189; the nuptial ceremony performed by archbishop Anselm, *ib.*; sends a fleet against his brother Robert, *ib.*; is reconciled to him, on payment of an annual sum, i. 190; gives the bishopric of Hereford to Reinelm, *ib.*; takes the castle of Arundel, and exiles Robert de Belesme, i. 191; iii. 179; captures the castle of Bruges [Bridgenorth], *ib.*; on refusal of Anselm, commands the archbishop of York to consecrate certain bishops, *ib.*; his cause argued before pope Paschal, touching investitures, i. 192; makes war on duke Robert in Normandy, i. 195; iii. 179; forbids the return of Anselm, i. 196; iii. 179; seizes the see of Canterbury, *ib.*; takes Caen and Bayeux, i. 201; returns to England, i. 202; iii. 179; his interview with Robert at Northampton, *ib.*; fears the English, on account of his nonobservance of the charter of liberties, *ib.*; his address to the nobles at London, i. 203; iii. 179; defeats Robert at Tenchebrai, i. 204; iii. 179; returns to England, and commits Robert to prison, i. 206; iii. 180; is reconciled to Anselm, i. 207; iii. 180; proves ungrateful to God, and violates his promises, *ib.*; makes concessions relative to lay investiture, *ib.*; takes oaths from the emperor's envoys, for his daughter Matilda's marriage, i. 210; levies a hidage on that account, *ib.*; raises Ely to an episcopal see, *ib.*; iii. 180; orders duke Robert to be deprived of his eye-sight, i. 213; accuses the earl of Chester of treason, *ib.*; disinherits others, and puts the count of Maine to death, i. 214; makes war on the count of Anjou, i. 215; iii. 181; grants investiture to archbishop Ralph, i. 217; breaks his seal, in order to violate the charter of liberties, *ib.*; subdues Wales, *ib.*; iii. 181; causes the nobles to swear fealty to his son William, i. 219; threatens to deprive the archbishop of York of his see, i. 220; present at the dedication of St. Alban's, *ib.*; iii. 181; gives Bissopescote to the church there, *ib.*; assists the count of Blois against Louis VI., i. 221; secures the aid of the count of Britanny, *ib.*; sends some bishops to the council at Rheims, i. 225; forbids the archbishop of York to enter the kingdom, *ib.*; fights a battle with Louis VI. [at Bremule], i. 226; wounded by William Crispin, i. 227; gains the victory, i. 228; iii. 182; returns to Rouen, *ib.*; conference with Calixtus II. at Gisors, i. 229; returns to England, i. 230; shipwreck of his family and household, *ib.*; iii. 182; marries Adeliza of Louvain, *ib.*; the Welsh submit to him, i. 231; completes the building of Reading abbey, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Dunstable, *ib.*; goes to Berkhampstead, *ib.*; takes the castle of Pont-Audemer, i. 232; fortifies Rouen and other towns, *ib.*; causes debasers of the coin to be punished, i. 235; iii. 184; his daughter Matilda comes to reside with him, i. 238; his love for her, *ib.*; returns to England, and causes the nobles to swear fealty to her, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Windsor, *ib.*; troubled at his nephew's succession to Flanders, i. 239; crosses to Normandy, and marries Matilda to Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 240; invades France, i. 241; inquires about the origin of the French, *ib.*; holds a council at London, i. 242; takes fines from priests for keeping concubines, i. 243; receives Innocent II. honourably at Rouen, i. 244; founds the see of Carlisle, i. 245; constitutes his daughter

Henry I., king of England—*cont.*
his successor, i. 246 ; returns to England, i. 247 ; gives the hand of St. James to Reading abbey, *ib.*; returns to Normandy, and stays with his daughter, *ib.* ; anecdote of his sending a torn robe to his brother Robert, i. 248 ; dies at St. Denis-en-Liuns, from eating lampreys, i. 249 ; his death foretold by a violent wind, *ib.* ; monasteries founded by him, and castles built, *ib.* ; his bowels buried at Rouen, *ib.* ; putrescent state of the corpse, *ib.*, 250 ; brought to Caen, and buried at Reading, i. 250 ; iii. 186 ; his shield of arms, *ib.* ; said to have named Stephen as his successor, i. 251 ; his severity in regard to the forest laws, i. 252 ; the liberties granted by him confirmed at Clarendon, i. 323 ; his charter read at St. Paul's, ii. 143 ; produced by the barons at St. Edmunds, ii. 153 ; iii. 231 ; demanded of John, ii. 155 ; inquisition to ascertain what the liberties were, ii. 253.

Henry II., of England, eldest son of Geoffrey Plantagenet, count of Anjou, by Matilda, his birth, i. 246 ; honourably received at Bec, i. 276 ; iii. 189 ; rumours of his future reign in England, *ib.* ; knighted by David of Scotland, i. 285 ; iii. 190 ; the dukedom of Normandy made over to him, *ib.* ; with his father at Arques, i. 286 ; does homage to Louis VII. for Normandy, i. 287 ; becomes count of Anjou at his father's death, *ib.* ; marries Alienor, the divorced wife of Louis, i. 289 ; becomes duke of Aquitaine and count of Poitou, *ib.* ; at Barfleur, when Louis makes war on him, *ib.* ; marches to succour Neufmarché, i. 290 ; ravages the Vexin, and takes Montsoreau in Anjou, *ib.* ; makes a truce with Louis, i. 291 ; comes to England, and takes several castles, i. 293, iii. 192 ; birth of his son William, i. 294, iii. 192 ; a decisive battle proposed with Stephen, *ib.* ; the empress Matilda interposes, and declares him to be her son by Stephen, i. 295, 301 ; terms of the treaty of peace, i. 296 ; adopted by Stephen as his successor, *ib.* ; returns to Normandy, and represses a rebellion in Aquitaine, i. 298 ; peace made with Louis, i. 299 ; iii. 192 ; awaits a fair wind at Barfleur, *ib.* ; arrives in England, and crowned at Westminster, i. 300 ; his shield of arms, *ib.* ; regains possession of the castles belonging to the crown, *ib.* ; expels the Flemings, and deposes some pseudo-earls, *ib.* ; birth of his son Henry, i. 301 ; his maternal genealogy up to the Anglo-Saxon kings and Noah, *ib.* ; exiles William Peverel, i. 302 ; causes the nobles to swear fealty to his sons, *ib.* ; destroys the castles of the bishop of Winchester and Hugh de Mortimer, i. 303 ; asks leave of pope Adrian to subdue Ireland, i. 304 ; iii. 193 ; captures some castles in Normandy, i. 306 ; makes peace with his brother Geoffrey, *ib.* ; returns to England, i. 307 ; makes terms with the king of Scots, *ib.* ; grants to William, earl of Mortain, all that his father held at the death of Henry I., *ib.* ; subdues the Welsh, *ib.* ; iii. 193 ; receives the homage of the Welsh at Snowdon, i. 308 ; birth of his son Richard, *ib.* ; wears his crown at Worcester, *ib.* ; iii. 194 ; his humility, in imitation of king Cnut, *ib.* ; takes possession of Nantes, i. 310 ; goes to Paris, and is lodged in the king's palace, *ib.* ; marches to Toulouse, but refrains from assaulting the town, *ib.* ; causes Margaret, daughter of Louis, to be married to his son Henry, i. 311 ; takes the castles of Gisors and Chaumont, *ib.* ; is reconciled to Louis, i. 315 ; birth of his daughter Alienor, *ib.* ; causes the nobles to swear fealty to prince Henry, *ib.* ; commits him to the charge of the chancellor Thomas, i. 316 ; anger against the chancellor, on account of his resignation, i. 317 ; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, and confirms it by charter, i. 318, 319 ; returns to England, and receives archbishop Thomas ungraciously, i. 320 ; present at

Henry II. of England—*cont.*
the translation of Edward the Confessor, *ib.*; receives the homage of Malcolm of Scotland, and Resus of North Wales, i. 322; present at the framing of the Constitutions of Clarendon, *ib.*; requires the clergy to be subject to lay jurisdiction, i. 327; iii. 196; at the dedication of Reading church, i. 330; rancour felt by him towards archbishop Thomas, *ib.*; sends envoys to the pope, with complaints against him, *ib.*; his letters to the sheriffs, bishop of London, and justiciaries, against the archbishop and his clerks, i. 332; confiscates the church of Canterbury, and the goods of the archbishop, i. 333; exiles his kindred, and forbids prayers to be made for him, *ib.*; his daughter Matilda married to the duke of Saxony, i. 336; birth of his daughter Joanna, i. 337; crosses to Normandy, i. 338; cited by the legates to Montmirail, *ib.*; prevents the archbishop's further stay at Pontigny, i. 339; writes to Louis, to complain of the favour shown to him, *ib.*; birth of his son John, i. 340; receives letters from the archbishop and pope, i. 341, 342, 346; two legates sent to effect a reconciliation, i. 343; war with Louis, i. 344; writes to the archbishop of Cologne, and resolves to recede from the pope, i. 345; iii. 198; his daughter Alienor married to Alfonso of Castille, i. 346; privately makes a grant of territory to Alfonso, iii. 198; his consolatory letter to the bishop of London, i. 347; the legates fail in their mission, *ib.*; writes to the pope, to absolve the persons excommunicated by the archbishop, i. 348; keeps Christmas at Nantes, i. 351; the nobles of Britanny swear fealty to him and his son Geoffrey, i. 352; on his return to England, in danger from a storm, *ib.*; makes a vow to give satisfaction to the church of Canterbury and the archbishop, but does not fulfil it, *ib.*; iii. 199; his eldest son Henry crowned by his order, *ib.*; he waits on his son at table, but repents of this proceeding, i. 353; meets Louis at Freteval, and holds the archbishop's stirrup, 354; reconciled to him at Amboise, *ib.*; iii. 199; writes to the young king, to restore the archbishop's possessions, *ib.*; gives him leave to punish his suffragans, i. 355; the excommunicated bishops complain to him, iii. 199; utters angry words against the archbishop, i. 367; iii. 199; his grief at hearing of his murder, *ib.*; sends to the pope, to allege his innocence, and submits himself to the judgment of the church, *ib.*, 368; returns to England, and visits the bishop of Winchester, i. 369; invades Ireland, and receives the homage of the bishops and "reguli," *ib.*, 370; holds a council at Lismore, and establishes English laws, i. 371; lands in Wales, goes thence to Porchester, and back to Normandy, *ib.*; makes his purgation before the papal legates, i. 372; betroths prince John to a daughter of the count of Maurienne, i. 373; the rebellion of his sons a judgment of God, in revenge of St. Thomas, i. 374; concedes free elections to vacant churches, *ib.*; curses the young king his son, i. 377; conceals his troubled state of mind, and indulges in hunting at Rouen, *ib.*; sends a menacing message to Louis, and marches against him, i. 378; iii. 201; defeats the young king at Dol, i. 382; and the troops of prince Richard at Saintes, i. 383; iii. 201; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; awaits a fair passage at Barfleur, i. 385; his prayer on the occasion, *ib.*; lands safely at Southampton, *ib.*; his acts of penance at Canterbury, *ib.*, 386; iii. 200, 201; renounces the evil customs which had caused his quarrel with St. Thomas, *ib.*; his affairs now turn out prosperously, i. 387; iii. 202; his reception at London, i. 388; subdues the castle of Huntingdon, *ib.*; his successes due to the intercession of St. Thomas, i. 389; returns to Normandy, and takes the king of Scots and others with him, as prisoners, *ib.*;

Henry II. of England—*cont.* forces Louis to raise the siege of Rouen, *ib.*; is reconciled to his sons, and receives their homage, i. 391, iii. 202; releases the prisoners taken in the war, *ib.*; issues letters notifying the peace, *ib.*; makes peace with William of Scotland at Falaise, and receives his homage, i. 392; orders the castles erected during the war to be levelled, i. 393, 394; returns to England with the young king, and they pay their vows to St. Thomas, i. 393; promises equal justice to clerks and laymen, *ib.*; appoints justiciaries over the kingdom, i. 394; articles conceded by him to the papal legate, i. 395; marriage of his daughter Joanna to the king of Sicily, *ib.*; the dispute of the kings of Castille and Navarre submitted to his award, i. 396, 397; other sovereigns seek his counsel, i. 397; iii. 202; procures the removal of secular canons from Waltham abbey, i. 398; crosses to Normandy, i. 399; makes a treaty of peace with Louis, and undertakes a crusade, i. 399; iii. 203; visits the tomb of St. Thomas, i. 401; meets Louis VII. on his passage to Dover, i. 410; iii. 203; his munificence to the French nobles, *ib.*; his wise and peaceful government, i. 420; Philip II. commits the charge of his realm to him, *ib.*; places England and France under the protection of St. Thomas, i. 421; gives a large sum in aid of the Holy Land, i. 424; crosses again to Normandy, *ib.*; confirms the election of Warin, as abbat of St. Alban's, i. 425; urges his junior sons to do homage to the young king, *ib.*; on Richard's refusal, excites the young king against him, *ib.*; brings the duke of Saxony to England, i. 426; founds a house of the Carthusian Order [Witham, co. Som.], i. 427; is offered the crown of Jerusalem, i. 431, 432; iii. 206; assembles a council at Clerkenwell, and refuses it, i. 433; iii. 206; celebrates Easter at Rouen, i. 434; meets Philip at Vaudreuil on the subject of a crusade, *ib.*; gives the county of Huntingdon to the king of Scots, i. 435; meets Philip again between Trie and Gisors, and assumes the cross, i. 446; assists Geoffrey de Lusignan against prince Richard, i. 447; renews hostilities against Philip, *ib.*, 454; holds a fruitless conference for peace, i. 455; keeps Christmas at Saumur, *ib.*; hostilities recommence, *ib.*; iii. 208; agrees to mediate for peace, i. 456; holds another conference with Philip at La Ferté-Bernard, i. 457, 458; refuses to give security that Richard should be his heir, i. 459; flies from Le Mans, and takes refuge at Tours, i. 460; iii. 208; holds a conference at Saumur with the count of Flanders and others, i. 462; compelled to make peace, and does homage to Philip, i. 463; iii. 208; prophecy of Merlin fulfilled in him, i. 464; his sickness at Chinon, and death, *ib.*; iii. 208; causes leading to his decease, i. 436; his corpse dressed in royal robes, *ib.*; blood bursts from his nose at the approach of Richard, *ib.*; his burial at Fontevraud, and epitaph, *ib.*; laws established by him, i. 466; French prophetical verses on the places where his children die, ii. 191 *n.*

Henry, the young king, eldest son of Henry II. and Alienor, born at London, i. 301; iii. 193; fealty sworn to, i. 302; Margaret, daughter of Louis VII., asked for in marriage, i. 309; iii. 194; married to her, i. 311; the nobles again swear fealty to him, as heir, i. 315; the chancellor Thomas appointed his preceptor, i. 316; his ingratitude, *ib.*; accompanies Thomas (then archbishop) to meet his father, i. 320; homage paid him by the king of Scots and prince of North Wales, i. 322; withdrawn from the tutelage of the archbishop, i. 329; released Thomas from all his obligations when chancellor, *ib.*, 334; his coronation at Westminster, i. 352; reply to the archbishop of York, on his father's waiting at table, i. 353; letter to him

Henry, the young king—*cont.*
from his father, relative to the archbishop, i. 354; the prelates who assisted at his coronation are suspended by the pope, i. 356, 357; forbids the archbishop to journey towards him, i. 359; is visited by the abbat of St. Alban's, on behalf of the archbishop, i. 360; fatal results of his coronation, i, 366; his heart is turned against his father by the queen, i. 371; swears to the same terms of purgation as his father, i. 372; comes to England, with his queen, *ib.*; openly rebels against his father, and joins Louis, i. 374; captures and burns the castle of Gournay, i. 376; is joined by many English nobles, i. 377; at the siege of Verneuil with Louis, i. 378; his forces defeated at Dol, i. 382; his part taken up by the count of Flanders, i. 384; comes to Witsand, and sends forces to England, *ib.*; embarks, but is compelled to return by a storm, i. 387; iii. 202; repents his rebellion, *ib.*; assists Louis at the siege of Rouen, i. 389; submits to his father, and does homage to him, i. 391; releases his prisoners, *ib.*; accompanies his father to England, i. 393; frequents the tournaments in France, i. 409; iii. 203; Normandy placed under his rule, i. 421; receives the homage of his brother Geoffrey for Britanny, i. 425; raises forces against his brother Richard, *ib.*; his death at Château Martel, Touraine, *ib.*, 436; his burial at Rouen, i. 426; iii. 205; shield of arms, *ib.*; a religious house founded for his soul, i. 427.

Henry III., of England, eldest son of John, his birth, ii. 114; appointed by John his successor, ii. 192; his father's last words to him, ii. 193; crowned at Gloucester, i. 195; swears to maintain justice and good laws, *ib.*; his coronation feast, ii. 196; shield of arms, *ib.*; iii. 95; computation of his regnal years, *ib. n.*, 363 *n.*; he remains in the charge of the earl of Pembroke, *ib.*; his personal appearance, *ib.*; the nobles adhere to him, *ib.*; gives the castle of Ledford to William de Albini, ii. 200; receives the homage of those released from prison, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Bristol, (1217), ii. 201; makes a truce with prince Louis, ii. 205; iii. 239; many nobles renew their fealty to him, ii. 206; his army assembles at Newark, ii. 208; names of the chiefs, ii. 209; they march towards Lincoln, ii. 210; force an entrance into the city, and defeat the French and barons, ii. 212; orders the castle of Mountsorel to be razed, ii. 214; iii. 240; occupies the south coast, and assigns a force to guard it, ii. 216; meets prince Louis near Staines, and concludes terms of peace, ii. 222, 223; iii. 242; swears to restore to the barons of Louis's party their lands, ii. 223; keeps Christmas at Northampton (1218), ii. 226; iii. 243; makes use of his own seal, ii. 231; iii. 244; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1219), *ib.*; and at Marlborough (1220), ii. 240; is under the charge of the bishop of Winchester, *ib.*; crowned again at Westminster, and the people ordered to wear garlands of flowers, *ib.*, 241; meets Alexander II. of Scotland at York, and marriage of his sister Joanna agreed on, *ib.*; present at the translation of St. Thomas at Canterbury, ii. 242; iii. 245; captures the castles of Sauvey and Rockingham, *ib.*; lays the first stone of the chapel of the Virgin at Westminster, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Oxford (1221), ii. 243; holds a council at Westminster, ii. 244; takes the castle of Biham, *ib.*; his lenity to the captured troops, ii. 245; marches to the castle of Builth, and forces Llewellyn to raise the siege, ii. 247; goes on to Montgomery, and builds a castle there, *ib.*; iii. 245; a scutage granted to him, *ib.*; gives his sister in marriage to the king of Scots, ii. 248; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1222),

Henry III. of England—*cont.*
ii. 249; iii. 246; deposes the magistrates of London, and appoints others, ii. 252; iii. 246; keeps Christmas at Oxford (1223), ii. 253; iii. 246; holds a council at London, at which the liberties previously sworn to are demanded, *ib.*; orders writs to be issued, to ascertain the liberties in the time of Henry I., *ib.*; sends to Louis VIII. to demand the restitution of Normandy and other continental territories, ii. 256; complaints made against him by Louis for non-observance of his oaths, ii. 257; he repents of his lenity to Louis, when in his power, *ib.*; iii. 247; Hubert de Burgh accused of giving him bad instruction, ii. 258; declared of age by the pope, and able to rule, *ib.*; the nobles who held of the crown, ordered to give up their castles, *ib.*; conspiracy formed against him, *ib.*, 260; iii. 248, 249; his liberality to the king of Jerusalem, in aid of the Holy Land, ii. 259; keeps Christmas at Northampton (1224), ii. 260; refuses to give back the castles surrendered by the rebellious nobles, ii. 261; iii. 248; holds a council at Northampton, ii. 262; iii. 249; besieges Bedford castle, ii. 263; spares only three of the garrison, ii. 264; commits Faukes [de Breaute] to the custody of the bishop of London, ii. 265; keeps Christmas at Westminster (1225), ii. 268; iii. 250; obtains an aid for the recovery of his dominions abroad, *ib.*; sends sealed copies of the charters of liberties, and of the forest, to every county, *ib.*; iii. 251; knights his brother Richard, and creates him earl of Cornwall and Poitou, ii. 269, 270; holds a conference with the nobles at Westminster, ii. 271; collection made of a moiety of the fifteenth on moveables, ii. 274; refuses to reply to the papal letters brought by the nuncio, ii. 275; or to pardon Faukes, ii. 276; iii. 252; permits Reimund de Burgh to marry the widow of the earl of Salisbury, ii. 277;

Henry III. of England—*cont.*
keeps Christmas at Winchester (1226), ii. 278; iii. 252; goes to Marlborough, where he is very ill, *ib.*; not able to attend the council at Westminster, ii. 279; forbids the prelates to subject their lay baronies to the Roman church, *ib.*; recovers from his sickness, ii. 280; his reply to archbishop Stephen, on the papal demands, ii. 284; refrains from making war on Louis, ii. 285; rejects the election to the see of Durham, and sends agents to Rome to prevent it, ii. 286; despatches envoys to the transmarine provinces, ii. 291, 295; keeps Christmas at Reading (1227), ii. 292; extorts money from the citizens of London and Northampton, *ib.*; declares himself of age at a council at Oxford, ii. 293; cancels the charters of forest-liberties, *ib.*; the clergy ordered to renew their charters with his new seal, ii. 294; seeks the daughter of the count of Britanny in marriage, but is refused, ii. 295; iii. 256; creates Hubert de Burgh earl of Kent, ii. 296; quarrels with earl Richard, *ib.*; grants to him his mother's dowry, and the lands of the counts of Britanny and Boulogne, ii. 297; keeps Christmas at York (1228), ii. 299; iii. 256; returns to London, and reforms the measures of wheat, wine, and ale, *ib.*; money is extorted by his officers, under this plea, iii. 256; rejects Walter de Heineshame, archbishop elect of Canterbury, ii. 302; iii. 257; keeps Christmas at Oxford (1229), ii. 306; iii. 258; invited by the nobles of Gascony and other provinces to come over to them, but postpones the matter, *ib.*; proceedings of his envoys at Rome, ii. 309; they promise a tax to the pope, in his name, to secure the election of Richard, as archbishop, ii. 309, 310; iii. 259; the emperor Frederic II. writes to him on the cession of the Holy Land, ii. 312; receives the nuncio Stephen favourably, iii. 259; summons

Henry III. of England –*cont.*
a council at Westminster, to consider the papal demand of a tithe, ii. 315; knights John, son of the justiciary Hubert, ii. 318; collects forces at Portsmouth, to embark, ii. 319; iii. 260; accuses Hubert of treachery, for not having provided ships enough, and postpones his expedition, *ib.*; receives the count of Britanny's homage, and restores his rights, *ib.*; is reconciled to Hubert, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at York (1230), with the king of Scots, ii. 320; iii. 261; makes him presents, *ib.*; returns to London, *ib.*; exacts money for his expedition, ii. 323; iii. 262; collects an army at Reading, and embarks at Portsmouth, *ib.*; lands at St. Malo, and the nobles of Britanny offer him homage, *ib.*; waits for reinforcements at Nantes, ii. 324; is invited to enter Normandy, but refuses, ii. 325; marches through Poitou into Gascony, ii. 326; iii. 262; captures the castle of Mirebeau, *ib.*; exhausts his treasure at Nantes, ii. 327; iii. 262; returns to England, and lands at Portsmouth, ii. 328; many of his nobles die from sickness, *ib.*; gives the lands of the earl of Gloucester to Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Lambeth (1231), ii. 329; iii. 262; holds a parliament at Westminster, and imposes a scutage, *ib.*; his reply to the archbishop's complaint about Tunbridge castle, ii. 330; sends envoys to Rome to oppose the archbishop's suit, *ib.*; collects an army at Oxford, and marches to Hereford, against Llewellyn, ii. 332; orders the abbey of Cumhyre to be burnt, but takes money for its redemption, *ib.*; rebuilds Castle Maud, *ib.*; iii. 263; makes a truce with France, ii. 333; iii. 263; is joined in Wales by the earls of Britanny and Chester, and Richard Mareschal, *ib.*; exiles the latter, but afterwards receives his homage, *ib.*; returns from Wales, ii. 336; is dissuaded from marrying a younger sister of the king of Scotland, *ib.*; iii. 263; grants the temporalties to Ralph, archbishop elect, ii. 337; denies all knowledge of the riots against the Italian clergy, ii. 338; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1232), *ib.*; convenes a parliament at Westminster, and demands an aid, ii. 339; the pope writes to him, to punish the authors of the riots, ii. 340; thinks it prudent to hush up the matter, *ib.*; iii. 264; excuses his inactivity against Llewellyn on account of the poverty of his exchequer, ii. 341; is reproached by his councillors for his prodigality, ii. 342; exacts strict accompts from the sheriffs and others, and punishes offenders, *ib.*; iii. 265; deposes Ranulph le Breton, and substitutes Peter de Rivaux as treasurer, *ib.*; deposes Hubert de Burgh, and demands his accompts, ii. 343; iii. 265; holds a parliament at Lambeth, in which an aid is granted to pay his debts, ii. 345; iii. 267; orders the mayor of London to bring Hubert de Burgh to trial, ii. 346; iii. 266; recalls the order, ii. 347; sends Godfrey de Craucumbe to arrest him, *ib.*; sends him back to Brentwood, and orders him to be watched, *ib.*; issues writs for the collection of the aid granted, ii. 349; directs Hubert to be taken to the Tower, ii. 350; seizes his treasure in the New Temple, *ib.*; restores his lands, ii. 351; sends him to the castle of Devises, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Worcester (1233), ii. 353; removes his natural subjects, and substitutes Poitevins, *ib.*; iii. 268; dismisses his councillors, and consults only the bishop of Winchester and Peter de Rivaux, *ib.*; exiles the nobles confederated against him, and gives their lands to Poitevins, ii. 356; foreign mercenaries join him at Gloucester, ii. 357; advances to Hereford, *ib.*, 361; declares the earl Mareschal's fealty void, and besieges his castle, ii. 358; iii. 269; orders Hubert de Burgh to be watched in the church of Devises, ii. 361; invades the lands of the earl Mareschal, *ib.*;

Henry III. of England—*cont.*
stays at the castle of Grosmont, ii. 362; his forces are defeated, and he returns to Gloucester, *ib.*; builds a church for converted Jews at London, ii. 362; iii. 269; founds a hospital at Oxford, ii. 363; iii. 269; keeps Christmas at Gloucester (1234), *ib.*; meets his parliament at Westminster, ii. 365; his evil councillors complained of by the prelates, *ib.*, 366; iii. 270; dismisses the bishop of Winchester and Peter de Rivaux, and sends back the Poitevins to their country, *ib.*; sends the archbishop elect and others to make peace with Llewellyn, *ib.*; recalls his natural subjects as councillors, ii. 367, 371, 372; comes to Woodstock, ii. 369; his grief at the death of the earl Mareschal, *ib.*; iii. 271; summons the exiled nobles to Gloucester, and is reconciled to them, ii. 370, 371; restores to Gilbert Mareschal his inheritance, *ib.*; seizes the English lands of the count of Britanny, ii. 372; iii. 271; keeps Christmas at Westminster (1235), ii. 375; iii. 271; some Jews brought to him and imprisoned, *ib.*; is reconciled to Stephen de Segrave and Robert Passelewe, ii. 376; gives his sister Matilda to Frederic II. in marriage, ii. 379; entertains the imperial envoys at a feast, *ib.*; three leopards sent to him by the emperor, because he bore them on his shield of arms, ii. 380; iii. 88 *n.*; amount expended by him on his sister's nuptials, ii. 381; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1236), ii. 385; iii. 272; sends an embassy to the count of Provence, to ask his daughter Alienor in marriage, *ib.*; espouses her at Canterbury, and is crowned with the queen at Westminster, ii. 386, iii. 273; reassembles the nobles at Merton, to discuss public affairs, *ib.*; refuses to send over earl Richard to the emperor, ii. 387; establishes new statutes at Merton, *ib.*; complaint made in parliament of his subservience to the bishop elect of Valence, ii. 388, 395; removes many sheriffs, and substitutes others, *ib.*, 389; banishes Richard Suard, ii. 389; demands his seal from the chancellor Ralph, *ib.*; takes Stephen de Segrave and Peter de Rivaux again into favour, ii. 391; receives gifts from the emperor, ii. 392; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1237), ii. 393; iii. 273; summons a parliament at London, and demands an aid of a tenth, *ib.*; promises to observe the liberties of Magna Carta, ii. 394; iii. 274; causes the sentence against the transgressors to be publicly renewed, *ib.*; adds some nobles to his council, *ib.*; grant of a thirteenth on all moveables made to him, ii. 395; angry with Hubert earl of Kent, on account of his daughter's marriage, *ib.*; iii. 274; asks the pope to send cardinal Otho to England as legate, ii. 398; iii. 274; receives him very honourably, *ib.*; forbids him to do anything against the dignity of the crown, ii. 400; summons a parliament at York, *ib.*; iii. 275; sends to the pope to delay the legate's recall, ii. 402, 404; iii. 275; keeps Christmas at Westminster (1238), ii. 403; iii. 275; accused of promoting the marriage of his sister to Simon de Montfort, *ib.*; angry with de Montfort on that account, ii. 405; iii. 276; orders some scholars of Oxford to be imprisoned, ii. 408; sends troops to aid the emperor, *ib.*; iii. 276; the Saracen princes apply to him for aid against the Tartars, ii. 409; favours the election of the bishop elect of Valence to the see of Winchester, ii. 410, 412; takes away the seal from the chancellor, ii. 412; iii. 277; escapes an attempt at assassination at Woodstock, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1239), ii. 416; iii. 278; creates Simon de Montfort earl of Leicester, ii. 417; recalls Stephen de Segrave to court, *ib.*; displeased at the marriage of the king of Scots to Mary de Coucy, ii. 419; fortifies the Tower of London, ii. 420; birth of his son Edward, ii. 422; iii. 279; orders Ranulph le Breton to be imprisoned, *ib.*; receives Thomas, count of Flanders, with

Henry III. of England—*cont.*
honours at London, ii. 425; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1240), ii. 428; iii. 280; creates Baldwin de Rivers earl of Devon, *ib.*; reproached by the emperor for allowing the papal exactions, ii. 429; imprisons prince Griffin of Wales, ii. 431, 483; the emperor writes to him, to refuse the pope's demand for a fifth, ii. 432; and again, on the misfortune in the Holy Land, ii. 434; takes the part of the papal agent against the clergy, ii. 436; present at the dedication of St. Paul's, ii. 439; recommends the queen's uncle, Boniface, to be bishop of Durham, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Westminster (1241), ii. 444; iii. 282; gives the earldom of Richmond to Peter of Savoy, and knights him, ii. 445; iii. 282; urges the election of Boniface as archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 448; leads an army into Wales, and subdues it, ii. 454; causes a gold shrine to be made for St. Edward, *ib.*; iii. 94, 284, 395; grants to Walter Mareschal his inheritance, ii. 455; quarrels with the bishop of Norwich for accepting his election to Winchester, *ib.*, 473; iii. 284; keeps Christmas at London (1242), ii. 460; iii. 284; goes to meet earl Richard on his return to England, *ib.*; iii. 285; resolves to go over to Poitou, ii. 461; obtains money from the prelates for his expedition, *ib.*; embarks at Portsmouth with the queen, ii. 462; iii. 285; retreats from Taillebourg to Blaye, ii. 464; is deceived by the promises of the countess of Bearn, *ib.*; makes a truce with Louis IX., ii. 465, 470; wastes his treasure in Gascony, *ib.*; iii. 286; keeps Christmas at Bordeaux (1243), ii. 468; iii. 286; orders some fortresses to be besieged, ii. 469; rejects the bishop elect of Coventry, *ib.*; appoints Nicholas de Molis seneschal of Gascony, ii. 471; returns home and lands at Portsmouth, *ib.*; iii. 286; accepts the bishop elect of Norwich, ii. 473; iii. 287; bestows great gifts on the countess of Provence, ii. 474; keeps Christmas at Wallingford, as the guest of earl Richard (1244), ii. 478; iii. 288; grants leave to the nuncio Martin to collect money for the pope, ii. 479; iii. 288; seizes the lands held in England by the Normans, ii. 480; iii. 289; appoints new councillors, *ib.*; is reconciled to the bishop of Winchester, ii. 485; iii. 289; encourages the Lords Marchers to oppose the Welsh, ii. 487, 489; pays a visit to St. Albans, ii. 488; seizes the baronies of the sees of Chichester and Chester, *ib.*, 489; iii. 290, 294; summons the count of Flanders to his aid against Scotland, *ib.*; recalls the bishop of Winchester from abroad, *ib.*; prevents military aid being sent to Scotland by John de Coucy, ii. 490; convokes a council, and demands an aid, ii. 491; iii. 291; the matter postponed, on account of the non-observance of Magna Carta, *ib.*; is asked to appoint a justiciary and chancellor, *ib.*; promises to amend what is complained of, *ib.*; summons the clergy separately, and asks a subsidy, ii. 491; the emperor again warns him not to allow contributions to the pope, ii. 492; an aid conceded to him, *ib.*; marches towards Scotland, ii. 494; iii. 291; makes peace with the king of Scots at Newcastle, *ib.*; causes the king's charter to be confirmed by the pope, *ib.*; marriage of his daughter to the son of the king of Scots postponed, ii. 488 *n.*; iii. 291; returns to London, ii. 494; again demands an aid, but is refused, ii. 496; extorts money from the Londoners and Jews, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at London, (1245), ii. 498; iii. 293; orders prayers to be made for male progeny, ii. 499; iii. 293; birth of his son Edmund, *ib.*; holds the feast of Pentecost at London, and knights Richard de Clare, ii. 502; makes inquiry of the amount of rents received by the Italian clergy in England, *ib.*; prohibits a tournament at Luton, ii. 503;

Henry III. of England—*cont.*
reproaches the nuncio for his exactions, and appoints him an escort to Dover, ii. 504; prepares an expedition to Wales, *ib.*; orders the temporalities of certain prelates consecrated by the pope, to be seized, ii. 505; restores Westminster abbey, with a new chapter-house, ii. 506; iii. 94, 295, 318; complains in the General Council at Lyons of the papal exactions, and of the tribute imposed by John, ii. 507; iii. 295; resumes hostilities in Wales, and sends for Irish forces, *ib.*; fortifies the castle of Gannoch, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at London (1246), iii. 3, 297; his anger at the papal mandate for paying off the debts of the see of Canterbury, iii. 4; summons a parliament in Lent, iii. 5; writes to the pope, against his oppression, iii. 6; knights the king of Man, iii. 8; restores the temporalities of the bishop of Chester, iii. 9; protests against the papal mandate in regard to intestate clergy, iii. 10; writes letters to the prelates, forbidding tallage to be paid to the pope, *ib.*; receives letters from the emperor and Walter de Ocra, on the conspiracy against the former's life, iii. 12; forbids the clergy to consent to the contribution demanded by the pope, iii. 13; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1247), iii. 15, 298; dines with the bishop, in sign of reconciliation, *ib.*; complaints made to him by parliament of the papal exactions, iii. 16; his three uterine brothers arrive in England, iii. 24, 300; stays at Woodstock, for the marriage of his wards, iii. 25, 298; marriage of his sister Alice to John earl Warren, iii. 25; his munificence to his brothers, iii. 26, 30, 31, 104, 301; orders a new coinage, to prevent clipping, iii. 27; carries the blood of Christ to the abbey of Westminster, iii. 29, 302; knights William de Valence, iii. 29; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1248), iii. 32, 302; dines with the bishop, *ib.*; assembles a parliament at London, and asks pecuniary aid, iii. 33; his exactions and extravagance reproved, *ib.*, 302; the non-appointment of a justiciary, chancellor and treasurer complained of, *ib.*; he promises amendment, but the business is postponed, iii. 34, 303; causes a new market or fair at Westminster to be proclaimed, iii. 35, 303; refuses to appoint a chancellor and other officers, except at his own pleasure, iii. 37, 51, 304, 344; again asks for pecuniary aid, and is denied, *ib.*; orders the plate in his treasury to be sold, iii. 38; keeps Christmas at London (1249), iii. 43, 305; extorts money from the citizens, *ib.*; asks a loan from the abbats and priors, *ib.*; takes the bishopric of Durham into his own hands, iii. 44, 305; endeavours to secure the election of his brother Athelmar, *ib.*; his wine is seized by robbers near Winchester, iii. 46; goes to Winchester and makes strict inquiry into the robberies, iii. 47, 306; his astuteness a subject of admiration, *ib.*; orders many of the malefactors to be hung, *ib.*; is the more angry, on account of the disgrace to the place of his birth, iii. 306; the king of France applied to, in regard to his rights abroad, iii. 49; receives the homage of the archbishop of Rouen, for lands in England, iii. 50; a special collect established for him and the queen, iii. 310; accepts the election of the bishop of Durham, iii. 60; gives to Westminster abbey a slab of marble, with the impression of the foot of Christ, *ib.*, 310; mediates between the abbat of Westminster and his convent, iii. 61, 121; grants new charters to Westminster, to the prejudice of the citizens of London, and abbey of St. Alban's, iii. 62; makes a grant of warren on the land of St. Alban's, contrary to charters, iii. 63; present at the dedication of Beaulieu abbey, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1250), iii. 68; dines with the bishop, *ib.*; keeps St. Edward's feast at London,

Henry III. of England—*cont.*
ib.; assumes the cross, iii. 71, 95; assembles the citizens at Westminster, and asks forgiveness for the taxes and exactions imposed, *ib.*; obtains from the pope authority to delay the departure of the English crusaders, iii. 72; the Gascons said to have extorted a grant of money from him, iii. 73; pardons Gaston of Bearn, *ib.*; visits the general chapter of the Friars Preachers, and supplies them with provisions, iii. 80, 314; restores to the Londoners some liberties, exacted by the abbat of Westminster, iii. 81; gives the custody of his seal to William de Kilkenni, *ib.*; his continental territories proposed to be restored by Louis IX., iii. 85; forces the monks of Winchester to elect Athelmar as bishop, iii. 86; sends to the pope for his confirmation, *ib.*; deceived by the emperor's promises of aid against France, iii. 91; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1251), iii. 98, 311; orders part of the woods of the see to be sold for his profit, *ib.*; omits to give festive robes at Christmas, and diminishes his table, iii. 98, 99; his court becomes venal, like that of Rome, iii. 99 *n.*; collects gold, with a view to his expedition to the East, iii. 99, 320; wishes to expel the Jews, by example of Louis, but is dissuaded, iii. 104; orders that no Jew should eat meat in Lent or on Friday, *ib.*; required by the pope to provide a living for a son of the count of Burgundy, *ib.*; behaves harshly to William de Cantelupe, iii. 108; visits St. Alban's, and makes gifts to the shrine, iii. 114; takes Philip Luvel into his service, iii. 115; keeps Christmas at York (1252), iii. 117, 321; celebrates the marriage of his daughter Margaret to Alexander III. of Scotland, and knights the king, *ib.*; extorts money from the Jews, iii. 118; grants a charter to the abbey of Westminster, to dispose of the possessions during a vacancy, iii. 121; gives Gascony to prince Edward, iii. 123, 145; convokes a parliament, and demands a tenth of church goods for the crusade, iii. 125, 322; agreed to by the prelates, if he would observe the liberties of Magna Carta, *ib.*, 132, 324; in consequence of his evasions, the parliament is dissolved, iii. 126; extorts money from the Londoners, *ib.*; the pope hopes to profit by his simplicity, iii. 127; peace made by his mediation between the archbishop and bishop of London, iii. 128, 131, 323, 324; grants rights of warren to the Cistercians, iii. 129; permits the nobles to injure their neighbours by keeping hunting dogs, iii. 323; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1253), iii. 130, 323; receives a present from the citizens, but exacts money from them, iii. 131, 323; seizes the goods of St. Augustine's, Canterbury, on the death of the abbat, iii. 132; gives a dowry to his niece [Alice], on her marriage to Gilbert de Clare, iii. 133, 324; asks certain abbats to be sureties, who refuse, *ib.*; fines the Londoners for ill-using some of his household, iii. 325; repents of the removal of the earl of Leicester from Gascony, *ib.*; orders musters to be made for defence of Gascony, iii. 134, 325; makes other laws, not carried out, not having the assent of the baronage, *ib.*; confirms privileges to Waltham abbey, iii. 135, 326; asks again for money at the re-assembling of parliament, iii. 136; an aid and scutage are granted, on his promising to observe the articles of Magna Carta, iii. 326; his behaviour while sentence of excommunication was pronounced against the transgressors, iii. 327; orders a proclamation in Gascony, that the earl of Leicester was no longer to be obeyed, iii. 138, 327; summons his retainers to accompany him to Gascony, iii. 139, 328; appoints earl Richard and the queen guardians of the kingdom, *ib.*; embarks at Portsmouth, and lands at

Henry III. of England—*cont.*
Bordeaux, iii. 140, 328; orders La Réole to be besieged, *ib.*; sends envoys to Spain, to ask the king's sister in marriage for prince Edward, iii. 144, 329; gives the custody of the lands of William de Vescy to a foreigner [Thomas of Savoy?], iii. 147, 330; keeps Christmas at Bazas, in Gascony (1254), iii. 331; accepts the bishop elect of Lincoln, *ib.*; sends for the queen and prince Edward, *ib.*; asks an additional grant of money from parliament, but is refused, iii. 334; appeases with difficulty a disturbance in his army, *ib.*; grants leave to the monks of Westminster to have extracts from the fine-rolls, *ib.*; gives Gascony, Ireland and Wales to prince Edward by charter, iii. 336; amount of treasure expended by him in Gascony, and on his uterine brothers, *ib.*; recommends the prior of Newburgh to be elected bishop of Carlisle, iii. 337; receives from the pope the offer of Sicily and Apulia for prince Edmund, iii. 338; sends money to the pope, and gives bonds for the sums he should borrow, *ib.*; writes to the citizens of Pons, on behalf of certain nobles, iii. 339; issues writs for an inquisition into the manors of the religious orders, *ib.*; prepares to return home, and obtains leave to pass through France, iii. 340; comes to Fontevraud, and transfers his mother's body into the church, iii. 341; falls sick at Pontigny, *ib.*; received very honourably in France, *ib.*; his numerous retinue, iii. 342; reception at Paris by the English scholars, *ib.*; he lodges in the Old Temple, and feasts the poor of the city, *ib.*; the king of France dines with him, with other royal personages, *ib.*; distributes gifts to the French nobles, and lodges in the palace of Louis, *ib.*; amount of money expended by him, *ib.*; comes to the coast, but detained by a contrary wind, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Boulogne (1255), *ib.*; lands at Dover, and accepts gifts from earl Richard and the prelates, iii. 343; makes Henry de Wengham keeper of the seal, *ib.*; receives a present from the citizens of London, but soon after lays a fine on them, *ib.*; extorts money from the Jews, and turns them over to earl Richard, *ib.*; an elephant is sent to him by Louis IX., iii. 344; visits St. Alban's, *ib.*; complains of his debts to parliament, and demands a tenth of the nobles, *ib.*; refuses to cede to them the appointment of the justiciary, chancellor and treasurer, *ib.*; the business is deferred, to prove his sincerity, in regard to the Great Charter, *ib.*; he violates it, by seizing the goods of the church of York, iii. 346; grants the wardship of the heir of Warin de Muncheinsil to William de Valence, iii. 347; marches to Scotland, to inquire into the charges against the guardians of that kingdom, *ib.*; causes the lands of Robert de Ros to be seized, *ib.*; after a conference with his daughter and the king of Scots, returns homewards, *ib.*; seizes a sum of money deposited in the church of Durham, *ib.*; assents to the proposal of the bishop of Hereford, to raise money, by use of the bishops' seals, iii. 348.

Henry, son of the emperor Frederic II. [by Yolande of Jerusalem], captured and imprisoned by his father, ii. 380; dies, ii. 468; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Henry, son of Frederic II. by Isabel of England, his birth, ii. 404; the Apulians, Sicilians and Calabrians swear fealty to, iii. 23; solicits Louis IX. to restore to Henry III. his continental rights, iii. 49, 308; receives some prisoners, iii. 100, 320; his prudent and courteous character, iii. 100; his death, ascribed falsely to his brother Conrad, iii. 336; caused by poison and strangulation, *ib.*; his shield of arms, *ib. n.*

Henry, son of David, king of Scots, receives the county of Huntingdon from Stephen, and does fealty, i. 254; his

Henry, son of David, king of Scots—*cont.*
bravery at the battle of Alverton, i. 260; given as a hostage to Stephen, i. 261; iii. 187; dragged off his horse at the siege of Ludlow, i. 262.

Henry, son of earl Richard of Cornwall, left in charge of Henry III. ii. 437; accompanies his father to France, iii. 69, 312.

Henry [of Dietz?], sent by the emperor Frederic I. with a letter to Saladin, i. 450.

Henry, clerk of the count of Flanders, ii. 425.

Henry of Pisa. *See* Pisa.

Heraclea, a city of Lycaonia, passed by the Crusaders, i, 87.

Heraclius. *See* Eraclius.

Herbert, papal legate, present at the settlement of the claim to primacy of the sees of Canterbury and York, i. 17.

Hercules, said to have slain the hydra, iii. 100.

Herdintone, Thomas de, knight, envoy at the Lateran Council, ii. 168.

Hereford, in Wales, the castle of, held against Stephen by William Taleboth, i. 258; Henry III. marches to, ii. 332; and again, ii. 357, 361.

Hereford, bishops of:
—— Ethelstan, dies, iii. 167.
—— Leovigar, chaplain of duke Harold, succeeds, iii. 167.
—— Walter, succeeds, iii. 167; consecrated at Rome, iii. 168.
—— Reinelm, appointed, but afterwards resigns, i. 190, 191; consecrated, i. 208.
—— Richard, his death, i. 240; iii. 185.
—— Robert [de Betun], appointed, i. 243; dies, i. 277; iii. 189.
—— Gilbert Folioth, nominated, i. 286; iii. 190; vision that appeared to him, *ib.*; present at the concord of the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318; translated to London, i. 320; iii. 195. *See* London, bishops of.

Hereford, bishops of:—*cont.*
—— Robert [de Maldon], archdeacon of Exeter, elected, i. 375.
—— Robert [Folioth], consecrated, i. 390.
—— William de Vere, consecrated, i. 437; iii. 206.
—— Giles or Gilo de Brause, consecrated, ii. 89; iii. 220; leaves the country, ii. 116; returns, ii. 140.
—— Hugh de Maneport [Mapenore], dies, ii. 240.
—— Hugh Folioth, consecrated, ii. 240; dies, ii. 374; iii. 271.
—— Ralph de Madenestene [Maidstone], Friar Preacher, succeeds, ii. 374; consecrated, ii. 375; sent envoy to Provence, to ask the count's daughter in marriage for Henry III. ii. 385.
—— Michael, [canon of Lichfeld,] elected, but resigns, ii. 438.
—— Peter de Egeblanke, or Egeblanche, of Provence, elected, and accepted by the king, ii. 438; recommended by Henry to the see of Durham, ii. 440; iii. 281; consecrated, ii. 442; goes to the Roman court, ii. 498; iii. 293; directed by the pope to pay off the debts of the see of Canterbury, iii. 4; present when the count of Savoy did homage, iii. 8; at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; proposes to raise money, by using some of the bishops' seals, iii. 348; goes to Rome, and communicates his plan to the pope, *ib.*

Hereford, Roger [de Breteuil], earl of. *See* Roger.

Hereford, Milo of Gloucester, earl of, takes the part of the empress Matilda, i. 263.

Hereford, Henry de Boun, earl of, taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212; iii. 240; at Dover, on the landing of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 221; iii. 242; dies, ii. 243; iii. 245; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Hereford and Essex, Humphrey de Boun, earl of, takes the part of earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 296; present at the baptism

Hereford and Essex, earl of—*cont.* of prince Edward, ii. 422; one of the Lords Marchers, who defeat the Welsh, ii. 488; iii. 290; death of his daughter [Matilda], countess of Winchester, iii. 126; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; constable of the army in Gascony, iii. 334; complains to the king of contempt of his authority by the Poitevins, *ib.*

Hereford, Henry de, uncle of William de Brause, slain by the Welsh, i. 394.

Heresy, some preachers of, expelled from England, i. 340; growth of, in Italy, suppressed by the Friars Preachers and Minorites, iii. 94, 318; definition of the term, iii. 145, 330.

Hereward, leader of the English against the Normans, i. 15; escapes to Scotland, *ib.*; fought against William I. as long as he lived, i. 16; iii. 170.

Hereward, castle of, built in the isle of Ely, by the English refugees, i. 15.

Herman, count, of Germany, joins the crusade, i. 66; helps to make a warlike machine at the siege of Nice, i. 82.

Hernisius, monk of Holm, in Norway, accompanies the abbat to Rome, iii. 300.

Hertford, writs sent to the sheriffs of, to watch Hubert de Burgh, ii. 348; writs to the abbats and priors of, for a loan, iii. 44.

Hertford, castle of, committed to the custody of Walter de Godardville, ii. 172; surrendered to prince Louis, ii. 200; iii. 238; the custody of it refused to Robert Fitz-Walter, *ib.*; death of Gilbert, earl Mareschal, at a tournament there, ii. 451; iii. 283; bestowed on William de Valence, iii. 26, 30, 301.

Hertford, earls of. *See* Clare.

Hertford, Thomas de, archdeacon of Northumberland, his death, iii. 328; was a pupil and companion of St. Edmund, archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; left his body to the brethren of Mount Carmel, iii. 329; a saint, although not canonized, *ib.*

Hidage, taken by Henry I. on his daughter's marriage, i. 210. *See* Carucage.

Hiesmes (*Oxomium*), castle of, fortified by Henry I., i. 232; iii. 183; subdued by count Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 261.

Hildebrand, pope. *See* Gregory VII.

Hildegardis, St., illustrious in Germany, by her miracles, ii. 444; iii. 93.

Hiltune, Alexander de, goes to Jerusalem, ii. 446.

Hinnom, valley of. *See* Ennon.

Historia Anglorum [the present work], date of its compilation, i. 9.

Historia Britonum, referred to, i. 17; Historia de Gestis Regum, ii. 143, 157; Historia Jerosolimitana, iii. 182, 207 *n.*; Historia Normanniæ or Normannorum, ii. 19, 73.

Historiæ, Historiæ Annalium, Historiæ S. Albani, referred to, iii. 186, 192, 194, 200, 207, 208, 212, 213, 216, 245, 247, 251, 263, 297.

Historiæ Hibernienses, referred to, i. 298.

History, reply to those who deny its value, *Prol.* i. 3; ancient and recent writers of, i. 4, 5; advantage of writing, iii. 319.

Hobrugge, Gervase de, precentor of St. Paul's, London, disregards the excommunication of the legate, ii. 181; excepted from the peace made with prince Louis, deprived of his benefices, and forced to go to Rome, ii. 224; iii. 243.

Hoiland (*Hoilandia*) in Lincolnshire, ravaged and made tributary to prince Louis, ii. 182; the crops in, burnt by John, ii. 190.

Hoiland (*Hoilandia, Houtlandia*), William, earl of, sent by John to the aid of the count of Flanders, ii. 138, 150; iii. 227.

Holborn (*Holeburne*), chapter of Friars Preachers held in their house at, iii. 80, 314.

Holland, William, count of, elected king of Germany by the pope's influence, iii. 23, 299, 316; his shields of arms, iii. 23; the electors do homage to him, iii. 29, 302; crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle,

Holland, William, count of—*cont.*
and proclaimed king, iii. 36, 303; defeated by the emperor Frederic II., iii. 68, 71, 83, 101, 312; the pope had endeavoured to make him emperor, iii. 68, 92, 101, 316; impoverished in fame and money, iii. 119; defends the French, as the ally of the countess of Flanders, iii. 333; attacks the Flemings, iii. 334; grants only a short truce to the French, iii. 337; his death, iii. 317.

Holm (*de Ulmo*), St. Benet [in Norfolk], abbey of, founded by Cnut, iii. 41, 162; Benedictine monks placed there, iii. 163.

Holm, St. Benet, abbey of, in the diocese of Nidros [Throndheim], Norway, iii. 41, 162; Benedictine monks placed there, and dedicated, iii. 163; the head of the Benedictine monasteries in Norway, iii. 40 *n.*, 41; the abbat sent to Rome, to ask for a visitor to reform his Order, iii. 40, 300; letters of pope Innocent IV., appointing Matthew Paris to the office, *ib.*, 304. *See* Paris, Matthew.

Holy Land, or Palestine, tax imposed in France, in aid of, i. 278; oppressed by the Saracens, i. 279; taxes raised in England for, i. 340; ii. 14, 91; iii. 209, 220; Henry II. engages to maintain two hundred knights in defence of, i. 372; gives a large sum in its aid, i. 424; its conquest undertaken by Saladin, i. 430; disastrous state of, i. 456, 457; report of its being given to the Greek emperor by Saladin, i. 457; archbishop Baldwin leaves his property in aid of, iii. 18; unfavourable news from, ii. 247, 483; Henry III. gives liberally to, ii. 259; the treasure bequeathed by Philip II. in aid of, spent by the pope, ii. 259; iii. 295; restored to the Christians by the Soldan of Babylon, ii. 311; bull in aid of, issued by Gregory IX., ii. 368; news of the cession of, by the Soldan of Damascus, ii. 440; invasion of, by the Chorasmians, ii. 483; iii. 289; offered to the pope by Frederic II., iii. 307. *See* Crusades.

Homme or Houlme, castle of, taken by duke Robert, i. 45.

Honorius II., pope, succeeds, i. 234; iii. 184; assigns a white habit to the Templars, i. 223; dies, i. 242, 245.

Honorius III., pope, canonizes Hugh, bishop of Lincoln, ii. 241; declares Henry III. of age and able to rule, ii. 258; orders the nobles to give up their castles to him, *ib.*; expends the treasure left by Philip II. in aid of the Holy Land, ii. 259; iii. 295; consecrates Alexander bishop of Chester, ii. 267; his letters to Henry III. not answered by the king, ii. 275; makes unheard-of exactions of money, ii. 276; his demand for the grant of prebends discussed in council, ii. 278; a similar demand made in France, ii. 281; iii. 353; recalls the nuncio Otho, ii. 284; grants letters to Louis VIII., prohibiting Henry from molesting his territories, ii. 285; his death, ii. 294; verses on his appearance, when believed to be dead, ii. 295.

Horace, quoted, ii. 258, 301; iii. 5.

Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem, masters of:

—— Roger [de Moulins], comes with the patriarch to offer the crown of Jerusalem to Henry II., i. 432; iii. 206.

—— [Guerin de Montaigu], accompanies the Crusaders to Damietta, ii. 227; the scaling ladders of his ship break, in attack on the Nile tower, ii. 228; one of the chiefs of the army at Acre, on the landing of Frederic II., ii. 304.

—— [William de Châteauneuf], taken prisoner by the Chorasmians, ii. 484; letters testimonial of, relative to the blood of Christ, iii. 29; his letters referred to, concerning the quarrel between the Soldans of Aleppo and Babylon, iii. 101; ransomed, iii. 106.

Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem, Theodoric, prior of, sent with reinforcements to the Holy Land, ii. 399; iii. 274.

Hospitallers, march with king Guy to the siege of Acre, i. 453; by their advice

Hospitallers—*cont.*
Richard I. returns home, ii. 38; John extorts money from, ii. 123; summoned to send representatives to the General Council at Rome, ii. 161; join with the Templars in an act of treachery towards the emperor Frederic II., ii. 313, 314; discord between them and the Templars, ii. 368; iii. 270; join the Templars in a battle with the Saracens, ii. 399; many slain at Gaza, ii. 433; their standard, *ib.*; persecuted by the Templars, and besieged in their house at Acre, ii. 472; slaughter of, in the battle with the Chorasmians, ii. 484; and at Mansourah, iii. 84, 95, 317.

Hovedene, manor of, assigned to Nicholas, bishop of Durham, on his resignation, iii. 44, 306, 321.

Hugh, St., made prior of a house of the Carthusian Order, [Witham, co. Som.,] i. 427. *See* Lincoln, bishops of.

Hugh the Great, count of Vermandois, brother of Philip I., assumes the cross, i. 56; iii. 176; imprisoned by the Greek emperor, i. 69; given up to duke Godfrey, *ib.*; leader of the first division against Corbaran, i. 120; sent by the chiefs to Alexius, but did not return, i. 130; again joins the crusade at Constantinople, i. 193; his death, and burial at Tarsus, i. 194.

Hulecotes, Philip de, appointed custodian of the territory between the Tees and Scotland, ii. 172; iii. 233; defends some castles for John in Northumberland, ii. 183; dies *s. p. m.*, i. 510.

Hungary, proceedings of the Crusaders in, under Godeschal, i. 65–67; traversed by the French under Louis VII., i. 279.

Hungary [Andrew II.], king of, his envoys present at the Lateran Council, ii. 168; account of the life of his daughter, St. Elizabeth, ii. 233; death of his queen [Gertrude], ascribed to an ambiguous sentence, *ib.*

Huntendune, William de, [prior of Hatfield,] sent to Rome, to oppose the episcopal visitation of St. Alban's, iii. 339.

Huntingdon, earldom or county of, given to Henry, son of David of Scotland, i. 254; restored by Henry II. to Malcolm III., i. 307; given to William [the Lion], i. 435.

Huntingdon, the body of St. Ivo found at, iii. 159.

Huntingdon, castle of, subdued by Henry II., i. 388; razed to the ground, i. 394.

Huntingdon, Symon [de St. Liz], earl of, his death, without heirs, i. 435.

Huntingdon, Henry, earl of. *See* Henry, son of David.

Huntingdon, [John le Scot,] earl of. *See* Chester.

Huntingefeld, William de, helps to subdue Essex and Suffolk for prince Louis, ii. 181.

Hurley, Richard, prior of, sent privately to the count of Provence, on the business of Henry III.'s marriage, ii. 385; made abbat of Evesham, ii. 393; Theobald, prior of, one of the commissioners at St. Alban's, to carry out the new statutes, iii. 115.

I.

Iconium, metropolis of Lycaonia, the Crusaders find it deserted, i. 87.

Iconium, [Noureddin,] Soldan of, collects forces against the Crusaders, i. 280; takes up a position on the borders of Lycaonia, *ib.*; defeats the army of Conrad III., i. 281; iii. 189.

Ierapolis [Baalbec], forces come from, to the aid of Antioch, i. 98.

Illegitimate persons, legitimated by papal dispensation, ii. 382; iii. 90.

Ina, king of England, son of Kenred, i. 302.

Ingelburga, or Botilda, sister of [Canute VI.] king of Denmark, married to Philip II., ii. 46; repudiated, and placed in a nunnery at Soissons, *ib.*; all her Danish suite sent home, *ib.*; France placed under an interdict on her account, ii. 85.

Innocent II., pope, succeeds, i. 242, 245; expelled from Rome, and retires to France, i. 244; iii. 185; crowns Louis [le Jeune] at Rheims, *ib.*; dedicates the church of Cluny, i. 245; gives the pall to archbishop Theobald, i. 261; dies, i. 273; iii. 189.

Innocent III., pope, consecrated, ii. 66; favours the new Order of Preachers, *ib.*; iii. 216; causes the seculars to be expelled from Coventry, and monks replaced, ii. 67; iii. 217; writes to Richard I. to remove archbishop Hubert from the post of justiciary, ii. 69; iii. 217; orders the archbishop to pull down the church at Lambeth, ii. 69, 75; elects Otho IV. as emperor, ii. 83; obtains a tax in aid of the Holy Land, ii. 91; iii. 220; reserves his decision as to the election to the see of Canterbury, ii. 105; iii. 222; decides in favour of the monks against the suffragan bishops, ii. 107; favours the Order of Minorities, ii. 109; iii. 223; writes to John on behalf of Stephen de Langetune, ii. 112, iii. 223; angry letters between him and John, ii. 113, 114; threatens John with an interdict, ii. 115; iii. 224; excommunicates Otho IV., and excites Frederic, king of Sicily, against him, ii. 121; absolves John's subjects from their fealty, ii. 125; calls on Philip II. and the French and English nobles to rise up against John, ii. 129, 130; pronounces sentence of deposition against him, ii. 130; dictates to Panduiph the form of submission required from John, ii. 131; John resigns England and Ireland to him by charter, ii. 135, 146; directs a crusade to be preached against the Albigeois, ii. 143; writes to the legate Nicholas to fill up the vacant sees and abbeys, ii. 146;

Innocent III., pope—*cont.*
summons a General Council at Rome, and condemns the work of abbat Joachim as heretical, i. 416; ii. 161; complaints made to him of the barons' rebellion, ii. 161; terms John his "vassal," ii. 162, 166; iii. 233; annuls the great Charter of Liberties granted by John, ii. 162; iii. 232; writes a threatening letter to the barons, *ib.*; excommunicates them, ii. 166; iii. 233; and again, by name, ii. 172; annuls the election of the archbishop of York, ii. 166; iii. 233; presides at the fourth Lateran Council, ii. 167; iii. 233; confirms the suspension of the archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 169; iii. 233; gives up his intention of deposing the archbishop, and absolves him, ii. 174; iii. 234; exacts money from the prelates at the General Council, *ib.*; sends the legate Walo to arrest the progress of prince Louis against John, ii. 175; dies, ii. 215; his policy carried out, to land a Christian army in Egypt, ii. 227; his interpretation of the ambiguous sentence concerning the queen of Hungary, ii. 233; his decree referred to, for holding pluralities, ii. 382.

Innocent IV., pope, cardinal Sinebald, a Genoese, elected by that name, ii. 472; iii. 287; renews the sentence of Innocent III. against Frederic II., *ib.*; confirms Boniface as archbishop of Canterbury, and William bishop of Winchester, ii. 472; procures the election of the landgrave of Thuringia as king of Germany, ii. 475; iii. 287; peace fruitlessly treated of with the emperor, *ib.*; sends the nuncio Martin to England, to collect money, ii. 478; iii. 288; a prebend at Salisbury promised to his nephew, ii. 480 *n.*; favours the offer of prince David to make Wales tributary to him, ii. 483 *n.*; tries to reconcile the king with the bishop of Winchester, ii. 484; iii. 289; flies from Rome, and embarks at Cività Vecchia, ii. 486; touches at an island belonging to Pisa, *ib.*; arrives

Innocent IV., pope—*cont.*
at Genoa, and promises great benefits to the citizens and his relations, *ib.*; iii. 290; proclaims Frederic a persecutor of the church, *ib.*; animates the landgrave to take the title of king of Germany, ii. 487; writes to the English prelates to grant an aid to the king, ii. 491; iii. 291; money demanded from the abbats by virtue of his letters, ii. 492; confirms the charter of peace of the king of Scots, ii. 494; betakes himself to Asti, and thence to Lyons, ii. 496; iii. 92, 317; excommunicates the emperor again, ii. 500; his mandate for a General Council issued in England, *ib.*; iii. 293; his chamber or treasury burnt at Lyons, ii. 501; iii. 293; report of its being done to raise money, ii. 501 *n.*; amount of rents received by Italians, by papal authority, ii. 502; letters of complaint of his exactions laid before the General Council, *ib.*, 503, 507; iii. 129; complaints made to him by the nuncio Martin, ii. 504; iii. 294; consecrates some English prelates, ii. 505; writes to the clergy of Canterbury, to order the payment of the debts of the see, iii. 3, 4; letters of complaint addressed to him by the king, prelates, and nobles, iii. 6; assists the landgrave with money, iii. 7, 299; proposes to take the goods of the rich intestate clergy into his hands, iii. 9; appoints the bishops of Winchester and Norwich collectors of the tallage to be paid to him, iii. 10; letter to him from the Soldan of Babylon, iii. 11; accused of conspiring against the life of the emperor, iii. 12; exacts a payment from the beneficed clergy, and appoints the bishop of London to carry it out, *ib.*; canonizes St. Edmund of Canterbury, iii. 13; some French nobles conspire against him, iii. 16; letters of remonstrance to him from the province of Canterbury against exactions, iii. 17; sends two Minorities to England, to collect money, iii. 18; contribution granted him by the prelates, iii. 19; his mandate revoked, respecting intestate clergy, iii. 21 *n.*; emissaries are bribed to kill him, iii. 21, 299; conceals himself at Lyons, *ib.*; procures the election of William of Holland as king of Germany, iii. 23; expends large sums for this purpose, *ib.*, 68, 71, 299; had assisted the emperor Baldwin with money, iii. 24; envoys come to him from the khan of the Tartars, iii. 38, 304; his intention to employ them against Vataces and Frederic, iii. 39; writes to the abbat of St. Alban's to send Matthew Paris to Norway, iii. 40, 304; will not listen to overtures made by the emperor, iii. 307; refuses the application of Louis IX. to make peace with Frederic, iii. 49, 307; releases laics from their crusade vows on payment of money, iii. 308; gives the see of Mentz and the revenue of the abbey of Volsa to the archbishop of Cologne, iii. 53; grants to the Cistercians the privilege to establish schools, iii. 57; complaints made to him of the oppression of the English clergy by papal Provisions, iii. 58; grants a mandate to the bishop of Lincoln to resume the churches held without consent of his chapter, iii. 69; reply to the bishop, on complaint of this mandate being evaded, iii. 70, 312; permits Henry III. to delay the embarkation of the English crusaders, iii. 72; leaves Milan, and stays at Perugia, iii. 105, 321; requires Henry to provide a benefice for the son of the count of Burgundy, iii. 107; his letter to the abbat of St. Alban's, in favour of John de Camezana, his nephew, iii. 108; leaves Lyons, escorted by an armed force, iii. 109, 321; excommunicates Conrad, son of Frederic, and all his adherents, iii. 111; makes some new Decretals, iii. 113, 321; creates seven cardinals at Perugia, iii. 118; grants liberty of election to ecclesiastical dignities, iii. 123; gives a bull to Henry III. for a tenth of the church revenues, iii.

Innocent IV., pope—*cont.* 125; offers the kingdom of Apulia to earl Richard of Cornwall, iii. 126, 323; refuses to advance money to him, or give security, iii. 127, 132, 323; extorted more benefices for aliens than all his predecessors, iii. 129, 317, 323 [*cf.* ii. 502, 503]; limits the procurations paid on episcopal visitations, iii. 134; urged to return to Rome, and does so, iii. 136, 326; orders a visitation of the Black Order, and the observance of certain new statutes, iii. 139, 327; the monks in France escape, by paying him money, *ib.*; letter to him from Robert bishop of Lincoln, refusing to comply with the papal requisition, iii. 140, 329; his anger on receipt of the letter, iii. 144, 329; forbids the clergy to study the mechanical arts (law and science), iii. 332; proposes to throw the bones of the bishop of Lincoln out of the church, and his vision thereon, *ib.*; quarrels with Conrad, king of Sicily, iii. 336; certain Greek nobles accuse him of false doctrine, iii. 337; offers the kingdom of Sicily and Apulia to Henry III. for prince Edmund, iii. 338; collects forces, with the money sent by Henry, *ib.*; on the death of Conrad, occupies Apulia, *ib.*; dies at Naples, iii. 341; vision respecting him seen by a cardinal, *ib.*; a similar vision seen by pope Alexander IV., iii. 344; masses ordered to be said for him, *ib.*

Interdict, sentence of, France laid under, ii. 83, 85; iii. 219; pronounced against England, ii. 115, iii. 224, 316; cessation of the sacraments during, and bodies buried in the highways, ii. 116; relaxation of, ii. 149; verses on, iii. 224.

Inundations, of the sea, and floods, ii. 395, 467, 489; iii. 21, 36, 54, 76, 85, 91, 96, 149, 286, 303, 315, 317, 321, 339.

Investitures, lay, decrees of councils respecting, i. 52, 191, 413; Henry I. concedes the right of granting, i. 207; dispute respecting, between Paschal II. and the emperor Henry V., i. 216.

Ipswich (*Gipeswicum*), town of, compelled to pay ransom by the barons, ii. 184.

Ireland, four archbishoprics established there by the legate, i. 292; legend of St. Patrick's Purgatory in, i. 297; papal bull granted to Henry II. to subdue it, i. 304; iii. 193; invaded by him, i. 369; the prelates and some of the "reguli" swear fealty to him, i. 370; English laws established in, i. 371; the castles and cities committed to safe custody, *ib.*; prince John crosses over to, i, 434; John lands there with an army, ii. 122; receives the homage of the "reguli" at Dublin, *ib.*; appoints custodians and sheriffs, *ib.*; iii. 225; also a justiciary, who changes the form of the money, *ib.*; made tributary to the pope, ii. 146; iii. 316; Richard, earl Mareschal, carries on war there against Henry III., iii. 367; atmospheric phenomena seen in, iii. 391; forces come from, who ravage Anglesey, ii. 507; iii. 296; hatred of the Irish to the Welsh, *ib.*; granted to prince Edward, iii. 336.

Isaac Angelus, emperor of Constantinople. *See* Cursac.

Isaac Comnenus, emperor of Cyprus. *See* Cursac.

Isabel, [*called incorrectly* Margaret,] daughter of Baldwin, count of Hainault, by Margaret, sister of Philip of Flanders, married to Philip II., i. 423.

Isabel, [*named by error* Hawise,] daughter of William, earl of Gloucester, married to prince John, iii. 5, 14; divorced on account of consanguinity, ii. 86; iii. 220.

Isabel, daughter of [Aimar], count of Angoulême, affianced to Hugh Brun, count of La Marche, ii. 86, 93; married to king John, and crowned at Westminster, *ib.*; iii. 220; again crowned, ii. 88; birth of her son Henry, ii. 114; and of Richard, ii. 117; iii. 224; her death as countess of La Marche, iii. 15, 298; buried at Fontevraud, iii. 298; her body transferred inside the church, iii. 341.

Isabel, sister of Henry III., asked in marriage by the emperor Frederic II., ii. 378; espoused by a ring, and saluted as empress, ii. 379; placed in the charge of the bishop of Exeter and Ralph Fitz-Nicholas, *ib.*; embarks, and lands at Antwerp, *ib.*; escorted by an armed force, for fear of Louis IX., ii. 380; comes to Cologne, and marriage consummated, *ib.*; iii. 272; amount of her dowry, *ib.*; her English retinue dismissed, except two females, *ib.*; committed to the charge of Moorish eunuchs, iii. 381; birth of her son Henry, ii. 404; iii. 376; has an interview with her brother Richard, ii. 452; dies in childbirth, ii. 459; iii. 284.

Isabel, widow of Hugh, earl of Arundel, founds the nunnery of Marham, iii. 106, 321.

Isabel, countess of Gloucester and Cornwall. *See* Gloucester.

Issoudun, given up to Richard, by Philip II., ii. 56.

Italians or Romans, benefices given to unworthy, by the legate, ii. 147; iii. 229; an instance related, iii. 229; on this account their crops pillaged, and some ill-treated, ii. 337, 338; iii. 263; the authors of the disturbance discovered, but the matter hushed up, ii. 340; Hubert de Burgh accused of having authorized the riots, ii. 343; Roger, bishop of London, charged with conniving at them, ii. 352; estimate made of the rents or benefices held by them in England, ii. 502; iii. 294; the concession that the benefices of Italian clerks deceased should not be given at once to others, set aside by Innocent IV., iii. 109; estimate of the amount of benefices extorted for aliens by him, iii. 129, 323. *See* Provisions.

Ivo, or Ive, St., of Eastern origin, iii. 77; his body found not far from Huntingdon, iii. 159; translated to Ramsey abbey, i. 271 *n.*; iii. 77; miraculous opening of his tomb, iii. 77.

J.

Jacinctus, cardinal. *See* Celestine III., pope.

Jacobites or Jacobins. *See* Dominicans.

James, St., his hand given to Reading abbey, i. 247.

Jebus, a name of Jerusalem, from Jebusæus, i. 160.

Jebusæus, reigned at Jerusalem, i. 160; driven out by David, *ib.*

Jeroboam, his sin at Bethel, i. 159.

Jerome, St., ecclesiastical writer, *Prol.* i. 4; referred to, i. 160.

Jerosolima, a name of Jerusalem in the reign of Solomon, i. 160.

Jersey (*Gereseie*), isle of, John lands there, ii. 141.

Jerusalem, kingdom of, offered to Henry II., i. 431, 433; iii. 206; the maritime portion under the power of Saladin, i. 451; the Soldan of Egypt offers to give up, ii. 236.

Jerusalem, kings of:

—— *See* Amalric I.; Anjou, Fulk of; Baldwin I., II., III., IV., V.; Breisne, John de; Champagne, Henry of; Godfrey of Lorraine; Lizinnun, Guy de; Montferrat, Conrad of.

Jerusalem, city of, miserable condition of the Christians in, i. 57; forces collected from, to the aid of Antioch, i. 98; fortified by the Turks, i. 138; arrival of the Crusaders at, *ib.*; disposition of the forces at the siege of, i. 139; first assault of, *ib.*; second assault, i. 141; third assault, i. 143; supplies brought to, by the Genoese, i. 141; capture of, i. 144; iii. 177; date of capture, i. 145; massacre of the Turks in, i. 146; the churches cleansed and consecrated, i. 148; spoils found in, i. 149; site and topography of, i. 158, 160; the metropolis of Judæa, i. 159; origin of the name, and various names, *ib.*; besieged by Titus, i. 160; repaired by Adrian and named Ælia, *ib.*;

Jerusalem, city of—*cont.*
its site altered, *ib.*; sacred places within the city, i. 161; sees subject to the patriarch of, *ib.*; religious houses in, i. 162; notable localities in the vicinity, *ib.*; the emperor Conrad III. arrives at, i. 281; Louis VII. received there honourably, i. 283; besieged by Saladin, and capitulates, i. 443; iii. 207; its condition afterwards, i. 456; secret information respecting, sent to Richard I., ii. 31; a hermit predicts to Richard, he will not take it, ii. 33; iii. 212; the walls and towers destroyed by Coradin, ii. 229; the Soldan of Egypt proposes to surrender it, and repair the walls, ii. 236; restored to the Christians, ii. 311; entered by the army under Frederic II., and purified, ii. 312; divine service read in the suburban churches, *ib.*; twice destroyed, by the Chorasmians, and by the Soldan, iii. 90; 317.

Jerusalem, churches of:
—— Temple, slaughter of the Turks in, i. 146; residence of the knights at, i. 162, 223; the Cross taken down, and religion of Mahommed proclaimed in, i. 444; spared by Coradin, ii. 229; purified by Frederic II., ii. 312; another Temple, with clerks, i. 162.
—— Holy Sepulchre, the standard of Elafdal offered in, by Robert of Normandy, i. 155; Joppa subject to the canons of, i. 162; king Godfrey buried in, i. 185; miraculous light in, i. 230; iii. 182; king Fulk buried in, i. 272; a tribute set on, by Saladin, i. 444; keys of, offered to Henry II., i. 431; purified by the Christians, ii. 312.
—— Resurrection and Passion, in Calvary or Golgotha, visited by the princes, i. 147; included within the walls by Adrian, i. 160; black canons there, under an abbat, i. 162; made tributary by Saladin, i. 444; miraculous letter hung over the altar of St. Simeon in, ii. 87.
—— St. Stephen, where Stephen was stoned, i. 163.

Jerusalem, churches of:—*cont*
—— St. Mary, in the valley of Jehosaphat, where the Virgin was buried, i. 161, 163; black canons there, under an abbat, i. 162; the abbat of, was at the battle near Gaza, ii. 484.
—— Mount Olivet, of regular canons, under an abbat, i. 162.
—— Mount Syon, outside the walls, i. 139; sepulchre of St. Stephen there, *ib.*; regular canons at, under an abbat, i. 162.

Jerusalem, gates of:
—— St. Stephen, on the north, i. 139, [*called* St. Paul,] 145; key of it sent to Richard I., ii. 31.
—— Tower of David, on the west, i. 139; spared by Coradin, ii. 229.

Jerusalem, patriarchs of:
—— Simeon, his conversation with Peter the Hermit, i. 57.
—— Arnulph [de Rohes], elected by favour of Robert of Normandy, i. 150; dies, *ib.*
—— Daibert, elected, i. 150; names of his suffragans, i. 161; crowns Baldwin I., i. 186.
—— Arnulph, flight of, from the battle against Menduc, i. 218.
—— [Gormond], defeats Balac, before Joppa, i, 233.
—— William [de Malines], performs the burial service over king Fulk, i. 272.
—— Eraclius, sent to Henry II. to offer him the crown of Jerusalem, i. 432; iii. 206; comes to Rome, and obtains letters from pope Lucius to Henry, *ib.*; received at Reading, and offers the keys of the holy places and banner of Jerusalem, i. 432; at Rouen with Henry, i. 434; is promised aid by Philip nnd Henry, *ib.*; returns to the East, *ib.*
—— [Albert], present when the duke of Burgundy was convicted of receiving bribes from Saladin, ii. 32.
—— [Rodulph], attended the Lateran Council at Rome, ii. 167.

Jerusalem, patriarchs of:—*cont.*

—— [Lotharius], accompanies John, king of Jerusalem, from Acre to Damietta, ii. 227; offers prayers for success of attack on the Nile tower, ii. 228.

—— [Gerald], one of the chiefs of the army, on the landing of Frederic II. at Acre, ii. 303; purifies the Temple and churches in Jerusalem, ii. 312; writes a letter to defame the emperor, ii. 315; aids in the reform of the brethren of St. Thomas, Acre, ii. 410; gives them license to wear a special sign, *ib.*; iii. 277.

—— [Robert], letters testimonial of, relative to the blood of Christ, iii. 29, 302.

Jervaux [*Girivallis*], abbey of, persecuted by Peter of Savoy, iii. 129.

Jesus Christ, washed his feet in the fountain at Emmaus, i. 137; supped with his disciples on Mount Sion, i. 139; discovery of his tunic at Argentan, i. 306; iii. 193; miraculous shedding of blood from an image of, i. 442; a portion of his blood given to Henry III., and bestowed on the abbey of Westminster, iii. 29, 302; certified by letters of the patriarch of Jerusalem and others, *ib.*; impression of his foot on marble brought by a Friar Preacher to Henry, iii. 29 *n.*, 60, 310; given to Westminster, *ib.*

Jew, the Wandering. *See* Joseph Cartaphila.

Jews, massacre of, at Cologne, i. 66; decree concerning, in the Lateran Council, i. 412; present at the coronation of Richard I., although prohibited, ii. 9; despoiled, and slain, *ib.*; used magical arts, *ib.*; Richard forbids their molestation, *ib.*; imprisoned, and money extorted from, by John, ii. 121; compelled to pay a third of their goods for the expedition of Henry III. to Britanny, ii. 323; a church for the converts built at London, ii. 362; iii. 269; seven imprisoned, for circumcising a boy at Norwich, ii. 375; iii. 271; obtain new privileges from the pope, ii. 378; allowed to keep Christian servants, *ib.*; slaughter of, in Spain, and elsewhere, ii. 391; proclamation in England that no one should injure them, ii. 392; Henry extorts money from, ii. 496; iii. 292; and again, iii. 76, 118, 322; not pitied, because often convicted of forgery, *ib.*; a boy crucified at Lincoln by, iii. 318; driven out of France by Louis IX., iii. 103, 133, 324; a few only allowed to remain, iii. 104; Henry III. wished to follow his example, ii. 104; iii. 320; he orders that they shall not eat meat in Lent or on Fridays, *ib.*; a large sum demanded from them by earl Richard of Cornwall, iii. 334; ask leave to quit the kingdom, *ib.*, 343; money again extorted from, iii. 343; turned over to earl Richard to be mulcted, *ib.*

Joachim, abbat of Flor, writes against Peter Lombard, i. 415; his errors condemned as heretical, by Innocent III., i. 416; iii. 203.

Joanna, or Johanna, daughter of Henry II. and Alienor, her birth, i. 337; iii. 196; accompanies her father to England, i. 384; married to William, king of Sicily, i. 395; iii. 202; delivered to her husband at St. Gilles, *ib.*; placed by Richard I. in La Baignare, Sicily, ii. 17; returns home with him, ii. 39.

Joanna, sister of Henry III., contracted in marriage to Alexander II. of Scotland, ii. 241; married to him at York, ii. 248; comes to England, to visit her brother, ii. 405; her death, and burial at Tarent, ii. 405; iii. 276.

John the Baptist, killed and buried at Sebaste, i. 159, 163; baptized Christ in the Jordan, ii. 313.

John XVIII., pope, iii. 160.

John, king of England, son of Henry II. and Alienor, his birth, i. 340; evil presages respecting, yet unborn, and when baptized, *ib.*; surnamed "Sine Terra," i. 373; betrothed to [Alice] daughter of the count of Maurienne, *ib.*; iii. 202; accompanies his father to England, i.

John, king of England—*cont.*
384; constituted heir of William, earl of Gloucester, i. 396; knighted at Windsor, i. 433; iii. 206; goes to Ireland, i. 434; Philip II. requires he should take the cross, i. 458; Richard I. confirms to him his lands in England, with the earldom of Mortain, ii. 3; gives him Isabel of Gloucester, with the earldom, ii. 5; marries her, against the prohibition of archbishop Baldwin, *ib.*; several counties or earldoms granted to him by Richard, ii. 13; complains to the legate of the interdict laid on his lands by the archbishop, ii. 14; the interdict released, *ib.*; at his instance, a meeting held against the chancellor, ii. 28; spreads reports of Richard's death, to secure England to himself, i. 38; makes alliance with Philip, and attempts to seize the throne, ii. 45; iii. 214; Evreux given to his charge by Philip, *ib.*; his castles taken by Richard, ii. 47; humbles himself, and is forgiven, ii. 48; iii. 214; makes a foray before Beauvais, ii. 59; sends archbishop Hubert and earl Mareschal to England, to receive the fealty of the nobles, ii. 78; his shield of arms, *ib.*; takes possession of the treasure of the late king at Chinon, *ib.*; captures Le Mans, and subdues the rebels, ii. 79; iii. 219; assumes at Rouen the insignia of the duchy of Normandy, *ib.*; iii. 219; lands at Shoreham, and is crowned at London, ii. 80; iii. 219; speech of archbishop Hubert in his favour, as king by election, *ib.*; bound by a triple oath, to protect the church and observe good laws, *ib.*; visits St. Alban's, ii. 81; crosses over to Normandy, and collects forces, *ib.*; iii. 219; makes a truce with Philip, *ib.*; joined by the count of Flanders and others, *ib.*; holds conferences between Butavant and Gaillon [Guletune], ii. 82, 84, 85; refuses Philip's demands, ii. 82; Le Mans delivered up to him, *ib.*; receives promises of assistance from Otho IV., ii. 83; agrees to give up Evreux, on the marriage of prince Louis to his niece Blanche, ii. 84; goes to England, and imposes a hidage, ii. 85; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; his treaty with Philip carried into effect, ii. 85; divorces his wife on account of consanguinity, and marries Isabel, [*named incorrectly* Hawise] daughter of the count of Angoulême, ii. 86; iii. 220; meets Philip at Vernon, where Arthur does homage for Britanny, ii. 86; his anger against the archbishop of York, ii. 87; lands at Dover with the queen, ii. 88; crowned at Westminster, *ib.*; iii. 220; summons William of Scotland to meet him at Lincoln, *ib.*; present at the burial of bishop Hugh at Lincoln, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Guildford (1201), ii. 89; offended with archbishop Hubert for imitating him, *ib.*; goes to Northumberland, and exacts money, *ib.*; crowned with the queen at Canterbury, *ib.*; summons the nobles to Portsmouth, to accompany him abroad, ii. 90; keeps Pentecost at Portsmouth, *ib.*; embarks for Normandy, *ib.*; iii. 220; holds a conference with Philip at Andely, *ib.*; goes to Paris, and lodged in the king's palace, *ib.*; does homage to Philip, iii. 220; returns to Chinon, ii. 91; makes a treaty of peace with Philip, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Argentan (1202), ii. 92; iii. 220; holds another conference with Philip at Guletune, and refuses his demands, *ib.*; marches to the aid of queen Alienor at Mirebeau, ii. 93; defeats the French and Poitevins, *ib.*; iii. 221; captures Arthur, and sends him to Falaise, and the nobles to Normandy and England, ii. 94; iii. 221; his interview with Arthur at Falaise, ii. 95; sends him to stricter prison at Rouen, *ib.*; his death ascribed to, by the French, *ib.*, 96, 97; iii. 221; comes to England, and crowned again at Canterbury, ii. 96; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Caen (1203), *ib.*; his scoffing reply to his nobles, on the losses in Nor-

John, king of England—*cont.*
mandy, *ib.*; spends his time in feasting and sloth at Rouen, ii. 97; his nobles desert him, *ib.*, 98; returns to England, and lands at Portsmouth, ii. 98; iii. 221; exacts from the nobles a seventh part of their moveables, *ib.*; his continental dominions claimed by Philip, ii. 99; keeps Christmas at Canterbury (1204), ii. 100; iii. 221; holds a council at Oxford, where a scutage is granted, *ib.*; the castellans of his transmarine territories send to him for aid against Philip, ii. 101; he tells them to shift for themselves, and loses his provinces abroad, ii. 102; iii. 89, 316; employs himself in collecting money, *ib.*; founded the abbey of Beaulieu, ii. 103, 194; iii. 63; keeps Christmas at Tewkesbury (1205), ii. 103; assembles an army and fleet, and embarks at Portsmouth, *ib.*; lands again at Studland, near Wareham, ii. 103; iii. 222; exacts a large sum from the nobles, *ib.*; manifests joy at the death of archbishop Hubert, ii. 104; iii. 222; recommends John, bishop of Norwich, to be elected archbishop, ii. 105; iii. 222; present at his election at Canterbury, ii. 106; keeps Christmas at Oxford (1206), ii. 106; iii. 222; sends to Rome, to secure the election of the bishop of Norwich, *ib.*, 111; captures the castle of Montauban, and returns from Poitou, ii. 107; concludes a truce with Philip, ii. 108; keeps Christmas at Winchester (1207), *ib.*; iii. 223; extorts a tax from the laity and clergy, *ib.*; entertains the emperor Otho at London, *ib.*; receives from him promises of aid against Philip, ii. 109; his anger at the election of archbishop Langetune, ii. 112; iii. 223; expels the monks from Canterbury, ii. 113; iii. 223; writes threatening letters to the pope, ii 113, 114; birth of his son and heir Henry, ii. 114; keeps Christmas at Windsor (1208), *ib.*; becomes a tyrant to all, *ib.*; is contumacious in regard to Langetune's election, and has a sentence of interdict pronounced, ii. 115; orders the prelates to leave the country, and confiscates the church property, ii. 116; directs the granaries of the clergy to be locked up, *ib.*; exacts homage from the nobles, ii. 117; sends soldiers to capture William de Brause, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Bristol (1209), *ib.*; iii. 224; forbids the capture of birds throughout England, *ib.*; gives money to the duke of Saxony, for the emperor, *ib.*; acquires the hatred of all persons, ii. 118; marches towards Scotland, and prepares for battle at Norham, *ib.*; reproaches the king of Scotland for harbouring his enemies, ii. 119; makes peace with him, on payment of money, *ib.*; iii. 224; orders the hedges and ditches in forests to be burnt and levelled, *ib.*; takes the homage of his free tenants, and homage of the Welsh nobles at Woodstock, *ib*; gives leave to the bishop elect of Lincoln to be consecrated by the archbishop of Rouen, ii. 120; seizes the bishopric of Lincoln, ii. 121; makes Walter de Grai chancellor, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Windsor (1210), *ib.*; iii. 224; extorts money from the Jews, *ib.*; his hatred to the pope, *ib.*; collects an army at Pembroke, and crosses to Dublin, ii. 122; iii. 225; receives homage of the "reguli," *ib.*; establishes bailiffs, and appoints a justiciary, *ib.*; subdues the rebels, *ib.*; seizes the wife of William de Brause, with her son and wife, and sends them prisoners to Windsor, *ib.*; returns to England, *ib.*; calls a meeting of the clergy, and exacts money from them, ii. 123; iii. 225; mulcts the Cistercians, *ib.*, 151; keeps Christmas at York (1211), ii. 124; marches into Wales, as far as Snowdon, and takes hostages, *ib.*; meets the pope's nuncios at Northampton, but their negotiation fails for peace with the church, *ib.*; takes a scutage from the knights not in the ex-

John, king of England—*cont.*
pedition to Wales, *ib.*; grants lands to the count of Boulogne, and receives his homage, ii. 125; iii. 225; Llewellyn submits to him, *ib.*; pope Innocent absolves his subjects from their fealty, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Windsor (1212), ii. 126; knights Alexander, son of the king of Scots, *ib.*; his cruelty to those who avoided him, *ib.*; iii. 226; marches again into Wales, ii. 127; hangs the Welsh hostages at Nottingham, ii. 128; receives letters warning him of the defection of the nobles, *ib.*; returns to London, and demands hostages from the nobility, *ib.*; prophecy of Peter the Wise respecting him, ii. 129; causes him to be imprisoned, *ib.*; the pope stirs up the king of France against him, *ib.*; his proceedings complained of to the pope, who pronounces sentence of deposition on him, ii. 130; form of his submission dictated, ii. 131; confiscates the lands of some nobles, and outlaws them, *ib.*; employs Faukes [de Breaute] as his agent in destruction, ii. 132; extorts deeds of gift from the religious houses, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Westminster (1213), *ib.*; the sentence of his deposition published in France, *ib.*; summons forces and ships, to resist the invasion of Philip, ii. 133; proposes to fight Philip at sea, ii. 134; Pandulph sends to him, to request an interview, *ib.*; accepts at Dover the form of peace dictated, and consents to recall the proscribed prelates, ii. 135; has another meeting with Pandulph, and resigns his crown to the pope, *ib.*, 146; makes a charter, by which he receives back his kingdom as a feudatory of the pope, *ib.*; iii. 89, 316; does homage, ii. 136; orders Peter the Wise and his son to be hung, *ib.*; sends a fleet to the aid of the count of Flanders, ii. 138; iii. 227; the French ships at the Swine destroyed by it, *ib.*; iii. 228; dismisses his troops in England, ii. 139; orders those in Flanders to invade Philip's territory, *ib.*; collects an army at Portsmouth, to cross to Poitou, *ib.*; his nobles refuse to follow him, unless he is absolved, *ib.*; sends letters of safe conduct to the exiled prelates, *ib.*; humiliates himself, and is absolved at Winchester, ii. 140; renews his oath to maintain the church and laws, *ib.*; iii. 228; orders the property seized in each county to be assessed and restored, *ib.*; comes again to Portsmouth, but his troops refuse to accompany him, *ib.*; iii. 228; he embarks, and lands at Jersey, ii. 141; returns to England, *ib.*; repents of his concessions, and collects forces to coerce the nobles, *ib.*; iii. 228; remonstrated with at Northampton by the archbishop, ii. 142; refuses to hear him, and proceeds to Nottingham, *ib.*; iii. 228; is persuaded to return to London, *ib.*; his jocose speech on the death of the justiciary, ii. 145; receives the legate Nicholas with great pomp, and influences him by gifts, *ib.*; offers 100,000 marks for the losses of the prelates, *ib.*; again resigns his kingdom and crown to the pope at St. Paul's, ii. 146; his charter is sealed with a golden bulla, and given to the legate, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Windsor (1214), ii. 147; is praised to the pope by Pandulph, ii. 148; forwards money to his forces in Flanders, *ib.*; sends to Rome for the remission of the interdict, *ib.*; embarks at Portsmouth, with the queen, and lands at Rochelle, *ib.*; iii. 229; the nobles of Poitou swear fealty to him, *ib.*; subdues many castles, and delivers them to foreigners, *ib.*; obtains a victory near Nantes, ii. 149; besieges the castle of Roche-au-Moine, *ib.*; prepares to encounter prince Louis, but is deserted by the Poitevins, *ib.*; raises the siege, ii. 150; his troops in Flanders are successful in France, but are defeated at Bovines, ii. 150, 151; amount of money expended by him, *ib.*; his alarm and grief, *ib.*; iii. 231; he is

John, king of England—*cont.*
reproached by Savary de Mauleon, ii. 152; makes a truce with Philip, and returns to England, *ib.*; pays 8,000 marks to Philip, iii. 231; keeps Christmas at Worcester (1215), ii. 154; iii. 231; comes to London, and lodges at the New Temple, *ib.*; the barons demand from him the liberties sworn to, *ib.*; he asks for delay, and gives sureties, *ib.*, 155; causes renewal of fealty and homage all over England, ii. 155; assumes the cross, *ib.*; refuses the demands of the barons, *ib.*; iii. 231; offers deceitfully to concede the liberties, ii. 157; the Great Charter and Forest Charter are granted, *ib.*; appoints twenty-five barons to carry out the provisions, ii. 158; his duplicity, ii. 159; gives up Rochester castle to archbishop Stephen, *ib.*; retires to the Isle of Wight, ii. 160; iii. 232; sends Pandulph to Rome, to get the barons' proceedings annulled, *ib.*; sends agents abroad to raise mercenary forces, *ib.*; orders his castellans to munition their castles, *ib.*; leads the life of a pirate, *ib.*; his grievances laid before pope Innocent, ii. 161; declares himself wholly dependent on the pope, *ib.*, 172; iii. 233; the pope annuls the Great Charter, ii. 162; iii. 232; besieges Rochester castle, ii. 163; iii. 232; which is surrendered to him, ii. 165; iii. 232; he orders the garrison to be hung, but is restrained by Savary de Mauleon, *ib.*; at his request, the pope annuls the election of Simon de Langtune to the see of York, ii. 166; iii. 233; raises discord between the pope and the archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 167; his envoys are present at the Lateran Council, ii. 168; archbishop Stephen accused by his agents before the pope, and suspended, ii. 168, 169; divides his forces, appoints leaders to watch the barons, and marches northwards, ii. 169, 170; his mercenaries, by his orders, commit great excesses, ii. 170, 171; iii. 233; gives the castle of Bedford

John, king of England—*cont.*
to Faukes, ii. 170; keeps Christmas at Nottingham (1216), ii. 171; iii. 233; advances to Langar, and Belvoir castle surrenders to him, *ib.*; razes the castle of Dunton, *ib.*; commits the custody of the captured castles to "men of blood," ii. 172; iii. 233; marches towards Scotland, and takes Berwick castle, *ib.*; his jocose speech in reference to Alexander II. of Scotland, *ib.*; the pope, at his request, excommunicates the barons by name, *ib.*; iii. 233; is grieved at the absolution of archbishop Stephen, ii. 174; iii. 234; a legate sent to France, to prevent his being molested by prince Louis, ii. 175; Philip blames his conduct in subjecting England to the pope, ii. 176; his cruelty to the barons complained of by Louis, ii. 178; retreats from Dover, on the landing of Louis, ii. 179; commits the castle to the charge of Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*; flies to Guildford and Winchester, *ib.*; iii. 235; is joined by the legate Walo at Gloucester, ii. 180; his forces abroad desert him, ii. 181; garrisons Wallingford and other castles, *ib.*; gains over the count de Nevers by bribes, ii. 185; ravages the lands of the barons, especially in Norfolk and Suffolk, *ib.*, 189; iii. 236; acts like a madman, *ib.*; retires to Stamford, ii. 186; causes the siege of Lincoln castle to be raised, *ib.*; then marches to the confines of Wales, and razes the castles of the barons, *ib.*; burns the granaries of the abbey of Peterborough, ii. 189; orders the abbey and town of Croyland to be burnt, *ib.*; burns the crops of the abbat in Hoiland, ii. 190; proceeds northward, and loses his treasure in the Wellestrem [Welland], *ib.*; iii. 236; sleeps at the abbey of Swineshead, and is attacked by acute fever, *ib.*; increases the malady by his accustomed gluttony, *ib.*; advances to Lafford [Sleaford], ii. 191; gets worse, and is carried on a litter, *ib.*; his violence of passion increases his malady,

John, king of England—*cont.*
ib.; arrives with difficulty at Newark, ii. 192; confesses, and receives the sacrament, *ib.*; iii. 237; appoints his son Henry his successor, *ib.*; is persuaded to forgive his enemies, *ib.*; his last words, ii. 193; directions as to his burial, *ib.*; his body opened by the abbat of Crokestune, *ib.*; his bowels and heart buried in the abbey, and his body taken to Worcester, *ib.*, 194; messengers of peace to him from the barons had arrived, but too late, ii. 194; duration of his reign, *ib.*; certain good works alleged in his behalf, and his conduct praised, in reference to some Greek philosophers, *ib.*; iii. 64; his Great Charter of liberties claimed by the nobles of Henry III., ii. 491; said to have been burnt in the pope's chamber at Lyons, ii. 501; iii. 293; at his death, possessed nothing in peace, iii. 89; his Great Charter read in parliament, and transgressors of it excommunicated, iii. 136, 137, 327, 346.

John the Englishman (*Anglicus*), a native of St. Alban's, physician to Philip II., cures him of the plague, ii. 38; grants the house of St. James at Paris to the new Order of Preachers, ii. 66.

John, a Minorite, native of Kent, sent to England by the pope to collect money, iii. 18, 298; protects the exempt abbats against the bishops, iii. 19.

John, a manikin so called, born in the Isle of Wight, iii. 60; the queen takes him about with her, iii. 61.

John of Anagni. *See* Anagni.

John of Crema. *See* Crema.

John of Ferentino. *See* Ferentino.

John the Moor, said to have poisoned and strangled Henry, son of the emperor Frederic II., iii. 336.

John of Naples. *See* Naples.

John [de Toleto], surnamed *Albus*, cardinal, causes the bishop of Lincoln to fail in his suit at Rome, iii. 70.

Joibert, a Norman, held three priories, ii. 67; appointed prior of Coventry, *ib.*

Joppa (*Jope*), passed by the Crusaders, i. 137; arrival of the Genoese fleet at, i. 141; distant 24 miles from Jerusalem, i. 158, 194; Tabitha restored to life at, *ib.*; subject to the canons of the Holy Sepulchre, i. 162; the people of, assist Baldwin II. against the Arabs, i. 198; besieged by Balach, i. 233; submits to Richard I., ii. 26; army of Saladin defeated near, ii. 27; taken by Saladin, ii. 34; iii. 212; the castle defended by a few warriors, iii. 35; succoured by Richard, *ib.*; iii. 42; Saladin driven from, iii. 36; the emperor Frederic II. comes to, ii. 304; large supplies brought to, *ib.*; the castle rebuilt, and fortified, ii. 410.

Jordan, river, to east of Jerusalem, i. 158; Jesus Christ baptized in, i. 162; ii. 313; Menduc encamps near the bridge of, i. 218; the country beyond ravaged by Saladin, i. 430; Frederic II. proposes to visit, ii. 313, 408; the country beyond, ceded to the Christians, ii. 440.

Jordan, prior of the Order of Preachers, drowned, ii. 396, iii. 274.

Joshaphat or Gethsemani, valley of, to the east of Jerusalem, i. 161, 162; church of St. Mary in, *ib.*; sepulchre of the Virgin there, *ib.*, 163.

Joseph Cartaphila [the Wandering Jew], rumours respecting him, ii. 305, iii. 257.

Josephus, historian of the Jews, mentioned, *Prol.* i. 4.

Jovinians, heresy of, suppressed, iii. 94, 318.

Jubilee, year of, in 1250, iii. 97.

Judah, tribe of, to the south of Jerusalem, i. 159.

Jumaus, a spy of Richard I., informs him of the bribery of the duke of Burgundy by Saladin, ii. 32.

Justices itinerant or *in eyre*, at Dunstable, ii. 263; ordered to be seized by Faukes, *ib.*

Justiciaries, appointed by Henry II., over separate parts of England, i. 394.

Juvenal, quoted, i. 130; iii. 146, 330.

Juveni [Joigny?], Walter de, takes the cross, ii. 508; iii. 296.

K.

Karin, Herman de, joins Boamund as a crusader, i. 71.

Katherine, daughter of Henry III., birth of, ii. 148, 330.

Kenilworth (*Kenilwurthe*), the castellan of, one of the four sworn to obey the barons, in carrying out Magna Carta, ii. 159; the countess of Montfort stays there during her confinement, ii. 406; Simon de Montfort joins his wife at, ii. 413; his son Henry born there, ii. 414.

Kent, the men of, do not acknowledge the empress Matilda as "Lady," i. 266.

Kent, earl of. *See* Burgh, Hubert de.

Kent, sheriffs of. *See* Clere, Matthew de; Cornhulle, Henry de.

Kilkenni, William de, the king's seal given to him, iii. 81, 314; filled the office of chancellor, iii. 340; elected bishop of Ely, *ib.* *See* Ely.

Kilkenny, Richard earl Mareschal buried in the Friars Minors at, ii. 369.

Kime, Philip de, his death, ii. 468.

Kingesdelf, a road so called, made by Cnut between Ramsey and Peterborough, iii. 163.

Knaresborough (*Cnaresburc*, *Knareburc*, *Knareburg*), castle of, the murderers of archbishop Thomas take refuge in, i. 368.

Knaresborough, the tomb of Robert the Hermit at, exudes oil, ii. 415, miracles at, iii. 93.

Knighthood, writs issued by Henry III. relative to, iii. 325.

L.

Labamare, Lambamare [La Baignare, Bagnara], in Calabria, taken by Richard I., ii. 17.

Laci. *See* Lascy.

Lacock, Ela, countess of Salisbury, abbess of. *See* Salisbury.

Lafford (*Latforda*, *Lafort*, *Ledford*), [Sleaford], castle of, surrendered to Stephen by the bishop of Lincoln, i. 262; John comes to, ii. 191; iii. 236; given to the charge of William de Albini, ii. 200.

Lambert [Pauper], son of Conon de Montagu, escapes from Antioch, i. 113; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, iii. 120.

Lambeth (*Lamheia*, *Lamheth*, *Lamhethia*), Roger elected archbishop at, i. 373; church built there by archbishop Baldwin, ii. 68, 75; dispute with the monks of Canterbury respecting it, *ib.*; archbishop Hubert compelled to pull it down, ii. 75; Henry III. keeps Christmas at, ii. 329, iii. 262; colloquy or parliament held at, ii. 345; Eustace of Lynn seized there, iii. 128, 323.

Lancaster, castle of, granted to prince John, ii. 5.

Lancastre, William de, imprisoned in Corf castle, ii. 166; dies *s.p.m.*, ii. 510.

Lance, Holy, revelation of, at Antioch, i. 118; borne for a standard, i. 120; dispute as to its authenticity, i. 133.

Lanfranc. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

Langar, town of, John marches to, ii. 171.

Langeley, Geoffrey de, knight, bailiff of the king, succeeded Robert Passelew as justiciary of the forests, iii. 82, 314; exacts money from transgressors, *ib.*; his exactions exceeded those of his predecessors, iii. 322; removed from his office, Langeley, Geoffrey de, knight—*cont.* iii. 126, 322; had been brought up by Robert Passelewe, but supplanted him, iii. 322; appointed one of the guardians of the queen of Scots, *ib.*; removed by the Scotch nobles, for his tyranny, *ib.*; transfers his services to prince Edward, *ib.*; raises up many enemies to the king and prince, *ib.*

Langetune or Langetone, Simon de, archdeacon of Canterbury, brother of the archbishop, opposes Pandulph before the pope, ii. 147; hatred of the pope to him, iii. 229; made chancellor by prince Louis, ii. 180; iii. 40, 235; oppresses the English, iii. 235; by his direction, the barons and Londoners renew divine service, ii. 180; excommunicated by the legate, *ib.*; does not regard it, having appealed to the pope, ii. 181; excepted from the peace made with Louis, ii. 224; iii. 243; deprived of his benefices, and forced to go to Rome, *ib.*; makes inquiry respecting Ralph de Neville, the archbishop elect, ii. 337, iii. 263; dies, iii. 40; was a disturber of his church, iii. 40 *n.*; 305.

Langetune, Langetone, en de. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

Laodicea, in Syria, the Crusaders arrive at, i. 133; submits to Tancred, i. 198; given to the widow of Boamund II., i. 245; the French under Louis VII. pass by, i. 282.

[Lascy], Edmund de, earl of Lincoln. *See* Lincoln.

Lascy, Gilbert de, one of the chiefs at the battle of Alverton, i. 258; his brother killed there, i. 260.

Lascy, Hugh de, lord of Meath, his death, i. 434; ii. 510; iii. 206.

Lascy, John de, [son of Roger,] constable of Chester, his castle of Dunton razed, ii. 171; joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230; conspires with the earl of Chester against the king, ii. 260, 261. *See* Lincoln, earl of.

Lascy, Matilda de [daughter of Walter], given as wife to Petér de Geneure, iii. 66.

Lascy, Roger de, constable of Chester, defends the castle of Roche d'Andeli, ii. 98, 101; taken prisoner, but afterwards set free, ii. 101; dies, ii. 124; iii. 225.

Lascy, Walter de, flies from John, in Ireland, ii. 122; his death, ii. 447, 510; iii. 283.

Latford, Ledford. *See* Lafford.

Laurence of St. Alban's, clerk, acts as advocate of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 351, 359 *n.*; iii. 267; his replies to the accusations against Hubert, ii. 426; iii. 265.

Ledes, Liedes, castle of, held against Stephen by the earl of Gloucester, i. 258; taken by Stephen, i. 261.

Legin, castle of, claimed by the king of Navarre, i. 396.

Leicester (*Legrecestria*), city of, besieged by Henry II., i. 378; fortified with a wall by king Leir, *ib.*; the walls undermined, but portions remained, *ib.*; great part burnt, and the inhabitants capitulate, i. 379; iii. 201; the chief men take refuge at St. Alban's and St. Edmund's, *ib.*; the gates destroyed and the rest of the walls, *ib.*; the castle razed, i. 394; the earl of Chester keeps a festival at, ii. 260; the bishop of Lincoln summons all the clergy of his diocese to, iii. 69.

Leicester, abbey of [des Prés], Stephen de Segrave lies hid in, ii. 371, 372 *n.*; iii. 271; [Alan de Cestreham,] abbat of, purchases the woods of the earl of Leicester, ii. 430.

Leicester, archdeacons of:

—— Ralph de Cheisney (*de Cheisneto*). *See* Lincoln, bishops of.

—— John of Basingstokes, his learning, iii. 119; his death, *ib.*

Leicester, Petronilla, wife of Robert earl of, i. 380; captured with him, i. 381; throws her ring into the river at St. Edmund's, *ib.*; held prisoner by Henry II., i. 384.

Leicester, Robert earl of, justiciary of England, present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318; absolved archbishop Thomas from all his obligations as chancellor, i. 329, 334; omits to kiss the archbishop of Cologne, because excommunicate, i. 336; joins the young king, i. 377; collects a force of Normans and Flemings, and lands in Suffolk, i. 380; takes the castle of Hagenet, *ib.*; receives Fremingham from Hugh Bigod, i. 381; marches towards Leicester, and proposes to plunder St. Edmund's, *ib.*; his confidence in his Flemish soldiery, *ib.*; defeated by the royal forces, and captured, *ib.*; returns with Henry II. as prisoner from Normandy, i. 384; his knights surrender the castles of Groby and Mountsorel, to obtain milder treatment for him, i. 388; taken back to Normandy, i. 389; was an opponent of St. Thomas, *ib. n.*; his death before Acre, ii. 20.

Leicester, Robert, earl of [son of the preceding], defends Rouen against Philip II., ii. 45; taken prisoner, ii. 51.

Leicester, Simon, earl of. *See* Montfort, Simon de.

Leideit, Guiscard, his death, ii. 459.

Leir, king of Britain, fortified Leicester with a wall, i. 378.

Leir, castle of. *See* Loir.

Lemburne, Roger de, killed Ernald de Munteinni in a tournay, iii. 124.

Lenton, [Robert de Lexintone?] prior of, sent to Rome to oppose the election of the bishop of Durham, ii. 286.

Leo IX., pope, iii. 166.

Leopard, three sent to Henry III. by the emperor, ii. 380, 390; borne in the shield of England, *ib.*; iii. 88 *n.*; nature of, iii. 392.

Lepers, decree respecting, in the Lateran Council, i. 412.

Levenoth, a priest, vision respecting him, seen by the bishop of Exeter, i. 312; his body buried by the bishop, and masses founded for, i. 314.

Lewes, archdeacon of. *See* Passelewe, Robert.

Lexintone, John de, knight, the king's seal given to his charge, ii. 412; appointed a special councillor, ii. 480; iii. 289; sent to forbid the clergy to consent to the papal demands, iii. 13; made chief forester from Trent to Scotland, iii. 327.

Lexintone, Robert de, special councillor, his death, iii. 83, 315; when justiciary, collected great wealth, iii. 315.

Lezinun. *See* Lizinnun.

Liber Additamentorum or Supplementorum. *See* Paris, Matthew.

Liber Epistolarum [S. Thomæ], referred to, i. 344 *n.*; iii. 198.

Liber Partium, referred to, iii. 61.

Liber Sententiarum [of Peter Lombard], reference to, ii. 402.

Lichaonia, the army of Louis VII. arrives at, i. 280.

Lichfield, Brithmar, bishop of, his death, iii. 164. *See* Coventry.

Lichfield, papal decision as to right of the canons to elect a bishop, ii. 300.

Lidda. *See* Lydda.

Liege, bishopric of, obtained by William, bishop elect of Valence, ii. 421, 427; iii. 277.

Lillebonne, council held at, i. 26.

Limburg, [Henry,] duke of, one of the chiefs of the army when Frederic II. landed at Acre, ii. 303.

Limerick (*Limelye*), the "regulus" of, does homage to Henry II., i. 370.

Lincolnshire, subjected to an annual tax, ii. 182.

Lincoln, siege of, by Stephen, i. 264; battle before, *ib.*; iii. 188; besieged again by Stephen, i. 273; the castle defended by the earl of Chester, *ib.*; surrendered. i. 275; Stephen wears his crown at, *ib.*; earthquake there, i. 434; iii. 206; William [the Lion] summoned to meet John at, ii. 88; taken by the adherents of prince Louis, ii. 182; the siege of the castle raised, ii. 186; assaulted by the

Lincoln—*cont.*
barons, ii. 208; ii. 239; approach of the royal army to, ii. 210; the castellans admit Faukes into the castle, ii. 211; conflict in the city, and defeat of the barons and French, iii. 212; cruel treatment of the inhabitants, ii. 213; iii. 239; date of the battle, *ib.*; a boy crucified by the Jews at, performs miracles, iii. 318.

Lincoln, see of, transferred from Dorchester, i. 42; iii. 173; seized by John, ii. 121; beneficed persons in, compelled to take orders, iii. 322.

Lincoln, bishops of:

—— Alexander [*an error*], i. 13.

—— Remigius, prevented from dedicating his church by the archbishop of York, i. 42; his death, *ib.*; miraculous benefits conferred by him, iii. 148, 318.

—— Robert Bloet, chancellor, appointed, i. 43; iii. 174; assists in the dedication of St. Alban's, i. 220; dies, i. 232; iii. 183.

—— Alexander, succeeds, i. 232; iii. 183; imprisoned by Stephen, i. 262; surrenders his castles of Newark and Sleaford, *ib.*; performed mass previous to the battle of Lincoln, i. 265.

—— Robert de Chesney (*de Cheisneto*), or "Simplex," archdeacon of Leicester, appointed, i. 243, 284; consecrated, i. 285; iii. 190; letters of concord between him and the abbat of St. Alban's, i. 318; renounces his claim of obedience from St. Alban's, i. 319; dies, i. 344; iii. 198.

—— Geoffrey, natural son of Henry II., archdeacon of Lincoln, elected, i. 375; heads the northern barons, at the capture of the castle of Malassart, i. 388; goes abroad, to get his election confirmed, i. 390; resigns, i. 423. *See* York, archbishops of.

—— Walter de Coutances (*de Constantiis*), archdeacon of Oxford, consecrated, i. 424; enthroned, i. 426; iii. 205.

—— Hugh of Burgundy, prior of the Carthusians [at Witham, co. Som.], consecrated, i. 437; iii. 206; dies at the Old Temple, London, ii. 88; iii. 220; entitled to be a saint, *ib.*; miraculous tapers seen, when his body was carried to Lincoln, iii. 281; his canonization, ii. 241; inquiry into his miracles made, *ib.*; miraculous benefits conferred on his church, iii. 148, 318.

—— William of Blois, canon and precentor of Lincoln, consecrated, ii. 100; iii. 221; dies, ii. 107.

—— Hugh de Welles, archdeacon of Wells, and chancellor, appointed, ii. 120; obtains leave to be consecrated by the archbishop of Rouen, but is consecrated by archbishop Stephen, *ib.*; returns to England, ii. 139; money extorted from him by the pope and legate, ii. 225; his castle of Newark unjustly held by Robert de Gaugi, ii. 226; compounds with him for its surrender, ii. 227; makes a composition with the abbat of St. Alban's relative to Luton, ii. 235; dies, ii. 375; iii. 271; was an oppressor of the monks, *ib.*

—— Robert Grosseteste, elected, ii. 376; iii. 271; of the Order of Minors, and of low birth, *ib.*; very learned and prudent, *ib.*; consecrated at Reading, *ib.*; poisoned, but recovers by the skill of his physician, ii. 398; discord between him and his canons, as to right of visitation, ii. 419, 454; iii. 279, 284; gains the cause, ii. 454; translates the "Testament of the Twelve Patriarchs" from Greek to Latin, ii. 467; iii. 286; goes to Rome, to plead his suit against the canons, ii. 495; iii. 292; remonstrates against the papal exactions, iii. 58, 309; causes the abbat of Peterborough to be deposed, iii. 311; cites the clergy of his diocese to Leicester, to hear the pope's mandate, iii. 68; obtains authority to resume the churches held without assent of his chapter, iii. 69; goes again to the pope, to complain that the mandate had

Lincoln, bishops of—*cont.*

Robert Grosseteste—*cont.*

been evaded, *ib.*, 70, 312; returns home foiled in his object, iii. 77, 87, 309; makes a visitation of the religious houses in his diocese, iii. 108; compels his clergy to observe chastity, iii. 113; rejects the papal letters of "Provision," *ib.*; augments the incomes of the vicars in his diocese, iii. 120; opposes the grant to the king of a tenth of the church revenues, iii. 125, 322; proves that Innocent IV. had extorted more benefices than all his predecessors, iii. 128, 323; present at the excommunication of the transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; causes the sentence to be read in his diocese, iii. 138, 327; his letter to pope Innocent, refusing to comply with his unjust demand, iii. 140, 329; summons John de St. Giles to his death-bed, iii. 145; reproves the Orders of Preachers and Minors, and the Roman prelates, iii. 329; his definition of heresy, *ib.*; grieves over the oppressions of the church, iii. 146; dies at Buckden, iii. 330; his character, *ib.*; miraculous signs at his death, iii. 147, 330; miracles in his church, iii. 148, 318, 331; his severity to his canons and clergy, *ib.*

—— Henry de Lexintone, dean of Lincoln, elected, iii. 331; goes abroad to the king, for approval, *ib.*; confirmed and consecrated, iii. 333, 334.

Lincoln, deans of:

—— Roger de Weseham. *See* Coventry, bishops of.

—— Henry de Lexintone. *See* Lincoln, bishops of.

Lincoln, archdeacons of:

—— Roger. See Coventry, bishops of.

—— Geoffrey. *See* Lincoln, bishops of.

—— Robert de Hailes, dies intestate, iii. 9.

—— William Lupus, *or* Wolf, appeals against archbishop Boniface, iii. 148, 330; goes to Rome, and dies on his return, *ib.*; another archdeacon elected in his place, iii. 345.

Lincoln, Richard le Grand, chancellor of. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

Lincoln, church of, its dedication delayed by the death of bishop Remigius, i. 42; completed by William Rufus, *ib.*; final concord with St. Alban's, i. 318; bishop Hugh buried in, ii. 88, 376; composition with St. Alban's, as to Luton, ii. 234; dispute of the canons with bishop Robert, ii. 419, 454; iii. 279, 284; quarrel with the archbishop of Canterbury, iii. 147; are excommunicated by him, iii. 148.

Lincoln, Gilbert de Gant, made earl of, by prince Louis, ii. 182, 212; takes the city of Lincoln, and taxes the county, *ib.*; raises the siege of the castle, ii. 186; besieges the castle again, ii. 208; taken prisoner ii. 212; dies, ii. 468.

Lincoln, Ranulph, earl of. *See* Chester and Lincoln.

Lincoln, John [de Lascy], succeeds to the earldom, as nephew of earl Ranulph, ii. 349; gained over from the party of the earl Mareschal, ii. 357; sent to the legate Otho, to forbid him to act against the crown, ii. 400; his death [*incorrectly named* Scot,] ii. 436; his shield of arms, *ib.* *See* Lascy, John de.

Lincoln, Edmund [de Lascy], earl of, married to a foreign lady [Alice, daughter of the marquis of Saluces, *Dugd.* i. 102], iii. 25.

Lincoln, Robert of, held the castle of Wareham against Stephen, i. 258.

Lisbon (*Lexebona*, *Ulixebona*), taken by the Christians, i. 286; iii. 190; arrival of Saracen galleys at, to attack, i. 429; their "dromund" sunk, *ib.*; a fleet of English crusaders arrives at, i. 461.

Lisieux (*Luxoviæ*), Theobald, count of Blois, comes to, i. 255.

Lisieux [William de Rupière], bishop of, sent to Rome, to defend the king's suit against the archbishop of Rouen, ii. 61.

Lisieux, Gilbert, archdeacon of. *See* Rochester, bishops of.

L'Isle (*de Insula*), Brian de, appointed a custodian in the county of York, ii. 172; iii. 233; at the siege of Mountsorel, ii. 206; with the army at Newark, ii. 209; abets the disturbers of the king's peace, ii. 226; joins the earl of Chester in rebellion, ii. 260, 261; sent to appoint juries to view the forests, ii. 273.

L'Isle, Gualo de, his death before Nice, i. 82.

L'Isle, Margaret, countess of. *See* Rivers.

L'Isle, Roger de, composed an epitaph on Simon de Montfort, ii. 240.

Lismore (*Lissemor*), council held at, to establish the English laws, i. 371.

Litolf [of Tournay], among the first to enter Jerusalem, i. 145.

Liuns, forest of, formed the limit of the Vexin, ii. 82; castle of, taken by Philip II., ii. 92.

Lizinnun, or Lusignan (*Liziniaco*), Geoffrey de, [second son of Hugh VIII., count of La Marche] mentioned [*by mistake for* Geoffrey de Rancona], i. 419; kills a friend of earl Richard by treachery, i. 446; aided by Henry II., but subdued by Richard, i. 447.

Lizinnun, Guy de, [fourth son of Hugh VIII.,] count of Joppa and Ascalon, appointed guardian of Jerusalem, i. 429; iii. 205; married Sibil, sister of Baldwin IV., and widow of the marquis of Montferrat, *ib*; does not prosper, and is removed, *ib.*; is repudiated by his wife, i. 438; again chosen as her husband and king of Jerusalem, i. 439; collects forces against Saladin, i. 440; defeated at Marescallia, and captured, i. 442; iii. 207; sent to Damascus, i. 443; released on condition of his abdication, i. 452; iii. 208; persuaded to break faith with Saladin, i. 452; refused admission into Tyre, *ib.*; marches to Acre, i. 453; encamps on the hill of Turon, and besieges the city, *ib.*; is attacked by Saladin, i. 454; reinforced by a body of Danes and Frisians, *ib.*; Richard I. advocates his restoration to the throne of Jerusalem, ii. 25.

Lizinnun, Guy de, [second son of Hugh X., count of La Marche,] uterine brother of Henry III., arrives in England, iii. 24; receives much money from the king, iii. 26, 30, 300, 301, 321; returns from the Holy Land, iii. 104; borrows horses from the abbat of Feversham, *ib.*; his money-bags filled by the king, *ib.*

Lizinnun, Geoffrey de, [fourth son of Hugh X.,] generosity of Henry III. to, iii. 26.

[Lizinnun, de,] Æthelmar [fifth son of Hugh X.], bishop elect of Winchester. *See* Winchester.

Llandaff, bishops of:

—— [Urban], his death, i. 247; iii. 186.

—— [Nicholas], suspended by papal letters, i. 357.

—— William de Burgh, clerk of the king, appointed, ii. 493; becomes blind, *ib.*; iii. 292, 328; dies, iii. 328.

Llewellyn (*Leolinus*), prince of North Wales, submits to John, ii. 125; his wife [Joanna], a daughter of John, warns the king against pursuing the war in Wales, ii. 128; besieges the castle of Builth, ii. 247; takes the castles of the earl of Pembroke, ii. 255; defeated by him, *ib.*; iii. 246; puts William de Brause to death, for adultery with his wife, ii. 322; iii. 262; devastates the lands on the borders, ii. 331, 341; iii. 264; burns some women in a church, ii. 332; is excommunicated, *ib.*; lies in ambuscade near Montgomery, and escapes by the treachery of a monk, *ib.*; joined by Richard earl Mareschal, ii. 357; iii. 269; Henry III. sends to him, to treat of peace, ii. 366; his death, ii. 430; iii. 280; leaves two sons by different mothers, *ib.*

Loches (*Luches*), castle of, in Touraine, taken by Richard I., ii. 49.

Logroño, claimed by the king of Castille, i. 396.

Loir (*Leir*), castle of, death of Geoffrey of Anjou at, i. 287; taken by Philip II., i. 461; held in pledge by Philip and earl Richard, i. 463.

Lombard, Peter, letter of pope Alexander III. condemning his doctrine, i. 414; written against by abbat Joachim, i. 415; his "Liber Sententiarum" referred to, ii. 402.

Lombardy, earthquakes in, i. 221; iii. 182.

London, Londoners, taxed by Cnut, iii. 162; reception of William I. at, i. 7; iii. 169; hospital of St. Giles at, founded by queen Maud, i. 222; iii. 182; great part burnt in 1132, i. 246; and again in 1136, i. 253; iii. 186; the empress Matilda received there, but afterwards expelled, i. 267; birth of prince Henry at, i. 301; archbishop Thomas welcomed to, i. 358; Henry II. comes to, i. 388; reception of the archbishop of Cologne and count of Flanders in, i. 427; reception of Richard I. at, ii. 47; iii. 214; William Fitz-Osbert hung at "the Elms" there, ii. 57, iii. 216; the emperor Otho pompously received at, ii. 109; iii. 223; the prelates assembled at St. Bridget's to be taxed, ii. 123; the bridge, with chapel and houses on it, burnt, ii. 131; the citizens invite the barons to, ii. 156; iii. 232; they enter by Aldgate, and occupy the city, *ib.*; tournament held near, ii. 175; iii. 234; letters sent to the citizens by prince Louis, *ib.*; Louis received joyfully at, and receives homage, ii. 179; celebration of divine service resumed in, ii. 180; the French forces return to, ii. 182; Louis comes back to, ii. 199, 201, 224; besieged by the earl Mareschal, ii. 221; the citizens lend money to Louis, ii. 224, 292; tumult at, headed by Constantine Fitz-Olaf, ii. 251; the leaders hung at "the Elms," ii. 251; the magistrates deposed, and others appointed, *ib.*; iii. 246; money extorted from the citizens by Henry III., ii. 292; iii. 247, 255; tax of a fifteenth levied on, *ib.*; Henry returns to, ii. 320; taxed for his expedition to Britanny, ii. 323; iii. 262; reception of the duke of Saxony at, ii. 324; complaints of the citizens against Hubert de Burgh, ii. 345; iii. 266; the mayor [Andrew Bokerelle ?] ordered to bring him from Merton, ii. 346; iii. 266; a church built for converted Jews, near the Old Temple, ii. 362; iii. 269; usurers first settle in, ii. 382; nuptials of Henry III. celebrated at, ii. 386; iii. 273; the abbats of the Black Order assemble there, ii. 413; Ranulph le Breton imprisoned by the mayor [William Goimer], ii. 423; the city ordered to be cleansed, for the reception of the count of Flanders, ii. 425; earl Richard of Cornwall comes to, ii. 437; William de Marisco hung at, ii. 462 *n.*; Henry returns to, ii. 494; and extorts money from, ii. 496; he keeps Christmas at, ii. 498; iii. 3, 43; and Pentecost, ii. 502; Harold, king of Man, knighted at, iii. 8; the seal of the community affixed to the letter from the clergy of the province of Canterbury to the pope, iii. 17; traffic of, prohibited during the new fair held at Westminster, iii. 36; the citizens in booths at the fair suffer loss from the rain, iii. 37; 2,000*l.* extorted from, by the king, iii. 43; quarrel of the citizens with the abbat of Westminster, iii. 62, 80; Henry asks their forgiveness for imposing taxes, iii. 71; visitation of the archbishop of Canterbury at, iii. 77, 79, 313; money again extorted from them, iii. 126, 321, 322; called "barons," but taxed like slaves, iii. 322; birth of princess Katherine at, iii. 148, 330; game of the quintain played there, iii. 325; fined for ill-treating some of the king's household, *ib.*; make a gift to the king of 100*l.* and a valuable cup, iii. 343; fined for the escape of a prisoner from Newgate, *ib.*; William de Sceldforde hung at, 344.

London, councils on ecclesiastical affairs held at St. Paul's, (1102), i. 191; (1125), i. 234; iii. 183; (1129), i. 243; (1138), i. 261; iii. 187; (1142), i. 270;

London, councils held at—*cont.*
iii. 188; (1185), i. 433; (1213), ii. 143, 146; (1237), ii. 400; iii. 275.

London, colloquies or parliaments assembled at, (1223), ii. 253; (1236), ii. 388; (1237), ii. 393; (1244), ii. 490; iii. 291; (1246), iii. 5; (1247), iii. 16; (1248), iii. 33, 37; (1249), iii. 51; (1252), iii. 125, 322; (1254), iii. 334; (1255), iii. 344. *See* Westminster.

London, church of St. Paul, consecrations of prelates at, i. 97, 210; ii. 426; iii. 176, 279; founded by bishop Maurice, i. 208; burnt, i. 253; reception of the archbishop of Cologne and count of Flanders in, i. 427; thunderstorm during divine service at, ii. 320; iii. 261; the emperor Frederic II. denounced at, as excommunicate, ii. 423; dedication of, ii. 438; indulgence granted to those who pray annually in, ii. 439; the pope's demands on the clergy made known at, iii. 13; the canons excommunicated by archbishop Boniface, for not admitting his visitation, iii. 79; they appeal to the pope, *ib. n.*; abandon their suit, iii. 85.

London, St. Bartholomew's priory, the canons excommunicated by archbishop Boniface, for not admitting his visitation, iii. 79; his violence towards them, *ib.*, *n.*

London, Christ Church, or Holy Trinity, founded by prior Norman, i. 208; Fulk Basset consecrated bishop in, ii. 495; the canons excommunicated by archbishop Boniface, iii. 79.

London, church of St. Mary of the Arches [Bow], William Fitz-Osbert takes refuge in, ii. 57; violated by his withdrawal, ii. 69.

London, Friars Preachers, [Holborn,] Hubert de Burgh buried at, ii. 477; iii. 288; gave to them his palace, near Westminster, afterwards purchased by the archbishop of York, *ib.*; general chapter held at, iii. 80.

London, New Temple, John is lodged at, ii. 154; William, earl Mareschal, buried in, ii. 232; and William, earl of Pembroke, ii. 331; taxes paid into, ii. 343; the treasure of Hubert de Burgh seized there, ii. 350; iii. 267; Robert Passelewe lies hid there, ii. 372; iii. 271; Gilbert, earl Mareschal, buried in, ii. 451; a palace built near, by the bishop of Chichester, ii. 480; Martin, the papal nuncio, lodges at, ii. 503.

London, Tower of, fortified by Geoffrey de Mandeville, i. 268; given up to Stephen, i. 271; the Jews take refuge in, ii. 9; surrounded with a fosse and wall by the bishop of Ely, ii. 19; iii. 210; Hubert de Burgh imprisoned in, ii. 348; iii. 266; fortified by Henry III., but not solidly, ii. 420; iii. 279; Ranulph le Breton imprisoned in, ii. 422; prince Griffin, of Wales, imprisoned in, ii. 431, 482, 483; iii. 289.

London, bishops of:

—— Erkenwald, translation of, i. 285.

—— Robert, translated to Canterbury, iii. 166.

—— William, succeeds, iii. 166.

—— Maurice, chaplain of William I., appointed, i. 32; dies, i. 208; founded St. Paul's church, *ib.*

—— Richard de Beaumais, consecrated at Pagham, i. 209; iii. 180; consecrates Thomas, archbishop of York, i. 210; iii. 180; present at the dedication of St. Alban's, i. 220; iii. 181; dies, ii. 233, 239.

—— Gilbert "Universalis," consecrated, i. 239; dies, ii. 247; iii. 186.

—— Robert de Sigillo, succeeds, i. 268; iii. 188.

—— Richard de Beaumais, archdeacon of Middlesex, consecrated, i. 292; iii. 192; dies, ii. 315; iii. 194.

—— Gilbert Folioth, bishop of Hereford, translated to, i. 320; iii. 195; letters of Henry II. to, i. 332, 343; ordered to be cited by the justices for having excommunicated earl Hugh, i. 333; writes to the king, i. 342; excommunicated by archbishop Thomas, *ib.*, 346; iii. 198;

London, bishops of:—*cont.*

Gilbert Folioth—*cont.*

derivation of his name, i. 342; consecrates Symon, abbat of St. Alban's, i. 344; written to by the pope, and replies, i. 345; iii. 198; an enemy of the archbishop, iii. 198; receives a consolatory letter from the king, i. 346; goes to Henry, abroad, to concert measures against the archbishop, i. 348; absolved at Rouen, i. 352; iii. 199; suspended by papal letters, i. 357; restored, on swearing he had no hand in the archbishop's death, i. 373; declares to the people at Canterbury the king's innocence, i. 385; appoints Ralph to be prior of Waltham, i. 398; dies, i. 445; iii. 207.

—— Richard [Fitz-Nigel], archdeacon of Ely, elected at Pipewell, ii. 10; obtains the release of the archbishop of York, ii. 22; conducts him to London, *ib.*; dies, ii. 72; iii. 217.

—— William of St. Mary Church, a Norman, canon of St. Paul's, consecrated, ii. 79; consecrates William bishop of Lincoln, ii. 100; ordered by the pope to threaten John with an interdict, ii. 114; leaves the country, ii. 116; goes to Rome, to complain of John, ii. 130; comes back to France, and assists in promulgating the sentence of John's deposition, ii. 132; returns to England, ii. 139; resigns the see, ii. 248.

—— Eustace de Faucunberge, treasurer of the exchequer, elected, ii. 248; iii. 245; has the custody of Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 265; his facetious quotation of Ovid, ii. 266; iii. 250; his death and burial, ii. 305; iii. 257; epitaph, iii. 257.

—— Roger Niger, canon of St. Paul's, elected, ii. 305; iii. 257; consecrated at Canterbury, ii. 318; iii. 260; performed the service at St. Paul's, during a thunderstorm, ii. 320; iii. 261; excommunicates the plunderers of the barns at Wengham, ii. 339; causes Hubert de Burgh to be taken back to the chapel at Brentwood, ii. 348; iii. 266; goes to Rome, to clear himself from charges, ii. 352; robbed at Parma, and curses the city, *ib.*; lands at Dover, and excommunicates those who laid hands on the bishop of Carlisle, ii. 358; renews the sentence before Henry III. at Hereford, *ib.*; goes to the king, to obtain the release of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 360; consecrates archbishop Edmund, ii. 367; attempts to expel the Caorsins from London, ii. 383, 384; takes prince Edward from the font, when baptized, ii. 422; obtains the release of Ranulph le Breton, ii. 423; dedicates the church of St. Paul's, ii. 438; his death, and burial at St. Paul's, ii. 457, 458; iii. 284; miracles performed at his tomb, ii. 493; iii. 93, 284, 318; regarded as a saint, although not canonized, iii. 284.

—— Fulk Basset, dean of York, elected, ii. 458; iii. 284; consecrated, ii. 495; appointed to carry into effect the papal demands on the clergy, iii. 12; makes known the pope's mandate at St. Paul's, iii. 13; goes abroad, iii. 69; entertains archbishop Boniface at his manor of Fulham, iii. 78; appeals to the pope against the archbishop, iii. 80; supplies provisions to the Friars Preachers, *ib.*, 314; obtains the release of Henry de Bath, iii. 106; scandal occasioned by his dispute with the archbishop, iii. 107; present at the excommunication of the transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; hears a bell ring, when the bishop of Lincoln was dying, iii. 147, 330; at his request, a clerk condemned to death, was imprisoned at Newgate, iii. 343.

London [St. Paul's], deans of:

—— Geoffrey de Lucy, intercedes for the release of Ranulph le Breton, ii. 423; his death and burial, ii. 457.

London [St. Paul's], deans of—*cont.*

—— William of St. Mary Church, succeeds, ii. 458 *n.*

—— Henry de Cornhulle [succeeded William of St. Mary Church], ii. 458; iii. 284; excommunicates archbishop Boniface, iii. 79; appeals to the pope against him, *ib.*; goes to the Roman court, iii. 82.

London, John of Basingestoc, archdeacon of, referred to as authority for an anecdote, ii. 255. *See* Leicester, archdeacons of.

Longespée (*Longa-spata*), William. *See* Salisbury, earl of.

Lotharius II., emperor, succeeds, i. 238.

Lothian (*Loenensis*, *Lodonensis*, *Laudonesis*), the leader of the men of, slain at the battle of Alverton, i. 260; given up to Henry II. by Malcolm, i. 307; devastated by the northern barons, i. 380; a castle in, fortified by Walter Cumin, ii. 494.

Loudun (*Losdunum*), castle of, submits to Henry II., i. 306.

Louis VI., king of France, succeeds to Philip I., i. 209, 211; iii. 180; summons the counts of Anjou and Flanders to his aid against Henry I., i. 221; invades Normandy, *ib.*; defeated by Henry [at Bremule], i. 227; iii. 182; gives Flanders to William, son of duke Robert, i. 239; is prevented from sending help to the count of Flanders, i. 241; blamed for his want of energy, *ib.*; makes peace with Stephen, i. 256; dies, *ib.*; the Vexin ceded to him by Geoffrey Plantagenet, ii. 82.

Louis VII., crowned at Rheims by Innocent II., i. 244; succeeds to the throne, i. 256; marries Alienor of Aquitaine, *ib.*; marriage of his two daughters, *ib.* 310; his sister married to Eustace, son of Stephen, i. 262; bears enmity to the archbishop of Bourges, i. 277; his chapel is laid under an interdict, i. 278; persuaded to receive the archbishop, and undertakes to go to Jerusalem, *ib.*; route taken by his army to Palestine, i. 279; arrives at Constantinople, and holds a conference with the emperor, *ib.*; progress of his forces in Syria, i. 281, 282; is defeated by the Turks, i. 282; iii. 190; arrives with difficulty at Jerusalem, i. 283; unites with the king of Jerusalem and emperor Conrad to besiege Damascus, *ib.*; abandons the siege, and returns home, i. 284; arrives in France, and quarrels with Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 286; marches to the castle of Arques, against Geoffrey and his son, *ib.*; peace made, and receives the homage of duke Henry for Normandy, i. 287; divorces his wife Alienor, i. 288; his anger on hearing of her marriage to duke Henry, i. 289; makes war against the duke, *ib.*; invades Normandy, and burns Tillières, i. 290; makes a truce with duke Henry, i. 291; iii. 190; terms of the peace, i. 299; iii. 192; marries [Constance], daughter of Alfonso VII. of Spain, i. 303; fortifies Chaumont, but compelled to retreat by Henry II., i. 311; is reconciled to Henry, i. 315; goes to Pontigny, and brings archbishop Thomas to Sens, i. 339; iii. 197; makes war against Henry, i. 344; burns Andeli, *ib.*; suffers loss in Perche, *ib.*; meets Henry at Freteval, and mediates a reconciliation with the archbishop, i. 354; iii. 199; again invades Normandy, i. 377; iii. 201; takes the castles of Aumale and Driencourt, *ib.*; besieges Verneuil, i. 378; receives a menacing message from Henry, and returns to France, i. 378; iii. 201; present at the oath taken by the count of Flanders to invade England, i. 384; besieges Rouen, but retreats with dishonour, i. 389; iii. 202; ceases from hostilities, and tries to reconcile the sons of Henry with their father, i. 390; iii. 202; makes a treaty of peace with Henry, i. 399; iii. 203; they resolve to undertake a crusade, *ib.*; comes to England, and visits the tomb

Louis VII., king of France—*cont.*
of St. Thomas, i. 410; iii. 203; honourably received by Henry, *ib.*; refuses presents, *ib.*; makes a grant of wine to the church of Canterbury, i. 411; is urged to visit St. Alban's, St. Edmund's, and London, but declines, *ib.*; returns to France, *ib.*; dies at Paris, and buried at Barbeaux, i. 418; iii. 204.

Louis VIII., son of Philip II., his marriage with Blanche of Castille arranged, ii. 84; iii. 220; receives Evreux and other territories from Henry II. as her dowry, and does homage, ii. 85; married at Portmort, and brings his bride to Paris, *ib.*; knighted by his father, ii. 118; marches against John, at Roche-au-Moine, ii. 149; exultation of the French at his success, ii. 150; elected king by the English barons, ii. 173; iii. 90, 234, 316; sends letters to the Londoners, ii. 175; iii. 234; the legate Walo sent to stay his progress, ii. 175; his reply to his father and the legate, ii. 177; comes to Melun, and obtains his father's consent to his enterprise, ii. 178; sends to Rome, to justify his claim to England, *ib.*; iii. 235; embarks at Calais, *ib.*; lands at Sandwich, ii. 179; iii. 235; subdues Kent, and Rochester castle is given up to him, *ib.*; receives the homage of the barons and citizens at London, *ib.*; swears to observe the laws of the realm, *ib.*; summons the king of Scotland and the northern barons to do fealty, ii. 180; appoints Simon de Langetune his chancellor, *ib.*; is excommunicated by the legate, *ib.*; subjects the southern provinces, ii. 181; Essex and Suffolk are subdued for him, *ib.*; letter to him from his envoys at Rome, *ib.*; ravages the eastern counties, and imposes a tax, ii. 182; takes Norwich castle, with Thomas de Burgh prisoner, *ib.*; captures Lynn, *ib.*; returns to London, *ib.*; creates Gilbert de Gant earl of Lincoln, *ib.*; Yorkshire and Lincolnshire subdued for him, *ib.*; Northumberland conquered for him by the king of Scots, ii. 183; blamed by his father for leaving Dover castle, *ib.*; lays siege to it, *ib.*; iii. 235; swears to take it, and hang the garrison, ii. 184; the king of Scots does homage to him, ii. 186; his secret intentions respecting the English barons revealed by the vicomte de Melun, ii. 187, 224; is excommunicated on Sundays and feast days, ii. 197; tries in vain to induce Hubert de Burgh to surrender Dover castle, *ib.*; raises the siege, and returns to London, ii. 199; iii. 238; the English nobles gradually desert him, ii. 200; iii. 238; takes the castles of Hertford and Berkhampstead, *ib.*, 201; comes to St. Alban's, and demands homage from the abbat, ii. 201; threatens to burn the abbey and town, but takes a fine for its redemption, *ib.*; returns to London, *ib.*; makes a truce with Henry III., ii. 205; iii. 239; leaves, England, *ib.*; comes back to London, ii. 206; iii. 240; sends a force against the royalists, ii. 207; they advance northwards to Lincoln, ii. 208; again excommunicated by name, ii. 209; his troops are defeated, and take flight, ii. 212, 214; he reproaches the survivors, ii. 214; sends to his father and wife for aid, ii. 215; iii. 240; some forces are sent to him, ii. 216; a fleet is collected for his service, and placed under Eustace the Monk, ii. 217; his grief at the defeat of the fleet, ii. 221; proposes to treat for peace, ii. 222; meets Henry, the legate, and earl Mareschal near Staines, *ib.*; iii. 242; the terms sworn to by him, ii. 223; is absolved by the legate, and goes back to London, ii. 224; borrows money from the Londoners, and returns to France, *ib.*; iii. 242, 316; is informed of the confession of the vicomte de Melun, *ib.*; iii. 243; the clergy who favoured him are excluded from the peace, *ib.*; collects forces to attack the Albigeois, ii. 239; besieges Toulouse

Louis VIII., king of France—*cont.*
ib.; iii. 244; returns to France, in consequence of a famine, *ib.*, 240; tumult made at London in his behalf by Constantine Fitz-Olaf, ii. 251; is crowned king of France, ii. 256, 259; Henry sends envoys to him, to require the restoration of Normandy and other provinces, *ib.*; he refuses, and makes complaints against Henry, *ib.*, 257; iii. 247; dissimilar in character from his father, ii. 259; marches to Rochelle, which is given up to him, ii. 262; iii. 249; garrisons the castle, and takes sureties from Poitou, *ib.*; orders the count of La Marche to attack Richard of Cornwall before La Réole, ii. 270; Faukes [de Breaute] is brought a prisoner to him, but released, ii. 272; takes the cross against the count of Toulouse, ii. 285; iii. 254; obtains papal letters forbidding Henry to molest him, *ib.*; appoints a rendezvous at Lyons, *ib.*; besieges Avignon, ii. 287; iii. 254; pestilence and mortality in his army, *ib.*; retires to the abbey of Montpensier, *ib.*; threatens the count of Champagne, if he leaves the army, ii. 288; dies, *ib.*; said to have been poisoned by the count of Champagne, *ib.*, 325; iii. 254; his shield of arms, *ib.*; his death concealed by the legate, *ib.*; his body salted, and kept in the abbey, *ib.*; taken to Paris for burial, ii. 290; iii. 254.

Louis IX., his coronation, when ten years old, ii. 290; iii. 254; his shield of arms, *ib.*; iii. 95; many nobles absent themselves, but afterwards make peace with him, ii. 295; sends an expedition into Provence, ii. 302; defeated by the count of Toulouse, *ib.*; marches to Angers, against Henry III., ii. 326; besieges Oudon, *ib.*; disinherits some nobles of Normandy, who had submitted to Henry, ii. 326; is reconciled to his nobles, ii. 327; iii. 262; swears to restore the rights of all, *ib.*; invades Britanny, ii. 333; his baggage train captured, *ib.*; makes a truce with Henry, *ib.*; wished to prevent the marriage of Frederic II. with Isabel of England, ii. 380; his nobles rebel, but are subsequently reconciled, ii. 390, 392; prepares to attend the conference at Vaucouleur with a large force, ii. 397; iii. 274; purchases some holy reliques from the emperor of Constantinople, ii. 407, 443, 446; iii. 24; the Saracen princes send to him for aid against the Tartars, ii. 409; removes his treasure from the Temple [at Paris], ii. 433; carries the Holy Cross in procession at Paris, ii. 446; iii. 282; causes the Sainte Chapelle to be built, ii. 447; iii. 283; gives Poitou to his brother Alphonse, and knights him, ii. 451; iii. 283; quarrels with the count of La Marche for refusing homage to Alphonse, ii. 460; marches to Poitou, and takes several castles, ii. 463; iii. 285; the count of La Marche makes terms, and the Poitevins submit, ii. 464; pestilence among his forces, and he falls ill, ii. 465; iii. 285; makes a truce with Henry, and returns in a litter to France, *ib.*; the truce is confirmed, ii. 470; iii. 286; puts a stop to the piracy of the count of Britanny, *ib.*; sends to the cardinals, to urge the election of a pope, *ib.*; the prayers of the Cistercians are desired for him, ii. 471; miraculously saved from death by the holy reliques, ii. 497; assumes the cross, *ib.*; iii. 286; convenes a parliament, iii. 21; is urged to resign the cross by the bishop of Paris and his family, iii. 22; he complies, and then re-assumes it, *ib.*; ii. 292; present at the translation of St. Edmund at Pontigny, iii. 26; refuses to accept a portion of his remains, iii. 27, 301; writes to Matthew Paris, to carry letters to the king of Norway, iii. 304; his letters patent on behalf of Hacon, *ib.*; embarks, and winters at Cyprus, iii. 48, 307; sends to the Venetians for provisions, iii. 49, 307; receives a mission

Louis IX., king of France—*cont.*
from the Soldan of Babylon, offering peace, *ib.*; writes to the pope to be reconciled to the emperor, *ib.*; his reply to the emperor, in reference to the restoration of the rights of Henry III., iii. 50, 308; captures Damietta, iii, 59, 310; abolishes the road-tax at Guisnes, iii. 63; his army at Damietta attacks the enemy, iii. 74; the Soldan again offers him an honourable peace, iii. 314; leaves a garrison in Damietta, and marches eastward, iii. 81; his army destroyed, and himself captured, iii. 84, 95, 312, 314, 317, 320; is redeemed by a heavy ransom, iii. 84, 103, 320; brought to Acre, iii. 84, 102; sends his brothers to France for military aid, ii. 84, 102; proposes to restore Poitou and Provence to Henry III., iii. 85; his banner, iii. 95; quarrels of the eastern princes, on account of his ransom, iii. 101, 130, 320; orders the Jews to be expelled from France, iii. 103, 133, 324; plot formed against him by the Pisans and Genoese, iii. 105; a ship bringing treasure to him, is lost, *ib.*; letter from him read in the general chapter of the Cistercians, iii. 114; writes to his brothers for aid, but in vain, *ib.*; remains at Cæsarea, and fortifies it, *ib.*; makes a truce with the Soldan of Babylon, iii. 121; a son [John] and daughter [Blanche] borne to him by queen Margaret, iii. 122; one of his knights deserts to the Soldan, iii. 329; gives letters patent to some converted Saracens, to receive alms in France, iii. 331; is urged to return home, iii. 333; arrives at Marseilles from the Holy Land, iii. 337; endeavours to conciliate William of Holland, *ib.*; refuses all consolation, but listens to the admonitions of a bishop, *ib.*; gives leave to Henry III. to pass through France, *ib.*; orders him to be honourably received, iii. 341; meets him at Chartres, and supplies his table, *ib.*; dines with him at the Old Temple, iii. 342; lodges him in his palace, *ib.*; sends him an

Louis IX., king of France—*cont.*
elephant, iii. 344; asks the daughter of the king of Castille in marriage for his son, ii. 348.

Louvain, mercenary forces from, come to assist John, ii. 163; iii. 232.

Louvain, [Godfrey VII.,] duke of, his daughter Adeliza marries Henry I., i. 230.

Louvain and Brabant, [Henry I.,] duke of, his daughter [Mary] marries the emperor Otho IV., ii. 65; joins John's forces in Flanders, ii. 150; sent to England, to bring Isabel to the emperor, ii. 379. *See* Brabant.

Louviers (*Loivers*), treaty made at, between Philip II. and Richard, ii. 56.

Lucan, Latin poet, born at Cordova, ii. 384; his "Pharsalia" quoted, iii. 117.

Lucius II., pope, succeeds, i. 273, 275; iii. 189; sends a pall to the bishop of Winchester, i. 273; satirical verses on his avarice, i. 275; dies unlamented, i. 276; iii. 189.

Lucius III., pope (Hunbald, bishop of Ostia), succeeds, i. 423; writes to Henry II., to undertake a crusade, i. 432; dies, i. 435.

Luci, Lucy, Geoffrey de, appointed joint custodian of the county of York, ii. 172; iii. 233; with the army at Newark, ii. 209; assumes the cross, ii. 391; iii. 26, 301.

Luci, Lucy, Richard de, excommunicated by archbishop Thomas, i. 338; when justiciary of England, lays the foundation of the priory of Westwood, i. 400; dies, i. 411.

Ludlow (*Ludehlawe*), castle of, held against Stephen by [Ralph] Paganel, i. 258; besieged by Stephen, i. 262.

Luke, chaplain of Hubert de Burgh, administers the sacrament to him, ii. 218; iii. 240; proposed by the king as bishop of Durham, iii. 286. *See* Dublin, archbishops of.

Lundy (*Lunde*), island of, near Bristol, William de Marisco takes refuge there, ii. 462; iii. 285.

Lusignan. *See* Lizinnun ; La Marche.

Lutgarshal (*Lutegareshale*), castle of, granted to prince John, ii. 5.

Luton (*Luitona, Loituna*), vicarage of, composition made respecting, between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, ii. 234 ; a tournament at, prohibited by the king, ii. 503 ; iii. 294.

Luvel, Philip, clerk, takes the cross, iii. 71 ; when seneschal of the earl of Winchester, taken into the king's service, iii. 115 ; accused [of bribery], but regains favour, *ib.*

Luvel, William, held the castle of Cari against Stephen, i. 258.

Lydda, also named Diospolis, [*incorrectly* Elyopolis,] i. 137, 158 ; the Crusaders arrive at, i. 137 ; the body of St. George buried there, *ib.* ; the church of St. George at, destroyed by the Turks, *ib.* ; made subject to the bishop of Ramla, *ib.* ; the Turks defeated near, i. 141 ; Peter cured Eneas of paralysis, and dwelt at the house of Symon at, i. 158 ; the bishop of, suffragan to the patriarch of Jerusalem, i. 162 ; the territory invaded by Arabs and Egyptians, i. 197. *See* St. George.

Lydia, passed by the Crusaders under Conrad III., i. 280.

Lynne (*Len*), town of, taken by prince Louis, and compelled to pay ransom, ii. 182 ; the legate William awaits a fair wind there, iii. 24, 300.

Lynne, Eustace of, official of archbishop Boniface, seized at Lambeth, and imprisoned at Farnham, iii. 128, 323 ; escapes to Waverley, *ib.*

Lyons (*Lugdunum*), archbishop Anselm retires to, i. 53 ; iii. 175 ; returns to, from Rome, i. 196 ; iii. 179 ; interview of Philip II. and the legate Walo at, i. 176 ; rendezvous appointed at, for the crusaders against the count of Toulouse, ii. 285 ; pope Innocent IV. comes to, ii. 496 ; iii. 92, 293, 317 ; his chamber burnt there, ii. 501 ; iii. 293 ; some prelates consecrated at, ii. 505 ; meeting of the General Council at, ii. 506 ; iii. 91, 295 ; reception of Richard of Cornwall by the cardinals and pope there, iii. 69, 75, 312 ; the pope leaves the city, iii. 109.

Lyons, archbishops of :

—— Hugh, receives archbishop Anselm in his house, i. 196.

—— [Reginald de Fores ?], reply of his proctor to the demand of the legate Romanus, ii. 282.

—— Philip [of Savoy], archbishop elect, escorts the pope from Lyons, iii. 109 ; amount of his expenses, iii. 112.

M.

Macemunt [Jusuf Abu Jacub ?], chief monarch of the Saracens, besieges Santarem, i. 428 ; defeated by the prince of Portugal, *ib.* ; his death, *ib.* ; iii. 205.

Machines of war, remarkable one, at the siege of Nice, i. 82 ; made for the siege of Jerusalem, i. 140 ; the stones thrown from, kill two Arab sorceresses, i. 143. *See* Malveisine.

Maconville (*Marculfi-villa*), castle of, burnt by duke Henry, i. 290.

Mæander (*Menander*), river of, defeat of the Turks near, i. 282.

Magna Carta. *See* Charter, Great.

Mahommed, the prophet, his name proclaimed in the Temple at Jerusalem, i. 444 ; his law the poison of souls, iii. 331.

Maidens'-Castle (*Castrum Puellarum*), [the ancient name of Edinburgh,] the king and queen of Scots reside in, iii. 347.

Maidstone (*Maidenestane*), some scholars from Oxford come to study at, ii. 120.

Mailli, Gilles de, takes the cross, ii. 508.

Maine (*Cenomannia*), the province of, subdued by William I., i. 18 ; held by the count of Anjou against Henry I.,

Maine (*Cenomannia*)—*cont.*
i. 214; iii. 181; the nobles of, adhere to Arthur of Britanny, ii. 78; Arthur does homage for, to Philip II., ii. 82; demanded from John, *ib.*

Maine, Elyas, count of, wounded at the siege of Le Mans, i. 167; put to death by Henry I., i. 214; his daughter [Eremburga] married to Fulk of Anjou, *ib.*

Majorca, island of, between Africa and Marseilles, ii. 374; inhabited by pagans, *ib.*; so called from being larger than Minorca, *ib.*; taken by the kings of Arragon and Castille, *ib.*; iii. 271.

Mala-spina, [Conrad?] marquis of, deserts the emperor Frederic II., ii. 474.

Malassart, [Malzeard,] castle of, subdued by the northern barons, i. 388.

Mala-villa, [Semlin,] in Bulgaria, proceedings of the Crusaders at, i. 60, 61.

Malcolm II., king of Scots, defeated by Cnut, iii. 164.

Malcolm III., many English nobles take refuge at his court, i. 8, 9; marries Margaret, sister of Eadgar Etheling, i. 9; iii. 170; their children, *ib.*; conciliates William I. by gifts, i. 10; does homage to him, i. 16; iii. 371; and to William Rufus, i. 40; iii. 174; his character, *ib.*; anecdote of his magnanimity, *ib.*; makes war against William II., i. 43; his death, *ib.*, 47; iii. 174; death of his son [Edward], i. 43; urges his daughter to accept Henry I. in marriage [*an error*], i. 188.

Malcolm IV., nephew of David I., succeeds to the throne, i. 293; makes terms with Henry II., i. 307; does homage to Henry and the young king at Woodstock, i. 322.

Malet, Robert, killed in battle at Gaza, ii. 433.

Malet, William, disinherited by Henry I., i. 214.

Maletable (*Malum-Stabulum*), castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 459 *n.*

Malmesbury, castle of, besieged and taken by duke Henry, i. 293.

Malmesbury, William of, finished his "Historia Anglorum" in 1142, i. 273; iii. 189.

Malveisine, a castle of wood so called, built by William II. at Bamborough, i. 48; a large engine to throw stones so named, sent to prince Louis at Dover, ii. 183.

Mamistra, city of, taken by Tancred, i. 88; not far from Antioch, i. 218; part thrown down by an earthquake, *ib.*

Man (*Monia*), island of, between England and Ireland, i. 291; the see ought to be subject to the archbishop of York, *ib.*

Man, John, monk of Séez, made the second bishop of, i. 291.

Manasseh, half tribe of, beyond Jordan, i. 159.

Mandeville, Arnulph de, [eldest] son of Geoffrey [earl of Essex], held the church of Ramsey as a fortress, i. 274; captured and exiled by Henry II., *ib.*; iii. 189.

Mandeville, Geoffrey de, earl of Essex. *See* Essex.

Mandeville, William de, earl of Essex. *See* Essex.

Manfred (*Memfridus*), natural son of the emperor Frederic II., rises against the pope, iii. 321; protects Nocera, *ib.*; the nobles of Apulia adhere to him, iii. 338; his shield of arms, *ib. n.*; pope Alexander IV. continues the war against, iii. 341; destroys the papal army sent against Nocera, iii. 345.

Mans, Le (*Cenomannum*), city of, the family of William Rufus besieged in, i. 166; relieved by the defeat of the count of Maine, i. 167; Henry II. reconciled to his sons at, i. 391; attacked by Philip II., i. 460; nearly destroyed by fire, *ib.*; captured by Philip, *ib.*; held in pledge by Philip and Richard, i. 463; taken by John, and the houses of stone destroyed, ii. 79; given up to John by William de Rupibus, ii. 82.

Mansel, John, clerk, sent to pay the English troops in the emperor's service, ii. 408; iii. 276; wounded at the siege of Verrines, ii. 469; iii. 286; appointed

Mansel, John—*cont.*
special councillor to the king, ii. 481; iii. 289; protects his brother-in-law, to the injury of the abbat of St. Alban's, iii. 63, 311; takes the cross, iii. 71; supplies the Friars Preachers with provisions, iii. 80, 314; sent envoy to the king of Spain, to ask his sister in marriage for prince Edward, iii. 144, 329; obtains great wealth, iii. 323; sent to inquire into the charges against the guardians of Scotland, iii. 347.

Mantes (*Mantua*), Philip II. marches from, ii. 72.

Mantua, synod held at, i. 10.

Manuel, [Comnenus,] emperor of Constantinople, holds a conference with the Crusaders, i. 279; betrays the forces of Conrad III. to the Soldan of Iconium, i. 280; iii. 189; seeks counsel of Henry II., i. 397; his son [*a mistake*] Alexius usurps the throne, ii. 51.

Maraclea, a city of Phœnicia, passed by the Crusaders, i. 135.

Marasia, Maresia, [Marash,] city of, passed by the Crusaders, i. 88; abandoned by the Turks, i. 89.

Marc, Philip, at the siege of Mountsorel, ii. 206; abets the disturbers of the king's peace, ii. 226; aids the earl of Albemarle in raising disturbances, ii. 244; joins the earl of Chester in rebellion, ii. 260, 261.

Marche, La, Hugh [de Lizinnun IX.,] le Brun, count of, attacked by the Greeks in Messina, ii. 17.

Marche, La, [Hugh de Lizinnun X.,] le Brun, count of, affianced to Isabel of Angoulême, ii. 86, 93; joins Arthur of Britanny at Mirebeau, ii. 93; at enmity with John, on account of Isabel, *ib.*; joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230; marches against Richard of Cornwall at la Réole, ii. 270; is defeated, ii. 271; one of the rebellious nobles in France, ii. 390; refuses to do homage to Alphonse, count of Poitou, ii. 460; iii. 284; sends to Henry III. for pecuniary aid, *ib.*; iii. 285; makes terms with Louis IX., ii. 463; iii. 285; takes the cross, iii. 300; dies at Damietta, iii. 66, 311; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Marche, La, Isabel, countess of, wife of Hugh X. *See* Isabel.

Marche, La, [Hugh de Lizinnun XI.,] le Brun, count of, son of the preceding, takes the cross, iii. 300; his death, *ib.*, 311.

Marchadeus, Markedeus, a Provençal, leader of the Brabançon *routiers* in Richard's army, ii. 59; captures the bishop of Beauvais, *ib.*; iii. 216; jocose speech to Richard, *ib.*

Marcigni (*Marceniacum*), archbishop Anselm meets the abbat of Cluny at, i. 171.

Mare, Henry de la, justice itinerant, not able to put down the robbers at Winchester, iii. 46; his unjust sentence against St. Alban's reversed, iii. 335.

Marescallia, [Hittin,] not far from Tiberias, i. 441; defeat of the Christian army by Saladin at, *ib.*; date of the battle, i. 442.

Mareschal, John, [elder brother of William, Senior,] brings a charge against archbishop Thomas, respecting a manor [Pagham], i. 328.

Mareschal, William, Senior, earl of Pembroke, called "the Great Mareschal," letter of Richard I. to, appointing him an administrator of the realm, ii. 27; his brother Henry made bishop of Exeter, ii. 51; sent to England by John, to take the fealty of the nobles, ii. 78; one of John's sureties to satisfy the barons, ii. 155; sent to them, to promise concession of the liberties demanded, ii. 157; present at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195; Henry remains under his tutelage, ii. 196, 197; sends letters to the sheriffs and castellans, *ib.*; influences the barons to desert prince Louis, ii. 200; present at the Christmas feast at Bristol, as guardian of the king and realm, ii. 201;

Mareschal, William, Senior—*cont.*
recalls his son William to the king's allegiance, ii. 206 ; orders the siege of Mountsorel, *ib.*; summons the king's castellans to Newark, ii. 208 ; one of the leaders there, ii. 209 ; collects an army, and marches to Lincoln, *ib.* ; iii. 239 ; permits the spoils of the city to be taken by the royalists, ii. 213 ; confidence of Philip II. in him, ii. 216 ; iii. 242 ; by his advice a force is appointed to guard the coasts, *ib.*; refuses to engage the French at sea, ii. 218 ; present at the landing of Hubert de Burgh at Dover, after his victory, ii. 221 *n.*; iii. 242 ; besieges London, ii. 221 ; meets prince Louis at Staines, to draw up terms of peace, ii. 222 ; the favourable terms granted, ascribed to his management, ii. 257 ; iii. 247 ; conducts Louis to the coast, ii. 224 ; lays siege to Newark castle, and defeats the garrison, ii. 226 ; iii. 243 ; his death, and burial in the New Temple, London, ii. 232 ; his epitaphs, *ib.*; shield of arms, *ib.*

Mareschal, William, Junior, earl, and earl of Pembroke, eldest son of the "Great Mareschal," joins the party of prince Louis, ii. 180 ; recalled to his allegiance by his father, ii. 206 ; takes the part of earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 296 ; one of the chiefs at Newark, ii. 209 ; his hostilities with Llewellyn of Wales, ii. 255 ; iii. 246 ; appointed one of the leaders of the army in Britanny, ii. 328 ; his sister married to the earl of Cornwall, ii. 331 ; his death, *s. p. m.*, and burial in the New Temple, *ib.*, 509 ; shield of arms, *ib.* ; his widow Alienor makes a vow of continence, ii. 402.

Mareschal, Richard, earl, [and earl of Pembroke, second son of William, Senior,] joins Henry III. in Wales, ii. 333 ; offers homage for the inheritance of his brother William, ii. 334; exiled by the king, *ib.*; goes to Ireland, and receives homage of his knights, *ib.* ; takes possession of the castle of Pembroke, and collects forces against the king, *ib.* ; his character, *ib.* ; Henry receives his homage, *ib.* ; opposes Henry's marriage to a daughter of the king of Scots, ii. 336 ; one of the sureties for Hubert de Burgh, ii. 351 ; indignant at the dismissal of his deputy-marshal, ii. 353 ; reproaches the king for his favouritism to foreigners, ii. 354 ; iii. 268 ; withdraws from the court, ii. 354 ; forms a confederacy against the king and bishop of Winchester, ii. 356 ; iii. 269 ; declared an exile, and his lands given to the Poitevins, *ib.*; joins Llewellyn, prince of North Wales, ii. 357 ; iii. 269 ; his fealty declared void, and one of his castles besieged, ii. 358 ; iii. 269 ; his lands in Wales invaded by Henry, ii. 361 ; unwilling to attack the king in person, ii. 362 ; his confederates defeat the royalists at Grosmond, *ib.* ; defeats John of Monmouth, and burns his vills and houses, ii. 364 ; iii. 269 ; frequent raids made by him, ii. 365 ; goes over to Ireland, ii. 367 ; iii. 270 ; fights a battle with the nobles there, ii. 368 ; seriously wounded, and dies in consequence of unskilful treatment, *ib.*, 369 ; confesses, and receives the sacrament, ii. 369 ; his declaration on his death bed, *ib.*; buried at the Friars Minors, Kilkenny, *ib.* ; his shield of arms, *ib.* ; his military skill, *ib.* ; office for the dead chaunted for him in the king's chapel, ii. 370 ; iii. 271 ; Henry Clement killed, for boasting he caused his death, ii. 381.

Mareschal, Gilbert, earl, [and earl of Pembroke, third son of William, Senior,] asks of Henry III. his brother Richard's inheritance, ii. 370 ; does homage, ii. 371 ; a literate and beneficed person, *ib.* ; knighted, and receives the wand of office of Mareschal, *ib.* ; iii. 271 ; his shield of arms, *ib.*, 451 ; accused of the death of Henry Clement, ii. 381 ; the king never liked him afterwards, *ib.*; assumes the cross, ii. 391 ; his death at a tournament

Mareschal, Gilbert, earl—*cont.*
at Hertford, *s. p. m.*, ii. 451, 509; iii. 288; buried in the New Temple, London, *ib.*; death of his widow Margaret, ii. 498.

Mareschal, Walter, earl, [and earl of Pembroke, fourth son of William, Senior,] receives his inheritance from the king, ii. 455; iii. 284; becomes a favourite, *ib.*; dies without issue, ii. 509; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Mareschal, Anselm, earl, [and earl of Pembroke,] youngest brother of Walter, dies *s.p. m.*, ii. 509; his shield of arms, *ib.*; by the deaths of all the brothers without issue, their inheritance was dispersed, *ib.*; iii. 296.

Mareschal, John, [nephew to William, Senior, earl of Pembroke,] present at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195; with the army at Newark, ii. 209; appointed one of the chiefs to guard the coasts, ii. 216; sent to the prelates, to forbid them to subject their fees to the pope, ii. 279.

Margaret, sister of Eadgar Etheling, recalled from Hungary, iii. 167; lands in Scotland with her brother, i. 9; iii. 170; married to Malcolm III., *ib.*; her children, *ib.*; her pious death, i. 43; was daughter of Eadward, by the sister of the emperor Henry II., i. 301.

Margaret, daughter of Louis VII., asked in marriage for prince Henry, son of Henry II., i. 309; comes to England, and crowned at Winchester, i. 372; accompanies Henry II. to England, i. 384.

Margaret, sister of Philip, count of Flanders, and wife of Baldwin, count of Hainault, marriage of her daughter to the king of France, i. 423.

Margaret, daughter of Henry III. and Alienor, her birth, ii. 438; iii. 281; her marriage proposed to Alexander III. of Scotland, ii. 489 *n.*; iii. 291; married to him at York, iii. 117; committed to the care of Robert de Ros, iii. 118; Geoffrey de Langley appointed her joint guardian, iii. 322; her complaints against them, iii. 347.

[Margaret of Provence,] queen of Louis IX., left in Damietta, iii. 81; bears him a son [John] and daughter [Blanche], iii. 122; gives Henry III. a present, in the form of a peacock, iii. 344.

Margaret, sister of Alexander II. of Scotland, married to Hubert de Burgh, ii. 248, 336.

Margaret, sister of Alexander II. of Scotland, and widow of Gilbert Mareschal, her death, and burial at London, ii. 498.

Margaret, daughter of Hubert de Burgh, married to Richard de Clare, ii. 395; iii. 274.

Marianus Scotus, monk of Fulda, and historiographer, mentioned, *Prol.* i. 5; compiles a chronicle to 1082, i. 26; corrects the cycle of Dionysius, *ib.*; iii. 172; dies, iii. 166.

Marisco, Geoffrey de, deserts the earl Mareschal in battle, ii. 368; his shield of arms, ii. 462 *n.*; an outlaw, but received by the king of Scots, ii. 494; died in exile, ii. 509; iii. 296.

Marisco, Richard de, clerk, devoted to John, ii. 123; helped to carry out a tax on the clergy, *ib.*; by his advice, the Cistercians were mulcted, ii. 151; sent abroad, to raise mercenary troops, ii. 160.

Marisco, William de, son of Geoffrey, proclaimed an outlaw, ii. 462; takes refuge in Lundy island, and lives by robbery, *ib.*; iii. 285; captured and hung at London, *ib.*; his limbs sent to the four chief cities, ii. 463; his shield of arms degraded, ii. 462.

Mariscum, castle of, [in Syria ?] thrown down by an earthquake, i. 218.

Marlborough (*Marleberge*), castle of, granted to prince John, ii. 5; Henry III. keeps Christmas there, ii. 240; lies dangerously ill at, ii. 278.

Marmiun, Robert, expelled the monks from Coventry, i. 273; makes a fortress of the monastery, *ib.*; he dies excommunicated, i. 274; iii. 189.

Marmiun, Robert, [grandson of the preceding,] his death, ii. 459.

Marmoutier (*Majus-Monasterium*), the abbat of, [Geoffrey,] one of the sureties of Philip II., ii. 57; his possessions seized by Richard, *ib.*

Maroch [the Save?], river of, in Hungary, i. 60.

Marocco (*Marroch*), invasion of Spain by the king of, [Jacub Almansor,] ii. 54.

Marrah, city of, defeat of Reimund Pilet at, i. 130; three days from Antioch, *ib.*; besieged by the Crusaders and taken, *ib.*; Christmas kept there by them, i. 132.

Marham, nunnery of, near Lynne, founded by the countess of Arundel, iii., 106, 321.

Marseilles (*Marsilia*), the citizens aid in the capture of Majorca, ii. 374.

Martel, castle of, in Touraine, death of the young king Henry at, i. 425.

Martel, William, dapifer of Stephen, taken prisoner at Wilton, i. 268; iii. 188; committed to the custody of Brian Fitz-Count, *ib.*; a special prison made for, at Wallingford, i. 269; surrenders Shirburne castle to the empress, *ib.*

Martin, St., buried at Tours, ii. 49.

Martin, papal nuncio, and clerk of the chamber, sent to England by Innocent IV. to collect money, ii. 478; iii. 288; his rapacious proceedings, ii. 479 *n.*; called "Mastiff," from his conduct, ii. 488 *n.*; assembles the abbats, and shows them the papal mandate, ii. 492; iii. 291; dwelt at the New Temple, London, ii. 503; ordered to leave the kingdom, *ib.*; seeks the king, who gives him safe-conduct to Dover, ii. 504; scarcely escaped being pulled to pieces by the barons, *ib.*; iii. 294; promises "Provisions" to the constable of Dover and

Martin, papal nuncio—*cont.*
Robert le Noreys for their protection, *ib.*; lays his complaints before the pope at Lyons, *ib.*

Martin, Garcias, grandee of Spain, comes to London, iii. 348.

Mary, the Virgin, her church and sepulchre in the valley of Jehosaphat, i. 161, 163; the earl of Salisbury's escape from shipwreck ascribed to, ii. 275.

Mary, daughter of Stephen, and abbess of Romsey, her marriage to the count of Boulogne, i. 314; iii. 194.

Mary, sister of archbishop Thomas, made abbess of Barking, i. 376; iii. 200.

Mary, daughter of Engelram de Coucy, married to Alexander II. of Scotland, ii. 419; returns home, iii. 116, 321.

Mascuns, Louis de, a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Mategrifun, a castle so called by Richard I., at Messina, ii. 17; iii. 210.

Matilda, daughter of Baldwin, count of Flanders, and wife of William I., her death, and burial at Caen, i. 26; iii. 172; her children, i. 30, 31.

Matilda, daughter of Malcolm III. of Scotland, and Margaret, educated in a nunnery, and said to have taken the veil, i. 188; iii. 178; sought in marriage by Henry I., *ib.*; persuaded to accept him by the abbess, i. 189; she does so unwillingly, *ib.*; iii. 178; the marriage celebrated by archbishop Anselm, *ib.*; anecdote of her humility, i. 201; her death, and burial at Westminster, i. 222; iii. 182; founded the hospital of St. Giles, for lepers, *ib.*; her genealogy, i. 301.

Matilda, daughter of Henry I. and Matilda, married to the emperor Henry V., i. 210; iii. 180; accused of the emperor's death, i. 237; iii. 184; seeks refuge with her father, *ib.*; accompanies Henry to England, i. 238; iii. 184; the nobles of England and Normandy swear fealty to, *ib.*; married again to Geoffrey, count of Anjou, i. 240;

Matilda, daughter of Henry I. and Matilda —*cont.*
sent to her husband, i. 244; escorted by Stephen [count of Boulogne], i. 244 *n.*, 301; her intrigue with Stephen on board the ship, *ib.*; birth of her son Henry, i. 246; Henry appoints her and her heirs his successors, *ib.*; birth of her son Geoffrey, i. 247; iii. 186; her subsequent illness, i. 248; David, king of Scots, made homage and fealty to her, i. 253, 254; birth of her son William, i. 255; comes to England with earl Robert, i. 262; iii. 187; received at Arundel castle, *ib.*; Stephen brought prisoner to her, i. 266; acknowledged generally as "Lady," except by the men of Kent, *ib.*; also by the legate Alberic, the bishop of Winchester, and the Londoners, *ib.*; expelled from London, i. 267; orders Stephen to be put in fetters, *ib.*; besieges Winchester castle, and her forces defeated, *ib.*; Shirburne castle given up to her by William Martel, i. 269; besieged by Stephen in Oxford castle, *ib.*; iii. 188; escapes by stratagem, and goes to Wallingford, *ib.*; interposes on the eve of a battle between duke Henry and Stephen, i. 294; reveals to Stephen that duke Henry is his son, begotten on herself, i. 295; her maternal genealogy, i. 301; intercedes for archbishop Thomas with Henry II., i. 341; her death, and burial at Rouen, i. 435; her epitaph, *ib.*

Matilda, [daughter of Eustace, count of Boulogne,] wife of king Stephen, the castle of Dover surrendered to, i. 258; opposes the empress in Kent, i. 266; her death, and burial at Faversham, i. 291; iii. 191.

Matilda, eldest daughter of Henry II. and Alienor, her birth, i. 306; marries Henry, duke of Saxony, i. 336; accompanies the duke to her father in Normandy, i. 424; comes to England, and is delivered of a son at Winchester, i. 426; her death, i. 466; iii. 208.

Maudut, William de, his castle of Hameslape razed, ii. 170; taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212.

Mauleon (*de Malo-leone*), Savary de, reproaches John for subjecting himself to Rome, ii. 153; a leader of the mercenaries from Poitou and Gascony, ii. 163; iii. 232; aids in the siege of Rochester castle, *ib.*; restrains John from hanging the garrison, ii. 165; iii. 232; goes northwards with John's army, ii. 169; helps to devastate the isle of Ely, ii. 173; spares the abbey and town of Croyland, ii. 189; hangs the men found there, and extorts ransom from the abbey, *ib.*

Mauley (*de Malo-lacu*), Peter de, aids the earl of Albemarle in disturbing the peace, ii. 244; joins the earl of Chester in rebellion, ii. 260, 261; sets out for Jerusalem, ii. 446.

Maurice, archbishop of Braga, made antipope [Gregory VIII.] by the emperor Henry, i. 231; compelled to become a monk by pope Calixtus II., *ib.*

Maurienne, in Savoy. *See* Savoy.

Maurienne, Humbert, count of, his eldest daughter [Alice], by the widow [divorced wife ?] of the duke of Saxony, betrothed to prince John, i. 373.

Mayenne (*Meduana*), Henry II. ravages the French territory as far as, i. 447.

Mayence. *See* Mentz.

Measures and weights, enactments for uniformity of, ii. 10, 65; of wine, ale, and cloth, reformed, ii. 65, 299; iii. 216, 256; money extorted, on account of false, iii. 256.

Meath (*Midia*), province of, in Ireland, death of Hugh de Lascy, lord of, i. 434; the proceedings of John in, ii. 122.

Mecca (*Mecha*), route of pilgrims or merchants to, ii. 236.

Mecca, Golias of, a Saracen killed by Richard de Chaumont, i. 134.

Meezeburg [Altenburg ?], in Hungary, attacked by the Crusaders, i. 67.

Melchisadech, a name of Sem, son of Noah, i. 159; its meaning, *ib.*; reigned at Salem, i. 160.

Melckeley, Gervase de, an astrologer, ii. 232; epitaph of William earl Mareschal, Senior, composed by, *ib.*

Meletemia, [Malatia], a city of Mesopotamia, Boamund of Antioch captured at, i. 186.

Mellent or Meulent (*Meblent*, *Medlent*, *Meslent*, *Muthlent*, *Mulent*), Waleran II., [*called incorrectly* Robert,] count of, recedes from Henry I., i. 232; iii. 183; his castle of Pont-Audemer captured, *ib.*; taken prisoner in Normandy, i. 233; with Stephen, in the battle of Lincoln, i. 265; makes peace with Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 267.

Melton, castle of, held against Stephen by Eustace Fitz-John, i. 258.

Melun, also called Ysium, ii. 178; interview of prince Louis with his father there, *ib.*

Melun, [Adam,] vicomte de, his confession touching the intentions of prince Louis, ii. 187; advises the barons to consult their own safety, ii. 188; dies, *ib.*; his confession told to Louis, ii. 224; iii. 236, 243.

Menduc, prince of Persia, invades the Christian territories, i. 218; encamps by the Jordan, *ib.*

Mentz or Mayence, Radulph of Burgundy crowned at, i. 24; insurrection of the citizens against, *ib.*; council held at, i. 25; slaughter of the Jews there, i. 67.

Mentz, archbishops of:
—— Sigefrid, crowns Radulph king of Germany, i. 24; flies from the city, *ib.*
—— [Sigefrid or Sifrid], an enemy of Frederic II., iii. 53; dies, *ib.*

Mercer, Robert, inhabitant of St. Alban's, his vision of St. Alban, and revelation of the burial-place of St. Amphibalus, i. 401; relates the vision, and points out the locality, i. 405.

Mercher, earl, [the same as Morcard, earl of Northumbria?] takes flight from the tyranny of William I., i. 9; retreats to Ely, i. 14, 15.

Mercia, duke, or earl, of. *See* Eadric; Eadwin.

Mercurius, St., aids the Christian army against Corbaran, i. 125.

Merlin, prophecies of, fulfilled, i. 296, 388, 463; ii. 4.

Merlou, William de, taken prisoner at Beauvais, ii. 59.

Mertona (*Meretona*, *Meretuna*), abbey of, of the Order of Augustine, first settled by monks under prior Robert, i. 222; archbishop Thomas wore their habit, i. 316 *n.*; iii. 195; Hubert de Burgh seeks refuge at, ii. 345; iii. 266; council held at, by Henry III., ii. 386; statutes established at, ii. 387; money left by Peter Chaceporc to build a house of canons from, iii. 343.

Messina (*Messana*), Philip II. and Richard arrive at, ii. 16; conflict between their forces at, ii. 17; they embark from, for Jerusalem, ii. 20.

Meteor, or comet, appearance of, i. 44. *See* Comets.

Mice, legend of a German count, eaten by, i. 37.

Michael, doge of Venice, assists in the capture of Tyre, i. 234; iii. 183.

Middlesex, Richard de Beaumais, archdeacon of. *See* London, bishops of.

Middelton, [Egelric,] abbat of, degraded by archbishop Anselm, i. 191; reinstated, i. 192.

Milan, pope Innocent IV. comes to, iii. 321; leaves, iii. 105; a Friar Preacher killed there, iii. 130, 324.

Milanese, are conquered by Frederic II., ii. 401; their podestà [Pietro Tiepolo] and Carrochio captured, *ib.*; iii. 275.

Milli (*Milium*, *Miliacum*), castle of, near Beauvais, destroyed by the *routiers* of Richard I., ii. 59.

Minorca, occupied by the Christians, ii. 374; iii. 271.

Mirebeau (*Mirabellum*), castle of, in Poitou, captured by Henry II., i. 306; iii. 193; queen Alienor there, ii. 92; besieged by Arthur of Britanny, ii. 93; relieved by John, *ib.*; taken by Henry III., ii. 326.

Moab, beyond Jordan, i. 159.

Modin, the fortress of the Maccabees, i. 158.

Mœsia, called also "Dacia mediterranea," i. 69; arrival of the Crusaders under Godfrey at, *ib.*; passed through by the army of Louis VII., i. 279.

Moia, Adam de, knight, slain by the Welsh, ii. 507; iii. 296.

Moiun, [Mohun,] William de, held the castle of Dunster against Stephen, i. 258.

Molis, Nicholas de, knight, appointed seneschal of Gascony, ii. 471; iii. 286; defeats the king of Navarre, ii. 496; iii. 292.

Monasteries, oppressed by William I., i. 13; seized by William II., and farmed, i. 38.

Monasterium-Griffonum, castle of, between Calabria and Messina, taken by Richard I., ii. 17; iii. 210.

Moncy, Drogo de, a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Monks, simplicity and purity of those in former times, iii. 111.

[Monmouth], Geoffrey Arthur of. *See* St. Asaph, bishops of.

Monmouth, John de, defeated by the earl Mareschal, ii. 364; iii. 269; one of the Lords Marchers who defeat the Welsh, ii. 488; iii. 290; his villages burnt, *ib.*

Monoculus, an Irish "regulus" so called, does homage to Henry II., i. 370.

Mons Dani, [Danith?] the Turks defeated at, by Baldwin II., i. 229.

Mons Jani, [Mont Genèvre,] traversed by queen Alienor, on her way to join Richard, ii. 15.

Mons-Regalis. *See* Crac; *and* Montreal.

Monster, a marine, thrown up in the diocese of Norwich, iii. 343.

Mont-doubleau (*Mons-duplex*), castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 461.

Montagu (*de Monte-acuto*), Conan de, joins duke Godfrey as a crusader, i. 68.

Montauban (*Mons Albanus*), castle of, captured by John, ii. 107.

Monte, Godfrey de, his death at the battle of Gorgoni, i. 86.

[Monte, de] Robert, abbat of Mount St. Michael, finished his Chronicle in 1157, i. 308.

Monte-Cassino, the monks of, driven out by Frederic II., ii. 421.

Monte-Cassino, Desiderius, abbat of. *See* Victor III., pope.

Monte-Merla, Aicard de, killed by the Turks, i. 141.

[Montferrat], Boniface I., marquis of, his daughter sought in marriage by Robert of Normandy, i. 30.

Montferrat (*de Monte-Ferrato*), William [eldest son of William the Old], marquis of, married Sibil, sister of Baldwin IV., i. 429, 431; his son Baldwin becomes king of Jerusalem, i. 431.

Montferrat, Conrad [brother of the preceding], marquis of, refuses Guy king of Jerusalem admission to Tyre, i. 452; dies shortly after [*a mistake*], *ib.*; his letter to archbishop Baldwin on the state of the Holy Land, i. 456; Philip II. proposes to make him king of Jerusalem, ii. 24; married [Isabel] daughter of Amaury I., *ib.*; his widow given to Henry [de Champagne], with the kingdom of Jerusalem, ii. 27; Richard I. accused of his death, ii. 43.

Montferrat, [Boniface IV.,] marquis of, deserts the emperor Frederic II., ii. 474; his son [William] kept a prisoner by Conrad, iii. 100; proposed to be exchanged for Ensius, *ib.*

Montferrat, William de, Preceptor of Antioch, commands the Templars in a battle with the Saracens, ii. 399.

Montfort (*Mons-fortis*), castle of, given up to Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 267; taken by Philip II., i. 459; surrendered to Philip, ii. 97.

[Montfort], Simon de, [earl of Evreux,] taken prisoner by Louis VII. [Philip of Flanders?] at Aumâle, i. 377.

Montfort, Simon de, earl of Leicester, appointed leader of the forces against the Albigeois, ii. 144; takes the city of Beziers, *ib.*; defeats the king of Arragon, *ib.*; killed at the siege of Toulouse, ii. 239; iii. 244; his shield of arms, *ib.*; his death predicted, and epitaph, ii. 240; death of his brother not far from Toulouse, *ib.*

Montfort, Almaric de, [eldest son of the preceding,] conciliated in regard to the earldom of Leicester, bestowed on Simon, his younger brother, ii. 417; iii. 278; taken prisoner by the Saracens, and brought to Babylon, ii. 433.

Montfort, Simon de, [brother of the preceding,] marries Alienor, sister of Henry III., ii. 403; iii. 275; commotion caused by his marriage, ii. 404; iii. 276; leaves England, ii. 405; his countess is left pregnant at Kenilworth, ii. 406; obtains letters of recommendation from the emperor, *ib.*; obtains confirmation of his marriage at Rome, ii. 409, 411; iii. 276; returns from Rome, and orders his debtors to be compensated, ii. 409; goes to Kenilworth, ii. 413; birth of his son Henry, ii. 414; created earl of Leicester, ii. 417; iii. 278; present at the baptism of prince Edward, ii. 422; accusations against him, ii. 424; not allowed to be present at the feast for the queen's purification, *ib.*; embarks in a boat on the Thames with his wife, and goes abroad, *ib.*; sells his woods in Leicestershire, and prepares to go to the Holy Land, ii. 430; iii. 280; his wife remains abroad, for her confinement, *ib.*; obtains the wardship of the heir of Gilbert de Umfraville, ii. 509; again assumes the cross, iii. 32, 302; returns from Gascony, after having subdued the king's enemies, iii. 43, 305; further successes in Gascony, iii. 55, 73, 308; returns again, and replies to the charges against him, iii. 105, 321; renewed accusations against him by the Gascons, iii. 119; resigns the government, iii. 322; goes back, and defeats his enemies, iii. 123; retires to France, where he refuses the appointment of "seneschal," iii. 134, 325; complaints of his tyranny renewed from Bordeaux, iii. 139, 327; proclamation made of his deposition, *ib.*

Montgomery (*Mons Gomericus*), castle of, destroyed by the Welsh, i. 48; iii. 175; a castle built there by Henry III., ii. 247; iii. 245; the garrison of, defeat the Welsh, ii. 331; Llewellyn lies in ambush near, ii. 332; slaughter of the Welsh at, ii. 449; iii. 293.

Montgomery, Roger de, [earl of Shrewsbury,] deceived by William Rufus, i. 36.

Montmorency (*de Monte-Morcino*), Matthew de, overthrown and captured by Richard I., ii. 73.

Montoire (*Montarium*), castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 461.

Montpellier (*de Monte-Pessulano*), William de, assumes the cross, i. 57; joins the count of Toulouse, i. 72; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Montpensier (*Muntpancier*), abbey of, near Avignon, Louis VIII. retires to, ii. 287; iii. 254; his body kept there, after his death, ii. 288.

Montreal (*Mons-regalis*), another name of Petra, i. 161. *See* Crac.

Montreale (*Mons-regalis*), near Palermo, the monks of, driven out by the emperor Frederic II., ii. 421.

Montsoreau (*Mons-Sorelli*), castle of, taken by duke Henry, i. 290.

Moon, eclipses of. *See* Eclipses.

Moray, in Scotland, Ralph, canon of Lincoln, elected bishop of, iii. 119

Morcard, earl, [of Northumbria,] brother of Eadwin, flies from the tyranny of William I., i. 9. *See* Mercher.

Moreville, Hugh de, one of the murderers of archbishop Thomas, i. 363, 364.

Mortain (*Moritonium*), castle of, taken by Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 268.

Mortain, William, count of, exiled by Henry I., i. 196; fights against him in Normandy, *ib.*; taken prisoner at the battle of Tenchebrai, i. 204; iii. 180; condemned to perpetual imprisonment, i. 207.

Mortain, Rotrou, count of, several of his castles taken by Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 268.

Mortain, earldom of, granted to prince John, ii. 3.

Mortality, of men and animals (1104), i. 196, 215; iii. 179; (1111), i. 215; iii. 181. *See* Famine; Murrain.

Mortemer (*de Mortuo-Mari*), monastery of, founded by Henry I., i. 249.

Mortimer, Hugh de, fortifies his castles against Henry II., i. 303; submits to him, *ib.*

Mortimer, Hugh de, official of archbishop Boniface, represents to him the privileges of St. Alban's abbey, iii. 80; the archbishop wishes to get him made bishop of Rochester, iii. 87; gives notice to the chapter of Lincoln, to elect an archdeacon, iii. 345.

Moubray, Robert de, earl of Northumberland. *See* Northumberland.

Moubray (*de Molbraio*), Roger de, fortifies his castle in the isle of Axholme against Henry II., i. 383; iii. 201; taken prisoner by the Lincolnshire forces, *ib.*; submits to the king, i. 389.

Moubray (*de Munbrai*), William de, [grandson of Roger,] taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212.

Moun, Reginald de, made justiciary of the Forest, iii. 126.

Mount-Carmel, Friars of, arrive in England, ii. 496; iii. 318; Thomas de Hertford leaves his body to a house of, iii. 329.

Mountsorel (*Montsorel*, *Muntsorel*), castle of, surrendered to Henry II., i. 388; the garrison of, defeated by the castellan of Nottingham, ii. 202; iii. 239; besieged by the royalists, ii. 206; iii. 239; defended by Henry de Braibroc, *ib.*; the besieged send to the earl of Winchester for aid, *ib.*; the siege raised at the approach of the barons, ii. 208; iii. 239; deserted by the garrison, ii. 213; iii. 240; razed to the ground, ii. 214; iii. 240.

Muhaud, Muhaut [*de Monte-alto*], Roger de, one of the Lords Marchers, who defeated the Welsh, ii. 488; iii. 290.

Muletune, Lambert de, knight, his death, iii. 14.

Muletune, Thomas de, imprisoned in Corf castle, ii. 166; a justice itinerant at Dunstable, ii. 263; dies, ii. 439; iii. 281.

Muntbegun, Roger de, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Muntcheinsil (*de Montecheinsillo*, *Muncheysil*), Warin de, his daughter Joanna married to William de Valence, iii. 26, 301; dies, iii. 346; amount of money left by his will, *ib.*; his shield of arms, *ib. n.*; the wardship of his heir given to William de Valence, iii. 347.

Munteinni, Ernald de, death of, at a tournay, iii. 124, 322.

Muntfichet, Richard de, taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212.

Muntfort, Hugh de, brother-in-law of Robert, count of Mellent, invades Normandy, i. 233; taken prisoner, *ib.*

Muntfort, Robert de, is victor in a duel of appeal with Henry de Esexe, i. 320.

Murmelin, or Miramumelin, [the Emir Amumenin, Mohammed Abdallah,] king of the Moors, defeated in Spain, and his son killed, iii. 89, 315.

Murrain, amongst the cattle (1252), iii. 124; flocks and game (1254), iii. 332. *See* Mortality.

N.

Nantes, town of, taken possession of by Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 306; and by Henry II., i. 310; Henry keeps Christmas at, i. 351, John obtains a victory near, ii. 149; Henry III. awaits reinforcements at, ii. 324; exhausts his treasure there, ii. 327.

Naples, the prelates captured by Ensius taken there to be imprisoned, ii. 450; death of pope Innocent IV. at, iii. 341.

Naples, John of, cardinal legate, cites Henry II. and archbishop Thomas to Montmirail, i. 338.

Narbonne, [Peter,] archbishop of, one of the chiefs at Acre, when Frederic II. landed, ii. 304.

Navarre, Sancho VI., king of, his dispute with the king of Castille, settled by the award of Henry II., i. 396; his daughter Berengaria left with Richard I. as his bride, ii. 15.

Navarre, Sancho VII., king of, joins Richard I. with forces, ii. 49; iii. 214; ravages the territories of Geoffrey de Rancona and the count of Angoulême, *ib.*

Navarre, Theobald IV., king of, [and count of Champagne,] one of the rebellious nobles in France, ii. 390; defeated in Gascony, ii. 496; iii. 292.

Navaret, claimed by the king of Castille, i. 396.

Nazareth, in Galilee, the archbishop of, subject to the patriarch of Jerusalem, i. 161; birthplace of the Virgin Mary, i. 162; death of Saladin at, ii. 45.

Nazareth, [Nicholas ?] archbishop of, one of the chiefs at Acre, when Frederic II. landed, ii. 304.

Neapolis, [Nablous,] said [*by mistake*] to be a name of Lydda, i. 158 *n.*; the place where Sichem was slain, i. 159; subject to the clerks of the Temple, i. 162; spoiled and burnt by Saladin, i. 430.

Necton, William de, special clerk of John, flies abroad, and lies hid at Corbeil, ii. 126; iii. 226.

Neel, Drogo de, a crusader, released from prison at Constantinople, i. 69.

[Nemause, Walter de], Mareschal of France, one of the leaders against the English royalists, ii. 207; advises the defence of Lincoln, ii. 210; takes flight from Lincoln, ii. 214.

Nepa, castle of, in the territory of Antioch, besieged by Noradin, i. 285.

Neubourg (*Novus-Burgus*), marriage of prince Henry to Margaret of France at, i. 311.

Neufchâtel (*Novum-Castellum*), present made to Richard I. by the burgesses of, ii. 49.

Neufmarché (*Novum-Mercatum*), castle of, besieged by Louis VII. and allies, i. 289; surrendered to him, i. 290; given up to duke Henry, i. 299.

Nevers, [Hervé,] count of, leader of the army to besiege Windsor castle, ii. 185; corrupted by the bribes of John, *ib.*; uses contemptuous language against the English barons, *ib.*; gives John private information, and the siege of Windsor raised by his advice, *ib.*; iii. 226; sent to persuade Hubert de Burgh to surrender Dover castle, ii. 197; joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 229; withdraws dishonourably, ii. 230.

Nevers, [Bernard,] bishop of, present at the meeting of Philip and Henry II. at Freteval, i. 354.

Neville, Hugh de, sent to appoint juries to view the forests, ii. 273.

Neville. *See* Noville.

Newark (*Neuwerc*), castle of, surrendered to Stephen by the bishop of Lincoln, i. 262; death of king John at, ii. 192, 194; messengers from the barons arrive at, ii. 194; the king's castellans assemble at, to march on Lincoln, ii. 208; the forces and leaders there, ii. 209; belonged to the bishop of Lincoln, but held against him by Robert de Gaugi, ii. 226; iii.

Newark (*Neuwerc*), castle of—*cont.* 243; composition made for its surrender, ii. 227.

Newburgh, John [de Schipton?], prior of, sent abroad on the king's affairs, iii. 334; wrote an account of the war in Flanders, *ib.*; recommended to be bishop of Carlisle, iii. 337.

Newcastle-on-Tyne, the family of the earl of Northumberland made prisoners there, i. 47; taken by David, king of Scots, i. 253; given up to Stephen, *ib.*; ceded to Henry II. by Malcolm, i. 307; peace made at, between Henry III. and Alexander II., ii. 494.

Newenham (*Neuhenham*), the prior of, sent by Henry III. to demand the surrender of Bedford castle, ii. 263.

New Forest, laid waste by William I. for the purpose of hunting, i. 29, 31; prince Richard killed there, i. 31; death of William Rufus in, i. 169, 170; iii. 177.

Nice, in Bithynia, march of the Crusaders, under Peter the Hermit, to, i. 63; a town in the neighbourhood taken, *ib.*; siege and capture of, i. 77, 79–83; iii. 175, 176; a general synod formerly held at, i. 79; belonged to Soliman, *ib.*; release of the Christian prisoners in, i. 83; taken possession of by the Greek emperor's officers, i. 84; date of capture, *ib.*; the Crusaders arrive at, led by the count of Toulouse, i. 193; passed by the army of Conrad III., i. 280; the emperor flies to, i. 281.

Nicephorus III., [Botoniates,] emperor of Greece, deposed by Alexius, i. 70.

Nicholas II., pope, iii. 168; gives the pall to the archbishop of York, *ib.*

Nicholas, bishop of Tusculum, apostolic legate, arrives in England, ii. 145; deposes the abbat of Westminster, *ib.*; absolves the burgesses of Oxford, *ib.*; his poverty, contrasted with his subsequent pomp, *ib.*; is influenced by bribes from John, *ib.*; iii. 129; accepts the king's offer for indemnification of the prelates, *ib.*; receives from John the charter of subjection to the pope, ii. 146; Innocent III. writes to him, to fill up the vacant sees and abbeys, *ib.*; his tyranny in executing this mandate, ii. 147; fills up the vacancies with his own relations and unworthy countrymen, *ib.*; iii. 229; appeal against his proceedings by the English prelates, *ib.*; sends Pandulph to Rome, to oppose the repeal, *ib.*; relaxes the interdict, ii. 149; cancels a document made by the abbat of St. Alban's before his election, ii. 154.

Nicomedia, capital of Bithynia, arrival of the Crusaders at, under duke Godfrey, i. 77.

Nicopolis, Nichopolis, a city of Palestine, formerly called Emaus, i. 137; Christ appeared there after his resurrection, *ib.*; a fountain at, with sanitary properties, *ib.*

Nicosia, [Eustorgius,] bishop of, accompanies the Crusaders to Damietta, ii. 227.

Nile, the river, the Crusaders encamp between the sea-shore and, ii. 227; attack and capture of the tower in, ii. 228; overflow of, and loss sustained, ii. 230; crossed by the Crusaders, to besiege Damietta, ii. 232; did not rise as usual, ii. 234.

Niort, Niorz, castle of, did not submit to Philip II., ii. 102.

Niz, [Nissa, in Servia,] the Crusaders under Peter the Hermit arrive at, i. 61; and again, under Godfrey, i. 68.

Nobe, a village of the priests, to the west of Jerusalem, i. 158.

Nocera (*Nuchera*), city of, built by Frederic II. for the Saracens, iii. 321; protected by Manfred, *ib.*; papal forces sent to destroy, iii. 345.

"Non Obstante," the odious clause, employed by the pope, iii. 12; the use of, borrowed from the Roman court, iii. 106; reprobated by the bishop of Lincoln, iii. 145; the ancient papal privileges were rendered null by it, iii. 316, 321.

Noradin [Noureddin], second son of Sanguinius, a Turkish prince, [Soldan of Aleppo,] besieges the castle of Nepa, i. 287 ; defeats and kills Reimund, prince of Antioch, *ib.* ; iii. 190 ; captures Hareng, *ib.* ; compelled to retreat by king Baldwin III., *ib.* ; again besieges and subdues Hareng, i. 337 ; captures Boamund of Antioch, and other princes, and imprisons them at Aleppo, *ib.*

Noreys, le (*Noriscus*), Robert, one of the marshals of the king's household, appointed to conduct the nuncio Martin to Dover, ii. 504 ; promise of a "Provision" made to him by the nuncio, *ib.*

Norfolk and Suffolk, counties of, earthquake in, i. 338 ; ravaged by prince Louis, ii. 182 ; pillaged by the barons, ii. 184 ; laid waste by John, ii. 185, 189 ; iii. 236 ; the earldom offered to Hubert de Burgh, to induce him to give up Dover castle, ii. 198.

Norfolk and Suffolk, Roger, earl of. *See* Bigod, Roger.

Norham, castle of, in Northumberland, John arrays his forces there against the king of Scots, ii. 118.

Norman, the prior, founds Christ Church or Holy Trinity, at London, i. 208.

Norman, le, Simon, special councillor of Henry III., sent to Rome, to obtain delay of the legate's recall, ii. 425 ; iii. 275 ; deprived of his livings and deposed, ii. 440 ; iii. 281 ; his laudable act, when keeper of the seal, *ib.* ; dies in exile, iii. 67.

Normandy, given by William I. to his son Robert, i. 20 ; taken from him, but restored, i. 21, 177 ; war in, between William Rufus and Robert, i. 39, 45 ; left in pawn to William II., i. 76 ; great part submits to Henry I., i. 201 ; invaded by Louis VI., i. 221 ; marvellous flocks of birds in, i. 243 ; offered by the nobles to Theobald of Blois, i. 255 ; subdued by Stephen, i. 256 ; his son Eustace does homage for, to Louis, *ib.* ; terms made with Geoffrey of Anjou respecting, i. 267 ; ii. 82 ; made over to his son Henry, i. 285 ; invaded by Louis, i. 290 ; and again, i. 377 ; castles erected in, ordered to be levelled, by Henry II., i. 393 ; given to the young king Henry by his father, i. 421 ; the insignia of the duchy received by Richard I., ii. 3 ; liberties conceded to the church in, ii. 19 ; ravaged by Philip II., ii. 45 ; Arthur of Britanny does homage for, to Philip, ii. 82 ; the lands in, occupied during the war, given up to John, ii. 85 ; submits to Philip, ii. 102 ; iii. 316 ; Henry III. asks to be received by the nobles of, ii. 291 ; is invited over, ii. 306 ; iii. 258 ; and again, ii. 325 ; invaded by the earl of Chester, ii. 329.

Normans, their custom of shaving the hair, adopted by the English, i. 11 ; oppressed state of England under, i. 28 ; their habit of swearing and boasting, *ib.* ; ii. 30 ; favoured by Richard I. beyond other nations, ii. 30 ; the lands held by them in England seized, ii. 480 ; iii. 289.

Northampton (*Norhamtona*), interview between duke Robert and Henry I. at, i. 202 ; the earl of Chester taken prisoner there, i. 275 ; council held at, i. 328 ; iii. 196 ; the exchequer removed to, ii. 118 ; John meets the pope's nuncios there, ii. 124 ; archbishop Edmund remonstrates with John at, ii. 142 ; Henry III. keeps Christmas there, ii. 226 ; iii. 243 ; the earl of Chester and his adherents meet the king at, ii. 261 ; conference held at, to discuss public affairs, ii. 262 ; the nuncio Otho comes to, ii. 283 ; Henry extorts money from the burgesses of, ii. 292 ; the prelates assembled there refuse the demands of the legate, ii. 437.

Northampton, castle of, besieged by the barons, ii. 156 ; the castellan, one of the four sworn to obey the barons, in carrying out Magna Carta, ii. 159 ; committed to the custody of Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 172 ; forces drawn from by him, ii. 203.

Northampton, Simon [de Saint Liz], earl of, at the battle of Lincoln, with Stephen, i. 265.

Northampton, archdeacons of:

—— Savaric. *See* Bath, bishops of.

—— John de Hotoft [Hotune], dies intestate, iii. 9.

Northumberland (*Northambria*, *Northanhumbria*), the people rise against earl Robert [Comyn], and kill him, i. 11; purchased by Walcher, bishop of Durham, i. 21; put to death by the people of, i. 22; prince Henry marches to, against earl Robert [de Moubray], i. 47; invaded by king David of Scotland, i. 257; cruelties committed there by his troops, *ib.*; again invaded by him, i. 258; had been given to David, but is refused to William [the Lion], i. 379; invaded by William, *ib.*; and again, i. 387; John extorts money from the people, ii. 89; he marches into, ii. 118; is subdued for prince Louis, by Alexander II. of Scotland, ii. 183.

Northumberland, Siward, duke of, his death, iii. 167; succeeded by Tosti, brother of Harold, *ib.*

Northumberland, the earldom given to Robert [Comyn] by William I., i. 11; his death, *ib.*

Northumberland, Robert de Moubray (*de Molbraio*), earl of, founds the priory of St. Oswin at Tynemouth, and gives it to St. Alban's, i. 11 *n.*, 41; iii. 174; his pride, after defeating Malcolm of Scotland, i. 47; refuses to come to the king's court, *ib.*; William II. and his brother march against him, *ib.*; the chief of his family captured at Newcastle, *ib.*; his brother taken at Tynemouth, i. 48; besieged in Bamborough castle, *ib.*; retreats to Tynemouth, where he is captured, *ib.*; imprisoned at Windsor, *ib.*; iii. 175; his adherents put to death, imprisoned, or exiled, *ib.*; buried at St. Alban's, iii. 175 *n.*

Northumberland, Thomas de Hertford, archdeacon of. *See* Hertford, Thomas de.

Norway, taken possession of by Cnut, iii. 163; given to his son [Sweyn], iii. 164; the cardinal bishop of Sabina, sent legate to, iii. 23, 300; the monasteries of the Black Order in, required reformation, iii. 300; Matthew Paris sent there, for that purpose, iii. 40, 304.

Norway, kings of. *See* Hacon; Olaf.

Norwich (*Norwicum*, *Northwicum*), conspiracy of English earls against William I. at, i. 19; besieged by William, *ib.*; the castle of, seized by Hugh Bigod, i. 254; given up to Henry II. by William, son of Stephen, i. 307; taken by the Flemish forces, i. 384; prince Louis places soldiers in the castle, ii. 182; a boy circumcised by the Jews at, ii. 375; iii. 271.

Norwich, diocese of, a thunderstorm in, iii. 96, 98; a marine monster thrown up there, iii. 343.

Norwich, bishops of:

—— Herbert Losinga, transfers the see of Thetford to Norwich, i. 47; iii. 175; a great benefactor to the church, *ib.*; present at the consecration of the archbishop of York, i. 210; dies, i. 228; iii. 182.

—— William, present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318; ordered to be cited by the justices, for having excommunicated earl Hugh, i. 333.

—— John [of Oxford], dean of Salisbury, consecrated, i. 394; absolved from his vow of pilgrimage by the pope, ii. 16; iii. 210; pays half of the tax for the ransom of Richard I. ii. 44.

—— John de Grai, consecrated, ii. 89; iii. 220; recommended by John to the see of Canterbury, ii. 105; formally elected, and installed, *ib.*, 106; John sends to Rome to have his election confirmed, *ib.*; the pope cancels it, ii. 111; appointed justiciary of Ireland, ii. 122; changes the form of the money there, *ib.*; brings a force from Ireland to the

Norwich, bishops of :—*cont.*
John de Grai—*cont.*
aid of John, ii. 133 ; sent abroad, to raise mercenary troops, ii. 160 ; on his return from Rome, dies in Poitou, ii. 153 ; iii. 231 ; buried at Norwich, *ib.*

—— Pandulph, appointed by the legate Walo, ii. 231 ; dies, ii. 292 ; iii. 255.

—— Thomas de Blunville, clerk of the exchequer, succeeds, by favour of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 292 ; consecrated, *ib.* ; the vill of Brentwood belonged to him, ii. 347 ; dies, ii. 393.

—— [Simon de Elmham,] prior of Norwich, elected, ii. 417 ; iii. 279 ; rejected by the king, *ib.*

—— William de Rale, canon of St. Paul's, elected, ii. 420 ; iii. 279 ; also chosen for the see of Coventry, but prefers Norwich, *ib.* ; present at the baptism of prince Edward, ii. 422 ; consecrated at St. Paul's, ii. 425 ; iii. 279 ; elected bishop of Winchester, ii. 449. *See* Winchester.

—— Walter de Sufeld, elected, and approved by the king, ii. 473 ; confirmed at St. Alban's, ii. 493 ; appointed one of the collectors of tallage to the pope, iii. 10 ; goes to the court of Rome [at Lyons], iii. 36 ; complains to the pope of the papal "Provisions," iii. 58, 309 ; returns to England, *ib.* ; Henry III. received the cross from him, iii. 71 *n.* ; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137 ; arrives at St. Alban's, to tax the property of the abbey, iii. 336 ; shows his powers from the pope and king, iii. 337.

Norwich, archdeacons of :
—— Geoffrey de Burgh. *See* Ely, bishops of.

—— John de Ferentino, ill-used near St. Alban's, iii. 264.

Norwich, church of, completed, and the clerks replaced by monks, i. 77 ; iii. 176.

Norwich, Geoffrey of, clerk of the exchequer, dies in prison at Nottingham, ii. 126.

Nostell. *See* St. Oswald.

Nottingham, the sheriff of, ordered to raze Mountsorel castle, ii. 214.

Nottingham, the Welsh hostages hung at, ii. 128 ; John marches to, ii. 142 ; the earl of Chester retires to, ii. 208.

Nottingham, castle of, granted to prince John, ii. 5 ; surrendered to Richard I., ii. 47 ; the castellan, one of the four sworn to obey the barons, in carrying out Magna Carta, ii. 159 ; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 171 ; the castellan of, defeats the garrison of Mountsorel, ii. 203 ; iii. 239.

Nottingham, William de, one of the chiefs at the battle of Alverton, i. 258.

Noville, Alan de, excommunicated by archbishop Thomas, i. 338, 341 ; absolved by the bishop of London, i. 339 ; swears to go to the pope, on his way to Jerusalem, *ib.*

Noville, Hugh de, his death, ii. 251 *n.*

Noville, John de, chief forester of England, his death, iii. 14.

Noville or Neville, Ralph de, chancellor, his fidelity and experience, ii. 267, 480. *See* Chichester, bishops of.

Nunancurt, treaty of peace at, between Louis VII. and Henry II., i. 399 ; castle of, taken by Philip, ii. 57.

O.

Obadiah, the prophet. *See* Abdias.

Ocra, Walter de, sent with letters from Frederic II. to Henry III., ii. 492 ; writes to Henry, on the conspiracy against the emperor's life, iii. 12.

Octovian, great treasure of, alluded to, ii. 37.

Octovian, [Victor IV.,] anti-pope, schism with Alexander IV., i. 310; iii. 194; dies, i. 330; his schism favoured by the archbishop of Cologne, i. 336.

Octovian [Ubaldini], cardinal, sent with an army to destroy Nocera, iii. 345; his forces destroyed by Manfred, *ib.*

Odo, brother of William I. *See* Bayeux, bishop of.

Odo [de Châteauroux], Friar Preacher, opposes the proposals of peace made to Louis IX., by the Soldan, iii. 49 *n.*, 307; left as papal legate in Damietta, iii. 81.

Offa, [king of Mercia,] founder of St. Alban's, iii. 163; his grant of Romescot confirmed by Cnut, *ib.*

Offintone, John de, canon of Salisbury, his death, iii. 108.

Offintune, death of William de Albini Senior at, ii. 390.

Olaf, king of Norway, expelled by Cnut, iii. 163.

Oliver, natural son of king John, joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230.

Oliver, at his preaching in Germany a Crucifix appeared in the sky, ii. 297; iii. 89.

Olivet, mount, miraculous appearance of a knight on, i. 143; a hermit there, predicted the capture of Jerusalem, i. 144; regular canons in the church of, under an abbat, i. 162; the place where Christ ascended to Heaven, *ib.*

Orange (*Aurasia*), William, bishop of, assumes the cross, i. 56; accompanies the count of Toulouse, i. 71; dies, i. 131.

Orange (*de Oringis*), Reinbald, count of, joins the count of Toulouse as a Crusader, i. 72; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Ordeal, of fire and water, prohibited, iii. 90, 316.

Orders, Religious, increase of, in England, iii. 93 *n.*, 317; Henry III. orders an inquisition into the value of their manors, iii. 339. *See* Friars Minors; Friars Preachers.

Orivalle (*de Orivallis*), Peter de. *See* Rivaux, Peter de.

Orkneys, Ralph, bishop of the, his address to the Norman barons at the battle of Alverton, i. 259.

Orleans (*Aurelianæ*), ironical speech of Philip II. respecting, ii. 83, 109; excesses of the Pastoureaux at, iii. 112.

Orleans, Fulcher of, killed by the Turks, i. 64.

Orontes, the river, commonly called Far or Farfar, i. 89, 128; passage over the bridge of, forced by the Crusaders, i. 90.

Orwell, the Flemish troops land at, i. 381.

Osbern, [Osbiorn,] brother of Sweyn, arrives in England, i. 12.

Oseney, abbey of, the legate Otho lodges there, ii. 407; fray of the scholars of Oxford at, *ib.*

Ostia, bishops of:

—— Alberic, bishop of, and legate, arrives in England, i. 261; iii. 187; holds a council at St. Paul's, *ib.*; consecrates archbishop Theobald, *ib.*; acknowledges the empress Matilda, i. 266.

—— *See* Alexander IV., pope; Gregory IX., pope; Lucius III., pope; Urban II., pope.

Oswin, St., king and martyr, his bones found at Tynemouth, iii. 167, 169; translated to the new church there, i. 214; iii. 181; date of the translation, *ib.*

Otho IV., emperor of Germany, second son of Henry, duke of Saxony, comes with his father to Normandy, i. 424; crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle as king of Germany, ii. 65; his shield of arms, *ib.*, 83; marries [Mary,] daughter of the duke of Louvain, *ib.*; Richard favours his consecration as emperor, ii. 74, 83; iii. 218; elected emperor by pope Innocent III. and the Romans, ii. 83; iii. 219; promises to assist John against Philip II., *ib.*, 109; his dislike to Philip, *ib.*; comes to England, ii. 108; iii. 223; his reception at London, ii. 109; receives 5,000 marks from John, *ib.*; money

Otho IV., emperor of Germany—*cont.*
given to the duke of Saxony for him, ii. 117; consecrated emperor at Rome, ii. 119; iii. 224; endeavours to recover the possessions of the empire, ii. 121; excommunicated by the pope, *ib.*; iii. 90, 316; joins the army of John in Flanders, ii. 150; thrown from his horse at the battle of Bovines, ii. 151; iii. 91, 230, 317.

Otho or Otto, papal nuncio, comes to England, ii. 275; a day appointed to discuss the papal letters brought by, *ib.*; intercedes with the king on behalf of Faukes [de Breaute], *ib.*; takes money for procurations from the churches, ii. 276; reads the papal demand respecting prebends at a council at Westminster, ii. 278; iii. 252; reply given to him, ii. 279; iii. 253; wishes another day of meeting to be fixed, *ib.*; private reply of some of the prelates, iii. 253; sends to France, to learn the success of the legate Romanus, *ib.*; on hearing his failure, repents having come to England, *ib.*; sets out for Northumberland, but receives letters of recall at Northampton, ii. 283; iii. 253; throws the letters into the fire, ii. 284; leaves England, *ib.*; directs archbishop Stephen to obtain a reply to the pope's demands, *ib.*; sent as cardinal legate to England, at the request of Henry III., ii. 398; iii. 274; his honourable reception, *ib.*; receives great gifts from the king, but nothing from earl Richard, iii. 274; lays snares for archbishop Edmund, iii. 275; summons a council at St. Paul's, ii. 400; iii. 275; his pride, in regard to his seat there, *ib.*; forbidden by the king to do anything against the dignity of the crown, *ib.*; statutes passed by him, *ib.*; present at the parliament at York, ii. 401; iii. 275; forbids the archbishop to leave England, ii. 402; recalled by the pope, but stays at the king's request, *ib.*, 404; iii. 275; his oppressive conduct, in regard to procurations and "provisions," iii. 276; favours the earl of Arundel, *ib.*; comes to Oxford, and lodges at Oseney abbey, ii. 407; the scholars send him a gift, *ib.*; their quarrel with his servants, *ib.*; iii. 276; his brother killed by a scholar, *ib.*; he takes refuge in the tower, *ib.*; places Oxford under an interdict, and suspends the University, ii. 408; influences the pope and king against the archbishop, ii. 411; iii. 277; goes to Canterbury, and removes the prior and some of the monks, *ib.*; summons the abbats of the Black Order, and reforms their statutes, ii. 413; iii. 278; baptizes prince Edward, ii. 422; iii. 279; demands new procurations, which are refused, ii. 424; iii. 279; his stay in England obtained by Simon le Norman, ii. 425; extorts procurations, ii. 430; demands, at Reading, a fifth of the goods of the clergy for the pope, ii. 431; associated with the nuncio Rosso, to exact this tax, ii. 436; present at the dedication of St. Paul's, ii. 439; leaves England, ii. 444; iii. 282; captured at sea by Ensius, ii. iii. 91; made bishop of Porto, ii. 476; iii. 288; was released by the emperor, but becomes his enemy, *ib.*

Oudon (*Hodum*), fortress of, besieged by Louis IX., ii. 324.

Ounce, legend respecting persons bitten by the animal so named, i. 37.

Oundle (*Undele*), the granaries at, burnt by John, ii. 189.

Ourson (*de Ursone*), Hervé de, joins the Crusaders in Egypt, ii. 230.

Ovid, quoted, i. 51, 201, 314, 360, 394, 454; ii. 63, 266, 396, 405; iii. 228, 237, 250, 274.

Owen (*Oenus*), an Irish knight, confesses his sins to a bishop, i. 297; legend of his visit to St. Patrick's Purgatory, *ib.* 298.

Oxa, [Coxon?] city of, [in Syria,] taken by the Crusaders, i. 88.

Oxeai, or Oxehaie, Walkelin de, overthrows the earl of Arundel at St. Alban's, i. 271.

Oxford, council held at, by Cnut, iii. 161; besieged and taken by William I., [*a mistake for* Exeter,] i. 10; foundation of St. Frideswith at, i. 215; seizure of the bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln there, i. 262; birth of prince Richard at, i. 308; conference held at, by John, ii. 100; he keeps Christmas there, ii. 106; iii. 222; three clerks hung there for murder, who are innocent, ii. 120; the scholars leave the University, *ib.*; the burgesses absolved by the legate, ii. 145; Henry III. keeps Christmas at, ii. 243, 253, 306; iii. 246, 258; council held at, to declare the king of age, ii. 293; he collects an army at, ii. 332; hospital founded there by him, ii. 363; iii. 269; the city placed under an interdict by the legate, and the University suspended, but afterwards reconciled, ii. 408; many Welsh and Scotch scholars there, *ib.*

Oxford, castle of, subdued by Stephen, i. 262; besieged by him, i. 269; iii. 188; the empress Matilda escapes from, *ib.*; committed to the custody of Faukes, ii. 172; force drawn from, by him, ii. 203.

Oxford, Hugh, [de Vere,] earl of, death of his wife, Isabella de Bolebec, ii. 509; iii. 296; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137;

Oxford, archdeacons of:

—— Walter de Coutances. *See* Lincoln, bishops of.

—— [Robert de Mariscis], goes abroad, iii. 69.

P.

Paganis, [Payen ?] Hugh de, one of the founders of the Knights Templars, i. 222.

Paganel, Fulk, of Normandy, does homage to Henry III., ii. 325; iii. 262.

Paganel, [Ralph,] held the castle of Ludlow against Stephen, i. 258.

Paganel, William, brother of Fulk, does homage to Henry, ii. 325.

Pagham, consecration of Richard, bishop of London, at, i. 209. *See* Mareschal, John.

Palermo, in Sicily, the prisoners taken by Frederic II. sent there, iii. 100, 320.

Palestrina (*Prænestinus*), [James de Pecoraria], bishop of, an enemy of Frederic II., his death, ii. 457.

Pandulph, subdeacon, sent to John, to bring about his reconciliation with the church, ii. 124; again sent to him in France, with a form of submission, ii. 130; has an interview with the king at Dover, ii. 134, 135; has another meeting with him, at which John resigns his crown, ii. 135; returns to France, with money for the exiled prelates, ii. 137; iii. 227; admonishes Philip II. to desist from hostilities, *ib.*; by his mediation the prelates return to England, ii. 139; John's charter of submission, delivered to him; ii. 146; sent by the legate Nicholas to Rome, to oppose archbishop Stephen, ii. 147; John's charter sealed with gold carried by him to the pope, ii. 148; he praises John, and depreciates the prelates, *ib.*; present at the concession of Magna Carta, ii. 159; sent to Rome by John, to get the proceedings of the barons annulled, ii. 160; one of those appointed to execute the sentence of excommunication against them, ii. 166; when bishop elect of Norwich, pronounced the sentence of suspension of archbishop Stephen, ii. 169; succeeds Walo as legate in England, ii. 231; iii. 244; mediates with Henry III. in behalf of the earl of Albemarle, ii. 245; iii. 245; confirms the election of Eustace de Faucunberge as bishop of London, ii. 248; returns to Rome, *ib.*; iii. 245.

Pannonia, traversed by the Crusaders under Louis VII., i. 279.

Paphlagonia (*Panagonia*), passed by the Crusaders under Conrad III., i. 280.

Papiro, John de, cardinal legate in Ireland, establishes four archbishoprics there, i. 292; does fealty to Stephen, *ib.*

Pard, an animal said, in conjunction with a lion, to produce the leopard, ii. 392.

Paris, pope Eugenius III. arrives at, i. 277; solemnly received at St. Geneviève, i. 278; the secular canons of this church expelled, and regulars introduced, *ib.*; chancellor Thomas comes to, in great state, i. 309; visit of Henry II. to, i. 310; he is lodged in the king's palace, and Louis goes to St. Mary's, *ib.*; Louis VII. dies at, i. 418; Geoffrey of Britanny buried in the cathedral of St. Mary, i. 437; iii. 206; reception of Philip II. at, on return from the Holy Land, ii. 29; iii. 211; the house of St. James there, granted to the new Order of Preachers, ii. 66, 298; Arthur of Britanny sent there to be educated, ii. 79; prince Louis brings his bride Blanche to, ii. 85; John visits, and is lodged in the king's palace, ii. 90; iii. 220; Philip goes to the Old Temple, *ib.*; returns to, from Arques, ii. 95; archbishop Stephen resided and studied at, ii. 112; William de Brause, Senior, buried at St. Victor, ii. 125; Louis VIII. buried at, ii. 290; the Holy Cross carried in procession by Louis IX. from the church of St. Anthoine [to Nôtre Dame], ii. 446; iii. 282; the Sainte Chapelle built, ii. 447; iii. 283; the Cistercians obtain leave to establish schools there, iii. 57, 94; reception of Henry III. at, by the English scholars, iii. 342; he lodges in the Old Temple, and afterwards in the king's palace, *ib.*

Paris, University of, dispersed, in consequence of rumours affecting the legate Romanus, ii. 290; iii. 254; letters sent to, on the appearance of a Crucifix in the sky in Germany, ii. 297; quarrel between the scholars and some tradesmen of St. Marcel, ii. 308; iii. 258; the lectures suspended, and the masters complain to the queen, *ib.*; the masters and scholars leave the city, ii. 309; iii. 258; satirical verses in reference to this event, ii. 309 *n.*; dispute with the Friars Preachers, iii. 148, 330.

Paris, bishops of:

—— [William III., of Auvergne], complaint made to, by the prior of St. Marceau, ii. 308; gives Louis IX. the cross, when dangerously ill, iii. 292; urges him to resign it, on his recovery, iii. 22.

Paris, Robert [count] of, killed at the battle of Gorgoni, i. 86.

Paris, Matthew, his work *De Gestis Abbatum* referred to, i. 23, 228, 276, 291; ii. 55; his *Chronica Magna* or *Majora S. Albani*, i. 292, 344, 345, 352, 406; ii. 440, 494 *n.*, 500 *n.*; iii. 16 *n.*, 65 *n.*, 192, 195; refers to Geoffrey Hackesalt for information given to him, ii. 47; to abbat Warin of St. Alban's, ii. 55 *n.*; to Nicholas, bishop of Durham, ii. 90; to John de Basingestoc, archdeacon of London, ii. 255; to Alexander, bishop of Chester, and Eustace, bishop of London, ii. 265, 266; to Hubert de Burgh, ii. 359 *n.*; and to [Richard] earl of Gloucester, ii. 391; a book of his noticed, containing poems of Henry of Avranches, ii. 232 *n.*; his *Liber Additamentorum* or *Supplementorum* referred to, ii. 378, 387, 400, 414, 434, 437, 441, 442, 452 *n.*, 459, 483 *n.*, 484 *n.*, 491 *n.*, 500 *n.*, 501 *n.*, 506 *n.*; iii. 6 *n.*, 10 *n.*, 16 *n.*, 27 *n.*, 47 *n.*, 53, 59 *n.*, 61 *n.*, 101, 113 *n.*, 124, 134, 135 *n.*; sent to Norway, by direction of Innocent IV., to reform the Benedictine monasteries there, iii. 40, 304; proposed to end his *Chronica Majora* in 1250, iii. 96, 97, 319; writes the life of St. Edmund [of Pontigny], from the information of Richard, bishop of Chichester, and Robert Bacun, iii. 135, 326.

Parliaments or Colloquies, held by the king, prelates, and nobles:
  At Westminster (1221), on public affairs, ii. 244; at London (1223), for the confirmation of liberties, ii. 253; at Northampton, on public affairs, ii. 262; at Westminster, to ask an aid, ii. 268; and again, respecting Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 271; at Westminster, to consider the papal demands for prebends, ii. 278, 279, 284; at Oxford (1227), to declare the king of age, ii. 293; at Westminster (1229), to hear the pope's demands for a tenth of the revenue, ii. 315; at Westminster (1231), to ask a scutage, ii. 329; at Westminster (1232), to demand an aid, ii. 339; at Lambeth (1232), to grant a fortieth, ii. 245; at Westminster (1234), on public affairs, ii. 365; at London (1236), to complain of the favour shown to foreigners, ii. 388; at London (1237), to ask an aid, ii. 393; at Westminster (1244), for an aid, and confirmation of liberties, ii. 491; iii. 291; at London (1246), to complain of the papal grievances, iii. 5; and again, (1247) on the same subject; iii. 16; at London (1248), to ask an aid, which is refused, iii. 33, 37, 303; at London (1249), to receive the king's reply to their demands, iii. 51; at London (1252), to demand a tenth of the revenue, iii. 125, 322; at Westminster (1253), to grant an aid, and obtain concession of liberties, iii. 136, 326; at London (1254), to ask an aid, iii. 334; and again, (1255) for the same purpose, iii. 334. *See* Councils.

Parma, the city and inhabitants cursed by the bishop of London, ii. 353; rebels against Frederic II., iii. 28; besieged by him, *ib.*; the citizens defeat the emperor's army, and destroy his city "Victoria," iii. 34, 303; the siege of, renewed, *ib.*; some soldiers of, taken prisoners by Ensius, iii. 54; the citizens join the Bolognese against him, *ib.*, 309; defeat and capture Ensius, and send him to Bologna, iii. 56, 309; in difficulties from the emperor, iii. 71, 83.

Paschal II., pope, succeeds, i. 183; his reply to the king's proctor, respecting investitures, i. 192; reinstates certain prelates, at the request of archbishop Anselm, *ib.*; his contention with the emperor Henry V., respecting lay investitures, i. 216; dies, i. 222.

Paschal III., anti-pope, elected by the influence of the emperor, i. 330.

Passelewe, Robert, clerk, gives advice to Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 272; sinned in acting against the liberties of the Forest Charter, ii. 273; was keeper of the king's treasury under Peter de Rivaux, ii. 353; associated with the bishop of Winchester, in managing public affairs, *ib.*; lies hid in the New Temple, ii. 372; iii. 271; deposed from office, ii. 373; reconciled with the king, ii. 376; when archdeacon of Lewes and special councillor, advises fines to be raised from forest rights, ii. 497; iii. 252, 293; takes the order of priesthood, iii. 63; thought mild, in comparison with his successors, iii. 82; the king dines with him, after having loaded him with abuse, iii. 99 *n.*; by his advice, the abbat of Ramsey lost his rights at St. Ives' fair, iii. 119, 322; his death, and burial at Waltham, ii. 120; iii. 322; he disturbed the peace of many, iii. 322.

Pastoureaux (*Pastores*), increase of, in France, iii. 112, 321; excesses committed by, at Orleans, *ib.*; their leader killed at Bourges, *ib.*; said to be the same, who [in 1213] had led a crowd of boys to the Mediterranean, *ib.*; no such pest since the time of Mahommed, *ib.*

Paterins, or Bougars, a sect of heretics so named, ii. 388. *See* Bougars.

Pateshulle, Hugh de, clerk, made treasurer of the exchequer, ii. 372; iii. 271. *See* Coventry, bishops of.

Pateshulle, Martin de, justice itinerant at Dunstable, ii. 263.

Patricius, earl, [of Dunbar,] of Scotland, his death [at Damietta], iii. 40, 305; a disturber of the church of St. Alban's, [by harassing the cell of Tynemouth,] *ib.*

Patricius, William, captured at Dol, i. 382.

Patrick, St., legend of his Purgatory, in Ireland, i. 298.

Pavia, William of, cardinal legate, present at the marriage of prince Henry to Margaret of France, i. 311; cites Henry II. and archbishop Thomas to Montmirail, i. 338; returns to Rome, i. 339.

Pec [Peak, co. Derb.], castle of, granted to prince John, ii. 5.

Pecche, Hamo, his death, ii. 459.

Peivre or Piper, Paulin, knight, custos of the see of Canterbury, ii. 481; iii. 289; appointed special councillor of the king, *ib.*; assumes the cross, iii. 71; dies, ii. 109; iii. 321.

Pelagius, bishop of Albano and papal legate, arrives at Damietta, ii. 229; advises an attack on the city, ii. 232; opposes the acceptance of the Soldan's offers of peace, ii. 237; his fatal influence over the Christian army, iii. 244; one of the leaders of the expedition to Babylon, ii. 249; remains as a hostage with the Soldan, iii. 250.

Pelagonia, [in Macedonia,] excesses of the army of Boamund in, i. 71; encampment of count Reimund's forces there, i. 72, 77.

Pelez. *See* Pilet.

Pelu, a German count so named, joins John's forces in Flanders, ii. 150; is captured at the battle of Bovines, iii. 91, 230.

Pembroke, John collects an army at, ii. 122; the castle of, ceded to Richard Mareschal, ii. 334.

Pembroke, earls of. *See* Mareschal.

Perche, province of, success of the Normans in, i. 344.

Perche, Rotrou (*Rotoldus, Rotrodus*), I., count of, assumes the cross, i. 57; joins Robert, duke of Normandy, i. 76; one of the leaders in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Perche, Rotrou III., [*called incorrectly* Robert,] count of, joins Louis VII. against duke Henry, i. 289; dies at Acre, ii. 20.

Perche, [Geoffrey III.,] count of, takes the earl of Leicester prisoner, ii. 51 *n.*

Perche, [Thomas,] count of, one of the French chiefs sent against the royalists, ii. 207; ravages of his troops near St. Alban's, and his own misdoings, *ib.*; advises the defence of Lincoln, ii. 210; slain in the conflict there, ii. 212; iii. 239; his pride, and habit of swearing, *ib.*; buried outside the town, ii. 213; iii. 239; his courage praised by prince Louis, ii. 214.

Perci, Richard de, assists to subject Yorkshire to prince Louis, ii. 182; dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Persia, Soldans of. *See* Belfecho; Menduc.

Perugia (*Perusium*), pope Gregory IX. driven to, from Rome, ii. 301, 373; iii. 92; Innocent IV. comes to, iii. 105, 321; creates seven cardinals at, iii. 118; leaves, iii. 326.

Peter, St., held the pontifical see at Antioch, i. 91; cured Eneas of paralysis at Lydda, i, 158; lodged in the house of Symon, *ib.*; restored Tabitha at Joppa, *ib.*

Peter's-Pence, ordered by Henry II. to be collected, and retained, i. 333.

Peter [Bartholomæi], a clerk of Provence, the Holy Lance revealed to, at Antioch, i. 18.

[Peter,] Friar Preacher, killed at Milan, and canonized, iii. 130, 324.

Peter Basilii, wounds Richard I. mortally at Chaluz, ii. 76; iii. 218; set free by Richard, *ib.*

Peter the Hermit, a priest, preaches in behalf of a crusade, i. 57, 59; iii. 175;

Peter the Hermit, a priest—*cont.*
his pilgrimage from France to Jerusalem, i. 57; conversation with the patriarch Simeon, i. 58; vision seen by, i. 58; visits Urban II. at Rome, i. 59; collects a great multitude, and appointed their leader, *ib.*; progress of his forces to Syria, i. 61, 62; their baggage captured by the Bulgarians, i. 62; his army destroyed by Soliman, i. 64; seeks aid from the Greek emperor, i. 65; joins duke Godfrey near Nicomedia, i. 77; sent to Corbaran, to give him notice of battle, i. 119; seen at Jerusalem after his death, i. 148.

Peter, surnamed the Wise, a hermit, of Yorkshire, ii. 129; his prophecy respecting John, *ib.*; is imprisoned in Corf Castle, ii. 136; ordered to be hung at Wareham, with his son, *ib.*; iii. 227.

Peterborough, Ægelric, bishop of Durham, captured at, i. 11.

Peterborough (*Burgus*), abbey of, death of Richard, bishop of Durham, at, ii. 286; iii. 253; its granaries at Oundle burnt by John, ii. 189; visited by the bishop of Lincoln, iii. 311.

Peterborough, abbats of:
—— [Godric], degraded by archbishop Anselm, i. 191; reinstated, i. 192.
—— Walter, his death, ii. 511.
—— William, quarrels with his convent, iii. 61; accused of dilapidation, and deposed, iii. 62, 310.
—— John of Caen, prior of St. Swithun, Winchester, elected, iii. 62, 311.

Petra, or Montreal, in the territory of Moab, the archbishop of, subject to the patriarch of Jerusalem, i. 161, 163.

Petra Deserti. *See* Crac.

Petroleone, Hugh de, cardinal, comes as legate to England, i. 392; permits clerks to be handed over to lay judges for forest forfeiture and lay fee, *ib.*; articles conceded to him by the king, i. 395; returns to Rome, i. 398.

Pevensey (*Pevenesel*), castle of, given up to Henry II., by William son of king Stephen, i. 307.

Peverel, William, disinherited, for poisoning the earl of Chester, i. 302; iii. 193; his honor granted to prince John, ii. 5.

Phenomena, natural:
Four circles appear round the sun, i. 196; two full moons seen, i. 205; the moon appears without light, i. 214; the sky appears red and burning, i. 219; ii. 102; the moon red as blood, i. 222; the moon darkened, i. 231; unusual darkness, and the sun like the moon, i. 247; iii. 186; a shower of blood at Andeli, ii. 68; appearance of five moons, ii. 89; a shower of bloody earth at Rome, ii. 256; appearance of armed bands of knights in the air, ii. 391; unusual darkness, ii. 114; appearance of the moon four days before due, ii. 325; disturbance of all the elements, in 1250, iii. 96, 319. *See* Eclipses; Inundations; Rains; Stars; Thunderstorms; Winds.

Philip I., king of France, forces William I. to raise the siege of Dol, i. 20; takes the part of duke Robert, *ib.*, 30; derisive speech against William, i. 33; marches in aid of Robert, but returns, i. 45; excommunicated by the pope, for marrying the wife of the count of Anjou, i. 56; dies, i. 209; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Philip, son of Louis VI., crowned in his father's lifetime, i. 243; his death, *ib.*; shield of arms, *ib.*

Philip II., son of Louis VII., crowned in his father's lifetime, i. 417; ii. 259; iii. 203; his shield of arms, i. 417; ii. 256; makes a treaty of alliance with Henry II., i. 418; iii. 204; commits the charge of his realm to Henry, i. 419; iii. 204; his speech, on hearing his kingdom was put under the protection of St. Thomas, i. 421; marries Margaret of Hainault, i. 423; meets Henry at Vaudreuil, to

Philip II., son of Louis VII.—*cont.*
arrange about aid to the Holy Land, i. 434; again meets him, to undertake a crusade, i. 446; breaks the peace, by the capture of Château-Roux and other castles, i. 447; his hostilities with Henry retard the crusade, i. 454; conference for peace, without result, i. 453; joins earl Richard, and invades Henry's territories, *ib.*; iii. 208; is reconciled with Henry, by mediation of the legate, i. 456; holds a conference with Henry at La Ferté Bernard, but his demands refused, i. 457; denies the authority of the legate to interfere, i. 458; earl Richard does homage to, for his territories in France, i. 459; he subdues several castles with the aid of Richard, *ib.*; attacks Le Mans, and puts Henry to flight, i. 460; captures the citadel, *ib.*; takes Montdoubleau, and other castles surrender to him, i. 461; grants letters patent to the Bretons, not to make peace, unless they are included, i. 462; takes Tours by assault, i. 463; Henry forced to make peace with him, and does homage, i. 463; holds certain cities in pledge, until the terms are carried out, *ib.*; has a conference with Richard, and demands the castle of Gisors, ii. 4; his sister Alice to be married to Richard, *ib.*; sends to Richard, to urge him to go to the Holy Land, ii. 13; holds a conference with him at Gué St. Remi, to concert a crusade, ii. 14; iii. 309; arrives at Messina, and lodges in the palace of Tancred, ii. 16; conflict of his army with the English, *ib.*; embarks, but is driven back, ii. 17; again embarks, ii. 20; lands at Acre, ii. 23; his forces suffer from famine, and are relieved by Richard, *ib.*; Acre surrenders to them, ii. 24; returns home, on account of jealousy of Richard, ii. 25; causes of the discord between them, *ib.*; proposes to make the marquis of Montferrat king of Jerusalem, *ib.*; arrives in Paris, ii. 29; iii. 211; attacked by the plague, but cured by his English physician, ii. 38; Richard accused of sending the "Assassins" to kill him, ii. 43; makes alliance with prince John, and ravages Normandy, ii. 45; impedes the release of Richard, *ib.*; subdues the Vexin, and other territories, *ib.*; besieges Rouen, but forced to retreat, *ib.*; iii. 214; takes Evreux, and delivers it to John, *ib.*; marries Ingelburga of Denmark, but repudiates her, ii. 46; raises the siege of Verneuil, ii. 48; iii. 214; destroys the castle of Fontaines, ii. 49; encamps near Vendôme, ii. 50; retreats to Freteval, *ib.*; proposes to Richard to decide their quarrel by a combat of five, *ib.*; refuses to be one of the number, ii. 51; makes a truce with him, *ib.*; admonished by the pope to take back his wife, ii. 55; iii. 215; concludes a treaty with Richard at Louviers, ii. 56; iii. 215; repents having made it, and besieges the castle of Aumarle, *ib.*; takes it by assault, and destroys it, ii. 57; captures Nunantcurt, *ib.*; takes the castle of Dangu, and fortifies it, ii. 63; forces the count of Flanders to raise the siege of Arras, ii. 64; pursues him, but is obliged to submit to terms, *ib.*; swears to restore the castles taken in the war, *ib*; a meeting appointed with Richard, *ib.*; on his return to Paris, advised to break his oath, *ib.*; defeated by Richard near Vernon, ii. 71; marches from Mantes to the aid of Curceles, ii. 72; defeated near Gisors, and falls into the river Epte, *ib.*; iii. 217; applies to the pope, to mediate peace with Richard, ii. 74; iii. 218; cardinal Peter of Capua sent for that purpose, *ib.*; concludes a truce, ii. 75; iii. 218; Arthur of Britanny delivered to him, ii. 79; takes possession of Arthur's territories, *ib.*; makes a truce with John, ii. 81; knights Arthur and receives his homage, ii. 82; holds a conference with John, and demands the Vexin; also Poitou

Philip II., son of Louis VII.—*cont.*
and other provinces for Arthur, *ib.*; his demands refused, *ib.*; angry with John, for not doing homage for Normandy and other territories, *ib.*; his ironical speech in reference to Otho IV., ii. 83, 109; impedes the election of Otho, ii. 83; makes a treaty with John, ii. 84; requires security from him, not to give assistance to Otho, *ib.*; again meets John, to carry the treaty into effect, ii. 85; gives up Evreux to him, and the conquered lands, *ib.*; meets John at Vernon, ii. 86; holds a conference with him at Andeli, ii. 90; receives John honourably at Paris, *ib.*; terms of the treaty of peace, ii. 91; iii. 220; meets John again at Guletune, and repeats his demands for Arthur's territories, ii. 92; razes the castle of Butavant, and takes some castles in Normandy, *ib.*; returns to Paris, and sends Arthur to invade Poitou, *ib.*; raises the siege of Arques, ii. 94; returns to Paris, ii. 95; takes many of John's castles, ii. 96; iii. 221; Montfort and Vaudreuil surrendered to, ii. 97, 98; besieges Roche d'Andeli, *ib.*; marches into John's territories, and threatens to hang all who oppose him, ii. 99; receives hostages for truce of a year, *ib.*; Roche d'Andeli is surrendered to him, ii. 101; orders Roger de Lasci to be set free, *ib.*; Normandy and the rest of John's continental territories submit to, ii. 102; iii. 222; the castle of Chinon surrendered to, ii. 103; makes a truce with John, ii. 108; knights his son Louis, ii. 118; drives out the count of Boulogne, ii. 125; is urged by the pope to expel John, and take possession of England, ii. 129, 130, 132; summons forces to Rouen, for the invasion of England, and collects a fleet, ii. 133; iii. 227; boasts he had charters of fealty from the English nobles, ii. 134; is admonished by Pandulph to desist from his preparations, but refuses, ii. 137; iii. 227; invades Flanders, *ib.*; orders his fleet to assemble at the Swine, *ib.*; the ships are taken or destroyed by the English, ii. 138; iii. 227; returns home in confusion, ii. 139; iii. 228; defeats the forces of John and the emperor Otho at Bovines, ii. 150; struck from his horse during the battle, ii. 151; iii. 91, 230; received with triumph at Paris, *ib.*; makes a truce with John, ii. 152; receives 8,000 marks from him, iii. 231; his envoys are present at the Lateran Council, ii. 168; requires hostages and charters from the English barons, on behalf of his son Louis, ii. 173; the legate Walo is sent to arrest his son's progress, ii. 175; his reply to the legate, ii. 176; blames John for subjecting his realm to the pope, *ib.*; iii. 234; declares he will not interfere, ii. 177; gives advice to his son, but not openly, ii. 178; iii. 235; blames Louis for leaving Dover castle, ii. 183; sends him a huge petrary, for the siege, *ib.*; is applied to by Louis for aid, ii. 215; his confidence in the earl Mareschal, for his son's safety, ii. 216; iii. 242; assigns to his son's wife the task of furnishing aid, *ib.*; dies, ii. 256; iii. 185; the event predicted by a comet, *ib.*; buried at St. Denis, ii. 259; bequeathed great part of his treasure in aid of the Holy Land, *ib.*; iii. 295.

Philip, physician of pope Alexander III., sent to Prester John, to instruct him in Christian doctrine, i. 422.

Philip, clerk of Richard I., accompanies him, on landing at Zara, ii. 40.

Philipolis, town of, [in Thrace,] the Crusaders under Godfrey come to, i. 69.

Pilet or Pelez, Raimund, joins the crusade under the count of Toulouse, i. 72; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120; takes the castle of Thalamania, i. 129; defeated at Marrah, i. 130; assists to defeat the Turks, i. 141.

Pilgrims, slain by the Arabs on their way to Jerusalem, i. 10.

Pillerton (*Pilardestune*), in Warwickshire, whirlwind at, ii. 252.

Pinge. *See* Depinge.

Piper. *See* Peivre.

Pipewell, nomination of bishops at, ii. 10.

Pisa, Henry of, cardinal legate, present at the marriage of the daughter of Louis VII. to prince Henry, i. 311.

Pisans, capture at sea the prelates going to the General Council, ii. 450; Peter de Vinea sent to, to be put to death, iii. 48; form a plot with the Genoese against Louis IX., iii. 105.

Pisidia, arrival of the Crusaders at, under duke Godfrey, i. 87.

Plessy (*Pleisetum*), castle of, given up to Stephen by Geoffrey de Mandeville, i. 271.

Poitevins, Richard I. bequeaths his intestines to, ii. 76; refuse to follow John against prince Louis, ii. 149; the French rejoice at their treachery, ii. 150; iii. 230; come over to assist John, as mercenaries, ii. 163; iii. 232; desert him, ii. 181; appointed to offices about the court, by Henry III., ii. 353; slaughtered as traitors by Richard earl Mareschal, ii. 364; iii. 270; sent back to their country, ii. 366; iii. 270.

Poitiers (*Pictavis*), Richard I. keeps Christmas at, ii. 56; death of the bishop of Ely at, ii. 61.

Poitiers, Richard, archdeacon of, excommunicated by archbishop Thomas, i. 338. *See* Winchester, bishops of.

Poitou (*Pictavia*), Richard subdues his adversaries in, ii. 50; Arthur of Britanny does homage for, to Philip II., ii. 82; demanded for him from John, *ib.*, 92; Arthur marches into, ii. 92; the nobles of, come to his aid at Mirebeau, and are defeated by John, ii. 93; iii. 221; submits to Philip, ii. 102; the nobles swear fealty to John, ii. 148; iii. 229; security taken from, by Louis VIII., ii. 262; Henry III. sends to the nobles, to ask them to receive him, ii. 291; they promise him their support, ii. 306; Henry marches into, ii. 326; failure of crops and fruit in, in 1234, ii. 375; given by Louis IX. to his brother Alphonse, ii. 451, 452; iii. 283; Henry is urged to come over to, ii. 460; iii. 285; Louis marches into, and subdues, ii. 463, 464; iii. 285; the French send forces into, iii. 328.

Poitou, Reimund, count of, marries Constance, daughter of Boamund II., and made prince of Antioch, i. 246.

Poitou, Alphonse, count of, brother of Louis IX., knighted, and Poitou given to him, ii. 451; iii. 283; the count of La Marche refuses to do homage to, ii. 460; iii. 284; sent from Acre by Louis, to raise forces, iii. 84; neglects to do so, iii. 102, 122; dangerously ill from palsy, iii. 122; intruded himself into Poitou, when earl Richard was in the Holy Land, *ib.*

Polinices, his friendship to Thideus, i. 297.

Pompeius Magnus, referred to, in passage from Lucan, iii. 117.

Pons (*Pontes*), in Poitou, some English nobles imprisoned at, iii. 339; Henry III. writes to the citizens in their behalf, *ib.*

Pont-Audemer (*Pundhaudemer*), castle of, taken by Henry I., i. 232.

Ponthieu, Harold driven there by a storm, iii. 168.

Ponthieu, Guy, count of, iii. 168 *n.* *See* Talevaz.

Pontigny, abbey of, Ord. Cisterc., archbishop Thomas retires to, i. 330; iii. 196; Louis VII. comes to, and takes him away, *ib.*; iii. 197; his prophetic speech relative to, *ib.*; death of Mauger, bishop of Worcester, at, ii. 127; archbishop Edmund fixes his residence there, ii. 435; iii. 281; leaves it for Soissy, ii. 442; translation of St. Edmund at, iii. 26; second translation, iii. 54; his miracles at, iii. 93; Henry III. cured of sickness there, iii. 341.

Pontoise (*Pons-Thesiæ*), burial of queen Blanche in a convent at, founded by her, iii. 128.

Pontorson (*Puntursun*), the castle of, taken, and town burnt, by the earl of Chester, ii. 329.

Pontus, provinces of, passed by the Crusaders under Conrad III., i. 280.

Popes, Popedom, and Papal Court, schisms in, i. 10, 50; the emperor Henry IV. claimed the power to elect the pope, i. 50; opinion of William II. that they should confine themselves to spiritual affairs, *ib.*; had lost the holiness of Peter, and consequently his power, *ib.*; never found wanting, when bribed, i. 192; ii. 11; their venality, ii. 225; iii. 166; schism in, predicted by flocks of birds, ii. 243; scandal occasioned by their avarice, ii. 278, 281, 283, 284 *n.*; the disturbed state of the Roman church prevented the election of a pope, ii, 456; iii. 284; the French threaten to elect a pope for themselves, ii. 470; the cunning of, in devising taxation, iii. 4 *n.*; intolerable grievances suffered from, by the English, iii. 5, 16, 58, 109, 298, 309, 310, 316; disgraced by the vices of simony and usury, iii. 46 *n.*; the papacy vacant a long time after the death of Gregory IX., iii. 92; three popes filled the see within two years, *ib.*, 317; hatred felt towards the Roman church, iii. 94 *n.*, 109; the popedom had power for edification, not for destruction, iii. 143.

Porchester (*Porecestria*), Henry II. comes to, i. 371.

Porphiria. *See* Caypha.

Porreta [de la Porée], Gilbert, his errors condemned in the council of Rheims, i. 225; iii. 182.

Portel, castle of, claimed by the king of Navarre, i. 396.

Portmort (*Purmor*), in Normandy, Louis of France married there to Blanche of Castille, ii. 85.

Porto, bishops of. *See* Otho; Romanus.

Portsmouth (*Portesmue, Portesmua, Portesmues*), Robert, duke of Normandy, lands at, i. 190; Richard I. lands at, ii. 5; iii. 208; Richard embarks from, ii. 48; the barons summoned to, by John, ii. 90; John keeps Pentecost there, *ib.*; embarks at (1201), *ib.*; John lands there, ii. 98; army and fleet collected at, ii. 103; John embarks from (1205), *ib.*; iii. 222; an army again collected at, ii. 139; iii. 228; John embarks from (1213), ii. 140; and with his army (1214), ii. 148; Henry III. assembles forces at, ii. 319; iii. 260; embarks from (1230), ii. 323; iii. 262; Henry lands at, ii. 328; hospital founded at, by the bishop of Winchester, ii. 410; iii. 277; Henry embarks from (1242), ii. 462; lands at, ii. 471; iii. 286; forces assembled at, by Henry, iii. 140, 328; embarks from, with a large fleet (1253), *ib.*; the queen embarks at, with her children, iii. 335.

Portugal, [Alfonso I.,] king of, defeats the Saracens, i. 428; distributes the prisoners as slaves, to repair the churches, *ib.*; makes a gold shrine for St. Vincentius, *ib.*

Portugal, [Sancho I.,] king of, when prince, defeats the Saracens at Santarem, i. 428; asks aid of the English Crusaders, to take the town of Silves, i. 461; the town surrendered to, by the cadi, i. 462.

Portugal, [Oporto?] the bishop of, [Bobon?] helps to defeat the Saracens, i. 428; consecrates the mosque at Silves to the Virgin, i. 462.

Possessa, Guy de, assumes the cross, i. 57; his death before Nice, i. 82.

[Poterne de,] James, sheriff of York, seizes the goods of the archbishop of York and his clerks, ii. 87; excommunicated by the archbishop, *ib.*

Powic, William de, clerk of the king, sent envoy to the General Council at Lyons, ii. 503; iii. 295.

Pratum-Proditorum, a meadow so named at Freteval, in which Henry II. met archbishop Thomas, i. 354.

Pré (*de Prato*), monastery of, at Rouen, founded by Henry I., i. 249.

Premonstratensians, by payment of money to the pope, exempted from the authority of the bishop of Lincoln, iii. 70.

Prester John, king of the Indies, letter to, from Alexander III., i. 422; Philip, the pope's physician, sent to instruct him in the Christian faith, *ib.*

Prelates, the English, ordered by John to quit the kingdom, ii. 116; refuse to go, except by force, *ib.*; their property seized, *ib.*; many leave the country, *ib.*; prepare to return with Philip II., ii. 134; John accepts a form of peace for their recall, ii. 135; Pandulph brings them money, in part of their losses, ii. 137; John gives them letters of safe conduct, ii. 139; land at Dover, ii. 140.

Prelates, certain, enemies to Frederic II., are warned not to attend the General Council at Rome, ii. 441, 449; embark at Genoa, and are captured or drowned, ii. 450; iii. 283, 317; sent to prison at Naples, *ib.*; released by Frederic, to enable the cardinals to elect a pope, ii. 469.

Principatu, Ranulph de, brother of Richard, joins the crusade, under Boamund, i. 71.

Principatu, Richard de, [count of Salerno,] joins the crusade, i. 71.

Procurations, exacted by the nuncio Otho, ii. 276, 424; the amount of, limited by Innocent IV., iii. 134; oppressive conduct of the legate in regard to, iii. 276; exacted by the bishop of Sabina, iii. 300.

Prognostics, sinister, preceding the death of William II., i. 169; before the battle of Lincoln, i. 265. *See* Birds; Comets; Earthquakes; Whales; Winds.

Prosper of Aquitaine, ecclesiastical writer, mentioned, *Prol.*, i. 4.

Prostitutes, ordered to be banished from the army before Antioch, i. 94.

Provence (*Provincia*), infected by the heresy of the Albigeois, ii. 143; expedition sent to, against the count of Toulouse, ii. 302; given to Charles of Anjou, iii. 8.

Provence, Reimund, count of, his daughter Alienor asked in marriage by Henry III., ii. 385; iii. 272; his death, ii. 509, 510; shield of arms, *ib.*

Provence, Beatrice, countess of, wife of Reimund, comes to England, with her daughter Cincia, to be married to earl Richard, ii. 473, 474; iii. 287; great gifts bestowed on, *ib.*; present at the nuptial banquet given by Richard at Wallingford, ii. 478; iii. 288; returns home, *ib.*; her younger daughter [Beatrice] married to Charles of Anjou, iii. 8; visits England again, iii. 32, 302; present at the meeting of her daughters, the queens of England and France, iii. 342.

Provence, Charles, count of. *See* Anjou.

Provisions, papal, [benefices provided by papal mandate for Italians,] urgency of, in the see of Bath, ii. 495; their number prevented the prelates from giving a benefice to a poor clerk or relative, iii. 58, 92, 309; in spite of remonstrances, the pope persisted in the practice, iii. 310; the Romans and Italians, chiefly the pope's relations, occupied the benefices, *ib.*; the pope insisted on the benefices being of sufficient value for acceptance, iii. 93, 317; the amount in value, exceeded the king's revenue, iii. 93; repudiated and condemned by Robert, bishop of Lincoln, iii. 113, 144; were the cause of usury and simony, iii. 141 *n.*

Ptolemais. *See* Acre.

Puisay (*de Pusato*), Hebraud or Everaud de, assumes the cross, i. 57; sent to escort some pilgrims to the camp at Antioch, i. 100; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Puisay, Waleran de. *See* Waleran.

Puy, Athelmar or Aimer, bishop of, assumes the cross, i. 56; sets out with the count of Toulouse, i. 71; taken

Puy, Athelmar or Aimer, bishop of—*cont.* prisoner by the Bulgarians, but rescued, i. 72; his station at the siege of Acre, i. 81; and at the siege of Antioch, i. 91; acts as apostolic legate, and orders a fast, i. 93; his standard-bearer killed, i. 100; obliges many to remain, who meditated flight, i. 113; joint leader of the fourth division against Corbaran, i. 120; directs the repair of the churches in Antioch, i. 127; his death, and burial in the church of St. Peter there, i. 129; appears to many at Jerusalem, after his death, i. 148.

Q.

Quartapi, [Kart-Birt, near Edessa,] castle of, Baldwin II. and others imprisoned there, i. 232.

Quinci, Saer de, earl of Winchester. *See* Winchester.

R.

Radepunt, castle of, besieged by Philip II., ii. 92.

Rages, another name for Edessa, i. 89.

Rains, excessive, injurious to agriculture, and occasioning floods, i. 44; ii. 91, 395, 425, 489; iii. 36, 54, 113, 303.

Rale, William de, canon of St. Paul's, clerk of the king, and special councillor, demands an aid of parliament for the king, ii. 393; sent to the legate Otho, to forbid him to do anything against the crown, ii. 400. *See* Coventry, bishops of; Norwich, bishops of.

Ralph [de Guader], earl [of East Anglia], conspires against William I., i. 19; marries, at Norwich, the sister of earl Roger, *ib.*; born of a Welsh mother and English father, *ib.*; sends to the Danes for aid, *ib.*; leaves England, *ib.*

Ramsey, abbey of, the body of St. Ivo translated to, iii. 159; the monks expelled by Geoffrey de Mandeville, i. 271; suffers much loss, iii. 188; Saints Benet and Ivo, the patrons of, i. 271 *n.*; converted into a castle, and the walls sweat blood, i. 274; the violators of the church punished, *ib.*; the charters of Eadgar and Edward to, confirmed by St. Thomas, iii. 119.

Ramsey, abbats of:

—— Herbert, made bishop of Thetford, i. 47.

—— Aldwin, degraded by archbishop Anselm, i. 191; reinstated, i. 192.

—— Ranulph, deprived of his right to the fair at St. Ives, iii. 119, 322; his death, iii. 144, 329.

—— William de Hacholt, his death, iii. 340.

Ramla, Ramleh (*Ramula*), city of, arrival of the Crusaders at, under the count of Flanders, i. 137; a bishop appointed at, *ib.*; Baldwin I. marches to, i. 195; the country invaded by the Arabs and Egyptians, i. 197; Baldwin escapes from, *ib.*; besieged, and taken by the Arabs, i. 198; the army comes to, on its way to Ascalon, i. 152; Saladin retreats to, from Joppa, ii. 35; iii. 212.

Ranulph, chancellor of Henry I., his bad character, i. 231; iii. 183; his violent death at Berkhampstead, i. 232.

Ranulph, Theutonicus. *See* Waleran, Theutonicus.

Rancona, Geoffrey de, commands the French forces defeated by the Turks, i. 282; his castle of Taillebourg captured by duke Richard, i. 419; his lands devastated by Richard, son of the king of Navarre, ii. 49; his castle of Taillebourg and territory subdued by Richard I., ii. 50.

Ravenna, Wibert, archbishop of, nominated pope at the council of Mentz, i. 25. *See* Clement III.

Ravenna, Arnulph, a deacon, made archbishop of, by the emperor Henry V., i. 236.

Reading (*Radinges*, *Radingum*), the castle of, surrendered to duke Henry, i. 293; the patriarch of Jerusalem received there by Henry II., i. 432; council held at, by the legate, ii. 107; iii. 223; some of the scholars of Oxford come here to study, ii. 120; Henry III. keeps Christmas at, ii. 292; he collects an army there, ii. 323; council held at, to consider the papal demands, ii. 431; the bishop of Tortosa comes to, to find his parents, iii. 50.

Reading, abbey of, founded by Henry I., i. 35, 249; the buildings completed, and the monks first inhabit, i. 231; iii. 182; the hand of St. James given to, i. 247; Henry I. buried there, i. 249; iii. 186; William, eldest son of Henry II., buried at, i. 307; iii. 193; dedicated by archbishop Thomas, in the presence of the king, i. 330; iii. 196; Henry de Esexe becomes a monk at, i. 321; iii. 195; consecrations of bishops there, i. 376, 508.

Reading, abbats of:

—— Hugh, elected archbishop of Rouen, i. 244.

—— William, made archbishop of Bordeaux, i. 376; iii. 200.

—— [Simon], charged with the execution of the sentence of excommunication against the barons, ii. 166.

—— [Ralph?] refuses to be surety for the king, for money borrowed, iii. 133.

Reblata, ancient name of Antioch, i. 91; Sedekiah deprived of his eyesight there, *ib.*

Red Dragon, William Rufus so called, i. 97, 167.

Redburne, a vill near St. Alban's, at which were "Banner Hills," i. 403; iii. 203; an annual procession from these Hills made to the church of St. Alban, *ib.*; the remains of S. Amphibalus found there, *ib.*; the chapel of St. James was in the vicinity, i. 406.

Redvers. *See* Rivers.

Regensburg (*Reinesburc*), the emperor Frederic I. starts from, for the Holy Land, i. 464.

Reginald, lord of Sidon, escapes from the battle of Marescallia, i. 441.

Reimund, [of Poitou,] prince of Antioch, death of, in battle with Noradin, i. 285; iii. 190.

Reimund, count of Tripoli, made guardian of Jerusalem, i. 429; iii. 205.

Reimund, monk of St. Alban's, goes to Richard I. in Normandy, ii. 75; sent to Rome by Richard, *ib.*

Reimund, a cross-bowman of Gascony, killed by the Welsh, ii. 507; iii. 296.

Reimund [de Pennaforti], Friar Preacher, compiled his "Summa" by order of Gregory IX., ii. 382.

Reiner, commander of the foot soldiers of Geoffrey de Mandeville, perishes at sea, i. 274.

Reiner of Viterbo, cardinal. *See* Viterbo.

Réole, La (*Regula*, *Riola*), the castle of, taken by earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 270; death of the abbat of Evesham at, ii. 496; besieged by Henry III., iii. 140; many Gascon rebels captured at, *ib.*, 325.

Resus, prince of Demetia or South Wales, does homage to Henry III. at Woodstock, i. 322.

Rethel, [John,] count of, assumes the cross, ii. 508.

Rheims, council held at, by Calixtus II., i. 225; Louis le Jeune crowned at, i. 244; council held there, by Eugenius III., i. 278.

Rheims, archbishops of:

—— [William], crowns Philip, son of Louis VII., i. 417; Henry II. receives the cross from, i. 446; present at the meeting of Philip II. and Henry at Saumur, i. 462

—— [Henry II.], acts on behalf of Louis IX. in making a truce with Henry III., ii. 333.

Rhesus, brother of Griffin, king of Wales, slain, ii. 166.

Rhodes, island of, Richard I. touches at, ii. 21.

Rhydlan (*Roelent*), castle of, fortified by Henry II., i. 307.

Ribalds, dig up the bodies of the Turks, and strip them, i. 103.

Ribemont (*de Riburgismonte*), Anselm de, a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Richard, second son of William I., his death in the New Forest, i. 30.

Richard, natural son of Henry I., perishes by shipwreck, i. 230.

Richard I., son of Henry II. and Alienor, duke of Aquitaine and count of Poitiers, subsequently king of England; his birth at Oxford, i. 308; sides with the young king Henry against their father, i. 374; does homage to his father, i. 391; captures and levels the castle of Taillebourg, and others, i. 419, 420; iii. 204; returns to England, i. 420; iii. 204; refuses to do homage to the young king for Aquitaine, i. 425; iii. 204; friendship of Saladin for him, i. 430; receives the cross from the archbishop of Tours, i. 445; iii. 207; his military fame, iii. 207; subdues Geoffrey de Lizinnun, i. 447; invades the territory of the count of Toulouse, *ib.*; joins Philip II. against his father, i. 454, 455; the Bretons come over to, i. 455, 462; demands of Philip, touching his sister's marriage to him, and security for his succession to the throne, i. 458; his anger against the cardinal legate, *ib.*; does homage to Philip, for his territories in France, i. 459; iii. 208; assists in taking castles in Maine, *ib.*; pursues his father, flying from Le Mans, i. 460; conference held at Saumur, to make peace between them, i. 462; present at the capture of Tours, i. 463; his marriage with Alice of France stipulated, *ib.*; ii. 4; receives the homage of his father's territories, and to hold certain cities in pledge, *ib.*; at his approach, blood bursts from his father's corpse, i. 465; accompanies the body to Fontevraud, *ib.*; his shield of arms, ii. 3, 76; iii. 218; exacts from Stephen de Thurnham his father's castles and treasure, *ib.*; recompenses his father's servants, *ib.*; receives at Rouen the sword of the duchy of Normandy, *ib.*; confirms to prince John his lands in England, with the earldom of Mortain, *ib.*; grants the see of York to his brother Geoffrey, *ib.*; has a conference with Philip between Chaumont and Trie, ii. 4; releases his mother Alienor from prison, *ib.*; comes to England, and lands at Portsmouth, ii. 5; iii. 208; causes the treasure at Winchester to be weighed, *ib.*; goes to Salisbury, and dispenses justice, *ib.*; gives to John the daughter of the earl of Gloucester in marriage, with the earldom, *ib.*; comes to London, and is absolved for bearing arms against his father, ii. 6; his coronation at Westminster, *ib.*; iii. 209; swears to maintain the church, and observe good laws, ii. 7; the banquet after the ceremony, ii. 8; causes some malefactors to be hung, ii. 9; forbids the Jews to be molested, *ib.*; takes homage and fealty from the nobles, *ib.*; gives the church of Scarborough to the Cistercians, ii. 10; iii. 209; nominates several bishops at Pipewelle, *ib.*; deposes Ranulph de Glanville, the justiciary, and nearly all the sheriffs, ii. 11; raises money for a crusade by the sale of lands and dignities, *ib.*; his jocose speech on making the bishop of Durham earl of Northumberland, *ib.*; is urged by Philip to start for the Holy Land, ii. 13; receives the homage of William of Scotland, *ib.*; gives to John several counties or earldoms, and to his mother her dowry, and many lands, *ib.*; pays his vows to St. Thomas at

Richard I., king of England—*cont.*
Canterbury, *ib.*; iii. 209; embarks at Dover, and crosses to Flanders, ii. 14; makes a vow to St. Thomas, to build a chapel at Acre, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Bures, in Normandy, *ib.*; meets Philip at Gué St. Remi, to concert the crusade, *ib.*; constitutes Arthur of Britanny his heir, ii. 15; sets out for the East, *ib.*; Berengaria of Navarre brought to him, *ib.*, 21; arrives at Messina, ii. 16; refused admittance by the French, and forces an entrance, *ib.*; iii. 210; captures several castles in Calabria, ii. 17; iii. 210; takes Messina by assault, *ib.*; said to have received gifts from Saladin, ii. 18; obtains concession of liberties to the churches in Normandy, ii. 19; embarks at Messina, ii. 20; touches at Rhodes, ii. 21; lands at Cyprus, and defeats Cursach, *ib.*; marries Berengaria, *ib.*; iii. 211; embarks from Cyprus, ii. 23; captures a Saracen dromund, *ib.*; iii. 211; lands at Acre, ii. 24; iii. 211; supplies provisions to the French army, *ib.*; urges the siege of Acre, which surrenders, *ib.*; offers to supply Philip with money and provisions, ii. 25; cause of discord between them, in regard to the choice of king of Jerusalem, *ib.*; his tilt with reeds at Messina [with William des Barres] alluded to, ii. 26; repairs the walls of Acre, and subdues the maritime cities, *ib.*; iii. 211; returns to Acre, ii. 27; defeats Saladin at Joppa, *ib.*; bestows the kingdom of Jerusalem on his nephew Henry [de Champagne], *ib.*; redeems many reliques from Saladin, *ib.*; his letter to certain English nobles, in reference to complaints against the chancellor, *ib.*; takes the castle of Darum, ii. 29; iii. 211; is joined by the duke of Burgundy, *ib.*; comes to Castle-Hernald, near Emaus, ii. 30; captures a caravan of camels laden with provisions, *ib.*; orders the banner of the duke of Austria to be thrown down, and

Richard I., king of England—*cont.*
receives his complaints with mockery, *ib.*; returns to Castle-Hernald, ii. 31; urges the chiefs to advance to Jerusalem, *ib.*; receives secret intelligence from a Syrian woman at Jerusalem, *ib.*; is informed of bribes sent to the duke of Burgundy by Saladin, ii. 32; convicts the duke of treachery, and sends orders to Acre, to refuse him admittance, *ib.*; visits a hermit at St. Samuel, ii. 33; receives from him a cross, made from the true Cross, *ib.*; the hermit predicts he will not take Jerusalem, *ib.*; marches back to Acre, ii. 34; is informed of the siege of Joppa by Saladin, and invites the duke of Burgundy to join him, *ib.*; embarks for Joppa, *ib.*; iii. 212; his personal prowess, against the Turks, ii. 35, 36; iii. 212; is joined by the rest of his forces, ii. 36; iii. 213; Saladin's praise of him, *ib.*; orders the chapel of St. Thomas to be built at Acre, ii. 38; iii. 213; attacked by the plague, but recovers, *ib.*; causes which induced him to return home, *ib.*; makes a truce with Saladin, *ib.*; leaves Palestine, with his queen and sister, ii. 39; iii. 213; encounters storms in the Mediterranean, *ib.*; learns the hostility of the count of St. Gilles, and resolves to return through Germany, *ib.*; lands at Zara in Slavonia, ii. 40; proceeds to Austria, where he is discovered, and surrenders to the duke, *ib.*; iii. 213; is sold to the emperor Henry VI., ii. 41; imprisoned at Trifels, *ib.*; retains his good humour and audacity, ii. 42; brought before the emperor, and refutes the charges against him, *ib.*; terms made for his ransom, ii. 43; tax imposed in England for that purpose, ii. 44; iii. 213; appoints archbishop Hubert administrator of the kingdom, and recalls the archbishop of Rouen, *ib.*; is visited by his mother, *ib.*; set at liberty, and comes back to England, *ib.*; iii. 214; returns thanks to St. Thomas at

Richard I., king of England—*cont.*
Canterbury, ii. 47; iii. 214; received joyfully at London, ii. 47; accepts a present from the abbat of St. Alban's, and sends an offering to the church there, *ib.*; goes to St. Edmund's to offer prayers, *ib.*; marches to Nottingham, against the adherents of John, *ib.*; iii. 214; the castle surrenders to him, *ib.*; wears his crown at Winchester, ii. 48; embarks at Portsmouth, and lands in Normandy, *ib.*; grants pardon to John, *ib.*; forces Philip to raise the siege of Verneuil, *ib.*; iii. 214; comes to Tours, and receives money from the burgesses of Neufchâtel, ii. 49; takes the castle of Loches, *ib.*; iii. 214; is joined by the son of the king of Navarre, and ravages the lands of Geoffrey de Rancona, *ib.*; pursues Philip to Freteval, and captures much booty, ii. 50; subdues Taillebourg and other places in Poitou, *ib.*; iii. 215; accepts Philip's proposal to decide their quarrel by a combat of five, provided he is one of them, *ib.*; concludes a truce with him, ii. 51; iii. 215; orders tournaments to be kept in England, *ib.*; complains to the pope of the duke of Austria, ii. 52; iii. 215; intention of the pope to appoint him leader of a crusade against the Moors in Spain, ii. 54; apologue narrated by him to abbat Warin of St. Alban's, ii. 55 *n.*; causes a crusade to be preached, ii. 56; keeps Christmas at Poitiers, *ib.*; makes a treaty with Philip at Louviers, *ib.*; war again breaks out between them, *ib.*; confiscates the possessions of Philip's sureties, ii. 57; redeems the garrison of Aumale, *ib.*; takes the castle of Gameges, *ib.*; his ransom money bequeathed by the emperor to the Cistercians, and refused, *ib.*; orders the bishop of Beauvais and his accomplices to be imprisoned, ii. 59; iii. 216; sends the bishop's coat of mail to the pope, ii. 60; at Bures, in Normandy, ii. 61; annoyed at the interdict laid on Normandy by the archbishop of Rouen, and sends to the pope, to defend his cause, *ib.*; makes a composition with the archbishop, ii. 62; burns the town of St. Valeri, and brings away the saint's shrine, *ib.*; gains over some of the French nobles, ii. 63; receives the homage of the count of Flanders, *ib.*; the castle of Eu given up to him by William Crepin, *ib.*; is joined by the Champenois and Bretons, and takes several castles in Auvergne, *ib.*; appoints a meeting with Philip, ii. 64; enacts laws for uniform measures, and for the sale of cloth, ii. 65; his death foretold by a shower of blood at Andeli, ii. 68; is reconciled to the archbishop of York, *ib.*; makes Geoffrey Fitz-Peter justiciary, ii. 69; defeats Philip near Vernon, ii. 71; and again at Gisors, ii. 72; his personal prowess at the battle, ii. 73; writes to the English prelates to give thanks for the victory, *ib.*; consents to make peace with Philip, ii. 74; a truce of five years concluded, ii. 75; iii. 218; sends envoys to Rome, to promote the election of Otho as emperor, ii. 75; imposes a carrucage of 5*s.*, *ib.*; causes a new seal to be made, and raises money by it, *ib.*; iii. 218; subdues the rebels of Poitou, ii. 76; besieges and captures the castle of Chaluz, *ib.*; is mortally wounded with a poisoned arrow, *ib.*; iii. 218; receives the sacrament, and sets free the man who shot him, *ib.*; his testamentary dispositions, *ib.*; his death, and burial at Fontevraud, ii. 77; iii. 219; epitaphs on him, *ib.*

Richard, younger son of king John, born, ii. 117; iii. 224; knighted by Henry III., ii. 269; his shield of arms, *ib.*; sent with forces to Gascony, *ib.*; assembles the citizens of Bordeaux, and exhibits the king's letters, *ib.*; created earl of Poitou and Cornwall, ii. 270; subdues those who did not render homage, *ib.*; takes La Réole, and other places, and defeats the count of La

Richard, younger son of king John—*cont.*

Marche, *ib.*; returns to England, ii. 295; iii. 256; quarrels with the king, about a manor, ii. 296; many nobles take his part, and meet at Stamford, *ib.*; Henry gives him his mother's dowry, and the lands of the counts of Britanny and Boulogne, ii. 297; marries Isabel, countess of Gloucester, ii. 331; is one of the sureties for Hubert de Burgh, ii. 351; deserts the earl Mareschal, and sides with the king, ii. 357; the emperor Frederic II. desires he should be sent over to oppose Louis IX., ii. 386; his quarrel with Richard Suard, ii. 389; assumes the cross, ii. 391; iii. 273; receives gifts from the emperor, ii. 392; is feared by the legate Otho, iii. 274; invited by Frederic to pass by Sicily to the Holy Land, ii. 403; is angry with the earl of Leicester, on account of his marriage to the king's sister, ii. 404, 405; iii. 276; gives money to Baldwin of Constantinople, iii. 276; present at the baptism of prince Edward, ii. 422; death of his wife Isabel, ii. 429; iii. 280; visits St. Alban's, ii. 437; goes to London, to take leave of the king, *ib.*; leaves his son Henry in his charge, and embarks at Dover, *ib.*; on his way to the Holy Land, hears the news of the cession of Palestine, ii. 441; arrives with his fleet at Acre, *ib.*; iii. 282; undertakes to support all the pilgrims who had no money, ii. 442; makes a truce with the Soldan of Babylon, ii. 452; iii. 283; obtains the release of the French prisoners taken at Gaza, *ib.*; causes the bones of the Christians to be buried, iii. 283; fortifies Ascalon, ii. 452; iii. 283; embarks, and lands at Trapani in Sicily, *ib.*; honourably received by the emperor, and converses with the empress, his sister, *ib.*; goes to the pope, to mediate peace with Frederic, *ib.*; suffers loss, by the discovery of tin in Germany, ii. 453; deaths of nobles who accompanied him to the Holy Land, ii. 459; iii. 284; joyfully received in England, ii. 460; iii. 285; proper respect not paid to him by the earl of Salisbury, ii. 461; accompanies Henry III. to Poitou, ii. 462; returns to England, and lands in Cornwall, ii. 466; iii. 286; marries Cincia, daughter of the count of Provence, ii. 473; iii. 287; at Christmas, celebrates his nuptials at Wallingford, ii. 478; iii. 288; mediates peace between Henry and the king of Scots, ii. 494; present at the Christmas festivity at London, iii. 3; returns from foreign parts, iii. 30; obtains from the king a grant of the profit on the new coinage, iii. 35 *n.*, 303; keeps Christmas at Wallingford, iii. 43; present at the dedication of Beaulieu abbey, iii. 63; founds the Cistercian monastery of Hayles, pursuant to a vow made at sea, iii. 65, 115; travels through France with great pomp, iii. 69, 312; paid great honour by queen Blanche, and by the papal court at Lyons, iii. 69, 75, 312; dines with the pope, on the day of the capture of Louis IX., iii. 75, 312; returns by St. Denis, and purchases of the abbat the manor of Deerhurst, *ib.*; comes back to England, *ib.*; news brought to him at London, of the destruction of the Christian army in the Holy Land, iii. 83; refuses the offer to be elected emperor, iii. 101; some buffaloes sent to him, the first seen in England, iii. 119; receives from the papal notary the offer of Apulia, iii. 126, 323; requires money and securities from the pope, *ib.*; the emperor Conrad IV. writes to dissuade him from trusting the pope, iii. 127; his heart is turned away from the Apulians by their bad character, *ib.*; the pope refuses to comply with his demands, *ib.*, 132, 323; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; appointed

Richard, younger son of king John—*cont.*

Richard, younger son of king John—*cont.*
joint guardian of the kingdom, in the king's absence, iii. 140, 328; on return from abroad, informs parliament of the state of affairs there, iii. 334; exacts a large sum from the Jews, *ib.*; meets Henry, on landing at Dover, iii. 343; lends the king money, and has the Jews turned over to him for repayment, *ib.*

Richard, natural son of king John, puts Eustace the Monk to death, ii. 221 *n.*

[Richard ?], natural son of the emperor Frederic II., his death, iii. 57.

Richard, son of count Ranulph, joins the crusade under Boamund, i. 71.

Richard, archdeacon of Poitiers, excommunicated by archbishop Thomas, i. 338. *See* Winchester, bishops of.

Richmond (*Richemund*), castle of, William [the Lion] of Scotland imprisoned in, i. 388; called "sinum Armoricum," by Merlin, because belonging to the counts of Britanny, *ib.*

Richmond, Peter of Savoy, earl of. *See* Savoy.

Ridel, Stephen, clerk, his cruel treatment at Ely, ii. 173.

Ripon (*Ripun*), foundation of Fountains abbey near, i. 241.

Risle, the river, the nobles submit to Geoffrey of Anjou, as far as, i. 267.

Rivaux (*de Rivallis*, or *de Orivallis*), Peter de, a Poitevin, son or nephew of Peter bishop of Winchester, made treasurer of the king's chamber, ii. 342; trusted greatly by Henry III., ii. 353; iii. 268; complained of, by the prelates, ii. 366; ordered to surrender his castles, make up his accounts, and leave the court, *ib.*; seeks refuge in the church of Winchester, ii. 371; restored to the king's favour, ii. 391.

Rivers or Redvers, Baldwin de, [earl of Devon,] holds Exeter against Stephen, i. 254; deprived of the isle of Wight, and exiled, *ib.*

Rivers (*de Ripariis*), Margaret de, [widow of Baldwin de Rivers,] given in marriage to Faukes [de Breaute,] ii. 170; iii. 233; advises him to propitiate St. Alban, ii. 204; called countess de l'Isle, iii. 125; her death, *ib.*, 322.

Rivers (*de Ripariis*), Baldwin de, earl of Devon. *See* Devon.

Rivers (*de Ripariis*), Richard de, knight, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510 *n.*

Roasia [Edessa], territory of, subject to Saladin, i. 451.

Robert, son of William I., born in Normandy, i. 11; Normandy given to him by his father, i. 20; complains falsely to Philip I., *ib.*; with his aid invades his father's territories, i. 21, 30; fights against him at Archenbrai, *ib.*; is cursed by William, *ib.*, 30 *n.*, 177; iii. 171; Normandy taken from him, but restored by his father on his deathbed, *ib.*, 34, 177; his right of primogeniture taken away, i. 30 *n.*; iii. 178; his fierce and warlike character, i. 30, 164, 203; seeks the daughter of the marquis Boniface in marriage, *ib.*; was deprived of England justly, *ib.*; promises to undertake a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, i. 34; iii. 174; leaves his father's corpse, to plot against his brother, i. 35; many English nobles adhere to him, i. 36; William II. makes war against, in Normandy, i. 39; treaty of peace made between them, *ib.*; iii. 174; meeting of the brothers, on account of the violation of the treaty, i. 44; war is renewed by them, i. 45; takes the castle of Argenton, *ib.*; obtains the aid of Philip, *ib.*; humbles himself to William, *ib.*; assumes the cross, in compliance with his father's wish, i. 56, 75; comes to England, to solicit pecuniary aid of his brothers, i. 74; leaves Normandy in pawn to William, i. 76; iii. 176; names of his chief followers to the crusade, i. 76; they winter in Apulia and Calabria, *ib.*; their march onwards to Constantinople, i. 78; takes an oath of fealty to the emperor Alexius, and receives gifts from

Robert, son of William I.—*cont.*
him, *ib.*; arrives at Nice, *ib.*; one of the chief leaders of the Christian army, i. 79; his station at the siege of Nice, i. 81; marches to the valley of Gorgoni, i. 84; his personal valour in the battle there, i. 85; captures Azena, and gives it to one of his knights, i. 88; proceeds to Artasia, i. 89; sent to force a passage over the Orontes, i. 90; his post at the siege of Antioch, i. 91; kills a Turk like a butcher does a sheep, i. 102; drives back the enemy from a fort, i. 112; a leader of the third division against Corbaran, i. 120; marches onwards with Tancred, i. 132; his position at the siege of Jerusalem, i. 139; gains much honour at the second assault, i. 143; is among the first to enter the city, i. 145; designated as king of Jerusalem, by the miraculous lighting of his candle, i. 150, 156; iii. 117; puts it out, and refuses the dignity, *ib.*, 203; wounds mortally the Turkish emir at the battle of Ascalon, i. 154; iii. 177; defeats and slaughters the enemy, i. 155; redeems the emir's standard, and offers it at the Holy Sepulchre, *ib.*; again refuses to be king, i. 156; his pride subsequently punished by God, i. 157, 205; iii. 180; returns home, *ib.*; held the most prominent place at the capture of Antioch and Jerusalem, i. 163; is depreciated by his brother Henry, i. 164; hastens back to Normandy, i. 165, 181; arguments against his succession to William II., i. 177; lays claim to England, on account of his primogeniture, i. 182; many nobles espouse his cause, i. 183; postpones the matter for a time, *ib.*; lands at Portsmouth with forces, i. 190; makes peace with Henry I. on being paid an annuity, and acknowledged his heir, *ib*; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; gives up his annuity, i. 192; iii. 179; war again between them in Normandy, i. 195; fortifies his castles, i. 196; nearly all his nobles submit to Henry, i. 201; comes to England, and has a conference with the king at Northampton, i. 202; iii. 179; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; defeated and made prisoner at Tenchebrai, i. 204; iii. 179; imprisoned in the castle of Devises, i. 206; iii. 180; uses lofty words and threats, *ib.*; released, on condition of abjuring England and Normandy, i. 212; attempts to raise a rebellion against Henry, i. 213; recaptured, again imprisoned, and deprived of sight, *ib.*; iii. 180; is fed and clothed sumptuously, *ib.*; his pride and evil speeches, i. 247; anecdote of the torn robe sent him by Henry, i. 248; refuses to take food, and dies, *ib.*; buried at Gloucester, *ib.*; iii. 186; surnamed *Curtheuse*, i. 30, 247; ii. 153.

Robert [Comyn], earl of Northumberland. *See* Northumberland.

Robert, a Norman, made bishop of Ramla, i. 137.

Robert, prior of St. Alban's, first inhabits Merton abbey, with a few monks, i. 222.

Robert, rebel to Stephen, his castle of Batinton taken, i. 254.

Robert, St., hermit of Knaresborough, famous for his miracles, ii. 415, 493; iii. 93, 292.

Robert [Rich], brother of St. Edmund [of Pontigni], fame of his miracles, ii. 493; iii. 318.

Roche-au-Moine (*Rupes-Monachi*), castle of, besieged by John, ii. 149; the siege raised, ii. 150; iii. 317.

Roche-Carbon (*Rupes-Carbonis*), castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 461.

Roche-d'Andeli (*de Rupe-Andeliaci*), [otherwise Château Gaillard,] built by Richard I., ii. 98; besieged by Philip II., *ib.*; captured by him, ii. 101.

Rochefort, Ebelin de, sets out for Jerusalem, ii. 446.

Rochelle (*Rupella*), did not submit to Philip II., ii. 102; John lands at, i. 148; delivered up to Louis VIII. by

Rochelle (*Rupella*)—*cont.*
treachery, ii. 262 ; iii. 248 ; the key of Poitou, *ib.* ; iii. 249.

Roches, Peter des. *See* Winchester, bishops of.

Roches (*de Rupibus*), William des, delivers to John the city of Le Mans, ii. 82.

Roches l'Eveque (*Rupes-Episcopi*), castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 461.

Rochester (*Rofa*), tournament held at, iii. 116.

Rochester, castle of, given to archbishop Stephen by John, ii. 159 ; committed to the custody of William de Albini, ii. 163 ; iii. 232 ; besieged by John, *ib.* ; the garrison surrenders, ii. 165 ; iii. 232 ; ordered to be hung by John, but the nobles afterwards imprisoned, *ib.*, 166 ; given up to prince Louis, ii. 179.

Rochester, bishops of:

—— Ralph, present at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, i. 210. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

—— Ernulph, his death, i. 234.

—— John, archdeacon of Canterbury, appointed, i. 235 ; iii. 184 ; dies, i. 255.

—— Ascelin, his death, i. 277 ; iii. 189.

—— Walter, archdeacon of Canterbury, succeeds, i. 277 ; iii. 189 ; consecrates Bartholomew, bishop of Exeter, i. 312 ; ordains the chancellor Thomas, priest, i. 316 ; suspended by papal letters, i. 357 ; his death (*called incorrectly* Roger), i. 424 ; iii. 204.

—— Gilbert de Glanville, archdeacon of Lisieux, consecrated, i. 434 ; iii. 206 ; claimed the right of consecrating the bishop of Lincoln, ii. 100 ; dies, ii. 153 ; iii. 231.

—— Benedict [de Sansetun], precentor of St. Paul's, and reader in theology at Paris, consecrated, ii. 171 ; iii. 233 ; dies, ii. 292 ; iii. 255.

—— Henry de Sanford, archdeacon of Canterbury, consecrated, ii. 295 ; iii. 256 ; sent to Rome, in the matter of election of the archbishop, ii. 309 ; consecrates archbishop Richard, and other prelates, ii. 318 ; iii. 260 ; sent to make

Rochester, bishops of—*cont.*

—— Henry de Sanford—*cont.*
peace with Llewellyn, ii. 366 ; dies, ii. 377, 393 ; iii. 271, 273.

—— Richard de Wendene, [*erroneously named* Wendoure,] elected, ii. 377 ; confirmed by the pope, ii. 406, 411 ; iii. 271 ; his death, and burial at Westminster, iii. 87, 315.

—— Laurence de St. Martin, elected, iii. 87 ; opposed by archbishop Boniface, *ib.* ; confirmed at Rome, iii. 108, 321 ; present at the excommunication of the transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137.

Rochester, church of, the monks appeal to the pope, in reference to the election of Richard de Wendene, ii. 377 ; gain their cause, ii. 406, 411 ; visitation of, by archbishop Boniface, iii. 77 ; burthened with debts, iii. 346.

Rockingham, castle of, given to the custody of the earl of Albemarle, ii. 172 ; taken by Henry III., ii. 242.

Roderic, king of Connaught, refuses to do homage to Henry II., i. 370.

Rodoam, prince of Aleppo. *See* Aleppo.

Rodosto (*Rodestum*), on the Hellespont, arrival of the Crusaders under count Reimund at, i. 72.

Rodune, William de, knight, deposed from office, as deputy earl Mareschal, ii. 353 ; iii. 268.

Roger [de Breteuil], earl [of Hereford], conspires against William I., i. 19 ; his sister [Emma] married to earl Ralph, *ib.*

Roger, of Poitou, earl [of Lancaster ?], taken prisoner by duke Robert, i. 45.

Roger, viscount [of Carcassone], taken prisoner by Simon de Montfort, ii. 194.

Roman clergy, in England. *See* Italians.

Romans, legend of one liberated from a demon, iii. 167 ; they acknowledge Henry IV. as emperor, and abjure Hildebrand, i. 27 ; expel pope Gregory IX. from Rome, ii. 301 ; are excommunicated, but laugh at it, *ib.* ; continued discord between them and the

Romans—*cont.*
pope, ii. 373; are again excommunicated by him, contrary to their privileges, *ib.*; apply to Frederic II. for help, *ib.*; sally out to attack Viterbo, and are defeated, *ib.*; are exasperated against the pope, ii. 374; intended to exact a large sum from Innocent IV., for money spent in opposing the emperor, iii. 105, 326; elect Brancaleo as triennial senator, iii. 131, 324; urge the pope to return to Rome, iii. 326; receive him reverently, *ib.*

Romanus, emperor of Constantinople, loses the provinces of Asia Minor, i. 79.

Romanus [Bonaventura], papal legate, [and bishop of Porto,] sent to France, ii. 281; iii. 253; his demand in the council at Bourges, *ib.*; reply made to him by the archbishop of Lyons, ii. 282; iii. 253; declares he made the demand unwillingly, *ib.*; quits France, iii. 253; preaches a crusade against the count of Toulouse, ii. 285; excommunicates the count and his followers, ii. 287; iii. 254; conceals the death of Louis VIII., ii. 288; by his treachery, Avignon is captured, ii. 289; iii. 254; causes the body of Louis to be taken to Paris, ii. 290; by his advice, Louis IX. is crowned, *ib.*; rumours of his intrigue with queen Blanche, *ib.*, 309 *n.*; iii. 254; the pope writes to him, on the emperor's hostility, ii. 301; complaint made to, of the conduct of the scholars of Paris, ii. 308; urges Blanche to punish them, *ib.*

Rome, council held at, against simony, i. 18; and concerning lay investitures, i. 52; earthquake at, iii. 181; General Council at the Lateran (1179), i. 411; heads of decrees passed at, i. 412–414; General Council at (1215), i. 416; Otho IV. consecrated emperor at, ii. 120; shower of bloody earth there, ii. 256; Frederic II. comes to, and is absolved, ii. 326; General Council summoned at (1240), ii. 434; iii. 280; papal election in the palace called "Regia Solis," there, ii. 457.

Rome, church of, secession of the Greek church from, ii. 414.

Romescot, granted by Offa, iii. 163.

Romney (*Rumenel*), archbishop Thomas embarks at, i. 328.

Roppele, Roppesle, Robert de, assists in taking Lincoln, ii. 182; made prisoner there, ii. 212; dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Ros, Robert de, [of Hamlake,] has the custody of Hugh de Chaumont, ii. 58; fined for his escape, *ib.*; assists to subdue Yorkshire for prince Louis, ii. 182.

Ros, Robert de, [of Werke,] appointed joint guardian of Scotland, iii. 118, 322; accused of ill-usage of the king and queen of Scots, iii. 346; summoned to reply to the charges, iii. 347; his lands seized by the king, *ib.*

Ros, William de, [of Hamlake,] taken prisoner at Lincoln, ii. 212.

Rosso (*Rubeus*), Peter, familiar clerk of the pope, comes to England, to extort money from the clergy, ii. 436; the abbats complain, but get no redress, *ib.*; remains after the departure of the legate, ii. 451; iii. 283.

Rouen, reception of Henry I. at, i. 228; fortified by him, i. 232; iii. 183; Innocent II. received there by Henry, i. 244; the king's body remained unburied at, i. 249; reception of Geoffrey of Anjou at, i. 274; birth of princess Alienor at, i. 315; Gilbert, bishop of London, absolved there, i. 352; Henry II. resides at, i. 377; besieged by Louis VII., i. 389; iii. 202; burial of the young king Henry, in the church of, i. 426; iii. 205; Henry II. celebrates Easter at, i. 434; the empress Matilda buried at, i. 435; Richard I. receives the sword of Normandy there, ii. 3; besieged by Philip II., ii. 45; some mills there granted by Richard to the archbishop of Rouen, ii. 62; Richard bequeaths his heart to the church of, ii. 76; iii. 218; John collects forces at, ii. 81; Arthur of Britanny imprisoned in the new castle there, ii. 95; submits to Philip, ii. 102; iii. 222.

Rouen, the monks of St. Ouen at, attack the archbishop, i. 18 ; iii. 171 ; ordered to be imprisoned, *ib.*

Rouen, archbishops of:

—— John, attacked by the monks of St. Ouen, i. 18 ; iii. 171.

—— William, holds a council at Lillebonne, i. 26.

—— Geoffrey, dedicated the church of St. Alban's, i. 220 ; iii. 181.

—— Hugh, abbat of Reading, elected, i. 244.

—— Rotrou [de Beaumont], effects a reconciliation between Henry II. and archbishop Thomas, i. 354 ; crowns the young king's queen at Winchester, i. 373 ; accompanies him to Bures, i. 391.

—— Walter [de Coutances], bishop elect of Winchester, elected, i. 426 ; present at the coronation of Richard I., ii. 6 ; comes to England, and is appointed guardian of the realm, ii. 28 ; iii. 211 ; excommunicates those concerned in the seizure of the archbishop of York, *ib.* ; recalled to Germany by Richard I., ii. 46 ; lays Normandy under an interdict, ii. 61 ; Richard appeals to the pope against him, *ib.* ; terms of the composition made with the king, ii. 62 ; invests John with the insignia of Normandy, ii. 79 ; iii. 219.

—— [Robert le Baube], John gives leave to the bishop of Lincoln, to be consecrated by, ii. 120.

—— [Odo] Rigaud (*Riganus*), Friar Minor, comes to England, to recover lands belonging to his church, iii. 50, 308.

—— William of Durham, archbishop elect, his death, iii. 67, 311.

Round Table, a tournay so called, iii. 124, 322.

Roussillon (*Ruisselone*, *Russelun*), Girard, count of, assumes the cross, i. 57 ; joins Boamund, i. 71 ; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Roussillon (*Russelun*), Peter de, takes the city of Rufa, i. 88.

Roxburgh (*Rokesburc*), castle of, ceded to Henry II. by the king of Scots, i. 393 ; restored to William [the Lion], ii. 13.

Rubea-Cisterna, [in Palestine,] a caravan captured at, by Richard I., ii. 30.

Ruben, tribe of, beyond Jordan, i. 159.

Rufa [Rugia ?], city of, [in Syria,] taken by Peter de Russelun, i. 88.

Runnymead (*Runingemade*), a meadow between Staines and Windsor, where Magna Carta was granted, ii. 157, 159.

Ruscy, Alan de, captured by Richard I., ii. 73.

S.

Sabina, William, bishop of, and cardinal, arrives in England, on his way as legate to Norway, iii. 23, 300 ; awaits a fair wind at Lynn, iii. 24 ; exacts procurations there, iii. 300 ; celebrates mass on board ship, *ib.* ; sails to Norway, and crowns Hacon VI. at Bergen, iii. 31, 300 ; assembles the monks of the Black Order, with a view to their reform, *ib.* ; gives letters to the abbat of Holm, to take to Rome, *ib.*

Sabulo, William de, attacks the Turks near Lydda, i. 142.

Sackeville, Nigel de, intruder in the church of Harrow, excommunicated by archbishop Thomas, i. 362.

Saete. *See* Sydon.

Saintes, city of, occupied by prince Richard, i. 383 ; forced to surrender to Henry II., *ib.*

Saints, many flourish in England, iii. 93, 292, 318 ; some holy men regarded as, although not canonized, iii. 292, 329.

St. Alban's, town of, conflict with the forces of Stephen at, i. 270 ; some of the chief men of Leicester take refuge in, i. 379 ; revelation of the reliques of

St. Alban's, town of—*cont.*
St. Amphibalus to an inhabitant of, i. 401–404; council held at, for the observance of the laws of Henry I., ii. 141; plundered by Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 203; the neighbourhood ravaged by the French troops, ii. 207; thunderstorm at, iii. 116; the tower of St. Peter's church at, struck by lightning, iii. 337.

St. Alban's, abbey, founded by king Offa, iii. 163; the order reformed, and buildings repaired, i. 14, 23, 37; deprived of its possessions by William I., i. 18; the customs of the church of Bec observed at, i. 25; iii. 172; the statutes and customs of Lanfranc and Anselm also observed, i. 37; the church of Tynemouth given to, by Robert, earl of Northumberland, i. 41; the earl buried at, iii. 175 *n.*; remained four years in the hands of William I., i. 46; impoverished by William II., i., 97; the writings of William, archbishop of Tyre, preserved at, i. 163; a copy of the charter of liberties of Henry I. kept there, i. 181; dedication of the church, i. 220; iii. 181; grant of Bissopescote to, by Henry, i. 221; the knights of, resist Stephen's forces, i. 271; visit of Stephen to, i. 277; and again, when he grants the privilege of electing an abbat, i. 291; received many privileges from pope Adrian IV., i. 299; the chancellor Thomas received his first living from, i. 303, 317; final concord made with the church of Lincoln, i. 318; iii. 195; freed from subjection to the bishop of Lincoln, *ib.*; the chrism for the great altar prepared at, i. 337; ii. 398, 483; iii. 196, 333; archbishop Thomas intended to visit, but prevented, i. 358, 359; the chapel of St. Cuthbert dedicated at, i. 369; prayer of supplication to St. Thomas used there, i. 376; annual procession made to, from "Banner Hills," i. 403; the reliques of St. Amphibalus brought to, i. 408; oblation sent to, by Richard I., ii. 47; the account of the vision of a monk of Evesham preserved at, ii. 50; visit of John to, who promises to be a special friend, ii. 81; some reliques given to the chapel of the infirmary by him, iii. 237 *n.*; saved from being burnt, by money paid to Faukes, ii. 203; visit of Faukes to, to obtain absolution for the injury done by him, ii. 205; escapes destruction by presents to the French *routiers*, ii. 207; composition with the church of Lincoln, ii. 234; consistory court held at, ii. 338; amount of tithe within the archdeaconry, appropriated to the monks, iii. 267 *n.*; visit paid to, by Richard of Cornwall, ii. 437; iii. 281; death and burial of the bishop of Ardfert at, ii. 511; two Minorites come to, requiring an aid for the pope, iii. 18; protected by them against episcopal authority, iii. 19; composition with the church of Durham, relative to the visitation of Tynemouth, iii. 22; a collect for the king and queen appointed to be said at, iii. 310; injury done to, by Geoffrey de Childwike, iii. 62, 311; archbishop Boniface proposes to visit, iii. 79; the bones of the deceased monks collected, and placed in a vault, iii. 110; visits of Henry III. to, iii. 114, 344; visitation of, for the purpose of reform, iii. 115; destructive thunderstorms at, iii. 116, 337; bequest of Richard de Wendovre to, iii. 120; the abbat of, held the first place among English abbats, iii. 275; arrival of the bishop of Norwich at, to tax the property, iii. 336; two monks of, sent to Rome, to oppose episcopal visitation, iii. 339.

St. Alban's, abbats of:
—— Paul, nephew of archbishop Lanfranc, a Norman by birth, and monk of Caen, appointed, i. 14, 23; iii. 172; reforms the monastic rule, and repairs the church, *ib.*; his character, i. 23; augmented the possessions of the church, *ib.*; his acts referred to in the "Gesta

St. Alban's, abbats of :—*cont.*

—— Paul—*cont.*

Abbatum," *ib.*; supplies the church of Tynemouth with monks, i. 41 ; iii. 174 ; dies at Colewich, i. 45 ; iii. 175 ; buried at St. Alban's, i. 46.

—— Richard de Lessai (*de Exaquio*), succeeds, i. 98 ; iii. 176 ; his long and prosperous government, *ib.* ; translates the reliques of St. Oswin to the new church at Tynemouth, i. 214 ; iii. 181 ; dies, i. 228 ; iii. 182 ; his acts referred to in the "Gesta Abbatum," *ib.*

—— Geoffrey de Gorham, prior of St. Alban's, succeeds, i. 228 ; iii. 182 ; dies, i. 276 ; iii. 189 ; his works of piety referred to in the "Gesta Abbatum," *ib.*

—— Ralph Gubiun, elected, and confirmed by Stephen, i. 276 ; iii. 189 ; appoints Robert de Gorham his deputy, i. 287 ; iii. 191 ; his death and burial, i. 291 ; his laudable acts referred to in the "Gesta Abbatum," *ib.*

—— Robert de Gorham, prior of St. Alban's, elected, i. 291 ; iii. 191 ; was defendant in the suit with the bishop of Lincoln, i. 318 ; dies, i. 340.

—— Simon, prior of St. Alban's, elected, and consecrated by the bishop of London, i. 344 ; iii. 198 ; a lover of books and the Scriptures, *ib.* ; sends a present of provisions to archbishop Thomas, i. 360 ; pays him a visit, [at Harrow,] *ib.* ; goes to the young king on his behalf, but received ungraciously, *ib.* ; his liberality praised by the archbishop, i. 361 ; invites the archbishop to St. Alban's, *ib* ; declines to be the archbishop's guest, *ib.* ; sends some monks to view the reliques of St. Amphibalus, i. 405 ; goes to Redburne, and says mass in the chapel of St. James, i. 406 ; causes the reliques of Amphibalus and his companions to be brought to St. Alban's, i. 408 ; dies, i. 424 ; iii. 204.

—— Warin, prior of St. Alban's, elected, and approved by Henry II., i. 424 ; iii. 204 ; pays the tax imposed on his church

St. Alban's, abbats of :—*cont*

—— Warin—*cont.*

for the ransom of Richard I., ii. 44 ; iii. 213 ; sends a present to the king, ii. 47 ; dies, ii. 55 ; iii. 215 ; apologue related by Richard to him, ii. 55 *n.*

—— John de Cella, [prior of Wallingford,] succeeds, ii. 55 ; iii. 215 ; bestows his benediction on some nuns at Sopwelle, ii. 100 ; dies, ii. 149 ; iii. 230.

—— William de Trumpintone, elected, ii. 154 ; receives benediction from the bishop of Ely, *ib.* ; promises in writing to mitigate certain grievances, but afterwards causes the document to be annulled, *ib.* ; refuses to do homage to prince Louis, ii. 201 ; iii. 238 ; pays a fine for the abbey and town, *ib.* ; compelled to pay 100*l.* to Faukes [de Breaute], to save the abbey and town from being burnt, ii. 203 ; one of the ribs of St. Wulstan given to, ii. 231 ; makes a composition with the bishop of Lincoln, relative to Luton, ii. 235 ; his death and burial, ii. 377 ; iii. 271.

—— John, prior of Hertford, elected, ii., iii. 271 ; the king writes to, to forbid tallage to the pope, iii. 10 ; directed by letters from Innocent IV. to send Matthew Paris to Norway, iii. 40 ; his quarrel with the abbat of Westminster relative to Aldenham, iii. 62 ; supplies provisions to the Friars Preachers, iii. 80, 314 ; receives letters from the pope, to give a living to his nephew, iii. 108 ; violates his promise, in regard to the pittances of the monks, iii. 115 *n.* ; refuses to be surety for John, iii. 133 ; appeals against the visitation ordered by the pope, iii. 139, 328 ; obtains remission of the fine imposed by Henry de la Mare, iii. 335.

St. Alban's, Chronicles of. *See* Paris, Matthew.

St. Alban's, abbey, on Mount Selja, in Norway, iii. 41.

St. Ambrose, bridge of, on the confines of Bologna, defeat of Ensius at, iii. 56, 309.

St. Asaph, bishops of:

—— Geoffrey Arthur [of Monmouth], made bishop of, i. 292; translated the "Historia Britonum" from Welsh into Latin, *ib.*

—— Godfrey, present at the concord between the churches of St. Alban and Lincoln, i. 318; iii. 196; prepares the chrism in the church of St. Alban, i. 337; suspended by papal letters, i. 357.

St. Basil, the "Claustra" of, [on Mount Hæmus,] passed by the Crusaders under duke Godfrey, i. 69.

St. Bertin, [at St. Omer,] abbey of, the exiled monks of Canterbury received at, ii. 113.

St. Cyriac, [in the March of Ancona,] death and burial of Faukes [de Breaute] at, ii. 291; iii. 255.

St. David's, bishops of:

—— Bernard, consecrated, i. 220.

—— Thomas Wallensis, archdeacon of Lincoln, elected, iii. 30, 302; present at the excommunication of the transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137; dies, [*a mistake*,] iii. 31.

St. Denis, abbey of, Philip II. buried there, ii. 259. *See* Denis, St.

St. Denis-en-Lions, [near Andeli,] death of Henry I. at, i. 249.

St. Edmund, town of, [Edmundsbury,] some of the inhabitants of Leicester take refuge in, i. 379; the earl of Leicester proposes to plunder the town and church, i. 381; an army collected at, by Henry II., i. 388; meeting of the barons there against John, ii. 153; iii. 231.

St. Edmund's, abbey, endowed by Cnut, and Benedictine monks placed in, iii. 41, 162; dedicated, iii. 163; Eustace, son of Stephen, dies on his way to plunder the territory of, i. 293; Richard I. goes there, to offer prayers, ii. 47.

St. Edmund's, abbats of:—

—— Samson, death of, ii. 127.

—— Hugh [de Northwold]. *See* Ely, bishops of.

St. Edmund's, abbats of—*cont.*

—— [Richard de Insula], ordered by the pope to excommunicate the rioters against the Italian clergy, ii. 340.

—— [Edmund de Walpole], assumes the cross, iii. 71; his suit with Richard earl of Gloucester, [concerning the manor of Mildenhall,] iii. 119.

St. Gemini, [*in the text* S. Gemma,] near Spoleto, archbishop Richard dies at, ii. 336; iii. 263.

St. George, Arm of. *See* Bosphorus.

St. George [Lydda], the bishop of, in the battle with the Chorasmians, but his fate not known, ii. 484.

St. Germain-en-Laie, letters patent of Louis IX. dated at, iii. 304.

St. Giles, John de, Friar Preacher, skilful in medicine, and lecturer in theology, iii. 145; called to the death-bed of Robert bishop of Lincoln, *ib.*

St. Gilles (*S. Egidius*), [on the Rhone,] the princess Joanna delivered to her husband there, i. 395.

St. Gilles, counts of. *See* Toulouse.

St. Hilaire, Hasculph de, captured at Dol, i. 382.

St. Hyrenæus. *See* Santarem.

St. Iago, [Bernard,] archbishop of, defeats the Saracens at Santarem, i. 428.

St. John of Jerusalem, Order of. *See* Hospital.

St. Ives, [co. Hunt.,] death and burial of an Armenian bishop there, iii. 77; the abbat of Ramsey's right to the fair at, taken away, iii. 119, 322.

St. Lazarus, Order of, slaughter of the brethren by the Saracens, iii. 84, 90, 95, 317.

St. Macaire, town and castle, taken by earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 270.

St. Magnus. *See* Colewick.

St. Malo (*S. Machutus, S. Maulous*), in Britanny, Henry II. lands at, ii. 323, iii. 262.

St. Marcel or Marceau, near Paris, quarrel between some tradesmen and the scholars of Paris, ii. 308; the prior of, complains to the legate, and bishop of Paris, *ib.*

St. Martin, Laurence de, accompanies the bishop elect of Valence to Viterbo, ii. 427; accused of poisoning him, *ib.*; appointed special clerk and proctor to the king, *ib.*; sent to forbid the clergy to consent to the pope's demands, iii. 13; goes to Durham, to urge the election of the king's brother as bishop, iii. 44, 305. *See* Rochester, bishops of.

St. Neot's, death of William, earl Ferrers, there, iii. 333.

St. Omer (*de S. Æodemaro*), Godfrey de, one of the founders of the Order of Templars, i. 223.

St. Omer (*de S. Audemaro*), Hugh de, joins Baldwin I. at Assur, i. 198; the city of Tiberias given to, *ib.*

St. Omer (*de S. Ædemaro*), the castellan of, [killed in Egypt,] his shield of arms, iii. 84 *n.*

St. Oswald, [at Nostell, co. York,] Athelulph, prior of, made the first bishop of Carlisle, i. 245. *See* Carlisle.

St. Ouen, at Rouen. *See* Rouen.

St. Paul, church of. *See* London.

St. Paul or Pol, Hugh, count of, assumes the cross, i. 57; joins duke Godfrey, i. 68; marches to the valley of Gorgoni, i. 84; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

St. Paul, Engelram, son of Hugh de, joins duke Godfrey, i. 68; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

St. Paul, [Hugh de Chastillon,] count of, takes the cross, ii. 508.

St. Samuel [Samwil?], near Jerusalem, interview of Richard I. with a hermit at, ii. 33; the hermit predicts his own death, *ib.*

St. Valeri (*S. Walericus*), castle of, taken by William II., i. 39; English ships accustomed to bring provisions there, ii. 62; burnt by Richard I., ii. 63; the shrine and reliques of the saint, carried to Normandy, *ib.*

St. Victor, abbey of. *See* Paris.

St. Victor, Hugh de, completes his Chronicle in 1128, i. 242.

Saladin, Salaadin, Salahadin, Soldan of Babylon and Damascus, son of a noble Christian slave, i. 430; a great admirer of Richard I., *ib.*; ii. 36; iii. 213; his warlike and munificent character, i. 430; meditates the conquest of the Western nations, *ib.*; ravages the country beyond Jordan, and Arabia, *ib.*; iii. 205; his confidence on hearing of the accession of Baldwin V. to the throne, i. 431, 433; his truce with the Christians terminated, i. 438; rumours of his hostile approach to Jerusalem, i. 439; his mother's treasure plundered by Reginald de Chatillon, *ib.*; he demands satisfaction in vain, *ib.*; ravages the Christian territories, i. 440; iii. 207; besieges Calvaria [Tiberias?], *ib.*; slays the Master of the Temple and his brethren, *ib.*; defeats the Christian army at Marescallia, i. 441; captures king Guy, and the Holy Cross, i. 442; captures Tiberias and Ptolemais, i. 443; besieges Jerusalem, *ib.*; his triumphant entry into, *ib.*; purifies the Temple, and exalts the name of Mohammed, i. 444, 456; subdues the surrounding cities, with the exception of three, *ib.*; iii. 207; letter of Frederic I. to, and his reply, i. 447–452; proposes terms to the emperor, i. 452; detests the bad faith of the Christians, *ib.*; attacks the army under Guy before Acre, i. 454; retires to his kingdom, *ib.*; report of his alliance with the Greek emperor, i. 457; sent his idol to Constantinople, to be worshipped, *ib.*; his brother and son captured at Antioch, *ib.*; continues to harass the army before Acre, ii. 118; said to have sent presents to Richard, *ib.*; regards the death of Frederic I. as miraculous, ii. 21; terms made by him with Richard, on the cession of Acre, not fulfilled, ii. 24; defeated by Richard at Joppa, ii. 27; sends bribes to the duke of Burgundy, ii. 32; takes Joppa

Saladin, Soldan of Babylon and Damascus—*cont.*
by assault, ii. 34; iii. 212; defeated by Richard, and retreats to Ramla, ii. 35; iii. 212; sends forces against Richard, who defeats them, *ib.*; unwillingly glorifies the God of the Christians, ii. 36; beheads a captive, said to have been prince of Antioch, ii. 37; makes a truce with Richard, ii. 38; his death at Nazareth, ii. 39, 44; iii. 213; his sons dispute his territories, *ib.*; his declaration on his deathbed, touching Richard's captivity, ii. 52; iii. 215.

Salaman or Salomon, governor of Cilicia, taken prisoner by Noradin, i. 337.

Salem, a name of Jerusalem, i. 159.

Salem, a city in which Melchisedech reigned, i. 160; its ruins remained, *ib.*

Salerno, Gregory VII. dies at, i. 32.

Salerno, prince of. *See* Principatu, Richard de.

Salisbury (*Saresbiria*), the bishopric of, held by William II. at his death, i. 173; Richard I. comes to, ii. 5.

Salisbury, church of, order of canons founded at, i. 206; iii. 180; the earl of Salisbury buried in the new edifice, ii. 281; removed by bishop Richard to a fitter place, ii. 397; iii. 274; bishop Robert completes the fabric begun by his predecessor, ii. 318; iii. 260; verses on its completion, *ib.*; Henry III. threatens to remove it back again, iii. 14; one of the noblest churches in England, ii. 260.

Salisbury, bishops of:

—— Osmund, his death, i. 168; iii. 177.

—— Roger, consecrated, i. 208; grants land in Oxford for the foundation of St. Frideswith, i. 215; present at the dedication of St. Alban's, i. 220; iii. 181; with Stephen, when he took possession of the treasure of Henry I., i. 253; seized by Stephen, and forced to surrender his castles, i. 262; dies, i. 263; iii. 188.

—— Jocelin, present at the concord between the churches of St. Alban's and

Salisbury, bishops of:—*cont.*

—— Jocelin—*cont.*
Lincoln, i. 318; suspended by papal letters, i. 357; dies, i. 427; iii. 205.

—— Hubert Walter, [dean of York,] consecrated, ii. 10; arrives at Tyre, ii. 15; disposes of the goods of archbishop Baldwin, as executor, ii. 18. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

—— Herbert Poore (*Pauper*), archdeacon of Canterbury, elected and consecrated, ii. 49; iii. 214.

—— Richard [Poore], present at the landing of Hubert de Burgh at Dover, ii. 221 *n.*; iii. 242; administers the sacrament to the earl of Salisbury, ii. 280; translated to Durham, ii. 300; had begun the fabric of the new church of Salisbury, and contributed annually towards it, ii. 318; iii. 260. *See* Durham, bishops of.

—— Robert de Bingham, canon of Salisbury, elected, ii. 299, 300; iii. 256; consecrated, ii. 318; iii. 260; completes the building of the new church, *ib.*; goes to the castle of Devises, and excommunicates those who took Hubert de Burgh out of the church, ii. 360; obtains his release from the king, *ib.*; iii. 268; dies, iii. 14.

—— William of York (*de Eboraco*), clerk to the king, and provost of Beverley, elected, iii. 14, 298; present at the excommunication of the transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137.

Salisbury deans of:

—— Robert. *See* Exeter, bishops of.

—— John of Oxford, presided at the council of Clarendon, i. 322. *See* Norwich, bishops of.

—— Eustace. *See* Ely, bishops of.

—— Richard Poore. *See* Chichester, bishops of.

Salisbury, Reginald, archdeacon of, sent to the pope by Henry II., i. 349. *See* Bath, bishops of.

Salisbury, William Longespée I., [natural son of Henry II.,] sent to the aid of the count of Flanders, ii. 138; appointed

Salisbury, William Longespée I.—*cont.* leader of the forces there, ii. 150; taken prisoner at the battle of Bovines, ii. 151; iii. 91, 230; one of the chiefs left to keep the barons in check, ii. 169; devastates the isle of Ely, ii. 173; deserts John, and joins prince Louis, ii. 180; sent to induce Hubert de Burgh to give up Dover castle, ii. 197; his conference with Hubert, ii. 198, 199; resumes his allegiance to Henry III., ii. 206; iii. 239; one of the leaders of the army at Newark, ii. 209; accompanies Richard of Cornwall to Gascony, ii. 269, 270; miraculously saved from shipwreck on his return, ii. 274; iii. 252; on false report of his death, the king gives leave for his widow's marriage, ii. 277; lands with difficulty in Cornwall, ii. 280; iii. 252; complains to the king of the conduct of Hubert de Burgh, but is reconciled to him, *ib.*; his illness assigned to excess or poison at the justiciary's table, *ib.*; his penitent death, in Salisbury castle, *ib.*; buried in the new church at Salisbury, ii. 281; iii. 253; miraculous occurrence at his funeral, *ib.*; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Salisbury, Ela, countess of, wife of the preceding, refuses to marry the nephew of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 277; iii. 252; when abbess of Lacock, sees a vision of her son, iii. 313.

Salisbury, William Longespée II., [son of the preceding,] earl of, assumes the cross, ii. 391; returns from the Holy Land, ii. 461; failed to show proper respect to earl Richard of Cornwall there, *ib.*; again takes the cross, iii. 26, 301; sets out for Jerusalem, iii. 55, 308; joins Louis IX., iii. 309; follows him from Damietta, iii. 81; killed in battle, [at Mansourah,] iii. 313; appears to his mother in a vision, *ib.*; his shield of arms, iii. 84 *n.*; his bones buried at Acre, iii. 126.

Saltwood, honour of, the oldest knights of, summoned, to ascertain the archbishop's fee there, i. 354.

Samaria, so named from mount Somer, i. 159.

Samosata, city of, purchased by count Baldwin of Edessa, i. 89.

[Sancerre], Stephen, count of, brother of the count of Blois, his death before Acre, ii. 20.

Sandwich, archbishop Thomas embarks from, i. 329; lands at, i. 356; prince Louis lands at, ii. 179.

Sanford, Nicholas de, knight, his death, iii. 118.

Sanguinius, [Emadeddin Zenghi I.,] a Turkish emir, captures Edessa, i. 272; his slaughter of the Christians, iii. 190. *See* Aleppo.

Sansavoir (*Sanzavur*), Walter, first led a body of Crusaders to the Holy Land, i. 59; his progress to Constantinople, i. 60; iii. 175; his death, i. 64.

Santarem (*S. Hyrenæus*), in Portugal, captured by the Saracens, i. 428; the Saracens defeated at, by the prince of Portugal, *ib.*

Saphadin, [Seif-eddin Malek Adel,] Soldan of Babylon, brother of Saladin, ii. 23; sends a dromund laden with stores to the relief of Acre, ii. 23; succeeds to his brother's kingdom, ii. 45; disinherits his nephew, ii. 229; his death, *ib.*; iii. 243.

Saracens, lamentation of, for their losses, i. 134; the power and number of, vaunted by Saladin, i. 450; envoys sent by them to France and England, to ask for aid against the Tartars, ii. 409; invited by Frederic II. to the empire, and allowed to settle there, ii. 474; some converts come to France, and bring letters from Louis IX. to receive alms, iii. 331.

Sardinia (*Sardania*), restored to Frederic II. against the pope's will, ii. 418; given to Ensius, the emperor's son, *ib.*; iii. 279. *See* Ensius.

Sardonas, town of, [in Syria,] taken by the Turks, but recaptured by Baldwin II., i. 229.

Sarepta, residence of the prophet Elisha at, i. 136; passed by the Crusaders, *ib.*

Saumur, in Anjou, Henry II. keeps Christmas at, i. 455 ; conference there, to make peace between Henry, Philip II., and earl Richard, i. 462.

Saurona [Sharon], arrival of a force of Arabs and Egyptians at, i. 197.

Sauvey, castle of, committed to the custody of the earl of Albemarle, ii. 172 ; captured by Henry III., ii. 242.

Savoy (*Sabaudia*), five towns destroyed there by an earthquake, in the valleys of Maurienne, iii. 38, 90, 304, 319.

Savoy, Amadeus, count of, does homage to Henry III., iii. 8, 298.

Savoy, Peter of, uncle of the queen, his arrival in England, ii. 445 ; iii. 282 ; Henry III. had given him the earldom of Richmond, *ib.* ; knighted, and a feast held in his honour, *ib.* ; brings over some foreign ladies to be married to English nobles, iii. 17, 25, 298 ; persecutes the monks of Jervaux, iii. 129.

Savoy, Thomas of, formerly count of Flanders, accompanies the countess of Provence to England, iii. 52 ; marries a daughter of Frederic II., iii. 35, 303 ; has the city of Turin given to him, in dowry, iii. 303.

Saxons, defeated by the emperor Henry IV., i. 26.

Saxony, Henry [the Lion], duke of, marries Matilda, eldest daughter of Henry II., i. 336 ; his widow [divorced wife ?] had married the count of Maurienne, i. 373 ; seeks counsel of Henry, i. 397 ; exiled by the emperor, and comes with his family to Henry, i. 424 ; is supplied with necessaries for three years, *ib.* ; comes to England, i. 426 ; birth of his son William, *ib.* ; iii. 205 ; reconciled to the emperor, and returns home, i. 435 ; iii. 206.

Saxony, Henry, duke of, son of the preceding, and brother of Otho IV., accompanies his father to Normandy, i. 424 ; comes to England, ii. 117, 119 ; iii. 224 ; receives money for the emperor, *ib.*

Saxony, [Albert I.,] duke of, arrives in England, ii. 324 ; iii. 262 ; is lodged in the Old Temple, London, *ib.* ; his tall stature, *ib.*

Scarborough (*Scardeburc*, *Scardeburga*), the church of, granted to the Cistercians by Richard I., ii. 10 ; iii. 209 ; the castellan of, one of the four sworn to obey the barons, in carrying out Magna Carta, ii. 159.

Sceldforde, [William,] son of John de, military tenant of St. Alban's, hung at London for parricide, iii. 344.

Scenfrith (*Skenefrith*), castle of, given up by Hubert de Burgh to the king, ii. 426.

Sclavonia [Dalmatia], Richard I. lands at Zara in, ii. 40.

Scotales, forbidden to be kept, ii. 141. *See* the Glossary, *in v.*

Scotland, many English nobles take refuge in, i. 9 ; iii. 170 ; homage made for, to the kings of England, i. 16 *n.*, 392 ; the southern part ravaged by Stephen, i. 257 ; placed under the guardianship of Robert de Ros and John de Bailloil, iii. 118, 322.

Scots, their battle-cry at the battle of the Standard, i. 259 ; incurred much shame by their defeat, *ib.*

Scutage, of two and a half marks levied (1204), ii. 100 ; iii. 222 ; of two marks (1211 and 1221), i. 124, 247 ; iii. 245 ; of three marks (1231), i. 329 ; of twenty shillings (1242), i. 466 ; of three marks (1253), iii. 136, 326.

Sea, inundations of the. *See* Inundations.

Seal, Great, broken by Henry I., to invalidate his charter, i. 217 ; a new one made by Richard I., and his charters resealed, ii. 75 ; Henry III. first uses, i. 231 ; of the commonalty of London, used by the clergy of the province of Canterbury, iii. 17.

Sebastea, in Samaria, the tombs of Elisha and Abdias at, i. 159, 163 ; John the Baptist martyred, and buried there, *ib.* ; ravaged by Saladin, i. 430.

Sebastea, the bishop of, suffragan to the archbishop of Cæsarea, i. 161; the church of, redeemed by payment of money, i. 430.

Sedekiah, king of Judah, deprived of his eyesight at Reblata, i. 91.

Seggesfeld, a royal vill, purchased by the bishop of Durham, ii. 11.

Segrave, Gilbert de, imprisoned at Pons, in Poitou, iii. 339.

Segrave, Stephen de, knight, special councillor of Henry III., his simonical convention with the nuncio, ii. 316; death of his son, whom he hoped to benefit, *ib.*; abets the pillage of the Italian clergy, ii. 337; iii. 263; aids the bishop of Winchester in managing public affairs, ii. 353; very skilled in law, ii. 371; lies hid in the abbey of Leicester, *ib.*, 372 *n.*; iii. 271; reconciled with the king, and restored to his favour, ii. 376, 391; recalled unwillingly to the court, ii. 417; iii. 278; his death and burial at Leicester, ii. 457; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Seine (*Secana*, *Sequana*), the river, formed the limit of the Vexin, ii. 82; report of Arthur of Britanny being drowned in, ii. 95; the fleet of Philip II. collected at the mouth of, ii. 134, 137; some scholars of Paris drowned in, ii. 308; overflows its banks, ii. 395.

Seinte-More, Hugh de, turns the heart of the young king from his father, i. 371.

Selburn, priory of, Order of St. Augustine, founded by Peter, bishop of Winchester, ii. 410.

Selby (*Selebi*), abbey of, founded by William I., i. 30, 34 *n.* *See* Francis, John.

Selja, or Seloe (*Sellio*), a mountain in Norway, abbey of St. Alban there, iii. 41.

Selsey, the see of, transferred to Chichester, iii. 171.

Selsey, bishops of:

—— Brihtric, his death, iii. 160.

—— Ælmar, or Æthelmar, succeeds, iii. 160; dies, iii. 162.

—— Æthelric, succeeds, iii. 162.

Sem, son of Noah, founder of Jerusalem, i. 159; afterwards named Melchisedech, *ib.*

Semlin. *See* Mala-villa.

Seneca, quoted, i. 309; ii. 192, 220; iii. 34, 48, 102, 122, 241.

Senena, wife of prince Griffin of Wales, her charter to Henry III., ii. 483 *n.*

Sens, archbishop Thomas received by the pope at, i. 330; he resides at the abbey of St. Columba there, i. 339; iii. 197.

Sens, William, archbishop of, writes to their legates, to forbid their mediation between Henry II. and the archbishop, without his knowledge, i. 347; present at the meeting of Louis VII. and Henry at Freteval, i. 354; iii. 199; pope Alexander III. writes to, against the doctrine of Peter Lombard, i. 414.

Sensabolus, son of Anxianus, commander of the citadel of Antioch, i. 110; flies to Corbaran for aid, *ib.*; surrenders the fortress to him, i. 111.

Sephor [Sefurieh], fountain of, the army of the king of Jerusalem assembles at, i. 440.

Sergius IV., pope, iii. 160.

Serorgia [Seruge], city of, taken by Baldwin I. of Edessa, i. 89.

Seville (*Sibilla*), city of, in Spain, siege and capture of, by the king of Castille, ii. 428; iii. 38, 92, 304, 317.

Shirburne (*Sireburna*), castle of, delivered up to Stephen by the bishop of Salisbury, i. 262; surrendered to Matilda by William Martel, i. 269.

Sheriffs, deposed by Richard I., ii. 11; sworn not to take bribes, ii. 389.

Shoreham (*Sorham, Suorham*), John lands at, ii. 80.

Shrewsbury (*Salopesberi*), castle of, held against Stephen by William Fitz-Alan, but captured, i. 258.

Shrewsbury, Roger de, earl of. *See* Montgomery.

Shrewsbury, Hugh [de Montgomery], earl of, killed by the Irish [Norwegians], i. 132; iii. 176.

Shrewsbury, Robert de Belesme, brother of Hugh, succeeds as earl of, i. 132; holds Arundel castle against Henry I., i. 190; is exiled, i. 191; escapes from the battle of Tenchebrai, i. 204; iii. 180.

Sibilla, [daughter of Amauri I., king of Jerusalem,] widow of William, marquis of Montferrat, and wife of Guy de Lizinnun, count of Joppa, i. 429, 438; her son Baldwin is crowned king, i. 431; chosen queen of Jerusalem, on condition of repudiating her husband, i. 438; complies, and afterwards chooses him for husband and sovereign, i. 439; commendation of her subtlety, *ib.*; her death, ii. 25.

Sichar, in Samaria, i. 159.

Sichem, son of Emor, slain at Neapolis, i. 159.

Sicily and Apulia, the loss of, by the emperor Henry VI., laid to the charge of Richard I., ii. 42; subdued by the emperor, ii. 54; Frederic II. lands in, ii. 320; iii. 261; Richard of Cornwall lands there, ii. 452; the people swear fealty to Henry, son of Frederic, iii. 23; provisions from, ordered to be sold to Louis IX., iii. 50; the inhabitants infamous from use of poisons, iii. 127; the prisoners of the emperor sent there for security, iii. 320; offer of the kingdom made to Henry III., for his son Edmund, iii. 338; the offer of, still held out by Alexander IV., iii. 341. *See* Apulia.

Sidon. *See* Sydon.

Sigebert or Sigisbert, of Gemblours, the historian, *Prol.*, i. 5; finishes his Chronicle in 1099, i. 168 *n.*; iii. 177.

Silistria. *See* Stralice.

Silvester III., antipope, held the see fifty-six days, iii. 165.

Silves (*Silvia*), city of, besieged by the Crusaders, for the king of Portugal, i. 461; surrendered by the cadi, i. 462; slaughter of the unbelievers in, *ib.*; the mosque of, consecrated to the Virgin, *ib.*

Sinai, Mount, the bishop of, suffragan to the archbishop of Petra, i. 161.

Sinibald [di Fiescho], cardinal, made pope, iii. 92. *See* Innocent IV.

Sirefontaine (*Siresfontanum*), castle of, taken by Richard I., ii. 72.

Siward. *See* Suard.

Sleaford, castle of. *See* Lafford.

Slindon, death of archbishop Stephen at, ii. 302.

Snow, long continuance of, killed the fish and birds, i. 401.

Snowdon (*Snaudun*), homage of the Welsh to Henry II. at, i. 308; iii. 193; John advances to, with his army, ii. 124.

Soar (*Sora*), river of, flows by Leicester, i. 378.

Soissons (*Suessionis*), Ingelburga, queen of Philip II., placed in a nunnery at, ii. 46.

Soissons, [John II.,] count of, assumes the cross, ii. 508.

Soissy, archbishop Edmund removes there, ii. 442; dies in a house of canons at, *ib.*

Solars, Rustand de, a Gascon noble, taken prisoner by the earl of Leicester, and sent to London, iii. 123.

Soliman [Kilidge Arslan], of Aleppo, [Soldan of Iconium,] slaughters the German Crusaders under Peter the Hermit, i. 63; possessed the provinces of Asia Minor, i. 79; defeated before Nice, i. 80; his wife and child taken prisoners, and sent to the emperor Alexis, i. 83; attacks the Crusaders at Gorgoni, and is routed, i. 84, 86; called prince of Nice, i. 122; disposes the forces of Corbaran for battle, *ib.*; attacks the division of Boamund, i. 123; his stratagem, of setting fire to some straw, turned against him, *ib.*

Somer, Mount, gave the name to Samaria, i. 159.

Somerset, county or earldom of, given by Richard I. to prince John, ii. 13.

Songs, vernacular, of Geoffrey de Mandeville and his companions, when insane, i. 271 *n.*; of the Flemish soldiery, under the earl of Leicester, i. 381.

Sopwelle, St. Mary of, some of the nuns receive the benediction of the abbat of St. Alban's, ii. 100.

Sorceresses, Arab, killed at the siege of Jerusalem, i. 143.

Sotingduun, Robert de, dictates the letter to the General Council, complaining of the papal exactions, ii. 502.

Sottingni, Sotinni, Gerard de, one of the leaders of the Brabançon mercenaries, ii. 164, 170.

Sourdeval (*de Surda-valla*), Robert de, joins the crusade under Boamund, i. 71.

Southampton (*Portus Hamonis, Suhantonia*), Henry II. lands at, i. 385; the bailiffs summoned to Winchester, to give evidence touching robberies, iii. 47.

Southwark (*Suwerc*), church of St. Mary and town of, burnt, ii. 131.

Spain, invasion of, by the emperor of Marocco, ii. 54; defeat of the king of the Moors in, iii. 89, 315; great part of it conquered from the Moors by the king of Castille, ii. 390; iii. 92, 273, 317; slaughter of the Jews in, ii. 391.

Spain, kings of. *See* Alfonso VII., X.; Ferdinand III.

Spinney (*de Spineto*), William de, servant of Robert de Ros, hung, ii. 58.

Sprea, Thomas de, assumes the cross, i. 57.

Stadeneis, Peter de, brother of the count of Toul, joins the crusade under duke Godfrey, i. 68; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Stafford, Henry, archdeacon of. *See* Exeter, bishops of.

Staines (*Stanes*), meeting of John and the barons between Windsor and, to grant Magna Carta, ii. 157; meeting of Henry III. and prince Louis near, to make peace, ii. 222; iii. 242.

Stamford (*Stanforde*), John withdraws to, ii. 186; meeting of the barons at, of earl Richard of Cornwall's party, ii. 296; granted by charter to prince Edward, iii. 336.

Standard, of the Turkish emir, offered in the Holy Sepulchre by duke Robert, i. 155; battle of the, at Alverton, i. 259; iii. 187.

Stars, a large one appears near the sun, i. 23; falling, i. 49; ii. 471; iii. 91; their nature, i. 69.

Stephen, St., protomartyr, his tomb on mount Sion, i. 139; the spot where he was stoned, i. 161.

Stephen X., pope, iii. 167.

Stephen, count of Boulogne and king of England, son of Stephen, count of Blois, and Adala, i. 238, 251; was the first to swear fealty to the empress Matilda, i. 238; usurps the throne, i. 251; his shield of arms, i. 251 *n.*, 299 *n.*; promises to amend the laws, *ib.*; crowned by archbishop William, and receives the assent of the nobles, *ib.*; iii. 186; said to have been appointed by Henry I. his heir, *ib.*; goes to Oxford, and confirms the covenants sworn to previously, i. 252; a violent thunderstorm on the day of his landing, i. 253; seizes the treasures of the late king, *ib.*; iii. 186; marches against David, king of Scots, and forces him to make terms at Durham, *ib.*; receives his homage, iii. 186; grants the earldom of Huntingdon to Henry, son of David, i. 254; celebrates Easter at London, *ib.*; rumours of his death, *ib.*; iii. 187; takes the castle of Batinton, and besieges and captures Exeter castle, *ib.*; his clemency to the garrison blamed, *ib.*; goes to the Isle of Wight, and exiles Baldwin de Redvers, *ib.*; violates his oath at Bramtone, as to forest rights, i. 255; crosses to Normandy, i. 256; his success against the count of Anjou, *ib.*; makes peace with Louis VI., and concludes a truce with Geoffrey of Anjou, *ib.*; makes an annual payment to Geoffrey, and to his brother Theobald of Blois, *ib.*; returns to England, *ib.*; besieges Bedford castle, i. 257; iii. 187; compels David to retreat, and ravages the south of Scotland, *ib.*; the English nobles rise against him, i. 258; takes Shrewsbury castle, and Ledes castle, i. 258, 261; marches to Scotland, and forces the king to terms, i. 261; takes

Stephen, king of England—*cont.*
Henry, son of David, as hostage to England, i. 262; besieges Ludlow castle, and rescues Henry from the enemy, *ib.*; subdues the castle of Oxford, *ib.*; seizes the bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln, *ib.*; iii. 187; takes the latter to Devises, and forces him to give up the castle, as also Shirburne castle, *ib.*; obtains the sister of Louis VII. for his son Eustace in marriage, *ib.*; is summoned to the council at Winchester, and sends Alberic de Vere, to vindicate his conduct, i. 263; loses favour with many, *ib*; banishes the bishop of Ely, i. 264; iii. 187; besieges Lincoln, *ib.*; hears mass, at which some sinister prognostics occur, i. 265; iii. 188; disposes his forces in battle, *ib.*; his personal bravery, i. 266; taken prisoner, and brought to the empress, *ib.*; confined in Bristol castle, *ib.*; ordered to be put in fetters, i. 267; exchanged for Robert, earl of Gloucester, *ib.*; defeated at Wilton, i. 268; iii. 188; besieges the empress in Oxford castle, i. 269; iii. 188; captures William de Mandeville at St. Alban's, i. 270; iii. 188; the tower of London and castles of Walden and Plessy surrendered to, *ib.*; again besieges Lincoln, i. 273; iii. 189; permits the violation of Ramsey abbey, i. 274; drives away the earl of Gloucester from Faringdon, and takes the castle, i. 275; seizes the earl of Chester at Northampton, and forces him to surrender Lincoln castle, *ib.*; wears his crown at Lincoln, *ib.*; visits St. Alban's, and confirms Ralph Gubiun as abbat, i. 277; again goes there, and grants the privilege of electing an abbat, i. 291; iii. 191; death of his queen, i. 291; founds the abbey of Feversham, i. 293; the cardinal legate for Ireland does fealty to, i. 292; a decisive battle resolved on between him and duke Henry, i. 294; invited by the empress to a private conference, i. 295; she asserts duke Henry to be his son, begotten on herself; i. 295, 301; he confesses the fact to archbishop Theobald, *ib.*; a treaty of peace proclaimed with duke Henry, *ib.*; adopts Henry as his son and successor, i. 296; their mutual love, *ib.*; his death, and burial at Feversham, i. 299.

Stephen, chaplain and nuncio of Gregory IX., his arrival in England, ii. 315; iii. 259; exhibits papal letters in the council at Westminster, demanding tithes, *ib.*; is assisted by Stephen de Segrave, ii. 316; his tyranny in carrying out his instructions, ii. 317; iii. 259.

Stigand, chaplain of Edward the Confessor, made bishop of Elmham, i. 13; iii. 165; holds two bishoprics by papal dispensation, iii. 166; usurps the see of Canterbury, i. 8; iii. 168. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

Stoctone, manor of, assigned to Nicholas, bishop of Durham, on his resignation, iii. 44, 306, 321.

Stodland, near Wareham, John lands at, ii. 103; iii. 222.

Storms, unusual, of rain and hail, iii. 335. *See* Thunderstorms.

Stowe, near Lincoln, the army of Henry III. halts there, ii. 210.

Stralice [Silistria], metropolis of Dacia, the Crusaders under Walter Sensavoir come to, i. 60; duke Godfrey's forces arrive at, i. 68.

Strato, Tower of, the ancient name of Cæsarea, i. 136.

Strigoil, William, earl of, his death, i. 398; iii. 202.

Stuteville, Eustace de, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 459, 510.

Stuteville, Nicholas de, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Stuteville, Richard de, a northern baron, his death, ii. 493.

Stuteville, William de, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Suabia, devastated by the emperor Henry IV., i. 24.

Suabia, Philip, [son of Frederick I.,] duke of, his election as emperor annulled, ii. 83; excommunicated by the pope, *ib.*; dies, ii. 117.

Sudbury, Alan [de Beccles], archdeacon of, his death at London, ii. 432.

Suard, or Siward, Richard, accompanies Hubert de Burgh, to engage the French fleet, ii. 218; joins the confederacy against the bishop of Winchester, ii. 356; iii. 269; received into the king's favour, ii, 371; iii. 271; banished, on account of his quarrel with Richard of Cornwall, ii. 389; takes the cross, ii. 391; iii. 273; dies, iii. 32, 39, 302.

Suereford, Alexander de, his rolls of the exchequer referred to, ii. 162, 182.

Suffolk, earthquake in, i. 338; Robert, earl of Leicester, lands in, with Flemish troops, i. 380; subdued for prince Louis, ii. 181; ravaged by him, ii. 182; pillaged by the barons, i. 184; and by John, i. 185, 189; iii. 236; offered to Hubert de Burgh, to tempt him to surrender Dover castle, i. 198.

Sulpicius Severus, ecclesiastical historian, mentioned, *Prol.* i. 4.

Sumercote, Robert de, cardinal, poisoned at Rome, ii. 457; iii. 92.

Sumeri, Roger de, knight, dies, without heirs, ii. 385; iii. 272.

Supino, Peter de, clerk, one of the pope's collectors of money in England, ii. 451; iii. 283.

Sweyn I. (*Svanus*), [Tuiskeg,] king of Denmark, ravages England with a large force, iii. 160; again arrives, and devastates it, *ib.*, 161; subdues the whole of England, iii. 161; slain by king Edmund the Martyr, *ib.*

Sweyn II., [Estrithson,] king of Denmark, prepares to make war on England, iii. 165; arrival of his sons in England, i. 12; applied to for aid against William I., i. 19.

Sweyn, son of [Eric I.,] king of Denmark, slain by the Turks near Nice, i. 93.

[Sweyn], natural son of Cnut, reigns in Norway, iii. 164.

Swine, a port in Flanders, Philip II. orders his fleet to assemble at, ii. 138.

Swineshead (*Suinesheved*), abbey of, Ord. Cisterc., John sleeps at, and is attacked by fever, ii. 190.

Sydon (*Sagitta*, *Saete*), city of, the Crusaders arrive at, i. 136; the bishop of, suffragan to the archbishop of Tyre, i. 161; added by Baldwin I. to his kingdom, i. 224.

Sylo (*Shiloah*), to the north of Jerusalem, i. 159.

Syloe (*Siloam*), where the blind received their sight, i. 162.

Symeon, tribe of, to the west of Jerusalem, i. 158.

Symeon, the city of Azena given to, by Robert of Normandy, i. 88.

Symon, the tanner, Peter lodged in his house at Lydda, i. 158.

Synod, General, held at Nice, i. 79.

Syon, Mount, where Christ supped with his disciples, and the Virgin died, i. 162.

Syrus, a citizen at Jerusalem, who preserved the true Cross, i. 152.

Syward [Born], earl, retreats to the isle of Ely, i. 14, 15.

T.

Tabaria. *See* Tiberias.

Tabitha, restored to life by Peter, i. 158.

Taillebourg (*Tailleburc*), castle of, taken and razed by Richard I., i. 419; again subdued by him, ii. 50; Henry III. flies from, ii. 464.

Taleboth, William, holds Hereford castle against Stephen, i. 257.

Talevaz, William, [count of Ponthieu,] exiled by Henry I., i. 255; his castles acquired by Geoffrey of Anjou, *ib.*

Tancred, son of the marquis William [Odo], joins the crusade with Boamund, i. 71; his station at the siege of Nice, i. 81; at the battle of Gorgoni, i. 84; captures the towns of Mamistra and Alexandria Minor, i. 88; sallies from Antioch, and defeats the Turks, i. 112; leader of the eighth division against Corbaran, i. 120; slaughters the flying Turks, i. 126; marches onwards to Jerusalem, i. 132; discovers the treachery of the count of Toulouse at Gibel, i. 135; his post at the siege of Jerusalem, i. 139; slaughters the Turks in the Temple, i. 146; said to have taken away much treasure, *ib.*; receives Tiberias, Galilee, and Cayphas from king Godfrey, i. 157; conferred benefits on the church of Antioch, and enlarged the limits of the principality, i. 158; delivers up Tiberias and Caiphas to Baldwin I., *ib.*; assumes the government of Antioch during the absence of Boamund, i. 186; takes Apamea and Laodicea, i. 198; at the siege of Haran, i. 200; flies to Edessa, i. 200; takes the government of Edessa, in the place of count Baldwin, *ib.*; dies, i. 216; styled prince of Antioch and count of Edessa, *ib.*

Tancred, [of Lecce,] unjustly succeeded to the throne of Sicily, ii. 54.

Tankerville, William de, chamberlain of the king, captures Robert, count of Mellent, i. 233; joins the young king, i. 377.

Taphnis [Thanis], plain of, challenge to do battle in, from Frederic I. to Saladin, i. 448; capture of the castle of, ii. 238.

Tarent, nunnery of, founded by Richard Poore, bishop of Salisbury, ii. 397; committed to the charge of queen Alienor, *ib.*; Joanna, queen of Scotland, buried at, ii. 405.

Tarsus. *See* Tharsus.

Tartars, messengers come to Innocent IV. from, ii. 38; their mission supposed to refer to the baptism of their king, ii. 39; receive gifts from the pope, but express their dislike to his proposals, *ib.*; aid asked of France and England, against their incursions, by the Eastern princes, ii. 409; iii. 89, 277.

Tatinus, officer of the emperor Alexius, Nice given up to, i. 83; his fraudulent character, i. 93; withdraws from the siege of Antioch, *ib.*, 114; reports the state of the Christians to the emperor, i. 114.

Tavistock, [Wermund,] abbat of, degraded by archbishop Anselm, i. 191; reinstated, i. 192.

Tees (*Theise*), the territory between this river and Scotland, committed to custodians, ii. 172.

Templars, Knights, Order of, founded at Jerusalem, i. 222; iii. 182; seal of the Order, i. 223; grant to, of a mansion at Jerusalem, *ib.*; their profession, *ib.*; rule given to, at the council of Troyes, *ib.*; a white habit assigned to, by pope Honorius, and red crosses sewn on their mantles, *ib.*; great increase of, and large possessions, *ib.* 224; origin of the name, i. 224; refuse obedience to the patriarch of Jerusalem, *ib.*; slaughter of, by Saladin, i. 440; and again, at Marescallia, i. 442; march to the attack of Acre, i. 453; refuse to advance to Jerusalem with Richard I., ii. 31; by their counsel he returns home, ii. 38; some of the brethren with him, on his landing at Zara, ii. 40; money extorted from, by John, ii. 123; two of the brethren sent to John by Pandulph, ii. 134; summoned to the General Council at Rome, ii. 161; write to the Soldan, to betray Frederic II. into his hands, ii. 313; iii. 92, 259; induce the patriarch of Jerusalem to write a letter to defame the emperor, ii. 315; discord between them and the Hospitallers, ii. 368, 472; iii. 270; defeated by the Saracens, ii. 399; exert themselves to remedy this disaster, *ib.*; refuse to assist the French in the Holy Land, ii. 433; suffer great loss at Gaza, *ib.*; their standard, *ib.*; besiege the

Templars, Knights, Order of—*cont.*
house of the Hospitallers at Acre, ii. 472; banish the brethren of the Teutonic Order from their territory, *ib.*; their loss in the battle with the Chorasmians, ii. 484; slaughter of, [at Mansourah,] iii. 84, 90, 95, 317.

Temple, Masters of the :
—— [Roger de Moulins], killed in battle against Saladin, i. 440.
—— Theodoric, escapes from the battle at Marescallia, i. 442.
—— Peter de Montacute, accompanies the Crusaders to Damietta, ii. 227; his letter announcing the disasters in Egypt, ii. 247; comes to England with the king of Jerusalem, to ask aid for the Holy Land, ii. 259.
—— Henry de Sanford, sent by Henry III. to the count of Provence, to ask his daughter in marriage, ii. 386.
—— [Herman of Perigord], favourable news sent by him from the Holy Land, ii. 440; his fate not known, after the battle with the Chorasmians, ii. 484.
—— [William de Sounac], letters testimonial signed by, touching the blood of Christ, iii. 103 *n.*

Temple, Master of the, in Scotland, his testimony referred to, iii. 103 *n.*

Tenchebrai (*Tenerchebray*, *Tenherchebrai*), battle at, between Henry I. and duke Robert of Normandy, i. 204; date of the battle, i. 205; castle of, taken by Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 268.

Tenham, death of archbishop Hubert at, ii. 104. *See* Edenham.

Tent, of wonderful construction, captured from Corbaran, i. 127.

"Testamenta xii. Patriarcharum," translated from the Greek, by Robert, bishop of Lincoln, ii. 467; iii. 286.

Teutonic Order of St. Mary, two of the brethren sent by Frederic II., to ask the king's sister in marriage, ii. 378; expelled by the Templars from their territory, ii. 472; their loss in the battle with the Chorasmians, ii. 484; the fate of the Preceptor not known, *ib.*; slaughter of, by the Saracens, [at Mansourah,] iii. 84, 90, 95, 317.

Teutonic Order, Masters of :
—— [Herman de Salza], accompanies the Crusaders to Damietta, ii. 227; one of the chiefs of the army at Acre, when Frederic II. landed, ii. 304.

Tewksbury (*Theokesberi*), John comes to, iii. 89; keeps Christmas at, iii. 103.

Thabor, Mount, where Jesus Christ was transfigured, i. 162.

Thadæus, the apostle, preached at Edessa, and buried there, i. 272.

Thadæus of Sessa, special councillor of the emperor Frederic II., killed by the Parmese, iii. 34, 45, 56, 301; defended the emperor at the council of Lyons, iii. 45.

Thalamania, [in Syria,] castle of, taken by Raimund Pilet, i. 130.

Thames, the river, dried up and passable, i. 219; iii. 181; frozen over, and crossed by waggons, i. 287; iii. 191; overflows its banks, ii. 395, 467.

Thaney (*de Thaneio*), Peter de, appointed assessor of the tax in Hertfordshire, ii. 349.

Tharsus, a city of Cilicia, the birthplace of the apostle Paul, i. 88; subject to Baldwin, brother of duke Godfrey, *ib.*; the remains of the Christian army come to, i. 193.

Thecua, the city of the prophets Habakkuk and Amos, i. 159.

Theodoric, a German noble, [Landgrave of Alsace ?] his hostile incursion into Flanders, i. 242; defeated by count William, *ib.*

Theodinus, cardinal legate, sent to absolve Henry II. in Normandy, i. 372; persuades the king to grant free elections to vacant churches, i. 374.

Theofilus, gave his name to Antioch, i. 91.

Thetford, bishops of :
—— William, chaplain of William I., appointed, i. 32.
—— Herbert Losinga, abbat of Ramsey, purchases the see, i. 47; goes to Rome,

Thetford, bishops of:—*cont.*
and resigns his pastoral staff, which is returned to him, *ib.*; transfers the see to Norwich, *ib.*; iii. 175. *See* Norwich, bishops of.

Thideus, his friendship with Polinices, i. 297.

Thirsk (*Tresc*), castle of, besieged by Henry II., i. 389; razed to the ground, i. 394.

Tholomaida, or Tholomais. *See* Acre.

Thomas, the apostle, buried at Edessa, i. 272.

Thomas [Becket], biographical notice of, i. 317; born in London, *ib.*, 358; named after the apostle on whose day he was born, *ib.*, 365; enters the service of archbishop Theobald, i. 317; collated to the church of Brantfield by the abbat of St. Alban's, i. 303, 317; iii. 193; made archdeacon of Canterbury, *ib.*; was provost of Beverley, i. 303; made chancellor, by aid of the archbishop, *ib.*, 318; his zeal in repressing the plunderers of the church, i. 318; goes to Paris in great pomp, to demand the princess Margaret in marriage, i. 309; iii. 194; opposes the marriage of the abbess of Romsey to the count of Boulogne, i. 314; iii. 194; the count and king become his enemies, i. 315; was the first to swear fealty to prince Henry, *ib.*; appointed governor of the prince, and calls him his adopted son, i. 316; elected archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.* *See* Canterbury.

Thomas, monk of St. Alban's, afterwards prior of Wimundham, ii. 237; restrains the earl of Arundel from doing violence to the legate Pelagius, ii. 237; brought the body of the earl to Wimundham, ii. 249; iii. 246.

Thoni, Ralph de, dies on his way to the Holy Land, ii. 427; iii. 280.

Thorney, [David,] abbat of, his death, iii. 340.

Thoros, prince of Armenia, taken prisoner by Noradin, i. 337.

Thouars (*Toarz*), castle of, did not submit to Philip, ii. 102.

Thrace, traversed by the Crusaders under Louis VII., i. 179.

Throndheim (*Thurndene*), the island near, subject to the monastery of Holm, iii. 40 *n.*

Thuenge, Robert de, knight, assumes the pseudonym of William Wither, ii. 338; leader of the band of rioters who pillaged the Italian clergy, *ib.*

Thunderstorms and tempests, unusual and dangerous, i. 219, 221, 252, 371; ii. 12, 91, 230, 252, 362, 467; iii. 20, 76, 88, 96, 98, 116, 182, 299, 319, 320, 337.

Thuringia, Louis IV., Landgrave of, assumes the cross, ii. 233; dies at Damietta [Otranto?], *ib.*

Thuringia (*Duringia*, *Duringe*), Henry Raspe, Landgrave of, elected king of Germany, ii. 475; iii. 92, 287; a relative of St. Elizabeth, iii. 287; the nobles of Germany pay him homage, *ib.*; instigated by the pope to acquire the crown, ii. 487; iii. 287, 316; aided with money by the pope, iii. 7, 299; favoured by the prelates, *ib.*, 287, 290; opposed by Conrad, *ib.*; his death, iii. 20 *n.*, 31, 100, 299; his shields of arms, iii. 20.

Thurkebi, Roger de, goes abroad, iii. 69.

Thurnay, Simon de, a celebrated theologian [of Paris], miraculously struck dumb, ii. 90; afterwards taught to read by his son, *ib.*

Thurnam, Turnham, Robert de, gives up the treasure of Richard I. to John, with the castles in his charge, ii. 78; employed to carry out the tax on the clergy, ii. 123; dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 125, 510; iii. 226.

Thurnham, Turnam, Stephen de, seneschal of Anjou, sets fire to the suburb of Le Mans, i. 460; imprisoned by Richard I., ii. 3.

Thyne, river, the county pleas held near, [at Gateshead,] i. 22.

Thynemouth (*Thinemue*), the bones of St. Oswin found at, iii. 167, 169; the brother of Robert, earl of Northumberland, captured in the castle of, i. 48; the earl himself captured at, *ib.*

Thynemouth (*Thinemua*, *Thinemue*, *Thynemue*), church of St. Oswin and St. Mary at, founded by Robert de Moubray, and monks from St. Alban's placed there, i. 11 *n.*, 41 ; given to the church of St. Alban's by him, i. 41 ; visitation of, by abbat Paul, i. 45 ; the reliques of St. Oswin translated to the new church there, i. 214 ; iii. 181 ; agreement that the bishop of Durham should visit the church without procurations, iii. 22, 299.

Tiberias, or Tabaria, city of, on the lake of Gennesareth, granted to Tancred by duke Godfrey, i. 157 ; the bishop of, suffragan to the archbishop of Nazareth, i. 161 ; given up to Baldwin I., i. 186 ; granted to Hugh de St. Omer, i. 198 ; besieged by Saladin, [*called incorrectly* Calvaria?] i. 440 ; march of the Christian army to its aid, *ib.* ; captured by Saladin, i. 443.

Tichfield [*named incorrectly* Tikeford], an abbey of the Premonstratensian Order, founded by Peter, bishop of Winchester, ii. 410.

[Tiepolo, Pietro,] podestà of Milan, captured by Frederic II., and hung, ii. 401 ; iii. 275.

Tillières (*Regulariensis* incorrectly for *Tegulariensis?*), part of the town burnt by Louis VII., i. 290.

Tin, discovered by a Cornishman in Germany, ii. 453 ; the price lowered in consequence, *ib.*

Tinghurste, vill and church of, granted by the church of St. Alban to the see of Lincoln, i. 319.

Tirell, Walter, a Norman, kills William II. in the New Forest, i. 169 ; iii. 178.

Titus, son of Vespasian, besieges and destroys Jerusalem, i. 160.

Tobias, sent his son to Rages for money owed him, i. 89.

Tocce, Iter de, joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230.

Toledo (*Tholetum*), the capital city of Spain, i. 303.

Toledo, Sanchez (*Synchius*), archbishop elect of, brother of the king of Castille, comes to London, iii. 348 ; received honourably, by order of Henry III., *ib.*

Toleto, John de. *See* John.

Tortosa, city of, arrival of the Crusaders at, i. 135 ; siege and capture of, i. 194.

Tortosa, [Peter,] bishop of, attended the Lateran Council, for the patriarch of Antioch, ii. 168 ; the bishop of, an Englishman, revisits England, to seek his parents at Reading, iii. 50, 308.

Tosti, brother of duke Harold, has a grant of the dukedom of Northumbria, iii. 167 ; joins Harold, in devastating Wales, iii. 168 ; goes to Rome, *ib.*

Toul, Reginald or Reinard, count of, joins the crusade, under duke Godfrey, i. 68 ; a leader in the battle against Corbaran, i. 120.

Toulouse, not assaulted by Henry II. on account of Philip being there, i. 310 ; siege of, by prince Louis, ii. 239 ; iii. 244 ; successful sally of the citizens, *ib.*

Toulouse, Reimund, [IV., de St. Gilles,] count of, assumes the cross, i. 56 ; iii. 176 ; names of his chief followers, i. 72 ; progress of his forces to Constantinople, *ib.* ; refuses to take the oath of fealty to the Greek emperor, i. 73 ; reconciled to the emperor, and takes the oath, *ib.* ; joins the rest of the Crusaders, i. 74 ; assists in the siege of Nice, i. 77 ; engages the troops of Soliman, i. 80 ; his post at the siege, i. 81 ; helps to take a city, given to Peter de Alpibus, i. 88 ; his station at the siege of Antioch, i. 91 ; escorts some pilgrims to the camp, i. 100 ; refuses consent to the proposal of Boamund, in reference to Antioch, i. 106 ; left in charge of the city, on account of sickness, i. 121 ; takes Albara, i. 130 ; quarrels with Boamund, i. 132 ; marches onwards to Jerusalem, *ib.* ; is bribed by the Turkish governor at Gibel, i. 135 ; his treachery disclosed by Tancred, *ib.* ; conciliates the princes

Toulouse, Reimund, [IV., de St. Gilles,] count of—*cont.*
by gifts, *ib.*; his post at the siege of Jerusalem, i. 139; sends a force to escort the Genoese pilgrims to Jerusalem, i. 141; distinguishes himself at the assault, i. 143; scales the walls, i. 146; retires to Constantinople, i. 193; appointed leader of the Crusaders newly arrived there, *ib.*

Toulouse, Bertrand, count of, son of the preceding, arrives at Tripoli, i. 212; captures Byblus, *ib.*; assists in taking Tripoli, which is given to him by Baldwin I., *ib.*

Toulouse and St. Gilles, [Raymond V.,] count of, married Constance, sister of Louis VII., i. 310; his territories invaded by earl Richard, i. 447; conspires against Richard, on his return from the Holy Land, ii. 39.

Toulouse, [Raymond VII.,] count of, a crusade preached against him by the nobles legate, ii. 285; excommunicated, ii. 287; defeats the forces sent against him by Louis VIII., ii. 302; leader of the papal army, ii. 373.

Touraine (*Turoina*), the young king Henry dies at Château Martel in, i. 425; the nobles of, adhere to Arthur of Britanny, ii. 78; Arthur does homage to Philip II. for, ii. 82; demanded from John by Philip, *ib.*, 92; submits to Philip, ii. 102.

Tournaments, frequented by the young king Henry in France, i. 409; decree respecting, in the Lateran Council, i. 413; prohibited by Henry III., ii. 503; held at Rochester, iii. 116, 321.

Tours, council held at, by Alexander III., in the church of St. Maurice, i. 321; iii. 195; Henry I. takes refuge at, i. 460; captured by Philip II. and earl Richard, i. 463; iii. 208; held in pledge by them, *ib.*; Arthur given up here to Philip, ii. 79; William, bishop of Winchester, dies at, iii. 86, 315.

Tours, [Bartholomew II.,] archbishop of, Richard takes the cross from, i. 445; assisted at the burial service of Henry II., i. 465; consecrates Geoffrey, archbishop of York, ii. 22.

Tracy, William de, one of the murderers of archbishop Thomas, i. 363, 364.

Trane, Geoffrey de, cardinal, his death, ii. 509; iii. 296.

Trapani (*Trapes*), port of, in Sicily, Richard of Cornwall lands at, ii. 452, iii. 283.

Trena, Gilbert de, killed by the Turks, i. 141.

Treves, archbishops of:
—— William [Arnold or Arnulph?], seeks counsel of Henry II., i. 397.
—— [Formalis or Folmar], assisted at the burial service over Henry II., i. 465; at the coronation of Richard I., ii. 6.

Triballi, [a people of Thrace,] custom of, to kill their parents, when old or sick, ii. 41 *n.*

Trie, conference of Philip II. and Henry II., between Gisors and, i. 446; of Philip and Richard I. between Chaumont and, ii. 4.

Trifels (*Trivallis*), castle of, Richard I. imprisoned there by the emperor, ii. 41.

Triphaleg [Trialeth?], castle of, [in Syria,] thrown down by an earthquake, i. 218.

Tripoli, city of, surrendered to the Crusaders, i. 136; added by Baldwin I. to his kingdom, i. 224; remained in the hands of the Christians, i. 451.

Tripoli, Reimund I., count of, murdered by the "Assassins," i. 288.

Tripoli, Reimund II., count of, [son of the preceding,] taken prisoner by Noradin, i. 337; appointed guardian of Jerusalem, i. 429; Baldwin V. committed to his charge, i. 431; commander of the forces to oppose Saladin, i. 440; throws down the king's standard in treachery, i. 441; escapes unhurt, i. 442; dies insane, i. 453.

Trou (*Troia*), castle of, taken by Philip II., i. 461; held in pledge by Philip and earl Richard, i. 463.

Troyes, council held at, i. 223.

Trubleville, Henry de, knight, accompanies Hubert de Burgh to engage the French fleet, ii. 218; sent with troops to aid Frederic II. in Italy, ii. 408; dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 427, 510; his shield of arms, ii. 427.

Trubleville, Ralph de, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 510.

Tunbridge (*Thunebrugge*), castle of, Roger earl of Chester refuses to do homage for, to archbishop Thomas, i. 322; taken by Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 170; claim made to, by archbishop Richard, ii. 330.

Turbera, Peter de, chief accuser of Ranulph le Breton, ii. 423; afterwards hung, and confessed his false accusation, *ib.*

Turcomans, subject to Saladin, i. 450.

Turin, city of, given by Frederic II. to Thomas of Savoy, iii. 303.

Tusculum, bishop of. *See* Nicholas.

Tutbury (*Stutebire*, *Stutesbire*), castle of, besieged by Henry II., i. 389; razed to the ground, i. 394.

Tyne, Tynemouth. *See* Thyne, Thynemouth.

Tyre, metropolis of Syria, arrival of the Crusaders at, i. 136; the archbishop of, subject to the patriarch of Jerusalem, i. 161; its suffragan bishops, *ib.*; besieged and captured, i. 234; iii. 183; escapes being taken by Saladin, i. 444; iii. 207; remained in the hands of the Christians, i. 451; a ship captured by the Genoese brought to, i. 457; arrival of English prelates and nobles at, ii. 15; iii. 210; the duke of Burguudy dies at, ii. 34.

Tyre, archbishops of:

—— William, his work used for the account of the capture of Antioch and Jerusalem, i. 163; a copy of his work brought from the Holy Land by the bishop of Winchester, i. 163 *n.*; his other work, on the Marvels of the East, and Law of Mohammed, referred to, i. 163; appointed legate, in aid of the crusade, i. 446; Henry II. receives the cross from, *ib.*

Tyre, archbishops of—*cont.*

—— [Peter de Sargines], at the battle with the Chorasmians, and his fate not known, ii. 484.

U.

Umfraville (*Unframville*), Gilbert de, a northern baron, his death, ii. 509; the wardship of his heir given to the earl of Leicester, *ib.*

Undele. *See* Oundle.

Urban II., pope, (monk of Cluny, and bishop of Ostia,) elected, i. 37; his moderation towards William II., i. 50; receives archbishop Anselm in the Lateran, i. 52; iii. 175; refutes the errors of the Greeks in the council of Bari, *ib.*; presides at a council at Rome, *ib.*; holds a council at Clermont, i. 54; renews the decrees of pope Hildebrand, i. 56; excommunicates Philip I., *ib.*; his discourse advocating a crusade, *ib.*; promises his aid to Peter the Hermit, i. 59; dies, i. 183.

Urban III., pope, succeeds, i. 435; grants license to archbishop Baldwin to build a church at Akinton, i. 437; iii. 207; afterwards forbids the church to be erected, i. 444; dies, i. 445; iii. 207.

Usurers, decree concerning, in the Lateran Council, i. 412; chiefly abounded in Flanders, ii. 415. *See* Caorsins.

Usury, the preacher Fulk endeavours to extirpate it, in France and Flanders, ii. 62; came from Italy, *ib.*; exercised by laymen, although forbidden in the Scriptures, iii. 141 *n.*, 272, 316.

V.

Valence, William, bishop elect of, uncle of the queen, complaints of the favour shown to by Henry III., ii. 388; iii.

Valence, William, bishop elect of—*cont.* 273; leaves England, ii. 395; his election to the see of Winchester favoured by Henry, ii. 410; iii. 277; made bishop of Liege, but retains the revenue of Valence, ii. 421; iii. 277; his influence and power, *ib.*; obtained leave from the pope to hold the bishopric of Winchester also, ii. 427; his death, by poison, at Viterbo, *ib.*; iii. 279; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Valence, William de, uterine brother of Henry III., comes to England, iii. 24, 300; marries Joanna de Muntcheinsil, iii. 26, 347; has a grant of the castle and honor of Hertford, *ib.*, 30; iii. 301; knighted by Henry III., iii., 29; his shield of arms, *ib.*; other lands and treasure given to him, iii. 30; obtains the custody of the lands of Roger Fitz-John de Bailloil, iii. 67, 311; assumes the cross, iii. 71; goes abroad with the earl of Gloucester, iii. 325; worsted in a tournament, *ib.*; Henry gives him the wardship of the heir of Warin de Muntcheinsil, iii. 347.

Valenia [*incorrectly named* Valentia], city of, [in Syria,] passed by the Crusaders, i. 135.

Valentia, in Spain, capture of, by the king of Castille, ii. 428; iii. 280, 317.

Valle, Guy de, deserts Henry II. and adheres to earl Richard, i. 464.

Valle-Griseo, Murgalus de, a Turkish archer, slain by Richard de Chaumont, i. 134.

Vataces, [John Ducas,] (*Battacius*, *Vastagius*), a Greek prince, and schismatic, marries a natural daughter of Frederic II., ii. 487; iii. 25 *n.*; caused the downfall of the emperor Baldwin II., iii. 24, 39; intention of the pope to employ the Tartars against him, iii. 39; by his schism, the Greek church was separated from the Latin, iii. 89.

Vaucouleur (*Vauculur*), general conference of princes summoned at, ii. 397; iii. 274.

Vaudreuil (*Vallis de Ruil*, *Vallis Ruil*), castle of, meeting of Philip II. and Henry II. at, i. 434; the county of Aumarle subdued as far as, ii. 45; surrendered to Philip, ii. 98.

Vendolio, Clarebald de, takes the cross, i. 66; released from prison at Constantinople, i. 69.

Vendôme (*Vindecinum*), Philip II. encamps near, ii. 50.

Venetians, assist Guy, king of Jerusalem, in attack on Acre, i. 453; supply Louis IX. with provisions at Cyprus, iii. 49, 307.

Venice, [Jacopo,] doge of, his son captured by Frederic II., and hung, ii. 401.

Vercelli (*Vercellæ*), council held at, against the errors of Berengarius, i. 33; the city abandons the emperor's cause, ii. 474.

Vere, Alberic, earl de, sent by Stephen to the council at Winchester, to defend his conduct, i. 263; the queen dies at his castle of Hengham, i. 291; killed at London, i. 268; iii. 188.

Vere (*Vair*), Robert de, killed in Egypt, iii. 313.

Verneuil (*Vernolium*), the village of, burnt by Louis VII., i. 291; given up by Louis to duke Henry, i. 299; besieged by Louis and the young king, i. 378; the country from, ravaged by Henry II., i. 447; the siege of, raised by Philip, ii. 48.

Vernon, the castle of, fortified by Henry I., i. 232; iii. 183; Philip II. defeated near, by Richard, ii. 71; iii. 217; conference of Philip and John at, ii. 86.

Verona, [Adelard,] bishop of, pronounces sentence of excommunication against the duke of Austria, ii. 53.

Verrines, monastery of, John Mansel wounded at the siege of, ii. 469.

Vesci, Vescy, Eustace de, sent to the king of Scots, to secure his fidelity to John, ii. 78; flies to France, ii. 128; outlawed, and his possessions confiscated, ii. 131; married a sister of Alexander II. of Scotland, ii. 187; iii. 236; killed before Castle Bernard, *ib.*; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Vesci (*Wescy*), William de, a northern baron, his death, iii. 147, 380 ; shield of arms, *ib.* ; the custody of his lands given to a foreigner, *ib.*

Veverei, Waverei [Wavre], castle of, fortified by Henry I., i. 232.

Vexin (*Vegesinum*), the territory of, given up to Louis VII. by Geoffrey of Anjou, i. 290 ; the Norman, conquered by Philip II., ii. 45 ; boundaries of, as claimed by Philip from John, ii. 82.

Vezelay (*Viceliacum*), archbishop Thomas comes to, i. 338.

Victor II., pope, iii. 167.

Victor III., pope, (Desiderius, abbat of Monte Casino,) elected, i. 28, 32 ; iii. 173 ; his death, *ib.*

[Victor IV.,] Octavian, antipope, acknowledged by the emperor Frederic I., i. 310.

Victoria, a city so called, built by Frederic II. outside the walls of Parma, iii. 28, 301 ; destroyed by the Parmese, iii. 34, 301, 306 ; the bishop of Arezzo hung at, iii. 45.

Vienne, Wido, bishop of. *See* Calixtus II., pope.

Vincentius, St., gold shrine made for, by the king of Portugal, i. 428.

Vinea, or Vineis, Peter de, special councillor of Frederic II., attempts to poison the emperor, iii. 48, 306 ; is blinded and sent to Pisa, to be put to death, iii. 56, 306 ; kills himself, *ib.*

Vinesauf, Geoffrey de, his "Nova Poetria" quoted, ii. 215 *n.*, 276 ; iii. 83, 244.

Vipont (*de Veteri Ponte*), Robert de, appointed joint custodian of Yorkshire, ii. 172 ; iii. 233 ; at the siege of Mountsorel castle, ii. 206 ; with the army at Newark, ii. 209 ; abets the disturbers of the king's peace, ii. 226 ; joins the confederates against the king and justiciary, ii. 261 ; iii. 248.

Visitations, episcopal, decree concerning, in the Lateran Council, i. 413 ; limited by Innocent IV., in regard to the amount of procurations, iii. 134.

Vitalis, the Venetian, apologue of, narrated by Richard I. to the abbat of St. Alban's, ii. 55 *n.*

Viterbo, pope Gregory IX. driven to, ii. 301 ; the Romans march to the attack of, ii. 373 ; the bishop elect of Valence dies at, ii. 427.

Viterbo, Reiner of, cardinal, his letter to the pope, on the death of the bishop of Arezzo, iii. 45 *n.*

Vitri, Andrew de, refuses to do homage to Henry III., ii. 323 ; iii. 262.

Vivianus, legate *a latere*, sent to France, to effect a reconciliation between Henry II. and archbishop Thomas, i. 343, 349 ; iii. 198.

Volsa, abbey of, the revenue bestowed by Innocent IV. on the archbishop of Cologne, iii. 53 ; the abbat bound to furnish 3,000 soldiers to the emperor, *ib.*

Vouvent, castle of, in Poitou, taken by Louis IX., ii. 463.

W.

Wabridge (*Wauberge*, *Walberge*), forest of, [co. Hunt.,] many persons seized there by Faukes [de Breaute], ii. 204 ; iii. 239.

Wac, Baldwin, dies, ii. 468.

Wac, Hugh, his death, ii. 459 ; iii. 284.

Waldemar II., [*incorrectly called Æthelmar*,] king of Denmark, prepares to invade England, ii. 447 ; iii. 283 ; a large part of Friesland and Russia conquered by him, *ib.* ; iii. 92 ; established seven bishoprics, *ib.* ; dies, *ib.* ; iii. 283 ; left his kingdom to his eldest son, [Waldemar,] who died shortly after, *ib.* ; contest for the throne between his other two sons, *ib.* ; iii. 117, 283.

Waldene, castle of, given up to Stephen by William de Mandeville, i. 271.

Walderan [de Puisay], relative of Jocelin, count of Edessa, taken prisoner by Balac, i. 231 ; confined in the castle of Kart-Birt, i. 233.

Waleran, [*named incorrectly* Ranulphus,] Theutonicus [le Theis?], the castle of Berkhampstead committed to his custody, ii. 172; a manor given him by John, belonging to the earldom of Cornwall, ii. 296.

Wales, subdued by William I., i. 25; the body of Walwain discovered in, i. 33; iii. 173; invaded by William, II. and devastated, i. 48; subdued by Henry I., i. 217; and by Henry II., i. 307; Henry II. lands in, i. 371; John ravages the confines of, ii. 186; atmospheric phenomena seen in the parts near to, ii. 391; conquered by Henry III., ii. 454; iii. 284; offered to be held of the pope by prince David, ii. 483 *n.*; expedition of Henry against, ii. 504, 507; iii. 296; subjected to the English laws and rule, iii. 91, 181, 317, 321; granted to prince Edward, iii. 336. *See* Welsh.

Walkelin [Maminot], surrenders Dover castle to the queen of Stephen, i. 258.

Wallingford, castle of, Robert earl of Gloucester comes to, i. 263; William Martel imprisoned at, i. 268; iii. 188; the empress Matilda takes refuge in, i. 269; the siege of, raised, i. 293; treaty between Stephen and duke Henry made at, i. 296; garrisoned by John, ii. 181; death of the earl of Chester at, ii. 349; iii. 267; Henry III. there, as a guest of earl Richard of Cornwall, ii. 478; earl Richard keeps Christmas at, iii. 43.

Walo, papal legate, sent to France, to arrest the progress of prince Louis ii. 175; iii. 234; comes to John at Gloucester, ii. 180; iii. 235; excommunicates Louis and his abettors, *ib.*, 205; exacts procurations all over England, ii. 183; iii. 235; sequesters the livings of the clergy who favoured Louis, *ib.*; present at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195; with Henry at Bristol, ii. 201; by his advice the king's castellans are summoned to Newark, ii. 208; joins the royalists there, ii. 209; again excommunicates by name Louis and his adherents, *ib.*; permits the royalists to take the spoils at Lincoln, ii. 210; at Dover, on the landing of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 221 *n.*; Louis signifies to him his wish to treat, ii. 222; present at the meeting at Staines, for peace, *ib.*; his oppression of the English clergy, ii. 225; iii. 243; exacts money from the bishop of Lincoln, *ib.*; by his influence Richard de Marisco made bishop of Durham, ii. 231; leaves England, with full money bags, *ib.*; iii. 244.

Walter, Friar Preacher, of English birth, celebrates divine service in the suburban churches of Jerusalem, ii. 312.

Waltham, abbey of, the secular canons removed, and regulars introduced, i. 398; Ralph, canon of Cirencester, made prior, *ib.*; Henry II. comes to, i. 424; the church dedicated by the bishop of Norwich, i. 466; iii. 286; burial of Robert Passelewe at, iii. 120; Henry III. confirms the privileges of, iii. 135, 326; grant of markets to, *ib.*

Waltham, abbats of:
—— Richard, his death, iii. 40, 305.
—— [Simon de Saham], supplies provisions to the Friars Preachers, iii. 80, 314; refuses to be surety for the king, iii. 133.

Waltheof, Weltheof, earl, [of Huntingdon and Northampton,] flies from the tyranny of William I., i. 9; joins the Danish forces, i. 12; defeated by William, *ib.*; slays many Normans, *ib.*; iii. 170; conspires against William, and taken prisoner, i. 19; beheaded at Winchester, i. 20; his body afterwards buried at Croyland, *ib.*

Walton (*Waletonia*, *Waletuna*), castle of, besieged by the earl of Leicester, i. 380; razed to the ground, i. 394.

Walwain, nephew of king Arthur, his body found in Wales, i. 33; iii. 173; reigned in Galloway, *ib.*

Wardon (*Waredona*), abbey of, oppressed by William de Beauchamp, iii. 129.

Wardon, Adam, abbat of, elected bishop of Connor, ii. 446 ; iii. 286.

Ware, the barons pass through, on their way to London, ii. 156.

Wareham (*Warram*), the castle of, held against Stephen by Robert de Lincoln, i. 258 ; John lands near, ii. 103 ; Peter the Wise and his son hung at, ii. 136.

Warewast, William de, clerk, and proctor of Henry II., searches the person of archbishop Anselm, i. 52 ; pleads the king's cause before the pope, as to investitures, i. 192 ; forbids Anselm to return to England, i. 196.

Warkworth (*Werewurthe*), castle of, the custody granted to William de Valence, iii. 67.

Warneville, Ralph de, sacrist of Rouen, and treasurer of York, made chancellor, i. 374 ; iii. 200.

Warren (*Warannia*), William III., earl of, with Stephen at the battle of Lincoln, i. 265.

Warren, Hamelin, earl of, son of Henry II., [*a mistake for* Geoffrey of Anjou,] ii. 437.

Warren, William V., earl of, [son of Hamelin,] deserts John, and joins prince Louis, ii. 180 ; renews his allegiance to Henry III., ii. 206 ; iii. 239 ; at Dover, on the landing of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 221 *n.* ; iii. 242 ; conducts Faukes [de Breaute] to the sea-coast, ii. 271 ; sides with Richard of Cornwall against the king, ii. 296 ; one of the sureties for Hubert de Burgh, ii. 351 ; added to the king's council, ii. 394 ; his death, ii. 437 ; iii. 281 ; his shield of arms, *ib.*

Warren, John, earl of, [son of the preceding,] marries Alice of Poitou, uterine sister of Henry III., iii. 25, 301.

Warren, right of, granted by Henry III. to the Cistercians and others, iii. 129.

Warwick, Gundreda, countess of, [widow of earl Roger,] expels the soldiers of Stephen from Warwick castle, and delivers it to duke Henry, i. 293.

Warwick, Henry, [*incorrectly named* William,] earl of, takes the part of Richard of Cornwall against the king, ii. 296.

Warwick, [Thomas de Newburgh, son of the preceding,] earl of, dies *s. p. m.*, ii. 468, 520 ; his shield of arms, ii. 468.

Warwick, John de Pleysiz, earl of, present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137 ; seized and imprisoned at Pons, in Poitou, iii. 339.

Wascoil, Gilbert de, surrenders Gisors to Philip II., ii. 45.

Waverley, abbey, Ord. Cisterc., death of the earl of Arundel at, i. 398 ; Eustace of Lynn escapes to, iii. 128.

Wearmouth, church of, bestowed on Athelmar, brother of Henry III., iii. 67.

Weights. *See* Measures.

Wells, church of, the vaulted roof thrown down by an earthquake, iii. 42.

Wells, bishops of:

—— Deduc, his death, iii. 168.

—— Gisa, succeeds, iii. 168 ; consecrated at Rome, *ib.*

—— John, transfers the see to Bath, i. 44.

Wells, Hugh de Welles, archdeacon of. *See* Lincoln, bishops of.

Wellestrem [Welland], river or estuary of, John loses his baggage and treasure in, ii. 190.

Welsh, submit to Edward the Confessor, and pay tribute, iii. 169 ; expel king Griffin, *ib.* ; put Griffin to death, *ib.* ; another king set over them by Harold, who does fealty to Edward, *ib.* ; joined the English earls against William I., i. 19 ; the nobles present at the nuptials of earl Ralph, put to death, i. 20 ; punished by William II., for killing the Normans in Montgomery castle, i. 48 ; laws imposed on them by Henry I., i. 217 ; submit to Henry, i. 231 ; iii. 182 ; pay homage to Henry II., at Snowdon, i. 308 ; many put to death by William de Brause, for refusing to give up the practice of carrying a knife or bow, i. 393 ; slaughter of, in the flight from Le

Welsh—*cont.*
Mans, i. 460 ; defeat of, under Wenunwen, ii. 70 ; iii. 217 ; the nobles do homage to John at Woodstock, ii. 119 ; break the truce, and burn many towns, ii. 127 ; John hangs the hostages previously received, ii. 128 ; their inroads repressed by the Lords Marchers, ii. 131 ; defeated by the earl Mareschal, ii. 255 ; iii. 246 ; devastate the land of William de Brause, ii. 331 ; are defeated by the garrison of Montgomery, *ib.* ; kill many of the royalists by stratagem, ii. 332 ; destroy Castle-Maud, *ib.* ; their annual inroads a scandal to the crown, ii. 341 ; iii. 264 ; assist in defeating the king's forces at Grosmond, ii. 362 ; dissension among the nobles, ii. 453 ; rebel, and attack the Lords Marchers, ii. 487 ; iii. 290 ; indulge in their usual rapine and spoil, ii. 495 ; slaughter of, near Montgomery, ii. 499 ; and by the Irish forces, ii. 507 ; iii. 296 ; some of the nobles beg for peace, iii. 8. *See* Wales.

Wendoure, *a mistake for* Wendene, ii. 377 *n.* *See* Rochester, bishops of.

Wendovre, Richard de, canon of St. Paul's, and an excellent physician, his death, iii. 120 ; provides nine priests to say masses for his soul, *ib.* ; bequeathed an ivory cross to St. Alban's, received by him from pope Gregory IX., *ib.*

Wengham, Winghame, the barns at plundered, belonging to a Roman priest, ii. 339.

Wengham, Henry de, made keeper of the king's seal, iii. 343.

Wengrave, church of, papal letters to the abbat of St. Alban's, directing an exchange for, iii. 108.

Wenlock (*Weneloc*), priory of, ruled by Joibert, a Norman, ii. 67.

Wenunwen, king of Wales, besieges Castle-Maud, ii. 70 ; defeated by the forces of the justiciary, *ib.*, 71.

[Weseham, Roger de,] dean of Lincoln, goes to Rome, to defend his suit against bishop Robert, ii. 494. *See* Coventry, bishops of.

Westminster, William I. crowned at, i. 8 ; iii. 169 ; Domesday Book deposited in the treasury there, i. 27 ; prince Henry knighted at, i. 28 ; Henry I. crowned at, i. 177 ; council held at, in the king's palace, i. 207 ; Henry II. crowned at, i. 300 ; coronation of the young king Henry at, i. 352 ; ceremonial of the coronation of Richard I. at, ii. 6–8 ; John and queen Isabel crowned at, ii. 81, 88 ; iii. 220 ; the exchequer removed from, ii. 118 ; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 132 ; Henry III. crowned at, ii. 240 ; Henry III. keeps Christmas at (1225), ii. 268 ; iii. 250 ; (1235), ii. 375 ; iii. 271 ; (1238), ii. 403 ; iii. 275 ; (1241), ii. 444 ; iii. 282 ; (1242), ii. 460 ; iii. 284 ; (1245), ii. 498 ; iii. 293 ; (1246), iii. 3, 297 ; (1249), iii. 43, 305 ; a solemn feast celebrated at, ii. 379 ; Henry and queen Alienor crowned at, ii. 386 ; birth of prince Edward at, ii. 422 ; marriage of earl Richard of Cornwall at, ii. 473 ; iii. 287 ; a market or fair established there, iii. 35 ; the citizens of London assembled at, by Henry, iii. 71.

Westminster, councils on ecclesiastical affairs held at (1107), i. 207 ; (1175), i. 392 ; iii. 302 ; (1190), ii. 15, 18 ; (1226), ii. 278, 284 ; (1229), ii. 315. *See* London.

Westminster, colloquies or parliaments held at (1221), ii. 244 ; (1225), ii. 271 ; (1231), ii. 329 ; (1232), ii. 339 ; (1234), ii. 365 ; (1244), ii. 490 ; iii. 291 ; (1253), iii. 136, 326. *See* London.

Westminster Hall, the tenants of the see of Canterbury and St. Alban's oppressed, on account of its construction, i. 97 ; its completion, iii. 177 ; William II. holds his court in, i. 165 ; his reply as to its intended size, *ib.* ; the foundations of, as proposed, still remained, *ib.* ; overflowed by the Thames, ii. 467 ; sentence of excommunication pronounced in, against transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137.

Westminster, abbey of St. Peter, dedicated, iii. 169 ; Ægelric, bishop of Durham, buried in, i. 17 ; endowed by William I.

Westminster, abbey of St. Peter—*cont.* with possessions taken from St. Alban's, i. 18; queen Edith buried there, i. 20; iii. 171; and Matilda, queen of Henry I., i. 222; iii. 182; bishops consecrated at, ii. 49, 68, 89, 100, 241, 248; foundation of the chapel of the Virgin in, by Henry III., ii. 242; iii. 245; the east end and tower rebuilt by Henry, ii. 506; iii. 94, 318; gifts and privileges granted to, by him, iii. 318; the chapter house built by him, *ib.*; Fulk de Castro-Novo buried in, iii. 20 *n.*, 299; some of the blood of Christ, and an impression of his foot on marble, given to, iii. 29, 60, 310; Richard de Wendene, bishop of Rochester, buried there, iii. 87, 315; privileges granted to, iii. 121, 335.

Westminster, abbats of:

—— Walter, death of, ii. 19.

—— Nicholas, accused of waste, and deposed by the legate, ii. 145.

—— [William de Humetz], his houses suffered injury in the tumult of Constantine Fitz-Olaf, ii. 251.

—— Richard de Berkinge, his death, iii. 14.

—— Richard de Crokesle, archdeacon of Westminster, elected, iii. 14; his quarrel with the convent, appeased by the king, iii. 61, 121, 310, 322; accused of dilapidation, and enriching his relations, iii. 310; dispute with the citizens of London, in consequence of new charters obtained by him, iii. 62, 80; also with the abbat of St. Alban's, concerning Aldenham, *ib.*, 81 *n.*; supplies the Friars Preachers with provisions, iii. 314; relinquishes his suit against the Londoners, iii. 81.

Westwood (*Westuude*), near Rochester, the conventual church of, founded by Richard de Luci, i. 400.

Whales, thrown up by the sea, ii. 444; iii. 282; a prognostic of the dispute between the church and the empire, *ib.*

Whitchurch (*Album-Monasterium*), John arrives at, on his expedition to Wales, ii. 124.

Whitecastle (*Blancum-castrum*), in Wales, [co. Monm.,] given up to the king by Hubert de Burgh, ii. 426.

Wight, Isle of, taken away from Baldwin de Redvers by Stephen, i. 254; John retires to, ii. 160; iii. 232; birth of a manikin in, iii. 60.

Wigmore (*Wigemor*), castle of, fortified by Hugh de Mortimer against Henry II., i. 303; taken and destroyed, *ib.*

Wilfric of Heselberg, hermit, his death, i. 300; iii. 193; his legend referred to in ancient Annals, i. 301.

Wilfric [Spot], founded the abbey of Burton, iii. 159.

William I., surnamed Bastard, duke of Normandy, and king of England, duke Harold brought to him, *Prol.* i. 5; iii. 168; deceived by his promises, *ib.*; according to others, Harold was sent over to bring him to England, *ib.*; sends messengers to Harold, to remind him of his promises, *Prol.* i. 6; appeals to the king of France and others, to revenge the injury, *ib.*; his victory over Harold, i. 7; iii. 169; his shield of arms, *ib.*, 35; proceeds to London, and received joyfully, i. 7; iii. 169; crowned at Westminster by the archbishop of York, *ib.*; receives the homage of the nobles, i. 8; returns to Normandy with the English hostages, *ib.*; his tyranny over the English, in favour of his followers, *ib.*; founds the abbey of St. Martin at Battle, i. 9; iii. 169; builds Hastings castle, *ib.*; causes Battle abbey to be dedicated, and swears to observe the laws of St. Edward, iii. 169; besieges and takes Oxford [Exeter], i. 10; burns the city of York, *ib.*; lays waste the borders of Scotland, but is pacified by Malcolm, *ib.*; birth of his son Henry, i. 11; gives the earldom of Northumberland to Robert [Comyn], *ib.*; puts to death all concerned in his murder, *ib.*; defeats the Danes and English in the North, i. 12; iii. 170; despoils the monasteries, i. 13; iii. 170; imposes

William I., surnamed Bastard, duke of Normandy, and king of England—*cont.* military service on bishoprics and abbeys, *ib.*; his generosity to Eadgar Etheling, i. 14 ; on account of his tyranny, the English nobles take flight, *ib.* ; iii. 170; defeats them at Ely, i. 15; invades Scotland, and receives the homage of Malcolm, i. 16; iii. 171 ; subdues Maine, i. 18, 29; deprives St. Alban's of its possessions, to enrich Westminster, *ib.*; defeats the rebel earls, and takes Roger and Waltheof prisoners, i. 19; reduces Norwich, *ib.*; orders Waltheof to be beheaded, i. 20 ; iii. 171 ; goes to Britanny, and besieges Dol, *ib.*; forced to raise the siege by Philip I., *ib.* ; becomes friends with him, *ib.*; makes his daughter Cecily a nun at Fécamp, *ib.*; fights against his son Robert at Archenbrai [Gerberai?], i. 21 ; iii. 171 ; thrown from his horse, *ib.*; curses Robert, and takes away Normandy from him, *ib.*; oppresses the English grievously, i. 22; escapes a plot against his life, *ib.*; present at the council of Lillebonne, i. 26 ; subdues Wales, i. 25; death of his queen Matilda, *ib.* ; causes a territorial survey of England to be made, i. 27 ; imposes a tax of 6*s.* on each hide of land, *ib.* ; knights his son Henry, i. 28 ; takes homage and fealty from the English, *ib.*; crosses to Normandy, *ib.* ; his love of the chase, i. 29 ; a great builder of castles, *ib.* ; iii. 173 ; his general character, *ib.*, 30 ; specially favoured Normandy, *ib.*; subdued Britanny, Scotland, and Wales, *ib.*; security of property in England during his reign, *ib.* ; his declining health, i. 30 ; iii. 173 ; monasteries founded by, *ib.*, 34 *n.* ; his children, *ib.*, 31 ; disposition and piety, i. 31 ; bestows bishoprics on his chaplains, i. 32 ; derided by Philip I. of France, i. 33 ; ravages the French territory, i. 34 ; his illness increased by a rupture, *ib.*; iii. 173 ; receives the sacrament, and disposes of his possessions, *ib.* ; gives Normandy back to Robert, *ib.*, 177 ; iii. 174 ; leaves England to William Rufus, and desires him to treat the English better, *ib.*; founded the abbey of Selby, in atonement for having poisoned a relation, i. 34 *n.*; gives his treasure to his son Henry, i. 35, 205 ; enjoins him to found a monastery for his soul, *ib.*; his prophetical speech to him, i. 164, 206 ; owns his deception of the English nobles by false promises, i. 35 ; his death, and burial at Caen, *ib.* ; iii. 174.

William I., surnamed Bastard, duke of Normandy, and king of England—*cont.*

William II., surnamed Rufus, third son of William I., born in Normandy, i. 11 ; wounded at the battle of Archenbrai, i. 21 ; his claim to primogeniture, i. 30 *n.*; called *Rufus*, from the colour of his hair, and disposition, i. 31, 131 ; iii. 174 ; resembled his father in his love of war, *ib.*; England bequeathed to, i. 34; iii. 174; comes to England, neglecting his father's funeral, i. 35 ; was educated and knighted by archbishop Lanfranc, *ib* ; crowned by him, *ib.*; promises to observe the laws of king Edward, *ib.*; iii. 174 ; his shield of arms, i. 135 *n.*, 177 *n.*; many of the nobles are opposed to him, i. 36 ; iii. 174 ; by advice of Lanfranc, endeavours to conciliate them, *ib.*; deceives Roger de Montgomery, *ib.*; subdues those who resist him, *ib.*; his tyranny after Lanfranc's death, i. 38 ; iii. 174; retains most of the monasteries in his hands, *ib.* ; makes war in Normandy against duke Robert, i. 39; treaty of peace made between them, *ib.* ; iii. 174; Malcolm of Scotland does homage to, i. 40 ; is ill at Gloucester, and promises reform, i. 42 ; on his recovery, behaves worse than before, i. 43; rebuilds Carlisle, i. 44; goes to Normandy, and holds a conference with duke Robert, *ib.*; the arbitrators between them throw the blame on him, *ib.*; takes the castle of Bures, i. 45 ; summons forces to his aid, and extorts money from them, *ib.* ; pardons Robert, and returns to England, *ib.*;

William II., surnamed Rufus—*cont.*
fleeces the monasteries, to repay himself for gifts to Philip of France, *ib.*; holds the church of St. Alban's four years in his hands, and impoverishes it, i. 46; sends his brother Henry into Northumberland, against earl Robert, i. 47; follows him, and captures the earl's chief adherents at Newcastle, *ib.*; takes the earl's brother prisoner at Tynemouth, i. 48; besieges Bamborough castle, and builds a castle of wood before it, *ib.*; captures and imprisons earl Robert, *ib.*; invades and ravages Wales, *ib.*; iii. 175; fortifies the castles on the borders, *ib.*; extorts money from archbishop Anselm, i. 49; his anger at Anselm's request to go to the pope, i. 50; claims the same powers as the emperor, in regard to the pope, *ib.*; asserts that the pope should confine himself to spiritual affairs, *ib.*; is openly opposed by Anselm, *ib.*; his death signified in a vision to the archbishop, i. 53; receives a visit from duke Robert, i. 74; refuses to give him money, i. 75; lends him 10,000*l.*, and takes Normandy in pawn, *ib.*; surnamed by many the "Red Dragon," for his tyranny, i. 97, 167; impoverishes and oppresses the English churches, i. 97; iii. 176; grievous taxation of the people by, in Normandy and England, i. 131; iii. 176; extorts money, under the pretence of sending it to duke Robert, *ib.*; seizes the see of Winchester, i. 132; returns from Normandy, and holds his court in Westminster Hall, i. 165; his intentions as to its dimensions, *ib.*; news brought to him, when at dinner, of the siege of Le Mans, *ib.*; causes the wall of the palace to be broken through, and sets off at once to the coast, i. 166; embarks in defiance of a storm, and lands in safety, *ib.*, 174; advances to Le Mans, and defeats the count of Maine, i. 167; his generosity to some prisoners, *ib.*; returns to England, i. 168; gives the bishopric of Durham to Ranulph Flambard, *ib.*; iii. 177; keeps the feasts of Christmas, Easter and Pentecost at Gloucester, Winchester and London, i. 169; iii. 177; portents which preceded his death, *ib.*, 171; his reply to Robert Fitz-Hamon, on hearing a dream concerning himself, i. 170; his own dream, and advice thereon from a bishop, *ib*; is killed by Walter Tirrel in the New Forest, i. 169, 170; iii. 177; his body placed on a cart, which breaks down, and the corpse is left in the mud, i. 171; his soul carried to judgment by the devil, at the bidding of St. Alban, *ib.*; visions respecting him, seen by archbishop Anselm and his clerks, i. 172; his evil deeds, and bad character, i. 173, 175; iii. 178; held at his death several bishoprics and abbeys in his hands, *ib.*; buried in the cathedral of Winchester, *ib.*; various reports touching his death, *ib.*; his speech to the bishop of Rochester, i. 174; his good fortune, *ib.*; anecdote of his generosity, i. 175.

William, eldest son of Henry I. and Matilda, the nobles swear fealty to, i. 219; perishes by shipwreck, i. 230.

William, natural son of king Stephen, count of Mortain and Warren, gives up his castles to Henry II., i. 307; the king grants him the possessions held by Stephen, at the death of Henry I., *ib.*

William, eldest son of Henry II. by Alienor, his birth, i. 294; his name the usual one of the dukes of Aquitaine and counts of Anjou, *ib.*; fealty sworn to, in England, i. 302; dies young, i. 307; ii. 5; buried at Reading, i. 307.

William, son of Robert, duke of Normandy, holds a command on the French side, at the battle of Bremule, i. 227; Flanders given to him by Louis VI., i. 239; threatens to take England and Normandy from Henry I., *ib.*

William, third son of Geoffrey, count of Anjou, his birth, i. 255.

William [the Lion], king of Scotland, invades Northumberland, i. 379 ; iii. 201 ; compelled to retreat by the northern barons, i. 380 ; makes a truce with them, *ib.* ; again invades Northumberland, i. 387 ; defeated and captured, i. 388 ; iii. 202 ; imprisoned at Richmond, *ib.* ; prophecy of Merlin fulfilled in him, *ib.* ; taken by Henry II. to Normandy, i. 389; when prisoner at Falaise, makes peace with Henry, i. 392 ; iii. 202 ; substance of the treaty, *ib.* ; returns to England in free custody, i. 393 ; the earldom of Huntingdon given to, i. 435 ; does homage to Richard I., ii. 13 ; the castles of Berwick and Roxburgh returned to, *ib.* ; pays 1,000 marks to Richard, for quitclaim of fealty in Scotland, *ib.* ; at Winchester, when Richard is crowned, ii. 48 ; his rights in England assured to him by John, ii. 78 ; summoned to Lincoln by John, ii. 88 ; iii. 219 ; present at the burial of St. Hugh, *ib.* ; makes terms with John at Norham, ii. 118, 119 ; iii. 224 ; gives his two daughters as hostages, ii. 119 ; iii. 224 ; writes to John, to warn him of the defection of his nobles, ii. 128.

William, king of Sicily, defeats the Greeks, and destroys Bari, i. 306 ; makes peace with the pope, *ib.* ; marries Joanna, daughter of Henry II., i. 395 ; his sister [Constance] married the emperor Henry VI., ii. 54.

William, brother of Tancred, killed at the battle of Gorgoni, i. 86.

William [de Melun], surnamed the Carpenter, joins the crusade, i. 66 ; released from imprisonment at Constantinople, i. 69 ; escapes from Antioch, i. 113.

William, son of Henry, duke of Saxony, his birth at Winchester, i. 426 ; iii. 205.

William, lord of Montsoreau, his castle besieged by duke Henry, i. 290 ; taken prisoner, *ib.*

William, chaplain of archbishop Thomas, imprisoned by Alan de Noville, i. 341.

William of Pavia. *See* Pavia.

Wilton [*incorrectly* Winchester], Stephen defeated at the castle of, i. 268 ; iii. 188.

Wimund, establishes the canons of St. Frideswith at Oxford, and becomes prior, i. 216.

Wimundham, priory of, a cell of St. Alban's, founded by William earl of Arundel, i. 398 ; he is buried there, *ib.* ; iii. 202 ; the body of William de Albini, earl of Arundel, brought there from the Holy Land, ii. 249 ; iii. 246 ; Hugh, earl of Arundel, buried at, ii. 477.

Wimundham, Thomas, prior of. *See* Thomas of St. Alban's.

Winchelsea, dispute of the inhabitants with Yarmouth, iii. 335.

Winchester, earl Waltheof beheaded at, and buried outside the walls, i. 20 ; iii. 171 ; council held at, by the bishop Henry of Blois, i. 263 ; the castle besieged by the empress, i. 267 ; some citizens captured, and compelled to pay ransom, *ib.* ; coronation of the queen of young king Henry at, i. 373 ; birth of the son of the duke of Saxony there, i. 426 ; iii. 205 ; Richard comes to, and causes his father's treasure to be weighed, ii. 5 ; he wears his crown at, ii. 48 ; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 108 ; iii. 223 ; he meets here the proscribed prelates on their return, ii. 140 ; Henry III. keeps Christmas at (1219), ii. 231 ; (1222), ii. 249 ; iii. 246 ; (1226), ii. 278 ; iii. 252 ; (1232), ii. 338 ; (1236), ii. 385 ; iii. 272 ; (1237), ii. 393 ; iii. 273 ; (1239), ii. 416 ; iii. 278 ; (1240), ii. 428 ; iii. 280 ; (1247), iii. 15 ; (1248), iii. 32, 302 ; (1250), iii. 68, 311 ; (1251), iii. 98, 320 ; (1253), iii. 130, 323 ; the bishop is refused admission to, by the mayor, ii. 473 ; increase of robberies in the neighbourhood, iii. 46, 306 ; Henry III. comes to, to make inquiries, iii. 47, 306 ; the citizens make him a present, iii. 131, 323 ; had previously been forced to pay 200 marks, *ib.*

Winchester, the see of, seized by William II., and money extorted, i. 132 ; iii. 177 ; held by him at the time of his death, i. 173 ; pope Lucius II. wished to establish an archbishopric there, i. 273 ; held by Henry III., and supplies the necessaries of the Christmas feast in 1239, ii. 416 ; iii. 278 ; left much in debt by bishop William de Rale, iii. 86 ; the king spares it, on account of the election of Æthelmar, iii. 98 ; part of the woods of, ordered to be cut down and sold, *ib.*

Winchester, bishops of :

—— Walkelin, his death, i. 132 ; iii. 176.

—— William Giffard, instituted, i. 181 ; invested in the temporalities by Henry I., *ib.* ; rejects the consecration of the archbishop of York, i. 191 ; exiled by the king, *ib.* ; goes to Rome, i. 192 ; consecrated by Anselm at Canterbury, i. 208 ; present at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, i. 210 ; consecrates William de Corboil archbishop of Canterbury, i. 233 ; dies, i. 242, 273 ; iii. 185.

—— Henry [of Blois], abbat of Glastonbury, nephew of Henry I., and brother of Stephen, created, i. 243 ; present at the seizure of the royal treasure by Stephen, i. 253 ; ordains Richard de Beumeis deacon, i. 261 ; is indignant at the treatment of certain bishops and nobles by Stephen, i. 263 ; when apostolic legate, convenes a council, to which Stephen is summoned, *ib.* ; acknowledges the empress Matilda as "Lady," i. 267 ; sends to the queen of Stephen and others for aid, *ib.* ; holds a council at London, i. 270 ; iii. 188 ; pope Lucius II. sends him a pall, i. 273 ; sends away his treasure by the abbat of Cluny, i. 302 ; leaves England privately, i. 303 ; his three castles are razed by the king, *ib.* ; consecrates Thomas [Becket] archbishop of Canterbury, i. 316 ; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318 ; on his deathbed, reproves Henry II. for the death of archbishop Thomas, i. 369 ; dies, *ib.*

—— Richard [Toclive], archdeacon of Poitiers, elected, i. 374 ; sent to Henry II. in Normandy, to inform him of the Flemish invasion of England, i. 384 ; consecrated by archbishop Richard, i. 390 ; his death, and burial at Winchester, i. 447.

—— Godfrey de Lucy, elected, ii. 10 ; dies, ii. 102 ; iii. 222.

—— Peter des Roches or de Rupibus, promoted by John, ii. 102 ; iii. 222 ; appointed joint guardian of the realm, in the king's absence, ii. 140 ; charged with the execution of the sentence of excommunication of the barons, ii. 166 ; one of those who suspended archbishop Stephen de Langetune, ii. 168, 169 ; assists at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195 ; influences the barons to desert prince Louis, ii. 200 ; advises the summons of the king's castellans to Newark, ii. 208 ; iii. 239 ; one of the chiefs of the army there, ii. 209 ; refuses to fight with the French at sea, ii. 218 ; at Dover, on the landing of Hubert de Burgh, ii. 221 ; iii. 242 ; supplies necessaries for the Christmas feast at Winchester, ii. 232, 249, 338 ; tutor and guardian of Henry III., ii. 240, 293 ; goes to the Holy Land, ii. 297, 409 ; assists in rebuilding the castle of Joppa, ii. 304, 410 ; one of the leaders of the army at Acre, when Frederic II. landed, ii. 304 ; returns to England, ii. 333 ; iii. 263 ; ordered by the pope to excommunicate the authors of the riots against the Italian clergy, ii. 340 ; made principal councillor of the king, iii. 264 ; complains of the incursions of the Welsh, as a scandal to the crown, ii. 341 ; iii. 264 ; accuses the king of lavishing dignities and treasure, ii. 342 ; iii. 265 ; an enemy of Hubert de Burgh, iii. 264 ; becomes all powerful, ii. 342 ; procures the appointment of Peter de Rivaux, Winchester, bishops of :—*cont.*

—— Peter des Roches—*cont.* as treasurer, *ib.*; by his advice, Hubert de Burgh is removed from the office of justiciary, ii. 343; iii. 265; denies a charter of John to be valid after his death, ii. 344; persuades the king to appoint Poitevins to offices at court, ii. 353; he and his son the only persons trusted by Henry, *ib.*; iii. 268; associates Stephen de Segrave and Robert Passelewe in the management of affairs, *ib.*; his contemptuous reply to the complaint of the earl Mareschal, ii. 354; iii. 268; advanced money to John Blund, archbishop elect, to aid his promotion, and wrote to the emperor in his behalf, ii. 355; wished to have him as his coadjutor, iii. 268; advises Henry to exile the rebellious nobles, ii. 356; gains over the earls of Chester and Lincoln by bribes, ii. 357; by his counsel, the king acts hostilely against the earl Mareschal, ii. 358; iii. 269; asks for the custody of the castle of Devises, ii. 359; reported to have sought the death of Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*; unwillingly consents to Hubert being replaced in the church of Devises, ii. 361; the prelates complain to the king of his evil counsels, ii. 366; dismissed by Henry to his bishopric, *ib.*; seeks refuge in the church of Winchester, ii. 371; iii. 271; appointed one of the leaders of the pope's forces, ii. 373; his death at Farnham, ii. 409; buried at Winchester, *ib.*; his good deeds, *ib.*; iii. 297; made peace between the emperor and the pope, *ib.*; religious houses founded by him, *ib.*, 410; reformed the brethren of St. Thomas of Acre, ii. 410; brought the work of William of Tyre from the Holy Land, and lent it to Matthew Paris, i. 163 *n.*

—— Ralph, bishop of Chichester, and chancellor, elected, ii. 412; iii. 277; annulled by the pope, ii. 418; iii. 277, 279.

—— William de Rale, bishop of Norwich, elected, ii. 449; quarrel of the king with him, in consequence, ii. 455; iii. 284;

Winchester, bishops of :—*cont.*

—— William de Rale—*cont.* dedicates the church of Waltham, ii. 466; confirmed at Rome, against the king's wish, ii. 472; iii. 287; anger of Henry against him, *ib.*; access to Winchester is denied him by the mayor, *ib.*; he lays the city under an interdict, and anathematizes the prior, *ib.*, 474; flies privately to France, ii. 481; the king defamed on his account, ii. 485; a reconciliation effected, by the mediation of the pope and archbishop, *ib.*; iii. 289; recalled from abroad by the king, ii. 489; iii. 291; appointed by the pope to enforce the tallage demanded from the prelates, iii. 10; Henry dines with him at Christmas, in token of reconciliation, iii. 15; and again, on two similar occasions, iii. 32, 68, 298; goes abroad, and lives at a small expense, iii. 69, 75, 86; dies at Tours, iii. 86, 315.

—— Æthelmar [de Lusignan], uterine brother of Henry III., elected, iii. 86, 315. *See* Æthelmar.

Winchester, church of St. Swithin, the Old Minster enriched by Cnut, iii. 162; Cnut buried there, iii. 169; William II. buried in the choir, i. 173; Walter, the prior, made abbat of Westminster, i. 398; John receives absolution in, ii. 140; the monks refuse to elect the king's nominee to the see, ii. 410; the prior, a Welshman, intruded, and influenced by the king, *ib.*, 427, 449; oppression suffered by the monks, ii. 426, 449, 455; iii. 279; the intruded prior anathematized by bishop William, ii. 474; John of Caen, prior, elected abbat of Peterborough, iii. 62; the convent is dispersed, by the tyranny of the bishop elect, iii. 340; in the absence of the prior [William de Taunton] at Rome, a new one intruded, iii. 341; the church burthened with debts, iii. 346.

Winchester, Saer de Quinci, earl of, surrenders the castle of Vaudreuil to Philip II., ii. 98; imprisoned at Compiegne, and forced to pay ransom, *ib.*; saves St. Alban's from being burnt by prince

Winchester, Saer de Quinci, earl of—*cont.* Louis, ii. 201; the garrison of Mountsorel send to him for aid, as lord of the castle, ii. 206; he applies to Louis for forces, *ib.*; one of the leaders of the army sent against the royalists, ii. 207; reconnoitres the king's forces, on their approach to Lincoln, ii. 210; advises an attack, *ib.*; is taken prisoner, when the city is captured, ii. 212; iii. 239; joins the Crusaders at Damietta, ii. 230; his death, ii. 243; shield of arms, *ib.*; death of his eldest son Robert, *ib.*

Winchester, Roger [de Quinci], earl of, [second son of the preceding,] Philip Luvel was his seneschal, iii. 115; death of his wife [Matilda], without issue, as also of his previous wife [Helen], iii. 126.

Winds, violent and destructive, i. 249; ii. 108, 252; iii. 343; presaged the death of Henry I., i. 249.

Windsor (*Windeleshore*, *Windleshores*), meeting at, to settle the claims of the primacy, i. 17; earl Robert of Northumberland imprisoned there, i. 48; prince John knighted at, i. 433; imprisonment and death of Matilda de Brause and her son and daughter-in-law there, ii. 122; iii. 225; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 126, 147; iii. 224, 252; unsubdued by prince Louis, ii. 181; besieged by the barons' forces under the count of Nevers, ii. 185; iii. 236; the siege raised through his treachery, *ib.*; a force drawn from the garrison by Faukes, ii. 203; the queen's chamber at, struck by lightning, and many oaks in the forest, iii. 116.

Wingham. *See* Wengham.

[Witham, co. Som.,] a Carthusian priory, founded by Henry II., i. 427; Hugh, appointed the first prior, afterwards bishop of Lincoln, *ib.*

Wither, William. *See* Thuenge, Robert de.

Witsand, Witsant, the young king Henry comes to, i. 384; Alienor of Provence embarks at, ii. 386.

Woodstock (*Wudestoc*, *Wudestoche*, *Wudestoke*), homage paid at, by the king of Scots to Henry II. and his son, i. 322; archbishop Thomas intended to visit the young king at, i. 359; the abbat of St. Alban's goes to, on the archbishop's behalf, i. 360, 361; prince Geoffrey knighted at, i. 401; the Welsh nobles do homage to John there, ii. 119; attempt made to assassinate Henry III. at, i. 412.

Worcester, Henry II. wears his crown at, and deposits it on the altar, i. 308; iii. 194; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 154; iii. 231; is buried at, ii. 194; the church of St. Mary, dedicated, ii. 230; Henry III. keeps Christmas at, ii. 353.

Worcester, bishops of:

—— Britheg, gives the monastic habit to Wulstan, i. 53.

—— Wulstan, prior of Worcester, consecrated by Aldred, archbishop of York, iii. 168; deposed by archbishop Lanfranc, for his illiteracy, i. 38, 53; fixes his pastoral staff in the tomb of St. Edward Confessor, and is alone able to withdraw it, i. 53; iii. 171; restored to the see, iii. 171; his death, i. 53; his parentage and other particulars, *ib.*; was compelled by king Edward to accept the presulate, *ib.*; John, when dying, commends his soul to, ii. 193; translation of his body, ii. 230; iii. 26; one of his ribs given to the abbat of St. Alban's, ii. 231; his Life and Miracles referred to, i. 38, 54.

—— Samson, consecrated at St. Paul's, i. 97; iii. 176.

—— Theophus, Theophilus, [Theoulfus?] consecrated, i. 220; dies, i. 234.

—— Symon, clerk of the queen, appointed, i. 235; iii. 184.

—— Roger, his death, i. 411.

—— Baldwin, abbat of Ford, succeeds, i. 423. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

—— William de Norhale, consecrated, i. 437; iii. 206; dies, ii. 19.

Worcester, bishops of:—*cont.*

—— Robert [Fitz-Ralph], canon of Lincoln, son of William, seneschal of Normandy, consecrated by the legate, ii. 27; iii. 211.

—— Mauger, consecrated, ii. 89; iii. 220; ordered by the pope to threaten John with an interdict, ii. 115; leaves the country, ii. 116; dies in exile at Pontigny, ii. 127.

—— Walter de Grai, chancellor, consecrated, ii. 152; sent abroad by John to raise mercenary troops, ii. 160. *See* York, archbishops of.

—— Silvester, present at the coronation of Henry III., ii. 195; and at the translation of St. Wulstan, ii. 230.

—— William de Blois (*Bleis*), his death, ii. 392, 393; iii. 273.

—— Walter de Cantilupe, son of the baron William de Cantilupe, a jurist, ii. 419; elected, and consecrated by the pope, ii. 393; goes to the Roman court, ii. 498; iii. 293; assumes the cross, iii. 26, 301; goes abroad, iii. 69; present at the excommunication of transgressors of Magna Carta, iii. 137.

Worcester, William Scot, archdeacon of. *See* Durham, bishops of.

Worms (*Wermesia*), council held at, i. 24; the decrees of pope Gregory VII. annulled at *ib.*; the marriage of Frederic II. to Isabel of England consummated there, ii. 380.

Wulgeva, mother of St. Wulstan, i. 53.

Wulstan, St. *See* Worcester, bishops of.

Y.

Yarmouth (*Gernemue*), in Norfolk, compelled to pay ransom to the barons, ii. 184; the inhabitants quarrel with Winchelsea, on account of injury done to a ship provided for prince Edward, iii. 335.

Yconium. *See* Iconium.

Yda, wife of William de Beauchamp. *See* Beauchamp.

York, county of, devastated by the Danes and English, hostile to William I., i. 12; placed under an interdict by archbishop Geoffrey, ii. 87; committed to custodians by John, ii. 172; subjected to prince Louis, ii. 182.

York, city of, destroyed by William I., i. 10; occupied by the Danes and English against him, i. 12; John keeps Christmas at, ii. 124, 299, 320; iii. 256, 261, 321; meeting of Henry III. and Alexander II. of Scotland at, ii. 241; marriage of Alexander to princess Joanna there, ii. 248; also of Margaret, sister of Alexander, to Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*; parliament held at, ii. 400.

York, see of, dispute with Canterbury as to the supremacy, i. 17; declared to be metropolitan, i. 46; controversy in the council held by the legate Otho, as to the seat of York, iii. 275.

York, archbishops of:

—— Wulstan, his death, iii. 162.

—— Alfric or Wilfric, succeeds, iii. 162; dies, iii. 166.

—— Kinsig, chaplain of Edward the Confessor, succeeds, iii. 166; dies, iii. 168.

—— Aldred, succeeds, iii. 168; goes to Rome for his pall, *ib.*; crowns William I., i. 8; iii. 169.

—— Thomas I., consents to the settlement of the claim to the primacy, i. 17; forbids the dedication of the church of Lincoln, i. 42; consecrates Anselm archbishop of Canterbury, i. 46; iii. 175; dies, i. 183.

—— Girard, succeeds, i. 183; ordered by Henry I. to consecrate some bishops, i. 191; dies, i. 208; iii. 180.

—— Thomas II., chaplain of the king, elected, i. 208; iii. 180; his consecration forbidden by archbishop Anselm, until he had made canonical obedience, i. 209; consecrated at St. Paul's, by the bishop of London, i. 210; iii. 180; professes canonical obedience to the see of Canterbury, *ib.*; dies, i. 217.

York, archbishops of :—*cont.*

—— Thurstan [of Bayeux], succeeds, i. 217 ; refuses to make profession of obedience to Canterbury, i. 220 ; Henry I. threatens to deprive him of the see, *ib.* ; appeal made by the archbishop of Canterbury against his consecration, *ib.* ; consecrated by the pope, contrary to his promise to the king, i. 225 ; banished from the king's dominions, *ib.* ; his quarrel with the archbishop of Canterbury, relative to the primacy, i. 235 ; not permitted to crown the king, i. 238 ; his cross-bearer expelled from the king's chapel at Windsor, *ib.* ; present at the council of London, i. 243 ; by his direction, the northern barons oppose David of Scotland, i. 258 ; on account of illness, appoints Ralph, bishop of the Orkneys, in his place, *ib.* ; dies, i. 264.

—— William [Fitz-Herbert], chancellor of York, succeeds, i. 264 ; iii. 188 ; degraded by pope Eugenius III., but restored to the see by Anastasius IV., i. 298 ; dies from a poisoned chalice, *ib.* ; miraculous oil flows from his tomb, ii. 256.

—— Henry [Murdac], monk of Citeaux, appointed, i. 277 ; dies, i. 292.

—— Roger [de Pont l'Eveque], archdeacon of Canterbury, succeeds, i. 298 ; iii. 192 ; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's, i. 318 ; sits on the left hand of the pope, at the council of Tours, i. 321 ; appointed to the office of legate in England, i. 350 ; crowns prince Henry at Westminster, against the pope's prohibition, i. 352 ; his speech to the young king at the coronation feast, i. 353 ; suspended by the pope, i. 356 ; fatal results of his crowning the young king, i. 366 ; sends to the pope, to submit to his judgment, i. 368 ; swears he had not received the papal letters of prohibition, and had no hand in the death of archbishop Thomas, i. 370 ; iii. 200 ; receives absolution at Aumale, *ib.* ; refuses to attend the council at Westminster, i. 392 ; dies, i. 421 ; iii. 204 ; had obtained licence for the pope to take the goods of clerks defunct intestate in his diocese, i. 421 ; his wealth confiscated by the king, *ib.* ; had amassed riches, to overthrow archbishop Thomas, i. 422.

—— Geoffrey, natural son of Henry II., bishop elect of Lincoln, receives the see from Richard I., ii. 3, 10 ; expels the officers of the king and dean, ii. 4 ; is ordained priest, ii. 15 ; his election confirmed by the pope, *ib.* ; consecrated by the archbishop of Tours, ii. 22 ; lands at Dover, and lodges at the priory of St. Martin, *ib.* ; seized and imprisoned by the sheriff of Kent, *ib.* ; excommunicates the authors of this violence, *ib.* ; obtains his liberation by the interference of the bishop of London, *ib.* ; comes to London, and is honourably received, *ib.* ; present at a meeting of the prelates, where all those concerned in his imprisonment are solemnly excommunicated, ii. 28 ; is reconciled with the king and his brother, ii. 68 ; spoiled of the emoluments of his see by John, ii. 87 ; excommunicates the sheriff of York, for plundering his manors, *ib.* ; causes of John's anger against him, *ib.* ; reconciled with the king, ii. 88 ; leaves England, on account of the tax imposed by John, ii, 108 ; anathematizes all who collected it in his diocese, *ib.* ; dies in exile, ii. 127, 132.

—— Simon de Langtune, brother of the archbishop of Canterbury, elected, ii. 166 ; iii. 233 ; annulled by the pope, at the king's request, *ib.*, 169.

—— Walter de Grai or Gray, [previously bishop of Worcester,] conducts the earl of Albemarle to Henry III., ii. 245 ; mediates his reconciliation, *ib.* ; consecrates Walter, bishop of Carlisle, ii. 255 ; sent envoy to the transmarine territories by Henry, ii. 291 ; returns unsuccessful, ii. 295 ; entertains the king at the Christmas festival at York, ii.

York, archbishops of :—*cont.*

—— Walter de Grai or Gray—*cont.* 320; iii. 261 ; ordered by the pope to excommunicate the rioters against the Italian clergy, ii. 340; consecrates Nicholas, bishop of Durham, ii. 450 ; iii. 283 ; appointed guardian of the realm, ii. 462 ; iii. 285 ; purchased the palace of Hubert de Burgh at London, ii. 477 ; consecrates Walter, bishop of Durham, iii. 61 ; again appointed guardian of the realm, in the place of the queen, ii. 335 ; dies at Fulham, ii. 345 ; his body carried to York for burial, *ib.*

York, church of St. Mary at, the charter of liberties of Henry I. preserved at, i. 181 ; the prior, with eleven brethren, establish the abbey of Fountains, i. 240, 241 ; miraculous oil flows from the tomb of St. William in, ii. 256 ; a canon of, killed in the vestibule, ii. 511 ; the goods of, seized by Henry III., iii. 346.

York, deans of :

—— William de S. Barbara. *See* Durham, bishops of.

—— Hubert Walter, his officers expelled by the archbishop elect, ii. 4. *See* Salisbury, bishops of.

—— Simon de Apulia. *See* Exeter, bishops of.

—— Fulk Basset. *See* Basset ; *and* London, bishops of.

—— Walter de Kirkeham. *See* Durham, bishops of.

York, chancellors of :

—— William [Fitz-Herbert]. *See* York, archbishops of.

—— John Blund. *See* Canterbury, archbishops of.

York, treasurers of :

—— Ralph de Warneville, made chancellor, i. 374 ; iii. 200.

—— John the Roman, canon, hides himself in the church, ii. 338 ; iii. 264 ; ordered by the pope to excommunicate the rioters against the Italian clergy, ii. 340.

Ypocras, [Hippocrates,] said to have lived at Beirout, and planted a pine-grove there, i. 215.

Ypres, William de, with Stephen at the battle of Lincoln, i. 265 ; opposes the empress Matilda in Kent, i. 266 ; sent to for aid, by the bishop of Winchester, i. 267.

Ysium. *See* Melun.

Yvo. *See* Ivo.

Z.

Zara (*Gazara*), Richard lands at, on return from the Holy Land, ii. 40.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

[In making up the Index, the text has been again thoroughly revised, and several more errors in it (chiefly derived from Wendover) noted.]

VOL. I.

Preface, page xxiv., foot-note, col. 2, the first line has slipped from its place at the bottom of the column.

ib., page xxv., foot-note. The authority of Widmore for his assertion of the identity of *John of London* and *John Bevere* was doubtless a document still existing in the Muniment room at Westminster, for the discovery of which I am indebted to Mr. Jos. Burtt. In this document, dated 28 March 1310, the commissary of the archdeacon of London [Reginald of St. Alban's] writes to the archdeacon of Westminster, to inform him that, on account of certain "contumacia," he had excommunicated "fratrem *Johannem de Londonia dictum le Bevere.*" This would seem sufficient to *prove* the identity of the names in question.

Page 7, line 6 (in some copies), *for* Romanorum *read* Normannorum.

,, 9, line 3. So also in Wendover, but *Mercherus* is probably the same person as *Morcardus*, earl of Northumbria, mentioned in the previous line. Cf. Will. Malmesb. ii. 426, ed. Hardy, and Hen. Hunt. p. 369.

,, 11, line 6, foot-note, *add*, This statement is incorrect, since it was not *Robert Comyn*, but *Robert de Moubray*, who, at a later period, restored Tynemouth priory. *See* p. 41.

,, 23, line 25, *add foot-note*, *See* the "Gesta Abbatum S. Albani," vol. i. pp. 53-64, ed. Riley.

,, 25, line 15, *for* episcopum (as in Wendover) *read* archiepiscopum. Cf. p. 27.

,, 45, line 12. Instead of reading *Normannia* (as suggested in the "Corrigenda"), we might supply [adduxit], from W.A.C.D., before *in*, and *for* sollicitavit *read* sollicitans.

,, 52, lines 10, 11, *add* inverted commas before *factus* and after *redargutionis*, and subjoin reference to Ps. xxxvii. 15; and so again at page 359, lines 18, 19.

Page 62, line 31, *for* Cinitoth (as in MS.) *read* Civitoth.

,, 71, line 10. The name of Tancred's father is derived from William of Tyre, lib. ii. c. 13; but according to Ordericus Vitalis, lib. ix. c. 4, his name was *Odo*. He married Emma, sister of Robert Guiscard. *See* the note in "Rec. des Hist. de France," tom. xii. p. 218. The text would be correct if *for* filius we *read* frater.

,, 88, line 10, *for* comitis (as in MS.) *read* ducis, from W.A.C.D.F.

,, *ib.*, line 19, *for* Adama (as in MS.) *read* Adana.

,, 89, line 7. The form *Samosatum* is also in Wendover and William of Tyre.

,, 94, line 19, *for* multiplicarenter *read* multiplicarentur.

,, 98, line 16, *for* Haman (as in Wendover) *we should read* Hamah. Cf. Will. Tyr. p. 697.

,, 120, line 6. There is an error here, due to Wendover, from misunderstanding William of Tyre, p. 723, who writes, "Secundæ præficiunt dominum *Robertum*, qui cognominatus est *Friso, Flandrensem comitem*." This, however, includes another mistake, for it was the father of this Robert who was surnamed *Friso*.

,, *ib.*, line 11. Another error, also from Wendover. The count of Toulouse was left in the city, as stated, p. 121.

,, 132, line 3. A mistake, from Wendover. Earl Hugh was killed by king Magnus III. of Norway. *See* Sax. Chron. *sub anno*, and Ord. Vital. lib. x. c. 6.

,, 135, line 22, *for* Valentiam (as in Wendover) *we should read* Valeniam, now *Banias*.

,, 136, line 18. William of Tyre, p. 742, has *Maus*, and places it "supra ripam fluminis." By Spruner it is named *Ain-Makus*, or *Mau*, and by Van de Velde, *Ain-Mahûs*.

,, *ib.*, lines 27–31. This passage is not in William of Tyre, but occurs in Baldric, p. 129, and Robert of St. Remi, p. 73. The latter *reads* Bethelon, like the text, but the former Bethoron, evidently *for* Batroun.

,, *ib.*, line 29. *Arram* is also in Wendover, but is an error for *Acram*, as in Robert of St. Remi, Ord. Vital. lib. ix. c. 14, and Hen. Hunt. p. 377.

,, 137, line 4. *Elyopolis* is an error, due to Wendover. The ancient name of Lydda was *Diospolis*. *See* p. 158.

,, 145, line 6. Another mistake, also from Wendover, who has misunderstood his authority, William of Tyre, p. 758, who writes, "quem continue subsecuti sunt Ludolfus et Gilebertus, *uterini fratres*, viri nobiles, ortum habentes ex civitate Tornaco."

,, 150, line 2, *for* candalem *read* candelam.

,, 158, line 2, foot-note, *add*, This is incorrect, since *Neapolis* is the present *Nablus*.

,, 159, line 3, *before* habet *insert* [Jericho], from W.A.C.D.

,, 166, line 32. According to Ordericus Vitalis, lib. x. c. 9, *Robert de Montfort* was leader of the royal forces.

,, 167, line 33, *for* frustra *read* frusta.

Page 168, side-note, *for* Ralph *substitute* Ranulph, and this correction is required also in pp. 182, 231, 275.

,, *ib.*, foot-note, col. 1, line 18, *for* dua *read* duo.

,, 193, line 5, *after* habuerunt *insert* [Willelmum, Aquitaniæ ducem], from W.A.C.D.

,, 196, line 15, *for* Hac *read* Hoc.

,, 200, line 23, *for* Infelici (as in MS.) *read* Infelices.

,, 201, line 27, *for* præferendas (as in MS.) *read* præferendos.

,, 214, line 7, *for* Gaufridus (as in Wendover) *read* Fulco.

,, 227, line 22. Another error, from Wendover. William Crispin was not *count of Evreux*, but nephew of Amauri II., count of Evreux, by his sister Eva. *See* Ordericus Vitalis, lib. xii. c. 27, and Hen. Hunt. pp. 380, 381, ed. Savile. The side note should be corrected.

,, 228, line 23, *add* reference to "Gesta Abbatum S. Albani," vol. i. pp. 66–72.

,, 229, lines 15, 21, *for* Cereptum (as in MS.) *read* Cerepum. *See* Will. Tyr. p. 821.

,, 232, line 11, *for* Robertus (as in Wendover) *we should read* Walerannus. *See* Ord. Vit. lib. xii. c. 33, 36, and "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 693. The same correction is needed in pp. 233, 265, and vol. iii. p. 183.

,, 233, line 20. An error, due to Wendover, since Richard de Beumais, bishop of London, did not die till 1227. Cf. *postea*, p. 239.

,, 242, line 14. It was not at *Eu*, but at *Alost*, that count William of Flanders died. *See* Ord. Vit., lib. xii. c. 45.

,, 243, line 10, foot-note. *Porretanus* is probably equivalent to the Fr. *Betun.*

,, 245, line 21, foot-note, *for* successit, MS., *read* sucessit, MS.

,, 246, line 13, side-note, *for* Lincoln *substitute* Coventry.

,, 251, line 6. An error, from Wendover. Stephen, count of Boulogne (in right of his wife) was son of Stephen, count of Blois, and grandson of Theobald III. The MS. F. reads *Stephani Theobaldi.*

,, 254, line 14, *for* castellam *read* castellum.

,, 255, line 13, *after* quas *insert* [rex], from W.A.C.D.

,, 256, line 27. *Flandrensis* is an error, from Wendover, for which we should substitute *Blesensis.* *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 616.

,, 258, line 4, *for* Hertfordense (as in MS.) *read* Herefordense, from W.A.C.D.F.

,, 260, line 2, *for* architenentes (as in MS.) *read* arcitenentes.

,, 262, line 11, side-note, *for* castle *read* castles, *and for* town of Salisbury taken, *read* Shirburne given up.

,, *ib.*, line 15. The reading *oppidum* is also in W.A.C.D., but should be corrected *castellum*, from Hen. Hunt.

,, *ib.*, line 27, *after* reginam *insert* [duxerat], from W.A.C.D.

,, 273, line 6, foot-note, *dele the words*, An error . . . . Wendover.

,, 277, line 12, *for* Turstanum (as in Wendover) *we should read* Willelmum. Cf. p. 264.

Page, 287 line 7, *for* Lery (as in Wendover) *we should probably read* Leir, as in pp. 461, 463. It is the Château du Loir, on the Seine. Robert de Monte has *Ledi*, which the editor, in "Mon. Germ. Hist." vi. 299, has mistaken for St. Germain-en-Laie.

,, 289, line 23, *for* Robertus (as in Wendover) *read* Rotrodus; as again in vol. ii. pp. 20.

,, 290, line 19, *for* municipum *read* municipium.

,, 291, line 17, foot-note, *add* reference to "Gesta Abbatum S. Albani," vol. i. pp. 106–110.

,, 296, line 28, *after* dilexit et, *the words* dux regem *would seem to be wanting.*

,, 306, line 10, side-note, *for* Normandy *substitute* Touraine.

,, 319, line 30, side-note, *for* Baldwin II. *read* Baldwin III.

,, 322, line 11. This Robert de Clare was never earl of Gloucester, but his grandson Richard, in right of his mother. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 211.

,, 337, line 17, *for* Ciciliæ *read* Ciliciæ. The epithet *præsul* is a careless error, copied from Wendover. In William of Tyre, p. 760, he is styled *præses.*

,, 346, line 21, *add side-note,* Consolatory letter of the king to the bishop of London.

,, 351, line 15. A mistake, due to Wendover. The parents of the archbishop had died long previously.

,, 356, line 4, *for* exibuerant (as in MS.) *read* exhibuerant.

,, 363, last line, *for* assertioni *read* assertione.

,, 373, line 13, *for* Huberti (as in Wendover) *read* Humberti.

,, 374, line 20, side-note, *for* benefices *substitute* churches.

,, 375, line 6, *for* Cirecestrensem (as in MS.) *read* Cicestrensem.

,, 377, line 11. In Robert de Monte, Benedictus Abbas, and other writers, this invasion is ascribed to Philip, count of Flanders.

,, *ib.*, line 15. This count Simon [de Montfort] was count of Evreux. *See* Robert de Monte, Append. to Sigebert, in "Rec. des Hist. de France," tom. xiii. p. 316.

,, 382, line 11. *Ranulphus* is an error, from Wendover. The earl of Chester at this time was *Hugh Cyvelioc. See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 40.

,, 391, line 18, *for* belii *read* belli.

,, 394, line 17, foot-note, *for* 1157 *read* 1175.

,, 396, line 16, the comma after *Legionum* should be placed after *terras.*

,, 397, line 22. The name of the archbishop was *Arnulph*, according to "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," iii. 298, but by other authorities he is called *Arnold.*

,, 399, line 25, *for* Minantcurt (as in Wendover) *read* Nunantcurt.

,, 407, line 13, the note of interrogation after *protestatur* should have been a full stop.

,, 421, line 9, side-note, *for* Louis *substitute* Philip.

,, 428, line 10, *for* defunctorem *read* defunctorum.

,, 445, line 23, side-margin, *for* 1118 *read* 1188.

,, 446, line 7, *for* Jeroslimitanum *read* Jerosolimitanum.

Page 452, line 7, *for* D.lxxx°.iii°. *read* D.lxxx°.iiij°.
,, *ib.*, line 21, *for* Regem *read* Rege.
,, *ib.*, line 31. This is an error (copied from Wendover), since Conrad of Montferrat was not assassinated till 1192.
,, 457, line 11, *for* Saladinis *read* Saladinus.
,, 460, line 26, *for* Turonim (as in Wendover and Diceto), Benedictus Abbas, ii. 68, and Hoveden, *read* Chinonem.
,, *ib.*, line 29, side-note, *for* town *substitute* citadel.
,, 461, line 6, side-note, *for* Seville *substitute* Silves.
,, 462, line 13, *for* Die *read* Dei.
,, *ib.*, line 18, side-note, *for* Meeting of the kings of England and France at, *substitute* Conference to make peace, held at.

VOL. II.

Page 5, line 26, *for* Roberti (taken from Wendover) *we should read* Willelmi. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 586.
,, 20, line 7, foot-note, *add*, The name, however, of *Conradus* is a mistake for *Fredericus*. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 24.
,, 26, line 5, *for* Cannarum *read* cannarum. *See* Benedictus Abbas, vol. ii. p. 155, ed. Stubbs.
,, 37, lines 2, 5. This story is given in nearly the same words in the *Chronica Majora*, p. 813, ed. Wats, but there seems to be some error. The prince of Antioch put to death by Saladin was Reginald de Châtillon, after the battle of Hittin, in 1187, and previous to the arrival of Richard in Palestine. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 447.
,, *ib.*, line 15. Allusion is here made to the legend respecting the treasure of Octovian in William of Malmesbury, vol. i. p. 277.
,, 38, line 4, foot-note, *for* infra, MS., *read* imfra, MS.
,, 47, line 13, *for* qui *read* quia.
,, 48, line 15. Hoveden, p. 740, has *Barbeflet* instead of *Bruis*, for which the French translator of Paris proposes to read *Bure*.
,, 49, line 13, side-note, *for* captures *substitute* destroys.
,, 50, last line, *for* Ricardi *read* Ricardo.
,, 51, line 19. An error, copied from Wendover and Diceto, by whom *Alexius Angelus*, who dethroned his brother Isaac in 1195, is confounded with *Alexius II. Comnenus*, son of Manuel, who was strangled in 1183 by Andronicus.
,, 58, line 5, *for* facto *read* facta.
,, 61, line 11, *for* Barum *read* Burum.
,, 63, line 1, *for* eum *read* cum.
,, 71, line 3, *for* inutilum *read* inutilem.
,, 78, line 22, side-note, *for* Mans *substitute* Maine.
,, 80, line 1, *for* coronatione *read* coronatione.

Page 82, line 9, and page 84, line 17, *for* Waillun *or* Wailun (borrowed from Wendover) *we should read* Guletune. Cf. Hoveden, pp. 795, 799, but in the second instance he substitutes *Andeli* for *Butavant.*

„ 83, line 20, *for* subsanna (as in MS.) *read* subsannans. Cf. p. 145.

„ 91, line 1, *for* dilectioniis *read* dilectionis.

„ 92, line 14, side-note, *for* Butovant *read* Butavant.

„ 96, line 11, *add side-note,* Pope Innocent proposes to extort money from the Cistercians.

„ 106, last line, foot-note, *for* copiosissimus *read* copiosissimas.

„ 108, line 3, *for* regis *read* reges.

„ 113, line 6, *for* Falco *read* Fulco.

„ *ib.*, line 12, *for* reddisset (as in MS.) *read* reddidisset.

„ 117, lines 24—27. The construction is faulty, and we should read, *non modico pecuniæ thesauro . . . . . . recepto.* The comma after *extorserat* should be placed after *Johannes.*

„ 122, line 19, side-note, *for* Will. de Brause, with his wife and son, *substitute* the wife of Will. de Brause, with her son and his wife.

„ 123, line 26, side-note, *for* Will. Brause, his wife and son, *substitute* Matilda de Brause, her son and his wife.

„ 126, line 17, foot-note, *add,* Wendover calls him "archidiaconus Norwicensis," iii. 229; perhaps erroneously. *See* Fasti, ii. 478.

„ 128, line 25. In Wendover and the *Chronica Majora*, p. 232, Eustace de Vesci is said (more correctly) to have retired to Scotland.

„ 130, line 29, *for* subdiaconem *read* subdiaconum.

„ 139, last line, *for* H[ubertus] *read* H[ugo].

„ 144, line 5. This is an error. Raymond Roger was viscount of Carcassonne, and was taken prisoner, with the city, subsequent to the capture of Beziers. These events took place in 1209. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 310.

„ 146, line 19, side-note, *for* benefices *substitute* sees and abbeys.

„ 147, 13, *for* [Johannes] *read* J[ohannes].

„ 150, line 10, side-note, *substitute* Proceedings of *before* John's, *and dele the words* carry the war into France.

„ *ib.*, line 22. The anonymous Continuator of Robert de Monte calls him "*Pellucus*, comes Theutonicus." *See* "Rec. des Hist. de France," xviii. 344. The editors remark that William Brito speaks of a *Comes Pilosus*, xvii. 249, and that under that epithet *William of Holland* is intended.

„ 154, line 16, *insert* [quam] *before* manu, to complete the sense.

„ 160, line 16. This is a mistake (copied from Wendover), for John de Gray, bishop of Norwich, died 18 Oct. 1214. Cf. *ante*, p. 153.

„ 172, line 13, *for* Ranulpho (as in Wendover) *we should read* Waleranno. Cf. *postea*, p. 296.

„ 174, line 11, *for* supensionis *read* suspensionis.

„ 181, line 7, side-note, *for* forces abroad *substitute* foreign mercenaries.

„ 189, line 12, *for* W[alteri] *read* W[illelmi].

Page 190, line 19, *for* irrecuperaliter (as in MS.) *read* irrecuperabiliter.

,, 191, last line, foot-note, *add*, In a MS. in the University library, Cambridge, Hh. vi. 11, these lines are given more fully:

" Li plus beaus [Henry] à Martheus;
Le Marchis [Geoffrey] à Paris;
Li Petevin [Richard] à Limozin;
Li Sanz-tere [John] mora en Bere."

194, line 8, foot-note, *for* W.B.I. *read* W.B.C.I.

,, 208, line 6, side-note, *for* Ralph *substitute* Ranulph, and again in pages 239, 327, 342, 422.

,, 215, line 5, foot-note, *for* Poctica *read* Poetria, and so also in foot-note, p. 276.

,, 220, line 7, foot-note, *for* cruicandi *read* cruciandi.

,, 221, line 10, foot-note, *add*, Richard Poore, bishop of Chichester, was translated to Salisbury in May or June 1217, but had the custody of the previous bishopric till the election of his successor, Ralph de Wareham, in December. The only bishops of the name of *Hugh* at this time were Hugh de Mapenore, of Hereford, and Hugh de Welles, of Lincoln. Hugh (abbat of Beaulieu) was not elected to Carlisle till 1218. *See* Fasti, i. 239; ii. 595; iii. 231.

,, 232, line 5, *for* Londiniis *read* Londoniis.

,, 233, line 14. The queen alluded to was Gertrude, wife of Andrew II., who was strangled by an Hungarian noble, in consequence of the ambiguous counsel given by John, bishop of Strigonia. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 54.

,, 240, line 10. Gui, seigneur de la Ferté-Alais, brother of earl Simon of Montfort, was killed in 1228 at the siege of Vareilles. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 806.

,, *ib.*, line 13, side-note, *for* raises the siege *substitute* returns to France.

,, 245, line 23, *for* querelem *read* querelam.

,, 247, line 20, *for* singula *read* singuli.

,, 254, line 26, *for* cum *read* eum.

,, 268, line 15, *dele the comma after* Angliæ.

,, 269, line 1, foot-note, *for* in vol. i. *read* antea.

,, 270, line 6, side-note, *insert* Cornwall *before* Poitou.

,, 286, line 8, insert the reference ^{5} to foot-note.

,, 296, line 9, *insert* [Johannes] *after* rex, from W.B.C.

,, *ib.*, lines 17, 18, *for* Henricus (copied from Wendover) *we should read* Humfridus; and *for* Willelmus (also from Wendover) *read* Henricus. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 72, 180.

,, 300, line 8, side-note, *add* of Coventry *after* bishop.

,, 322, line 16, foot-note, *read* Cessante [causa, cessa]ret et effectus.

,, 325, line 4, *for* regis (as in MS.) *read* rege.

,, 327, line 26, *for* Johannem (as also in Wendover) *we should read* Jacobum. *See* "Rec. des Hist. de France," xvii. 579; xx. 312.

,, 334, line 2, side-note, *insert* Richard earl *before* Mareschal.

,, 336, line 2, *for* Sanctam Gemmam (copied from Wendover) *we should probably read* Sanctum Geminum. *See* note in vol. iii. p. 263.

Page 337, line 6. The correction of *Novilla* is unnecessary. Cf. p. 480.

" 342, line 7, side-note, *for* sheriff *substitute* sheriffs.

" 346, line 15. The mayor of London at this date was *Andrew Bokerelle*. *See* MS. Harl. 565, fol. 17*b*.

" 347, line 23, side-note, *for* Geoffrey *substitute* Godfrey.

" 349, line 15. The nephew of the earl of Chester here alluded to was John de Laci, by marriage with Margaret de Quinci, daughter of Hawise, fourth sister of the earl. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 45, 102.

" 360, line 19, side-note, *for* threatens to excommunicate *substitute* excommunicates, *and for* violaters *read* violators.

" 362, line 3, side-note, *for* besieges *substitute* retires to.

" 372, line 12, *for* Walterus *we should read* Petrus. Cf. *ante*, p. 319. The side-note should be corrected.

" 387, line 6. This plea of youth could hardly have been advanced, for Richard was born in 1208 (cf. *ante*, p. 117). He was now above twenty-six years old, and had previously been sent with forces to Gascony, in 1225.

" 388, line 25, side-note, *for* Valentia *substitute* Valence ; and so again at p. 395 and elsewhere.

" 392. The reference numbers in the text are erroneous, and should correspond with those in the foot-notes.

" 397, line 10, *for* Vaucular *read* Vauculur.

" 398, line 6. There is a mistake here, which occurs also in the *Chronica Majora*, p. 439. John earl of Chester was not earl of Lincoln. Cf. *ante*, p. 349, and additional note. In Dugdale, i. 45, his death is erroneously assigned to 1244.

" *ib.*, line 15, *insert the words* [sancti Nicholai] *before* in carcere, from B.C.

" 409, line 11, *for* rediit *read* redit.

" 413, line 19, *for* festimanter *read* festinanter.

" 415, line 9. The word *multos* is repeated superfluously.

" 419, side-margin, *for* 1293 *read* 1239.

" *ib.*, line 16. Walter de Cantelupe was consecrated bishop of Worcester at Viterbo, in 1237. *See* Stubbs, "Registr. Sacr. Anglicanum," p. 40 ; and cf. *ante*, p. 393.

" 422, line 12, *for* W[altero] *read* W[illelmo].

" *ib.*, last line. In MS. B. the name of *Girarde Bat* is added in the margin, as the name of the mayor. His name in MS. Harl. 565, fol. 17*b*., is given as William *Joynour*.

" 425, line 9, *for* inundationes (as in MS.) *we should read* inundatio, *or change the verb to the plural*. Similar solecisms occur in p. 490, and in vol. iii. p. 54.

" 431, line 2, side-note, *for* David *substitute* Griffin.

" 432, line 7, *for* augustiis *read* angustiis.

" 436, lines 2–5. A careless error, and so again in vol. iii. p. 281. The death of *John Scot*, earl of Chester, has already been noticed in 1237, p. 398 *ante*, and the person here meant was *John de Laci*, earl of *Lincoln*, referred to in p. 349. He was never earl of *Chester*.

Page 437, last line. Another error. Hamelin, earl of Warren, was the natural son of Geoffrey of Anjou, the father of Henry II. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 76.

,, 438, line 6, foot-note, *add*, The name is not given in B.C., but he is there designated " Canonicus Lichefeldensis."

,, 443, line 12. The *unus* referred to was Almaric, count of Montfort.

,, 447, line 17. An error, since the eldest son of Waldemar II. (also named Waldemar) died before his father, in 1231. *See* " L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 89.

,, *ib.*, line 18, side-note, *for* brothers *substitute* sons.

,, *ib.*, line 24, *for* Æthelmarus (as in MS.) *read* Waldemarus.

,, 450, line 3. In the *Chronica Majora*, p. 564, he is falsely called *Henricus*, and hence confounded here with *Ensius*, the person meant. Henry was then in prison, where he died. *See* p. 468.

,, 457, line 2. James, bishop of Palestrina, really died 26 June 1244. *See* Ciacconius, " Vit. Pontif." ii. 87.

,, 458, line 9, foot-note, *add*, Henry de Cornhulle succeeded William of St. Mary Church as dean of St. Paul's, from 1243 to 1254. *See* Fasti, ii. 309.

,, 469, line 12, foot-note, *for* quoniam *read* quem.

,, *ib.*, line 23, side-note, *for* select *substitute* elect.

,, 473, line 26, side-note, *for* excommunicates the city *substitute* lays the city under an interdict.

,, 490, line 12. This is not correct. On the death of Engelram III. de Coucy, his eldest son *Raoul* succeeded, on whose death, in 1250, his brother Engelram IV. succeeded. *John*, the third son, was Seigneur de Chimai. *See* " L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 719.

,, 495, line 19, side-note, *for* Rome *substitute* the Roman court; and again, p. 498.

,, 497, line 16, *for* spiritualis *read* specialis.

,, 500, line 14, side-note, *for* Matthew Fitz-Herbert *substitute* Herbert Fitz-Matthew.

,, 503, line 11, side-note, *for* legate *substitute* nuncio.

,, 507, line 19. Perhaps the comma after *Arcubalastarius* should be placed after *Reimundus*. *See* the *Chronica Majora*, p. 683, and cf. vol. iii. p. 296.

,, 509, line 12. No cardinal of this name occurs in Ciacconius. Perhaps *Galfridus de Trano*, the author of the compilation on the Decretals is meant, who is designated by Fabricius, " subdiaconus ecclesiæ Romanæ et capellanus Pontificis."

,, *ib.*, last line, foot-note, *add*, The blason is false, as appears by previous instances at pp. 232, 331, &c.; and in the Chetham MS. of the *Flores Historiarum*, the same shields are coloured by Matthew Paris, *or* and *vert*, a lion rampant *gules*.

,, 510, line 19, *supply the name* W[alteri], from Dugdale, Baron. i. 98.

VOL. III.

Page 6, line 7, a phrase taken from Terence, *Phormio*, act i. sc. 4, 9.

,, 9, line 20. This John de *Hotoft* is the same person as John de *Houtune*, previously archdeacon of Bedford. *See* vol. ii. pp. 279, 309, and Fasti, ii. 55, 72.

,, 20, note. Here, and in p. 31, *for* Newcastle *read* de Castro-Novo. It is probable that his name was *Châteauneuf* or *Castelnau*, but I have not succeeded in identifying him.

,, 22, line 20, *for* visitationem *read* visitatione, and *add side note*, "Composition between Durham and St. Alban's, relative to Tynemouth."

,, 27, line 6, *supply* commas " *after* mutiletur.

,, 31, line 18, *M[argareta]* is an error (repeated in p. 302). Her name was *Agnes*, daughter of Ranulph, earl of Chester. *See* Dugdale, Baron, i. 261.

,, *ib.*, line 21. The bishop did not die till 11 July 1255. *See* Fasti, i. 292.

,, 35, line 13. This projected marriage with a daughter of the duke of Saxony never took place. *See* Kington, "History of Frederick the Second," ii. 427.

,, 36, line 25, side-note. Here, and in pp. 58, 77, 82, 87, 309, *for* Rome *read* the court of Rome. The pope was at Lyons from 1245 to 1250 inclusive.

,, 40, line 11. This Patrick was earl of Dunbar, and grandson of William the Lion by his natural daughter Ada. He died at Damietta. *See* Gibson, "History of Tynemouth," i. 88.

,, 45, line 10, *for* Arethimum *read* Arethinum.

,, 51, line 21, foot-note, *for* postularetur *read* postularentur.

,, *ib.*, line 25, *add side-note*, Preaching of the Mendicant Orders in behalf of the Crusade.

,, 53, line 22. I cannot identify *Volsa*. The French translator of Matthew Paris conjectures *Zwetfalt*.

,, 58, line 5. The sense would be clearer if *papæ* was supplied before *suggesserat*.

,, 63, line 3, *for* Johannis (as in MS.) *read* Galfridi.

,, 66, line 17, *supply* [rex] *after* dominus, from B.C.

,, 68, line 19, *for* filiam *read* filium.

,, 69, line 18, *for* Wigorniensis (as in MS.) *we should probably read* Wintoniensis. Cf. p. 75.

,, *ib.*, line 19, *for* Oxoniensi et Bedefordensi *read* Oxoniensis et Bedefordensis.

,, 84, note, line 18, *for* bend *read* label. In regard to the inscription, "*Engelrami* de Cusci," it was *Raoul*, the eldest son of Engelram, who was killed at Mansourah. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 719.

,, 88, line 13. The side-note should be brought down to this line.

,, *ib.*, line 14, *for* amorum *read* annorum.

,, 89, line 16. This event happened in 1213. *See* the *Chronica Majora*, p. 245.

Page 92, line 6, *for* Æthelmarum (as in MS.) *read* Waldemarum. Cf. vol. ii. p. 447.

„ 100, line 6, side-note, *for* is exchanged *substitute* proposed to be exchanged.

„ 102, 103, *add side-notes*, Number of the slain in the French army, *and* Amount of ransom paid for Louis IX.

„ 103, line 33. In the *Chronica Majora*, p. 861, this event is entered under 1253, and so *postea*, p. 133.

„ 108, line 15, *for* Romæ (as in MS.) *we should probably read* Lugduni. The word is omitted in B. *See* "Registr. Sacr. Anglic." p. 42.

„ 114, line 1. The first portion of the rubric does not apply to the present text, on account of the omission of a passage, which occurs in the *Chronica Majora*, p. 826. In the side-note, *for* council *substitute* chapter.

„ 117, line 20, side-note, *for* Alexander II. *substitute* Alexander III.

„ 118, line 5, side-note, *for* le Noreys *substitute* de Ros. Cf. *postea*, p. 322, and Dugdale, Baron. i. 554.

„ 119, line 26, side-note, *add* of Gloucester *after* Richard.

„ 122, line 4, *for* Andefulsus (as in MS.) *we should read* Ferdinandus. The same error occurs in vol. ii. p. 390, and vol. iii. pp. 304, 322. The side-notes should be corrected.

„ 130, line 23. In B. is added, "Petrus nomine."

„ 134, line 13, side-note, *for* for Gascony *substitute* for raising forces for Gascony, and other purposes.

„ 140, line 14, *for* confugente (as in MS.) *read* confugiente.

„ 144, line 21, side-note, *for* Ralph *substitute* Ranulph, and again in pp. 177, 265.

„ 147, line 19. The *alienigena* was, probably, Peter of Savoy. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 93.

„ 154, foot-note, col. 1, line 10, *for* mana *read* manu.

„ 160, line 16. An error, copied from Wendover. The children alluded to were sons of Ælfhelm, earl of Deira. *See* Flor. Wig. i. 158.

„ 164, line 14. Another error, also from Wendover. Alfred was the younger of the two Æthelings.

„ 167, line 18. This is a mistake. It was Leovigar, who was killed by Griffith, king of Wales. Cf. Wendover, i. 496.

„ 168, line 5, foot-note, *add*, The sense, however, of the passage, requires us to read *Haroldus* instead of *Godwinus*.

„ 175, line 19, *for* Lamfrancus (as in MS., but partially erased,) *read* Anselmus, *and correct the side-note.*

„ 176, line 3. So in MS., but *for* Maniæ *we should probably read* Viromandiæ. Cf. vol. i. p. 193.

„ 182, line 38, *for* Radulphus (as in MS.) *read* Johannes, *and correct the side-note.* Cf. *Hist. Angl.* i. 231.

„ 183, lines 15, 27, *for* Robertus (as in MS.) *read* Walerannus.

„ 184, line 13, side-note, *for* bishop *substitute* archbishop.

„ 187, line 23, foot-note. The words wanting may be thus supplied, "[xi. milia] Scotorum [ibi ceci]derunt."

„ 188, line 20, side-note, *for* Albert *substitute* Alberic.

Page 204, line 26, *for* Rogerus (as in MS.) *read* Walterus. Cf. *Hist. Angl.* i. 424.

,, 224, line 5, *for* Cicestrensis (as in MS.) *read* Cestrensis.

,, 225, line 36, side-note, *for* Reginald *substitute* Roger.

,, 231, lines 14, 15, *for* Thomas *and* Galfridus (as in MS.) *read* Johannes *and* Gilebertus.

,, 242, line 4. *Hugo* is an error. *See* addit. note on vol. ii. p. 221 *n.*

,, 248, line 11, foot-note, *for* quem *read* qui eum. Cf. p. 231.

,, 256, line 26, *for* Marescalli *read* marescalli.

,, 268, line 31. After *conabatur* a verb is wanting; perhaps *ordinare.*

,, 269, line 35, *for* mortificarenter *read* mortificarentur.

,, 279, line 21, *for* Conventrensi *read* Coventrensi.

,, 280, lines 30, 31. The statement here is erroneous. The General Council was summoned at Rome, and the pope did not take refuge at Lyons till 1245. Cf. *postea,* p. 293.

,, 283, line 3, for *Abel et Christoforus* it would be more correct to read *Ericus et Abel.* Cf. *Hist. Angl.* ii. 447.

,, 296, line 18. It was John I., count of Dreux (son of Robert III.) who took the cross, and died at Nicosia in 1248. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 673.

,, 304, line 29, side-note, *for* Letter from *substitute* Letters patent of *and for* to *substitute* in behalf of.

,, 305, line 9, *supply dots . . . before* Hylarii.

,, 306, line 6, *for* Scottona (as in MS.) *read* Stoctona. Cf. pp. 44, 321.

,, 309, line 9, *for* regis (as in MS.) *read* regem.

,, 314, line 20, *dele* de *before* Passelewe, *and so also in the note.*

,, 328, line 19, side-note, *for* Marriage of Roger Bigod *substitute* Roger Bigod takes back his wife.

,, 345, line 28. The person alluded to is probably Berthold, margrave of Hohenburg. *See* Rymer, *Fœdera,* vol. i., *sub anno* 1254, and cf. 1256, p. 339, ed. 1816.

,, 348, line 5. This mission was in reference to the projected marriage of the king's daughter Beatrice to the brother of Alfonso of Castille. *See* Rymer, vol. i. pp. 325, 340.

INDEX.

Page 392, col. 2, line 2, *after* Bresnes *insert* John de.

,, 399, col. 1, line 24, *dele* earl.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[.—750.—9 68.]

+ f. 6 in libro literarum
ad tale signum. And also in

Also in L. A
f. 10 in libro additi

12 " " " [in fine libri B]
+ 13 "
But this is in L A

16 in L A etc communem S Albani
17 " " (2)
22 " "
27 " "
33 "
34 " "
(41)
(45) is a genuine reference to B with signum
47 in L.A
? 61 ?
65 in magna [illegible]

84
① 107 in libro Addit ad hoc signum Not deleted

124
ND 129 in L.A ad tale signum : but this in L.A. Not
the sign is not delete
ND 134 ad hoc signum

ND 147 .

p. 6

B has in libro additamentorum (aliter [illegible] in libro literarum)
ad tale signum

Then in red "Hoc invenies in additamentorum", & then it is
but without ⊤

C omits

B refers to it

Then perhaps taken out – then replaced in rewriting

Refs to Historia Anglorum in margin of B begin in 1226

So the first clear reference to existence of B after 1250 is 1236. So every ref to the Addit. in HA was made after B was written. [illegible] Journ. in Philology.

p

p135,

2 7 | [illegible]
written [illegible]

p 4 in B C

p. 6

p 13 in prima libri (B) = Liber Addit

in Lib. Add altered – but doc. is still in L.

p 18 B writes a chapter. H A epitomises it. C copies B

B erases whole chapter. H A alters & amends

✓ p 27 in H A (pasted over) but left in C. M. & doc. still in L.

✓ 34 " " " " " "

✓ 41 Papal letter first: also in B C in full: also in L A

44 Ref to L A with pasted over. Full text in C M & again L A

45 Changes ref to C M (Doc not in L A)

✓ 47 Short account: refers to L A for more prolix account. Neither text
B. C. But the prolix account must always have been in B.C.

? Matthew to shorten the history intended to move letters given
in full to the Lib. Addit. Then changed his mind &
pasted slips over.

98 Proof that C was copied early. It contains [illegible]
erased from B & H A

101 Ref. to L. A left standing

102 Refers to p 93 which refers to letter in C M v 165
at p 203 in C M. the reader is referred to L. A where it is
found [illegible] a mistake or rather M P intended putting
in L. A as well as in the text & then changed his mind

108 Letter given in full. also in C M v. 232. also in L [illegible]
no reference

113 Ref to L A – pasted over. Same ref in B & doc.
Ref. left in B

✓ 121 This charter is given elsewhere he says (i.e. in B) but no
direct ref to Chr Maj

✓ 124 letters alike [illegible] & ref left. cf 121.

129 Ref to L A. Late addition See II. 503
M. P. got the letter late: put it in L. A & mentioned it under
1252 in H. A. He never bothered to put it in B. But he
gave 3 different dates.

p 134 p 137 Docs in H A, C M

p 131 Handwriting